iPhone User Guide

Everything you need to know about iPhone

Search this guide

Table of Contents

Get started

Set up a few basic features before you start using your new iPhone.

Setup basics ›

Add a personal touch

Your iPhone can reflect your personal style and preferences. Showcase your favorite photos on the Lock Screen, add widgets to the Home Screen, adjust text size, ringtones, and more.

Make your iPhone your own ›

This manual was copied from Apple Support website and compiled by www.iphone15manual.com

Take your best shot

Use your iPhone to capture the moment, wherever you are. Learn how to take photos and videos on the fly, and use other camera features on your iPhone.

Take great photos and videos ›

Stay connected

iPhone makes it easy to reach the people important to you. Add them to your contacts so you have their information everywhere you need it—then catch up with text messages, phone calls, or FaceTime.

Keep in touch with friends and family ›

All in the family

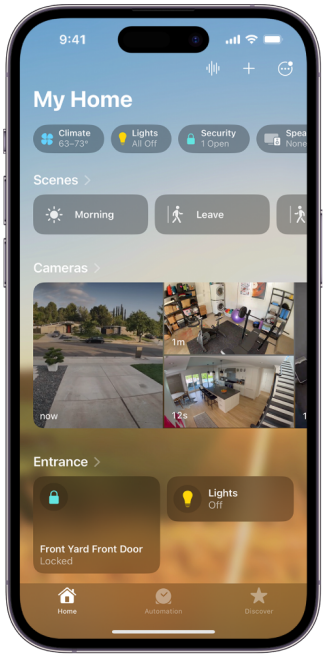
You and your family members can use Family Sharing to share app purchases, your location, and even health data. You can also set up parental controls to manage how children spend time on their devices.

Share features with your family ›

Simplify your day

Learn how to use the apps on your iPhone to direct you to the places you go most often, pay for your morning coffee, remind you of important tasks, and even lock your front door automatically when you leave home.

Use iPhone for your daily routines ›



This manual was copied from Apple Support website
and compiled by www.iphone15manual.com

Ask the experts

Check out these tips from Apple Support advisors to keep your iPhone, and the information you keep on it, safe and secure.

Expert advice from Apple Support ›

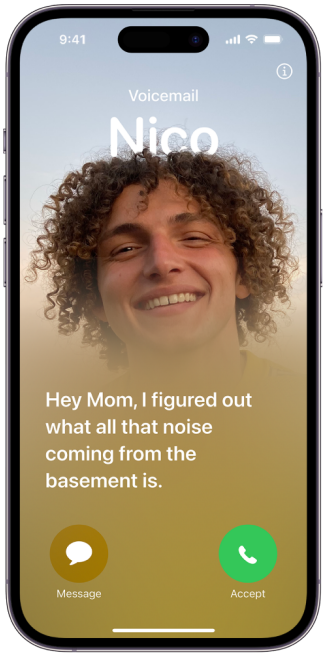
What's new in iOS 17

StandBy. Turn your iPhone on its side while charging to glance at important information from a distance. You can turn your iPhone into a bedside clock, view photos, control music, and more. See Use StandBy to view information at a distance while iPhone is charging.

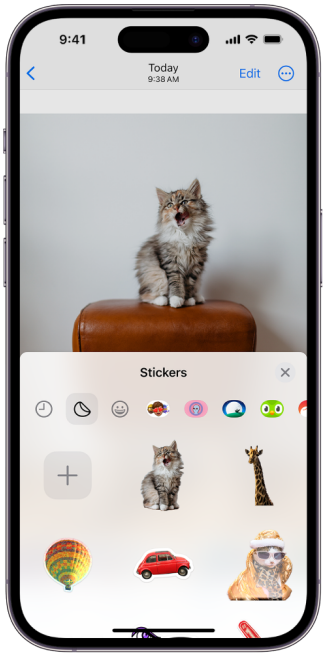
Interactive widgets. Widgets on your Home Screen, Lock Screen, and StandBy are even more useful with interactivity. Just tap a widget to complete tasks like checking off a to-do item, controlling your living room lights, or playing a new podcast episode. See Add, edit, and remove widgets on iPhone.

Contact Posters. Create a unique screen that other people see when you call them. When you make a phone call, your Contact Poster appears on the screen of the person you're calling. See Add or edit your photo and poster.

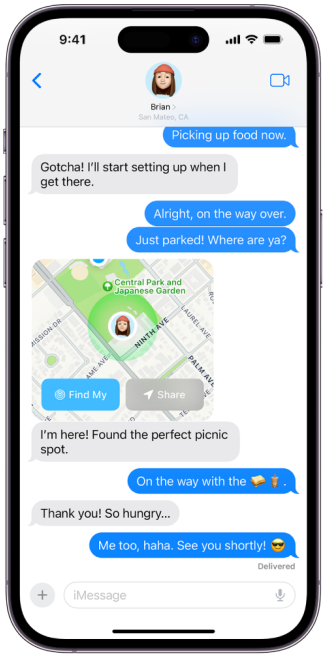
Live Voicemail. When a call you receive goes to voicemail, see a live transcript of the message as it's being recorded, giving you immediate context for the call. If it's something you want to address right then, you can pick up the call (available in U.S. and Canada). See Turn on Live Voicemail.



Stickers. Use Stickers to decorate your photos, screenshots, and more. You can add stickers anywhere you can use the onscreen keyboard or Markup tools. Create stickers from Memoji in Messages, or make stickers from your own photos or Live Photos. See Send stickers in Messages on iPhone, Decorate with stickers, and Make stickers from your photos on iPhone.

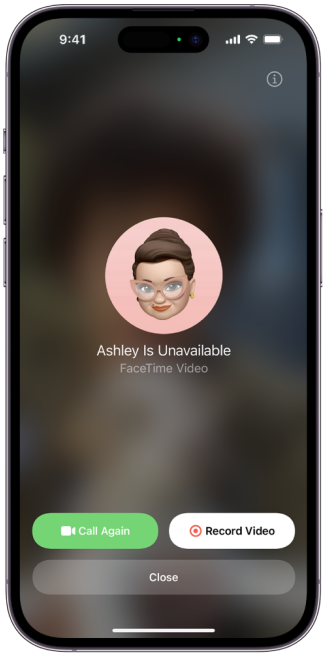


Messages. Use Check In to let a friend or family member know when your iPhone arrives safely at a destination. You can also share your location or request a friend's location right in a Messages conversation. Audio messages are now transcribed, so you can read them in the moment and listen later. Find the message you're looking for faster by combining filters to narrow your search. See Use Check In on iPhone to let your friends know you've arrived, Share your location in Messages on iPhone, Send and receive audio messages on iPhone, and Search in Messages on iPhone.



Keyboard. Autocorrected words are temporarily underlined so you know what's been changed, and you can revert back to the original word with just a tap. Predictive text appears inline as you type—just tap the Space bar to finish a word or sentence (not available in all countries or regions). See Enter text using the onscreen keyboard and Use predictive text on iPhone.

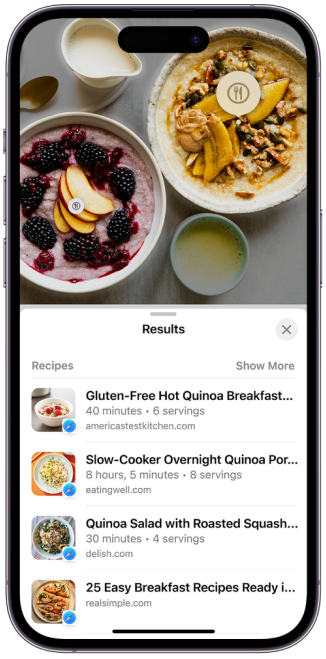
FaceTime. If someone doesn't answer your FaceTime call, now you can leave them an audio or video message. During a FaceTime call, use hand gestures to create reactions like hearts, confetti, and fireworks that fill the screen. Hand off FaceTime calls between your iPhone and Apple TV. See Record a video message, Receive a video message or Live Voicemail, Add reactions in a video call, and Hand off a FaceTime call from your iPhone to your other Apple devices.



AirDrop. Hold your iPhone near someone else's to swap phone numbers, email addresses, and Contact Posters with NameDrop. You can also initiate an AirDrop transfer, or start a SharePlay session, when you bring two phones close together. See Use NameDrop on to share your contact info, Share photos and videos by bringing one iPhone close to another, and Start a SharePlay session by holding two iPhone devices close together.

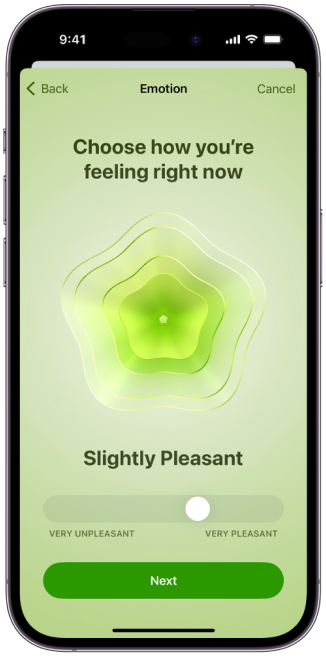
Maps. Save an area of a map to your iPhone and explore it offline. When driving an electric vehicle, choose a preferred charging network and see real-time charging station availability. See Download offline Maps on iPhone and Set up electric vehicle routing in Maps on iPhone.

Visual Look Up. Pause a video on any frame to use Visual Look Up in your videos as well as photos. Visual Look Up can identify food in a photo or video and suggest related recipes. Visual Look Up information is also available for objects that you lift from the background of photos. See Use Visual Look Up to identify objects in your photos and videos on iPhone.

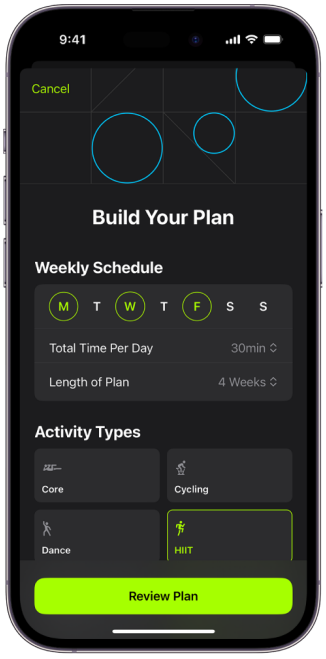


Photos. iPhone recognizes and sorts pets just like a friend or family member in the People & Pets album. Choose a new focus point when you edit a portrait. Add any photo from your photo library to a memory and reorder photos and videos within a memory. See Identify people and pets in Photos on iPhone, Change the focus point of a portrait, and Personalize your memories in Photos on iPhone.

Health. Keep track of your state of mind to help build emotional awareness and resilience. You can also access mental health resources, articles, and standardized assessments about how you're feeling to help you determine if you should talk to your doctor. See Track your mental wellbeing in Health on iPhone.



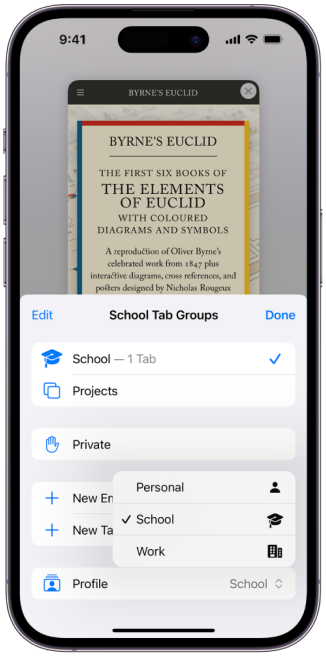
Fitness. The redesigned Sharing tab provides highlights of your friends' activity like workout streaks and awards. Create a workout and meditation schedule based on exactly what you want with a Custom Plan in Apple Fitness+. See Share your activity in Fitness on iPhone and Create a custom plan in Apple Fitness+ on iPhone.



Screen Distance. Help protect your vision with the Screen Distance feature in Screen Time, which encourages you to move your iPhone farther away if you've held it closer than 12 inches for an extended period. See Help protect your vision health with Screen Distance on iPhone.

Safari. Use different profiles for different topics—like work and personal—to keep your browsing separate. Autofill verification codes you receive in Mail are populated automatically, so you don't have to leave Safari to enter them, and you can share passwords to a set of accounts with trusted friends and family. See Create multiple Safari profiles on iPhone and Share passwords or passkeys with people you trust on iPhone.

This manual was copied from Apple Support website
and compiled by www.iphone15manual.com

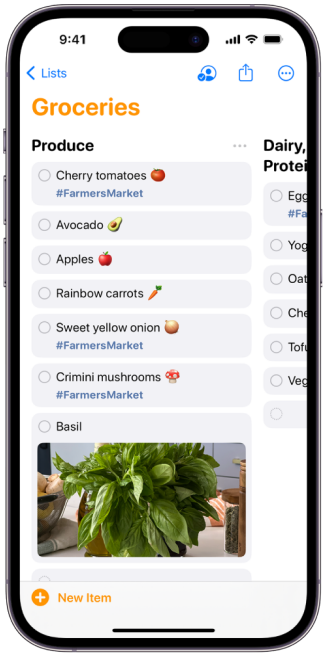


Privacy and Security. Communication Safety now includes protections against sensitive videos and photos including content sent and received in AirDrop, Contact Posters, the systemwide photo picker, and FaceTime messages. You can choose to blur sensitive photos and videos before you view them using Sensitive Content Warning. Enhancements to Lockdown Mode help protect against sophisticated cyberattacks. See Receive warnings about sensitive content on iPhone and Harden your iPhone from a cyberattack with Lockdown Mode.

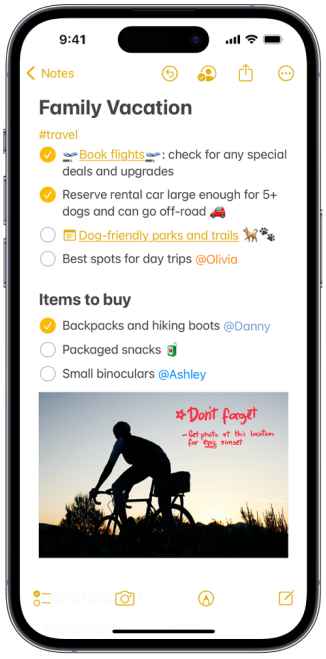
Accessibility. Personal Voice helps people with speech loss create a voice that sounds like them and use it with Live Speech to communicate in calls and conversations. Point and Speak makes it easier for people who are blind or have low vision to interact with physical objects that have text labels. See Record your Personal Voice on iPhone.

Magnifier. Point and Speak makes it easier for people who are blind or have low vision to interact with physical objects that have text labels. See Read aloud text and labels around you using Magnifier on iPhone.

Reminders. Grocery Lists automatically sort items into categories to make shopping easier. Lists can also be divided into sections with headers, and a new Column View arranges sections next to each other to help you visualize your tasks. See Make a grocery list in Reminders on iPhone.



Notes. Easily review PDFs and scans of presentations, assignments, research papers, and more, right in your note. You can also add links to connect related notes, like a trip itinerary and a list of recommended restaurants. See Work with PDFs in Notes on iPhone and Add links in Notes on iPhone.



Freeform. Use new drawing tools like a watercolor brush, calligraphy pen, highlighter, variable-width pen, and ruler while brainstorming on a board. See Draw or handwrite on a Freeform board on iPhone.

Find My. Share AirTags and other Find My items with up to five other people. Everyone you share with can track the item and play sounds. Get directions to help you find a person you're trying to meet up with. See Share an AirTag or other item in Find My on iPhone and Use Precision Finding on iPhone 15 models to meet up with a friend.

News. Apple News+ subscribers can do daily crossword puzzles in the News app, and Apple News+ audio stories are available in the Podcasts app. See Solve crossword puzzles in Apple News on iPhone and Listen to subscriber-only content in Podcasts on iPhone.

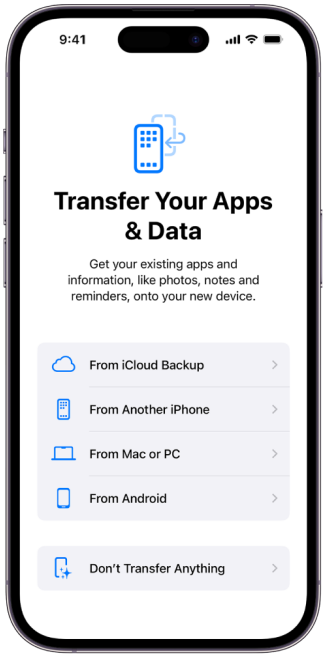
Home. Activity History lets you see who locked or unlocked the door—and when. It also shows recent activity for garage doors, contact sensors, and your security system. See View Activity History.

Learn tricks for iOS 17 The Tips app adds new suggestions frequently, so you can get the most from your iPhone. See Get tips.

Note: New features and apps may vary depending on your iPhone model, region, language, and carrier.

Setup basics

iPhone has an easy setup process to help you get going when you first turn on your device. Whether you're just getting started or want to make sure you have the basics set up, you're in the right place.



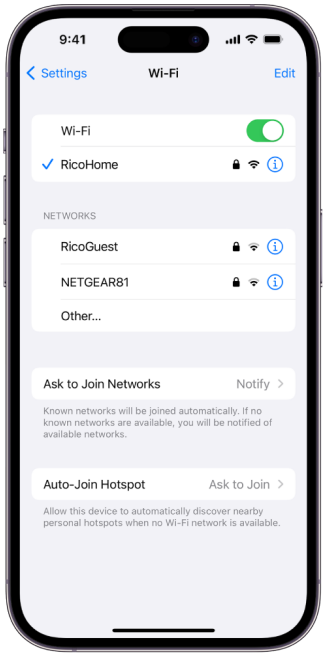
Transfer your apps and info onto your new iPhone

When you first turn on your iPhone and begin the setup process, you can wirelessly transfer many of your apps, settings, and content from your previous iPhone directly to your new iPhone—just bring the two devices close together, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Set up cellular service and connect to Wi-Fi

Depending on your model, use an eSIM from your carrier or install a physical SIM card to connect to your cellular network. To check if your iPhone is connected to your cellular plan, go to Settings > Cellular.

To connect your iPhone to your home Wi-Fi network, go to Settings > Wi-Fi, turn on Wi-Fi, then choose your network. iPhone automatically connects to your Wi-Fi network whenever you're home.



Sign in with your Apple ID

Your Apple ID is the account you use to access Apple services such as Apple Music, FaceTime, iCloud, and iMessage. If you don't have an Apple ID, you can create one.

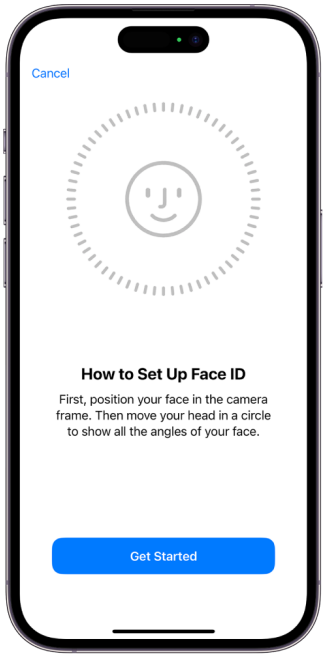
To sign in with your Apple ID, go to Settings > Sign in to your iPhone. To verify that you're signed in, go to Settings > [*your name*]; your Apple ID appears below your name.

Set up Face ID or Touch ID

You can use Face ID (face recognition) or Touch ID (your fingerprint) to securely unlock your iPhone, sign in to many apps, and make purchases. For your security, Face ID and Touch ID data doesn't leave your device and isn't saved anywhere else.

Depending on your iPhone model, do one of the following:

- *Set up Face ID:* Go to Settings > Face ID & Passcode, tap Set up Face ID, then follow the onscreen instructions.
- *Set up Touch ID:* Go to Settings > Touch ID & Passcode, tap Add a Fingerprint, then follow the onscreen instructions.



Turn on Find My iPhone

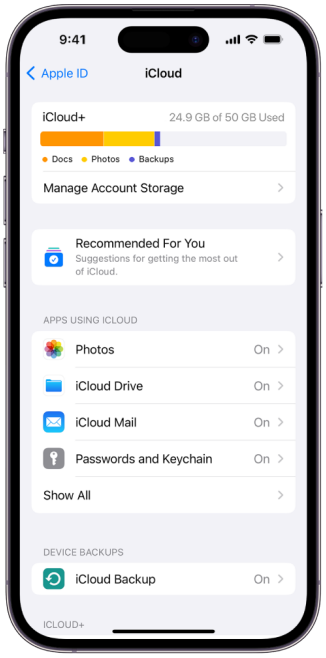
You can locate your iPhone if it's ever lost or stolen.

Go to Settings > [*your name*] > Find My, tap Find My iPhone, then turn on Find My iPhone. You can see the location of your devices in the Find My app. If you lose your iPhone and don't have access to the Find My app, you can locate your device using Find My on iCloud.com.

Store your data in iCloud

iCloud helps you keep your important info safe and in sync across your devices. If you replace or lose your iPhone, or it's damaged or stolen, your photos, videos, and more remain secure in iCloud.

To turn on or change the features you want to use with iCloud, go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud.



Want to learn more?

- Turn on and set up iPhone
- Set up cellular service
- Connect iPhone to the internet
- Set up Face ID on iPhone
- Locate a device in Find My
- Use iCloud on iPhone

Not all features are available for all iPhone models.

Make your iPhone your own

You can tailor your iPhone to your own interests and preferences. Personalize your Lock Screen, change the sounds and vibrations for calls and messages, keep features like the flashlight or calculator handy, adjust the text size, and more.

Keep your favorite features handy

Some iPhone features—like the flashlight, timer, or calculator—are just a swipe away in Control Center. To quickly open Control Center on an iPhone with Face ID, swipe down from the top-right edge; on an iPhone with a Home button, swipe up from the bottom of the screen.

You can add more features—like the alarm or magnifier—to Control Center in Settings > Control Center.

Personalize your Lock Screen

You can showcase a favorite photo, add filters, and widgets, and even change the font of the date and time.

To get started, touch and hold the Lock Screen, then tap + at the bottom of the screen. Browse the gallery of options, then tap one to customize its appearance. When you've created a Lock Screen that you like, tap Add, then tap Set as Wallpaper Pair.

Add widgets to your Home Screen

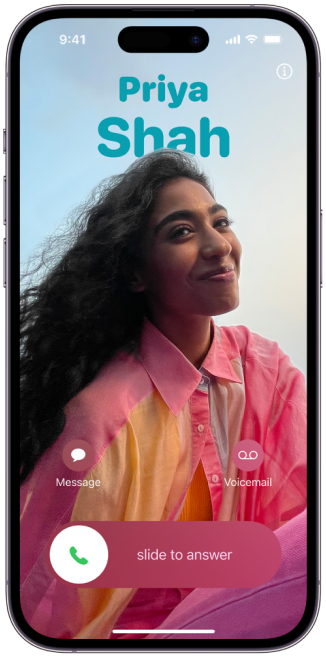
Widgets let you easily see the information that's most important to you, like the current weather and upcoming calendar events. You can also complete tasks—for example, check off an item in your Reminders to-do list, or play a song in Music.

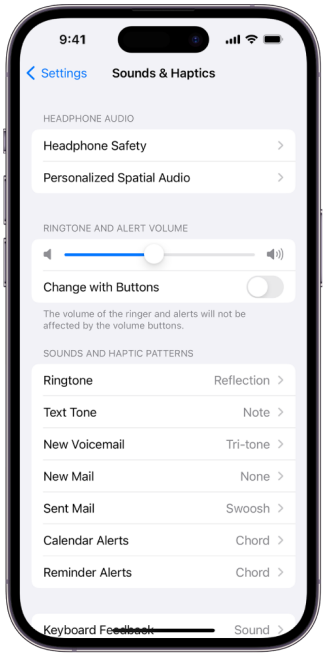
To add a widget, touch and hold the background on any Home Screen page until the apps jiggle, then tap +.

Customize your phone calls

Create your own unique call poster to personalize what people see when you call them. Choose your favorite photo or emoji, pair it with your preferred font, then add colors to make it pop. When you make a phone call, your call poster appears on the screen of the person you're calling.

To get started, open the Contacts app, tap your name, then tap Contact Photo & Poster.





Choose sounds and vibrations

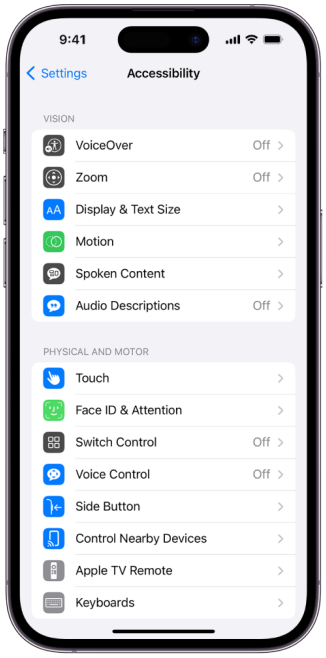
iPhone can play different sounds and vibrations for phone calls, text messages, calendar alerts, and other notifications.

Go to Settings > Sounds & Haptics. You can also change the sounds iPhone plays for certain people; in the Contacts app, tap a person's name, tap Edit, then tap Ringtone or Text Tone.

Use built-in accessibility features

iPhone provides many accessibility features to support your vision, physical and motor, hearing, and learning needs. Change text size, make it easier to use the touchscreen, control your iPhone with just your voice, and more.

To customize these settings, go to Settings > Accessibility.



Check privacy settings

iPhone is designed to protect your privacy and information. You can grant or deny apps permission to track your activity across other companies' apps and websites. You can also use Safety Check to review and update which people and apps have access to your information. Go to Settings > Privacy & Security, then tap Tracking or Safety Check.

Want to learn more?

- Use and customize Control Center on iPhone
- Create a custom iPhone Lock Screen
- Add, edit, and remove widgets on iPhone
- Change iPhone sounds and vibrations
- Get started with accessibility features on iPhone
- Use the built-in privacy and security protections of iPhone

Not all features are available for all iPhone models.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Setup basics

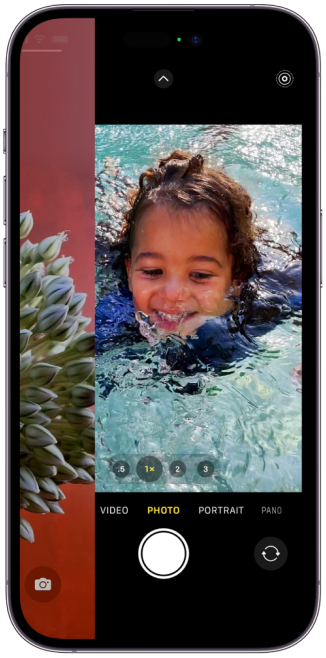
Next
Take great photos and videos

Support › iPhone User Guide › Make your iPhone your own

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Take great photos and videos

With your iPhone nearby, you'll never miss a chance to take a photo or video, snap a selfie, or capture scenes in low light. After you take photos, use the iPhone editing tools to crop, adjust the light and color, and much more.



Capture the moment

To quickly open Camera, just swipe left on the Lock Screen. Camera automatically focuses the shot and adjusts the exposure. Tap the Shutter button to take a photo.

Quickly switch to video

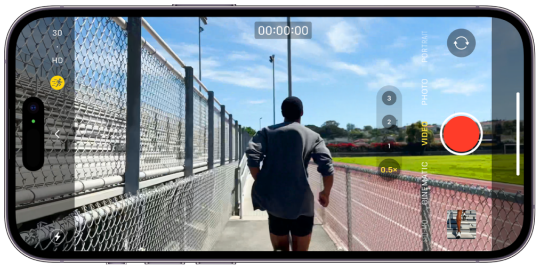
You can record videos without switching out of Photo mode. Just touch and hold the Shutter button and Camera begins recording a QuickTake video. Release the button to stop recording. QuickTake is available on iPhone Xs, iPhone Xʀ, and later.

Take the perfect selfie

To take a selfie, open Camera, then tap or (depending on your model). Hold your iPhone in front of you, then tap the Shutter button or either volume button to take the shot.

Shoot photos in low light

On supported models, Night mode automatically takes bright, detailed photos in low-light settings. When turns yellow, Night mode is on. Tap the Shutter button, then hold your iPhone still to capture the shot. To experiment with Night mode, tap , then move the slider below the frame to adjust the exposure time.



Stabilize video recordings with Action mode

Action mode helps you capture smooth hand-held videos even when you're moving around a lot—when jogging or hiking, for example. To turn on Action mode, open Camera, switch to Video mode, then tap .

Add the final touches

After you take a photo or video, use the editing tools in the Photos app to make it even better. Open a photo or video, tap Edit, then tap the buttons at the bottom of the screen to adjust lighting, add a filter, crop, or rotate. As you make edits, tap the photo to compare your changes to the original.

Want to learn more? Check out the Camera and Photos chapters.

Not all features are available for all iPhone models.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Make your iPhone your own

Next
Keep in touch with friends and family

Support › iPhone User Guide › Take great photos and videos

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Keep in touch with friends and family

iPhone makes it easy to reach the people important to you—so you can catch up with phone or video calls and quickly text your group of friends.

A smarter address book

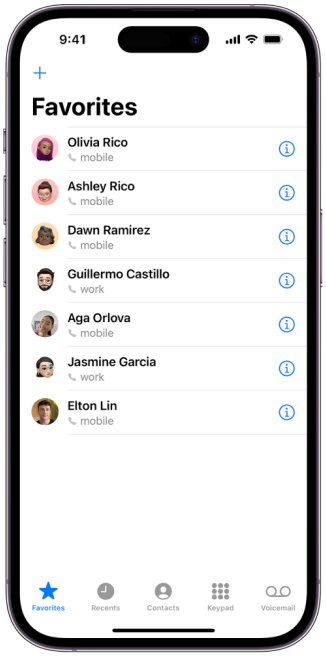
Enter phone numbers, email addresses, birthdays, and more in the Contacts app once, and you have them everywhere you need them—from Messages to FaceTime to Mail. You can also add contact information from another account (like Google or Yahoo).

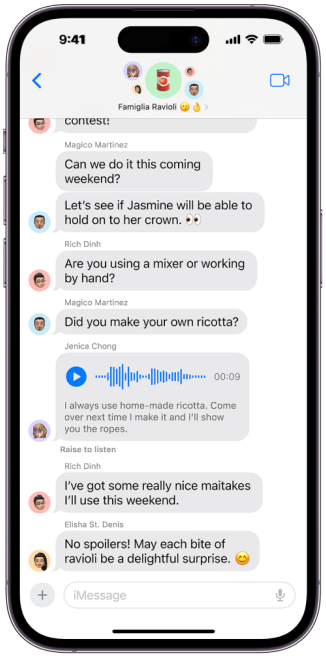
Go to Settings > Contacts > Accounts, then tap Add Account.

Choose your favorites

Add the people you talk to frequently to your Favorites list in the Phone app to make them easier to reach.

In the Phone app, tap Favorites, tap +, then choose a contact. To call a Favorite, just tap their name.





Start a group conversation

You can send messages to a group of people you want to talk to all at the same time, like members of your family.

In the Messages app, tap, type the names of the people you want to send a message to, then send the first message.

Make a video call

You can use FaceTime to make video calls with your friends and family.

In the FaceTime app, tap New FaceTime near the top of the screen, type the name of the person you want to call, then tap. During the call, you can tap the screen to show the FaceTime controls (in case you want to mute yourself, for example).

Add people to a FaceTime call

You can add more people to a FaceTime call—friends and family can join at any time. Tap the screen to show the controls, tap, then tap Add People.

Want to learn more?

- Add and use contact information on iPhone
- Use Contacts from the Phone app on iPhone
- Have a group conversation in Messages on iPhone
- Make FaceTime calls on iPhone
- Make a Group FaceTime call on iPhone

Not all features are available in all countries or regions.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Take great photos and videos

Next
Share features with your family

Support › iPhone User Guide › Keep in touch with friends and family

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

This manual was copied from Apple Support website
and compiled by www.iphone15manual.com

Share features with your family

There are special features you and your family can use to share purchases, stay connected, and protect your data. If you have children, you can also set up parental controls to manage how your children use their Apple devices.

Set up Family Sharing

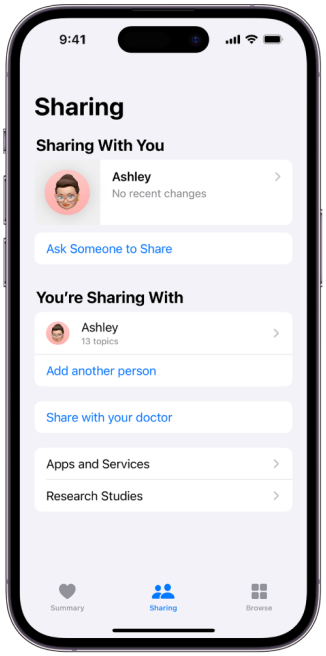
With Family Sharing, you and your family members can share purchases, subscriptions, your location, and more. Everyone uses their own device and Apple ID, but iCloud storage, subscriptions (including to services like Apple Music and Apple Arcade), and other content is shared.

To get started, go to Settings > [*your name*] > Family Sharing.

Share your location with Find My

When you set up Family Sharing, you can share your location with members of your family and help them find lost devices with the Find My app.

To share your location with family members, go to Settings > [*your name*] > Family Sharing, then scroll down and tap Location. Tap the name of a family member you want to share your location with. After you share your location with members of your Family Sharing group, they can help locate a missing device.



Share your health data

You can use the Health app to share your health data—such as your activity, mobility, and health trends—with family members.

In the Health app, tap Sharing at the bottom of the screen, then tap Share with Someone. You can choose what you want to share, and if you want the people you're sharing with to be notified about significant trends, like a steep decline in activity.

Start a family photo library

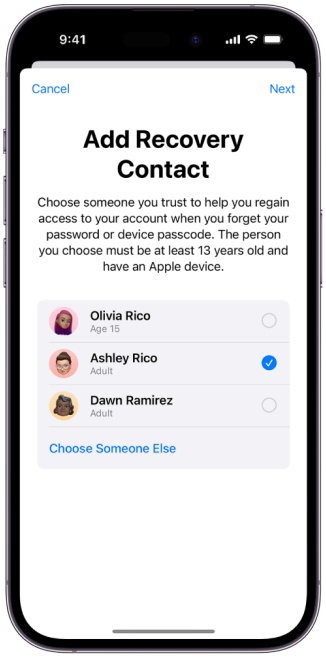
You can use iCloud Shared Photo Library to share photos and videos with up to five other family members. Everyone can add, edit, and caption photos, and enjoy the shared photos in their memories, featured photos, and Photos widget.

To get started, go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > Photos, turn on Sync this iPhone, then tap Shared Library.

Just in case

You can add family members and other trusted people as Account Recovery Contacts to help you regain access to your account if you ever get locked out. The Digital Legacy program allows you to designate people as Legacy Contacts so they can access your account and personal information in the event of your death.

To add people, go to Settings > [*your name*] > Sign-In & Security, then choose Account Recovery or Legacy Contact.



Want to learn more?

- Set up Family Sharing on iPhone
- Share locations with family members and locate their lost devices on iPhone
- Share your data in Health on iPhone
- Set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library
- Keep your Apple ID secure on iPhone

Not all features are available in all countries or regions.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Keep in touch with friends and family

Next
Use iPhone for your daily routines

Support › iPhone User Guide › Share features with your family

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use iPhone for your daily routines

While you're going about your day, you can use the apps on your iPhone to get directions, make purchases, and control accessories in your home. You can also silence notifications while you're driving or working, or allow only specific notifications related to what you're focused on.

Start the day with the info you need

While iPhone is charging, you can put it in StandBy to view useful and timely information at a glance. With StandBy, you can use your iPhone as a bedside clock that displays the time, temperature, and other information you might want to see when you wake up in the morning, or before you go to bed.

To use StandBy, connect iPhone to a charger, stand it on its side (in landscape orientation), then tap the screen.

Get directions to your favorite places

Whether you're walking, driving, or biking, you can use the Maps app to get directions to places you visit frequently, like your home or your favorite café, without entering the address every time.

In the Maps app, tap + in the row of Favorites, then add a location.

Set up a virtual wallet

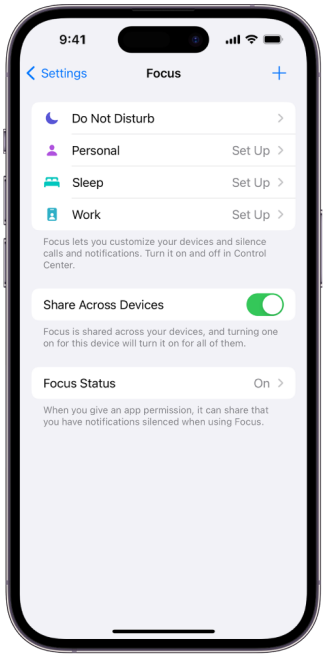
Keep your credit cards, transit passes, vaccination cards, and more in the Wallet app on your iPhone. When you add a credit or debit card to Wallet, you can use it to make secure payments in stores and online, and send and receive money from friends and family.

To add your first card, open the Wallet app, tap +, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Stay focused

Whether you're driving, working, or just need to step away from your iPhone, you can set up a Focus to temporarily silence notifications that don't match your task—and let other people know you're busy.

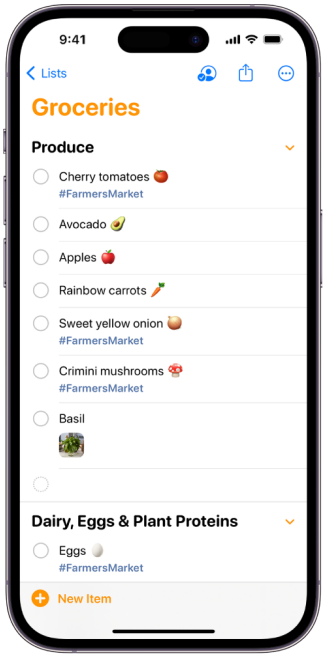
Go to Settings > Focus, then choose the Focus you want to use, or tap + to create your own.



Reminders when you need them

You can use the Reminders app to make to-do lists for projects around the house and grocery lists that sort items into categories. You can also get a reminder about something when you arrive at a certain location.

To create your first reminder, open the Reminders app, then tap New Reminder.



Forgot to turn off the lights?

With the Home app on iPhone, you can securely control HomeKit-enabled accessories, such as lights, smart TVs, and thermostats from anywhere. You can also create automations that simplify your normal routines, like automatically turning on your entryway lights when you arrive home at night.

To add your first Works with HomeKit accessory, open the Home app, tap +, then tap Add Accessory.

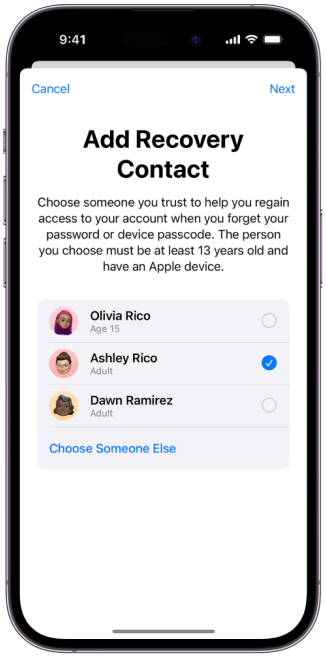
Want to learn more?

- Use StandBy to view information at a distance while iPhone is charging
- Save favorite places in Maps on iPhone
- Keep cards and passes in Wallet on iPhone
- Set up a Focus on iPhone
- Make a grocery list in Reminders on iPhone
- Intro to Home on iPhone

Not all features are available for all iPhone models.

Expert advice from Apple Support

Apple Support advisors help iPhone customers with all sorts of questions from forgotten passwords to lost photos. Below are a few pieces of advice that Apple Support advisors wish all iPhone owners knew. Follow these simple steps now to keep your iPhone, and the important information you keep on it, safe.



Just in case you forget

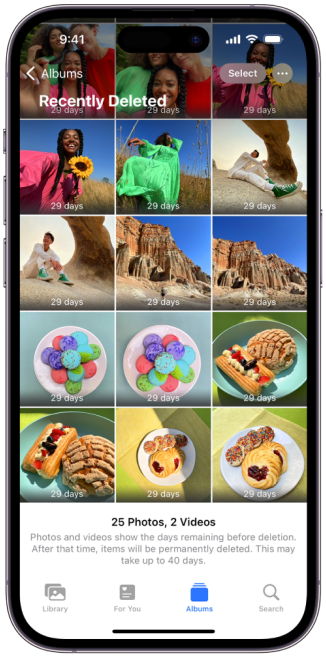
After you set up your iPhone, there are a few things you really don't want to forget—your iPhone passcode, your Apple ID, and your Apple ID password. Your iPhone passcode is the four- or six-digit numerical code that you use to unlock your iPhone. You use your Apple ID and password to sign in to Apple services, make purchases in the App Store, and more. Your Apple ID is typically your primary email address, and you create a unique password to use with it.

If you think you might forget these things, you can designate a trusted person as your account recovery contact. Your recovery contact doesn't have access to your iPhone or Apple account, but they can give you a code to reset your passcode or access your account if you get locked out. To set up a recovery contact, go to Settings > [*your name*] > Sign-In & Security > Account Recovery, tap Add Recovery Contact, then follow the onscreen instructions.

How to find your iPhone if it's lost or stolen

It's easy to find your iPhone if it ever gets lost or stolen—as long as you turn on Find My iPhone before that happens. First, make sure you're signed in to your iPhone with your Apple ID and password, then go to Settings > [*your name*] > Find My > Find My iPhone, and turn on Find My iPhone.

After you turn on Find My iPhone, you can use the Find My app on another Apple device to see the location of your iPhone; you can even play a sound on your lost iPhone to help you find it. (Make sure you're signed in to the other Apple device with your Apple ID.) If you don't have another Apple device, go to www.icloud.com/find on any web browser and sign in with your Apple ID and password.



Recover deleted photos or videos

When you delete photos or videos from the Photos app, they're automatically saved in the Recently Deleted folder for 30 days. If you accidentally delete a photo or video, you can recover it and restore it to your Photos library.

To recover deleted items, open the Photos app, tap Albums, swipe up, then tap Recently Deleted (below Utilities). Unlock the folder using your iPhone passcode, Face ID, or Touch ID. Tap a photo or video, tap Recover, then tap Recover Photo or Video.

Maximize the life of your iPhone battery

There are a few easy steps you can take to preserve the life of your iPhone battery. First, make sure your iPhone is updated to the latest version of iOS. To check if a software update is available, go to Settings > General > Software Update.

Next, always connect to Wi-Fi when it's available; a Wi-Fi connection uses less battery power than a cellular connection.

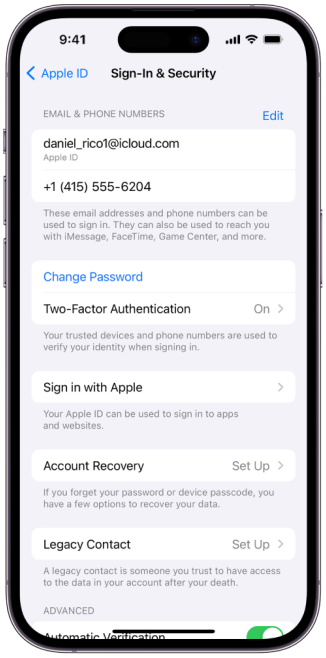
Last, turn down your screen brightness: Open Control Center and drag ☀. To automatically dim your screen based on the surrounding light, go to Settings > Accessibility > Display & Text Size, then turn on Auto-Brightness.

To learn more about your iPhone battery health, go to Settings > Battery.

If you get a new phone number

The phone number associated with your Apple ID is often used to verify your identity and authenticate that your iPhone is really yours—it's known as your trusted phone number. If you get a new phone number, make sure you update your trusted phone number so you don't lose access to your account if you forget your Apple ID, or move to a new iPhone.

To update your trusted phone number, go to Settings > [*your name*] > Sign-In & Security, then tap Edit next to Email & Phone Numbers. Tap Add Email or Phone Number, then tap Add a



Phone Number. Enter your new phone number and follow the onscreen instructions to verify your new number.

All about eSIM

An eSIM is a digital version of the physical SIM card inside your iPhone that connects to your cellular carrier. With eSIM, you don't have to swap out your SIM card when you get a new iPhone, and you can easily connect to new cellular carriers at home or while traveling. If you purchased an iPhone 14 model or later in the United States, your iPhone automatically connects to your cellular carrier using eSIM.

If you erase your iPhone, or restore it from a backup and accidentally delete your eSIM, your iPhone may lose its cellular connection; to restore it, you'll need to contact your cellular provider.

Want to learn more?

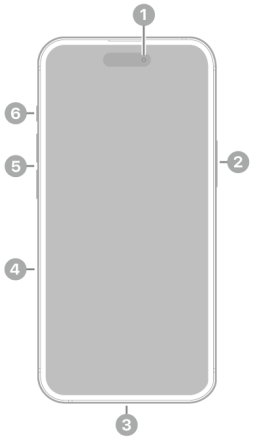
- Keep your Apple ID secure on iPhone
- Locate a device in Find My on iPhone
- Delete or hide photos and videos on iPhone
- Check the iPhone battery health and usage
- Set up an eSIM

Not all features are available for all iPhone models.

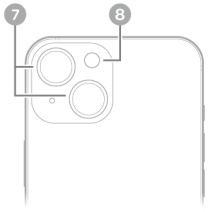
Helpful? Yes No

iPhone 15

Learn the location of the cameras, buttons, and other essential hardware features on iPhone 15.



1. Front camera
2. Side button
3. USB-C connector
4. SIM tray (available on models purchased outside the U.S.)
5. Volume buttons
6. Ring/Silent switch



7. Rear cameras
8. Flash

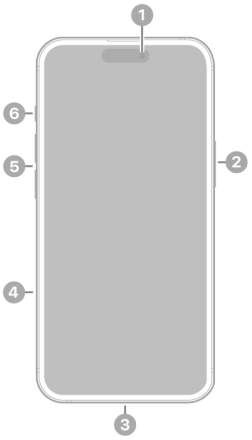
Get started with iPhone 15

- Turn on and set up iPhone
- Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID
- iPhone camera basics
- MagSafe chargers and battery packs for iPhone
- What's new in iOS 17

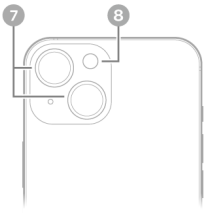
Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

iPhone 15 Plus

Learn the location of the cameras, buttons, and other essential hardware features on iPhone 15 Plus.



1. Front camera
2. Side button
3. USB-C connector
4. SIM tray (available on models purchased outside the U.S.)
5. Volume buttons
6. Ring/Silent switch



7. Rear cameras
8. Flash

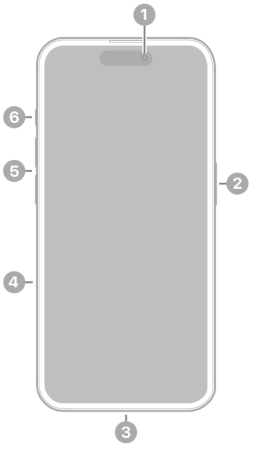
Get started with iPhone 15 Plus

- Turn on and set up iPhone
- Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID
- iPhone camera basics
- MagSafe chargers and battery packs for iPhone
- What's new in iOS 17

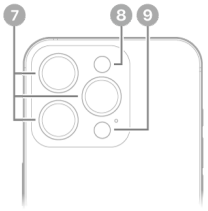
Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

iPhone 15 Pro

Learn the location of the cameras, buttons, and other essential hardware features on iPhone 15 Pro.



1. Front camera
2. Side button
3. USB-C connector
4. SIM tray (available on models purchased outside the U.S.)
5. Volume buttons
6. Action button



7. Rear cameras
8. Flash
9. LiDAR Scanner

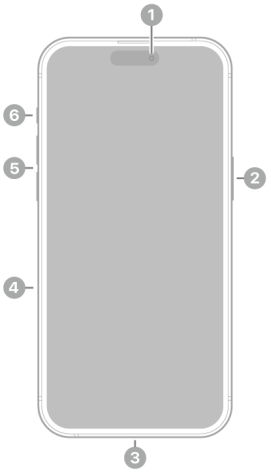
Get started with iPhone 15 Pro

- Turn on and set up iPhone
- Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID
- Customize the Action button on iPhone 15 Pro and iPhone 15 Pro Max
- iPhone camera basics
- MagSafe chargers and battery packs for iPhone
- What's new in iOS 17

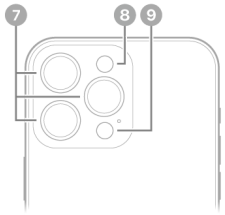
Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

iPhone 15 Pro Max

Learn the location of the cameras, buttons, and other essential hardware features on iPhone 15 Pro Max.



1. Front camera
2. Side button
3. USB-C connector
4. SIM tray (available on models purchased outside the U.S.)
5. Volume buttons
6. Action button



7. Rear cameras
8. Flash
9. LiDAR Scanner

Get started with iPhone 15 Pro Max

- Turn on and set up iPhone
- Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID
- Customize the Action button on iPhone 15 Pro and iPhone 15 Pro Max
- iPhone camera basics
- MagSafe chargers and battery packs for iPhone
- What's new in iOS 17

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Turn on and set up iPhone

You can turn on and set up your new iPhone with an internet connection. You can also set up iPhone by connecting it to your computer. If you have another iPhone, an iPad, or an Android device, you can transfer your data to your new iPhone.

Note: If your iPhone is deployed or managed by a company or other organization, see an administrator for setup instructions. For general information, see the Apple at Work website.

Prepare for setup

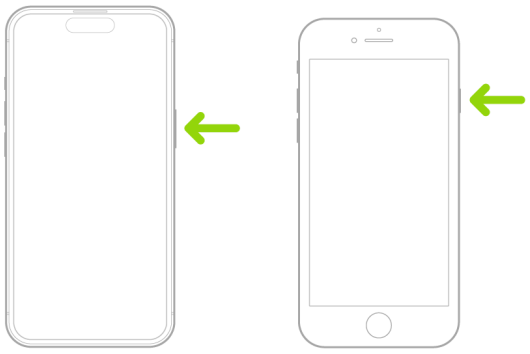
To make setup as smooth as possible, have the following items available:

- An internet connection through a Wi-Fi network (you may need the name and password of the network) or cellular data service through a carrier (not required for iPhone 14 and later models)
- Your Apple ID and password; if you don't have an Apple ID, you can create one during setup
- Your credit or debit card account information, if you want to add a card to Apple Pay during setup
- Your previous iPhone or a backup of your device, if you're transferring your data to your new device

  Tip: If you don't have sufficient storage space to back up your device, iCloud will grant you as much as you need to complete a temporary backup, free of charge, for up to three weeks from the purchase of your iPhone. On your previous device, go to Settings > General > Transfer or Reset [*device*]. Tap Get Started, then follow the onscreen instructions.
- Your Android device, if you're transferring your Android content

Turn on and set up your iPhone

1. Press and hold the side button until the Apple logo appears.



   If iPhone doesn't turn on, you might need to charge the battery. For more help, see the Apple Support article If your iPhone won't turn on or is frozen.

   Tip: If you're blind or have low vision, you can triple-click the side button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or triple-click the Home button (on other iPhone models) to turn on VoiceOver, the screen reader. You can also double-tap the screen with three fingers to turn on Zoom. See Get started with accessibility features on iPhone.

2. Do one of the following:

- *Use Quick Start:* If you have another iPhone or iPad with iOS 11, iPadOS 13, or later, you can use Quick Start to automatically set up your new device. Bring the two devices close together, then follow the onscreen instructions to securely copy many of your settings, preferences, and iCloud Keychain. You can then restore the rest of your data and content to your new device from your iCloud backup.

  Or, if both devices have iOS 12.4, iPadOS 13, or later, you can transfer all your data wirelessly from your previous device to your new one. Keep your devices near each other and plugged into power until the migration process is complete.

  You can also transfer your data using a wired connection between your devices. See the Apple Support article Use Quick Start to transfer data to a new iPhone or iPad.

- *Set Up Manually:* If you don't have another device, tap Set Up Manually, then follow the onscreen setup instructions.

Move from an Android device to iPhone

If you have an Android device, you can transfer your data with the Move to iOS app when you first set up your new iPhone.

Note: If you already completed setup and want to use Move to iOS, you must erase your iPhone and start over, or move your data manually. See the Apple Support article Move content manually from your Android device to your iPhone or iPad.

1. On your device with Android version 4.0 or later, see the Apple Support article Move from Android to iPhone or iPad and download the Move to iOS app.
2. On your iPhone, do the following:
   - Follow the setup assistant.
   - On the Transfer Your Apps & Data screen, tap From Android.
3. On the Android device, do the following:
   - Turn on Wi-Fi.
   - Open the Move to iOS app.
   - Follow the onscreen instructions.

⚠ **WARNING:** To avoid injury, read Important safety information for iPhone before using iPhone.

See also

Wake and unlock iPhone

Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable

Apple Support article: How to remove Activation Lock

Apple Support article: Help your child set up an iPhone or iPad

Helpful? Yes No

Select version:

iOS 17

Search this guide

Table of Contents

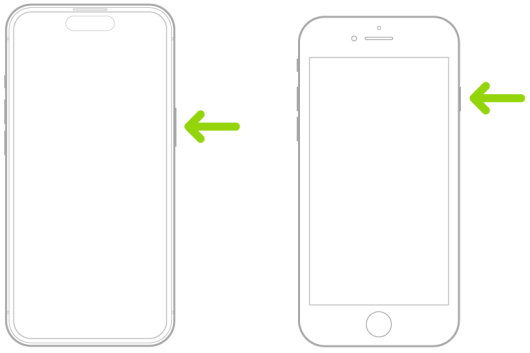
Wake and unlock iPhone

iPhone turns off the display to save power, locks for security, and goes to sleep when you're not using it. You can quickly wake and unlock iPhone when you want to use it again.

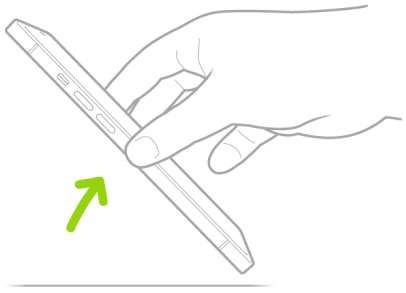
Wake iPhone

To wake iPhone, do one of the following:

- Press the side button.

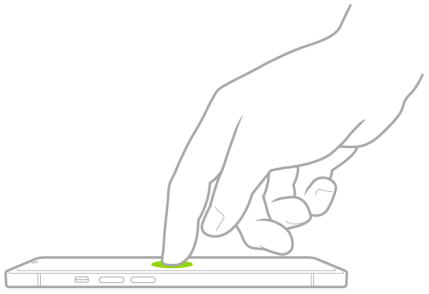


- Raise iPhone.



Note: To turn off Raise to Wake, go to Settings > Display & Brightness.

- Tap the screen (not available on iPhone SE).



Unlock iPhone with Face ID

If you have an iPhone with Face ID, but you didn't turn on Face ID during setup, see Set up Face ID.

1. Tap the screen or raise iPhone to wake it, then glance at your iPhone.

   The lock icon animates from closed to open to indicate that iPhone is unlocked.

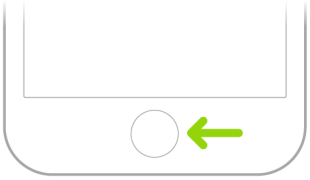
2. Swipe up from the bottom of the screen.

To lock iPhone again, press the side button. iPhone locks automatically if you don't touch the screen for a minute or so. However, if Attention Aware Features is turned on in Settings > Face ID & Passcode, iPhone won't dim or lock as long as it detects attention.

Unlock iPhone with Touch ID

If you have an iPhone with a Home button, but you didn't turn on Touch ID during setup, see Set up Touch ID on iPhone.

To unlock iPhone, press the Home button using the finger you registered with Touch ID.



To lock iPhone again, press the side button. iPhone locks automatically if you don't touch the screen for a minute or so.

Unlock iPhone with a passcode

If you didn't create a passcode when you set up iPhone, see Set a passcode on iPhone.

1. Swipe up from the bottom of the Lock Screen (on an iPhone with Face ID) or press the Home button (on other iPhone models).
2. Enter your passcode.

To lock iPhone again, press the side button. iPhone locks automatically if you don't touch the screen for a minute or so.

See also

Unlock iPhone with Apple Watch

Find settings on iPhone

Set up cellular service on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Set up cellular service on iPhone

Your iPhone needs a physical SIM or an eSIM to connect to a cellular network. (Not all options are available on all models or in all countries and regions. On iPhone 14 and later models purchased in the U.S., you can only use eSIM.) Contact your carrier to get a SIM and set up cellular service.

Set up an eSIM

Supported iPhone models can digitally store an eSIM provided by your carrier. If your carrier supports either eSIM Carrier Activation or eSIM Quick Transfer, you can turn on your iPhone and follow the instructions to activate your eSIM during setup.

If you already completed setup, you can do any of the following:

- *eSIM Carrier Activation:* Some carriers can assign a new eSIM directly to your iPhone; contact your carrier to initiate this process. When you receive the "Finish Setting Up Cellular" notification, tap it. Or go to Settings > Cellular, then tap Set Up Cellular or Add eSIM.
- *eSIM Quick Transfer:* Some carriers support transferring a phone number from your previous iPhone to your new iPhone without needing to contact them (requires iOS 16 or later on both devices).

  On your new iPhone, go to Settings > Cellular, tap Set Up Cellular or Add eSIM, then tap Transfer From Nearby iPhone or choose a phone number. On your previous iPhone, follow the instructions to confirm the transfer.

  Note: After your phone number is transferred to your new iPhone, it stops working on your previous iPhone.
- *Scan a QR Code provided by your carrier:* Go to Settings > Cellular, tap Set Up Cellular or Add eSIM, then tap Use QR Code. (You may need to tap Other Options first.) Position iPhone so the QR code appears in the frame, or enter the details manually. You may be asked to enter a confirmation code provided by your carrier.
- *Transfer from a different smartphone:* If your previous phone isn't an Apple iPhone, contact your carrier to transfer the phone number.
- *Activate service through a participating carrier's app:* Go to the App Store, download the carrier's app, then use the app to activate cellular service.

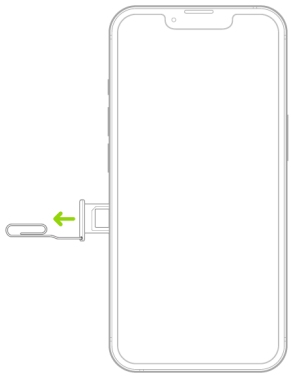
Note: If prompted, connect your iPhone to an available Wi-Fi or cellular network. eSIM setup requires an internet connection.

Install a physical SIM

You can get a nano-SIM card from a carrier or move it from your previous iPhone.

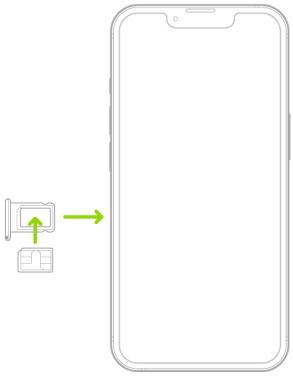
Note: Physical SIM isn't compatible with iPhone 14 and later models purchased in the U.S.

1. Insert a paper clip or SIM eject tool into the small hole of the SIM tray, then push in toward iPhone to eject the tray.



Note: The shape and orientation of the SIM tray depend on the iPhone model and your country or region.

2. Remove the tray from iPhone.
3. Place the SIM in the tray. The angled corner determines the correct orientation.



4. Insert the tray back into iPhone.
5. If you previously set up a PIN on the SIM, carefully enter the PIN when prompted.

   WARNING: Never try to guess a SIM PIN. An incorrect guess can permanently lock your SIM, and you won't be able to make phone calls or use cellular data through your carrier until you get a new SIM. See the Apple Support article Use a SIM PIN for your iPhone or iPad.

Convert a physical SIM to an eSIM

If your carrier supports it, you can convert a physical SIM to an eSIM on a supported iPhone model.

1. Go to Settings > Cellular, tap Set Up Cellular or Add eSIM, then choose the phone number with a physical SIM.
2. Tap Convert to eSIM, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Important: The availability of cellular capabilities depends on the wireless network, your iPhone model, and your location.

Consider applicable data, voice, and roaming charges when managing your cellular plans, especially when you travel with iPhone. See View or change cellular data settings on iPhone.

Some carriers let you unlock iPhone for use with another carrier (additional fees may apply). Contact your carrier for authorization and setup information. See the Apple Support article How to unlock your iPhone for use with a different carrier.

See also

Connect iPhone to a cellular network

Use Dual SIM on iPhone

Here are some of the many ways you can use Dual SIM:

- Use one number for business and another number for personal calls.
- Add a local data plan when you travel to another country or region.
- Have separate voice and data plans.

Note: To use two different carriers, your iPhone must be unlocked. See the Apple Support article How to unlock your iPhone for use with a different carrier.

You can set up Dual SIM with the following:

- One physical SIM and one eSIM; available on iPhone XR, iPhone XS, iPhone 11, iPhone 12, iPhone 13, iPhone SE (2nd generation), and iPhone 14 and later (purchased outside the U.S.)
- Two eSIMs; iPhone 13, iPhone SE (3rd generation), and later

Note: eSIM isn't available in certain countries or regions.

Set up Dual SIM

1. Go to Settings > Cellular, then make sure you have at least two lines (below SIMs). To add a line, see Set up cellular service on iPhone.
2. Turn on two lines—tap a line, then tap Turn On this Line.

   You can also change settings such as Cellular Plan Label, Wi-Fi Calling (if available from your carrier), Calls on Other Devices, or SIM PIN. The label appears in Phone, Messages, and Contacts.
3. Choose the default line for cellular data—tap Cellular Data, then tap a line. To use either line depending on coverage and availability, turn on Allow Cellular Data Switching.

   You may incur roaming charges if Data Roaming is on and you're outside the country or region covered by the carrier's network.
4. Choose the default line for voice calls—tap Default Voice Line, then tap a line.

When using Dual SIM, note the following:

- Wi-Fi Calling must be turned on for a line to enable that line to receive calls while the other line is in use for a call. If you receive a call on one line while the other is in use for a call, and no Wi-Fi connection is available, iPhone uses the cellular data of the line that is in use for the call to receive the other line's call. Charges may apply. The line that is in use for the call must be permitted for data use in your Cellular Data settings (either as the default line, or as the non-default line with Allow Cellular Data Switching turned on) to receive the other line's call.
- If you don't turn on Wi-Fi Calling for a line, any incoming phone calls on that line (including calls from emergency services) go directly to voicemail (if available from your carrier) when the other line is in use; you won't receive missed call notifications.

  If you set up conditional call forwarding (if available from your carrier) from one line to another when a line is busy or not in service, the calls don't go to voicemail; contact your carrier for setup information.
- If you make a phone call from another device, such as your Mac, by relaying it through your iPhone with Dual SIM, the call is made using your default voice line.

- If you start an SMS/MMS Messages conversation using one line, you can't switch the conversation to your other line; you need to delete the conversation and start a new conversation using the other line. Also, you may incur additional charges if you send SMS/MMS attachments on the line that's not selected for cellular data.
- Instant Hotspot and Personal Hotspot use the line selected for cellular data.

See also

Connect iPhone to a cellular network

View or change cellular data settings on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Connect iPhone to the internet

Connect your iPhone to the internet by using an available Wi-Fi or cellular network.

Connect iPhone to a Wi-Fi network

1. Go to Settings > Wi-Fi, then turn on Wi-Fi.
2. Tap one of the following:
   - *A network:* Enter the password, if required.
   - *Other:* To join a hidden network, enter the name of the network, security type, and password.

If appears at the top of the screen, iPhone is connected to a Wi-Fi network. (To verify this, open Safari to view a webpage.) iPhone reconnects when you return to the same location.

Join a Personal Hotspot

If an iPad (Wi-Fi + Cellular) or another iPhone is sharing a Personal Hotspot, you can use its cellular internet connection.

1. Go to Settings > Wi-Fi, then choose the name of the device sharing the Personal Hotspot.
2. If asked for a password on your iPhone, enter the password shown in Settings > Cellular > Personal Hotspot on the device sharing the Personal Hotspot.

Connect iPhone to a cellular network

Your iPhone automatically connects to your carrier's cellular data network if a Wi-Fi network isn't available. If iPhone doesn't connect, check the following:

1. Verify that your SIM is activated and unlocked. See Set up cellular service on iPhone.
2. Go to Settings > Cellular.
3. Verify that Cellular Data is turned on. If you're using Dual SIM, tap Cellular Data, then verify the selected line. (You can choose only one line for cellular data.)

When you need an internet connection, iPhone does the following, in order, until the connection is made:

- Tries to connect to the most recently used available Wi-Fi network
- Shows a list of Wi-Fi networks in range and connects to the one you choose
- Connects to your carrier's cellular data network

  On an iPhone that supports 5G, iPhone may use your 5G cellular data instead of Wi-Fi. If so, you see Using 5G Cellular For Internet below the Wi-Fi network's name. To switch back to Wi-Fi, tap next to the network name, then tap Use Wi-Fi for Internet. See the Apple Support article Use 5G with your iPhone.

Note: If a Wi-Fi connection to the internet isn't available, apps and services may transfer data over your carrier's cellular network, which may result in additional fees. Contact your carrier for information about your cellular data rates. To manage cellular data usage, see View or change cellular data settings on iPhone.

See also

Protect your web browsing with iCloud Private Relay on iPhone

Learn the meaning of the iPhone status icons

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Sign in to your iPhone with Apple ID

Your Apple ID is the account you use to access Apple services such as the App Store, the iTunes Store, Apple Books, Apple Music, FaceTime, iCloud, iMessage, and more.

Sign in with your Apple ID

If you didn't sign in during setup, do the following:

1. Go to Settings.
2. Tap Sign in to your iPhone.
3. Enter your Apple ID and password.

   If you don't have an Apple ID, you can create one.
4. If you protect your account with two-factor authentication, enter the six-digit verification code.

If you forgot your Apple ID or password, see the Recover your Apple ID website.

Change your Apple ID settings

1. Go to Settings > [*your name*].
2. Do any of the following:

   - Update your contact information
   - Change your password
   - Add or remove Account Recovery Contacts
   - Use iCloud
   - View and manage your subscriptions
   - Update your payment methods or billing address
   - Manage Family Sharing

See also

Keep your Apple ID secure on iPhone

Apple Support article: Manage and use your Apple ID

Apple ID account website

Use iCloud on iPhone

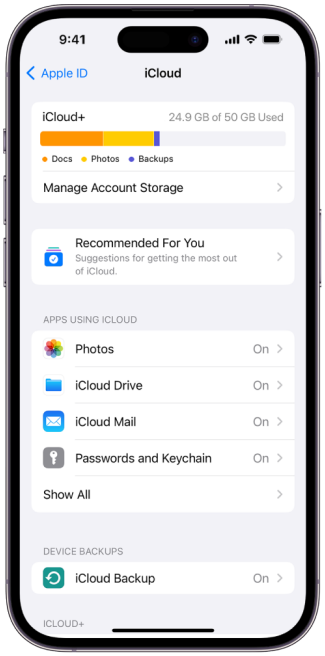
iCloud securely stores your photos, videos, documents, backups, and more—and keeps them updated across all your devices—automatically. With iCloud, you can also share photos, calendars, notes, folders, and files with friends and family. iCloud provides you with an email account and 5 GB of free storage for your data. For more storage and additional features, you can subscribe to iCloud+.

Note: Some iCloud features have minimum system requirements. The availability of iCloud and its features varies by country or region.

Change your iCloud settings

Sign in with your Apple ID, then do the following:

1. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud.



2. Do any of the following:

   - See your iCloud storage status.
   - Turn on the features you want to use, such as Photos, iCloud Drive, and iCloud Backup.

For information on how to customize iCloud features on your other devices, see Set up iCloud and change settings on all your devices in the iCloud User Guide.

Ways to use iCloud on iPhone

iCloud can keep your iPhone backed up automatically. See Back up iPhone.

You can also keep the following information stored in iCloud and kept up to date across your iPhone and other Apple devices:

- Photos and videos; see Use iCloud Photos on iPhone
- Files and documents; see Set up iCloud Drive on iPhone
- iCloud Mail
- Contacts, Calendars, Notes, and Reminders
- Data from compatible third-party apps and games
- Messages; see Set up Messages on iPhone
- Passwords and payment methods; see Make your passkeys and passwords available on all your devices with iPhone and iCloud Keychain
- Safari bookmarks and open tabs; see Bookmark a website in Safari on iPhone and Organize your tabs with Tab Groups in Safari on iPhone
- News, Stocks, and Weather settings
- Home and Health data
- Voice memos
- Map favorites

You can also do the following:

- Share your photos and videos. See Create shared albums in Photos on iPhone and Set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library in Photos on iPhone.
- Share folders and documents with iCloud Drive. See Share files and folders in iCloud Drive on iPhone.
- Use Find My to locate a missing device or share locations with friends and family. See Locate a device in Find My on iPhone and Locate a friend in Find My on iPhone.

For additional storage and access to iCloud Private Relay, Hide My Email, and HomeKit Secure Video support, you can subscribe to iCloud+.

You can also access your iCloud data on iPad, Apple Watch, Mac, Apple TV, your Windows computer, and iCloud.com. To learn more about the available features and how they work across all your devices, see the iCloud User Guide.

See also

Set up mail, contacts, and calendar accounts on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Support › iPhone User Guide › Use iCloud on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

This manual was copied from Apple Support website
and compiled by www.iphone15manual.com

Subscribe to iCloud+ on iPhone

iCloud+ gives you everything iCloud offers plus premium features including iCloud Private Relay, Hide My Email, HomeKit Secure Video support, and all the storage you need for your photos, files, and more.

You can subscribe to iCloud+ or to Apple One, which includes iCloud+ and other Apple services. See the Apple Support article Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One.

Note: Some iCloud+ features have minimum system requirements. The availability of iCloud+ and its features varies by country or region.

What's included with iCloud+

When you subscribe to iCloud+, you can do the following on iPhone:

- Get 50 GB, 200 GB, or 2 TB of storage.
- Create unique, random email addresses that forward to your personal inbox with Hide My Email. See Use Hide My Email in Safari on iPhone and Use Hide My Email in Mail on iPhone.
- Browse the web in an even more secure and private way with iCloud Private Relay. See Protect your web browsing with iCloud Private Relay on iPhone.
- Set up home security cameras with HomeKit Secure Video so you can view your footage from anywhere while keeping it private and secure. See Set up security cameras in Home on iPhone.
- Use a custom email domain to personalize iCloud Mail. See Set up a custom email domain with iCloud Mail on iPhone.

To learn more about iCloud+ features and how they work across all your devices, see the iCloud User Guide.

Upgrade, change, or cancel your iCloud+ subscription

1. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud.
2. Tap Manage Account Storage, tap Change Storage Plan, select an option, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Note: If you cancel your iCloud+ subscription, you lose access to the additional iCloud storage and iCloud+ features.

Share iCloud+

You can use Family Sharing to share iCloud+ with up to five other family members. When your family members accept your invitation to share iCloud+, they have instant access to the additional storage and features.

Note: To stop sharing iCloud+ with a family group, you can cancel the subscription, leave the family group, or leave or turn off Family Sharing. See Add a member to a Family Sharing group on iPhone.

For information about combining your Apple subscriptions, see the Apple Support article Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One.

See also

Find settings on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

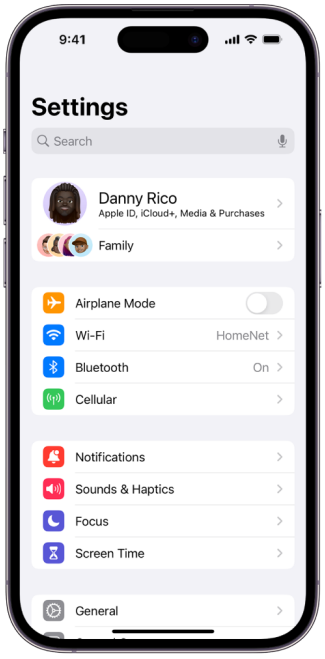
Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Find settings on iPhone

In the Settings app, you can search for iPhone settings you want to change, such as your passcode, notification sounds, and more.

1. Tap Settings on the Home Screen (or in the App Library).

2. Swipe down to reveal the search field, tap the search field, enter a term—"volume," for example—then tap a setting.



Tip: You can also search for settings from the Home Screen or Lock Screen.

See also

Change iPhone sounds and vibrations

Change the wallpaper on iPhone

Create a custom iPhone Lock Screen

Search with Spotlight on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Set up mail, contacts, and calendar accounts on iPhone

In addition to the apps that come with iPhone and that you use with iCloud, iPhone works with Microsoft Exchange and many of the most popular internet-based mail, contacts, and calendar services. You can set up accounts for these services.

Set up a mail account

1. Go to Settings > Mail > Accounts > Add Account.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Tap a service—for example, iCloud or Microsoft Exchange—then enter your account information.
   - Tap Other, tap Add Mail Account, then enter your account information.

See Add and remove email accounts on iPhone.

Set up a contacts account

1. Go to Settings > Contacts > Accounts > Add Account.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Tap a service—for example, iCloud or Microsoft Exchange—then enter your account information.
   - Tap Other, tap Add LDAP Account or Add CardDAV Account (if your organization supports it), then enter the server and account information.

See Use other contact accounts on iPhone.

Set up a calendar account

1. Go to Settings > Calendar > Accounts > Add Account.
2. Do one of the following:
   - *Choose a service:* Tap a service—for example, iCloud or Microsoft Exchange—then enter your account information.
   - *Add a calendar account:* Tap Other, tap Add CalDAV Account, then enter your server and account information.
   - *Subscribe to iCal (.ics) calendars:* Tap Other, tap Add Subscribed Calendar, then enter the URL of the .ics file to subscribe to; or import an .ics file from Mail.

See Set up multiple calendars on iPhone.

For information about setting up a Microsoft Exchange account in a corporate environment, see the Apple Support article Set up Exchange ActiveSync on your iPhone or iPad.

If you turn on iCloud Keychain on your iPhone, your accounts stay up to date on all your devices that have iCloud Keychain turned on. See Use to iCloud Keychain to keep passwords, accounts, and more up to date with iCloud in the iCloud User Guide.

See also

Use iCloud on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Learn the meaning of the iPhone status icons

The icons in the status bar at the top of the screen provide information about iPhone. On an iPhone with Face ID, there are additional status icons at the top of Control Center.

Note: If you turn on a Focus, its icon appears in the status bar.

Status icon	What it means
	Wi-Fi. iPhone is connected to the internet over a Wi-Fi network. See Connect iPhone to a Wi-Fi network.
	Cell signal. The number of bars indicates the signal strength of your cellular service. If there's no signal, "No Service" appears.
	Dual cell signals. On models with Dual SIM, the upper row of bars indicates the signal strength of the line you use for cellular data. The lower row of bars indicates the signal strength of your other line. If there's no signal, "No Service" appears. To see the status icons with their corresponding cellular plan labels and carrier names, open Control Center.
	Airplane mode. Airplane mode is on—you can't make phone calls, and other wireless functions may be disabled. See Choose iPhone settings for travel.
	5G. Your carrier's 5G network is available, and supported models can connect to the internet over that network (not available in all countries or regions). See the Apple Support article Use 5G with your iPhone.
	5G UC. Your carrier's 5G UC network is available, which can include your carrier's higher frequency version of 5G. Supported models can connect to the internet over that network (not available in all countries or regions). See the Apple Support article Use 5G with your iPhone.
	5G+. Your carrier's 5G+ network is available, which can include your carrier's higher frequency version of 5G. Supported models can connect to the internet over that network (not available in all countries or regions). See the Apple Support article Use 5G with your iPhone.
	5G UW. Your carrier's 5G UW network is available, which can include your carrier's higher frequency version of 5G. Supported models can connect to the internet over that network (not available in all countries or regions). See the Apple Support article Use 5G with your iPhone.
	5G E. Your carrier's 5G E network is available, and iPhone can connect to the internet over that network (not available in all countries or regions). See View or change cellular data settings on iPhone.
	LTE. Your carrier's LTE network is available, and iPhone can connect to the internet over that network (not available in all countries or regions). See View or change cellular data settings on iPhone.
	UMTS. Your carrier's 4G UMTS (GSM) or LTE network (depending on the carrier) is available, and iPhone can connect to the internet over that network (not available in all countries or regions). See View or change cellular data settings on iPhone.
	UMTS/EV-DO. Your carrier's 3G UMTS (GSM) or EV-DO (CDMA) network is available, and iPhone can connect to the internet over that network. See View or change cellular data settings on iPhone.
	EDGE. Your carrier's EDGE (GSM) network is available, and iPhone can connect to the internet over that network. See View or change cellular data settings on iPhone.
	GPRS/1xRTT. Your carrier's GPRS (GSM) or 1xRTT (CDMA) network is available, and iPhone can connect to the internet over that network. See View or change cellular data settings on iPhone.
	SOS only. Full service from your cellular provider isn't available, but emergency calls may be possible through other carrier networks (not available in all countries or regions). See Use SOS to contact emergency services on your iPhone.
	Emergency SOS via satellite. iPhone isn't connected to a cellular or Wi-Fi network, but you can contact emergency services via satellite. See Use Emergency SOS via satellite on your iPhone.
	Wi-Fi calling. iPhone is set up for Wi-Fi calling. iPhone also displays a carrier name next to the icon. See Make calls using Wi-Fi on iPhone.

Status icon	What it means
	Personal Hotspot connection. iPhone is connected to the internet through the Personal Hotspot of another device. See Join a Personal Hotspot.
	VPN. iPhone is connected to a network using VPN.
	Navigation. iPhone is providing turn-by-turn directions. See Get driving directions in Maps on iPhone.
	Personal Hotspot. iPhone is providing a Personal Hotspot. See Share your internet connection from iPhone.
	Phone call. iPhone is on a phone call. See Make a call on iPhone.
	FaceTime. iPhone is on a FaceTime call. See Make FaceTime calls on iPhone.
	Screen recording. iPhone is recording your screen. See Take a screenshot on iPhone.
	Camera in use. An app is using your camera. See iPhone camera basics.
	Microphone in use. An app is using your microphone. See Make a basic recording.
	Syncing. iPhone is syncing with your computer. See Sync supported content.
	Network activity. Shows that there's network activity. Some third-party apps may also use it to show an active process.
	Call forwarding. Call forwarding is set up. See Set up call forwarding and call waiting on iPhone.
	Lock. iPhone is locked. See Wake and unlock iPhone.
	Do Not Disturb. Do Not Disturb is turned on. See Turn on or schedule a Focus on iPhone.
	Portrait orientation lock. The iPhone screen is locked in portrait orientation. See Change or lock the screen orientation on iPhone.
	Location services. An app is using Location Services. See Control the location information you share on iPhone.
	Alarm. An alarm is set. See Set an alarm in Clock on iPhone.
	Headphones connected. iPhone is paired with Bluetooth® headphones that are turned on and within Bluetooth range. See Set up and listen to Bluetooth headphones.
	Battery. Shows the iPhone battery level. When the icon is yellow, Low Power Mode is on. See Monitor the iPhone battery level.
	Battery charging. Shows the iPhone battery is charging. See Charge the iPhone battery.
	Bluetooth battery. Shows the battery level of a paired Bluetooth device. See Set up and use Bluetooth accessories on iPhone.
	AirPlay. AirPlay is on. See Wirelessly stream videos and photos to Apple TV or a smart TV from iPhone.

Status icon	What it means
	Voice Control. Voice Control is turned on in Settings > Accessibility. See Use Voice Control to interact with iPhone.
	TTY. Software RTT / TTY or Hardware TTY is turned on. See Set up and use RTT and TTY on iPhone.
	CarPlay. iPhone is connected to CarPlay. See Connect iPhone to CarPlay.
	Siri Eyes Free. You can ask a question or make a request to Siri in your car. See Use Siri in your car.

See also

Connect iPhone to the internet

Show the iPhone battery percentage

Get information about your iPhone

View Live Activities in the Dynamic Island on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Charge the iPhone battery

iPhone has an internal, lithium-ion rechargeable battery, which currently provides the best performance for your device. Compared with traditional battery technology, lithium-ion batteries are lighter, charge faster, last longer, and have a higher power density for more battery life.

To understand how your battery works so you can get the most out of it, see the Apple Lithium-ion Batteries website.

About charging the battery

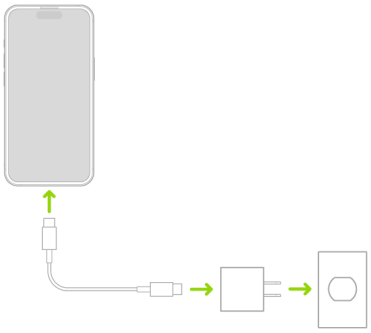
The battery icon in the top-right corner shows the battery level or charging status. When you're syncing or using iPhone, it may take longer to charge the battery.

If iPhone is very low on power, it may display an image of a nearly depleted battery, indicating that it needs to charge for up to 10 minutes before you can use it. If iPhone is extremely low on power when you begin to charge it, the display may be blank for up to 2 minutes before the low-battery image appears. See the Apple Support article If your iPhone won't charge.

Charge the battery

To charge iPhone, do any of the following:

- Connect iPhone to a power outlet using the charging cable (included) and an Apple USB power adapter or other compatible power adapter (sold separately). See Power adapters for iPhone.



- Place iPhone face up on MagSafe Charger or MagSafe Duo Charger (connected to Apple 20W USB-C power adapter or other compatible power adapter) or on a Qi-certified charger. (MagSafe Charger, MagSafe Duo Charger, power adapters, and Qi-certified chargers are sold separately.) See MagSafe chargers and battery packs for iPhone and Qi-certified wireless chargers for iPhone.

  Note: You can also use third-party power adapters and Qi-certified chargers that are compliant with applicable country regulations and international and regional safety standards. See "Charging" in Important safety information for iPhone.

- Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable.

  Make sure your computer is turned on—if iPhone is connected to a computer that's turned off, the battery may drain instead of charge. Look for ⚡ on the battery icon to make sure your iPhone is

charging.

Note: Don't try to charge your iPhone by connecting it to your keyboard, unless your keyboard has a high-power USB port.

Connecting iPhone to a power outlet or placing it on a wireless charger can start an iCloud backup or wireless computer syncing. See Back up iPhone and Sync supported content.

WARNING: If you suspect there may be liquid in the charging port of iPhone, don't plug the charging cable into it. For information about exposure to liquid, and other important safety information about the battery and charging iPhone, see Important safety information for iPhone.

Optimize iPhone battery charging

iPhone has a setting that helps slow the rate of your battery's aging by reducing the time it spends fully charged. This setting uses machine learning to understand your daily charging routine, then waits to finish charging past 80% until you need it.

1. Go to Settings > Battery > Battery Health & Charging.
2. Do one of the following:

   - *On iPhone 14 and earlier models:* Turn on Optimized Battery Charging.
   - *On iPhone 15 models:* Tap Charging Optimization, then choose Optimized Battery Charging.

If optimized charging doesn't start when expected, see the Apple Support article About Optimized Battery Charging on your iPhone.

Battery life and charge cycles vary with use and settings. To learn how to maximize your battery's performance and lifespan, see the Apple Support article iPhone Battery and Performance.

The iPhone battery should be serviced or recycled by Apple or an Apple Authorized Service Provider. See the Battery Service and Recycling website.

See also

Show the iPhone battery percentage

Check the iPhone battery health and usage

Charge iPhone with cleaner energy sources (U.S. only)

Use Low Power Mode to reduce power usage on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Charge iPhone with cleaner energy sources (U.S. only)

With Clean Energy Charging, iPhone uses a forecast of the carbon emissions in your local energy grid to charge during times of cleaner energy production. iPhone learns from your daily charging routine so it can reach full charge before you need to use it.

Turn on Clean Energy Charging

1. Go to Settings > Battery.
2. Tap Battery Health & Charging, then turn on Clean Energy Charging

See also

Charge the iPhone battery

Apple and the environment

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Show the iPhone battery percentage

You can view how much charge remains in your iPhone battery in the status bar. You can also add a widget to the Home Screen to monitor the battery levels of your iPhone and connected accessories (including AirPods and other devices).

See the iPhone battery percentage in the status bar

Go to Settings > Battery, then turn on Battery Percentage.

On an iPhone with Face ID, the battery percentage appears inside the battery symbol on the status bar.

Tip: On iPhone models with Face ID, you can also swipe down from the top-right corner to quickly view the battery percentage in Control Center.

Add a Batteries widget to your Lock Screen or Home Screen

See Add a widget to your Home Screen and Create a custom iPhone Lock Screen.

See also

Charge the iPhone battery

Check the iPhone battery health and usage

Use Low Power Mode to reduce power usage on iPhone

Apple Support article: iPhone Battery and Performance

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Check the iPhone battery health and usage

You can view information about your iPhone battery health and learn how your iPhone usage affects the battery level.

Review your iPhone battery health

Go to Settings > Battery, then tap Battery Health & Charging.

iPhone displays information about your battery's capacity, peak performance, and whether your battery needs to be serviced.

View your battery usage information

Go to Settings > Battery.

Information about your battery usage and activity appears for the last 24 hours and up to the last 10 days.

- *Insights and suggestions:* You might see insights about conditions or usage patterns that cause iPhone to consume energy. You might also see suggestions for lowering energy consumption. If a suggestion appears, you can tap it to go to the corresponding setting.
- *Last Charged:* Indicates how fully the battery was last charged and the time it was disconnected.
- *Battery Level graph (in Last 24 Hours):* Shows the battery level, charging intervals, and periods when iPhone was in Low Power Mode or the battery was critically low.
- *Battery Usage graph (in Last 10 Days):* Shows the percentage of battery used each day.
- *Activity graph:* Shows activity over time, split by whether the screen was on or off.
- *Screen On and Screen Off:* Shows total activity for the selected time interval, for when the screen was on and when it was off. The Last 10 Days view shows the average per day.
- *Battery Usage by App:* Shows the proportion of the battery used by each app in the selected time interval.
- *Activity by App:* Shows the amount of time each app was used in the selected time interval.

Note: To see battery information for a specific hour or day, tap that time interval in the graph. To deselect it, tap outside the graph.

Battery life and charge cycles vary with use and settings. To learn how to maximize your battery's performance and lifespan, see the Apple Support article iPhone Battery and Performance.

The iPhone battery should be serviced or recycled by Apple or an Apple Authorized Service Provider. See the Battery Service and Recycling website.

See also

Optimize iPhone battery charging

Use Low Power Mode to reduce power usage on iPhone

Use Low Power Mode to reduce power usage on iPhone

Low Power Mode reduces the amount of power that your iPhone uses when the battery gets low. It optimizes performance for essential tasks like making and receiving calls, sending and receiving email and messages, accessing the internet, and more. On an iPhone model with ProMotion display technology, Low Power Mode limits the display refresh rate to 60 frames per second.

Note: Your iPhone might perform some tasks more slowly when in Low Power Mode.

If iPhone switches to Low Power Mode automatically, it turns off Low Power Mode after charging to 80%.

Turn Low Power Mode on or off

Low Power Mode automatically turns on when the battery level is low and automatically turns off when the battery is charged to a certain level.

To manually turn Low Power Mode on or off, use any of the following methods:

- *In Settings:* Go to Settings > Battery.
- *In Control Center:* Open Control Center, then tap .

  (If you don't see , add it to Control Center—go to Settings > Control Center, then tap next to Low Power Mode.)

See also

Charge the iPhone battery

Apple Support article: Use Low Power Mode to save battery life on your iPhone or iPad

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Read and bookmark the iPhone User Guide

When you view the iPhone User Guide in the Safari app, you can change the language and country or region, add a bookmark, or save it as a shortcut on the Home Screen. You can also view the guide in the Tips app.

View and bookmark the user guide in Safari

1. Open the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Go to https://support.apple.com/guide/iphone.
3. To view the user guide in a different language, scroll down to the bottom of the page, tap the country or region link (United States, for example), then choose a country or region.
4. For quick access, tap, then choose any of the following:
   - *Add to Home Screen:* The shortcut appears as a new icon on the Home Screen.
   - *Add Bookmark:* The bookmark appears when you tap in Safari.

View the user guide in Tips

1. Open the Tips app on your iPhone.
2. Tap until you see the Tips collections, scroll down to User Guides, then tap iPhone.

See also

Save webpages to read later in Safari on iPhone

Move apps and widgets on the Home Screen on iPhone

Get tips on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Learn basic gestures to interact with iPhone

Control iPhone and its apps using a few simple gestures—tap, touch and hold, swipe, scroll, and zoom.

Symbol	Gesture
	Tap. Briefly touch an item on the screen with one finger. For example, to open an app, tap its icon on the Home Screen.
	Touch and hold. Press an item on the screen until something happens. For example, if you touch and hold the wallpaper of the Home Screen, the app icons begin to jiggle.
	Swipe. Move one finger across the screen quickly. For example, swipe left on the Home Screen to see more apps.
	Scroll. Move one finger across the screen without lifting. For example, in Photos, you can drag a list up or down to see more. Swipe to scroll quickly; touch the screen to stop scrolling.
	Zoom. Place two fingers on the screen near each other. Spread them apart to zoom in, or move them toward each other to zoom out. You can also double-tap a photo or webpage to zoom in, and double-tap again to zoom out. In Maps, double-tap and hold, then drag up to zoom in or drag down to zoom out.

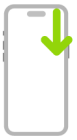
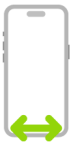
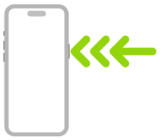
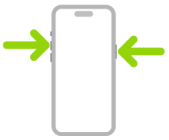
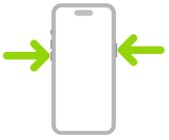
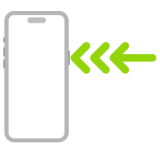
See also

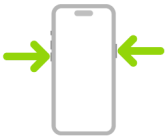
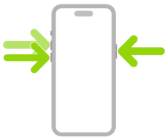
Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID

Here's a handy reference to the gestures you use for interacting with an iPhone that has Face ID.

Gesture	Description
	Go Home. Swipe up from the bottom edge of the screen to return to the Home Screen at any time. See Open apps on iPhone.
	**Quickly access controls.** Swipe down from the top-right corner to open Control Center; touch and hold a control to reveal more options. To add or remove controls, go to Settings > Control Center. See Use and customize Control Center on iPhone.
	Open the App Switcher. Swipe up from the bottom edge, pause in the center of the screen, then lift your finger. To browse the open apps, swipe right, then tap the app you want to use. See Switch between open apps on iPhone.
	**Switch between open apps.** Swipe right or left along the bottom edge of the screen to quickly switch between open apps. See Switch between open apps on iPhone.
	Use Siri. Just say, “Siri” or “Hey Siri.” Or hold down the side button while you ask a question or make a request, then release the button. See Use Siri on iPhone.
	Use Apple Pay. Double-click the side button to display your default credit card, then glance at iPhone to authenticate with Face ID. See Use Apple Pay for contactless payments on iPhone.
	**Use Accessibility Shortcut.** Triple-click the side button. See Quickly open features with Accessibility Shortcut on iPhone.
	**Take a screenshot.** Simultaneously press and quickly release the side button and volume up button. See Take a screenshot with an iPhone that has Face ID.
	**Use Emergency SOS (all countries or regions except India).** Simultaneously press and hold the side button and either volume button until the sliders appear and the countdown on Emergency SOS ends, then release the buttons. See Quickly call emergency services (all countries or regions except India).
	**Use Emergency SOS (in India).** Quickly press the side button 3 times until the sliders appear and the countdown on Emergency SOS ends. If you’ve turned on Accessibility Shortcut, simultaneously press and hold the side button and either volume button until the sliders appear and the countdown on Emergency SOS ends, then release the buttons. See Quickly call emergency services (India).

Gesture	Description
	**Turn off.** Simultaneously press and hold the side button and either volume button until the sliders appear, then drag the top slider to power off. Or go to Settings > General > Shut Down. See Turn off iPhone.
	**Force restart.** Press and release the volume up button, press and release the volume down button, then press and hold the side button until the Apple logo appears. See Force restart iPhone.

See also

Learn basic gestures to interact with iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Learn basic gestures

Next
Adjust the volume

Support > iPhone User Guide > Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Adjust the volume on iPhone

When you're on the phone or listening to songs, movies, or other media on iPhone, you can use the buttons on the side of your device to adjust the audio volume. Otherwise, the buttons control the volume for the ringer, alerts, and other sound effects. You can also use Siri to turn the volume up or down.

Siri: Say something like: "Turn up the volume" or "Turn down the volume." Learn how to use Siri.

WARNING: For information about avoiding hearing loss, see Important safety information for iPhone.

Lock the ringer and alert volumes in Settings

1. Go to Settings.
2. Tap Sounds & Haptics.
3. Turn off Change with Buttons.

Adjust the volume in Control Center

When iPhone is locked or when you're using an app, you can adjust the volume in Control Center.

Open Control Center, then drag.

Reduce loud headphone sounds

1. Go to Settings > Sounds & Haptics > Headphone Safety.
2. Turn on Reduce Loud Sounds, then drag the slider to specify the maximum volume.

Note: If you set up Screen Time for a family member, you can prevent them from changing the Reduce Loud Sounds level. Go to Settings > Screen Time > Content & Privacy Restrictions > Reduce Loud Sounds, turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions, tap Reduce Loud Sounds, then select Don't Allow.

Temporarily silence calls, alerts, and notifications

Open Control Center, tap Focus, then tap Do Not Disturb. (See Set Do Not Disturb.)

Put iPhone in Silent mode

To put iPhone in Silent mode, set the Ring/Silent switch (depending on your model) so that the switch shows orange. To turn off Silent mode, set the switch back.

On iPhone 15 Pro and iPhone 15 Pro Max, you can turn on Silent mode by going to Settings > Sounds & Haptics, then turning on Silent mode.

Note: iPhone 15 Pro and iPhone 15 Pro Max have an Action button instead of a Ring/Silent switch. The Action button can be used to turn Silent mode on or off, in addition to other functions. See Customize the Action button on iPhone 15 Pro and iPhone 15 Pro Max.

When Silent mode is off, iPhone plays all sounds. When Silent mode is on, iPhone doesn't ring or play alerts or other sound effects (but iPhone may still vibrate).

Important: Clock alarms, audio apps such as Music, and many games play sounds through the built-in speaker, even when Silent mode is on. In some countries or regions, the sound effects for Camera, Voice Memos, and Emergency Alerts are played, even when the Ring/Silent switch is set to silent.

On iPhone, there are several ways to protect your hearing from loud volume while listening to headphone audio. See Use audiogram data in Health on iPhone.

See also

Change iPhone sounds and vibrations

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID

Next
Open apps

Support > iPhone User Guide > Adjust the volume on iPhone

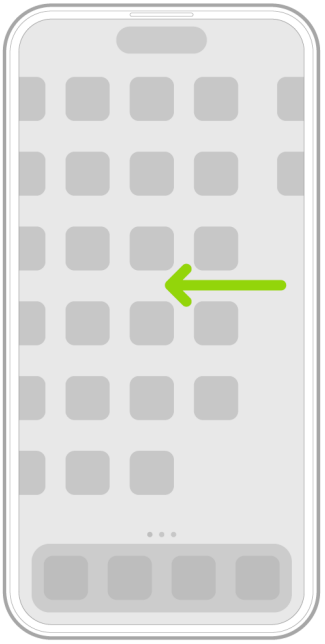
Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Open apps on iPhone

You can quickly open apps from your Home Screen pages or your App Library.

1. To go to the Home Screen, swipe up from the bottom edge of the screen (on an iPhone with Face ID) or press the Home button (on an iPhone with a Home button).

2. Swipe left to browse apps on other Home Screen pages.



3. Swipe left past all your Home Screen pages to see App Library, where your apps are organized by category.
4. To open an app, tap its icon.
5. To return to App Library, swipe up from the bottom edge of the screen (on an iPhone with Face ID) or press the Home button (on an iPhone with a Home button).

See also

Find apps in App Library

Quit and reopen an app

Move and organize apps on your Home Screen

Remove apps from iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Adjust the volume

Next
Find your apps in App Library

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Find your apps in App Library on iPhone

App Library shows your apps organized into categories, such as Social, Entertainment, and Productivity & Finance. The apps you use most are near the top of the screen and at the top level of their categories, so you can easily locate and open them.

Note: The apps in App Library are organized in categories intelligently, based on how you use your apps. You can add apps in App Library to the Home Screen, but you can't move them to another category in App Library.

Find and open an app in App Library

1. Go to the Home Screen, then swipe left past all your Home Screen pages to get to App Library.
2. Tap the search field at the top of the screen, then enter the name of the app you're looking for. Or scroll up and down to browse the alphabetical list.
3. To open an app, tap it.

If a category has a few small app icons, you can tap them to expand the category and see all the apps in it.

Hide and show Home Screen pages

Because you can find all of your apps in App Library, you might not need as many Home Screen pages for apps. You can hide some Home Screen pages, which brings App Library closer to your first Home Screen page. (When you want to see the hidden pages again, you can show them.)

1. Touch and hold the Home Screen until the apps begin to jiggle.
2. Tap the dots at the bottom of the screen.

Thumbnail images of your Home Screen pages appear with checkmarks below them.

3. To hide pages, tap to remove the checkmarks.

   To show hidden pages, tap to add the checkmarks.

4. Tap Done (on an iPhone with Face ID) or press the Home button (on other iPhone models).

With the extra Home Screen pages hidden, you can go from the first page of the Home Screen to App Library (and back) with only one or two swipes.

Note: When Home Screen pages are hidden, new apps you download from the App Store may be added to App Library instead of the Home Screen.

Reorder Home Screen pages

If you have multiple Home Screen pages, you change their order. For example, you can gather together your favorite apps on one Home Screen page, and then make that your first Home Screen page.

1. Touch and hold the Home Screen wallpaper until the apps begin to jiggle.
2. Tap the dots at the bottom of the screen.

   Thumbnail images of your Home Screen pages appear with checkmarks below them.

3. To move each Home Screen page, touch and hold it, then drag it to a new position.
4. Tap Done twice (on an iPhone with Face ID) or press the Home button twice (on other iPhone models).

Change where new apps get downloaded

When you download new apps from the App Store, you can add them to the Home Screen and App Library, or to App Library only.

1. Go to Settings > Home Screen.
2. Choose whether to add new apps to both your Home Screen and App Library, or to App Library only.

Note: To allow app notification badges to appear on apps in App Library, turn on Show in App Library.

Move an app from App Library to the Home Screen

You can add an app in App Library to the Home Screen, unless it's already there.

Touch and hold the app, then tap Add to Home Screen (available only if the app isn't already on the Home Screen).

The app appears on the Home Screen and in App Library.

See also

Open apps on iPhone

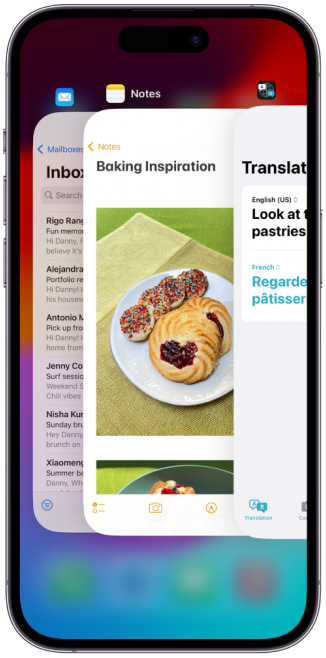
Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Open apps

Next
Switch between open apps

Switch between open apps on iPhone

Open the App Switcher to quickly switch from one open app to another on your iPhone. When you switch back, you can pick up right where you left off.



Use the App Switcher

1. To see all your open apps in the App Switcher, do one of the following:

   - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Swipe up from the bottom of the screen, then pause in the center of the screen.

   - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Double-click the Home button.

2. To browse the open apps, swipe right, then tap the app you want to use.

Switch between open apps

To quickly switch between open apps on an iPhone with Face ID, swipe right or left along the bottom edge of the screen.

See also

Open apps on iPhone

Quit and reopen an app on iPhone

If an app isn't responding, you can quit it and then reopen it to try and resolve the issue. (Typically, there's no reason to quit an app; quitting it doesn't save battery power, for example.)

1. To quit the app, open the App Switcher, swipe right to find the app, then swipe up on the app.
2. To reopen the app, go to the Home Screen (or App Library), then tap the app.

If quitting and reopening the app doesn't resolve the issue, try restarting iPhone.

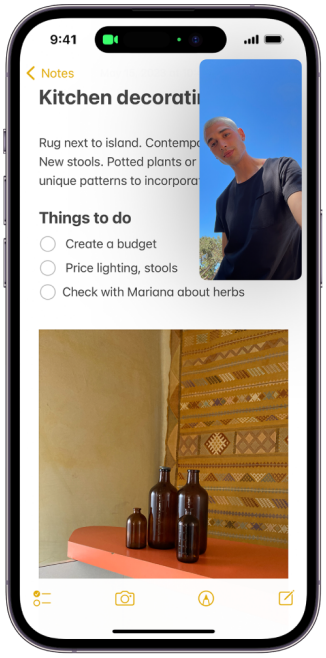
See also

Turn iPhone on or off

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Multitask with Picture in Picture on iPhone

With Picture in Picture, you can watch a video or use FaceTime while you use other apps.



While watching a video, tap .

The video window scales down to a corner of your screen so you can see the Home Screen and open other apps. With the video window showing, you can do any of the following:

- *Resize the video window:* To make the small video window larger, pinch open. To shrink it again, pinch closed.
- *Show and hide controls:* Tap the video window.
- *Move the video window:* Drag it to a different corner of the screen.
- *Hide the video window:* Drag it off the left or right edge of the screen.
- *Close the video window:* Tap .
- *Return to a full video screen:* Tap in the small video window.

See also

Use other apps during a FaceTime call

Access features from the iPhone Lock Screen

The Lock Screen appears when you turn on or wake iPhone. From the Lock Screen, you can see notifications, open Camera and Control Center, get information from your favorite apps at a glance, control media playback, and more.

You can personalize your Lock Screen by choosing a wallpaper, showcasing a favorite photo, changing the font of the time, adding widgets, and more. See Create a custom iPhone Lock Screen.

Access features and information from the Lock Screen

You can quickly access useful features and information from the Lock Screen, even while iPhone is locked. From the Lock Screen, do any of the following:

- *Open Camera:* Swipe left. On supported models, you can touch and hold, then lift your finger. (See iPhone camera basics.)
- *Open Control Center:* Swipe down from the top-right corner (on an iPhone with Face ID) or swipe up from the bottom edge of the screen (on other iPhone models). (See Use and customize Control Center on iPhone.)
- *See earlier notifications:* Swipe up from the center. (See View and respond to notifications on iPhone.)
- *View more widgets:* Swipe right. (See Add, edit, and remove widgets on iPhone.) You can interact with widgets on the Lock Screen and the Home Screen to perform tasks—for example, tap an item in the Reminders widget to check it off, or tap the Play button in the Podcasts widget to play an episode.
- *Control media playback:* Use the playback controls (Now Playing) on the Lock Screen to play, pause, rewind, or fast-forward media playing on your iPhone. (See View and control Live Activities on the Lock Screen.)

To choose what you can access from the Lock Screen, see Control access to information on the iPhone Lock Screen.

Show notification previews on the Lock Screen

1. Go to Settings > Notifications.
2. Tap Show Previews, then tap Always.
3. Choose how you want notifications displayed on the Lock Screen:
   - *View just the number of notifications:* Select Count.
   - *View the notifications grouped into stacks by app:* Select Stack.
   - *View the notifications in a list:* Select List.

   You can pinch the notifications on the Lock Screen to change the layout.

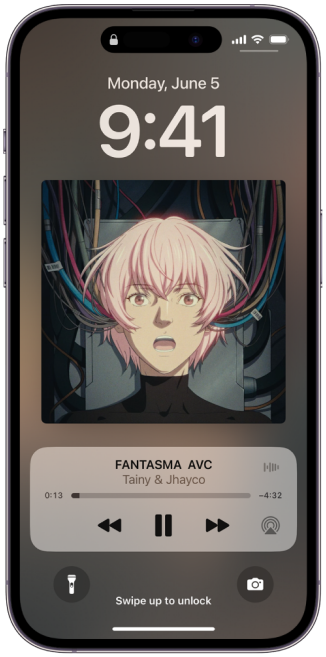
Notification previews can include text from Messages, lines from Mail messages, and details about Calendar invitations. See View and respond to notifications on iPhone.

View and control Live Activities on the Lock Screen

You can view Live Activities on your Lock Screen—including live sports updates, order updates, and media playing—so you can follow along right on your Lock Screen, even when you can't watch the entire event.

When you play music, a movie, or other media on your iPhone, you can use the playback controls (Now Playing) on your Lock Screen to play, pause, rewind, and fast-forward.

You can also control media playback on a remote device (such as your Apple TV or HomePod) from your iPhone Lock Screen.



See also

Control access to information on the iPhone Lock Screen

Helpful? Yes No

View Live Activities in the Dynamic Island on iPhone

On iPhone 14 Pro and later, you can check alerts and current activity in progress—such as a Voice Memo recording in progress, an AirDrop connection, and directions from Maps—in the Dynamic Island at the top of the Home Screen or at the top of the active app. The Dynamic Island appears at the top of the screen whenever your iPhone is unlocked.

You can do any of the following in the Dynamic Island:

- *Expand the activity to see more detail:* Touch and hold the activity or swipe from the center to the right or left side.
- *Collapse the activity to make the Dynamic Island smaller:* Swipe from the right or left side toward the center.
- *Switch between two activities:* Swipe from one side or the other.

See also

View and control Live Activities on the Lock Screen

Perform quick actions on iPhone

On the Home Screen, in App Library, in Control Center, and in apps, you can use quick actions menus, see previews, and more.

Perform quick actions from the Home Screen and App Library

On the Home Screen and in App Library, touch and hold apps to open quick actions menus.

For example:

- Touch and hold Camera, then choose Take Selfie.
- Touch and hold Maps, then choose Send My Location.
- Touch and hold Notes, then choose New Note.

Note: If you touch and hold an app for too long before choosing a quick action, all of the apps begin to jiggle. Tap Done (on an iPhone with Face ID) or press the Home button (on other iPhone models), then try again.

See previews and other quick actions menus

- In Photos, touch and hold an image to preview it and see a list of options.
- In Mail, touch and hold a message in a mailbox to preview the message contents and see a list of options.
- Open Control Center, then touch and hold an item like Camera or the brightness control to see options.
- On the Lock Screen, touch and hold a notification to respond to it.

- When typing, touch and hold the Space bar with one finger to turn the onscreen keyboard into a trackpad.

See also

Use and customize Control Center on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
View Live Activities in the Dynamic Island

Next
Search on iPhone

Support > iPhone User Guide > Perform quick actions on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents ⊕

Search with Spotlight on iPhone

On iPhone, you can search for apps and contacts, content in apps like Mail and Messages, and even text in your photos using Live Text. You can check stock and currency information, and find and open webpages, apps, and images in your photo library, across your system, and on the web.

When you search for an app, app shortcuts for your most likely next action appear within the Top Hit. (For example, a shortcut to the Favorites album appears when you search for Photos.)

In Settings > Siri & Search, you can choose which apps you want to include in search results. Search offers suggestions based on your app usage, and updates results as you type.

Choose which apps to include in Search

1. Go to Settings > Siri & Search.
2. Scroll down, tap an app, then turn Show App in Search on or off.

Search with iPhone

1. Tap Search at the bottom of the Home Screen (on models with Face ID) or swipe down on the Home Screen or the Lock Screen.
2. Enter what you're looking for in the search field.
3. Do any of the following:

   - *Initiate your search:* Tap Search or Go.
   - *Open a suggested app:* Tap the app.
   - *Take quick action:* Start a timer, turn on a Focus, find the name of a song with Shazam, run any shortcut, and more. Search for an app's name to see shortcuts available for the app, or create your own using the Shortcuts app.
   - *Check a suggested website:* Tap it.
   - *Get more information about a search suggestion:* Tap it, then tap one of the results to open it.
   - *Start a new search:* Tap ⊗ in the search field.

Turn off Location-Based Suggestions

1. Go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Location Services.
2. Tap System Services, then turn off Suggestions & Search.

Search in apps

Many apps include a search field or a search button so you can find something within the app. For example, in the Maps app, you can search for a specific location.

1. In an app, tap the search field or .

   If you don't see a search field or button, swipe down from the top.

2. Type your search, then tap Search.

Add a dictionary

On iPhone, you can add dictionaries, which can be used in searches.

1. Go to Settings > General > Dictionary.
2. Select a dictionary.

See also

Search for places in Maps on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Perform quick actions

Next
Get information about your iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Get information about your iPhone

View overall storage availability and storage used per app

Go to Settings > General > iPhone Storage.

See the Apple Support articles How to check the storage on your iPhone and iPad and Manage your iCloud storage.

See battery usage

Go to Settings > Battery to see the elapsed time since iPhone was charged as well as battery usage by app.

You can also display battery level as a percentage, turn Low Power Mode on or off, and check your battery's health.

See Monitor the iPhone battery level.

View call time and cellular usage

Go to Settings > Cellular. See View or change cellular data settings on iPhone.

See more information about iPhone

Go to Settings > General > About. The items you can view include:

- Name
- iOS software version
- Model name
- Part and model numbers. To the right of Model, the part number appears. To see the model number, tap the part number.
- Serial number
- Number of songs, videos, photos, and apps
- Capacity and available storage space
- Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® addresses
- Cellular network
- Carrier settings. To the right of Carrier, the carrier settings version number appears. To see additional carrier-specific information, tap the version number. Contact your carrier for more details.
- IMEI (International Mobile Equipment Identity)
- ICCID (Integrated Circuit Card Identifier, or Smart Card) for GSM networks

- MEID (Mobile Equipment Identifier) for CDMA networks
- Modem firmware

To copy the serial number and other identifiers, touch and hold the identifier until Copy appears.

To see Legal & Regulatory information (including legal notices and license, warranty, and RF exposure information) and regulatory marks, go to Settings > General > Legal & Regulatory.

On supported models, you can also find the IMEI on the SIM card tray and the model number in the SIM tray opening.

View or turn off diagnostic information

Go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Analytics & Improvements.

To help Apple improve products and services, iPhone sends diagnostic and usage data. This data doesn't personally identify you, but may include location information.

See also

Turn on and set up iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Search on iPhone

Next
View or change cellular data settings

Support > iPhone User Guide > Get information about your iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

View or change cellular data settings on iPhone

You can turn cellular data and roaming on or off, set which apps and services use cellular data, see cellular data usage, and set other cellular data options.

Note: For help with cellular network services, voicemail, and billing, contact your wireless service provider.

If iPhone is connected to the internet using the cellular data network, an icon identifying the cellular network appears in the status bar.

5G, LTE, 4G, and 3G service on GSM cellular networks support simultaneous voice and data communications. For all other cellular connections, you can't use internet services while you're talking on the phone unless iPhone also has a Wi-Fi connection to the internet. Depending on your network connection, you may not be able to receive calls while iPhone transfers data over the cellular network—when downloading a webpage, for example.

- *GSM networks:* On an EDGE or GPRS connection, incoming calls may go directly to voicemail during data transfers. For incoming calls that you answer, data transfers are paused.
- *CDMA networks:* On EV-DO connections, data transfers are paused when you answer incoming calls. On 1xRTT connections, incoming calls may go directly to voicemail during data transfers. For incoming calls that you answer, data transfers are paused.

Data transfer resumes when you end the call.

If Cellular Data is off, all data services—including email, web browsing, and push notifications—use Wi-Fi only. If Cellular Data is on, carrier charges may apply. For example, using certain features and services that transfer data, such as Siri and Messages, could result in charges to your data plan.

Choose cellular data options for data usage, performance, battery life, and more

To turn Cellular Data on or off, go to Settings > Cellular.

To set options when Cellular Data is on, go to Settings > Cellular > Cellular Data Options, then do any of the following:

- *Reduce cellular usage:* Turn on Low Data Mode, or tap Data Mode, then choose Low Data Mode. This mode pauses automatic updates and background tasks when iPhone isn't connected to Wi-Fi.
- *Turn Data Roaming on or off:* Data Roaming permits internet access over a cellular data network when you're in a region not covered by your carrier's network. When you're traveling, you can turn off Data Roaming to avoid roaming charges.

Depending on your iPhone model, carrier, and region, the following options may be available:

- *Turn Voice Roaming on or off:* (CDMA) Turn Voice Roaming off to avoid charges from using other carrier's networks. When your carrier's network isn't available, iPhone won't have cellular (data or voice) service.
- *Enable or disable 4G/LTE:* Using 4G or LTE loads internet data faster in some cases but may decrease battery performance. There may be options for turning off 4G/LTE or for selecting Voice & Data (VoLTE) or Data Only.

On iPhone 12 models and later with a 5G data plan, you can do the following:

- *Enable Smart Data mode to optimize battery life:* Tap Voice & Data, then choose 5G Auto. In this mode, your iPhone automatically switches to LTE when 5G speeds don't provide noticeably better performance.
- *Use higher-quality video and FaceTime HD on 5G networks:* Tap Data Mode, then choose Allow More Data on 5G.

Set up a Personal Hotspot to begin sharing the cellular internet connection from iPhone

1. Go to Settings > Cellular, then turn on Cellular Data.
2. Tap Set up Personal Hotspot, then follow the instructions in Share your internet connection from iPhone.

Set cellular data use for apps and services

Go to Settings > Cellular, then turn Cellular Data on or off for any app (such as Maps) or service (such as Wi-Fi Assist) that can use cellular data.

If a setting is off, iPhone uses only Wi-Fi for that service.

Note: Wi-Fi Assist is on by default. If Wi-Fi connectivity is poor, Wi-Fi Assist automatically switches to cellular data to boost the signal. Because you stay connected to the internet over cellular when you have a poor Wi-Fi connection, you might use more cellular data, which may incur additional charges depending on your data plan. See the Apple Support article About Wi-Fi Assist.

Lock your SIM card

If your device uses a SIM card for phone calls or cellular data, you can lock the card with a personal identification number (PIN) to prevent others from using the card. Then, every time you restart your device or remove the SIM card, your card locks automatically, and you're required to enter your PIN. See Use a SIM PIN for your iPhone or iPad.

See also

Set up cellular service on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Get information about your iPhone

Next
Travel with iPhone

Support › iPhone User Guide › View or change cellular data settings on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Choose iPhone settings for travel

When you travel with iPhone, choose settings that comply with airline requirements. Some airlines let you keep your iPhone turned on if you switch to airplane mode. By default, Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® are disabled in airplane mode—you can't make calls, but you can listen to music, play games, watch videos, and use other apps that don't require network or phone connections.

To choose settings that minimize cellular charges when you travel, see View or change cellular data settings on iPhone.

Turn on airplane mode

Open Control Center, then tap ✈.

You can also turn airplane mode on or off in Settings. When airplane mode is on, the Airplane Mode icon ✈ appears in the status bar.

Turn on Wi-Fi or Bluetooth while in airplane mode

If your airline allows it, you can use Wi-Fi or Bluetooth while in airplane mode.

1. Open Control Center, then turn on airplane mode.
2. Tap to turn on Wi-Fi or to turn on Bluetooth.

If you turn on Wi-Fi or Bluetooth while in airplane mode, it may be on the next time you return to airplane mode. You can turn it off again in Control Center.

See also

Use and customize Control Center on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
View or change cellular data settings

Next
Change sounds and vibrations

Support › iPhone User Guide › Choose iPhone settings for travel

Change iPhone sounds and vibrations

In Settings, change the sounds iPhone plays when you get a call, text, voicemail, email, reminder, or other type of notification.

On supported models, you feel a tap—called *haptic feedback*—after you perform some actions, such as when you touch and hold the Camera icon on the Home Screen.

Set sound and vibration options

1. Go to Settings > Sounds & Haptics.
2. To set the volume for all sounds, drag the slider below Ringtone and Alert Volume.
3. To set the tones and vibration patterns for sounds, tap a sound type, such as ringtone or text tone.
4. Do any of the following:

   - Choose a tone (scroll to see them all).

     Ringtones play for incoming calls, clock alarms, and the clock timer; text tones are used for text messages, new voicemail, and other alerts.

   - Tap Vibration, then choose a vibration pattern, or tap Create New Vibration to create your own.

You can also change the sounds iPhone plays for certain people. Go to Contacts, tap a person's name, tap Edit, then choose a ringtone and text tone.

Turn haptic feedback off or on

1. On supported models, go to Settings > Sounds & Haptics.
2. Turn System Haptics off or on.

   When System Haptics is off, you won't hear or feel vibrations for incoming calls and alerts.

Have iPhone play a sound effect when it's turned on and off

On iPhone 14 or later, you can have iPhone play a sound when it's turned on and off.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Audio/Visual.
2. Turn on Power On & Off Sounds.

Tip: If you're not receiving incoming calls and alerts when you expect them, open Control Center, then check whether Do Not Disturb is on. If the Do Not Disturb button is highlighted, tap it to turn off Do Not Disturb. (When Do Not Disturb is on, its icon also appears in the status bar.)

See also

Customize the Action button on iPhone 15 Pro and iPhone 15 Pro Max

iPhone 15 Pro and iPhone 15 Pro Max have an Action button in place of the Ring/Silent switch. You can choose which function you want the Action button to perform when you press it. Because the button is so accessible, it's useful for actions you perform often. (The location of the Action button is shown below.) It's easy to change the action when you decide you want to use it for a different function.

Customize the Action button on iPhone 15 Pro and iPhone 15 Pro Max

1. Go to Settings > Action Button.

   An image of the side of the iPhone appears with icons representing actions you can assign to the Action button.

2. To choose an action, swipe to the action you want to use—its name appears below the dots.

   Tip: To put iPhone 15 Pro and iPhone 15 Pro Max in Silent mode, swipe to . To choose another action, swipe to it.

3. If there are additional options for the selected action, appears below the action; tap it to see the list of options.

   For the Shortcuts and Accessibility actions, you need to tap the blue button below the action and select a specific option—otherwise the Action button does nothing.

Icon	Action
	Silent mode: Turn Silent mode on or off.
	Focus: Turn a specific Focus on or off.
	Camera: Open the Camera app to quickly take a photo, selfie, video, portrait, or portrait selfie.
	Flashlight: Turn the flashlight on or off.
	Voice Memo: Start or stop recording a voice memo.
	Magnifier: Open the Magnifier app.
	Shortcut: Open an app or run your favorite shortcut.
	Accessibility: Quickly access your favorite accessibility feature.
No Action	Do nothing.

See also

Put iPhone in Silent mode

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Change sounds and vibrations

Next
Create a custom Lock Screen

Support › iPhone User Guide › Customize the Action button on iPhone 15 Pro and iPhone 15 Pro Max

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Create a custom iPhone Lock Screen

You can personalize your Lock Screen by choosing a wallpaper, showcasing a favorite photo, changing the font of the time, adding widgets, and more.

You can create more than one Lock Screen, switch between Lock Screens, and even link a Lock Screen to a Focus. So, for example, you could set a specific Lock Screen for when you're working.

Personalize a new Lock Screen

1. Touch and hold the Lock Screen until Customize and + appear at the bottom of the screen.

   If they don't appear, touch and hold the Lock Screen again, then enter your passcode.

2. Tap + to create a new Lock Screen, or to make changes to a Lock Screen, swipe to the screen you want to change, tap Customize, then tap Lock Screen.

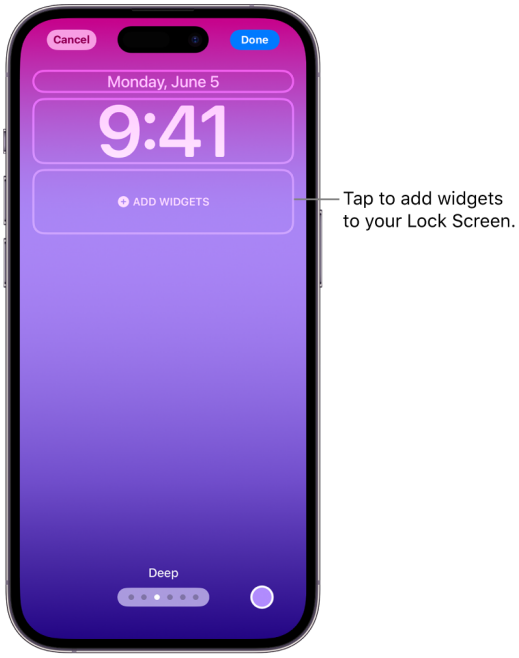
3. If you're creating a new Lock Screen, tap one of the wallpaper options to select it as your Lock Screen.

   If you choose Photos or Photo Shuffle, see Customize your Lock Screen photo.

4. Tap the time to change the font, color, and style.

   Drag the slider to make the font heavier or lighter (available for solid fonts). To change the time, see Change the date and time on iPhone.

5. To add widgets that include information such as today's headlines, the weather, and calendar events, tap Add Widgets, the date, or the field below the time. (See Add, edit, and remove widgets on iPhone.)



6. Tap Add or Done, then tap Set as Wallpaper Pair or Customize Home Screen.

   - *Choose whether to use the wallpaper on both the Lock Screen and the Home Screen:* Tap Set as Wallpaper Pair.

   - *Make further changes to the Home Screen:* Tap Customize Home Screen. Tap a color to change the wallpaper color, tap to use a custom photo, or select Blur to blur the wallpaper so the apps stand out.

Customize your Lock Screen photo

If you choose a photo for your Lock Screen, you can reposition the photo, change the photo style, and more.

Do any of the following:

- *Reposition your photo:* To reposition your selected image, pinch open to zoom in on it, drag the image with two fingers to move it, then pinch closed to zoom out.
- *Change the photo style:* Swipe left or right to try different photo styles with complementary color filters and fonts.
- *Create a multilayered effect:* If you have a photo that supports layering—like an image with people, pets, or the sky—tap at the bottom right, then choose Depth Effect.

  Note: The multilayered effect is available on supported models. Layering may not be available if the subject is too high or too low, or if it obscures too much of the clock.
- *Create a motion effect with a Live Photo:* If you select a Live Photo that can be translated into slow motion, tap at the bottom left to play the Live Photo when the device wakes up.
- *Set the shuffle frequency:* If you choose Photo Shuffle, you can preview the photos by tapping , and you can set the shuffle frequency by tapping and then selecting an option below Shuffle Frequency.

Tip: Alternatively, you can add a photo directly from your photo library to your Home Screen and Lock Screen. In the Photos app, tap Library, select a photo, then tap . Scroll down and select Use as Wallpaper, tap Add, then choose whether to show it on both your Home Screen and Lock Screen.

Link a Focus to your Lock Screen

Focus helps you concentrate on a task by minimizing distractions. You can set up a Focus to temporarily silence all notifications, or to allow only specific notifications (ones that apply to your task, for example).

By linking a Focus to your Lock Screen, your Focus settings apply whenever you use that particular Lock Screen.

1. Touch and hold the Lock Screen until the Customize button appears at the bottom of the screen.
2. Tap Focus near the bottom of the wallpaper to see the Focus options—for example, Do Not Disturb, Personal, Sleep, and Work.
3. Select a Focus, then tap ×.

See Set up a Focus.

Edit or change your Lock Screen

After you create a custom Lock Screen, you can make changes to it.

1. Touch and hold the Lock Screen until Customize and + appear at the bottom of the screen.

   If they don't appear, touch and hold the Lock Screen again, then enter your passcode.
2. Swipe to the screen you want to change, tap Customize, then tap Lock Screen.
3. Tap the time to change the font, color, and style.
4. To add widgets that include information such as today's headlines, the weather, and calendar events, tap Add Widgets, the date, or the field below the time. (See Add, edit, and remove widgets on iPhone.)
5. Tap Add or Done, then tap Set as Wallpaper Pair or Customize Home Screen.

Switch between Lock Screens

You can create multiple custom Lock Screens and switch between them throughout the day.

1. Touch and hold the Lock Screen until the Customize button appears at the bottom of the screen.
2. Swipe to the Lock Screen you want to use, then tap it.

Note: If a Lock Screen links to a specific Focus, switching from that Lock Screen to another also switches your Focus. See Link a Focus to your Lock Screen.

Delete a Lock Screen

You can delete Lock Screens you no longer need.

1. Touch and hold the Lock Screen until the Customize button appears at the bottom of the screen.
2. Swipe to go to the Lock Screen you want to delete, swipe up on the screen, then tap 🗑.

See also

Keep your Lock Screen visible with Always On Display

Change the wallpaper on iPhone

Set up a Focus on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Change the wallpaper on iPhone

On iPhone, you can change the wallpaper on the Lock Screen and the Home Screen. You can set your wallpaper in Settings or through the wallpaper gallery from your Lock Screen. See Create a custom iPhone Lock Screen.

Change the wallpaper

1. Go to Settings > Wallpaper, then tap Add New Wallpaper.

   The wallpaper gallery appears.

2. Do any of the following:

   - Tap a button at the top of the wallpaper gallery—for example, Photos, Photo Shuffle, Live Photo, and so on—to design your wallpaper with a photo, an emoji pattern, a picture of your local weather, and more.

   - Choose wallpaper from one of the featured sets (Collections, Astronomy, Weather, and so on).

3. If you're adding a Photo or Photo Shuffle to your wallpaper and want to customize one or more photos for it, see Customize your Lock Screen photo.

4. Tap Add, then do one of the following:

   - *Choose whether to use the wallpaper on both the Lock Screen and Home Screen:* Tap Set as Wallpaper Pair.

   - *Make further changes to the Home Screen:* Tap Customize Home Screen. Tap a color to change the wallpaper color, tap to use a custom photo, or select Blur to blur the wallpaper so the apps stand out.

Adjust the screen brightness and color on iPhone

On iPhone, you can make your screen dimmer or brighter (dimming the screen extends battery life). You can also adjust the screen brightness and color manually or automatically with Dark Mode, True Tone, and Night Shift.

Adjust the screen brightness manually

To make your iPhone screen dimmer or brighter, do one of the following:

- Open Control Center, then drag ☀ up or down.
- Go to Settings > Display & Brightness, then drag the slider.

Adjust the screen brightness automatically

iPhone adjusts the screen brightness for current light conditions using the built-in ambient light sensor.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility.
2. Tap Display & Text Size, then turn on Auto-Brightness.

Turn Dark Mode on or off

Dark Mode gives the entire iPhone experience a dark color scheme that's perfect for low-light environments. With Dark Mode on, you can use your iPhone while, for example, reading in bed, without disturbing the person next to you.

Do any of the following:

- Open Control Center, touch and hold ☀, then tap to turn Dark Mode on or off.
- Go to Settings > Display & Brightness, then select Dark to turn on Dark Mode, or select Light to turn it off.

Schedule Dark Mode to turn on and off automatically

You can set Dark Mode to turn on automatically at night (or on a custom schedule) in Settings.

1. Go to Settings > Display & Brightness.
2. Turn on Automatic, then tap Options.
3. Select either Sunset to Sunrise or Custom Schedule.

   If you choose Custom Schedule, tap the options to schedule the times you want Dark Mode to turn on and off.

   If you select Sunset to Sunrise, iPhone uses the data from your clock and geolocation to determine when it's nighttime for you.

Turn Night Shift on or off

You can turn on Night Shift manually, which is helpful when you're in a darkened room during the day.

Open Control Center, touch and hold ☀, then tap .

Schedule Night Shift to turn on and off automatically

Schedule Night Shift to shift the colors in your display to the warmer end of the spectrum at night and make viewing the screen easier on your eyes.

1. Go to Settings > Display & Brightness > Night Shift.
2. Turn on Scheduled.
3. To adjust the color balance for Night Shift, drag the slider below Color Temperature toward the warmer or cooler end of the spectrum.
4. Tap From, then select either Sunset to Sunrise or Custom Schedule.

   If you choose Custom Schedule, tap the options to schedule the times you want Night Shift to turn on and off.

   If you select Sunset to Sunrise, iPhone uses the data from your clock and geolocation to determine when it's nighttime for you.

Note: The Sunset to Sunrise option isn't available if you turned off Location Services in Settings > Privacy & Security, or if you turned off Setting Time Zone in Settings > Privacy & Security > Location Services > System Services.

Turn True Tone on or off

On supported models, True Tone automatically adapts the color and intensity of the display to match the light in your environment.

Do any of the following:

- Open Control Center, touch and hold, then tap to turn True Tone on or off.
- Go to Settings > Display & Brightness, then turn True Tone on or off.

See also

Use and customize Control Center on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Change the wallpaper

Next
Keep the iPhone display on longer

Support > iPhone User Guide > Adjust the screen brightness and color on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

This manual was copied from Apple Support website
and compiled by www.iphone15manual.com

Keep the iPhone display on longer

The iPhone display stays on while you're looking at it, but it dims and eventually locks (for your security) when you look away for a while. If you need the display to stay on longer (for example, when you're navigating with Maps), you can change how long it takes iPhone to automatically dim and lock.

Change when iPhone automatically locks

You can set how long it takes iPhone to automatically lock.

Go to Settings > Display & Brightness > Auto-Lock, then choose a length of time.

Keep your Lock Screen visible with Always On Display

On iPhone 14 Pro, iPhone 14 Pro Max, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max, the Always On Display setting allows a dimmed version of your Lock Screen to stay visible, even when your iPhone is locked. By glancing at the dimmed screen, you can check essential information, like alerts, the date and time, and information in your widgets.

The display automatically turns off when iPhone is face down or obstructed from view, not near a paired Apple Watch, when a CarPlay session begins, while Continuity Camera is in use, while Low Power Mode is on, while Sleep Focus is on, or at your usual bedtime.

The Always On Display setting is on by default. To turn it off, go to Settings > Display & Brightness, then turn off Always On Display.

Tip: When Always On Display is turned on, you can choose whether to show your wallpaper or notifications on your Lock Screen. In Settings > Display & Brightness > Always On Display, turn Show Wallpaper or Show Notifications on or off.

See also

Use StandBy to view information at a distance while iPhone is charging

Create a custom iPhone Lock Screen

Set a passcode on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use StandBy to view information at a distance while iPhone is charging

While iPhone is set down and charging, you can turn it on its side to activate StandBy, which displays useful and timely information at a glance—from helpful widgets, to your favorite photos, to beautiful clocks—all visible from a distance. You can use StandBy to turn your iPhone into a bedside clock, a digital photo frame, a display for viewing widgets, a full-screen display of Live Activities, and more.

To initiate StandBy, connect iPhone to a charger and set it down on its side, keeping it stationary. With the Always On display (on iPhone 14 Pro, iPhone 14 Pro Max, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max), StandBy stays on to show useful information. For all other iPhone models, it's easy to bring up StandBy anytime by tapping the screen, gently nudging the table your iPhone is on, or using Siri.

You can swipe left or right to switch between widgets, photos, and clocks. Swipe up or down to scroll between options for each of these views.

To turn off StandBy, go to Settings > StandBy, then turn off StandBy.

When Night Mode is on for StandBy, the screen adapts to low ambient light at night and displays in a red tint so that it's not intrusive while you're sleeping.

In each location where you charge iPhone with MagSafe, StandBy remembers your preferred view, whether that's a clock, photos, or widgets. This means you can have it set up for family photos in the kitchen, or an alarm clock at your bedside.

See also

Keep your Lock Screen visible with Always On Display

Add, edit, and remove widgets on iPhone

Magnify the iPhone screen with Display Zoom

You can see larger onscreen controls on an iPhone with Display Zoom.

1. Go to Settings > Display & Brightness > Display Zoom.
2. Select Larger Text to make all the text on iPhone larger.
3. Tap Done, then tap Use Zoomed.

See also

Zoom in on the iPhone screen

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Change the name of your iPhone

You can change the name of your iPhone, which is used by iCloud, AirDrop, your Personal Hotspot, and your computer.

1. Go to Settings > General > About > Name.
2. Tap , enter a new name, then tap Done.

See also

Use AirDrop on iPhone to send items to nearby devices

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Change the date and time on iPhone

The date and time visible on the Lock Screen are set automatically based on your location. You can also adjust them—for example, when you're traveling.

1. Go to Settings > General > Date & Time.
2. Turn on any of the following:
   - *Set Automatically:* iPhone gets the correct time over the network and updates it for the time zone you're in. Some networks don't support network time, so in some countries or regions, iPhone may not be able to automatically determine the local time.
   - *24-Hour Time:* (not available in all countries or regions) iPhone displays the hours from 0 to 23.

To change the default date and time, turn off Set Automatically, then change the date and time displayed.

Tip: To change the font color and style of the clock on the Lock Screen, see Create a custom iPhone Lock Screen.

See also

Change the language and region on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Change the language and region on iPhone

You choose the language and region of your iPhone during setup. If you travel or move, you can change the language or region.

1. Go to Settings > General > Language & Region.
2. Set the following:
   - The language for iPhone.
   - Your preferred form of address. (Choose feminine, masculine, or neutral. Turn on Share with All Apps so all apps personalize how they address you. Available for some primary languages, for example, Spanish.)
   - The region.
   - The calendar format.
   - The temperature unit (Celsius or Fahrenheit).
   - The measurement system (metric, US, or UK).
   - The first day of the week.
   - Live Text (text you can select in images to copy or take action on).
3. To add another language and keyboard to your iPhone, tap Add Language, then select a language.

See also

Add or change keyboards on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Organize your apps in folders on iPhone

You can organize your apps into folders to make them easier to find on your Home Screen pages.

Create folders

1. Touch and hold the Home Screen background until the apps begin to jiggle.
2. To create a folder, drag an app onto another app.
3. Drag other apps into the folder.

   You can have multiple pages of apps in the folder.
4. To rename the folder, touch and hold it, tap Rename, then enter a new name.

   If the apps begin to jiggle, tap the Home Screen background and try again.
5. When you're finished, tap Done, then tap the Home Screen background twice.

To delete a folder, tap the folder to open it, then drag all the apps out of it. The folder is automatically deleted.

Note: Organizing your apps on the Home Screen doesn't affect the organization of apps in the App Library.

Move an app from a folder to the Home Screen

You can move an app from a folder to the Home Screen to make it easier to locate and open.

1. Go to the Home Screen page with the folder that contains the app, then tap the folder to open it.
2. Touch and hold the app until the apps begin to jiggle.
3. Drag the app from the folder to the Home Screen.

See also

Move apps and widgets on the Home Screen

Find your apps in App Library

Remove apps from iPhone

Add, edit, and remove widgets on iPhone

What are widgets?

Widgets are a way to view current information at a glance—today's headlines, weather, reminders, battery levels, and more. You can view widgets in Today View and add them to your Home Screen or Lock Screen to keep this information at your fingertips.

You can also interact with widgets on the Home Screen and Lock Screen without opening the app—you can take action on the widgets for Music, Podcasts, Safari, Home, Contacts, and more. For example, tap ▶ on the Music or Podcasts widget to play a selection.

Add a widget to your Home Screen

1. Go to the Home Screen page where you want to add the widget, then touch and hold the Home Screen background until the apps begin to jiggle.
2. Tap + at the top of the screen to open the widget gallery.
3. Scroll or search to find the widget you want, tap it, then swipe through the size options.

   The different sizes display different information.
4. When you see the size you want, tap Add Widget.
5. While the apps are still jiggling, move the widget where you want it on the screen, then tap Done.

   Note: You can also **add widgets to your Lock Screen**. To learn how, see Personalize a new Lock Screen.

Tip: A Smart Stack (with dots next to it) is a set of widgets that uses information such as the time, your location, and activity to automatically display the most relevant widget at the appropriate time in your day.

You can add a Smart Stack to the Home Screen, then swipe up and down through it to see the widgets it contains.

Interact with widgets

You can perform tasks on widgets on your Home Screen or Lock Screen. Tap an item in the Reminders widget to check it off, tap the Play button in the Podcasts widget to play an episode, or tap the Home widget to turn on your living room lights—all without opening an app.

Edit a widget on your Home Screen

You can customize most widgets right from your Home Screen so they display the information you want to see. For example, for a Mail widget, you can tap the mailbox shown in the widget, then choose a different mailbox so the messages in that mailbox are displayed in the widget. Or you can customize a Smart Stack to rotate through its widgets based on your activity, your location, the time of day, and so on.

1. On your Home Screen, touch and hold a widget to open the quick actions menu.
2. Tap Edit [*widget name*] or tap Edit Stack, if it's a Smart Stack), then choose options.

   For a Smart Stack, you can turn Smart Rotate or Widget Suggestions off or on, reorder widgets by dragging them within the stack, drag a widget from the Smart Stack to the Home Screen, or remove a widget by tapping the minus sign (–) in its upper-left corner.

   When you turn on Widget Suggestions, suggested widgets for apps you already use automatically appear in your Smart Stack at the right time based on your past activity. An option lets you add the widget to your stack so it's always there when you need it.
3. Tap Done.

Remove a widget from the Home Screen

1. Touch and hold the widget to open the quick actions menu.
2. Tap Remove Widget (or Remove Stack), then tap Remove.

View widgets in Today View

To view widgets in Today View, swipe right from the left edge of the Home Screen, then scroll up and down.

Note: If the widgets don't appear when you swipe right on the Lock Screen, see View widgets in Today View and Search when iPhone is locked.

View widgets in Today View and Search when iPhone is locked

1. Go to Settings > Face ID & Passcode (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Touch ID & Passcode (on other iPhone models).
2. Enter your passcode.
3. Turn on Today View and Search (below Allow Access When Locked).

See also

Move apps and widgets on the Home Screen on iPhone

You can change the layout of your Home Screen—move apps and widgets around or drag them to other Home Screen pages, temporarily hide Home Screen pages, change where new apps get downloaded, and more.

Tip: You can move all your apps and widgets related to a particular Focus (your Work Focus, for example) onto one Home Screen page, and make that page accessible during that Focus.

Move apps and widgets around on your iPhone

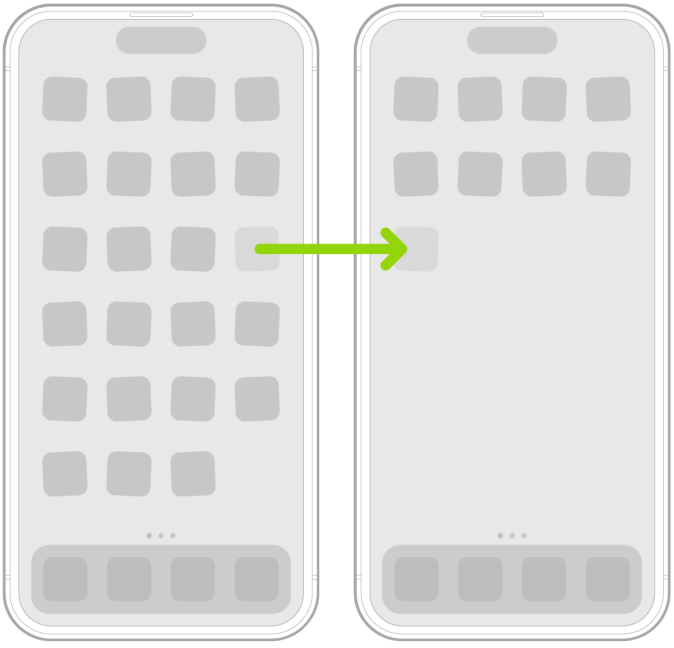
1. Touch and hold any app or widget on the Home Screen, then tap Edit Home Screen.

   The apps begin to jiggle.

2. Drag an app to one of the following locations:

   - Another location on the same page
   - Another Home Screen page

     Drag the app or widget to the right edge of the screen. You might need to wait a second for the new page to appear. The dots above the Dock show how many pages you have and which one you're viewing.



3. When you're finished, press the Home button (on an iPhone with a Home button) or tap Done (on other iPhone models).

Reset the Home Screen and apps to their original layout

1. Go to Settings > General > Transfer or Reset iPhone.
2. Tap Reset, tap Reset Home Screen Layout, then tap Reset Home Screen.

   Any folders you've created are removed, and apps you've downloaded are arranged alphabetically after apps that came with your iPhone.

See also

Find your apps in App Library

Organize your apps in folders

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Add, edit, and remove widgets

Next
Remove apps

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Remove apps from iPhone

You can easily remove apps from your iPhone. If you change your mind, you can download the apps again later.

Remove apps

Do any of the following:

- *Remove an app from the Home Screen:* Touch and hold the app on the Home Screen, tap Remove App, then tap Remove from Home Screen to keep it in App Library, or tap Delete App to delete it from iPhone.
- *Delete an app from App Library and Home Screen:* Touch and hold the app in App Library, tap Delete App, then tap Delete. (See Find your apps in App Library.)

If you change your mind, you can redownload apps you've removed.

In addition to removing third-party apps from the Home Screen, you can remove the following built-in Apple apps that came with your iPhone:

- Books
- Calculator
- Calendar
- Clock
- Compass
- Contacts (Contact information remains available through Phone, Messages, Mail, FaceTime, and other apps. To remove a contact, you must restore Contacts.)
- FaceTime
- Files
- Find My (Removing this app doesn't turn off location sharing or Find My for your device or items—it just removes the ability to view locations in the Find My app on that device.)
- Fitness
- Freeform
- Health
- Home
- iTunes Store
- Magnifier
- Mail
- Maps
- Measure
- Music

- News
- Notes
- Podcasts
- Reminders
- Shortcuts
- Stocks
- Tips
- Translate
- TV
- Voice Memos
- Wallet (Removing this app doesn't delete cards and passes you stored in iCloud.)
- Watch
- Weather

Note: When you remove a built-in app from your Home Screen, you also remove any related user data and configuration files. Removing built-in apps from your Home Screen can affect other system functionality. See the Apple Support article Delete built-in Apple apps on your iOS 12, iOS 13, or iPadOS device or Apple Watch.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Move apps and widgets on the Home Screen

Next
Use and customize Control Center

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use and customize Control Center on iPhone

Control Center on iPhone gives you instant access to useful controls—including airplane mode, Do Not Disturb, a flashlight, volume, screen brightness—and apps.

Open Control Center

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Swipe down from the top-right edge. To close Control Center, swipe up from the bottom.
- *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Swipe up from the bottom. To close Control Center, swipe down or press the Home button.

Access more controls in Control Center

Many controls offer additional options. To see available options, touch and hold a control. For example, you can do the following in Control Center:

- Touch and hold the top-left group of controls, then tap to open the AirDrop options.
- Touch and hold to take a selfie, take a photo, or record a video.

Add and organize controls

You can customize Control Center by adding more controls and shortcuts to many apps, such as Calculator, Notes, Voice Memos, and more.

1. Go to Settings > Control Center.
2. To add or remove controls, tap or next to a control.
3. To rearrange controls, touch next to a control, then drag it to a new position.

Temporarily disconnect from a Wi-Fi network

In Control Center, tap ; to reconnect, tap it again.

To see the name of the connected Wi-Fi network, touch and hold .

Because Wi-Fi isn't turned off when you disconnect from a network, AirPlay and AirDrop still work, and iPhone joins known networks when you change locations or restart iPhone. To turn off Wi-Fi, go to Settings > Wi-Fi. (To turn on Wi-Fi again in Control Center, tap .) For information about turning Wi-Fi on or off in Control Center while in airplane mode, see Choose iPhone settings for travel.

Temporarily disconnect from Bluetooth devices

In Control Center, tap ; to allow connections, tap the button again.

Because Bluetooth® isn't turned off when you disconnect from devices, location accuracy and other services are still enabled. To turn off Bluetooth, go to Settings > Bluetooth, then turn off Bluetooth. To turn on Bluetooth again in Control Center, tap . For information about turning Bluetooth on or off in Control Center while in airplane mode, see Choose iPhone settings for travel.

Turn off access to Control Center in apps

Go to Settings > Control Center, then turn off Access Within Apps.

See also

Choose iPhone settings for travel

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Remove apps

Next
Change or lock the screen orientation

Support > iPhone User Guide > Use and customize Control Center on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Change or lock the screen orientation on iPhone

Many apps give you a different view when you rotate iPhone.

Lock or unlock the screen orientation

You can lock the screen orientation so that it doesn't change when you rotate iPhone.

Open Control Center, then tap .

When the screen orientation is locked, appears in the status bar (on supported models).

See also

Use and customize Control Center on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

View and respond to notifications on iPhone

Notifications help you keep track of what's new—they let you know if you missed a call, if the date of an event moved, and more. You can customize your notification settings so you see only what's important to you.

Unless you have notifications silenced with a Focus, iPhone displays them as they arrive—they roll in from the bottom of the screen to minimize distraction. You can view them on the Lock Screen in an expanded list view, stacked view, or count view. Pinch the notifications on the Lock Screen to change the layout.

Note: While you're using an app, you might be asked how you want to receive notifications from it—immediately, not at all, or in a scheduled summary. You can change this setting later in Settings > Notifications.

Find your notifications in Notification Center

To see your notifications in Notification Center, do any of the following:

- *On the Lock Screen:* Swipe up from the middle of the screen.
- *On other screens:* Swipe down from the top center. Then you can scroll up to see older notifications, if there are any.

To close Notification Center, swipe up from the bottom with one finger or press the Home button (on an iPhone with a Home button).

Respond to notifications

When you have multiple notifications in Notification Center or on the Lock Screen, they're grouped by app, which makes them easier to view and manage. Notifications from some apps may also be grouped by organizing features within the app, such as by topic or thread. Grouped notifications appear as small stacks, with the most recent notification on top.

Do any of the following:

- *To expand a group of notifications to see them individually:* Tap the group. To close the group, tap Show Less.
- *To view a notification and perform quick actions if the app offers them (on supported models):* Touch and hold the notification.
- *To open a notification's app:* Tap the notification.

Schedule a notification summary

You can reduce distractions in your day by scheduling your notifications to be delivered as a summary—you choose which notifications to include in the summary and what time you want to receive it.

The notification summary is personalized to you and intelligently ordered by priority, based on your current activity, with the most relevant notifications at the top. The summary is especially useful because it allows you to engage with notifications on your own time. You can take this even further by using Focus to filter notifications while you focus on an activity.

1. Go to Settings > Notifications > Scheduled Summary, then turn on Scheduled Summary.
2. Select the apps to include in your summary.
3. Set a time for your summary. If you want to receive another summary, tap Add Summary.
4. Tap A to Z below Apps in Summary, then make sure the apps you want to include in your summary are turned on.

View, dismiss, clear, and mute notifications

When notifications appear on your iPhone, do any of the following:

- *Handle a notification you receive while using another app:* Tap to view it, then swipe up to dismiss it.
- *Clear notifications:* Swipe left on a notification or group of notifications, then tap Clear or Clear All.
- *Mute notifications for an app:* Swipe left on the notification or group of notifications, tap Options, then tap an option to mute the app's notifications for an hour or a day. This sends them directly to Notification Center and prevents them from appearing on the Lock Screen, playing a sound, lighting up the screen, or presenting a banner.

  To see and hear these notifications again, swipe left on the notification in Notification Center, tap Options, then tap Unmute.
- *Turn off notifications for an app or notification group:* Swipe left on a notification or group of notifications, tap Options, then tap Turn Off.
- *Change how an app displays notifications:* Swipe left on a notification, tap Options, then tap View Settings. See Change notification settings to learn about the settings you can change.
- *Clear all your notifications in Notification Center:* Go to Notification Center, tap ⊗, then tap Clear.
- *Silence all notifications:* Turn on Do Not Disturb. See Turn on or schedule a Focus on iPhone.

When you haven't used an app for a while, you may see a suggestion that you turn off notifications for that app.

Show recent notifications on the Lock Screen

You can allow access to Notification Center on the Lock Screen.

1. Go to Settings > Face ID & Passcode (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Touch ID & Passcode (on other iPhone models).
2. Enter your passcode.
3. Scroll down and turn on Notification Center (below Allow Access When Locked).

See also

Change notification settings on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Change or lock the screen orientation

Next
Change notification settings

Support > iPhone User Guide > View and respond to notifications on iPhone

Change notification settings on iPhone

In Settings, choose which apps can send notifications, change the alert sound, set up location-based alerts, allow government alerts, and more.

Change notification settings

Most notification settings can be customized for each app. You can turn app notifications on or off, have notifications play a sound, choose how and where you want app notifications to appear when your device is unlocked, and more.

1. Go to Settings > Notifications.
2. Choose how you want notifications displayed on the Lock Screen:
   - *View just the number of notifications:* Tap Count.
   - *View the notifications grouped into stacks by app:* Tap Stack.
   - *View the notifications in a list:* Tap List.

   When notifications arrive, you can change the layout by pinching the notifications on the Lock Screen.
3. To schedule a notification summary, tap Scheduled Summary, then turn on Scheduled Summary. (See schedule a notification summary.)
4. To choose when you want notification previews to appear, tap Show Previews, select an option—Always, When Unlocked, or Never—then tap < at the top left.

   Previews can include things like text (from Messages and Mail) and invitation details (from Calendar). You can override this setting for individual apps.
5. Tap an app below Notification Style, then turn Allow Notifications on or off.

   If you turn on Allow Notifications, choose when you want the notifications delivered—immediately or in the scheduled notification summary—and turn Time Sensitive Notifications on or off.

   For many apps, you can also set a notification banner style and turn sounds and badges on or off.
6. Tap Notification Grouping, then choose how you want the notifications grouped:
   - *Automatic:* The notifications from the app are grouped according to organizing criteria within the app, such as by topic or thread.
   - *By App:* All the notifications from the app are grouped together.
   - *Off:* Turn off grouping.

To turn off notifications selectively for apps, go to Settings > Notifications > Siri Suggestions, then turn off any app.

When you use Focus, it delays the delivery of notifications on iPhone to prevent interruptions. You can schedule a time to receive a summary of the notifications you missed. See Schedule a notification summary.

Set up or turn off location-based alerts

Some apps use your location to send you relevant alerts based on where you are. For example, you might get a reminder to call someone when you get to a specific place or when you leave for your next location.

If you don't want to see these types of alerts, you can turn them off.

1. Go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Location Services.
2. Turn on Location Services.
3. Tap an app (if any appear in the list), then choose whether you want to share your location while using that app.

See the Apple Support article About privacy and Location Services.

Receive Web Push notifications from web apps

You can receive standard Web Push notifications from a web app when you add its website icon to your Home Screen. Web Push notifications can keep you informed of activity in the app. After you subscribe for push notifications within the web app, the app can send you notification alerts and badges similar to the ones you get from other apps on your iPhone.

Get government alerts

In some countries or regions, you can turn on alerts in the Government Alerts list. For example, on iPhone in the United States, you can receive National Alerts, and you can turn AMBER, Public Safety, and Emergency Alerts (which include both Severe and Extreme Imminent Threat alerts) on or off (they're on by default). On iPhone in Japan, you can receive Emergency Earthquake Alerts from the Japan Meteorological Agency.

1. Go to Settings > Notifications.
2. Scroll down to the Government Alerts section, then turn on the ones you want.

Government alerts vary by carrier and iPhone model, and may not work under all conditions. See the Apple Support article About emergency and government alerts.

See also

Allow or silence notifications for a Focus on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
View and respond to notifications

Next
Set up a Focus

Support > iPhone User Guide > Change notification settings on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Set up a Focus on iPhone

Focus is a feature that helps you reduce distractions and set boundaries. When you want to concentrate on a specific activity, you can customize one of the provided Focus options—for example Work, Personal, or Sleep—or create a custom Focus. You can use Focus to temporarily silence all notifications, or allow only specific notifications—ones that apply to your task, for example—and let other people and apps know you're busy.

When a Focus is linked to your Lock Screen, you can turn it on by simply swiping to the corresponding Lock Screen.

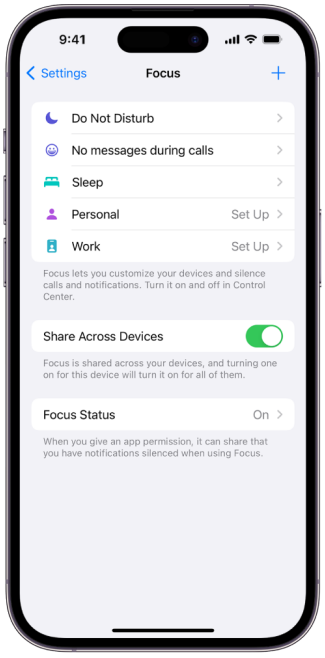
Likewise, you can customize a Home Screen page that has only apps related to a Focus and make that page your Home Screen during that Focus. iPhone also suggests Home Screen pages with apps and widgets that are relevant to the Focus you're setting up.

Tip: To quickly silence all notifications, open Control Center, tap Focus, then turn on Do Not Disturb.

Set up a Focus

1. Go to Settings > Focus, then tap a Focus—for example, Do Not Disturb, Personal, Sleep, or Work.

   For the Focus you select, you can set up the options described in the steps below, but you don't have to set up all of them.



2. Specify which apps and people can send you notifications during your Focus. See Allow or silence notifications for a Focus on iPhone.

   After you specify which people and apps to allow notifications from, an Options link appears.

3. Tap Options, then do any of the following:

   - *Show silenced notifications on the Lock Screen or send them to Notification Center:* Turn Show On Lock Screen on or off.

- *Darken the Lock Screen during this Focus:* Turn on Dim Lock Screen.
- *Hide notification badges on Home Screen apps:* Turn on Hide Notification Badges.

4. When you're finished selecting options, tap < at the top of the screen.
5. To change the Lock Screen to use with this Focus, tap the Lock Screen preview below Customize Screens, select a Lock Screen, then tap Done at the top of the screen.
6. To choose a Home Screen page to use with this Focus, tap the Home Screen preview below Customize Screens, select a page, then tap Done.

   The Home Screen options that appear include the apps and widgets most relevant to the Focus you're setting up.

   To make changes to the Home Screen to customize it further for your Focus, see Move apps and widgets on the Home Screen.
7. To share your Focus across your Apple devices, tap <, then turn on Share Across Devices (you must be signed in with the same Apple ID on all your devices).

After setting up your Focus, you can return to Settings > Focus at any time and change any of the options you chose above.

You can schedule a Focus to turn on automatically or turn it on or off in Control Center.

When you set up a Sleep Focus, you can also change your next bedtime and wake-up time, or adjust your sleep schedule by tapping Set Up Sleep in Health. See Set an alarm in Clock on iPhone or Add or change sleep schedules in Health on iPhone.

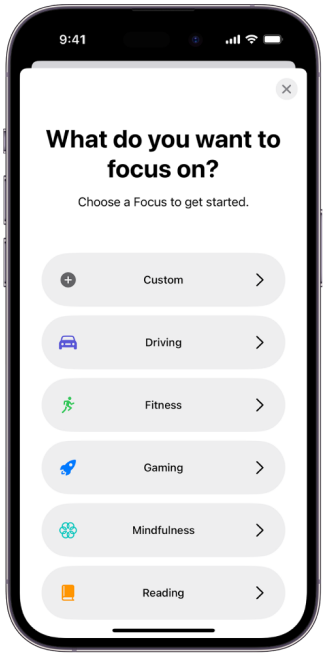
Add Focus filters

When you set up a Focus, you can add app filters that determine what information apps will show during the Focus. For example, you can choose which mail account or which calendar to use during the Focus.

1. Go to Settings > Focus, then tap the Focus you want to add filters to.
2. Scroll down to Focus filters, then tap Add Filter.
3. Tap an app, then select the information from that app you want to use during the Focus:
   - *Calendar:* Choose which calendars you want to show during the Focus.
   - *Mail:* Choose which mail accounts you want to use during the Focus.
   - *Messages:* Choose which message conversations you want to see during the Focus—for example, only conversations from people you've allowed notifications from during this Focus.
   - *Safari:* Choose which Tab Group you want to use during the Focus.
4. Tap Add to add the filter to the Focus.

Create a Custom Focus

If you want to concentrate on an activity that's different from any of the provided Focus options, you can create a Custom Focus.



1. Go to Settings > Focus.
2. Tap + at the top right, then tap Custom.
3. Enter a name for your Focus, then tap Return.
4. Choose a color and an icon to represent your Focus, then tap Next.
5. Tap Customize Focus, then set up the options for your custom Focus.

Keep your Focus settings up to date across all your Apple devices

You can use the same Focus settings on all your Apple devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

Go to Settings > Focus, then turn on Share Across Devices.

Note: Focus filters don't get synced across devices—they're only on the device where you set them up.

See also

Turn on or schedule a Focus on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Change notification settings

Next
Allow or silence notifications for a Focus

Support > iPhone User Guide > Set up a Focus on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Allow or silence notifications for a Focus on iPhone

When you set up a Focus, you can select people and apps you want to receive notifications from by either silencing them or allowing them. For example, set up a Work Focus and allow only notifications from your coworkers and the apps you use for work.

Allow or silence notifications from specific people during a Focus

1. Go to Settings > Focus, then choose a Focus—for example, Do Not Disturb, Personal, Sleep, or Work.
2. Tap People (or tap Choose People), then do one of the following:

   - *Allow specific people:* Tap Allow Notifications From, tap +, then select from your contacts.

     You can also turn on options to allow calls from certain groups of people and allow repeated calls (two or more calls from the same person within 3 minutes).

   - *Silence specific people:* Tap Silence Notifications From, tap +, then select from your contacts.

     You can also turn on Allow Calls From Silenced People.

Note: Regardless of your Focus settings, you can allow calls from your emergency contacts to come through. See Allow calls from emergency contacts when notifications are silenced, below.

Allow or silence notifications from specific apps during a Focus

1. Go to Settings > Focus, then choose a Focus—for example, Do Not Disturb, Personal, Sleep, or Work.
2. Tap Apps (or tap Choose Apps), then do one of the following:

   - *Allow specific apps:* Tap Allow Notifications From, tap +, then select apps.

   - *Silence specific apps:* Tap Silence Notifications From, tap +, then select apps.

   Note: You can allow or silence notifications from specific web apps you've added to your Home Screen. (See Receive Web Push notifications from web apps.)

You can also turn on Time Sensitive Notifications, which allows all apps to send time-sensitive notifications immediately.

Share your Focus status

When you're using a Focus, it limits the notifications you receive from people and apps. When someone outside your allowed notifications tries to contact you, your Focus status appears in Messages and other apps you give permission to, so they know you're busy.

When you give an app permission to share your Focus status, others can see that you have notifications silenced, but not the name of the Focus you have turned on. This information is shared only when you have a Focus turned on and after you give the app permission.

1. Go to Settings > Focus > Focus Status.
2. Turn on Share Focus Status, then select the Focus options you want to share.

Allow calls from emergency contacts when notifications are silenced

You can allow sounds and vibrations from emergency contacts to come through even when your iPhone or notifications are silenced.

1. Open Contacts.
2. Select a contact, then tap Edit.
3. Tap Ringtone or Text Tone, then turn on Emergency Bypass.

   Or, set up your Medical ID and identify an emergency contact.

See also

View and respond to notifications on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Set up a Focus

Next
Turn a Focus on or off

Support > iPhone User Guide > Allow or silence notifications for a Focus on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Turn on or schedule a Focus on iPhone

To use a Focus, you can turn it on directly in Control Center, or schedule it to turn on automatically.

Turn on a Focus in Control Center

1. Open Control Center, tap Focus, then tap the Focus you want to turn on (for example, Do Not Disturb).

   Note: If another Focus is already on, it turns off when you tap the new one.

2. To choose an ending point for the Focus, tap ···, select an option (such as “For 1 hour” or “Until I leave this location”), then tap ··· again.

When a Focus is on, its icon (for example, for Do Not Disturb) appears in the status bar and on the Lock Screen, and your status is automatically displayed in the Messages app. People who try to send you a message will see that you've silenced notifications, but they can still notify you if something is urgent.

Note: You can also turn a Focus on or off by going to Settings > Focus, tapping the Focus, then turning it on.

Schedule a Focus to turn on automatically

You can schedule a Focus to turn on at certain times, when you're at a particular location, or when you open a specific app.

1. Go to Settings > Focus, then tap the Focus you want to schedule.
2. To have this Focus turn on automatically based on cues like your location or app usage, tap Smart Activation, turn on Smart Activation, then tap < at the top left.
3. Tap Add Schedule, then set the times, a location, or an app you want to activate this Focus.

Note: When you set up a Sleep Focus, it follows the sleep schedule you set in the Health app. To add or edit a sleep schedule, tap Open Sleep in Health. See Add or change sleep schedules in Health on iPhone. You can also change your next bedtime and wake-up time. See Set an alarm in Clock on iPhone.

Turn off a Focus

When you're finished using a Focus, you can quickly turn it off to allow notifications again. After you turn off a Focus, it still appears in Control Center and can be reused.

1. Do any of the following:
   - Touch and hold the Focus icon on the Lock Screen.
   - Open Control Center, then tap Focus.
2. Tap the Focus that's on to turn it off.

Turn a Focus on or off using Siri

You can use Siri to turn a Focus on or off.

Siri: Say something like: “Turn on the Work Focus,” or “Turn off the Work Focus.” Learn how to use Siri.

Delete a Focus

When you no longer need a Focus you set up, you can delete it.

1. Go to Settings > Focus.
2. Tap the Focus, scroll to the bottom of the screen, then tap Delete Focus.

If you delete a provided Focus, you need to set it up again by going to Settings > Focus, then tapping +.

See also

Set up a Focus on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Allow or silence notifications for a Focus

Next
Stay focused while driving

Support > iPhone User Guide > Turn on or schedule a Focus on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Stay focused while driving with iPhone

Turning on the Driving Focus helps you stay focused on the road. When you turn it on, text messages and other notifications are silenced or limited. You can have Siri read replies to you, so you don't have to look at your iPhone. Incoming calls are allowed only when iPhone is connected to CarPlay—a car Bluetooth® system—or a hands-free accessory.

WARNING: For important information about navigation and avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see Important safety information for iPhone. The Driving Focus is not a substitute for following all the rules that prohibit distracted driving.

Set up the Driving Focus

You can set up the Driving Focus to turn on automatically when you're in a moving car. (You can also turn it on manually in Control Center.)

1. Go to Settings > Focus, tap Driving, then turn on Driving.

   If you don't see the Driving Focus, tap + at the top right, then tap Driving.

2. Tap Focus Status, then turn on Share Focus Status.

3. Tap Auto-Reply, then choose who should receive an auto-reply when the Driving Focus is on:

   - No one
   - Recents
   - Favorites
   - All Contacts

   You can edit your auto-reply message to customize it.

   Then tap < at the top left.

4. Tap While Driving (below Turn On Automatically), then select when to activate Driving:

   - *Automatically:* When iPhone detects you might be driving.
   - *When Connected to Car Bluetooth:* When your iPhone is connected to a car's Bluetooth system.
   - *Manually:* When you turn it on in Control Center.
   - *Activate With CarPlay:* Automatically when iPhone is connected to CarPlay.

Get calls, messages, and notifications when you're a passenger

If you receive a Driving notification when you're in a car, but you're not driving (for example, when you're a passenger), you can dismiss the notification.

Tap I'm Not Driving.

When the Driving Focus is on and you're a passenger in a moving car, you can receive calls, messages, and notifications.

See also

View and respond to notifications on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Turn a Focus on or off

Next
Type with the onscreen keyboard

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

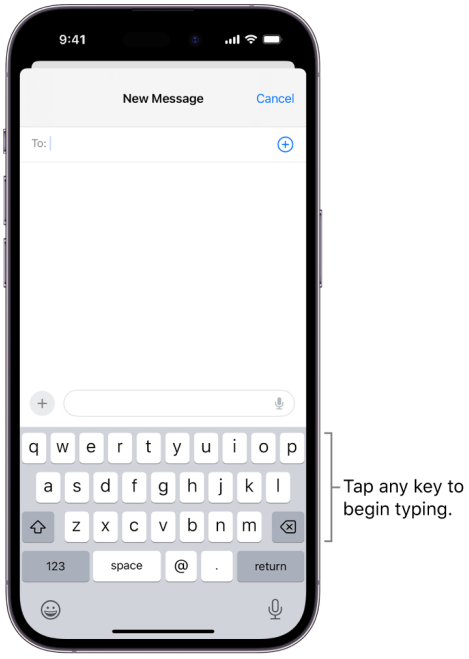
Type with the onscreen keyboard on iPhone

On iPhone, you can use the onscreen keyboard to enter and edit text.

Note: You can also use Magic Keyboard and Dictation to enter text on iPhone.

Enter text using the onscreen keyboard

In any app that allows text editing, open the onscreen keyboard by tapping a text field. Tap individual keys to type, or use QuickPath to type a word by sliding from one letter to the next without lifting your finger (not available for all languages). To end a word, lift your finger. You can use either method as you type, and even switch in the middle of a sentence. (If you tap ⌫ after sliding to type a word, it deletes the whole word.)



While entering text, you can do any of the following:

- *Type uppercase letters:* Tap ⇧, or touch ⇧, then slide to a letter.
- *Turn on Caps Lock:* Double-tap ⇧.
- *Quickly end a sentence with a period and a space:* Double-tap the Space bar.
- *Enter numbers, punctuation, or symbols:* Tap 123 or #+=.
- *Undo autocorrect:* As you type, misspelled words are automatically corrected and temporarily underlined so you know what's been changed; to revert to the spelling as you typed it, tap the underlined word, then tap the spelling you want to use.
- *Correct spelling:* Tap a misspelled word (underlined in red) to see suggested corrections, then tap a suggestion to replace the word, or type the correction.
- *Undo the last edit:* Swipe left with three fingers, then tap Undo at the top of the screen.
- *Redo the last edit:* Swipe right with three fingers, then tap Redo at the top of the screen.

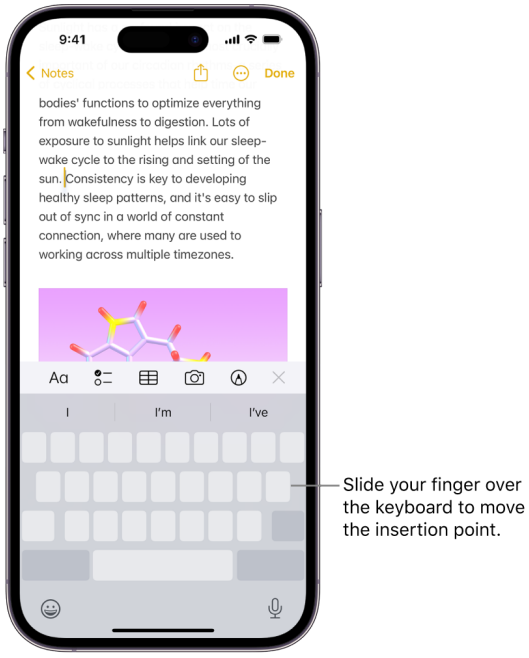
Turn on keyboard sounds and haptic feedback

You can customize keyboard settings to hear or feel tapping as you type.

1. Go to Settings > Sounds & Haptics > Keyboard Feedback.
2. Turn on Sound to hear tapping as you type; turn on Haptic to feel tapping as you type.

Turn the onscreen keyboard into a trackpad

You can turn the onscreen keyboard into a trackpad to easily move and place the insertion point.



1. Touch and hold the Space bar with one finger until the keyboard turns light gray.
2. To move the insertion point, slide your finger around the keyboard.
3. To select text, touch and hold the keyboard with a second finger, then adjust the selection by moving the first finger around the keyboard.

See Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPhone for more ways to select text.

Enter accented letters or other characters while typing

While typing on the keyboard, touch and hold the letter, number, or symbol that's related to the character you want.

For example, to enter é, touch and hold the *e* key, then slide your finger and release it on the option you want.

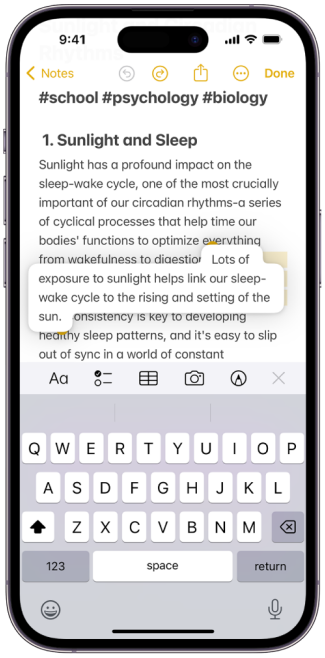
You can also do any of the following:

- *On a Thai keyboard:* To choose native numbers, touch and hold the related Arabic number.
- *On a Chinese, Japanese, or Arabic keyboard:* Tap a suggested character or candidate at the top of the keyboard to enter it, or swipe left to see more candidates.

  Note: To view the full candidate list, tap the up arrow on the right. To return to the short list, tap the down arrow.

Move text

1. In a text editing app, select the text you want to move.
2. Touch and hold the selected text until it lifts up, then drag it to another location within the app.



If you change your mind about moving the text, lift your finger before dragging, or drag the text off the screen.

Set typing options

You can turn special typing features—such as predictive text and auto-correction—off and on.

1. While typing on the onscreen keyboard, touch and hold or , then tap Keyboard Settings. Or go to Settings > General > Keyboard.
2. Turn the typing features (below All Keyboards) on or off (green is on).

Type with one hand

To make it easier to type with one hand, you can move the keys closer to your thumb.

1. Touch and hold or .
2. Tap one of the keyboard layouts. (For example, choose to move the keyboard to the right side of the screen.)

   To center the keyboard again, tap the right or left edge of the keyboard.

See also

Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPhone

Dictate text on iPhone

Use the onscreen keyboard with VoiceOver on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Stay focused while driving

Next
Dictate text

Support > iPhone User Guide > Type with the onscreen keyboard on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Dictate text on iPhone

With Dictation on iPhone, you can dictate text anywhere you can type it. You can also use typing and Dictation together—the keyboard stays open during Dictation so you can easily switch between voice and touch to enter text. For example, you can select text with touch and replace it with your voice.

Dictation requests are processed on your device in many languages—no internet connection is required. When dictating in a search box, dictated text may be sent to the search provider in order to process the search.

Note: Dictation may not be available in all languages or in all countries or regions, and features may vary.

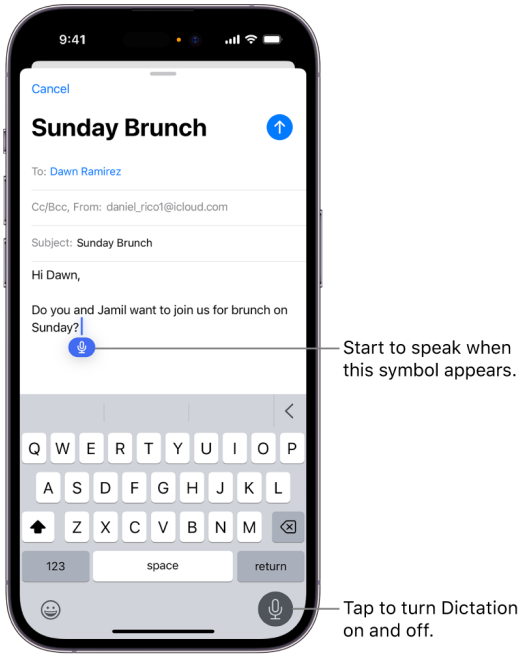
When using Dictation, cellular data charges may apply. See View or change cellular data settings on iPhone.

Turn on Dictation

1. Go to Settings > General > Keyboard.
2. Turn on Enable Dictation. If a prompt appears, tap Enable Dictation.

To learn more about how Apple protects your information and lets you choose what you share, tap About Dictation & Privacy below Dictation, or see the Apple Privacy website.

Dictate text



1. Tap in the text field to place the insertion point where you want to begin dictating text.
2. Tap on the onscreen keyboard (or in any text field where it appears).
3. When appears near the insertion point in the text field, begin to dictate your text.
4. To insert an emoji or a punctuation mark, or perform simple formatting tasks, do any of the following:

- Say the name of an emoji, such as “heart emoji” or “smiley face emoji.”
- Say the name of the punctuation mark, such as “exclamation point.”

  Note: In supported languages, Dictation automatically inserts commas, periods, and question marks as you dictate. To turn off automatic punctuation, go to Settings > General > Keyboard, then turn off Auto-Punctuation.
- Say a formatting command such as “new line” or “new paragraph.”

5. When you’re done, tap ; or Dictation stops automatically when you stop speaking for 30 seconds.

When you use a keyboard for another language, you can use Dictation in that language as well. See Add or change keyboards on iPhone.

Turn off Dictation

1. Go to Settings > General > Keyboard.
2. Turn off Enable Dictation.

See also

Use the onscreen keyboard with VoiceOver on iPhone

Dictate text while using Magic Keyboard with iPhone

Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Type with the onscreen keyboard

Next
Select and edit text

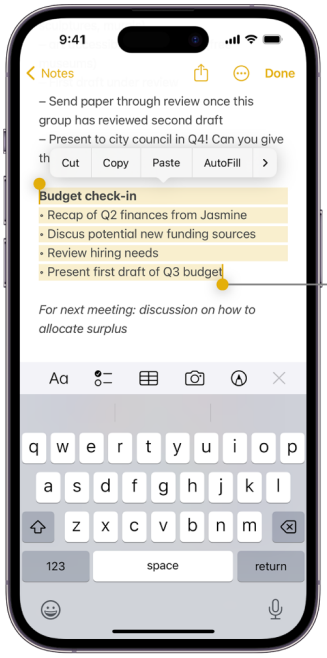
Support > iPhone User Guide > Dictate text on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPhone

In apps on iPhone, you can use the onscreen keyboard to select and edit text in text fields.

Select and edit text



1. To select text, do any of the following:

   - *Select a word:* Double-tap with one finger.
   - *Select a paragraph:* Triple-tap with one finger.
   - *Select a block of text:* Double-tap and hold the first word in the block, then move the grab points to select text.

2. After selecting the text you want to revise, you can type, or tap the selection to see editing options:

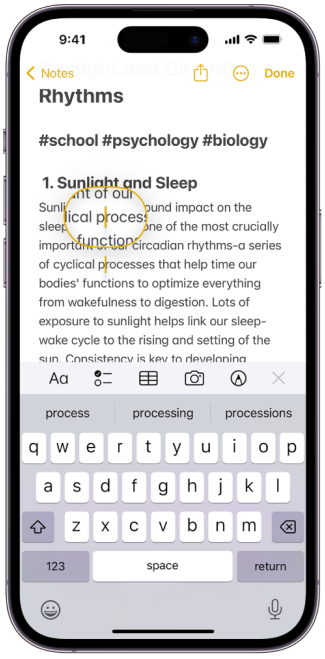
   - *Cut:* Tap Cut or pinch closed with three fingers two times.
   - *Copy:* Tap Copy or pinch closed with three fingers.
   - *Paste:* Tap Paste or pinch open with three fingers.
   - *Select All:* Select all the text in the document.
   - *Replace:* View suggested replacement text, or have Siri suggest alternative text.
   - *Format:* Format the selected text.
   - ›: View more options.

Tip: To move text without cutting or copying, touch and hold selected text until it lifts up, then drag the text to another location.

Insert or edit text by typing

1. Place the insertion point where you want to add or edit text by doing any of the following:

    - Tap where you want to add or edit text.
    - Touch and hold to magnify the text, then move the insertion point by dragging it.



    Note: To navigate a long document, touch and hold the right edge of the document, then drag the scroller to locate the text you want to revise.

2. Type or paste the text you want to add.

You can also use Universal Clipboard to cut or copy something as you normally would on one Apple device and paste it to another. See Cut, copy, and paste between iPhone and other devices.

See also

Dictate text on iPhone

Use predictive text on iPhone

Use the onscreen keyboard with VoiceOver on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Dictate text

Next
Use predictive text

Support › iPhone User Guide › Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use predictive text on iPhone

Using predictive text, you can write and complete entire sentences with just a few taps. As you type on the iPhone keyboard, you see choices for words, emoji, and information that you'd probably type next (not available for all languages). In Messages, for example, when you type something like:

- "I'm at" followed by a space, your current location appears as an option
- "My number is" followed by a space, your phone number appears as an option

You also see inline predictions that complete the word or phrase you're currently typing.

Apply inline text predictions

As you type, predictions that complete the word or phrase you're typing appear inline in gray text. Tap the Space bar to accept the prediction for the word or phrase; keep typing to reject it.

If you accept an inline prediction and then change your mind, tap ⌫, then tap the word you were in the process of typing.

Note: Inline predictive text may not be supported in your language. See iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability.

Apply predictive text

As you type, suggested words, emoji, and information appear above the onscreen keyboard; tap a suggestion to apply it.

Note: When you accept a suggested word, a space is automatically entered after the suggestion. If you enter a comma, period, or other punctuation, that space is automatically deleted.

To reject the suggestions, tap your original word (shown as the option within quotation marks), or just continue to type.

Turn off predictive text

1. While using the keyboard, touch and hold 😀 or 🌐.
2. Tap Keyboard Settings, then turn off Predictive.

When you turn off Predictive, iPhone may still try to suggest corrections for misspelled words. To accept a correction, enter a space or punctuation, or tap Return. To reject a correction, tap the "x." If you reject the same suggestion a few times, iPhone stops suggesting it.

Note: Turning off the Predictive setting turns off both predictive text and inline text predictions.

See also

Save keystrokes with text replacements on iPhone

Dictate text on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Select and edit text

Next
Use text replacements

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Save keystrokes with text replacements on iPhone

Set up a text replacement you can use to enter a word or phrase by typing just a few characters. For example, type “omw” to enter “On my way!” That one’s already set up for you, but you can also add your own.

Create a text replacement

1. While typing in a text field, touch and hold 😀 or 🌐.
2. Tap Keyboard Settings, then tap Text Replacement.
3. Tap ＋ at the top right.
4. Type a phrase in the Phrase field and the text shortcut you want to use for it in the Shortcut field.

Have a word or phrase you use and don’t want it corrected?

1. Go to Settings > General > Keyboard, then tap Text Replacement.
2. Tap ＋ at the top right, then enter your word or phrase in the Phrase field, but leave the Shortcut field blank.

Create a text replacement for word and input pairs

When using certain Chinese or Japanese keyboards, you can create a text replacement for word and input pairs. The text replacement is added to your personal dictionary. When you type the text shortcut for a

word or input while using a supported keyboard, the paired word or input is substituted for the typed shortcut.

Shortcuts are available for the following:

- *Simplified Chinese:* Pinyin
- *Traditional Chinese:* Pinyin and Zhuyin
- *Japanese:* Romaji and Kana

Use iCloud to keep your personal dictionary up to date on your other devices

Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud, then turn on iCloud Drive.

Reset your personal dictionary

1. Go to Settings > General > Transfer or Reset iPhone.
2. Tap Reset, then tap Reset Keyboard Dictionary.

   All custom words and shortcuts are deleted, and the keyboard dictionary returns to its default state.

See also

Use predictive text on iPhone

Add emoji and stickers from the iPhone keyboard

Add or change keyboards on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use predictive text

Next
Add or change keyboards

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Add or change keyboards on iPhone

You can add keyboards for writing or using Dictation in different languages on your iPhone. You can also change the layout of your onscreen or external keyboard.

If you add keyboards for other languages, you can type in two languages without having to switch between keyboards. Your keyboard automatically switches between the two languages you use most often. (Not available for all languages.)

Add or remove a keyboard for another language

1. Go to Settings > General > Keyboard.
2. Tap Keyboards, then do any of the following:
   - *Add a keyboard:* Tap Add New Keyboard, then choose a keyboard from the list. Repeat to add more keyboards.
   - *Remove a keyboard:* Tap Edit, tap next to the keyboard you want to remove, tap Delete, then tap Done.
   - *Reorder your keyboard list:* Tap Edit, drag next to a keyboard to a new place in the list, then tap Done.

If you add a keyboard for a different language, the corresponding language is automatically added to the Preferred Language Order list. You can view this list and add languages directly to it in Settings > General > Language & Region. You can also reorder the list to change how apps and websites display text.

Switch to another keyboard

1. While typing text, touch and hold or .
2. Tap the name of the keyboard you want to switch to.

You can also switch between Magic Keyboard and other keyboards.

Assign an alternative layout to a keyboard

You can use an alternative keyboard layout that doesn't match the keys on your keyboard.

1. Go to Settings > General > Keyboard > Keyboards.
2. Tap a language at the top of the screen, then select an alternative layout from the list.

See also

Adjust the onscreen and external keyboard settings on iPhone

Add emoji and stickers from the iPhone keyboard

iOS 17

Search this guide

Table of Contents

Add emoji and stickers from the iPhone keyboard

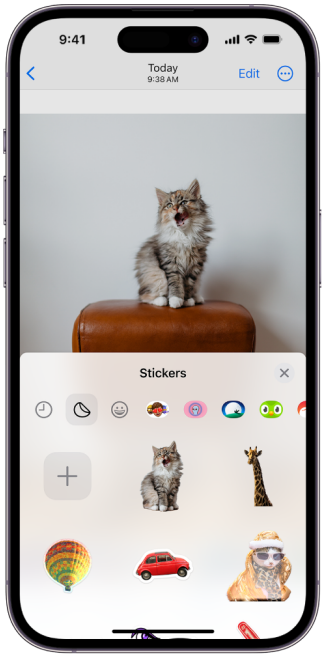
You can use emoji and stickers instead of text to express yourself in messages and documents.

Decorate with stickers

Use stickers in the emoji keyboard to decorate messages and documents. You can download sticker packs from the App Store or make your own stickers in the Messages app or Photos app.

1. Tap a text field, then tap or to switch to the emoji keyboard.
2. Tap to see all of your stickers.

   Stickers you recently used appear in the Frequently Used section of the emoji keyboard.
3. Tap a sticker to add it to your message or document.

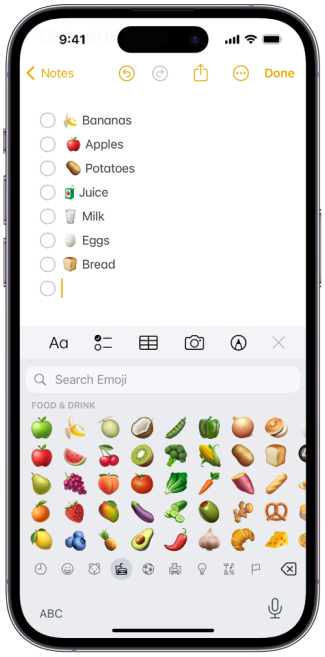


   You can also drag a sticker from the keyboard or the sticker menu to your document.
4. Tap to close the sticker menu; tap ABC to return to the regular keyboard.

Replace text with emoji

Use the emoji keyboard to replace text and bring words to life.

1. Tap a text field, then tap or to switch to the emoji keyboard.



2. Swipe left or right to browse emoji, or tap a symbol below the emoji keyboard to jump to that category.
3. Tap an emoji to add it to your text field.
4. Tap ABC to return to the regular keyboard.

Tip: As you use the keyboard to type, words that can be replaced with emoji appear above the keyboard; tap the emoji to apply it in place of the text.

See also

Send stickers in Messages on iPhone

Add a sticker with Markup

Make stickers from your photos on iPhone

Take a screenshot on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Add or change keyboards

Next
Take a screenshot

Support › iPhone User Guide › Add emoji and stickers from the iPhone keyboard

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

This manual was copied from Apple Support website
and compiled by www.iphone15manual.com

Take a screenshot on iPhone

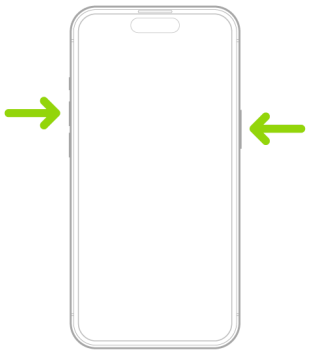
Take a picture of what appears on your iPhone screen so you can view it later, share it with others, or attach it to documents.

Take a screenshot with an iPhone that has Face ID

1. Quickly press and release the side button and the volume up button at the same time.

   A thumbnail of the screenshot temporarily appears in the lower-left corner of your screen.

2. Tap the thumbnail to view the screenshot or swipe left to dismiss it.



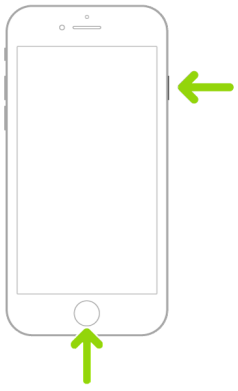
Screenshots are automatically saved to your photo library in the Photos app. To see all of your screenshots in one place, open Photos, tap Albums, then tap Screenshots below Media Types.

Take a screenshot with an iPhone that has Touch ID

1. Quickly press and release the side button and the Home button at the same time.

   A thumbnail of the screenshot temporarily appears in the lower-left corner of your screen.

2. Tap the thumbnail to view the screenshot or swipe left to dismiss it.



Screenshots are automatically saved to your photo library in the Photos app. To see all of your screenshots in one place, open Photos, tap Albums, then tap Screenshots below Media Types.

Take a full-page screenshot

You can take a screenshot of content that exceeds the length of your iPhone screen, such as an entire webpage in Safari.

1. Do one of the following:

   - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Quickly press and release the side button and volume up button at the same time.
   - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Quickly press and release the side button and the Home button at the same time.

2. Tap the screenshot thumbnail in the lower-left corner of the screen.
3. Tap Full Page, tap Done, then do one of the following:

   - Tap Save to Photos to save the screenshot in your Photos library.
   - Tap Save PDF to Files, choose a location, then tap Save to save the screenshot in the Files app.

See also

Take a screen recording on iPhone

View photos and videos in the Photos app on iPhone

Write and draw in documents with Markup on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Add emoji and stickers

Next
Take a screen recording

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Take a screen recording on iPhone

You can make a recording of what happens on your iPhone screen.

1. Go to Settings > Control Center, then tap next to Screen Recording.
2. Open Control Center, tap , then wait for the 3-second countdown.
3. To stop recording, open Control Center, tap or the red status bar at the top of the screen, then tap Stop.

Screen recordings are automatically saved to your photo library in the Photos app. To see all of your screen recordings in one place, open Photos, tap Albums, then tap Screen Recordings below Media Types.

See also

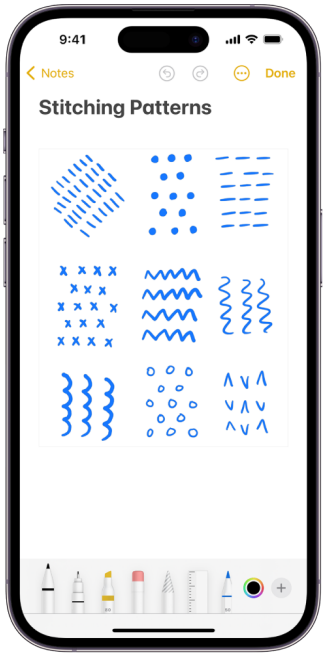
Take a screenshot on iPhone

Play videos and slideshows in the Photos app on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Write and draw in documents with Markup on iPhone

In supported apps such as Mail, Messages, Notes, and Photos, you can use the Markup tools to draw and sketch in your documents. You can also use the Markup tools to annotate screenshots, PDFs, and more.



Write and draw

1. In a supported app, tap Ⓐ or Markup.
2. In the Markup toolbar, tap the pen, marker, or pencil tool, then write or draw with your finger.

   While drawing, do any of the following:

   - *Change the line weight:* Tap the selected drawing tool in the toolbar, then tap an option.
   - *Change the opacity:* Tap the selected drawing tool in the toolbar, then drag the slider.
   - *Change the color:* Tap in the toolbar, then tap Grid, Spectrum, or Sliders to further adjust your color choice.
   - *Undo:* Tap Ⓐ.
   - *Draw a straight line:* Tap the ruler tool in the toolbar, then draw a line along the edge of the ruler.
     - To change the angle of the ruler, touch and hold the ruler with two fingers, then rotate your fingers.
     - To move the ruler without changing its angle, drag it with one finger.
     - To hide the ruler, tap the ruler tool in the toolbar again.

3. To close the Markup toolbar, tap Ⓐ or Done.

Erase a mistake

Tap the eraser tool in the Markup toolbar in a supported app, then do one of the following:

- *Erase with the pixel eraser:* Scrub over the mistake with your finger.
- *Erase with the object eraser:* Touch the object with your finger.
- *Switch between the pixel and the object erasers:* Tap the eraser tool again, then choose Pixel Eraser or Object Eraser.

Note: If you don't see the Markup toolbar, tap Ⓐ or Markup. If the toolbar is minimized, tap its minimized version.

Move Markup objects

1. In the Markup toolbar, tap the lasso tool (between the eraser and ruler tools), then use your finger to drag around the elements you want to move.

   Note: If you don't see the Markup toolbar in a supported app, tap Ⓐ or Markup. If the toolbar is minimized, tap its minimized version.

2. Lift your finger.
3. Touch the selected element, then drag it to a new location.
4. Tap the screen to turn off the lasso.

See also

Use Markup to add text, shapes, signatures, and more to documents on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Take a screen recording

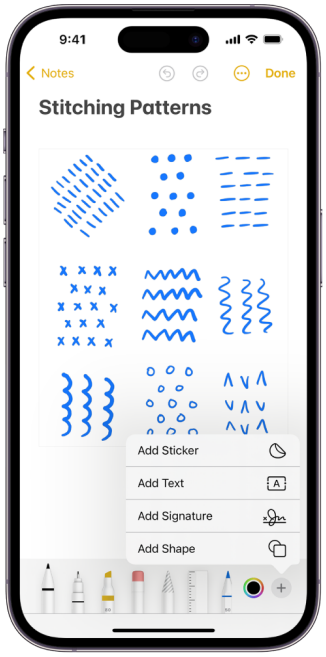
Next
Add text, shapes, signatures, and more

Support › iPhone User Guide › Write and draw in documents with Markup on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use Markup to add text, shapes, signatures, and more to documents on iPhone

In supported apps, you can use Markup tools to add text, shapes, signatures, stickers, and image descriptions to your images and documents.



Add text

1. In a supported app, tap or Markup.
2. In the Markup toolbar, tap, then tap Add Text.
3. Tap the text box, then use the keyboard to enter text.
4. To adjust the text's font, size, justification, style, or color, tap the tools at the bottom of the screen.
5. To cut, copy, duplicate, or delete the text box, tap.
6. When you're done, tap outside the text box.
7. To close the Markup toolbar, tap or Done.

Add a shape

1. In a supported app, tap or Markup.
2. In the Markup toolbar, tap, then tap Add Shape.
3. Tap the shape you want to add, then do any of the following:

   - *Move the shape:* Drag it.
   - *Resize the shape:* Drag any dot along the shape's outline.

- *Adjust the shape's direction or dimension:* Drag any green dot along the shape's outline.
- *Adjust the shape's border color, border width, fill color, and opacity:* Tap an option in the Markup toolbar.
- *Cut, copy, duplicate, share, or delete:* Tap ⋯ next to the shape, then tap an option.

4. When you're done adjusting the shape, tap the screen.
5. To close the Markup toolbar, tap Ⓐ or Done.

Draw a shape

You can use Markup to draw geometrically perfect shapes—lines, arcs, and more—to use in diagrams and sketches.

1. In a supported app, tap Ⓐ or Markup, then tap a writing tool in the Markup toolbar.
2. Draw a shape in one stroke with your finger, then pause.

   A perfect version of the shape snaps into place, replacing the drawing. (If you prefer to keep the freehand shape, tap ↩.)

The shapes you can draw include straight lines, arrows, arcs, continuous lines with 90-degree turns, squares, circles, rectangles, triangles, pentagons, chat bubbles, hearts, stars, and clouds.

Add your signature

1. In a supported app, tap Ⓐ or Markup.
2. In the Markup toolbar, tap ⊕, then tap Add Signature.
3. Use your finger to sign your name.

   To redo, tap Clear, then sign your sign name again.
4. Tap Done, then make any of the following adjustments:

   - *Move the signature:* Drag it.
   - *Resize the signature:* Drag any dot along the outline.
   - *Adjust the signature's line weight or color:* Tap an option in the Markup toolbar.
   - *Cut, copy, duplicate, share, or delete:* Tap ⋯ next to the signature, then tap an option.
5. When you're done adjusting the signature, tap outside the text box.

Add or delete signatures

After you create a signature, iPhone saves it to use the next time you tap Add Signature. You can create multiple signatures, such as a nickname or initials, and delete signatures.

1. In a supported app, tap Ⓐ or Markup.
2. In the Markup toolbar, tap ⊕, then tap Add Signature.
3. Tap Add or Remove Signature, then tap + to create a new signature.
4. Tap the arrow next to New Signature, then tap the type of signature you want to add, such as given name, nickname, or initials.
5. Use your finger to sign, then tap Done.

To delete a signature, tap ⊕, then tap Add Signature. Tap Add or Remove Signature, then tap ⊖ next to any signatures you want to delete.

Add a sticker with Markup

You can use Markup to add stickers from your sticker collection to documents and images.

1. In a supported app, tap Ⓐ or Markup.
2. In the Markup toolbar, tap ⊕, then tap Add Sticker.
3. Touch a sticker, then drag it onto your document or photo.

   To adjust the angle of the sticker, before lifting your finger, rotate a second finger around the sticker.
4. Touch and drag a dot around the outline of the sticker to adjust its size.

You can download sticker packs from the App Store. You can also create stickers in the Messages app, or by lifting subjects from photos and Live Photos. See Make stickers from your photos on iPhone.

Add custom image descriptions

In supported apps such as Photos, you can use Markup to add descriptions to images. VoiceOver reads your custom descriptions when you use the Image Explorer.

1. In a supported app, tap Ⓐ or Markup.
2. In the Markup toolbar, tap ⊕, then tap Description.
3. Enter your description, then tap Done.

See also

Write and draw in documents with Markup on iPhone

Fill out forms and add signatures to documents on iPhone

Turn on and practice VoiceOver on iPhone

Zoom in or magnify in Markup on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Draw in documents

Next
Zoom in or magnify in Markup

Support › iPhone User Guide › Use Markup to add text, shapes, signatures, and more to documents on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Zoom in or magnify in Markup on iPhone

In Markup in supported apps, you can zoom in when you need to draw or show the details.

Zoom in

While using Markup in a supported app, pinch open so you can draw, adjust shapes, and more, up close.

To pan when you're zoomed in, drag two fingers. To zoom back out, pinch closed.

Magnify

In the Markup toolbar in a supported app, tap , then tap Magnifier.

Note: If you don't see the Markup toolbar, tap or Markup. If the toolbar is minimized, tap its minimized version.

To change the magnifier's characteristics, do any of the following:

- *Change the magnification level:* Drag the green dot on the magnifier.
- *Change the size of the magnifier:* Drag the blue dot on the magnifier.
- *Move the magnifier:* Drag it.
- *Change the outline thickness of the magnifier:* Tap , then choose an option.
- *Change the outline color of the magnifier:* Choose an option from the color picker.
- *Remove or duplicate the magnifier:* Tap its outline, then tap Delete or Duplicate.

To hide the Markup toolbar when you finish, tap or Done.

See also

Write and draw in documents with Markup on iPhone

Magnify and examine objects around you with iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Fill out forms and add signatures to documents on iPhone

You can fill out forms and sign documents that you receive on your iPhone. After you complete a form, you can add your signature and share it with others.

1. Tap the file to open the document.

   If prompted, open the document in the Files app, then tap Save.

2. Tap , then tap the text box to enter text using the onscreen keyboard.

3. To fill out another line, tap it, then enter text.

4. To add additional text or to add your signature to the form, tap , then do one of the following:

   - *Add text:* Tap Add Text Form Box, drag the text box where you want it on the form, then enter text using the onscreen keyboard.

   - *Add your signature:* Tap Add Signature, sign your name with your finger, then tap Done. Drag your signature where you want it to appear on the document.

5. When you're done, tap to share the completed form using Mail, Messages, or AirDrop.

6. Tap Done to close the form.

See also

Use Markup to add text, shapes, signatures, and more to documents on iPhone

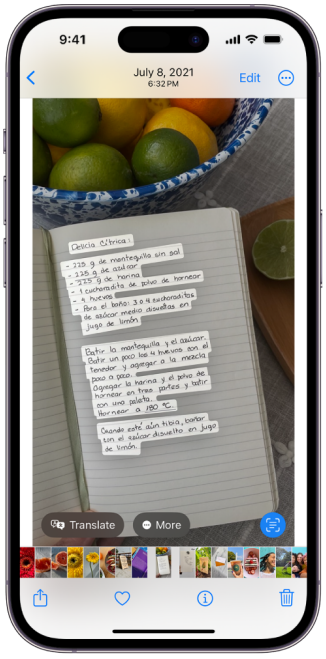
Work with PDFs in Notes on iPhone

Add email attachments in Mail on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use Live Text to interact with content in a photo or video on iPhone

When you view a photo or pause a video in the Photos app, Live Text recognizes text and information within the image, which you can interact with in multiple ways. You can select text to copy, share, or translate, or you can use quick actions to perform tasks like making a phone call, opening a website, or converting currencies.



Live Text is available on supported models and can also be used in Safari, Camera, Quick Look, and more.

Turn on Live Text

Before you start using Live Text, make sure it's turned on for all supported languages.

1. Go to Settings > General > Language & Region.
2. Turn on Live Text (green is on).

Copy, translate, and look up text in a photo or video

1. Open a photo or pause a video that contains text.
2. Tap, then touch and hold the selected text.
3. Use the grab points to select specific text, then do any of the following:

   - *Copy Text:* Copy text to paste into another app such as Notes or Messages.
   - *Select All:* Select all the text within the frame.

- *Look Up:* Show personalized web suggestions.
- *Translate:* Translate text.
- *Search the web:* Look up the selected text on the web.
- *Share:* Share text using AirDrop, Messages, Mail, or other available options.

4. Tap to return to the photo or video.

Perform tasks within a photo or video with quick actions

Depending on the content of the photo or video, you can tap a quick action at the bottom of the screen to do things like make a phone call, get directions, translate languages, convert currencies, and more.

1. In the Photos app, open a photo or pause a video that contains text.
2. Tap .
3. Tap a quick action at the bottom of the screen.
4. Tap to return to the photo or video.

Live Text isn't available in all regions or languages. See iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability.

See also

Use Live Text with your iPhone camera

Use Visual Look Up to identify objects in your photos and videos on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use Visual Look Up to identify objects in your photos and videos on iPhone

With Visual Look Up, you can identify and learn about popular landmarks, plants, pets, and more that appear in your photos and videos in the Photos app. Visual Look Up can also identify food in a photo and suggest related recipes.

Visual Look Up is available on supported models.

---

1. Open a photo in full screen or pause a video on any frame.

   If the Info button displays a symbol with stars such as or , Visual Look Up is available.

2. Tap the starred Info button, then tap Look Up at the top of the photo information to view the Visual Look Up results.

3. Tap to close the Visual Look Up results, then swipe down on the photo or video frame to close the photo information.

Visual Look Up isn't available in all regions or languages. See iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability.

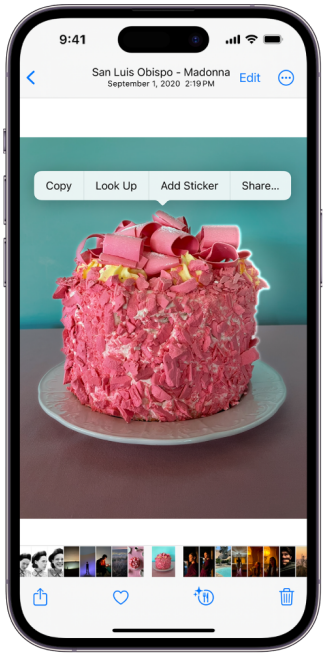
See also

See photo and video information

Use Live Text to interact with content in a photo or video on iPhone

Lift a subject from the photo or video background on iPhone

In the Photos app, you can isolate the subject of a photo or video frame from its background, and then copy or share it in other documents and apps.



This feature is available on supported models and can also be used in Safari, Quick Look, and more.

---

1. Open a photo in full screen or pause a video on any frame.
2. Touch and hold the subject. When an outline appears around the subject, do one of the following:
   - Continue to touch the subject, then with another finger, open a document in another app and drag the subject into the document.
   - Tap Copy, then paste the subject into an email, text message, or note.
   - Tap Look Up to view results and learn more about the subject.
   - Tap Add Sticker, then save the sticker to use in photos, email, text messages, and more.
   - Tap Share, then choose a sharing option, such as AirDrop, Messages, or Mail.

See also

View photos and videos in the Photos app on iPhone

Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPhone

Get apps in the App Store on iPhone

In the App Store app, you can discover new apps, featured stories, tips and tricks, and in-app events.

Note: You need an internet connection and an Apple ID to use the App Store. The availability of the App Store and Apple Arcade varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Find apps

Tap any of the following:

- *Today:* Browse featured stories, apps, and in-app events.
- *Games:* Find your next game across dozens of categories including action, adventure, racing, puzzles, and more.
- *Apps:* Explore new releases, see the top charts, or browse by category.
- *Arcade:* Enjoy the curated collection of premium games from Apple Arcade (subscription required) without ads or in-app purchases.
- *Search:* Enter what you're looking for, then tap Search on the keyboard. You can also explore different categories or browse the suggested apps.

Siri: Say something like: "Search the App Store for cooking apps." Learn how to use Siri.

Get more info about an app

Tap an app to see the following information and more:

- Screenshots or previews
- In-app events
- Ratings and reviews
- Supported languages
- Game Center and Family Sharing support
- Compatibility with other Apple devices
- File size
- Privacy information; see Manage the information you share with people and apps

Buy and download an app

1. Tap Get (if the app is free) or the price.

   If you see instead of Get or the price, you've already purchased this app before. Tap to download it again for free.

2. If required, authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode to complete your purchase.

You can find the app in the Recently Added category in App Library. While the app is downloading, a progress indicator appears on the app icon. See Find your apps in App Library on iPhone and Change

where new apps get downloaded.

Get the App Store widget

See stories, collections, and in-app events right on your Home Screen. See Add, edit, and remove widgets on iPhone.

Share or give an app

1. Tap the app to see its details.
2. Tap , then choose a sharing option or tap Gift App (not available for all apps).

Redeem or send an Apple Gift Card

1. Tap or your picture at the top right.
2. Tap one of the following:
   - Redeem Gift Card or Code
   - Send Gift Card by Email

See also

Manage App Store purchases, subscriptions, settings, and restrictions on iPhone

Apple Support article: If you can't redeem your Apple Gift Card or App Store & iTunes Gift Card

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Lift a subject from the photo background

Next
Subscribe to Apple Arcade

Support > iPhone User Guide > Get apps in the App Store on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Subscribe to Apple Arcade on iPhone

In the App Store app, you can subscribe to Apple Arcade to enjoy unlimited access to a curated collection of games on iPhone, iPad, Mac, and Apple TV. (Not all Apple Arcade games are available on Mac and Apple TV.)

You can subscribe to Apple Arcade or to Apple One, which includes Apple Arcade and other services. See the Apple Support article Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One.

Note: Apple Arcade and Apple One aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services. The availability of Apple Arcade games across devices varies based on hardware and software compatibility. Some content may not be available in all areas. See the Apple Support article Apple Arcade game availability across devices.

Subscribe to Apple Arcade

1. In the App Store, tap Arcade, then tap the subscription button.
2. Review the free trial (if eligible) and subscription details, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Share Apple Arcade with family members

When you subscribe to Apple Arcade or Apple One, you can use Family Sharing to share Apple Arcade with up to five other family members. Your family group members don't need to do anything—Apple Arcade is available to them the first time they open the App Store app after your subscription begins.

If you join a family group that subscribes to Apple Arcade or Apple One, and you already subscribe, your subscription isn't renewed on your next billing date; instead, you use the group's subscription. If you join a family group that doesn't subscribe, the group uses your subscription.

Note: To stop sharing Apple Arcade with a family group, you can cancel the subscription, leave the family group, or (if you're the family group organizer) stop using Family Sharing.

Play Apple Arcade games on your Apple devices

If you subscribe to Apple Arcade, you can play and access your game progress on your compatible Apple devices where you're signed in with your Apple ID. (Not all Apple Arcade games are available on Mac and Apple TV.)

See the Apple Support article Access your Apple Arcade gameplay data on all of your devices.

Change or cancel your Apple Arcade subscription

Go to Settings > [*your name*] > Subscriptions, tap Apple Arcade, then follow the onscreen instructions.

If you cancel your subscription, you can't play any Apple Arcade games, even if you downloaded them to your device. Delete the apps if you don't want them anymore.

You can resubscribe to play Apple Arcade games again and regain access to your gameplay data. If you wait too long, some of your gameplay data might not be supported after you resubscribe.

See also

Get games from the App Store on iPhone

Play with friends in Game Center on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Get apps

Next
Get games

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Get games from the App Store on iPhone

In the App Store app, you can find your next game across dozens of categories including action, adventure, racing, puzzles, and more.

Note: Game Center, Apple Arcade, and Apple One aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services. The availability of Apple Arcade games across devices varies based on hardware and software compatibility. Some content may not be available in all areas. See the Apple Support article Apple Arcade game availability across devices.

Find games

Tap any of the following:

- *Games:* Explore new releases, see the top charts, or browse by category.
- *Arcade:* Enjoy the curated collection of premium games from Apple Arcade (subscription required) without ads or in-app purchases.
- *Search:* Tap the search bar, enter what you're looking for, then tap Search on the keyboard.

Get more info about a game

Tap a game to see the following information and more:

- Screenshots or previews
- In-app events
- Ratings and reviews
- Supported languages
- Game Center and game controller support
- Compatibility with other Apple devices
- File size
- Privacy information; see Manage the information you share with people and apps

Buy and download a game

1. Tap the price. If the game is free, tap Get.

   If you see instead of Get or the price, you've already purchased this game before. Tap to download it again for free.

2. If required, authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode to complete your purchase.

See also

Play with friends in Game Center on iPhone

Connect a game controller to iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Play with friends in Game Center on iPhone

In Game Center, you can send friend requests, manage your user profile, earn achievements, compete on leaderboards, and play with friends during a FaceTime call.

Set up your Game Center profile

1. Go to Settings > Game Center, then sign in with your Apple ID.
2. Do any of the following:
   - *Choose a nickname:* Tap Nickname, then enter a name or choose one of the suggestions. Your friends see your nickname when you play games together.
   - *Personalize your avatar:* Tap Edit Avatar, then create a new Memoji, use an existing Memoji, or customize how your initials appear.

To view your Game Center profile, achievements, recent games, friends, and their activity, go to Settings > Game Center > [*your profile*].

Add friends

1. Go to Settings > Game Center.
2. Tap Invite Friends, then enter their phone number or Apple ID, or tap to invite someone in your contacts list in the Contacts app.
3. Recipients can respond to friend requests in any of the following ways:
   - In Messages, tap the link.
   - In a supported game, tap the Game Center profile picture, tap Friends, then tap Friend Requests.
   - In the App Store, tap or your picture at the top right, tap Game Center, then tap Friend Requests.

In your list of friends, tap a friend to see games they recently played and their achievements.

You can also add a friend in the Contacts app (available if you and your friend are using iOS 16.1, iPadOS 16.1, or later). Open their contact card, then tap Add Friend in Game Center. After your friend accepts the request, you can view their Game Center profile from their contact card.

Play games with friends using SharePlay

You can find and download a Game Center multiplayer game in the App Store and play with friends while on a FaceTime call.

During the call, open a supported multiplayer game, tap Start SharePlay, then follow the onscreen instructions.

See Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together in FaceTime on iPhone.

Report a user or remove a friend

You can report a user for cheating, an inappropriate picture or nickname, or another problem. You can also remove someone from your Friends list.

1. Go to Settings > Game Center > [*your profile*] > Friends.
2. Tap the friend you want to report or remove, tap , then choose Report User or Remove Friend.

Set Game Center restrictions

You can set restrictions for multiplayer games, adding friends, private messaging, and more.

1. Go to Settings > Screen Time > Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.
2. Tap Content Restrictions, scroll down to Game Center, then set restrictions.

See also

Get games from the App Store on iPhone

Connect a game controller to iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Get games

Next
Connect a game controller

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Connect a game controller to iPhone

You can connect a compatible game controller to your iPhone through Bluetooth® or the Lightning or USB-C connector. You can customize the buttons and even add a second controller to get help from a friend.

Pair a Bluetooth game controller

1. Follow the instructions that came with the controller to put it in discovery mode.
2. On iPhone, go to Settings > Bluetooth, turn on Bluetooth, then tap the name of the device.

See the Apple Support article Connect a wireless game controller to your Apple device.

Connect a game controller through the Lightning or USB-C connector

If you have a compatible game controller, you can connect it to iPhone using the Lightning or USB-C connector. Depending on your iPhone model and controller, you may need a an adapter (sold separately). Follow the instructions that came with your controller.

Customize the game controller buttons

After you pair or connect a compatible game controller, you can customize the buttons for supported games from Apple Arcade and the App Store.

1. Go to Settings > General > Game Controller.
2. Tap the buttons you want to change.
3. To customize for a specific app, tap Add App.

Add a second game controller and get help from a friend

With Buddy Controller, iPhone combines two controllers to drive a single player in a game so a friend can help you get to the next level. Buddy Controller is compatible with any game that supports game controllers.

1. Connect two compatible game controllers to iPhone through Bluetooth or the Lightning or USB-C connector.
2. Go to Settings > General > Game Controller > Buddy Controller.
3. Choose the primary controller, then choose the secondary controller.

See also

Get games from the App Store on iPhone

Subscribe to Apple Arcade on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Play with friends in Game Center

Next
Use App Clips

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Use App Clips on iPhone

An App Clip is a small part of an app that lets you do a task quickly, like rent a bike, pay for parking, or order food. You can discover App Clips in Safari, Maps, and Messages, or in the real world through NFC tags, QR codes, and App Clip Codes—unique markers that take you to specific App Clips.

NFC integrated

Scan only

Get and use an App Clip

1. Get an App Clip from any of the following:
   - *App Clip Code or QR code:* Scan the code using the iPhone camera or Code Scanner in Control Center.
   - *NFC-integrated App Clip Code or NFC tag:* Hold iPhone near the NFC tag.
   - *Maps:* Tap the App Clip link on the information card (for supported locations).
   - *Safari or Messages:* Tap the App Clip link.
2. When the App Clip appears on the screen, tap Open or Play.

In supported App Clips, you can use Sign in with Apple, then make a payment using Apple Pay.

With some App Clips, you can tap the banner at the top of the screen to see the full app.

Find an App Clip you used on iPhone

Go to App Library, tap the search field at the top of the screen, then scroll down to the end of the alphabetical list.

Remove App Clips

- *Remove a specific App Clip:* Go to App Library, tap the search field at the top of the screen, enter the name of the App Clip, then touch and hold the app icon.
- *Remove all App Clips:* Go to Settings > App Clips.

See also

Get apps in the App Store on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Manage App Store purchases, subscriptions, settings, and restrictions on iPhone

In the App Store app, you can manage subscriptions and review and download purchases made by you or other family members. You can also set restrictions and customize your preferences for the App Store in Settings.

Approve purchases with Family Sharing

With Family Sharing set up, the family organizer can review and approve purchases made by other family members under a certain age. See Turn on Ask to Buy for a child later.

Find and download apps purchased by you or family members

1. Tap or your picture at the top right, then tap Purchased.
2. If you set up Family Sharing, tap My Purchases or choose a family member to view their purchases.

   Note: You can see purchases made by family members only if they choose to share their purchases. Purchases made with Family Sharing may not be accessible after the family member leaves the family group.
3. Find the app you want to download (if it's still available in the App Store), then tap.

Change or cancel your App Store subscriptions

1. Tap or your picture at the top right, then tap Subscriptions.

   You may need to sign in with your Apple ID.
2. Choose a subscription, then do any of the following:

   - Change or cancel an existing subscription.
   - Resubscribe to an expired subscription.
   - Share an eligible App Store subscription with other family members in your Family Sharing group.

Change your App Store settings

Go to Settings > App Store, then do any of the following:

- *Automatically download apps purchased on your other Apple devices:* Below Automatic Downloads, turn on App Downloads.
- *Automatically update apps:* Turn on App Updates.
- *Download in-app content in the background:* Turn on In-App Content to download content before you first open an app.

- *Allow app downloads to use cellular data:* Below Cellular Data, turn on Automatic Downloads. To choose whether you want to be asked for permission for downloads over 200 MB or all apps, tap App Downloads.
- *Automatically play app preview videos:* Turn on Video Autoplay.
- *Automatically remove unused apps:* Turn on Offload Unused Apps. You can reinstall an app at any time if it's still available in the App Store.

Set content restrictions and prevent in-app purchases

After you turn on content and privacy restrictions, do the following.

1. Go to Settings > Screen Time > Content & Privacy Restrictions > Content Restrictions.
2. Set restrictions such as the following:
   - *Apps:* Restrict apps by age ratings.
   - *App Clips:* Prevent App Clips from opening.

See also

Find settings on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use App Clips

Next
Install and manage fonts

Support > iPhone User Guide > Manage App Store purchases, subscriptions, settings, and restrictions on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Install and manage fonts on iPhone

You can download fonts from the App Store app and use them in documents you create on iPhone.

1. After you download an app containing fonts from the App Store, open the app to install the fonts.
2. To manage installed fonts, go to Settings > General, then tap Fonts.

See also

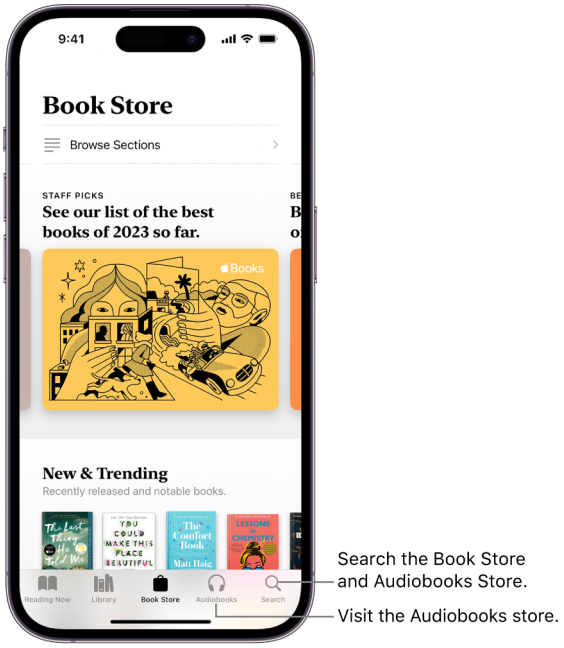
Get apps in the App Store on iPhone

Find settings on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Buy books and audiobooks on iPhone

In the Books app, you can find today's bestsellers, view top charts, explore series, and browse lists curated by Apple Books editors. After you select a book or audiobook, you can read or listen to it right in the Books app.



1. Open the Books app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Book Store or Audiobooks to browse titles, or tap Search to look for a specific title, author, series, or genre.

   Tip: Tap Browse Sections at the top of the screen to view titles in categories like Top Charts and Book Clubs, or genres like Biographies & Memoirs and Young Adults.
3. Tap a book cover to see more details, read a sample, listen to a preview, or mark as Want to Read.
4. Tap Buy to purchase a title, or tap Get to download a free title.

   All purchases are made with the payment method associated with your Apple ID.

You can allow books and audiobooks to download automatically over your cellular network when you aren't connected to Wi-Fi. Go to Settings > Books, then turn on Automatic Downloads. Tap Downloads, then choose Always Allow, Ask If Over 200 MB, or Always Ask.

See also

Read books in the Books app on iPhone

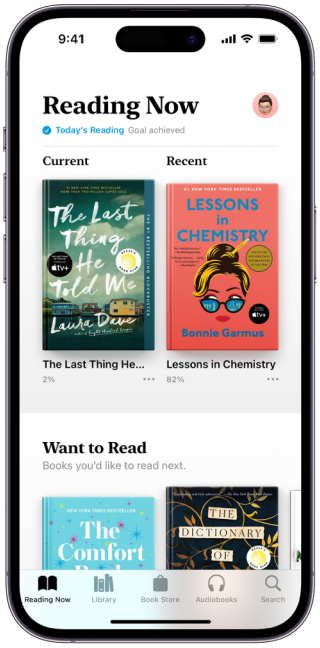
Listen to audiobooks in Books on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Read books in the Books app on iPhone

In the Books app, you can view the books you're currently reading, want to read, book collections, and more.

- *Reading Now:* Tap to access the books and audiobooks you're currently reading as well as recommendations and suggestions for your next read. Scroll down to see books and audiobooks you've added to your Want To Read collection and books you've sampled. You can also set daily reading goals and keep track of the books you finish throughout the year.
- *Library:* Tap to see all of the books, audiobooks, series, samples, and PDFs you either got from the Book Store or manually added to Books. Tap Collections to see your library sorted into collections, such as Want to Read, My Samples, Audiobooks, Finished, or custom collections you created (see Create a collection).



Read a book

At the bottom of the screen, tap Reading Now or Library, tap a book cover, then do any of the following:

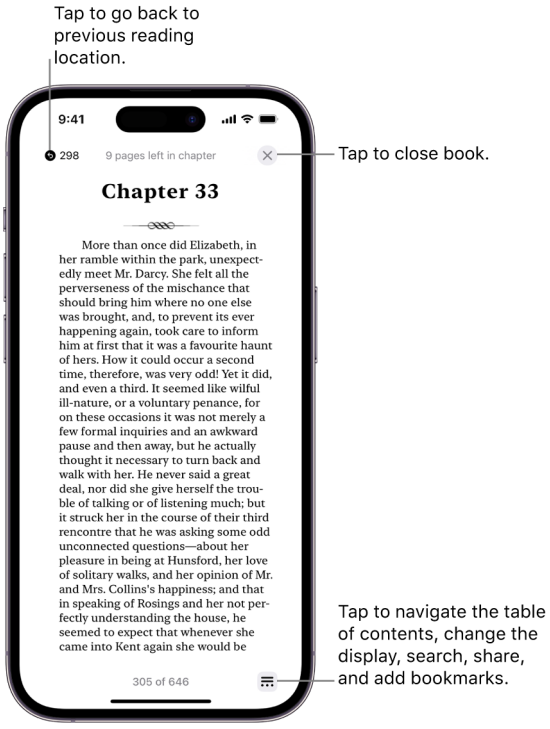
- *Turn the page:* Tap the right margin or swipe right to left.

  To allow either the left or right margin to turn the page, go to Settings > Books, then turn on Both Margins Advance.

- *Go back to the previous page:* Tap the left margin or swipe left to right.
- *Go back to previous reading location:* Tap the page, then tap the rounded arrow in the top-left corner of the page. Tap the rounded arrow again, but in the top-right corner, to go back to your current location.
- *Go to a specific page or location:* Tap the page, tap, tap Search Book, enter a word, phrase, or page number, then tap a result.
- *Use the table of contents:* Tap the page, tap, then tap Contents.

Tip: To quickly move through a book, touch and hold Contents, then drag your finger left or right; release your finger to go directly to that location in the book.

- *Lock screen orientation:* Tap the page, tap , then tap to lock the screen in horizontal or vertical orientation.
- *Close a book:* Tap the page, then tap in the top-right corner. Or swipe down from the top of the page (not available if vertical scrolling is turned on).



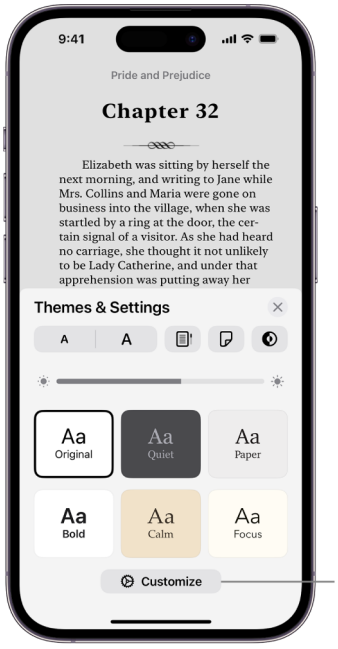
Change text and page appearance

1. Tap the page, tap at the bottom of the page, tap Themes & Settings, then do any of the following:

   - *Change the font size:* Tap the large A to increase the font size or tap the small A to decrease it.
   - *Turn on vertical scrolling:* Tap to scroll continuously through a book; tap again to undo vertical scrolling.

     For PDFs, tap AA at the top of the screen, then turn on Vertical Scrolling.
   - *Change the page turn style:* Tap , then tap an option.
   - *Adjust the background color:* Tap , then tap an option.
   - *Adjust the display brightness:* Touch the brightness bar, then drag your finger in either direction.
   - *Change the page theme:* Tap a page theme such as Quiet or Bold.
   - *Change the font:* Tap Customize, then tap Font. Swipe up to view the font options. Tap a font name, such as Original or Palatino, to see a preview at the top of the screen. Tap Done to apply the font.
   - *Make the font bold:* Tap Customize, tap the button next to Bold Text (green is on), then tap Done.
   - *Customize spacing and justification:* Tap Customize, then below Accessibility & Layout Options, turn on Customize (green is on). Drag the sliders left or right to adjust line spacing, character spacing, and word spacing. You can also turn Justify Text on or off (green is on). Tap Done to apply your changes.

2. Tap or swipe down to close the menu.



Note: You can choose on which side of the screen the Menu button appears. Go to Settings > Books, then choose Left or Right below Reading Menu Position.

To undo text and layout customizations, tap , tap Customize, then tap Reset Theme.

Bookmark a page

When you close a book, your place is saved automatically—you don't need to add a bookmark. Bookmark pages you want to return to again.

Tap the page, tap , then tap ; tap it again to remove the bookmark.

To access all your bookmarks, tap the page, tap , tap Bookmarks & Highlights, then tap Bookmarks.

Share a text selection or book link

You can send text selections using AirDrop, Mail, or Messages, or you can add the selection to Notes. If the book is from the Book Store, a link to the book is included with the selection. (Sharing may not be available in all countries or regions.)

1. Touch and hold a word, then move the grab points to adjust the selection.
2. Swipe right on the menu items, then tap Share.
3. Tap Mail, Messages, or another app or service to share the selection.

You can also share a link to view the book in the Book Store. Tap any page, tap , tap , then tap how you want to share the link.

See also

Annotate books in the Books app on iPhone

Listen to audiobooks in Books on iPhone

Organize books in the Books app on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

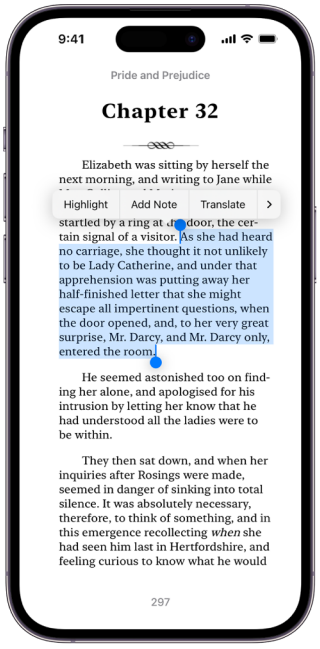
Buy books and audiobooks

Annotate books

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Annotate books in the Books app on iPhone

You can highlight, underline, and take notes as you read books in the Books app.



Highlight or underline text

1. Touch and hold a word, then move the grab points to adjust the selection.
2. Tap Highlight.

   To change the highlight color or switch to underline, tap the text, tap Highlight, then tap an option.

   To remove a highlight or underline, tap the text, then tap Remove Highlight.

To see all of your highlights, tap the page, tap , tap Bookmarks & Highlights, then tap Highlights. Tap a highlight to go to that location in the book.

Add a note

1. Touch and hold a word, then move the grab points to adjust the selection.
2. Tap Add Note, enter text, then tap Done.

   To remove a note, tap the highlighted text, then tap Delete Note.

To see all of your notes, tap the page, tap , tap Bookmarks & Highlights, then tap Highlights.

See also

Read books in the Books app on iPhone

Set reading goals in Books on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Read books

Next
Access books on other Apple devices

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Access books on other Apple devices in the Books app on iPhone

You can access the books and audiobooks in the Books app on other devices such as your iPad and Mac. You can also sync your reading position, highlights, notes, library collections, and more.

Access your books on your other devices

To keep your Books content and information updated across your other iPhone and iPad devices, sign in with the same Apple ID on each device, then do any of the following:

- *Automatically download purchases made on other devices:* Go to Settings > Books, then turn on Purchases from Other Devices (green is on).
- *Sync reading position, bookmarks, notes, and highlights:* Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > iCloud Drive, then turn on Sync this iPhone. Tap iCloud, then tap Show All and turn on Books.
- *Sync Reading Now, Library, and collections:* Go to Settings > Books, then below Syncing, turn on Reading Now and iCloud Drive (green is on).

Access your books on your Mac

To see your books, audiobooks, and PDFs on your Mac, do one of the following:

- *macOS 13 or later:* Choose Apple menu > System Settings, click [*your name*] at the top of the sidebar, then click iCloud on the right. Click iCloud Drive, click Apps syncing to iCloud Drive, then select Books. Click Back, then click Done. (If you don't see your name, click Sign in with your Apple ID to enter your Apple ID or to create one.)
- *macOS 10.15–12.5:* Choose Apple menu > System Preferences, then click Apple ID. Click iCloud in the sidebar, then select iCloud Drive. Click Options, then select Books.
- *macOS 10.14 or earlier:* Choose Apple menu > System Preferences, then click iCloud. Select iCloud Drive, click Options, then select Books.

To see your collections, bookmarks, notes, and highlights on your Mac, open Books, then do one of the following:

- *macOS 13 or later:* Choose Books > Settings, click General, then select "Collections, bookmarks, and highlights."
- *macOS 12.5 or earlier:* Choose Books > Preferences, click General, then select "Collections, bookmarks, and highlights."

See also

Buy books and audiobooks on iPhone

Annotate books in the Books app on iPhone

Previous
Annotate books

Next
Listen to audiobooks

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Listen to audiobooks in Books on iPhone

Use the Books app to listen to audiobooks on your iPhone.

Play an audiobook

Tap Reading Now or Library, then tap an audiobook cover to play it.

While the audiobook is playing, do any of the following:

- *Skip forward or back:* Tap or touch and hold the rounded arrows next to the pause button. Or, use external controls such as headphones or car controls.

  Note: To change the number of seconds to skip forward or back, go to Settings > Books. Below Audiobooks, tap Skip Forward or Skip Back, then tap an option.

- *Go to a specific time:* Drag the slider below the audiobook cover left or right.
- *Adjust the volume:* Drag the slider below the pause button left or right.
- *Speed it up, or slow it down:* Tap the playback speed, 1x, in the lower-left corner to choose a different speed.
- *Set a sleep timer:* Tap, then choose a duration.
- *Play on a different device:* Tap, then choose an available device such as HomePod, Apple TV, or Bluetooth® speakers.
- *Go to a chapter:* Tap, then tap a chapter.

  Note: Some audiobooks refer to chapters as *tracks*, or don't define chapters.

- *Switch to the audiobook mini-player:* Tap — or swipe down anywhere on the screen; tap the mini-player at the bottom of the screen to go back to full screen.
- *Close the audiobook player:* Tap —, or touch and hold the mini-player, then tap Close Audio Player.

If a Wi-Fi connection to the internet isn't available, audiobooks play over your carrier's cellular network, which may result in additional fees. To manage cellular data usage, see View or change cellular data settings on iPhone.

Find supplemental PDFs

Some audiobooks come with supplemental PDFs.

To find the PDFs, tap ••• below the audiobook cover in your library, then tap View PDF Content.

See also

Buy books and audiobooks on iPhone

Play audio from iPhone on HomePod and other wireless speakers

Helpful? Yes No

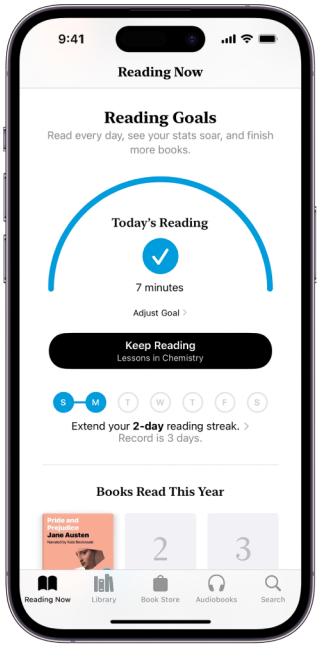
Previous
Access books on other Apple devices

Next
Set reading goals

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Set reading goals in Books on iPhone

The Books app helps you keep track of how many minutes you read every day, and how many books and audiobooks you finish each year. You can customize your goals to spend more time reading, set new reading streaks, and share your achievements with friends.



Change your daily reading goal

You can adjust your daily reading goal depending on how many minutes you want to read per day. If you don't customize your daily reading goal, it's set to five minutes per day.

1. Tap Reading Now, then swipe down to Reading Goals.
2. If you're adjusting the goal for the first time, tap Today's Reading, then tap Adjust Goal.

   If you've changed your goal before and you want to change it again, tap Adjust Goal.
3. Slide the counter up or down to set the minutes per day that you want to read.

   Note: To count PDFs toward your reading goal, go to Settings > Books, then turn on Include PDFs (green is on).

When you reach your daily reading goal, you receive a notification from Books; tap it to get more details about your achievement, or send your achievement to friends.

Tip: To make sure you receive reading goals notifications, tap your account in the top-right corner of Reading Now. Tap Notifications, tap Allow Notifications on This iPhone, turn on Goal Completion (green is on), then tap Done.

Change your yearly reading goal

After you finish reading a book or audiobook in Books, the Books Read This Year collection appears below Reading Goals. The default yearly reading goal is three books per year, but you can increase or decrease your goal depending on how many books you want to finish.

1. Tap Reading Now, then swipe down to Books Read This Year.
2. Tap a placeholder square, or a book cover, then tap Adjust Goal.
3. Slide the counter up or down to set the books per year that you want to read, then tap Done.

See your reading streaks and records

Books lets you know how many days in a row you reach your daily reading goal and notifies you when you set a record.

To view your current reading streak and record, tap Reading Now, then swipe down to Reading Goals.

Turn off reading goals

Go to Settings > Books, then turn off Reading Goals.

When Reading Goals is turned off, the reading indicators in Reading Now are hidden and you don't receive reading notifications.

Turn coaching notifications off and on

You can turn on coaching to receive encouragement, and nudges to help you reach your reading goals.

1. Tap Reading Now, then tap your account icon in the top-right corner.
2. Tap Notifications, then tap the button next to Coaching (green is on).
3. Tap Done.

Turn reading goals notifications off and on

Books sends you notifications when you achieve a reading goal or set a reading streak. You can turn these notifications off and on.

1. Tap Reading Now, then tap your account in the top-right corner.
2. Tap Notifications, then tap the button next to Goal Completion (green is on).
3. Tap Done.

Clear reading data

To clear your reading data, such as time spent reading and reading streaks, go to Settings > Books, then tap Clear Reading Goals Data.

See also

Buy books and audiobooks on iPhone

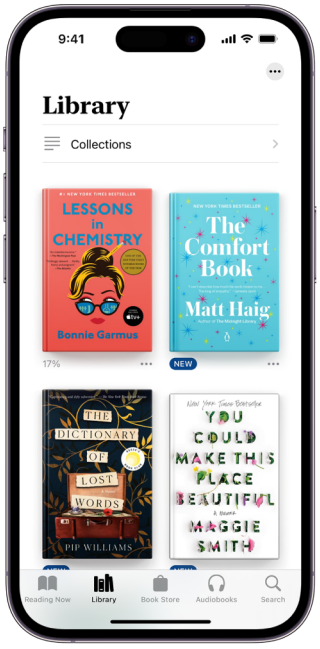
Read books in the Books app on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Organize books in the Books app on iPhone

In the Books app, the books and audiobooks you purchase are saved in your library and automatically sorted into collections, such as Audiobooks, Want to Read, and Finished.



Create a collection

You can create your own collections to personalize your Library.

1. Open the Books app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, tap Collections, then tap New Collection.
3. Name the collection, for example, *Beach Reads* or *Book Club*, then tap Done.

Add a book to a collection

You can add a book from your library or from the Book Store to the collections you create.

1. Open the Books app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Book Store or Library to view books.
3. Tap ••• below a book cover.
4. Tap Add to Collection, then tap the collection you want to add it to.

Tip: You can add the same book to multiple collections.

Organize your books

You can change how the books in your library or a collection are displayed and sorted.

1. Open the Books app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, tap ···, then do either of the following:
   - *Change the book display:* Tap Grid or List.
   - *Change the book order:* Tap Recent, Title, Author, or Manual.

     If you choose Manual, touch and hold a book cover, then drag it to the position you want.

Remove books, audiobooks, and PDFs

You can remove or hide books, audiobooks, and PDFs from Reading Now, Library, and your library collections.

1. Open the Books app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Reading Now, Library, or a collection in your Library, then tap ••• next to the title you want to remove.
3. Tap Remove, then choose an option.

   Note: If you choose Remove Download, the content and data associated with the title are no longer stored on your iPhone. To redownload the title, tap •••, then tap Download. If you choose Hide Book, the book won't appear in your library or collections. To unhide books and audiobooks, tap Reading Now, tap your account icon, then tap Manage Hidden Purchases.

You can automatically remove downloads from your iPhone after you finish a book. Tap Library, then tap ··· at the top of the screen. Tap Remove Downloads, then tap Automatically When Finished.

Delete a collection

1. Open the Books app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap Collections.
3. Swipe left on the collection you want to delete, then tap Delete.

   Note: Deleting a collection doesn't delete the books or audiobooks in the collection; they're still in your library.

See also

Annotate books in the Books app on iPhone

Access books on other Apple devices in the Books app on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Set reading goals

Next
Read PDFs

Support › iPhone User Guide › Organize books in the Books app on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Read PDF documents in Books on iPhone

In the Books app, you can open and save PDFs that you receive in Mail, Messages, and other apps.

Open PDFs in Books

1. Tap the PDF attachment to open it.
2. Tap .
3. Tap ••• from the list of share options, then tap Books.

Share or print a PDF document

1. Tap the PDF attachment to open it.
2. Tap , then choose a share option such as AirDrop, Mail, or Messages, or tap Print.

See the Apple Support article About AirPrint.

Mark up a PDF

Open the PDF and tap to use the drawing and annotation tools (tap near the center of a page if you don't see).

See also

Find supplemental PDFs

Write and draw in documents with Markup on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use Calculator on iPhone

In the Calculator app, you can perform basic arithmetic calculations with the standard calculator. Or use the scientific calculator for exponential, logarithmic, and trigonometric functions.

Siri: Say something like: “What’s 74 times 9?” or “What’s 18 percent of 225?” Learn how to use Siri.

Use the scientific calculator

Rotate iPhone to landscape orientation.

Copy, delete, or clear numbers

- *Copy a calculation result:* Touch and hold the calculation result in the display, tap Copy, then paste the result somewhere else, such as a note or message.
- *Delete the last digit:* If you make a mistake when you enter a number, swipe left or right on the display at the top.
- *Clear the display:* Tap the Clear (C) key to delete the last entry, or tap the All Clear (AC) key to delete all entries.

See also

Use the timer or stopwatch

Use the compass

Helpful? Yes No

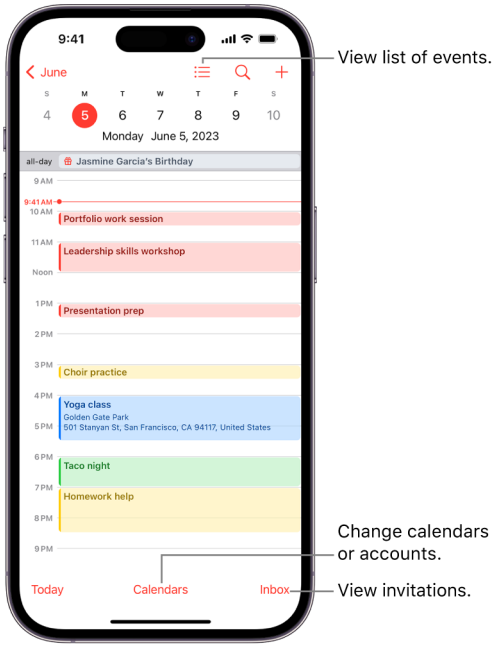
Previous
Read PDFs

Next
Create and edit events in Calendar

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Create and edit events in Calendar on iPhone

Use the Calendar app to create and edit events, appointments, and meetings.



Siri: Say something like:

- "Set up a meeting with Gordon at 9"
- "Do I have a meeting at 10?"
- "Where is my 3:30 meeting?"

Learn how to use Siri

Add an event

1. In Day view, tap + at the top of the screen.
2. Enter the title of the event.
3. Tap Location or Video Call, then enter a physical location or tap FaceTime to enter a video link for a remote event.

   You can also copy a FaceTime link you created or received and paste it in the Location field. See Create a link to a FaceTime call on iPhone.
4. Enter the start and end times for the event, the travel time, invitees, attachments, and so on. (Swipe up, if necessary, to enter all the meeting information.)
5. Tap Add.

Add an alert

You can set an alert to be reminded of an event beforehand.

1. Tap the event, then tap Edit near the top right.
2. In the event details, tap Alert.
3. Choose when you want to be reminded.

   For example, “At time of event,” “5 minutes before,” or another choice.

   Note: If you add the address of the event’s location, Calendar uses Apple Maps to look up locations, traffic conditions, and transit options to tell you when it’s time to leave.

Add an attachment

You can add an attachment to a calendar event to share with invitees.

1. Tap the event, then tap Edit near the top right.
2. In the event details, tap Add attachment.
3. Locate the file you want to attach.

   To find the file, you can enter its name in the search field, scroll, tap folders to open them, tap Browse to look in other locations (such as iCloud Drive), and so on. See Modify files and folders in Files on iPhone.
4. Tap Done.

To remove the attachment, tap the event, tap Edit near the top right, swipe left over the attachment, then tap Remove.

Find events in other apps

Siri can suggest events found in Mail, Messages, and Safari—such as flight reservations and hotel bookings—so you can add them easily in Calendar.

1. Go to Settings > Calendar > Siri & Search.
2. Turn on Show in App to allow Siri to suggest events found in other apps.

To allow Siri to make suggestions in other apps based on how you use Calendar, turn on Learn from this App.

Copy and paste an event

You can copy an event and paste it to another date.

1. Touch and hold the event, then tap Copy.
2. On another date, touch and hold the time where you want to paste the event.

   When you release, the New Event screen appears and the copied event appears below Title with the date and time where you want to paste the event.

   Tip: You can also tap + at the top of the screen after copying an event.
3. Tap the copied event below Title.
4. Tap Add.

Edit an event

You can change the time of an event and any of the other event details.

- *Quickly change the event time or duration:* In Day or Week view, touch and hold the event, then drag it to a new time, or adjust the grab points.

- *Change event details:* Tap the event, tap Edit near the top right, then in the event details, tap a setting to change it, or tap in a field to type new information.

Delete an event

In Day view, tap the event, then tap Delete Event at the bottom of the screen.

See also

Send invitations in Calendar on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Calculator

Next
Send invitations

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

This manual was copied from Apple Support website
and compiled by www.iphone15manual.com

Table of Contents

Send invitations in Calendar on iPhone

In the Calendar app, you can send meeting and event invitations. iCloud, Microsoft Exchange, and some CalDAV servers also let you send meeting invitations. (Not all calendar servers support every feature.)

Before you begin

Before you can invite people to events you've scheduled, you need to make sure your calendar accounts are turned on.

- Go to Settings > Calendar > Accounts, then select an account.
- Check if Calendar is turned on.

  For more information on how to add calendars, see Set up multiple calendars on iPhone.

Invite others to an event

You can invite people to an event you've scheduled.

1. Tap the event, then tap Edit near the top of the screen.
2. Tap Invitees.
3. Do any of the following:

   - *Add a name from your contacts:* Enter a contact's name, tap the name, then tap Done.

     You can also tap to select contacts.

   - *Add an email address:* Enter an email address, tap Return, then tap Done.

   Note: In order to send a calendar invitation to a contact, the contact must have an email address. See Add and use contact information on iPhone.

   To make an invitation optional, tap Invitees, swipe left on the name or email address of the person you've invited, then tap Make Optional.
4. When you're finished, tap Done.

If you don't want to be notified when someone declines a meeting, go to Settings > Calendar, then turn off Show Invitee Declines.

Note: With Microsoft Exchange and some other exchange servers, you can invite people to an event even if you're not the one who scheduled it.

Schedule an event without blocking your schedule

You can add an event to your calendar without having the timeframe appear as busy to others who send you invitations.

1. Tap the event, then tap Edit.
2. Tap Show As, then tap Free.

Quickly email attendees

You can email all attendees of an event—for example, to share event details.

1. Tap an event that has attendees.
2. Tap Invitees, then tap ✉.

See also

Reply to invitations in Calendar on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Create and edit events in Calendar

Next
Reply to invitations

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Reply to invitations in Calendar on iPhone

In the Calendar app, reply to meeting and event invitations you've received.

Reply to an event invitation

1. To respond to an event notification, tap it.

   Or, in Calendar, tap Inbox, then tap an invitation.

2. Tap your response—Accept, Maybe, or Decline.

To respond to an invitation you receive by email, tap the underlined text in the email, then tap Show in Calendar.

If you add comments to your response, your comments can be seen by the organizer but not by other attendees (comments may not be available for all calendars). To see events you declined, tap Calendars at the bottom of the screen, then turn on Show Declined Events.

Suggest a different meeting time

You can suggest a different time for a meeting invitation you've received.

1. Tap the meeting, then tap Propose New Time.

2. Tap the time, then enter a new one.

Depending on the capabilities of your calendar server, the organizer will receive either a counter-proposal or an email with your suggestion.

See also

Send invitations in Calendar on iPhone

Change how you view events in Calendar on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Change how you view events in Calendar on iPhone

In the Calendar app, you can view one day, a week, a month, or a year at a time, or view a list of upcoming events. To change your view of Calendar, do any of the following:

- *Zoom in or out:* Tap a year, month, or day to zoom in or out on your calendar. In Week or Day view, pinch to zoom in or out.
- *View a weekly calendar:* In Day view, rotate iPhone sideways.
- *View a list of events:* In Month view, tap to see the day's events. (Tap again to return to Month view.)

See also

Search for events in Calendar on iPhone

Change calendar and event settings on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Search for events in Calendar on iPhone

In the Calendar app, you can search for events by title, invitees, location, and notes.

Tap, then, in the search field, enter the text you want to find.

Siri: Say something like: "What's on my calendar for Friday?" Learn how to use Siri.

See also

Change calendar and event settings on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Change calendar and event settings on iPhone

You can change default settings for the Calendar app to make it easier to create new events and to display your calendar in a way that works best for you. For example, you can choose the default calendar for new events, change the duration of new events, and more.

Choose a default calendar

If you have multiple calendars, you can choose a default calendar, and any new events you create are added to that calendar automatically.

1. Go to Settings > Calendar > Default Calendar.
2. Select the calendar you want to use as your default calendar.

Note: You can always move an event to a different calendar after you create it. To find out more about using multiple calendars, see Set up multiple calendars on iPhone.

Set default event settings

You can change default settings for calendar events, such as the duration for new events, whether to be alerted when it's time to leave for an upcoming event, and more.

1. Go to Settings > Calendar.
2. Do any of the following:

- *Choose when to get alerts for different types of events:* Tap Default Alert Times, tap Birthdays, Events, or All-Day Events, then choose an option.
- *Choose whether to be alerted when it's time to leave for an upcoming event:* Tap Default Alert Times, then turn Time to Leave on or off.
- *Change the default duration for new events:* Tap Duration for New Events, then choose a length of time.
- *Choose whether Calendar suggests a location when you create a new event:* Turn Location Suggestions on or off.

Change how your calendar is displayed

You can customize the way your calendar is displayed to help highlight the information that's most important to you. For example, you can choose which day you want to start the week with, display the Chinese, Hebrew, or Islamic calendar (alongside the Gregorian calendar), and more.

1. Go to Settings > Calendar.
2. Do any of the following:

- *Choose a different day to start the week:* Tap Start Week On, then tap a day.
- *Display the week number next to every week of the year:* Turn on Week Numbers.

- *Display the Chinese, Hebrew, or Islamic calendar:* Tap Alternate Calendars, then choose a calendar.
- *Show the current day as the first day in Week view:* Tap Week View Starts On Today.

See also

Schedule or display events in a different time zone in Calendar on iPhone

Keep track of events in Calendar on iPhone

Change how you view events in Calendar on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

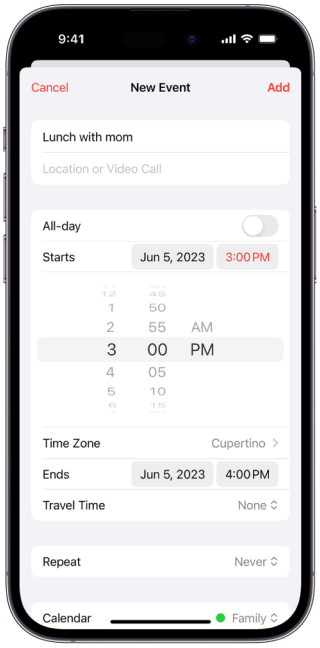
Previous
Search for events

Next
Schedule or display events in a different time zone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Schedule or display events in a different time zone in Calendar on iPhone

In the Calendar app, events appear according to the time zone of your current location. However, you can schedule an event in a different time zone from the one currently shown in Calendar. You can also set your calendar to always display a specific time zone, even if you travel to a different location.



Change the time zone for a new event

You can create and edit events in Calendar and change the time zone of the event—even if it's different from the time zone you're currently in. For example, if you live in New York, you can create or edit an event and schedule it according to the time zone in another location—like Chicago.

1. Open the Calendar app on your iPhone.
2. Tap + at the top of the screen.
3. Add the event details (title, location, travel time, attachments, and so on).
4. Enter the start and end times for the event, then tap Time Zone.
5. Search for a location, tap it, then tap Add.

Note: You can edit the time zone of the event later if you need to.

Always display your calendar in a specific time zone

You can override the default time zone setting so you can display Calendar in the time zone of your choice. This can be helpful if you're working remotely and need to keep track of the time when scheduling meetings with your colleagues in a different time zone. For example, if you live in San Francisco, but your job is based out of Boston, you can override the time zone of your current location and view your calendar events according to the time zone in Boston.

1. Go to Settings > Calendar.
2. Tap Time Zone Override, then tap Time Zone Override to turn it on.
3. Tap Time Zone, search for a location (like Boston, for example), then tap the location.

Events created before you turn on Time Zone Override appear in the new time zone, but also show the original time zone used when they were created.

Note: Time Zone Override only changes the time zone shown in the Calendar app.

See also

Keep track of events in Calendar on iPhone

Create and edit events in Calendar on iPhone

Set up multiple calendars on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Change calendar and event settings

Next
Keep track of events

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Keep track of events in Calendar on iPhone

In the Calendar app, you can customize the notifications that let you know about upcoming calendar events, invitations, and more. You can also make sure your events and other calendar information are kept up to date on all your devices.

Customize Calendar notifications

1. Go to Settings > Notifications > Calendar.
2. Turn on Allow Notifications.
3. Choose how and where you want the notifications to appear—for example, on the Lock Screen, in Notification Center, as banners at the top of the screen, with an alert sound, and so on.

Turn on customized notifications for specific calendar events

After customizing Calendar notifications, you can choose whether you want them to appear for specific occasions—like upcoming events or invitee responses, for example.

1. Go to Settings > Notifications > Calendar.
2. Scroll down and tap Customize Notifications.
3. Turn the specific customized notifications on or off.

Keep your calendar up to date across your devices

You can use iCloud to keep your calendar information up to date on all your devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud, then turn on Calendars.

Note: If you don't see Calendars, tap Show All to see more options.

If you don't want to use iCloud for your calendar, you can sync your calendar information between your iPhone and your computer. See Sync supported content.

See also

Set up multiple calendars on iPhone

Sign in to your iPhone with Apple ID

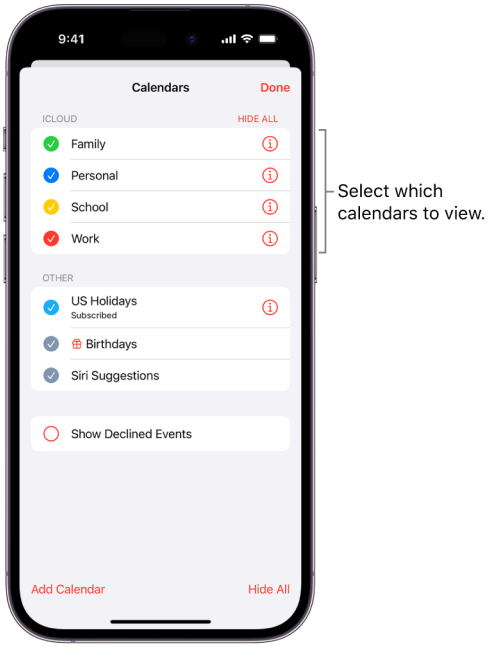
Schedule or display events in a different time zone

Use multiple calendars

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Set up multiple calendars on iPhone

In the Calendar app, you can set up multiple calendars to keep track of different kinds of events. You can keep track of all your events and appointments in one calendar, but additional calendars are easy to set up and a great way to stay organized.



Set up a calendar

1. Tap Calendars at the bottom of the screen, then tap Add Calendar.
2. Do one of the following:

   - *Create an iCloud calendar:* Tap Add Calendar, enter a name for the calendar, then choose a color for it.
   - *Subscribe to an external, read-only calendar:* Tap Add Subscription Calendar, enter the URL of the .ics file you want to subscribe to (and any other required server information), then click Subscribe.
   - *Add a Holiday calendar:* Tap Add Holiday Calendar, tap the holiday calendar you want to subscribe to, then tap Add.

     See Use the Holidays calendar on iPhone.

You can also subscribe to an iCalendar (.ics) calendar by tapping a link to it.

Unsubscribe from a calendar

You can unsubscribe from a calendar you're subscribed to. When you unsubscribe, you can also report the calendar as junk.

1. Tap Calendars at the bottom of the screen.
2. Tap ⓘ next to the calendar you want to unsubscribe from.

3. Tap Unsubscribe, then Tap Unsubscribe or Unsubscribe and Report Junk.

   Note: When you tap Unsubscribe and Report Junk, the calendar is reported to Apple as a suspected junk subscription.

See multiple calendars at once

To view multiple calendars, tap Calendars at the bottom of the screen, then do any of the following:

- Select the calendars you want to view.
- Tap US Holidays to include national holidays with your events.
- Tap Birthdays to include birthdays from Contacts with your events.

Turn on calendar event alerts

You can turn on event notifications for calendars you create or subscribe to.

1. Tap Calendars at the bottom of the screen.
2. Tap ⓘ next to a calendar.
3. Turn Event Alerts on or off.
4. Tap Done.

Change a calendar's color

1. Tap Calendars at the bottom of the screen.
2. Tap ⓘ next to the calendar, then choose a color.
3. Tap Done.

For some calendar accounts, such as Google, the color is set by the server.

Set up iCloud, Google, Exchange, or Yahoo calendar accounts

1. Go to Settings > Calendar > Accounts > Add Account.
2. Do any of the following:

   - Tap a mail service (iCloud, Microsoft Exchange, or Google, for example), then sign in.
   - Tap Other, tap Add CalDAV Account or Add Subscribed Calendar, then enter your server and account information.

Add a CalDAV account

1. Go to Settings > Calendar > Accounts > Add Account > Other.
2. Tap Add CalDAV account.
3. Enter your server and account information.

Move an event to another calendar

Tap the event, tap Calendar, then select a calendar to move the event to.

See also

Use the Holidays calendar on iPhone

Use iCloud calendar subscriptions

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Keep track of events

Next
Use the Holidays calendar

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Use the Holidays calendar on iPhone

In the Calendar app, the Holidays calendar displays holidays based on the region set on your iPhone.

Note: The Holidays calendar is a subscription calendar. You can't add or delete holidays, because subscription calendars can be modified only by the calendar provider.

Show or hide holidays

1. Tap Calendars at the bottom of the screen.
2. Select or deselect US Holidays (or the holiday calendar for your country or region).

Add a holiday calendar from a different region

1. Tap Calendars at the bottom of the screen.
2. Tap Add Calendar, then tap Add Holiday Calendar.
3. Tap the holiday calendar you want to subscribe to, then tap Add.

To change settings, like notification alerts or the name of a holiday calendar you've subscribed to, see Set up multiple calendars on iPhone.

See also

Share iCloud calendars on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Share iCloud calendars on iPhone

In the Calendar app, you can share an iCloud calendar with other iCloud users. When you share a calendar, others can see it, and you can let them add or change events. You can also share a read-only version that anyone can view but not change.

Create an iCloud calendar

1. Tap Calendars at the bottom of the screen.
2. Tap Add Calendar.
3. Tap Add Calendar, enter a name for the new calendar, then tap Done.

   If iCloud isn't your default calendar, tap Accounts, then tap iCloud. See Change calendar and event settings on iPhone.

Share an iCloud calendar

You can choose to share a calendar with one or more people in iCloud. Those you invite receive an invitation to join the calendar.

1. Tap Calendars at the bottom of the screen.
2. Tap next to the iCloud calendar you want to share.
3. Tap Add Person, then enter a name or email address, or tap to browse your contacts.

   Note: Your contacts must have an email address to share an iCloud calendar. See Add and use contact information on iPhone.
4. Tap Add, then tap Done.

Change a person's access to a shared calendar

After you invite a person to share your calendar, you can turn on or off their ability to edit the calendar, or stop sharing the calendar with that person.

1. Tap Calendars, tap next to the shared calendar, then tap the person's name.
2. Do any of the following:

   - Turn Allow Editing on or off.
   - Tap Stop Sharing.

Turn off notifications for shared calendars

When someone modifies a calendar you're sharing, you're notified of the change. You can turn off notifications, if you don't want to receive them.

1. Go to Settings > Notifications > Calendar > Customize Notifications.
2. Turn off Shared Calendar Changes.

Share a read-only calendar with anyone

1. Tap Calendars, then tap ⓘ next to the iCloud calendar you want to share.
2. Turn on Public Calendar, then tap Share Link to copy or send the URL for your calendar.
3. Choose a method for sending the URL—Messages, Mail, and so on.

Anyone you send the URL to can use it to subscribe to the calendar using a compatible app, such as Calendar for macOS.

Delete a calendar

1. Tap Calendars at the bottom of the screen.
2. Tap ⓘ next to the iCloud calendar you want to delete.
3. Tap Delete Calendar at the bottom of the list.

See also

Create and edit events in Calendar on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use the Holidays calendar

Next
Camera basics

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

iPhone camera basics

Learn how to take photos with Camera on your iPhone. Choose from camera modes such as Photo, Video, Cinematic, Pano, and Portrait, and zoom in or out to frame your shot.

Open Camera

To open Camera, do any of the following:

- Tap Camera on the iPhone Home Screen.
- Swipe left on the iPhone Lock Screen.
- Touch and hold on the iPhone Lock Screen.
- Open Control Center, then tap .

  Siri: Say something like: "Open Camera." Learn how to use Siri.
- On iPhone 15 Pro and iPhone 15 Pro Max, you can assign the Action button to open Camera. See Customize the Action button on iPhone 15 Pro and iPhone 15 Pro Max.

Note: For your security, a green dot appears in the top-right corner of the screen when Camera is in use. See Control access to hardware features.

Take a photo

Open Camera, then tap the Shutter button or press either volume button to take the shot.

Switch between camera modes

Photo is the standard mode that you see when you open Camera. Use Photo mode to take still photos and Live Photos. Swipe left or right on the camera screen to choose one of the following camera modes:

- *Video:* Record a video; see Record a video.
- *Time-lapse:* Create a time-lapse video of motion over a period of time; see Record a time-lapse video.
- *Slo-mo:* Record a video with a slow-motion effect; see Record a slow-motion video.
- *Pano:* Capture a panoramic landscape or other scene; see Take a panoramic photo.
- *Portrait:* Apply a depth-of-field effect to your photos (on supported models); see Take a portrait in Portrait mode.
- *Cinematic:* Apply a depth-of-field effect to your videos (on supported models); see Record Cinematic videos.
- *Square:* Take photos with a square ratio.

  On iPhone 11 and later, tap, then tap 4:3 to choose between Square, 4:3, or 16:9 aspect ratios.

To save a mode other than Photo as the default mode when you open Camera, see Save camera settings on iPhone.

Zoom in or out

- On all models, open Camera and pinch the screen to zoom in or out.
- On iPhone models with Dual and Triple camera systems, switch between 0.5x, 1x, 2x, 2.5x, 3x, and 5x to quickly zoom in or out (depending on your model). For a more precise zoom, touch and hold the zoom controls, then drag the slider right or left.

See also

Take videos

Take Live Photos

Take a selfie

Take macro photos and videos

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Share iCloud calendars

Next
Set up your shot

Support › iPhone User Guide › iPhone camera basics

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use iPhone camera tools to set up your shot

Before taking a photo, you can use Camera tools to customize and improve your shot.

Adjust the camera's focus and exposure

Before you take a photo, the iPhone camera automatically sets the focus and exposure, and face detection balances the exposure across many faces. If you want to manually adjust the focus and exposure, do the following:

1. Open Camera.
2. Tap the screen to show the automatic focus area and exposure setting.
3. Tap where you want to move the focus area.
4. Next to the focus area, drag up or down to adjust the exposure.

Tip: To lock your manual focus and exposure settings for upcoming shots, touch and hold the focus area until you see AE/AF Lock; tap the screen to unlock settings.

On iPhone 11 and later, you can precisely set and lock the exposure for upcoming shots. Tap, tap, then move the slider to adjust the exposure. The exposure locks until the next time you open Camera. To save the exposure control so it's not reset when you open Camera, go to Settings > Camera > Preserve Settings, then turn on Exposure Adjustment.

Turn the flash on or off

Your iPhone camera is set to automatically use the flash when needed. To manually control the flash before you take a photo, do the following:

- Tap to turn the automatic flash on or off.

- Tap , then tap below the frame to choose Auto, On, or Off.

Take a photo with a filter

Use a filter to give your photo a color effect.

1. Open Camera, then choose Photo or Portrait mode.
2. Tap , then tap .
3. Below the viewer, swipe the filters left or right to preview them; tap one to apply it.
4. Tap the Shutter button to take the shot with the filter you chose.

You can remove or change a photo's filter in the Photos app. See Apply filter effects.

Use the timer

You can set a timer on your iPhone camera to give yourself time to get in the shot.

1. Open Camera, then tap .
2. Tap , then choose 3s or 10s.
3. Tap the Shutter button to start the timer.

Use a grid and level to straighten your shot

To display a grid or level on the camera screen that can help you straighten and compose your shot, go to Settings > Camera, then turn on Grid and Level.

After you take a photo, you can use the editing tools in the Photos app to further align shots and adjust horizontal and vertical perspective. See Straighten and adjust perspective.

See also

iPhone camera basics

Change advanced camera settings on iPhone

Apply Photographic Styles with your iPhone Camera

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Camera basics

Next
Apply Photographic Styles

Support > iPhone User Guide > Use iPhone camera tools to set up your shot

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Apply Photographic Styles with your iPhone Camera

On supported models, you can apply a Photographic Style that customizes how Camera captures photos. Choose from the preset styles—Rich Contrast, Vibrant, Warm, or Cool—then customize them further by adjusting the tone and warmth values. Camera applies your choice every time you take a photo in Photo mode. You can change and adjust Photographic Styles right in Camera.

Choose a Photographic Style

Your iPhone camera is automatically set to Standard—a balanced style that is true to life. To apply a different Photographic Style, do the following:

1. Open Camera, then tap.
2. Tap, then swipe left to preview the different styles:

   - *Rich Contrast:* Darker shadows, richer colors, and stronger contrast create a dramatic look.
   - *Vibrant:* Wonderfully bright and vivid colors create a brilliant yet natural look.
   - *Warm:* Golden undertones create a warmer look.
   - *Cool:* Blue undertones create a cooler look.

   To customize a Photographic Style, tap the Tone and Warmth controls below the frame, then drag the slider left or right to adjust the value. Tap to reset the values.
3. Tap to apply the Photographic Style.

To change or adjust a Photographic Style that you set, tap at the top of the screen. To stop using a Photographic Style, select Standard from the style choices.

You can also change Photographic Styles in Settings: go to Settings > Camera > Photographic Styles.

See also

Use iPhone camera tools to set up your shot

Take portraits with your iPhone camera

Edit photos and videos on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Take Live Photos with your iPhone camera

Use Camera to take Live Photos with your iPhone. A Live Photo captures what happens just before and after you take your photo, including the audio. You take a Live Photo just like you do a normal photo.

1. Open Camera.
2. Make sure Camera is set to Photo mode and that Live Photo is turned on.

   When Live Photo is on, the Live Photo button appears at the top of the camera screen. A slash through the Live Photo button means that the feature is off. Tap the button to turn Live Photo on or off.
3. Tap the Shutter button to take a Live Photo.
4. To play the Live Photo, tap the photo thumbnail at the bottom of the screen, then touch and hold the screen to play it.

To edit and add effects to Live Photos, see Edit Live Photos.

Note: Live Photos aren't available when ProRAW or HEIF Max is turned on. See Take Apple ProRAW photos with your iPhone camera.

See also

Capture action shots with Burst mode on your iPhone camera

Take a selfie with your iPhone camera

iPhone camera basics

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Capture action shots with Burst mode on your iPhone camera

Use Burst mode with Camera to capture a moving subject, or when you want to take multiple high-speed photos so that you have a range of photos to choose from. You can take Burst photos with the rear and front-facing cameras.

1. Open Camera on your iPhone.
2. Swipe the Shutter button to the left.
3. Lift your finger to stop.
4. To select the photos you want to keep, tap the Burst thumbnail, then tap Select.

   Gray dots below the thumbnails mark the suggested photos to keep.
5. Tap the circle in the lower-right corner of each photo you want to save as an individual photo, then tap Done.

To delete the entire Burst, tap the thumbnail, then tap .

Tip: You can also press and hold the volume up button to take Burst shots. Go to Settings > Camera, then turn on Use Volume Up for Burst.

See also

Take Live Photos with your iPhone camera

Record a QuickTake video

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Take a selfie with your iPhone camera

Use Camera to take a selfie. You can take selfies in Photo mode, Portrait mode, or Video mode.

To learn about camera modes, see Switch between camera modes.

1. Open Camera on your iPhone.
2. Tap to switch to the front-facing camera.
3. Hold your iPhone in front of you.

   Tip: Tap the arrows inside the frame to increase the field of view.
4. Tap the Shutter button or press either volume button to take the shot or start recording.

To take a selfie that captures the shot as you see it in the front-facing camera frame, rather than reversing it, go to Settings > Camera, then turn on Mirror Front Camera.

See also

iPhone camera basics

Use iPhone camera tools to set up your shot

Take panoramic photos with your iPhone camera

Previous
Take Burst mode shots

Next
Take panoramic photos

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Take panoramic photos with your iPhone camera

Use Camera to take a panoramic photo of your surroundings in Pano mode.

To learn about camera modes, see Switch between camera modes.

1. Open Camera on your iPhone.
2. Choose Pano mode.
3. Tap the Shutter button.
4. Pan slowly in the direction of the arrow, keeping it on the center line.
5. To finish, tap the Shutter button again.

Tap the arrow to pan in the opposite direction. To pan vertically, rotate iPhone to landscape orientation. You can reverse the direction of a vertical pan, too.

See also

Use iPhone camera tools to set up your shot

Take Live Photos with your iPhone camera

Take a selfie with your iPhone camera

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Take macro photos and videos with your iPhone camera

On supported models, Camera uses the Ultra Wide camera to capture macro photography—stunning close-ups in sharp focus. You can take macro photos and Live Photos, and shoot macro slow-motion and time-lapse videos.

Take a macro photo or video

1. Open Camera on your iPhone, then select Photo or Video mode.
2. Get close to the subject—as close as 2 centimeters. The camera will automatically switch to the Ultra Wide camera.
3. Tap the Shutter button to take a photo or the Record button to start and stop recording video.

Take a macro slow-motion or time-lapse video

1. Open Camera on your iPhone, then select Slo-mo or Time-lapse mode.
2. Tap .5x to switch to the Ultra Wide camera, then move close to the subject.
3. Tap the Record button to start and stop recording.

Control automatic macro switching

You can control when the camera automatically switches to the Ultra Wide camera for capturing macro photos and videos.

1. Open Camera on your iPhone, then get close to your subject.

   When you get within macro distance of your subject, appears on the screen.
2. Tap to turn off automatic macro switching.

   Tip: If the photo or video becomes blurry, you can back up or tap .5x to switch to the Ultra Wide camera.
3. Tap to turn automatic macro switching back on.

To turn off automatic switching to the Ultra Wide camera for macro photos and videos, go to Settings > Camera, then turn off Macro Control.

If you want to maintain your Macro Control setting between camera sessions, go to Settings > Camera > Preserve Settings, then turn on Macro Control.

See also

Change advanced camera settings on iPhone

Take Apple ProRAW photos with your iPhone camera

Customize the Main camera lens

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Take panoramic photos

Next
Take portraits

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Take portraits with your iPhone camera

With Camera on models that support Portrait mode, you can apply a depth-of-field effect that keeps your subject—people, pets, objects, and more—sharp while creating a beautifully blurred foreground and background. You can also apply and adjust different lighting effects to your portraits.

Take a portrait in Portrait mode

1. Open Camera, then select Portrait mode.
2. If prompted, follow the tips onscreen to frame your subject in the yellow portrait box.

   On supported models, tap 1x, 2x, or 3x to switch between different zoom options.

   On iPhone 15 models, you can pinch the iPhone screen to zoom in and out.
3. Drag to choose a lighting effect:

   - *Natural Light:* The face is in sharp focus against a blurred background.
   - *Studio Light:* The face is brightly lit, and the photo has an overall clean look.
   - *Contour Light:* The face has dramatic shadows with highlights and lowlights.
   - *Stage Light:* The face is spotlit against a deep black background.
   - *Stage Light Mono:* The effect is similar to Stage Light, but the photo is in classic black and white.
   - *High-Key Light Mono:* Creates a grayscale subject on a white background.
4. Tap the Shutter button to take the shot.

After you take a photo in Portrait mode, you can remove the portrait effect if you don’t like it. In the Photos app, open the photo, tap Edit, then tap Portrait to turn the effect on or off.

Note: On supported models, Night mode turns on when you take a portrait in low-light situations with the wide (1x) lens. To learn more about Night mode, see Take Night mode photos.

Note: Photographic Styles are applied to portraits that you take in Portrait mode.

Note: On iPhone XR, Stage Light, Stage Light Mono, and High-Key Light Mono are only available when you use the front camera.

Adjust Depth Control in Portrait mode

Use the Depth Control slider to adjust the level of background blur in your portraits.

1. Open Camera, select Portrait mode, then frame your subject.
2. Tap in the top-right corner of the screen.

   The Depth Control slider appears below the frame.
3. Drag the slider to the right or left to adjust the effect.
4. Tap the Shutter button to take the shot.

After you capture a portrait, you can use the Depth Control slider in the Photos app to further adjust the background blur effect. See Edit Portrait mode photos.

Adjust Portrait Lighting in Portrait mode

You can virtually adjust the position and intensity of the Portrait Lighting to sharpen eyes or brighten and smooth facial features.

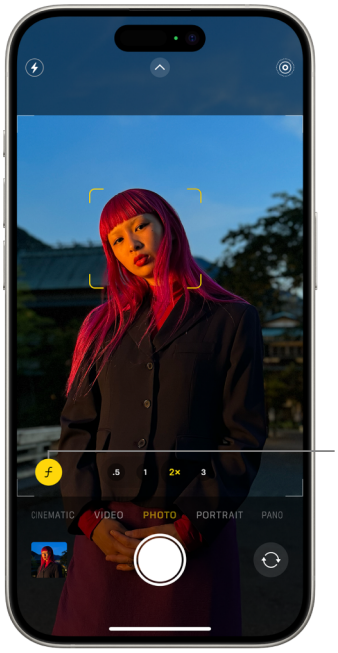
1. Open Camera, select Portrait mode, then drag to choose a lighting effect.
2. Tap at the top of the screen.

   The Portrait Lighting slider appears below the frame.
3. Drag the slider to the right or left to adjust the effect.
4. Tap the Shutter button to take the shot.

After you capture a portrait, you can edit the Portrait Lighting levels in the Photos app. See Edit Portrait mode photos.

Take a portrait in Photo mode

On iPhone 15 models, you can apply the portrait effect and blur the background on photos taken in Photo mode.



1. Open Camera.

   If your iPhone detects a person, dog, or cat, automatically appears at the bottom of the view finder.

   Note: Your iPhone captures depth information when appears while taking photos in Photo mode, so if you decide not to apply the portrait effect when you take the shot, you can apply it later in the Photos app. See Apply the portrait effect to photos taken in Photo mode.

2. If doesn't appear, tap a subject in the view finder to focus on it and will appear. If you want to change the focus point of the portrait, tap a different subject in the view finder.

3. Tap, then tap the Shutter button to take the photo with the portrait effect.

Note: Photographic Styles are applied to portraits that you take in Photo mode.

See also

Edit portraits on iPhone

Take Night mode photos with your iPhone camera

Take macro photos and videos with your iPhone camera

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Take macro photos and videos

Next
Take Night mode photos

Support > iPhone User Guide > Take portraits with your iPhone camera

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Take Night mode photos with your iPhone camera

On supported models, Camera can use Night mode to capture more detail and brighten your shots in low-light situations. The length of the exposure in Night mode is determined automatically, but you can experiment with the manual controls.

Tip: Use a tripod for even more detailed Night mode photos.

Night mode is available on the following iPhone models and cameras:

- *iPhone 15 Pro, iPhone 15 Pro Max, iPhone 14 Pro, iPhone 14 Pro Max, iPhone 13 Pro, and iPhone 13 Pro Max:* Ultra Wide (0.5x) camera, Wide (1x) camera, Telephoto (3x) camera, and front camera
- *iPhone 15 models, iPhone 14 models, iPhone 13 models, and iPhone 12 models:* Ultra Wide (0.5x) camera, Wide (1x) camera, and front camera
- *iPhone 11 models:* Wide (1x) camera

1. Open Camera. In low-light situations, Night mode turns on automatically.
2. Tap at the top of the screen to turn Night mode off and on.
3. To experiment with Night mode, tap, tap in the row of options at the bottom of the screen, then drag the slider left or right to choose between the Auto and Max timers. With Auto, the time is determined automatically; Max uses the longest exposure time. The setting you choose is saved for your next Night mode shot.
4. Tap the Shutter button, then hold your iPhone still to take your shot.

   Crosshairs appear in the frame if your iPhone detects movement during capture—align the crosshairs to help you reduce motion and improve the shot.

   To stop taking a Night mode shot mid-capture, tap the Stop button below the slider.

You can take Night mode selfies and time-lapse videos with all iPhone 12 models, iPhone 13 models, iPhone 14 models, and iPhone 15 models.

You can capture Portrait mode photos with Night mode on all iPhone 12 Pro models, iPhone 13 Pro models, iPhone 14 Pro models, and iPhone 15 Pro models.

See also

Use iPhone camera tools to set up your shot

Take portraits with your iPhone camera

Take Apple ProRAW photos with your iPhone camera

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Take portraits

Next
Take Apple ProRAW photos

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Take Apple ProRAW photos with your iPhone camera

On supported models, you can use Camera to take photos in Apple ProRAW. Apple ProRAW combines the information of a standard RAW format along with iPhone image processing to offer additional creative control when you make adjustments to exposure, color, and white balance.

Apple ProRAW is available on all cameras, including the front camera. Apple ProRAW isn't supported in Portrait mode.

Set up Apple ProRAW

To set up Apple ProRAW on supported models, go to Settings > Camera > Formats, then turn on Apple ProRAW or ProRAW & Resolution Control (depending on your model).

Note: Apple ProRAW photos retain more information about the images, resulting in larger file sizes.

Take a photo with Apple ProRAW

1. Open Camera, then tap RAW or RAW MAX (depending on your model) to turn ProRAW on.
2. Take your shot.

   As you shoot, you can switch between RAW and RAW or RAW MAX and RAW MAX to turn ProRAW on and off.

   To preserve your ProRAW setting, go to Settings > Camera > Preserve Settings, then turn on Apple ProRAW or ProRAW & Resolution Control.

To learn more about Apple ProRAW, see the Apple Support article About Apple ProRAW.

Change Apple ProRAW default resolution and format

On iPhone 15 Pro, iPhone 15 Pro Max, iPhone 14 Pro, and iPhone 14 Pro Max, you can set your ProRAW default resolution to 12 MP, 48 MP, or HEIF 48 MP.

1. Go to Settings > Camera > Formats.
2. Turn on ProRAW & Resolution Control.
3. Tap Pro Default, then choose HEIF Max, ProRAW 12 MP, or ProRAW Max as your default resolution and format.

   Note: If you've chosen Most Compatible as your Camera Capture setting, JPEG Max is used instead of HEIF Max.

See also

Record ProRes videos with your iPhone camera

Change advanced camera settings on iPhone

Save camera settings on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Take Night mode photos

Next
Adjust the shutter volume

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Adjust the shutter volume on your iPhone camera

You can adjust the sound of the Camera shutter, or mute it using the Ring/Silent switch on the side of your iPhone.

Change the volume of the shutter sound in Photo mode

1. In Camera, switch to Photo mode.
2. Open Control Center, then drag up or down.
3. Swipe up from the bottom of the screen to go back to Camera.

   Note: The shutter doesn't make a sound when Live Photos is turned on (except in some countries and regions).

Mute the shutter sound

Mute the shutter sound using the Ring/Silent switch on the side of your iPhone. To put iPhone in Silent mode, set the Ring/Silent switch so that the switch shows orange. To turn off Silent mode, set the switch back.

iPhone 15 Pro and iPhone 15 Pro Max have an Action button instead of a Ring/Silent switch. The Action button can be used to turn Silent mode on or off, in addition to other functions. See Customize the Action button on iPhone 15 Pro and iPhone 15 Pro Max.

Note: In some countries and regions, you can't mute the shutter sound.

See also

Adjust the volume on iPhone

Take Live Photos with your iPhone camera

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Adjust HDR camera settings on iPhone

HDR (high dynamic range) in Camera helps you get great shots in high-contrast situations. iPhone takes several photos in rapid succession at different exposures and blends them together to bring more highlight and shadow detail to your photos.

By default, iPhone takes photos in HDR (for the rear camera and the front camera) when it's most effective. iPhone 12 models, iPhone 13 models, iPhone 14 models, and iPhone 15 models record video in HDR to capture true-to-life color and contrast.

Turn off automatic HDR

By default, iPhone automatically uses HDR when it's most effective. On some iPhone models, you can manually control HDR instead.

On iPhone Xs, iPhone Xʀ, iPhone 11 models, iPhone SE (2nd generation), and iPhone 12, go to Settings > Camera, then turn off Smart HDR. Then from the camera screen, tap HDR to turn it off or on.

Turn HDR video off and on

On iPhone 12 models, iPhone 13 models, iPhone 14 models, and iPhone 15 models, iPhone records video in Dolby Vision HDR for true-to-life color and contrast. To turn off HDR video recording, go to Settings > Camera > Record Video, then turn off HDR Video.

See also

Change advanced camera settings on iPhone

Record videos with your iPhone camera

Record ProRes videos with your iPhone camera

Change the camera's video recording settings on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Record videos with your iPhone camera

Use Camera to record videos and QuickTake videos on your iPhone. Learn how to change modes to take Cinematic, slow-motion, and time-lapse videos.

Record a video

1. Open Camera, then select Video mode (see Switch between camera modes).
2. Tap the Record button or press either volume button to start recording. While recording, you can do the following:
   - Press the white Shutter button to take a still photo.
   - Pinch the screen to zoom in and out.
   - For a more precise zoom, touch and hold 1x, then drag the slider (on supported models).
3. Tap the Record button or press either volume button to stop recording.

Note: For your security, a green dot appears at the top of the screen when Camera is in use. See Control access to hardware features on iPhone.

Record HD or 4K video

Depending on your iPhone model, you can record video in high-quality formats, like HD, 4K, HD (PAL), and 4K (PAL).

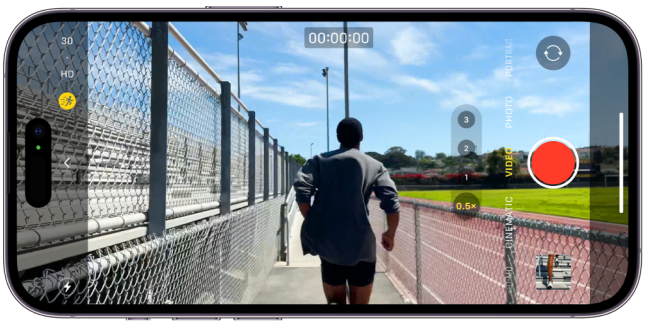
1. Go to Settings > Camera, then tap Record Video.
2. Select from the list of video formats and frame rates that your iPhone supports.

   Note: Faster frame rates and higher resolutions result in larger video files.

Note: PAL is a television video format used in many countries and regions in Europe, Africa, Asia, and South America.

Use Action mode

On iPhone 14 models and iPhone 15 models, Action mode provides improved stabilization while recording in Video mode. Tap at the top of the screen to turn Action mode on and to turn it off.



Note: Action mode works best in bright light. If you want to use Action mode in lower light, go to Settings > Camera, tap Record Video, then turn on Action Mode Lower Light. Action mode has a maximum capture resolution of 2.8K.

Record a QuickTake video

A QuickTake video is a video you record in Photo mode. While you record a QuickTake video, you can move the Record button into the lock position and keep taking still photos.

1. Open Camera, then touch and hold the Shutter button to start recording a QuickTake video.
2. Slide the Shutter button to the right and let go over the lock for hands-free recording.
   - Both the Record and Shutter buttons appear below the frame—tap the Shutter button to take a still photo while recording.
   - Swipe up to zoom in on your subject, or if you're recording hands-free, you can pinch out on the screen to zoom in.
3. Tap the Record button to stop recording.

Tip: Press and hold the volume up or volume down button to start recording a QuickTake video in Photo mode.

Tap the thumbnail to view the QuickTake video in the Photos app.

Record a slow-motion video

When you record a video in Slo-mo mode, your video records as normal and you see the slow-motion effect when you play it back. You can also edit your video so that the slow-motion action starts and stops at a specific time.

1. Open Camera, then select Slo-mo mode.

   On iPhone 11 models, iPhone 12 models, iPhone 13 models, iPhone 14 models, and iPhone 15 models, you can tap to record in Slo-mo mode with the front camera.
2. Tap the Record button or press either volume button to start recording.

   You can tap the Shutter button to take a still photo while recording.
3. Tap the Record button or press either volume button to stop recording.

To set a portion of the video to play in slow motion and the rest at regular speed, tap the video thumbnail, then tap Edit. Slide the vertical bars below the frame viewer to define the section you want to play back in slow motion.

Depending on your model, you can change the slow motion frame rate and resolution. To change slow-motion recording settings, go to Settings > Camera, then tap Record Slo-mo.

Tip: Use quick toggles to adjust the video resolution and frame rate while you record. See Use quick toggles to change video resolution and frame rate.

Record a time-lapse video

Capture footage at selected intervals to create a time-lapse video of an experience over a period of time—such as a setting sun or traffic flowing.

1. Open Camera, then select Time-lapse mode.
2. Set up your iPhone where you want to capture a scene in motion.
3. Tap the Record button to start recording; tap it again to stop recording.

Tip: On iPhone 12 models and later, use a tripod to capture time-lapse videos with more detail and brightness when recording in low-light situations.

See also

Record ProRes videos with your iPhone camera

Change the camera's video recording settings on iPhone

Trim video length and adjust slow motion on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Adjust HDR camera settings

Next
Record ProRes videos

Support › iPhone User Guide › Record videos with your iPhone camera

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Table of Contents

Record ProRes videos with your iPhone camera

On supported models, you can use Camera to record and edit videos in ProRes, which offers higher color fidelity and less compression.

ProRes is available on all cameras, including the front camera. ProRes isn't supported in Cinematic, Time-lapse, or Slo-Mo mode.

Note: ProRes videos result in larger file sizes.

Set up ProRes

To set up ProRes, go to Settings > Camera > Formats, then turn on Apple ProRes.

Record a video with ProRes

1. Open Camera, select Video mode, then tap ProRes HDR to turn ProRes on.
2. Tap the Record button or press either volume button to start recording.

   While recording with the rear camera, you can pinch to zoom in or out, tap .5x, 1x, 2x, 3x, and 5x (depending on your model) to switch between lenses, or touch and hold the lens chooser, then slide the dial for more precise zoom control.
3. Tap the Record button or press either volume button to stop recording.
4. Tap ProRes HDR when you want to turn off ProRes.

ProRes is available for recording up to 4K at 30 fps. iPhone 15 Pro and iPhone 15 Pro Max can record 4K at 60 fps when connected to a compatible external storage device.

On 128 GB iPhone models, recording is only available at 1080p at 30 fps, with the exception of iPhone 15 Pro 128 GB models, which can record in 4K up to 60 fps when connected to a compatible external storage device. For more information, see the Apple Support article About Apple ProRes on iPhone.

Choose color encoding options for your ProRes recordings

On iPhone 15 Pro and iPhone 15 Pro Max, you can choose between HDR, SDR, or Log color encoding when you record video in ProRes.

1. Go to Settings > Camera > Formats, then turn on Apple ProRes.
2. Tap ProRes Encoding, then tap HDR, SDR, or Log.

See also

Change the camera's video recording settings on iPhone

Record videos with your iPhone camera

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Record videos

Next
Record video in Cinematic mode

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Record video in Cinematic mode with your iPhone camera

Cinematic mode applies a depth-of-field effect that keeps the subject of your video sharp while creating a beautifully blurred foreground and background. iPhone automatically identifies the subject of the video and keeps it in focus throughout the recording; if a new subject is identified, iPhone automatically transitions the point of focus. You can also manually adjust the point of focus while you record, or change it later in the Photos app.

Cinematic mode is available on supported models.

1. Open Camera, then select Cinematic mode.

   On supported models, you can tap 3 next to 1x before recording to zoom in.

   On iPhone 15 models, you can pinch the iPhone screen to zoom in and out.

   To adjust the depth-of-field effect, tap ƒ, then drag the slider left or right before recording.

2. Tap the Record button or press either volume button to start recording.

   - A yellow frame on the screen indicates the person in focus; a gray frame indicates a person is detected, but not in focus. Tap the gray box to change the focus; tap again to lock the focus on that person.
   - If there isn't a person in the video, tap anywhere on the screen to set the focus point.
   - Touch and hold the screen to lock the focus at a single distance.

3. Tap the Record button or press either volume button to stop recording.

Tip: On iPhone 14 models and iPhone 15 models, you can use quick toggles at the top of the screen to change the video resolution and frame rate.

After you record a video in Cinematic mode, you can remove or change the cinematic effect. See Edit Cinematic mode videos on your iPhone.

See also

Edit Cinematic mode videos on your iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Change the camera's video recording settings on iPhone

By default, Camera records video at 30 frames per second (fps). Depending on your iPhone model, you can choose other frame rates and video resolution settings. Faster frame rates and higher resolutions result in larger video files.

You can also use quick toggles to easily change video resolution and frame rates right on the camera screen.

Use quick toggles to change video resolution and frame rate

In Video mode, use quick toggles at the top of the screen to change the video resolution and frame rates available on your iPhone.

Tap the quick toggles in the top-right corner to switch between HD or 4K recording and 24, 25, 30, or 60 fps in Video mode, depending on your model.

On iPhone 14 models and iPhone 15 models, quick toggles are available in Cinematic mode to switch between HD or 4K and 24, 25, or 30 fps.

Adjust Auto FPS settings

iPhone can improve the video quality in low-light situations by automatically reducing the frame rate to 24 fps.

Go to Settings > Camera > Record Video, then, depending on your model, do one of the following:

- Tap Auto FPS, then apply Auto FPS to only 30-fps video or to both 30- and 60-fps video.
- Turn on Auto Low Light FPS.

Turn stereo recording on and off

iPhone uses multiple microphones to achieve stereo sound.

To turn off stereo recording, go to Settings > Camera, then turn off Record Stereo Sound.

Turn HDR video off and on

On supported models, iPhone records video in HDR and shares HDR videos with devices using iOS 13.4, iPadOS 13.4, macOS 10.15.4, or later; other devices receive an SDR version of the same video.

To turn off HDR recording, go to Settings > Camera > Record Video, then turn off HDR Video.

Turn Lock Camera on and off

On iPhone 13 models, iPhone 14 models, and iPhone 15 models, the Lock Camera setting prevents automatic switching between cameras while recording video. Lock Camera is off by default.

To turn on Lock Camera, go to Settings > Camera > Record Video, then turn on Lock Camera.

Turn Enhanced Stabilization off and on

On iPhone 14 models and iPhone 15 models, the Enhanced Stabilization setting zooms in slightly to provide improved stabilization while recording in Video mode and Cinematic mode. Enhanced Stabilization is on by default.

To turn off Enhanced Stabilization, go to Settings > Camera > Record Video, then turn off Enhanced Stabilization.

Turn Lock White Balance on and off

You can lock the white balance when recording videos on your iPhone to improve accurate color capture based on lighting conditions.

To turn on Lock White Balance, go to Settings > Camera > Record Video, then turn on Lock White Balance.

See also

Record videos with your iPhone camera

Record ProRes videos with your iPhone camera

Record video in Cinematic mode with your iPhone camera

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Record video in Cinematic mode

Next
Save camera settings

Support > iPhone User Guide > Change the camera's video recording settings on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

This manual was copied from Apple Support website
and compiled by www.iphone15manual.com

Save camera settings on iPhone

You can save the last camera mode, filter, lighting, depth, and Live Photo settings you used so they're not reset when you next open Camera.

1. Go to Settings > Camera > Preserve Settings.
2. Turn on any of the following:
   - *Camera Mode:* Save the last camera mode you used, such as Video or Pano.

     See Switch between camera modes.
   - *Creative Controls:* Save the last settings you used for the filter, lighting option, or depth control.

     See Take a photo with a filter, Adjust Portrait Lighting in Portrait mode, and Adjust Depth Control in Portrait mode.
   - *Macro Control:* Preserve the Auto Macro setting rather than automatically using the Ultra Wide camera to capture macro photos and videos (on iPhone 13 Pro, iPhone 13 Pro Max, iPhone 14 Pro, iPhone 14 Pro Max, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max).

     See Control automatic macro switching.
   - *Exposure Adjustment:* Save the exposure control setting (on iPhone 11 and later).

     See Adjust the camera's focus and exposure.
   - *Night Mode:* Save the Night mode setting rather than reset to Auto (on iPhone 12 models, iPhone 13 models, iPhone 14 models, and iPhone 15 models).

     See Take Night mode photos with your iPhone camera.
   - *Portrait Zoom:* Save the Portrait mode zoom rather than reset to the default lens (on iPhone 11 Pro, iPhone 11 Pro Max, iPhone 12 Pro, iPhone 12 Pro Max, iPhone 13 Pro, iPhone 13 Pro Max, iPhone 14 Pro, iPhone 14 Pro Max, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max).

     See Take portraits with your iPhone camera.
   - *Action Mode:* Keep the Action Mode setting turned on rather than reset to off (on iPhone 14 models).
   - *Apple ProRAW:* Save the Apple ProRAW setting (on iPhone 12 Pro, iPhone 12 Pro Max, iPhone 13 Pro, iPhone 13 Pro Max, iPhone 14 Pro, iPhone 14 Pro Max, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max).

     See Take Apple ProRAW photos with your iPhone camera.
   - *Apple ProRes:* Save the Apple ProRes setting (on iPhone 13 Pro, iPhone 13 Pro Max, iPhone 14 Pro, iPhone 14 Pro Max, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max).

     See Record ProRes videos with your iPhone camera.
   - *Live Photo:* Save the Live Photo setting.

     See Take Live Photos with your iPhone camera.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Change video recording settings

Next
Customize the Main camera lens

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Customize the Main camera lens

On iPhone 15 Pro and iPhone 15 Pro Max, the default for the 1x Main camera lens is 24 mm. You can add 28 mm and 35 mm as secondary lenses, and change which lens is the default Main lens.

1. Go to Settings > Camera > Formats > Photo Mode, then tap 24 MP.
2. Go to Settings > Camera, then tap Main Camera.
3. Below Additional Lenses, turn on the lenses you want to add as additional Main lenses.
4. Below Default Lens, tap the option you want to use for the default Main lens.
5. Swipe up from the bottom of the screen to exit Settings.

Open Camera after setting your Main camera lens. Depending on your selection, the Main camera default lens will be either 1x (24 mm), 1.2x (28 mm), or 1.5x (35 mm). Tap the Main camera lens to switch between the additional lenses you chose.

See also

Change advanced camera settings on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Change advanced camera settings on iPhone

Learn about advanced Camera features that let you capture photos more quickly, apply tailored and enhanced looks to your photos, and view content outside the camera frame.

Change the Main camera resolution

On iPhone 15 models, the Main camera resolution is set to 24 MP by default. You can switch between 12 MP, 24 MP, and 48 MP.

Go to Settings > Camera > Formats > Photo Mode, then choose 12 MP or 24 MP.

To capture resolution at 48 MP, go to Settings > Camera > Formats, then turn on Resolution Control or ProRAW & Resolution Control (depending on your model).

On iPhone 15 Pro and iPhone 15 Pro Max, after you turn on ProRAW & Resolution Control, you can choose the default format; tap Pro Default, then choose an option. Open Camera, then tap the toggle at the top of the screen to turn the format you chose on and off. Touch and hold the toggle to select a different format.

To learn about customizing the Main camera on iPhone 15 Pro and iPhone 15 Pro Max, see Customize the Main camera lens.

Turn View Outside the Frame off and on

On supported models, the camera preview displays content outside the frame to show you what can be captured by using another lens in the camera system with a wider field of view. View Outside the Frame is on by default.

To turn off View Outside the Frame, go to Settings > Camera, then turn off View Outside the Frame.

Turn Prioritize Faster Shooting off and on

The Prioritize Faster Shooting setting modifies how images are processed—allowing you to capture more photos when you rapidly tap the Shutter button. Prioritize Faster Shooting is on by default.

To turn off Prioritize Faster Shooting, go to Settings > Camera, then turn off Prioritize Faster Shooting.

Turn Lens Correction off and on

On supported models, the Lens Correction setting adjusts photos taken with the front camera or Ultra Wide camera for more natural-looking results. Lens Correction is on by default.

To turn off Lens Correction, go to Settings > Camera, then turn off Lens Correction.

Turn Scene Detection off and on

On iPhone 12 models, the Scene Detection setting can identify what you're taking a photo of and apply a tailored look to bring out the best qualities in the scene. Scene Detection is on by default.

To turn off Scene Detection, go to Settings > Camera, then turn off Scene Detection.

See also

Use iPhone camera tools to set up your shot

Save camera settings on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Customize the Main camera lens

Next
View, share, and print photos

Support > iPhone User Guide > Change advanced camera settings on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

View, share, and print photos on iPhone

All photos and videos you take with Camera are saved in Photos. With iCloud Photos turned on, all new photos and videos are automatically uploaded and available in Photos on all your devices that are set up with iCloud Photos (with iOS 8.1, iPadOS 13, or later).

Note: If Location Services is turned on in Settings > Privacy & Security > Locations Services, photos and videos are tagged with location data that can be used by apps and photo-sharing websites. See Control the location information you share on iPhone.

View your photos

1. Open Camera, then tap the thumbnail image in the lower-left corner.
2. Swipe left or right to see the photos you've taken recently.
3. Tap the screen to show or hide the controls.
4. Tap All Photos to see all your photos and videos saved in Photos.

Share and print your photos

1. While viewing a photo, tap .
2. To share your photo, select an option such as AirDrop, Mail, or Messages.
3. To print your photo, swipe up to select Print from the list of actions.

See Use AirDrop on iPhone to send items to nearby devices.

See the Apple Support article Use AirPrint to print from your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch.

Upload photos and keep them up to date across devices

Use iCloud Photos to upload photos and videos from your iPhone to iCloud and then access them on other devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID. iCloud Photos is useful if you want to keep your photos up to date across multiple devices or save space on your iPhone. To turn on iCloud Photos, go to Settings > Photos.

See also

View photos and videos in the Photos app on iPhone

Share photos and videos on iPhone

Import and export photos and videos on iPhone

Previous
Change advanced camera settings

Next
Use Live Text

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Use Live Text with your iPhone camera

Camera can copy, share, look up, and translate text that appears within the camera frame. Camera also provides quick actions to easily call phone numbers, visit websites, convert currencies, and more, based on the text that appears in the frame.

1. Open Camera, then position iPhone so the text appears within the camera frame.
2. After the yellow frame appears around detected text, tap , then do any of the following:
   - *Copy:* Copy text to paste into another app such as Notes or Messages.
   - *Select All:* Select all the text within the frame.
   - *Look Up:* Show personalized web suggestions.
   - *Translate:* Translate text.
   - *Search the web:* Look up the selected text on the web.
   - *Share:* Share text using AirDrop, Messages, Mail, or other available options.

   Note: You can also touch and hold the text, then use the grab points to select specific text and perform the actions above.

   Tap a quick action at the bottom of the screen to do things like make a phone call, visit a website, start an email, convert currencies, and more.
3. Tap to return to Camera.

To turn off Live Text on your iPhone camera, go to Settings > Camera, then turn off Show Detected Text.

Note: Live Text isn't available in all regions or languages. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

See also

Use Live Text to interact with content in a photo or video on iPhone

Scan a QR code with your iPhone camera

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Scan a QR code with your iPhone camera

You can use Camera or the Code Scanner to scan Quick Response (QR) codes for links to websites, apps, coupons, tickets, and more. The camera automatically detects and highlights a QR code.

Use the camera to read a QR code

1. Open Camera, then position iPhone so that the code appears on the screen.
2. Tap the notification that appears on the screen to go to the relevant website or app.

Open the Code Scanner from Control Center

1. Go to Settings > Control Center, then tap next to Code Scanner.
2. Open Control Center, tap the Code Scanner, then position iPhone so that the code appears on the screen.
3. To add more light, tap the flashlight to turn it on.

See also

Use Live Text with your iPhone camera

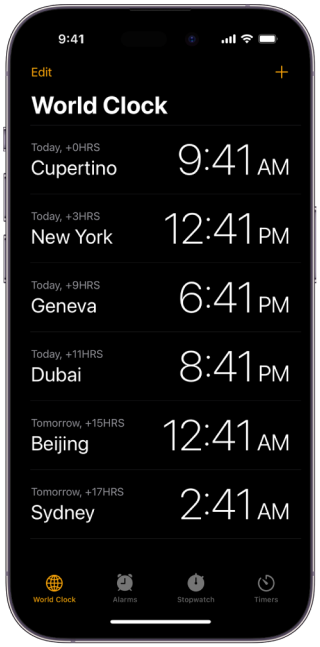
Use Camera to capture an email address

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

See the time worldwide in Clock on iPhone

Use the Clock app to see the local time in different time zones around the world.

Siri: Say something like: "What time is it?" or "What time is it in London?" Learn how to use Siri.



1. Tap World Clock.
2. To manage your list of cities, do any of the following:
   - *Add a city:* Tap +, then choose a city.
   - *Delete a city:* Tap Edit, then tap ⊖.
   - *Reorder the cities:* Tap Edit, then drag ☰ up or down.
3. When you're finished, tap Done.

See also

Set an alarm in Clock on iPhone

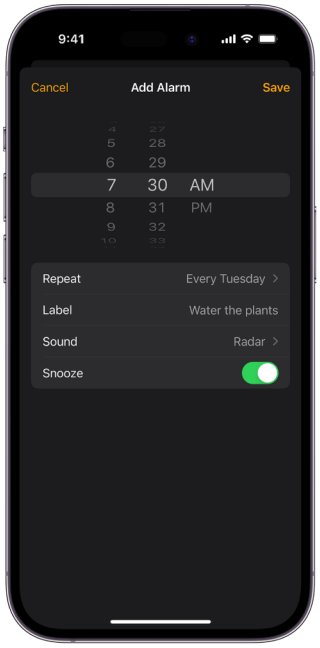
Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Set an alarm in Clock on iPhone

In the Clock app, you can set alarms for any time of day and have them repeat on one or more days of the week.

Siri: Say something like: "Set an alarm for 7 a.m." Learn how to use Siri.

Note: You can also set up a wake up alarm as part of a full sleep schedule (including bedtimes, wake up times, and more) in the Health app. If you don't want to set up a sleep schedule, you can set a regular alarm in Clock for the time you want to wake up.



Set an alarm

You can set alarms for any time, including one for the time you want to wake up. Any alarm you set up in Clock is unrelated to a sleep schedule.

1. Open the Clock app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Alarms, then tap +.
3. Set the time, then choose any of the following options:
   - *Repeat:* Choose the days of the week you want the alarm to repeat.
   - *Label:* Give the alarm a name, like "Water the plants."
   - *Sound:* Choose a vibration, song, or ringtone.
   - *Snooze:* Give yourself 9 more minutes.
4. Tap Save.

To change the alarm, tap the alarm time. Or tap Edit at the top left, then tap the alarm time.

Turn off an alarm

Tap the button next to the alarm time.

Remove an alarm

To remove an alarm, swipe left on the alarm, then tap Delete.

See also

Change the next wake up alarm in Clock on iPhone

Set up your first recurring sleep schedule

Turn off alarms and delete sleep schedules in Health on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
See the world clock

Next
Change the next wake up alarm

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

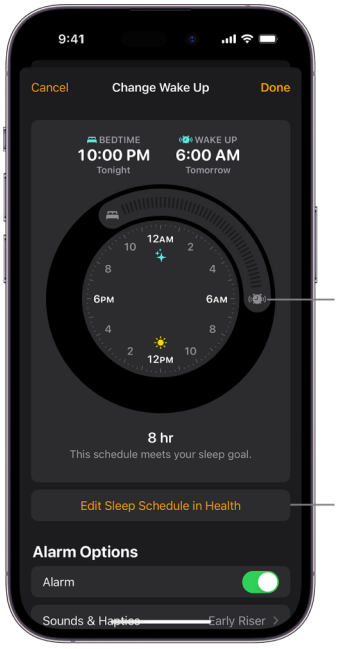
Change the next wake up alarm in Clock on iPhone

In the Clock app, you can change the wake up alarm in your sleep schedule (if you've set up a **sleep schedule** in the Health app). Although you don't set the wake up alarm in Clock, you can make changes to it in Clock.

Change the next wake up alarm

1. Tap Alarms, then tap Change.
2. Drag to change your wake up time, to change your bedtime, or the semicircle between the icons to shift both times simultaneously.
3. Scroll down to Alarm Options, then change any of the following:
   - *Alarm:* Tap to turn the alarm on or off.
   - *Sounds & Haptics:* Tap to choose a vibration or ringtone.
   - *Alarm volume:* Drag the slider.
   - *Snooze:* Turn on to give yourself 9 more minutes of sleep.
4. Tap Done, then choose one of the following:
   - *Change the next wake up alarm:* Tap Change Next Alarm Only.
   - *Update your recurring wake up alarm:* Tap Change This Schedule.

     Note: This option updates the wake up alarm in the sleep schedule.



To make changes to your sleep schedule that extend beyond your next wake up alarm, tap Edit Sleep Schedule in Health. (See Add or change sleep schedules in Health on iPhone.)

Turn off the next wake up alarm

You can turn off the next wake up alarm in your sleep schedule, or you can turn off all wake up alarms for a sleep schedule.

1. Tap Alarms, then tap Change.
2. Scroll down to Alarm Options, then turn off Alarm.
3. Tap Done, then choose to turn off the next alarm or turn off your recurring wake up alarm.

Remove the wake up alarm

You can remove the wake up alarm by deleting or turning off your sleep schedules.

Do one of the following:

- Tap Change, tap Edit Sleep Schedule in Health, then turn off Sleep Schedule.
- Go to the Health app, then delete a sleep schedule or turn off all sleep schedules.

See also

Track time with the stopwatch in Clock on iPhone

Set up your first recurring sleep schedule

Turn off alarms and delete sleep schedules in Health on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Set an alarm

Next
Use the stopwatch

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Track time with the stopwatch in Clock on iPhone

In the Clock app, you can use the stopwatch to measure the duration of an event.

1. Tap Stopwatch.

   To switch between the digital and analog faces, swipe the stopwatch.

2. Tap Start.

   The timing continues even if you open another app or if iPhone goes to sleep.

3. To record a lap or split, tap Lap.

4. Tap Stop to record the final time.

5. Tap Reset to clear the stopwatch.

See also

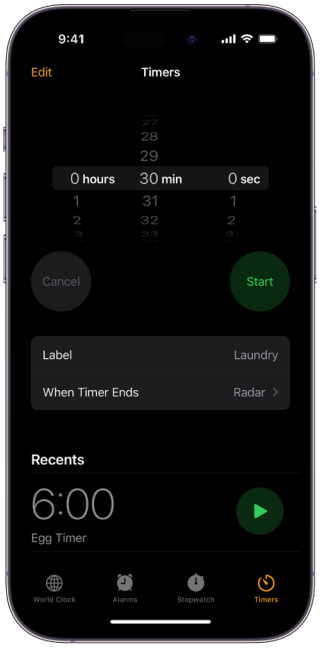
Use multiple timers in Clock on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use multiple timers in Clock on iPhone

In the Clock app, you can set timers to count down from specified times.

Siri: Say something like: "Set the timer for 3 minutes" or "Stop the timer." Learn how to use Siri.



Set a custom timer

1. Open the Clock app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Timers, then set a duration of time.
3. Choose any of the following options:
   - *Label:* Give the timer a name, like "Egg timer."
   - *When Timer Ends:* Choose a sound to play when the timer ends.

   Tip: If you want to fall asleep while playing audio or video, you can set the timer to stop the playback. Tap When Timer Ends, then tap Stop Playing at the bottom.
4. Tap Start.

Note: The timer continues even if you open another app or if iPhone goes to sleep.

When you set a custom timer, it appears below Recent—so you can start the same timer whenever you want.

Create multiple timers

After you start a custom timer, you can add more timers to keep track of different tasks at the same time.

1. Open the Clock app on your iPhone.

2. Tap Timers, then start a timer.
3. Tap + at the top right, then do one of the following:

   - *Add a custom timer:* Set a duration of time, add a label or sound, then tap Start at the top right.
   - *Add a preset timer:* Swipe left below Presets, then tap a preset duration of time (like 1, 5, or 10 minutes).
   - *Add a recent timer:* Tap Start next to a timer you've recently set.

     If you selected a recent or preset timer, tap the timer to edit the label and sound.

To delete a running or paused timer that appears on the Timers screen, swipe left, then tap Delete.

See also

Set an alarm in Clock on iPhone

Track time with the stopwatch in Clock on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use the stopwatch

Next
Compass

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use the compass on iPhone

The Compass app shows you the direction iPhone is pointing, your current location, and elevation.

Note: Your coordinates and elevation may not be available in certain countries or regions.

See your bearings, coordinates, and elevation

Your bearings, coordinates, and elevation are shown at the bottom of the screen.

1. For accurate bearings, hold iPhone flat to align the crosshairs at the center of the compass.
2. To lock your current direction, tap the compass dial.

   A red band appears when you're off course.

To open your location in Maps, tap the coordinates at the bottom of the screen.

Allow Compass to access your location

If Compass doesn't see your location, make sure you've turned on Location Services.

1. Go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Location Services, then turn on Location Services.
2. Tap Compass, then tap While Using the App.

For more information, see Control the location information you share on iPhone.

Important: The accuracy of the compass can be affected by magnetic or environmental interference; even the magnets in the iPhone EarPods can cause a deviation. Use the digital compass only for basic

navigation assistance. Don’t rely on it to determine precise location, proximity, distance, or direction.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use multiple timers

Next
Add and use contact information

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Add and use contact information on iPhone

In the Contacts app, you can view and edit your contacts lists from personal, business, and other accounts. You can also create contacts and set up a contact card with your own information.

Siri: Say something like:

- "What's my brother's work address?"
- "Sarah Milos is my sister"
- "Send a message to my sister"

Learn how to use Siri

Create a contact

Tap +.

Siri also suggests new contacts based on your use of other apps, such as email you receive in Mail and invitations you receive in Calendar. (To turn this feature off, go to Settings > Contacts > Siri & Search, then turn off Show Siri Suggestions for Contacts.)

Based on how you use Contacts, Siri also provides contact information suggestions in other apps. (To turn this feature off, go to Settings > Contacts > Siri & Search, then turn off Learn from this App.) See Siri Suggestions on iPhone.

Find a contact

Tap the search field at the top of the contacts list, then enter a name, address, phone number, or other contact information.

You can also search your contacts using Search (see Search with Spotlight on iPhone).

Share a contact

Tap a contact, tap Share Contact, then choose a method for sending the contact information.

Sharing the contact sends all of the info from the contact's card.

Quickly reach a contact

To start a message, make a phone call or a FaceTime call, compose an email, or send money with Apple Pay, tap a button below the contact's name.

To change the default phone number or email address for a contact method, touch and hold the button for that method below the contact's name, then tap a selection in the list.

Delete a contact

1. Go to the contact's card, then tap Edit.
2. Scroll down, then tap Delete Contact.

See also

Edit contacts on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Compass

Next
Edit contacts

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Edit contacts on iPhone

In the Contacts app, assign a photo to a contact, add a pronunciation, pronouns, change a label, add a birthday, and more.

1. Tap a contact, then tap Edit.
2. Enter or update their contact information.
3. When you're finished, tap Done.

On models with Dual SIM, when you call or text a contact, iPhone uses the same line you used for your previous communication with this contact by default. To choose a preferred line for phone calls and SMS/MMS message conversations, select the contact, tap default (below the contact's name), then choose a line.

To change how your contacts are sorted and displayed, go to Settings > Contacts.

See also

Set sound and vibration options

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Add or edit your contact info and photo on iPhone

iPhone uses your Apple ID to create your contact card, called *My Card,* but you may want to add or edit details—including your name, address, phone number, birthday, photo and Contact Poster you can share with people when you call or message them.

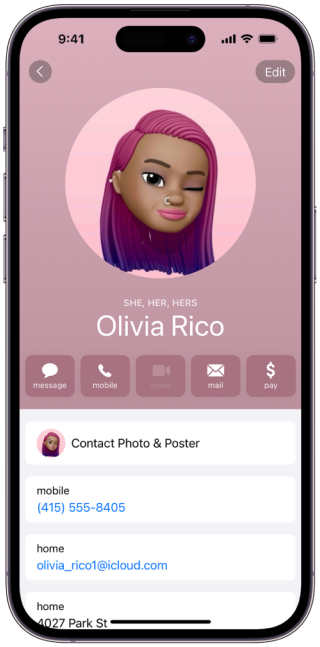
Add or edit your photo and poster

You can set a photo and poster to automatically display when you call or message others. To set or edit your contact photo and poster:

1. Open the Contacts app.
2. Tap My Card at the top, then tap Contact Photo & Poster.
3. (Optionally) Tap Name, then enter your first and last name as you want it to appear to others, then tap Edit to pick a poster or create a new one.
4. Scroll to the bottom and turn on Name & Photo Sharing to start sharing your contact photo and poster with others.

   You can choose to share automatically with Contacts Only, or select Always Ask to be prompted before your name, photo, and poster are shared with anyone you're communicating with.

Add or edit contact pronouns



You can add or edit your or another contact's pronouns in the Contacts app. To add or edit a contact's pronouns:

1. Open the Contacts app.
2. Tap My Card at the top to add your pronouns, or select another contact to add theirs.

3. Tap Edit, then tap Add Pronouns.
4. Select your language and add the correct pronouns.

   You can also add pronouns in other languages by tapping Add Pronouns again.

Note: When you share your contact information through Contacts or NameDrop, by default your pronouns are not shared. When you're sharing another contact's information, their pronouns are never shared.

See Use NameDrop on iPhone to share your contact information with new people.

Complete or edit My Card

Use My Card in the Contacts app to easily share your information with others.

1. Open the Contacts app.
2. Tap My Card at the top, then tap edit.
3. Enter your contact information.

   Contacts suggests addresses and phone numbers to help you set up My Card.

If there is no My Card—tap + and enter your information, then return to the contact list, touch and hold your contact, and tap Make this My Card.

You can also teach Siri how to pronounce your name. See Tell Siri how to say your name.

Create or edit your Medical ID

Tap My Card at the top of your contacts list, tap Edit, scroll down, then tap Create Medical ID or Edit Medical ID.

See also

Use NameDrop on iPhone to share your contact info

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Edit contacts

Next
Use NameDrop on iPhone to share your contact info

Support > iPhone User Guide > Add or edit your contact info and photo on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use NameDrop on iPhone to share your contact info

Use NameDrop on iPhone to share your contact information with new people

You can use NameDrop to quickly share contact information with a nearby iPhone. To use NameDrop:

1. Hold the top of your iPhone near the top of someone else's iPhone to share your contact.

   A glow emerge from the top of both devices to indicate a connection is being made. Continue holding and NameDrop will appear on both screens.

2. You and the recipient can then select the following:

   Receive Only: Receive the other iPhone's contact card.

   Share: Receive the other iPhone's contact card, and share your own as well.

   To cancel, move the two devices away from each other before NameDrop completes.

Note: NameDrop only works for sending new contact information, not updating an existing contact.

Use Contacts on iPhone to share a contact

You can use the Contacts app to share your or another person's contact information to someone else using Messages, Mail, or another option.

1. Open the Contacts app.
2. Select the contact you want to share.
3. Tap Share Contact, select the fields you want to include, then tap Done.

4. Select a method to share the contact, and tap send.

See also

Use other contact accounts on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Add your contact info

Next
Use other contact accounts

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Use other contact accounts on iPhone

You can include contacts from other accounts in the Contacts app.

Use your iCloud contacts

Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud, then turn on Contacts.

Use your Google contacts

1. Go to Settings > Contacts > Accounts, then tap Google.
2. Sign in to your account, then turn on Contacts.

Add contacts from another account

1. Go to Settings > Contacts > Accounts, then tap Add Account
2. Choose an account, sign in to it, then turn on Contacts.

Access a Microsoft Exchange Global Address List

1. Go to Settings > Contacts > Accounts, then tap Exchange.
2. Sign in to your Exchange account, then turn on Contacts.

Set up an LDAP or CardDAV account to access business or school directories

1. Go to Settings > Contacts > Accounts > Add Account, then tap Other.
2. Tap Add LDAP Account or Add CardDAV Account, then enter the account information.

Keep contacts up to date across devices

To keep your contact information up to date across all your devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID, you can use iCloud.

Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud, then turn on Contacts.

Alternatively, you can sync the information between iPhone and your Mac or Windows PC to keep the information up to date across iPhone and your computer. See Sync supported content.

If you use iCloud for Contacts, your contacts are kept up to date automatically, and no options appear for syncing them with your computer.

Import contacts from a SIM card (GSM)

Go to Settings > Contacts > Import SIM Contacts.

Import contacts from a vCard

Tap a .vcf attachment in an email or message.

Add a contact from a directory

1. Tap Lists, then tap the GAL, CardDAV, or LDAP directory you want to search.
2. Tap Done, then enter your search.
3. Tap the person's name to save their info to your contacts.

Show or hide a list

Tap Lists, tap Edit, then select the lists you want to see.

This button appears only if you have more than one source of contacts.

See also

Use Contacts from the Phone app on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use NameDrop on iPhone to share your contact info

Next
Use Contacts from the Phone app

Support > iPhone User Guide > Use other contact accounts on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use Contacts from the Phone app on iPhone

In the Phone app on iPhone, you can call contacts and add recent callers to the Contacts app.

Add a Favorite

You can add VIP contacts to your Favorites list for quick dialing.

Select a contact, scroll down, then tap Add to Favorites.

Calls from these contacts bypass Do Not Disturb (see Turn on or schedule a Focus on iPhone).

Save the number you just dialed

1. In the Phone app, tap Keypad, enter a number, then tap Add Number.
2. Tap Create New Contact, or Add to Existing Contact, then select a contact.

Add a recent caller to Contacts

1. In the Phone app, tap Recents, then tap ⓘ next to the number.
2. Tap Create New Contact, or Add to Existing Contact, then select a contact.

Automate dialing an extension or passcode

If the number you're calling requires dialing an extension, iPhone can enter it for you. When editing a contact's phone number, tap + * #, then do any of the following:

- Tap Pause to enter a two-second pause (a two-second pause is represented as a comma in the phone number).
- Tap Wait to stop dialing until you tap Dial again (wait-to-dial is represented as a semicolon in the phone number).

See also

Create a contact

Share a contact

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Get rid of duplicate contacts on iPhone

In the Contacts app, link contact cards for the same person in different accounts so they appear only once in your All Contacts list. When you have contacts from multiple sources, you might have multiple entries for the same person in Contacts. To keep redundant contacts from appearing in your All Contacts list, contacts from different sources with the same name are linked and displayed as a single *unified contact*.

Resolve duplicate contacts

If you have more than one contact card with the same first and last name, you can merge the duplicate contacts.

1. Below My Card, tap Duplicates Found.
2. Tap individual contacts to review and merge them, or tap Merge All to merge all duplicate contacts.

Link contacts manually

If two entries for the same person aren't linked automatically, you can unify them manually.

1. Tap one of the contacts, tap Edit, then tap Link Contacts.
2. Choose the other contact entry to link to, then tap Link.

When you link contacts with different first or last names, the names on the individual cards don't change, but only one name appears on the unified card. To choose which name appears on the unified card, tap one of the linked cards, tap the contact's name on that card, then tap Use This Name For Unified Card.

Note: When you link contacts, those contacts aren't merged. If you change or add information in a unified contact, the changes are copied to each source account where that information already exists.

See also

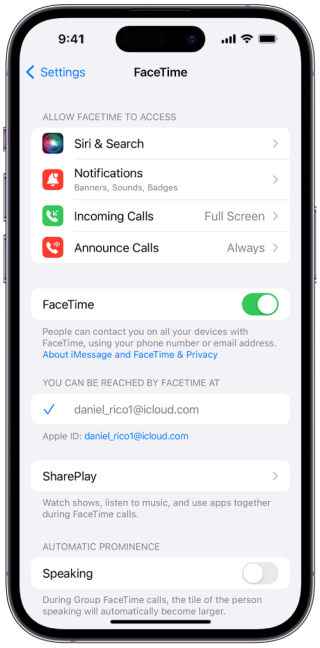
Delete a contact

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Table of Contents

Get started with FaceTime on iPhone

Learn how to use the FaceTime app to visit face-to-face with friends and family—over Wi-Fi or cellular. In a FaceTime call, you can also watch TV shows and movies, listen to music, and even work out together.



Set up FaceTime

To get started with FaceTime, go to Settings > FaceTime, then turn on FaceTime. Below "You can be reached by FaceTime at," enter your Apple ID or phone number, if you haven't already.

Make a FaceTime call

Open the FaceTime app, tap New FaceTime, then enter the name or phone number of the person (or people) you want to call. Tap to make a video call or to make an audio call (not available in all countries or regions). You can talk with up to 32 people on a call.

If you want to call someone who doesn't have an Apple device, you can create and send a link to the call in Messages or Mail. To get started, open FaceTime, then tap Create Link.

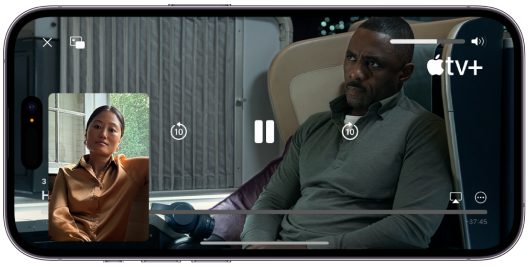
Use the FaceTime controls

While on a FaceTime call, use the FaceTime controls to turn your speaker, camera, or mic on or off, take a Live Photo, and more. If you don't see the controls, tap your screen.

Watch, listen, and play together

To get started sharing music or video together, or working out together during a FaceTime call, tap in the FaceTime controls (if you don't see , tap the screen).

Scroll through the apps below Listen and play together, then select one (for example, TV, Music, or Fitness).



Want to learn more?

- Add people to a FaceTime call
- Share your screen during a FaceTime call
- Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together in FaceTime
- Change your FaceTime video settings
- Change your FaceTime audio settings

Note: Not all features and content are available in all countries or regions.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Merge or hide duplicate contacts

Next
Make FaceTime calls

Support › iPhone User Guide › Get started with FaceTime on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Make FaceTime calls on iPhone

With an internet connection and an Apple ID, you can make and receive calls in the FaceTime app.

Note: You must set up FaceTime before you can make and receive calls.

You can also make FaceTime calls over a cellular data connection, which may incur additional charges. To turn this feature off, go to Settings > Cellular, then turn off FaceTime. See View or change cellular data settings on iPhone.

Make a FaceTime call

1. Open the FaceTime app on your iPhone, then tap New FaceTime near the top of the screen.
2. Type the name or number you want to call in the entry field at the top, then tap to make a video call or to make an audio call (not available in all countries or regions).

   Alternatively, you can tap to open Contacts and add people from there; or tap a suggested contact in your call history to quickly make a call.

To call multiple people, see Make a Group FaceTime call.

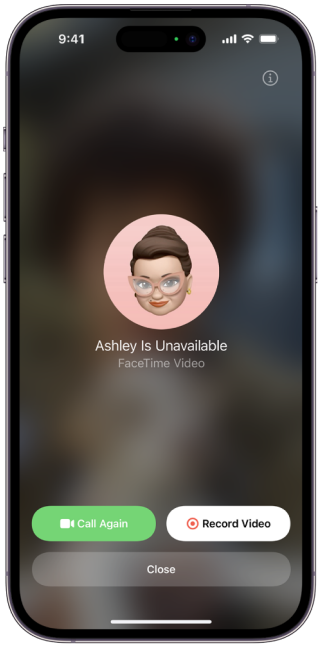
You can also use Siri. Say something like: "Make a FaceTime call" or "Call Eliza's mobile." Learn how to use Siri on iPhone.

Tip: To see more during a FaceTime video call, rotate iPhone to use landscape orientation. See Change or lock the screen orientation on iPhone.

Record a video message

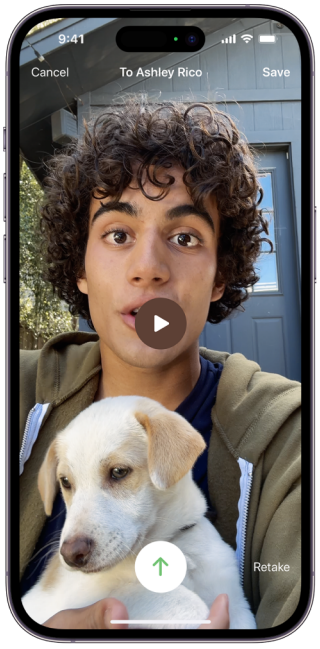
If someone doesn't answer your FaceTime video call, you can record a video message to convey exactly what you want to say.

1. Tap Record Video, wait for the countdown (from 5 to 1), then record your message.



2. Tap ↑ to send your recorded message, or tap Retake to rerecord the message. You can also tap Save to save it to Photos.

   After you send your video message, the recipient is notified.

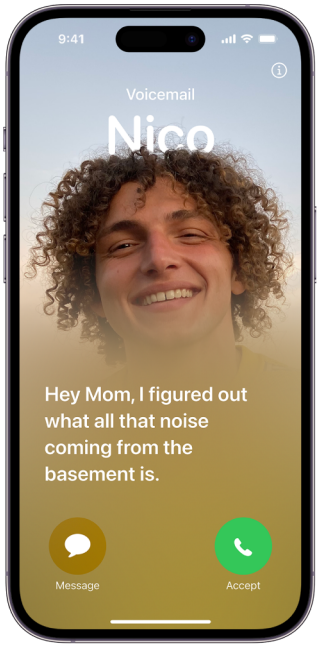


Note: You can receive video messages only from saved contacts, people you've called, and people suggested by Siri.

Leave a voicemail

If someone doesn't answer your FaceTime audio call, and you're a known contact of the person you're calling (either you're in their Contacts or you've messaged or spoken to them recently), you'll be prompted to leave a voicemail.

If the person you're calling has Live Voicemail turned on in Settings > Phone, your message will be transcribed on their screen as you speak, letting them know what you're calling about and giving them a chance to pick up your call.



Call again

To call someone again in FaceTime, do any of the following:

- Tap Call Again on the Record Video screen.
- In your call history, tap the name or number of the person (or group) you want to call again.

Start a FaceTime call from a Messages conversation

In an iMessage conversation, you can start a FaceTime call with the person you're chatting with.

1. Tap at the top right of the iMessage conversation.
2. Do any of the following:
   - Tap FaceTime Audio.
   - Tap FaceTime Video.

See also

Turn on Live Captions in a FaceTime call on iPhone

Create a link to a FaceTime call on iPhone

Create and edit events in Calendar on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Get started with FaceTime

Next
Receive FaceTime calls on iPhone

Support > iPhone User Guide > Make FaceTime calls on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Receive FaceTime calls on iPhone

Receive a FaceTime call

When a FaceTime call comes in, do any of the following:

- *Take the call:* Drag the slider or tap Accept.
- *Decline the call:* Tap Decline or .
- *Set a reminder to call back:* Tap Remind Me.
- *Send a text message to the caller:* Tap Message.

If you're on another call when a FaceTime video call comes in, instead of Accept, you see the End & Accept option, which terminates the previous call and connects you to the incoming call.

Tip: You can have Siri announce incoming calls, which you can accept or decline using your voice.

Receive a video message or Live Voicemail

If you miss an incoming video call and the caller leaves a video message, you receive a notification about the video, which you can tap to view. You can also find a link to the video in your call history, below the missed call.

If you miss an incoming audio call from a known contact (someone in your Contacts, or someone that you've messaged or spoken to recently), the caller is prompted to leave a voicemail. If you have Live Voicemail turned on in Settings > Phone, you can see a real-time transcription of the voicemail and pick up the call as they're leaving the message. See Turn on Live Voicemail.

Note: You can receive video messages only from saved contacts, people you've called, and people suggested by Siri.

After the caller has left a video message or voicemail, a link to it appears in your call history, just below their call.

Delete a call from your call history

Open the FaceTime app, swipe left over the call in your call history, then tap Delete.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Make FaceTime calls

Next
Create a FaceTime link

Support › iPhone User Guide › Receive FaceTime calls on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Create a link to a FaceTime call on iPhone

In FaceTime, you can create a link to a FaceTime call and send the link to a friend or a group (using Mail or Messages). They can use the link to join or start a call.

1. Open the FaceTime app, then tap Create Link near the top of the screen.
2. Choose an option for sending the link (Mail, Messages, and so on).

In Calendar, you can schedule a remote video meeting by inserting a FaceTime link as the location of the meeting.

Note: You can invite anyone to join you in a FaceTime call, even people who don't have an Apple device. They can join you in one-on-one and Group FaceTime calls from their browser—no login is necessary. (They need the latest version of either Chrome or Edge. Sending video requires H.264 video encoding support.)

See also

Create and edit events in Calendar on iPhone

Take a Live Photo in FaceTime on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Take a Live Photo in FaceTime on iPhone

When you're on a video call in the FaceTime app, you can take a FaceTime Live Photo to capture a moment of your conversation (not available in all countries or regions). The camera captures what happens just before and after you take the photo, including the audio, so you can see and hear it later just the way it happened.

To take a FaceTime Live Photo, first make sure FaceTime Live Photos is turned on in Settings > FaceTime, then do one of the following:

- *On a call with one other person:* Tap .
- *On a Group FaceTime call:* Tap the tile of the person you want to photograph, tap , then tap .

You both receive a notification that the photo was taken, and the Live Photo is saved in your Photos app.

See also

View photos and videos in the Photos app on iPhone

Turn on Live Captions in a FaceTime call on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Turn on Live Captions in a FaceTime call on iPhone

During a video call in the FaceTime app, you can turn on Live Captions to have the spoken conversation turned into text and displayed in real time on your iPhone. If you're having difficulty hearing the conversation, Live Captions can make it easier to follow along. Live Captions are available on iPhone 11 and later when the primary language is set to English (U.S.) or English (Canada).

Important: The accuracy of Live Captions may vary and shouldn't be relied upon in high-risk or emergency situations. Live Captions uses additional battery.

1. During a FaceTime video call, tap the screen to show the FaceTime controls (if they aren't visible).
2. Tap ⓘ at the top of the controls, turn on Live Captions, then tap Done.

   A Live Captions window appears, showing the automatically transcribed dialogue of the call near the top of the screen and who's speaking.

To stop showing the transcribed conversation on the screen, tap the screen, tap ⓘ at the top of the FaceTime controls, then turn off Live Captions.

See also

Get started with FaceTime on iPhone

Display subtitles and captions on iPhone

Use other apps during a FaceTime call on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Use other apps during a FaceTime call on iPhone

While you're on a call using the FaceTime app, you can use other apps—for example, to look up information, write a note, or perform a calculation.

Go to the Home Screen, then tap an app icon to open the app.

To return to the FaceTime screen, tap the green bar (or the FaceTime icon) at the top of the screen.

You can also share your screen with the other people in your FaceTime call while using another app. See Share your screen in a FaceTime call.

See also

Make a Group FaceTime call on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Make a Group FaceTime call on iPhone

In the FaceTime app, you can talk with up to 32 participants in a Group FaceTime call (not available in all countries or regions).

Start a Group FaceTime call

1. In FaceTime, tap New FaceTime near the top of the screen.
2. Type the names or numbers of the people you want to call in the entry field at the top.

   You can also tap to open Contacts and add people from there. Or tap suggested contacts in your call history.
3. Tap to make a video call or tap to make a FaceTime audio call.

Each participant appears in a tile on the screen. When a participant speaks (verbally or by using sign language) or you tap the tile, that tile becomes highlighted or more prominent. Tiles that can't fit on the screen appear in a row at the bottom. To find a participant you don't see, swipe through the row. (The participant's initials may appear in the tile if an image isn't available.)

Note: To see participants' images arranged in a grid, see View participants in a grid layout in FaceTime on iPhone.

To prevent the tile of the person speaking or signing from becoming more prominent during a Group FaceTime call, go to Settings > FaceTime, then turn off Speaking below Automatic Prominence.

Note: Sign language detection requires a supported model for the presenter. In addition, both the presenter and participants need iOS 14, iPadOS 14, macOS 11, or later.

Start a Group FaceTime call from a group Messages conversation

In a group iMessage conversation, you can start a Group FaceTime call with all the people you're chatting with in Messages.

1. Tap at the top right of the iMessage conversation.
2. Do any of the following:

   - Tap FaceTime Audio.
   - Tap FaceTime Video.

Add another person to a call

Any participant can add another person at any time during a FaceTime call.

1. During a FaceTime call, tap the screen to show the FaceTime controls (if they aren't visible), tap at the top of the controls, then tap Add People.
2. Type the name, Apple ID, or phone number of the person you want to add in the entry field at the top.

   Or tap to add someone from Contacts.

3. Tap Add People.

Join a Group FaceTime call

When someone invites you to join a Group FaceTime call, you receive a notification of the incoming call—you can either join or decline. See Receive a FaceTime call.

Leave a Group FaceTime call

To leave a group call at any time, tap Leave.

The call remains active if two or more participants remain.

See also

View participants in a grid layout in FaceTime on iPhone

Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together in FaceTime on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use other apps during a call

Next
View participants in a grid

Support > iPhone User Guide > Make a Group FaceTime call on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

View participants in a grid layout in FaceTime on iPhone

During a call with four or more people in the FaceTime app, you can view participants in same-size tiles, arranged in a grid. The speaker's tile is highlighted automatically, so it's easy to know who's talking. (Depending on your iPhone model, some tiles may appear blurred.)

In a call in the FaceTime app, tap the Grid button at the bottom left of the screen (if the button isn't visible, tap the screen).

To turn the grid off, tap the button again.

See also

Make a Group FaceTime call on iPhone

Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together in FaceTime on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together in FaceTime on iPhone

With SharePlay in the FaceTime app, you can stream TV shows, movies, and music in sync with friends and family while on a FaceTime call together. Enjoy a real-time connection with others on the call—with synced playback and shared controls, you see and hear the same moments at the same time. With smart volume, media audio is adjusted dynamically, so you can continue to chat while watching or listening. You can also play supported multiplayer games in Game Center with friends during a FaceTime call.

Tip: You can start SharePlay instantly by holding two iPhones together. (See Start a SharePlay session by holding two iPhones close together.)

SharePlay can also be used in other apps during a FaceTime call. To see which apps can be used for SharePlay during a call, tap, then scroll through the apps below Apps for SharePlay.

Note: Some apps that support SharePlay require a subscription. To watch a movie or TV show together, every participant needs to have access to the content on their own device, through either a subscription or purchase, on a device that meets the minimum system requirements. SharePlay may not support the sharing of some movies or TV shows across different countries or regions. FaceTime, some FaceTime features, and other Apple services may not be available in all countries or regions.

Watch video together during a FaceTime call

You can watch movies and TV shows during a FaceTime call in sync with your friends and family.

1. Start a call in the FaceTime app on your iPhone.
2. Tap, then tap an app below Listen and Play Together (for example, the Apple TV app)

   Alternatively, you can go to the Home Screen, then open a video streaming app that supports SharePlay.
3. Select a show or movie you want to watch, tap the Play button, then select Play for Everyone (if it appears) to begin watching with everyone on the call. (Others on the call may have to tap Join SharePlay to see the video.)

   For everyone on the call who has access to the content, the video starts playing at the same time. People who don't have access are asked to get access (through a subscription, a transaction, or a free trial, if available).

Each person watching the content can use the playback controls to play, pause, rewind, or fast-forward. (Settings like closed captioning and volume are controlled separately by each person.)

You can use Picture in Picture to keep watching the video while using another app—order food, check your email, or jump into the Messages app to discuss the video by text when you don't to interrupt the sound of

the movie or TV show.

Invite friends to watch video together from a supported app during a FaceTime call

On an iPhone that meets the minimum system requirements, you can start a FaceTime call in the Apple TV app (or other supported video app) while you're browsing or watching video content, and share the item in sync with others using SharePlay. Everyone on the call needs to have the same type of access to the content on their own device, through either a subscription or purchase.

1. In the Apple TV app (or other supported video app), find a show or movie you want to share, then tap the item to see its details.
2. Tap , then tap SharePlay.
3. In the To field, enter the contacts you want to share with, then tap FaceTime.
4. When the FaceTime call connects, tap Start or Play to begin using SharePlay.

   To begin viewing, recipients tap Open.

Note: If the content requires a subscription, people who aren't subscribers can subscribe before watching.

After the video starts playing, you can stream it to Apple TV. See Send what you're watching in SharePlay to Apple TV.

Send what you're watching in SharePlay to Apple TV

If you've already started watching a video together on iPhone, you can send it to Apple TV to enjoy on the big screen.

On iPhone, do one of the following:

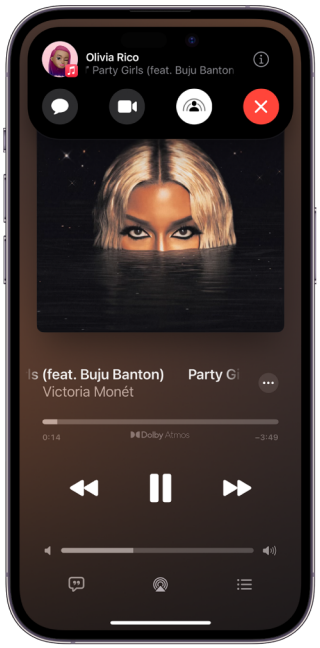
- In the streaming app, tap , then choose Apple TV as the playback destination.
- Open Control Center, tap , then choose Apple TV as the playback destination.

The video plays in sync on Apple TV, and you can keep the conversation going on your iPhone.

See Watch together using SharePlay in the Apple TV User Guide.

Listen to music together during a FaceTime call

You can get together and listen to an album or favorite playlist with others on a FaceTime call. Anyone on the call who has access to the music (for example, through a subscription, a transaction, or a free trial) on a device that meets the minimum system requirements can listen along, see what's next, add songs to a shared queue, and more.



1. Start a Group FaceTime call.
2. Tap , then tap a music streaming app below Listen and Play Together (for example, the Apple TV app)

   Alternatively, you can go to the Home Screen, then open a music streaming app that supports SharePlay (for example, the Music app).
3. Select the music you want to listen to, then tap the Play button to begin listening to the music together. (Others on the call may have to tap Join SharePlay to hear the music.)

   For everyone on the call who has access to the content, the music starts playing at the same time. People who don't have access are asked to get access (through a subscription, a transaction, or a free trial, if available).

Each person can use the music controls to pause, rewind, fast-forward, scrub to a different part of the song, or go to the next track. And anyone on the call can add songs to the shared queue.

Invite friends to listen to music together from a supported app during a FaceTime call

On an iPhone that meets the minimum system requirements, you can start a FaceTime call in the Music app (or other supported music app) and use SharePlay to share the music in sync with others on the call. Each person can use the music controls to pause, rewind, fast-forward, or scrub to a different part of the song. And anyone using SharePlay can add songs to the shared queue. The people you want to share with must have access to the music (for example, through a subscription).

1. Open the Apple Music app (or other supported music app), then tap the music you want to share.
2. Do one of the following:

   - Tap ••• next to the music, then tap SharePlay.
   - Tap ••• at the top right, tap , then tap SharePlay.
3. In the To field, enter the contacts you want to share with, then tap FaceTime.
4. When the FaceTime call connects, tap Start.

   To begin listening, recipients tap the song title at the top of the FaceTime controls, then tap Open. The music starts playing at the same time for everyone on the call who has access to the content.

Note: People who don't have access to the content you share are asked to get access.

Play games in Game Center with friends during a FaceTime call

You can play supported multiplayer games with friends in Game Center on a FaceTime call. You must first set up your Game Center profile in Settings, add friends, then find and download a supported multiplayer game for Game Center in the App Store.

During a FaceTime call, open the game, tap Start SharePlay, then follow the onscreen instructions.

See Play with friends in Game Center on iPhone.

SharePlay lets you work out with others using Apple Fitness+. See Work out together using SharePlay in Fitness on iPhone.

You can also share your screen to show apps, webpages, and more during the conversation. See Share your screen in a FaceTime call.

See also

Make a Group FaceTime call on iPhone

Share your screen in a FaceTime call on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
View participants in a grid

Next
Share your screen in a FaceTime call

Support › iPhone User Guide › Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together in FaceTime on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Share your screen in a FaceTime call on iPhone

In the FaceTime app (on a device that meets the minimum system requirements), you can share your screen to bring apps, webpages, and more into the conversation. You can get feedback on something you're working on, show off a photo album, and more—all while seeing and hearing the reactions of others on the call.

Share your screen in a FaceTime call

1. During a call in the FaceTime app on your iPhone, tap the screen to show the FaceTime controls (if they aren't visible), then tap .
2. To share your whole screen, tap Share My Screen.

   A countdown from 3 to 1 appears on , then a small image of your screen appears in the FaceTime call. The others on the call can tap it to enlarge it and view your content.

To stop sharing your screen, tap .

See also

Collaborate on projects with Messages on iPhone

Use video conferencing features on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Collaborate on a document in FaceTime on iPhone

In a FaceTime call, you can collaborate on a shared document. You can initiate collaboration in a FaceTime call that's in progress, or you can initiate collaboration from the app where the document was created.

Collaborate on a document

1. Start a conversation in the FaceTime app with the people you want to collaborate with. (See Make a FaceTime call.)
2. Tap , then choose the app you want to use below Collaborate Together.

   If you don't see , tap the screen to open the FaceTime controls.
3. Open the document, then tap .
4. Share the document with your collaborators in the call using FaceTime, AirDrop, Mail, or Messages, then tap Collaborate.

   A notification to start collaborating appears at the top of your screen.
5. Tap Start, then tap Collaborate.

   Your collaborators get a notification that you've shared a document you want to collaborate on. When they tap Open on the notification, the document opens on their device.

   Everyone who receives and opens the document can make changes and see changes made by others. When someone makes a change, a notification is sent to all collaborators.

See also

Use video conferencing features on iPhone

Share your screen in a FaceTime call on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

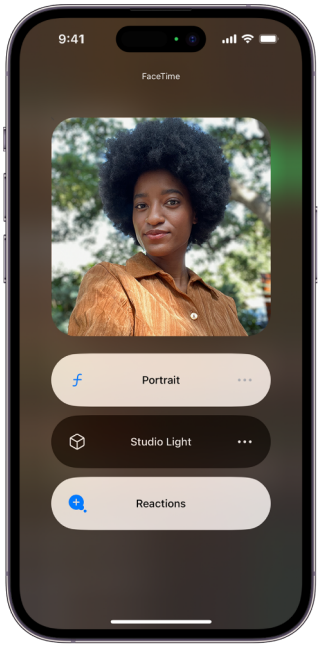
Use video conferencing features on iPhone

During a video call in the FaceTime app or a third-party video conferencing app, you can use full-screen video effects and add reactions with hand gestures that fill the camera frame with 3D effects.

Use video effects in a video call

1. In a video conference call in the FaceTime app or a third-party video conferencing app, open Control Center.
2. Tap Video Effects, then choose any of the following:

   - *Portrait:* Automatically blurs the background and puts the visual focus on you. Tap to adjust the amount of the background blur. See Use video effects in a video call.
   - *Studio Light:* Dims the background and illuminates your face. Tap to adjust the intensity of the studio light.
   - *Reactions:* Allows you to use hand gestures to add reactions. When Reactions is turned off in Control Center, you can't use hand gestures to add reactions, but you can add reactions by tapping the icons that appear when you touch and hold your tile in the call. See Add reactions in a video call.

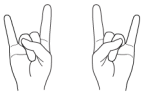


Add reactions in a video call

With simple hand gestures in the FaceTime app (and third-party video conferencing apps), you can add reactions that fill the camera frame with fun, 3D augmented reality effects—including hearts, balloons, fireworks, and more.

You can also add these reactions by touching and holding your tile in the call, then tapping the icons that appear.

Note: To use hand gestures, open Control Center, tap Video Effects, then make sure Reactions is turned on. When using gestures, hold your hands away from your face, and pause for a moment or two to activate the effect.

Reaction	Gesture	Icon
Hearts		
Thumbs-up		
Thumbs-down		
Balloons		
Rain		
Confetti		
Laser burst		
Fireworks		

See also

Hand off a FaceTime call from your iPhone to your other Apple devices

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Collaborate on a document in FaceTime

Next
Hand off a FaceTime call to another Apple device

Support › iPhone User Guide › Use video conferencing features on iPhone

Hand off a FaceTime call from your iPhone to your other Apple devices

You can start a FaceTime call on your iPhone and move the call to another device where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

With Continuity Camera and Mic, you can also use iPhone as a webcam and microphone for FaceTime calls on your Mac or Apple TV. See Use your iPhone as a webcam on Mac and Use FaceTime on Apple TV 4K.

Note: Your selected contact information for the call, shown in Settings > FaceTime, must match the selected contact information in Settings > FaceTime on the device you want to hand off to.

Hand off a FaceTime call from iPhone to iPad or Mac

While on a FaceTime call on your iPhone, you can hand off the call to your iPad or Mac. To hand off a FaceTime call, your devices need macOS 13, iOS 16, or iPadOS 16 or later. You must be signed in with the same Apple ID on both devices.

1. During a call in the FaceTime app on iPhone, do one of the following on the other device:

   - Tap the notification with the suggestion "Move call to this [*device*]."
   - Tap at the top of the screen.

     A preview of the call appears, showing your camera, microphone, and audio settings.

2. Make sure the settings are the ones you want, then tap Switch or Join.

   The call moves to the new device. On the original device, a banner appears confirming that the call was continued elsewhere, along with a Switch button, which you can tap if you want to bring the call back.

Hand off a FaceTime call from your iPhone to Apple TV 4K

You can start (or receive) a FaceTime call on your iPhone, and then hand off the call to the larger screen on Apple TV 4K (2nd generation and later) when you're signed in with the same Apple ID on both devices. After you hand off the call, it continues on Apple TV, with your iPhone serving as a webcam and microphone for Apple TV for the duration of the call. Continuity Camera with Apple TV is available on iPhone XR, iPhone XS, and later, and on Apple TV 4K (2nd generation and later).

For instructions on handing off and continuing the call on Apple TV 4K (2nd generation), see Use FaceTime on Apple TV 4K (2nd generation or later).

See also

Hand off tasks between iPhone and your other devices

Change FaceTime video settings on iPhone

Use FaceTime on Apple TV 4K

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use video conferencing features

Next
Change the FaceTime video settings

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Change FaceTime video settings on iPhone

During a call in the FaceTime app, you can turn Portrait mode on or off, switch between cameras, or turn your camera on or off.

Blur the background with Portrait mode

On supported models, you can turn on Portrait mode, which automatically blurs the background and puts the visual focus on you, the same way Portrait mode does in the Camera app.

1. When you're on a FaceTime call, tap your tile.
2. Tap in your tile.

   To turn Portrait mode off, tap the button again.

You can also turn on Portrait mode in Control Center. Open Control Center, then tap Video Effects.

Switch to the rear camera

When you're on a FaceTime call, tap your tile, then tap.

To switch back to the front camera, tap again.

Note: While you're using the rear camera, you can enlarge the image by tapping 1x. Tapping it again returns the image to normal size.

Turn off your camera

When you're on a FaceTime call, tap the screen to make the controls appear, then tap. (Tap it again to turn the camera back on.)

See also

Change your appearance in a FaceTime call on iPhone

Change FaceTime audio settings on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Change FaceTime audio settings on iPhone

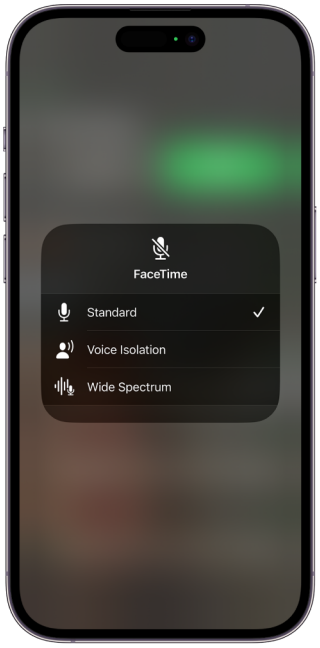
Spatial Audio in the FaceTime app makes it sound like your friends are in the room with you. Their voices are spread out and sound like they're coming from the direction in which each person is positioned on the screen.

Note: Spatial Audio is available on supported models and works with the following AirPod models (sold separately)—AirPods (3rd generation), AirPods Pro (all models), and AirPods Max.

Filter out background sounds

When you want your voice to be heard clearly in a FaceTime call and other sounds filtered out, you can turn on Voice Isolation mode (available on supported models). Voice Isolation mode prioritizes your voice in a FaceTime call and blocks out the ambient noise.

During a FaceTime call, open Control Center, tap Mic Mode, then select Voice Isolation.



Include the sounds around you

When you want your voice and all the sounds around you to be heard in a FaceTime call, you can turn on Wide Spectrum mode (available on supported models).

During a FaceTime call, open Control Center, tap Mic Mode, then select Wide Spectrum.

Turn off the sound

When you're on a FaceTime call, tap the screen to show the FaceTime controls (if they aren't visible), then tap to turn the sound off.

To turn the sound back on, tap the button again.

When your sound is turned off, your mic detects whether you're speaking, and you're notified that your mic is muted and that you can tap to unmute it.

See also

Change FaceTime video settings on iPhone

Change your appearance in a FaceTime call on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Change the FaceTime video settings

Next
Change your appearance

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Table of Contents

Change your appearance in a FaceTime call on iPhone

On video calls in the FaceTime app, you can become your favorite Memoji (on an iPhone with Face ID). On supported models, you can use a built-in filter to change your appearance and add stickers, labels, and shapes.

Become a Memoji

In Messages on an iPhone with Face ID, you can create a Memoji character to use in your FaceTime calls. iPhone captures your movements, facial expressions, and voice, and conveys them through your character. (Your character imitates you even when you stick out your tongue!)

See Use Memoji in Messages.

1. During a FaceTime call, tap . (If you don't see , tap the screen.)
2. Tap , then choose a Memoji (swipe through the characters at the bottom, then tap one).

   The other caller hears what you say, but sees your Memoji doing the talking.

Use a filter to change your appearance

1. During a FaceTime video call, tap your tile, then tap (supported models).
2. Tap to open the filters.
3. Choose your appearance by tapping a filter at the bottom (swipe left or right to preview them).

Add a text label

1. During a call, tap the screen, then tap .
2. Tap Aa, then tap a text label.

   To see more label options, swipe up from the top of the text window.
3. While the label is selected, type the text you want to appear in the label, then tap away from it.
4. Drag the label where you want to place it.

   To delete the label, tap it, then tap .

Add stickers

1. During a call, tap your tile, tap , then do any of the following:

   - Tap to add a Memoji sticker or to add an Emoji sticker.
   - Tap Aa, swipe up, then tap .
2. Tap a sticker to add it to the call.

To see more options, swipe left or swipe up.

3. Drag the sticker to place it where you want.

   To delete the sticker, tap it, then tap ⊗.

Add shapes

1. During a call, tap your tile, then tap ☆.
2. Tap , then tap a shape to add it to the call.

   To see more options, swipe up from the top of the shapes window.

3. Drag the shape where you want to place it.

   To delete the shape, tap it, then tap ⊗.

See also

Change FaceTime video settings on iPhone

Leave a FaceTime call or switch to Messages on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Change the audio settings

Next
Leave a call or switch to Messages

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Leave a FaceTime call or switch to Messages on iPhone

You can leave a call in the FaceTime app at any time, or switch your conversation to Messages.

Leave a FaceTime call

Tap the screen to show the FaceTime controls (if they aren't visible), then tap .

Switch to a Messages conversation

To jump to a Messages thread that includes everyone on the call, tap the screen to show the FaceTime controls (if they aren't visible), tap at the top of the controls, then tap Message or .

See also

Make a Group FaceTime call on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Block unwanted callers in FaceTime on iPhone

In the FaceTime app, you can block FaceTime calls from unwanted callers.

1. In your FaceTime call history, tap next to the name, phone number, or email address of the contact you want to block.
2. Scroll down, tap Block this Caller, then tap Block Contact.

To unblock a contact, tap next to the contact's name, phone number, or email address in your call log, scroll down, then tap Unblock this Caller.

Note: To silence FaceTime calls from unknown callers, go to Settings > FaceTime > Silence Unknown Callers, then turn on Silence Unknown Callers. This setting ensures that you'll receive FaceTime calls only from your saved contacts, people you've called before, and people suggested by Siri. Calls from unknown numbers go to voicemail and are displayed on the recents list.

See also

Block phone numbers and contacts on your iPhone or iPad

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Connect servers or external devices with Files on iPhone

You can use the Files app to access files stored on file servers, other cloud storage providers like Box and Dropbox, and external devices, such as USB drives and SD cards, after you connect them to your iPhone.

Connect to a computer or file server

1. Tap at the top of the Browse screen.

   If you don't see , tap Browse again.

2. Tap Connect to Server.

3. Enter a local hostname or a network address, then tap Connect.

   Tip: After you connect to a computer or file server, it appears in the Recent Servers list on the Connect to Server screen. To connect to a recent server, tap its name.

4. Select how you want to connect:

   - *Guest:* You can connect as a Guest user if the shared computer permits guest access.
   - *Registered User:* If you select Registered User, enter your user name and password.

5. Tap Next, then select the server volume or shared folder in the Browse screen (below Shared).

To disconnect from the file server, tap next to the server in the Browse screen.

For information on how to set up your Mac to share files, see Set up file sharing on Mac in the macOS User Guide.

Add a cloud storage service

1. Download the app from the App Store, then open the app and follow the onscreen instructions.
2. Open Files, then tap Browse at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap More Locations (below Locations), then turn on the service.
4. To view your contents, tap Browse at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the storage service below Locations. If you don't see Locations, tap Browse again at the bottom of the screen.

Connect a USB drive or an SD card

For information on how to connect external storage devices and SD cards, see Connect external storage devices to iPhone.

See also

Modify files and folders in Files on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

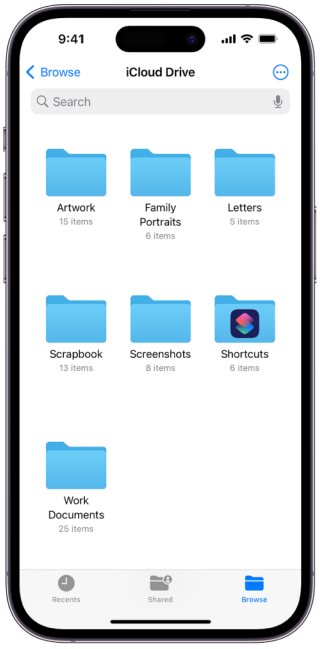
Previous
Block unwanted callers

Next
Modify files and folders

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Modify files and folders in Files on iPhone

In the Files app, modify your documents, images, and other files.



Modify and rearrange documents

When viewing a file in a supported document format, you can modify and rearrange the document's contents using the Files app.

1. Open a document, then tap the page number in the top left.
2. Tap, then choose any of the following:

   - *Rotate Left:* Rotate the highlighted page left.
   - *Rotate Right:* Rotate the highlighted page right.
   - *Insert Blank Page:* Insert a blank page after the highlighted page.
   - *Insert from File:* Insert pages from a file after the highlighted page.
   - *Scan Pages:* Insert pages from a scanned document after the highlighted page.
   - *Delete:* Delete the highlighted page.

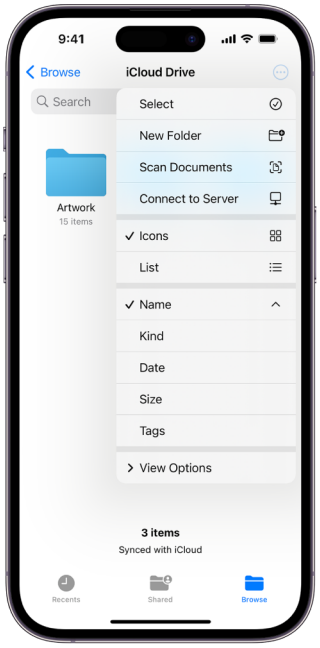
   To rearrange a document, touch and hold a highlighted page and drag it to a new location.

   To mark up a document, tap.

Note: Not all document formats are supported by the Files app.

Change to list view or icon view

From an open location or folder, tap ⋯, then tap List or Icons.



Rearrange the Browse screen

Tap ⋯ at the top of the Browse screen, tap Edit, then do any of the following:

- *Hide a location:* Turn the location off.
- *Delete a tag and remove it from all items:* Tap ⊖ next to the tag. (See Tag a file or folder.)
- *Remove an item from the Favorites list:* Tap ⊖ next to the item. (See Mark a folder as a favorite.)
- *Change the order of an item:* Touch and hold ☰, then drag it to a new position.

See also

Search for files and folders in Files on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Connect external devices or servers

Next
Search for files and folders

Support › iPhone User Guide › Modify files and folders in Files on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Search for files and folders in Files on iPhone

In the Files app, search and view your documents, images, and other files.

Browse and open files and folders

1. Open the Files app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Browse at the bottom of the screen, then tap an item on the Browse screen.

   If you don't see the Browse screen, tap Browse again.
3. To view recently opened files, tap Recents at the bottom of the screen.
4. To open a file, location, or folder, tap it.

   Note: If you haven't installed the app that created a file, a preview of the file opens in Quick Look.

For information about marking folders as favorites or adding tags, see Organize files and folders in Files on iPhone.

Find a specific file or folder

Enter a filename, folder name, or document type in the search field.

When you search, you have these options:

- *Focus the scope of your search:* Below the search field, tap Recents or the name of the location or tag.
- *Hide the keyboard and see more results on the screen:* Tap Search.
- *Start a new search:* Tap in the search field.
- *Open a result:* Tap it.

Change how files and folders are sorted

1. From an open location or folder, tap .
2. Choose an option: Name, Date, Size, Kind, or Tags.

See also

Organize files and folders in Files on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Organize files and folders in Files on iPhone

In the Files app, organize documents, images, and other files in folders.

Create a folder

1. Open a location or an existing folder.
2. Tap, then tap New Folder.

   Note: If you don't see New Folder, you can't create a folder in that location.

Rename, compress, and make other changes to a file or a folder

Touch and hold the file or folder, then choose an option: Copy, Duplicate, Move, Delete, Rename, or Compress.

To modify multiple files or folders at the same time, tap, tap Select, tap your selections, then tap an option at the bottom of the screen.

Note: Some options may not be available, depending on the item you select; for example, you can't delete or move an app library (a folder labeled with the app name).

Tag a file or folder

1. Touch and hold the file or folder, tap Tags, then tap one or more tags.
2. Tap Done.

To find tagged items, tap Browse, then tap an item below Tags.

To remove a tag, tap it again.

Mark a folder as a favorite

Touch and hold the folder, then tap Favorite.

To find Favorites, tap Browse.

See also

Send files from Files on iPhone

Search for files and folders

Send files

Support › iPhone User Guide › Organize files and folders in Files on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Send files from Files on iPhone

You can send a copy of any file in the Files app to others. If you have a document you want to send that isn't digitized, you can scan it with Files first.

Send a file

1. Touch and hold the file, then tap Share.

   Tip: To send a smaller version of the file, tap Compress before you tap Share. Then touch and hold the compressed version of the file (identified as a zip file), and tap Share.

2. Choose an option for sending (for example, AirDrop, Messages, or Mail), then tap Send.

Scan a document

Tap at the top of the Browse screen, then tap Scan Documents.

Tip: If the files or folders you want to share are stored in iCloud Drive, you can invite others to view or edit their contents—you don't need to send them copies.

See also

Set up iCloud Drive on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Set up iCloud Drive on iPhone

Use the Files app to access iCloud Drive and store files, create folders, and share documents with friends and family. You can access your content from all your devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID—including on a Mac, where iCloud Drive is located in the Finder.

iCloud Drive is built into the Files app on devices with iOS 11, iPadOS 13, or later. You can also use iCloud Drive on Mac computers (OS X 10.10 or later), PCs (iCloud for Windows 7 or later), or online at iCloud.com. Storage limits depend on your iCloud storage plan.

Turn on iCloud Drive

Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud, then turn on iCloud Drive.

Browse iCloud Drive

1. Open the Files app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Browse at the bottom of the screen.
3. Below Locations, tap iCloud Drive.

   If you don't see Locations, tap Browse again. If you don't see iCloud Drive below Locations, tap Locations.
4. To open a folder, tap it.

   See Modify files and folders in Files on iPhone.

Choose which apps use iCloud Drive

You can choose which apps have access to store and edit content on iCloud Drive.

Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud, then turn on or off each of the apps listed below iCloud Drive.

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Share files and folders in iCloud Drive on iPhone

After you set up iCloud Drive, you can use the Files app to share folders and individual files with friends and colleagues. When you make changes to a shared folder or file, others see your changes automatically. If you allow people to make edits, their changes appear automatically as well.

Files and folders shared in iCloud Drive have these important characteristics:

- If you collaborate on a folder, all items added to that folder by you or other participants are automatically shared.
- The link to a shared file includes its name. If the name or content is confidential, be sure to ask recipients not to forward the link to anyone else.
- If you move a shared file to another folder or location, the link no longer works, and people lose access to the item.
- Depending on the app, users might need to reopen a file or tap the original link to see the latest changes.

Share a folder or file

If you own a folder or file in iCloud Drive, you can invite others to view or collaborate on its contents.

You can share a folder and file so that only people you invite can open it, or anyone with the link can open it.

You can allow the contents of a folder or file to be changed, or you can restrict access so that the contents can only be viewed.

When you share a folder, only the people you invite can access the files in the shared folder by default. To invite more people to access the files, you must change the settings of the shared folder to add more participants. You can't select an individual file within the shared folder and add participants to it.

1. Touch and hold the folder or file.
2. Tap Share, then choose if you want to collaborate or send a copy of the folder or file.
3. Do one of the following:
   - *Allow only invitees to view and edit the contents:* Tap Share Options, tap "Only people you invite," tap "Can make changes," then choose a method—such as Messages or Mail—for sending people a link to the folder or file.
   - *Allow only invitees to view the contents:* Tap Share Options, tap "Only people you invite," tap "View only," then choose a method for sending the link.
   - *Allow anyone with the link to view and edit the contents:* Tap Share Options, tap "Anyone with the link," tap "Can make changes," then choose a method for sending the link.
   - *Allow anyone with the link to view the contents:* Tap Share Options, tap "Anyone with the link," tap "View only," then choose a method for sending the link.
   - *Allow anyone to invite more people:* Tap Share Options, then tap "Anyone can add people."
4. Choose how you want to send your invitation, then tap Send.

Invite more people to collaborate on a folder or file

If you already shared a folder or file and its access is set to "Only people you invite," you can share it with more people.

1. Touch and hold the folder or file.
2. Tap Manage Shared Folder or Manage Shared File.
3. Tap Add People and choose a method for sending the link.
4. Enter any other requested information, then send or post the invitation.

Share a folder or file with more people using a link

If you set the access to a shared folder or file to "Anyone with the link," anyone with the link can share it with others.

1. Touch and hold the folder or file.
2. Tap Manage Shared Folder or Manage Shared File, then tap Copy Link.
3. Choose a method for sending the link, enter any other requested information, then send or post the invitation.

Change access and permission settings for everyone

If you're the owner of a shared folder or file, you can change its access at any time. However, everyone you shared the link with is affected.

1. Touch and hold the folder or file.
2. Tap Manage Shared Folder or Manage Shared File, then tap Share Options.
3. Change either or both of the options.

    - *Access option:* When you change the access option from "Anyone with the link" to "Only people you invite," the original link no longer works for anyone, and only people who receive a new invitation from you can open the folder or file.

    - *Permission option:* When you change the permission option, everyone who has the file open when you change the permission sees an alert. New settings take effect when the alert is dismissed.

Change access and permission settings for one person

If you're the owner of a shared folder or file and its access is set to "Only people you invite," you can change the permission for one person without affecting the permission of others. You can also remove the person's access.

1. Touch and hold the folder or file.
2. Tap Manage Shared Folder or Manage Shared File.
3. Tap the person's name, then select an option.

Stop sharing a folder or file

If you're the owner of a shared folder or file, you can stop sharing it.

1. Touch and hold the folder or file.
2. Tap Manage Shared Folder or Manage Shared File.

3. Tap Stop Sharing.

Anyone who has a file open when you stop sharing it sees an alert. The item closes when the alert is dismissed, the file is removed from the person's iCloud Drive, and the link no longer works. If you later share the item again and set the access to "Anyone with the link," the original link works. If the access is set to "Only people you invite," the original link works again only for people you reinvite to share the item.

See also

Collaborate on projects with Messages

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Set up iCloud Drive

Next
Share your location

Support > iPhone User Guide > Share files and folders in iCloud Drive on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Share your location in Find My on iPhone

Before you can use the Find My app to share your location with friends, you need to set up location sharing.

Note: Location sharing and finding people aren't available in all countries or regions. If you set up location sharing and others still can't see your location, make sure Location Services is on in Settings > Privacy & Security > Location Services > Find My. See Control the location information you share on iPhone.

Set up location sharing

1. In the Find My app, tap Me at the bottom of the screen, then turn on Share My Location.

   The device sharing your location appears next to From.

2. If your iPhone isn't currently sharing your location, you can tap Use This iPhone as My Location.

Note: To share your location from another device, open Find My on the device and change your location to that device. If you share your location from an iPhone that's paired with Apple Watch (GPS + Cellular models), your location is shared from your Apple Watch when you're out of range of your iPhone and Apple Watch is on your wrist.

You can also change your location sharing settings in Settings > [*your name*] > Find My.

Set a label for your location

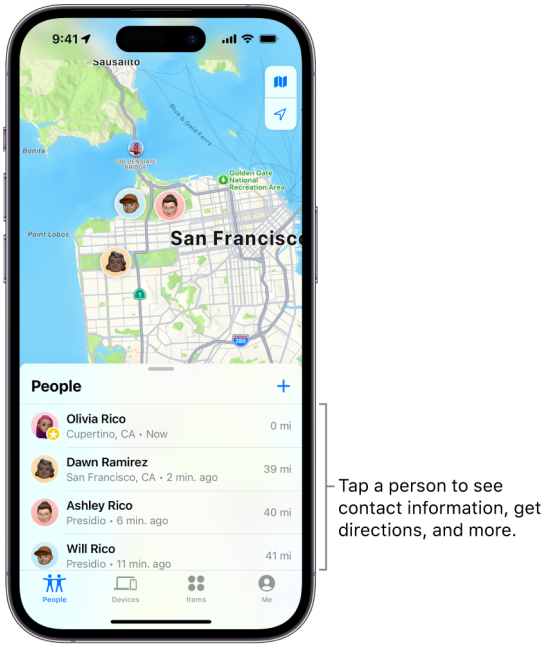
You can set a label for your current location to make it more meaningful (like Home or Work). When you tap Me, you see the label in addition to your location.

1. Tap Me at the bottom of the screen, then tap Location.
2. Select a label.

   To add a new label, tap Add Custom Label, enter a name, then tap Done.

Share your location with a friend

1. Tap +, then choose Share My Location.



2. In the To field, type the name of a friend you want to share your location with (or tap ⊕ and select a contact).
3. Tap Send and choose how long you want to share your location.

You can also notify a friend or family member when your location changes.

If you're a member of a Family Sharing group, see Share your location with family members.

Stop sharing your location

You can stop sharing your location with a specific friend or hide your location from everyone.

- *Stop sharing with a friend:* Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you don't want to share your location with. Tap Stop Sharing My Location, then tap Stop Sharing Location.
- *Hide your location from everyone:* Tap Me at the bottom of the screen, then turn off Share My Location.

Respond to a location sharing request

1. Tap People at the bottom of the screen.
2. Tap Share below the name of the friend who sent the request and choose how long you want to share your location.

   If you don't want to share your location, tap Cancel.

Stop receiving new location sharing requests

Tap Me at the bottom of the screen, then turn off Allow Friend Requests.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Share files and folders in iCloud Drive

Next
Meet up with a friend

Use Precision Finding on iPhone 15 models to meet up with a friend

Use the Find My app on iPhone 15 and iPhone 15 Pro models to meet up with a friend.

Precision Finding for People is available in select countries and regions, and both you and the friend you're looking for must have an iPhone 15 or iPhone 15 Pro model.

To use another iPhone model to find someone, see Locate a friend.

---

1. Open the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the friend you want to meet.

   If you aren't following each other, you may have to share your location or ask for their location.
3. Do one of the following:
   - *See your friend in Maps:* If you aren't nearby, tap Directions to get closer to their location.
   - *Find your friend nearby:* If you're near one another, tap Find to notify your friend that you're trying to locate them, then follow the onscreen instructions to get directions to them.

     When you get close enough to each other, an arrow will point in their direction with an estimate of how far away they are. When you're walking in the right direction, the screen will turn green.
4. When you locate the person you're looking for, tap .

If you receive a notification that a friend is trying to find you, you can tap Share so they can find their way to you more easily. If you've already shared your location with them, they see where you are relative to

their location. (You can stop sharing your location at any point.)

See also

Share your location in Messages on iPhone

Use Check In on iPhone to let your friends know you've arrived

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Share your location

Next
Send your location via satellite

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Send your location via satellite in Find My on iPhone

On iPhone 14, iPhone 14 Pro, iPhone 15, and iPhone 15 Pro models, with iOS 16.1 or later, you can use the Find My app to share your location via satellite when you're outside cellular and Wi-Fi coverage.

Note: Sharing your location via satellite isn't available in all countries or regions. For information about Emergency SOS via satellite availability see this Apple Support article.

Before you disconnect from cellular and Wi-Fi coverage

Most Find My features are only available if you're connected to a cellular or Wi-Fi network. To share your location with friends via satellite, do the following *before* you're outside cellular or Wi-Fi coverage:

- Set the iPhone you're bringing with you as the iPhone that shares your location. On your iPhone 14 or iPhone 15, open the Find My app, tap Me at the bottom of the screen, then make sure Share My Location is turned on. If your iPhone isn't currently sharing your location, tap Use This iPhone as My Location.
- Add the contacts you want to share your location with. See Share your location in Find My on iPhone.

Send your location via satellite

You can use the Find My app to share your location via satellite if you're not connected to a cellular or Wi-Fi network. To share your location with a friend via satellite, you must already be sharing your location with that friend in Find My. See Share your location in Find My on iPhone.

1. Make sure that you're outside with a clear view of the sky and the horizon. If you're under heavy foliage or surrounded by other obstructions, you might not be able to connect to a satellite.
2. Open the Find My app, then tap Me at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap Send My Location (below My Location via Satellite), then follow the onscreen instructions.

   If you need to turn left or right to connect to a satellite, your iPhone provides guidance—just follow the onscreen instructions.

   Note: It may take a few minutes to send your location via satellite; continue to follow the onscreen instructions until the message is sent.

You can send your location once every 15 minutes. When you send your location via satellite, you don't see your friend's location in the Find My app.

See a friend's location sent via satellite

In order to see a friend's location sent via satellite, you need to have iOS 16.1 or later installed on your iPhone (you don't need iPhone 14 or iPhone 15).

When a contact sends you their location via satellite, a satellite icon appears next to their picture and Satellite Location appears in the text in the Find My app. Their most recent location is viewable for up to 7 days.

See also

Use Emergency SOS via satellite on your iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Meet up with a friend

Next
Add or remove a friend

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Add or remove a friend in Find My on iPhone

In the Find My app, after you share your location with a friend, you can ask to see their location on a map.

Note: Location sharing and finding people aren't available in all countries or regions.

Ask to see a friend's location

1. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person whose location you want to see.

   If you don't see a person in the list, make sure you're sharing your location with them.

2. Tap Ask To Follow Location.

After your friend receives and accepts your request, you can see their location. See Respond to a location sharing request.

Note: If you see your friend's name in the People list but can't see their location on the map, ask them to make sure they're sharing their location and that Location Services is on in Settings > Privacy & Security > Location Services > Find My.

Remove a friend

When you remove a friend, that person is removed from your People list and you're removed from theirs.

1. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to remove.
2. Tap Remove [*name*], then tap Remove.

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Locate a friend in Find My on iPhone

When a friend shares their location with you, you can use the Find My app to locate them on a map.

Note: Location sharing and finding people aren't available in all countries or regions. If you want to see how far away your friends are from you, make sure you turn on Precise Location for the Find My app. See Control the location information you share on iPhone.

See the location of a friend

Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to locate.

- *If your friend can be located:* They appear on a map so you can see where they are.
- *If your friend can't be located:* You see "No location found" below their name.
- *If you aren't following your friend:* You see "Can see your location" below their name. You can ask to see a friend's location.

You can also use Siri to locate a friend who has shared their location with you.

Siri: Say something like: "Where's Gordon?" Learn how to use Siri.

Contact a friend

1. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to contact.
2. Tap Contact and choose how you want to contact your friend. See Add and use contact information on iPhone.

Get directions to a friend

You can get directions to a friend's current location in the Maps app.

1. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to get directions to.
2. Tap Directions to open Maps.

See Get directions in Maps.

Set a label for a friend's location

You can set a label for a friend's current location to make it more meaningful (like Home or Work). The label appears below your friend's name when they're at that location.

1. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to set a location label for.
2. Tap Edit Location Name, then select a label.

   To add a new label, tap Add Custom Label, enter a name, then tap Done.

Mark favorite friends

Favorite friends appear at the top of the People list and are marked by a star.

1. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then find the person you want to mark as a favorite.
2. Do one of the following:

   - Tap the name of the person, then tap Add [*name*] to Favorites.
   - Swipe left across the person's name, then tap the star.

To remove a friend from your Favorites, swipe left and tap the star, or tap the friend, then tap Remove [*name*] from Favorites.

See also

Add or remove a friend in Find My on iPhone

Adjust map settings in Find My on iPhone

Get notified when a friend's location changes in Find My on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Add or remove a friend

Next
Get notified when friends change their location

Support › iPhone User Guide › Locate a friend in Find My on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Get notified when a friend's location changes in Find My on iPhone

Use the Find My app to get a notification when your friend's location changes. You can get notified when a friend arrives at a location, leaves a location, or is not at a location.

Important: In order to receive a notification when your friend's location changes, make sure you allow notifications for the Find My app. See Change notification settings on iPhone.

You can also let friends know when your location changes. See Notify a friend when your location changes in Find My on iPhone.

Note: Location sharing and finding people aren't available in all countries or regions.

Get notified when your friend arrives at or leaves a location

1. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to be notified about.
2. Below Notifications, tap Add, then tap Notify Me.
3. Choose whether you want to be notified when a friend arrives at or leaves a location.
4. Choose a location, or tap New Location to create a new location and set a location radius.

   With a larger radius, you're notified when your friend is near the location instead of right at the location.
5. Choose whether you want to be notified only once or every time.
6. Tap Add, then tap OK.

   Your friend gets an alert after you set the notification.

   If you set a recurring notification, your friend must approve it before it's set. They get an alert asking for approval when they arrive at or leave the location you chose for the first time.

Get notified when your friend isn't at a location

You can receive a notification if your friend or family member isn't at a specific location during a set schedule. For example, you can be notified if your child isn't at school during school hours.

1. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to be notified about.
2. Below Notifications, tap Add, then tap Notify Me.
3. Below When, tap [*your friend's name*] Is Not At.
4. Choose a location, or tap New Location to create a new location and set a location radius.

   With a larger radius, you're notified when your friend is near the location instead of right at the location.
5. Select when you want to be notified.

   - *Time:* Select a start and end time.
   - *Days:* Select the days of the week.

6. Tap Add, then tap OK.

   Your friend must approve the notification before it's set. They get an alert asking for approval on the time and day the notifications start.

Change or turn off a notification you set

1. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person whose notification you want to change or turn off.

   This could be a notification you receive about a friend, or a notification your friend receives about you.

2. Below Notifications, tap the notification.
3. Do either of the following:

   - *Change a notification:* Change any details, then tap Done.
   - *Turn off a notification:* Tap Delete Notification, then tap Delete Notification again.

You can create up to 25 Notify Me notifications.

Note: You can only create recurring notifications for friends who have two-factor authentication turned on.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Locate a friend

Next
Notify a friend when your location changes

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Notify a friend when your location changes in Find My on iPhone

Use the Find My app to let a friend know when your location changes.

You can also get a notification when your friend's location changes. See Get notified when a friend's location changes in Find My on iPhone.

Note: Location sharing and finding people aren't available in all countries or regions.

Notify a friend when your location changes

1. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to notify.
2. Below Notifications, tap Add, then tap Notify [*your friend's name*].
3. Choose whether you want to notify your friend when you arrive at or leave a location.
4. Choose a location, or tap New Location to create a new location and set a location radius.

   With a larger radius, your friend is notified when you're near the location instead of right at the location.
5. Choose whether you want your friend to be notified only once or every time.
6. Tap Add.

You can stop notifying friends when your location changes at any time. See Change or turn off a notification you set.

See all notifications about you

1. Tap Me at the bottom of the screen.

   Below Notifications About You, you see a list of people who are notified when your location changes.

   If you don't see the Notifications About You section, you aren't notifying any friends when your location changes.
2. Select a name to see more details.

Turn off notifications about you

You can turn off any location notification about you. This includes notifications you set and notifications your friends create.

1. Tap Me at the bottom of the screen.

   Below Notifications About You, you see a list of people who are notified when your location changes.

   If you don't see the Notifications About You section, you aren't notifying any friends when your location changes.
2. Select a name, then tap a notification.
3. Tap Delete Notification, then tap Delete Notification again.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Get notified when friends change their location

Next
Add your iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Add your iPhone to Find My

Before you can use the Find My app to locate a lost iPhone, you need to connect the device to your Apple ID.

When you add your iPhone to Find My, you can also get notified if you leave it behind. See Set separation alerts in case you leave a device behind in Find My on iPhone.

Note: Location sharing and finding devices aren't available in all countries or regions.

Add your iPhone

1. On your iPhone, go to Settings > [*your name*] > Find My.

   If you're asked to sign in, enter your Apple ID. If you don't have one, tap "Don't have an Apple ID or forgot it?" then follow the instructions.

2. Tap Find My iPhone, then turn on Find My iPhone.

3. You can also turn on or off either of the following:

   - *Find My network:* If your device is offline (not connected to Wi-Fi or cellular), Find My can locate it using the Find My network.

     On a supported iPhone, turning on the Find My network allows you to locate your iPhone for up to 24 hours after it's turned off, or up to 5 hours when it's in power reserve mode.

   - *Send Last Location:* If your device's battery charge level becomes critically low, its location is sent to Apple automatically.

Your iPhone also includes a feature called Activation Lock that prevents anyone else from activating and using your device, even if it's completely erased. See the Apple Support article Activation Lock for iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch.

Add another device

See any of the following:

- *iPad:* Add your iPad to Find My in the iPad User Guide
- *iPod touch:* Add your iPod touch to Find My in the iPod touch User Guide
- *Mac:* Set up Find My on Mac in the Find My User Guide for Mac
- *Apple Watch:* Set up and pair your Apple Watch with iPhone in the Apple Watch User Guide
- *AirPods:* Pairing instructions for your model in the "Pair and connect" section in the AirPods User Guide and Turn on the Find My network for AirPods (3rd generation), AirPods Pro, and AirPods Max
- *iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support:* Add your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe to Find My on iPhone

You can also add AirTags and other items to Find My using your iPhone. See any of the following:

- Add an AirTag in Find My on iPhone
- Add or update a third-party item in Find My on iPhone

Add a family member’s device

You can see your family members’ devices in Find My if you set up Family Sharing first. Their devices appear below yours in the Devices list. See Share locations with family members and locate their lost devices on iPhone.

You can’t add friends’ devices to Find My. Friends who lose a device can go to Find Devices on iCloud.com and sign in with their Apple ID.

See also

Locate a device in Find My on iPhone

Mark a device as lost in Find My on iPhone

Remove a device from Find My on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Notify a friend when your location changes

Next
Add your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe

Support › iPhone User Guide › Add your iPhone to Find My

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Add your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe to Find My on iPhone

If your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe has Find My support, you can connect it to your Apple ID so you can see its last known location in the Find My app. You can allow someone who finds it to see your contact information to help them return it to you.

When you add your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe to Find My, you can get notified if it detaches from your iPhone.

Note: Location sharing and finding devices aren't available in all countries or regions. iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support can be used with compatible iPhone models.

Add iPhone Wallet with MagSafe when you first attach it to your iPhone

1. Go to the Home Screen on your iPhone.
2. Attach your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support to your iPhone.
3. Tap Continue on your iPhone screen, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Add iPhone Wallet with MagSafe later

If you decide not to add your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support when you first attach it to your iPhone, you can add it later from the Find My app.

1. Attach your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support to your iPhone.
2. In Find My, tap +, choose Add MagSafe Accessory, then follow the onscreen instructions.

If the iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support is associated with someone else's Apple ID, they need to remove it before you can add it. See Remove a device from Find My on iPhone.

See also

Add your iPhone to Find My

Mark a device as lost in Find My on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Set separation alerts in case you leave a device behind in Find My on iPhone

In the Find My app, you can turn on separation alerts for a device so you don't accidentally leave it behind. You can also set Trusted Locations, which are locations where you can leave your device without receiving an alert.

If you have an iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support, you can get an alert if it detaches from your iPhone.

Important: In order to receive separation alerts, make sure you allow notifications for the Find My app. See Change notification settings on iPhone. Location sharing and finding devices aren't available in all countries or regions.

Set up alerts for your iPhone, iPad, Mac, or AirPods

You can set up separation alerts for your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch with iOS 15, iPadOS 15, or later; Mac with Apple silicon and macOS 12 or later; or AirPods with the Find My network turned on.

You can only set up a separation alert from the device sharing your location. You receive an alert every time the device sharing your location separates from the device you set an alert for.

1. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device you want to set up an alert for.
2. Below Notifications, tap Notify When Left Behind.
3. Turn on Notify When Left Behind, then follow the onscreen instructions.
4. If you want to add a Trusted Location, you can choose a suggested location, or tap New Location, select a location on the map, then tap Done.
5. Tap Done.

Get notified when your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe detaches from your iPhone

You can get an alert one minute after your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support separates from your iPhone. Then you can use the Find My app to see its last known location on a map.

1. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe.
2. Below Notifications, tap Notify When Detached.
3. Turn off or on Notify When Detached, then tap Done.

See also

Mark a device as lost in Find My on iPhone

Set separation alerts in case you leave an AirTag or item behind in Find My on iPhone

Table of Contents

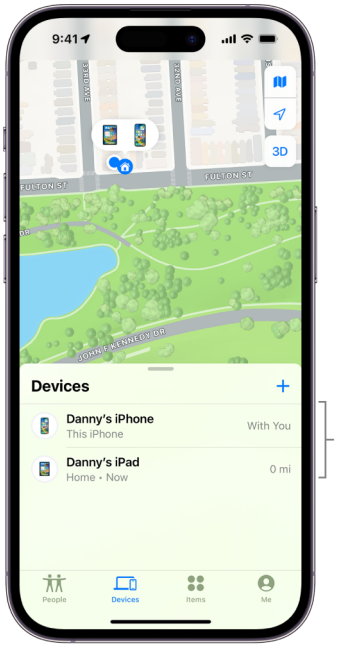
Locate a device in Find My on iPhone

Use the Find My app to locate and play a sound on a missing iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, Apple Watch, AirPods, or Beats headphones (supported models). In order to locate a device, you must turn on Find My [device] *before* it's lost.

Note: If you want to see how far away your devices are from you, make sure you turn on Precise Location for the Find My app. See Control the location information you share on iPhone.

If you lose your iPhone and don't have access to the Find My app, you can locate or play a sound on your device using Find Devices on iCloud.com.

Note: Location sharing and finding devices aren't available in all countries or regions.



About locating a device

- You can use Find My on your iPhone to see the location of your device on a map. If the device is online, you see its location, and it plays a sound to help you find it. If the device is offline, you see its location, but it doesn't play a sound.
- For AirPods and supported Beats headphones, you can locate them when they're near your device and connected to Bluetooth®. For supported AirPods, you can also see their location via the Find My network for up to 24 hours after they last connected to your device, even if they're not nearby.
- For iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support, you can see its location when it's attached to your iPhone and its last known location if it detaches from your iPhone.

See the location of your device on a map

You can see your device's current or last known location in the Find My app.

Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device you want to locate.

- *If the device can be located:* It appears on the map so you can see where it is.

- *If the device can't be located:* You see "No location found" below the device's name. Below Notifications, turn on Notify When Found. You receive a notification when it's located.

  Important: Make sure you allow notifications for the Find My app. See Change notification settings on iPhone.

For troubleshooting steps, see the Apple Support article If Find My is offline or not working.

Play a sound on your device

1. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device you want to play a sound on.
2. Tap Play Sound.

   - *If the device is online:* A sound starts after a short delay and gradually increases in volume, then plays for about two minutes. If applicable, a Find My [*device*] alert appears on the device's screen.

     A confirmation email is also sent to your Apple ID email address.

   - *If the device is offline:* You see Sound Pending. The sound plays the next time the device connects to a Wi-Fi or cellular network. For AirPods and Beats headphones, you receive a notification the next time your device is in range of your iPhone or iPad.

If your AirPods are separated, you have additional options to play a sound. See Locate AirPods in Find My in the AirPods User Guide.

Stop playing a sound on a device

If you find your device and want to turn off the sound before it stops automatically, do one of the following:

- *iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch:* Press the power button or a volume button, or flip the Ring/Silent switch. If the device is locked, you can also unlock it, or swipe to dismiss the Find My [*device*] alert. If the device is unlocked, you can also tap OK in the Find My [*device*] alert.
- *Apple Watch:* Tap Dismiss in the Find My Watch alert, or press the Digital Crown or side button.
- *Mac:* Click OK in the Find My Mac alert.
- *AirPods or Beats headphones:* Tap Stop in Find My.

Get directions to a device

You can get turn-by-turn directions to your device if you see its location on the map.

1. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device you want to get directions to.
2. Tap Directions to open the Maps app. See Get directions in Maps.

If you're near your supported AirPods, you can tap Find for additional directions. For more information, see Locate AirPods in Find My in the AirPods User Guide.

Locate or play a sound on a friend's device

If your friend loses a device, they can locate it or play a sound on it by going to Find Devices on iCloud.com and signing in with their Apple ID and password. To learn more, see Locate a device in Find Devices on iCloud.com in the iCloud User Guide.

If you set up Family Sharing, you can use Find My to locate a family member's missing device.

You can also use Siri to help locate a device.

Siri: Say something like: "Play a sound on my iPhone" or "Where's my iPad?" Learn how to use Siri.

See also

Adjust map settings in Find My on iPhone

Locate an AirTag or other item in Find My on iPhone

Apple Support article: If your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch is lost or stolen

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Get notified if you leave a device behind

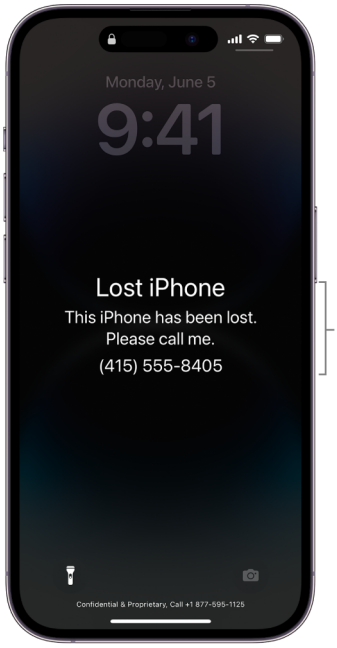
Next
Mark a device as lost

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Mark a device as lost in Find My on iPhone

Use the Find My app to mark a missing iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Apple Watch, Mac, supported AirPods, or iPhone Wallet with MagSafe as lost. In order to mark a device as lost, you must turn on Find My [device] *before* it's lost.

Note: Location sharing and finding devices aren't available in all countries or regions.



What happens when you mark a device as lost?

- A confirmation email is sent to your Apple ID email address.
- You can create a message for the device that says it's lost and how to contact you.
- For an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, or Apple Watch, your device doesn't display alerts or make noise when you receive messages or notifications, or if any alarms go off. Your device can still receive phone calls and FaceTime calls.
- For applicable devices, payment cards and other services are suspended.

Mark a device as lost

If your device is lost or stolen, you can turn on Lost Mode (for your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Apple Watch, supported AirPods, or iPhone Wallet with MagSafe), or lock your Mac.

1. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the lost device.
2. Below Mark As Lost, tap Activate.
3. Follow the onscreen instructions, keeping the following in mind:

    - *Passcode:* If your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, or Apple Watch doesn't have a passcode, you're asked to create one now. For a Mac, you must create a numerical passcode, even if you already have a

password set up on your Mac. This passcode is distinct from your password and is only used when you mark your device as lost.

- *Contact information:* For iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, or Apple Watch, the contact information and message appear on the device's Lock Screen. For AirPods or iPhone Wallet with MagSafe, the information appears when someone tries to connect with your device.

4. Tap Activate (for an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Apple Watch, AirPods, or iPhone Wallet with MagSafe) or Lock (for a Mac).

When the device has been marked as lost, you see Activated below the Mark As Lost section. If the device isn't connected to a network when you mark it as lost, you see Pending until the device goes online again.

See also Mark AirPods as lost in the AirPods User Guide.

Change the information for a lost device

After you mark your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Apple Watch, or iPhone Wallet with MagSafe as lost, you can adjust the information in the Lost Mode message.

1. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the lost device.
2. Below Mark As Lost, tap Pending or Activated.
3. Update the information, then tap Done.

Turn off Lost Mode for an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Apple Watch, AirPods, or iPhone Wallet with MagSafe

When you find your lost device, you can turn off Lost Mode.

1. In Find My, tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device.
2. Tap Pending or Activated below Mark As Lost, tap Turn Off Mark As Lost, then tap Turn Off.

For iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, or Apple Watch, you can also turn off Lost Mode by entering your passcode on the device. For iPhone Wallet with MagSafe, you can turn off Lost Mode by attaching the wallet to your iPhone.

Unlock a Mac

When you find your lost Mac, do one of the following:

- *Mac with Apple silicon:* Enter your Apple ID and password.

  See the Apple Support articles If you forgot your Apple ID email address or phone number and If you forgot you Apple ID password.

- *Intel-based Mac:* Enter the numeric passcode on the Mac to unlock it (the one you set up when you marked your Mac as lost).

If you forget your passcode, you can recover it using Find Devices on iCloud.com. For more information, see Use Lost Mode in Find Devices on iCloud.com in the iCloud User Guide.

If you lose your iPhone, you can turn on Lost Mode using Find Devices on iCloud.com.

See also

Mark an AirTag or other item as lost in Find My on iPhone

Apple Support article: If your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch is lost or stolen

Erase a device in Find My on iPhone

Use the Find My app to erase an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Apple Watch, or Mac. In order to remotely erase a device, you must turn on Find My [device] *before* it's lost.

Note: Finding devices isn't available in all countries or regions.

What happens when you erase a device in Find My?

- A confirmation email is sent to your Apple ID email address.
- When you erase a device remotely using Find My, Activation Lock remains on to protect it. Your Apple ID and password are required to reactivate it.
- If you erase a device that had iOS 15, iPadOS 15, or later installed, you can use Find My to locate or play a sound on the device. Otherwise, you won't be able to locate or play a sound on it. You may still be able to locate your Mac or Apple Watch if it's near a previously used Wi-Fi network.

Erase a device

1. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device you want to erase.
2. Tap Erase This Device, then tap Continue.

   If the device is a Mac, enter a passcode to lock it (you need to use the passcode to unlock it).
3. If the device is lost and you're asked to enter a phone number or message, you may want to indicate that the device is lost or how to contact you. The number and message appear on the device's Lock Screen.
4. Tap Erase.
5. Enter your Apple ID password, then tap Erase again.

If your device is offline, you see Erase Pending. The remote erase begins the next time it connects to a Wi-Fi or cellular network.

Cancel an erase

If you erase an offline device and find it before it comes online again, you can cancel the erase request.

1. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device whose erase you want to cancel.
2. Tap Cancel Erase, then enter your Apple ID password.

If you lose your iPhone, you can erase it using Find Devices on iCloud.com.

See also

Remove a device from Find My on iPhone

Remove a device from Find My on iPhone

You can use the Find My app to remove a device from your Devices list or turn off Activation Lock on a device you already sold or gave away. When you remove Activation Lock, someone else can activate the device and connect it to their Apple ID.

If you still have the device, you can turn off Activation Lock and remove the device from your account by turning off the Find My [*device*] setting on the device.

Note: Finding devices isn't available in all countries or regions.

Remove a device from your Devices list

If you're not planning on using a device, you can remove it from your Devices list. The device must be offline in order for you to remove it.

The device appears in your Devices list the next time it comes online if it still has Activation Lock turned on (for an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, or Apple Watch), or is paired with your iOS or iPadOS device (for AirPods or Beats headphones).

1. Do one of the following:
   - *For an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, or Apple Watch:* Turn off the device.
   - *For AirPods:* Put AirPods in their case and close the lid or turn the AirPods off.
   - *For Beats headphones:* Turn off the headphones.
2. In Find My, tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the offline device.
3. Tap Remove This Device, then tap Remove.

Remove an iPhone Wallet with MagSafe

You can remove an iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support from your Devices list if you don't want it to appear in the Find My app. Removing it from Find My allows someone else to connect it to their Apple ID.

1. In Find My, tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe.
2. Tap Remove This Device, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Turn off Activation Lock on a device you have

Before you sell, give away, or trade in a device, you should remove Activation Lock so the device is no longer associated with your Apple ID.

See the Apple Support articles:

- What to do before you sell, give away, or trade in your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch and Activation Lock for iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch
- What to do before you sell, give away, or trade in your Mac and Activation Lock for Mac

- What to do before you sell, give away, or trade in your Apple Watch, or buy one from someone else and About Activation Lock on your Apple Watch

Turn off Activation Lock on a device you no longer have

If you sold or gave away your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, or Apple Watch and you forgot to turn off Find My [*device*], you can still remove Activation Lock using the Find My app.

1. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device you want to remove.
2. Erase the device.

   Because the device isn't lost, don't enter a phone number or message.

   If the device is offline, the remote erase begins the next time it connects to a Wi-Fi or cellular network. You receive an email when the device is erased.
3. When the device is erased, tap Remove This Device, then tap Remove.

   All your content is erased, Activation Lock is turned off, and someone else can now activate the device.

You can also remove a device online using iCloud.com. For instructions, see Remove a device from Find Devices on iCloud.com in the iCloud User Guide.

See also

Remove an AirTag or other item from Find My on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Erase a device

Next
Add an AirTag

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Table of Contents

Add an AirTag in Find My on iPhone

You can register an AirTag to your Apple ID using your iPhone. When you attach it to an everyday item, like a keychain or a backpack, you can use the Find My app to locate it if it's lost or misplaced.

You can also get notified if you leave your AirTag behind. See Set separation alerts in case you leave an AirTag or item behind in Find My on iPhone.

You can also share an AirTag with other users.

You can also add supported third-party products to Find My. See Add or update a third-party item in Find My on iPhone.

Note: Location sharing and finding items aren't available in all countries or regions.

Add an AirTag

1. Go to the Home Screen on your iPhone.
2. Remove the battery tab from the AirTag (if applicable), then hold it near your iPhone.
3. Tap Connect on the screen of your iPhone.
4. Choose a name from the list or choose Custom Name to type a name and select an emoji, then tap Continue.
5. Tap Continue to register the item to your Apple ID, then tap Finish.

You can also register an AirTag in the Find My app. Tap +, then choose Add AirTag.

If the item is registered to someone else's Apple ID, they need to remove it before you can add it. See Remove an AirTag or other item from Find My on iPhone.

Change the name or emoji of an AirTag

1. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the AirTag whose name or emoji you want to change.
2. Tap Rename Item.
3. Choose a name from the list or choose Custom Name to type a name and select an emoji.
4. Tap Done.

View more details about an AirTag

When you register an AirTag to your Apple ID, you can view more details about it in the Find My app.

1. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the AirTag you want to see more details about.
2. Tap the name of the AirTag to see the serial number and the firmware version.

If the battery level is low, a message appears below the location of the AirTag. You can also see a low battery indicator next to the name of the AirTag in the Items list.

See also

Add your iPhone to Find My

Apple Support article: What to do if you get an alert that an AirTag, Find My network accessory, or set of AirPods is with you

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Remove a device

Next
Share an AirTag or other item in Find My on iPhone

Support > iPhone User Guide > Add an AirTag in Find My on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Share an AirTag or other item in Find My on iPhone

If you want to share an item that's paired with an AirTag (or a third-party item that works with Find My), you can share it in Find My so the borrower can see it on a map and find it. If it's nearby, Find My can play a sound, and if you're using a supported iPhone, you can find its precise location. People you're sharing items with don't receive tracking notifications when the items are moving with them.

Note: You share a third-party item the same way you share an AirTag. Location sharing and finding devices aren't available in all countries or regions.

Share an AirTag

1. Open the Find My app on your iPhone, then tap Items.
2. Tap the name of the AirTag or item you want to share, then tap Add Person below Share This AirTag (or Share This Item).
3. Enter the Apple ID of the person you want to add.

   To add more people, tap .
4. Tap the name of the person you want to share with, then tap their Apple ID.

   Repeat steps 3 and 4 for each person you want to add.
5. When you're finished adding people, tap Share in the top-right corner.

   A list of everyone you invited appears on the item's main screen, along with the status of their invitations.

   When someone accepts the invitation, the shared AirTag appears in the Find My app below Items and the recipient is notified that an item is being shared with them. If someone declines the invitation, their name is removed from the list, and you no longer see it.

   Note: You can only share an AirTag with someone who has an Apple ID. You can't share with a child account.

Accept or decline an invitation to share

If you're invited to share an AirTag, you receive a notification.

To see the invitation in Find My, tap Items, then do one of the following:

- *Accept the invitation:* Tap Add.

  The AirTag appears in your Items list, below [*Sharer*]'s Items. You stop receiving tracking notifications for as long as you borrow the AirTag.
- *Decline the invitation:* Tap Don't Add.

Stop sharing an AirTag

1. Open the Find My app on your iPhone, then tap Items.

2. Tap the name of the item you're sharing, then tap the name of the person you're sharing it with.
3. Tap Stop Sharing, then tap Stop Sharing again.

The person you were sharing with stops seeing the AirTag's location, but might still get tracking notifications when the AirTag is moving with them.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Add an AirTag

Next
Add a third-party item

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Add or update a third-party item in Find My on iPhone

You can use certain third-party products with the Find My app. You can pair these products with your Apple ID using your iPhone, and then use Find My to locate them if they're lost or misplaced.

You can also get notified if you leave your item behind. See Set separation alerts in case you leave an AirTag or item behind in Find My on iPhone.

You can also add an AirTag to Find My. See Add an AirTag in Find My on iPhone.

Note: Finding items isn't available in all countries or regions.

Add a third-party item

1. Follow the manufacturer's instructions to make the item discoverable.
2. In the Find My app, tap +, then choose Add Other Item.
3. Tap Connect, type a name and select an emoji, then tap Continue.
4. Tap Continue to register the item to your Apple ID, then tap Finish.

If you have trouble adding an item, contact the manufacturer to see if Find My is supported.

If the item is registered to someone else's Apple ID, they need to remove it before you can add it. See Remove an AirTag or other item from Find My on iPhone.

Change an item's name or emoji

1. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the item whose name or emoji you want to change.
2. Tap Rename Item.
3. Choose a name from the list or choose Custom Name to type a name and select an emoji.
4. Tap Done.

Keep your item up to date

Keep your item up to date so you can use all the features in Find My.

1. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the item you want to update.
2. Tap Update Available, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   Note: If you don't see Update Available, your item is up to date.

   While the item is updating, you can't use Find My features.

View details about an item

When you register an item to your Apple ID, you can use Find My to see more details about it, like the serial number or model. You can also see if a third-party app is available from the manufacturer.

1. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the item you want more details about.
2. Do either of the following:
   - *View details:* Tap Show Details.
   - *Get or open third-party app:* If an app is available, you see the app icon. Tap Get or to download the app. If you've already downloaded it, tap Open to open it on your iPhone.

See also

Add your iPhone to Find My

Apple Support article: What to do if you get an alert that an AirTag, Find My network accessory, or set of AirPods is with you

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Share an AirTag or other item in Find My on iPhone

Next
Get notified if you leave an item behind

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Set separation alerts in case you leave an AirTag or item behind in Find My on iPhone

In the Find My app, you can turn on separation alerts for an AirTag or other item so you don't accidentally leave it behind. You receive an alert every time the device sharing your location separates from the item.

You can also set Trusted Locations, which are locations where you can leave an item without receiving an alert.

Important: In order to receive separation alerts, make sure you allow notifications for the Find My app. See Change notification settings on iPhone. Location sharing and finding items aren't available in all countries or regions.

1. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the item you want to set an alert for.
2. Below Notifications, tap Notify When Left Behind.
3. Turn on Notify When Left Behind.
4. If you want to add a Trusted Location, you can choose a suggested location, or tap New Location, select a location on the map, then tap Done.
5. Tap Done.

See also

Mark an AirTag or other item as lost in Find My on iPhone

Set separation alerts in case you leave a device behind in Find My on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Locate an AirTag or other item in Find My on iPhone

You can use the Find My app to locate a missing AirTag or third-party item that you've registered to your Apple ID.

Learn how to register an AirTag or third-party item.

Note: Location sharing and finding items aren't available in all countries or regions.

See the location of an item

Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the item you want to locate.

- *If the item can be located:* It appears on the map so you can see where it is. The location and timestamp appear below the item's name. The item's location is updated when it connects to the Find My network.
- *If the item can't be located:* You see where and when it was last located. Below Notifications, turn on Notify When Found. You receive a notification once it's located again.

  Important: Make sure you allow notifications for the Find My app. See Change notification settings on iPhone.

Play a sound

If the item is nearby, you can play a sound on it to help you find it.

Note: If you can't play a sound on an item, you won't see the Play Sound button.

1. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the item you want to play a sound on.
2. Tap Play Sound.

   To stop playing the sound before it ends automatically, tap Stop Sound.

Get directions to an item

You can get directions to an item's current or last known location in the Maps app.

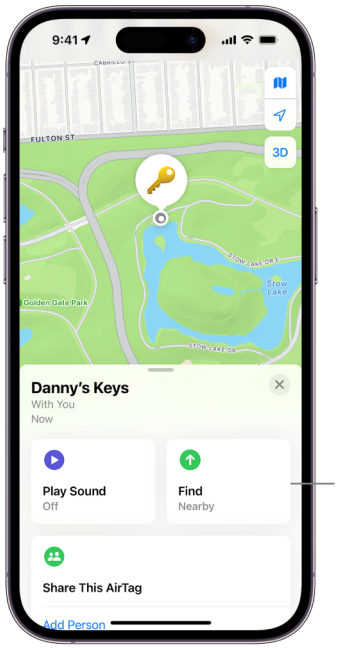
1. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the item you want to get directions to.
2. Tap Directions to open Maps.

See Get directions in Maps.

Find the precise location of an AirTag

If you have a supported iPhone and are near your AirTag, you can find its precise location.

1. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the nearby AirTag.
2. Tap Find.



Tap to find a nearby item.

3. Do any of the following:

    - *Move closer to the AirTag:* Start moving around to locate the AirTag and follow the onscreen instructions. You may see an arrow pointing in the direction of the AirTag, an approximate distance telling you how far away it is, and a note if it's located on a different floor.

    - *Play a sound:* Tap to play a sound on the AirTag.

4. When you locate the AirTag, tap .

See also

Mark an AirTag or other item as lost in Find My on iPhone

Locate a device in Find My on iPhone

Apple Support article: What to do if you get an alert that an AirTag, Find My network accessory, or set of AirPods is with you

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Get notified if you leave an item behind

Next
Mark an item as lost

Support > iPhone User Guide > Locate an AirTag or other item in Find My on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Mark an AirTag or other item as lost in Find My on iPhone

If you lose an AirTag or third-party item registered to your Apple ID, you can use the Find My app to mark it as lost.

Learn how to register an AirTag or third-party item.

Note: Finding items isn't available in all countries or regions.

What happens when you mark an item as lost?

- You can add a message saying that the item is lost and include your phone number or email address.
- If someone else finds your item, they can use a supported device to see a website with the Lost Mode message.

Turn on Lost Mode for an item

To mark an item as lost, you need to turn on Lost Mode.

1. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the lost item.
2. Below Lost Mode, tap Enable.
3. Follow the onscreen instructions to enter a phone number where you can be reached. To enter an email address instead, tap "Use an email address."

   Important: Make sure you allow notifications for the Find My app. See Change notification settings on iPhone.
4. Tap Activate.

Change the contact information in the Lost Mode message

1. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the lost item.
2. Below Lost Mode, tap Enabled.
3. Edit the phone number or email address, then tap Save.

Turn off Lost Mode for an item

When you find your lost item, turn off Lost Mode.

1. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the item.
2. Below Lost Mode, tap Enabled.
3. Tap Turn Off Lost Mode, then tap Turn Off.

See also

Mark a device as lost in Find My on iPhone

Apple Support article: What to do if you get an alert that an AirTag, Find My network accessory, or set of AirPods is with you

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Locate an item

Next
Remove an item

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Remove an AirTag or other item from Find My on iPhone

You can use the Find My app to remove an AirTag or third-party item from your Apple ID so someone else can register it.

Learn how to register an AirTag or third-party item.

Note: Finding items isn't available in all countries or regions.

1. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the item you want to remove.
2. Bring the item near your iPhone.

   If the item is not near your device, you can still remove it from your account. However, the item must be reset before anyone can register it to their Apple ID.
3. Tap Remove Item, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Note: Follow the manufacturer's instructions to reset an item. For an AirTag, see the Apple Support article How to reset your AirTag.

See also

Mark an AirTag or other item as lost in Find My on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Adjust map settings in Find My on iPhone

You can change the map view or distance units that appear In the Find My app.

Change the map view

The button at the top right of a map indicates if the current map is for exploring or viewing from a satellite. To choose a different map, do the following:

1. Tap the button at the top right.
2. Choose another map type.

   You can also tap to further customize the map.
3. Tap .

You can also tap 2D or 3D at the top right to change the view (not available in all locations).

Tip: If you don't see 2D or 3D, zoom in. You can also swipe up with two fingers to see the 3D view.

For information about how to interact with maps, see View maps on iPhone.

Change distance units

You can change the default distance units in Settings. See Change the language and region on iPhone.

See also

Get information about places in Maps on iPhone

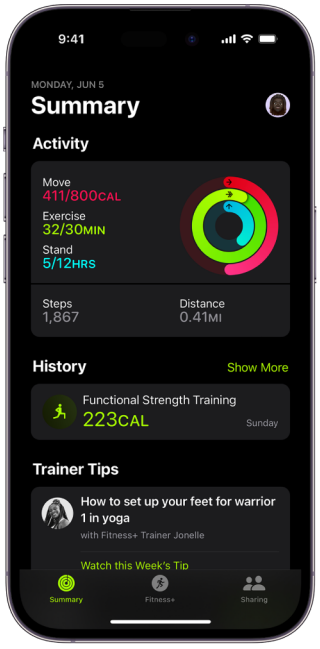
Locate a friend in Find My on iPhone

Locate a device in Find My on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Get started with Fitness on iPhone

Use the Fitness app on iPhone to help you meet your fitness goals. You can track your progress, show completed workouts, and share your activity with others. And when you subscribe to Apple Fitness+, you get access to a catalog of different workouts and guided meditations.



Track your daily activity

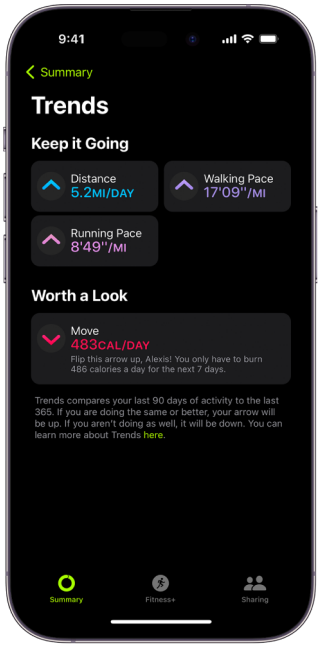
Open the Fitness app, then tap the Activity area to show your Move ring, see the number of steps you've taken, set a move goal, and track your progress over time.

The red Move ring shows how many active calories you've burned. And if you have an Apple Watch, you'll also see a green Exercise ring (showing how many minutes of brisk activity you've done), and a blue Stand ring (showing how many times in the day you've stood and moved for at least 1 minute per hour).

> *Note:* Trainer Tips is available in Apple Fitness+; not available in all countries or regions.

Check your trends

Get a quick snapshot of how you're doing on your fitness goals, and see how your statistics have moved over the last 90 days compared to the last 365 days.

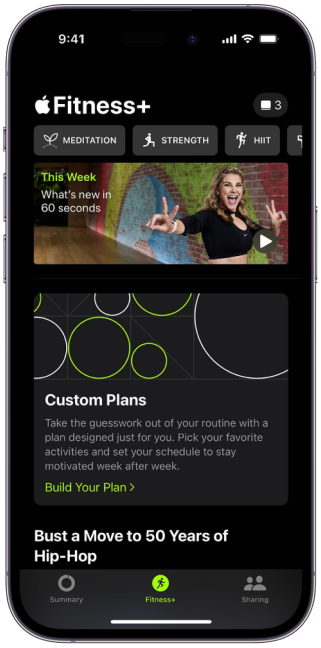


Share your activity with friends

Tap Sharing, then tap Invite a Friend to share the progress you're making toward your fitness goals. You can view highlights of your friends' activity and get notifications when they meet their goals, finish workouts, and more.

Get moving with Apple Fitness+

Apple Fitness+ workouts are for all levels, so you can challenge yourself whether you're just starting out or repeating one of your favorite workouts. To get started, tap Fitness+ at the bottom of the screen.



Want to learn more?

- Track your daily activity and change your move goal in Fitness on iPhone
- See your activity summary in Fitness on iPhone
- Customize notifications for Fitness on iPhone
- Start an Apple Fitness+ workout or meditation on iPhone
- Apple Watch User Guide: Track daily activity with Apple Watch

Helpful? Yes No

Track your daily activity and change your move goal in Fitness on iPhone

You can use the Fitness app to track your daily activity, set a move goal, see your progress, and see your movement trends over time—even if you don't have an Apple Watch.

See Track daily activity with Apple Watch in the Apple Watch User Guide.

Check your progress

Open the Fitness app at any time to see how you're doing. You can see your Move ring, total steps, completed workouts, trends, and more.

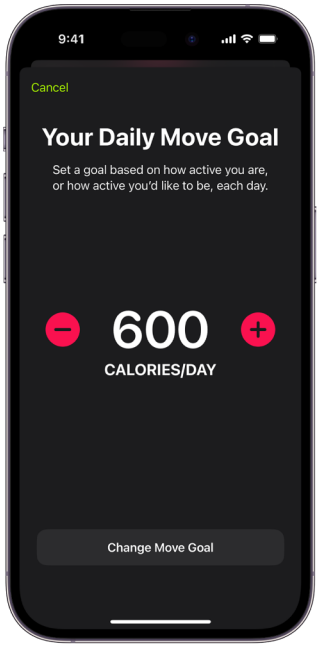
When you carry your iPhone with you, motion sensors track your steps, distance, and flights climbed to estimate active calories burned. Any workouts you complete in compatible third-party apps also contribute to the progress shown on your Move ring.

An overlapping ring means you exceeded your goal. Tap the Activity area to see details of your progress for that day.

Note: You can add a Fitness widget that lets you track your daily activity directly from your Home Screen or Lock Screen. See Add, edit, and remove widgets on iPhone and Create a custom iPhone Lock Screen.

Change your move goal or personal health details

If you ever find your move goal either too challenging or not challenging enough, you can change it. You can also update your personal health information.



1. Open the Fitness app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your picture or initials at the top right.
3. Do any of the following:

- *Change move goal:* Tap Change Goals, tap ⊖ or ⊕ to adjust the goal, then tap Change Move Goal.
- *Change health details:* Tap Health Details, tap a field to make a change, then tap Done.

You can also tap the Activity area, scroll down, then tap Change Goals.

Every Monday, you're notified about the previous week's achievements, and you can adjust your goals for the upcoming week. Goals are suggested based on your performance in the previous week.

See also

See your activity summary in Fitness on iPhone

Share your activity in Fitness on iPhone

Subscribe to Apple Fitness+ on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Get started with Fitness

Next
See your activity summary

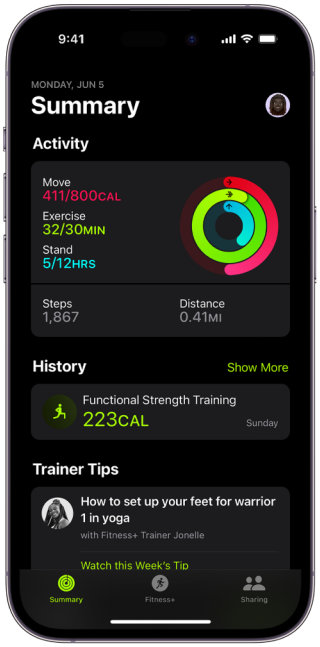
Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

See your activity summary in Fitness on iPhone

In the Fitness app, you can see a summary of your daily activity, trends, and awards to keep track of your progress. The Trends area shows your daily data for active calories, walking and running distance, walking pace, and running pace. Your last 90 days of activity are compared to the last 365.

Note: It takes 180 days of activity to start your trends.

You can also view data for workouts and meditations you've completed in Apple Fitness+ or compatible third-party apps—such as how long you worked out, your average heart rate, total calories burned, and more.



See your activity summary, trends, and awards

1. Open the Fitness app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:

   - *See your activity summary for a specific day:* Tap the Activity area, tap , then tap a date.
   - *See your trends:* Tap Show More next to Trends. To see the history of a specific trend, tap it.

     If the trend arrow for a particular metric points up, then you're maintaining or improving your fitness levels. If an arrow points down, your 90-day average for that metric has started to decline. To help motivate you to turn the trend around, you receive coaching—for example, "Walk an extra quarter mile a day."
   - *See your awards:* Tap Show More next to Awards, then tap an award to learn more about its details.

See your workout and meditation history

In Apple Fitness+ or compatible third-party apps, you can see your workout and meditation history.

1. Open the Fitness app on your iPhone.
2. In the History area, tap Show More.
3. To review a workout or meditation, tap it.

See also

Sync a third-party workout app to Fitness on iPhone

Start an Apple Fitness+ workout or meditation on iPhone

Apple Watch User Guide: Track daily activity with Apple Watch

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Track daily activity and change your move goal

Next
Sync a third-party workout app

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Sync a third-party workout app to Fitness on iPhone

You can sync a compatible third-party workout app to the Fitness app on iPhone to help you meet your fitness goals. Fitness suggests workout apps that you can download from the App Store.

1. Open the Fitness app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Activity area, then scroll down to Workout Apps.
3. Choose an app, then download it from the App Store.
4. Open the app and if prompted, grant permission to share data with the Health app.

   Any workout you complete in a compatible third-party app appears in your activity summary and contributes to the progress toward closing your Move ring in the Fitness app.

To find out if a workout app you've downloaded is compatible with the Fitness and Health apps, see the Apple Support article Manage Health data on your iPhone or Apple Watch.

See also

Get apps in the App Store on iPhone

Share health and fitness data with apps and devices

Customize notifications for Fitness on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Customize notifications for Fitness on iPhone

The Fitness app on iPhone can help you reach your daily activity goals. You can set up notifications to keep you up to date about your progress throughout the day, and even get coaching tips to help you stay on track.

Turn on notifications

1. Go to Settings > Notifications > Fitness, then turn on Allow Notifications.
2. Tap Fitness Notification Settings, then customize how you want to receive notifications.

Turn off notifications

1. Go to Settings > Notifications > Fitness.
2. Tap Fitness Notification Settings, then turn off the notifications you no longer want to see.

See also

Share your activity in Fitness on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Share your activity in Fitness on iPhone

In the Fitness app, keep your fitness routine on track by sharing your activity with your family and friends—you can even share with a trainer or coach. You can view highlights and get notifications when others meet their goals, finish workouts, and earn achievements.

Add or remove a friend

1. Open the Fitness app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sharing, tap, then tap Invite a Friend.

   Note: If you're sharing for the first time, tap Sharing, then tap Invite a Friend.
3. Do any of the following:

   - *Add a friend from your contacts:* Enter a contact's name, then tap the name.

     You can also tap to select contacts.
   - *Add a friend's phone number:* Enter a phone number, then tap Return.
   - *Add a friend's email address:* Enter an email address, then tap Return.
4. Tap Send.

If a friend hasn't accepted an invitation, tap their name in the Invited area of the Sharing screen, then tap Invite Again.

If you want to unsend an invitation you've sent, swipe left next to the friend's name, then tap Delete.

To remove a friend, tap a friend you're sharing with, tap, then tap Remove Friend.

View your friends' activity

You can see highlights of your friends' activity—like workouts they've finished or goals they've met. You can also view your friends' activity rings for the last 7 days and a summary of activities they've completed.

1. Open the Fitness app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sharing, then do any of the following:
   - *View highlights:* Swipe left or right below Highlights to see how all of your friends are doing.
   - *View a friend's activity:* Tap a friend's name below Activity Rings to see a summary of their activity rings for the last 7 days and recently completed activities like workouts and meditations.

Change your friend settings

You can easily adjust friend settings.

1. Open the Fitness app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sharing, then tap a friend.
3. Tap , then do any of the following:
   - *View the friend's contact card:* Tap View Contact.
   - *Mute notifications for the friend:* Tap Mute Notifications.
   - *Hide your activity progress with a friend:* Tap Hide My Activity.
   - *Stop sharing your activity with a friend:* Tap Remove Friend.

See also

Track your daily activity and change your move goal in Fitness on iPhone

Apple Watch User Guide: Share your activity from Apple Watch

Subscribe to Apple Fitness+ on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Customize Fitness notifications

Next
Subscribe to Apple Fitness+

Support › iPhone User Guide › Share your activity in Fitness on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Subscribe to Apple Fitness+ on iPhone

When you subscribe to Apple Fitness+ on iPhone, you get access to a catalog of workouts, including Cycling, Strength, Treadmill (running and walking), Yoga, and more in the Fitness app. Stay motivated with onscreen guidance like trainer coaching and timers. If you use an Apple Watch, your personal metrics, like heart rate and calories burned, appear while you work out.

You can also participate in guided meditations—5, 10, or 20 minute meditations designed to help you develop a regular meditation routine and improve your overall sense of well-being.

What you need to use Apple Fitness+

To do an Apple Fitness+ workout without an Apple Watch, you need an iPhone 8 or later with iOS 16.1 or later.

Note: Workouts you perform without an Apple Watch won't display some personal metrics, such as heart rate and calories.

To do an Apple Fitness+ workout with an Apple Watch, you need Apple Watch Series 3 or later with watchOS 7.2 or later, paired with iPhone 6s or later with iOS 14.3 or later. See Apple Watch User Guide: Subscribe to Apple Fitness+.

Subscribe to Apple Fitness+

1. Open the Fitness app on your iPhone, then tap Fitness+.
2. Tap the free trial button, then follow the onscreen instructions to sign in with your Apple ID and confirm your subscription.

Note: Apple Fitness+ isn't available in all countries or regions.

Change or cancel your Apple Fitness+ subscription

1. Open the Fitness app on your iPhone, then tap or your picture at the top right.
2. Tap [*account name*], then tap Apple Fitness+.
3. Follow the onscreen instructions to change or cancel your subscription.

If you subscribe to Apple Fitness+ as part of an Apple One Premier subscription and want to cancel your subscription, see the Apple Support article If you want to cancel a subscription from Apple.

Share your Apple Fitness+ subscription with Family Sharing

When you subscribe to Apple Fitness+ or Apple One Premier, you can use Family Sharing to share your subscription with up to five other family members. Your family group members don't need to do anything—Apple Fitness+ is available to them the first time they open the Fitness app after your subscription begins.

Note: To stop sharing your Apple Fitness+ subscription with a family group, you can cancel the subscription, leave the family group, or (if you're the family group organizer) stop using Family Sharing.

See also

Find Apple Fitness+ workouts and meditations on iPhone

Set up Family Sharing on iPhone

Apple Watch User Guide: Get Started with Apple Fitness+

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Share your activity

Next
Find Apple Fitness+ workouts and meditations

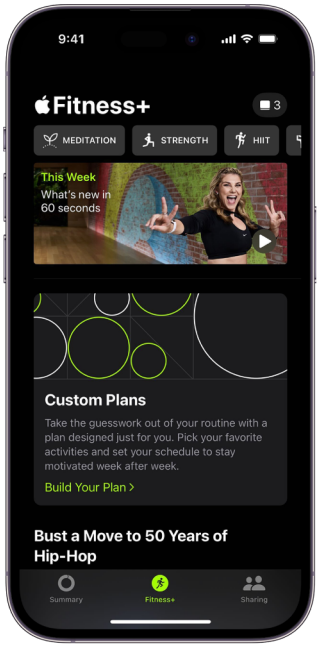
Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Find Apple Fitness+ workouts and meditations on iPhone

Apple Fitness+ in the Fitness app can help you find a workout, meditation, or routine that works for you. You can browse for individual workouts or meditations, start a program with multiple episodes, sort and filter workouts of a specific type, stack your favorite activities, get trainer tips, or choose a recommended workout based on your activity. Mindful Cooldown and Core workouts begin at 5 minutes, and all other workout types range up to 45 minutes, with new workouts added every week. Meditations can be 5, 10, or 20 minutes.

Browse workouts and meditations

Apple Fitness+ recommends workouts and meditations based on the things you typically do in the Fitness app as well as your favorite apps that work with the Health app. You can even get suggestions for new trainers, workouts, and meditations to help you round out your routine.



1. Open the Fitness app on your iPhone, then tap Fitness+.
2. Do any of the following:

   - *Browse by activity type:* Swipe left or right to browse the activity types at the top of the screen.
   - *Browse audio workouts:* Scroll down to Time to Walk or Time to Run, tap Show All, then tap an audio workout to play.
   - *Browse featured activities:* Scroll down to a category such as New Workouts, New Meditations, Popular, or Simple and Quick.
   - *Browse by trainer:* Scroll down to Fitness+ Trainers, then tap Show All.
   - *More of what you do:* Browse workouts with trainers you often work out with, and workout types you typically do in other fitness apps that work with the Health app.

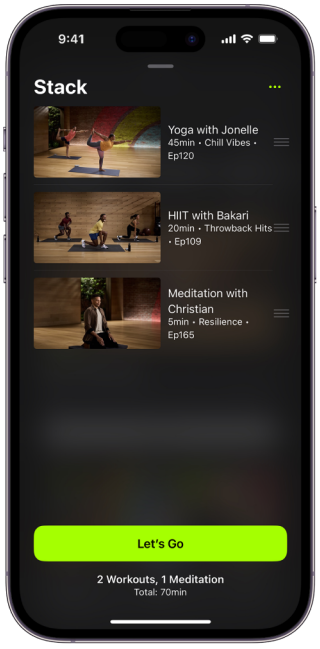
See View your data in Health on iPhone.

- *Try something new:* Explore workouts similar to what you already do, but with different trainers and suggested workout types to balance your routine.
- *View My Library:* Scroll down to My Library to view workouts, meditations, Stacks, and custom plans you've saved from the workout detail or workout summary screen. You can use My Library to keep a list of your favorite workouts, build a workout routine, or save workouts for playing offline.

When you're browsing, activities you've done before have a checkmark on the thumbnail.

Use Stacks to combine workouts

In Apple Fitness+, you can create Stacks, which are a series of workouts or meditations that play in sequence, like a music playlist. Stacks let you create customized long workouts that incorporate your favorite activities. For example, you can create a stack with a few intense workouts followed by a cool-down meditation.



1. Open the Fitness app on your iPhone, then tap Fitness+.
2. Tap an activity, then tap at the top right.
3. Tap Add to Stack.

   You can also touch and hold an activity, then tap Add to Stack.
4. When you're finished adding activities to your stack, tap , then do any of the following:

   - *Start your stack:* Tap Let's Go.
   - *Add your stack to My Library:* Tap , then tap Add Stack to Library.
   - *Delete an activity from your stack:* Swipe left on the activity, then tap Delete.
   - *Reorder the activities in your stack:* Drag next to an activity up or down.
   - *Clear your stack:* Tap , then tap Clear.

Get Trainer Tips

When you subscribe to Apple Fitness+, you get access to short videos that feature helpful hints for staying active and mindful, how-to demos for improving technique, and expert advice to keep you moving toward

your goals.

Note: Trainer Tips isn't available in all countries or regions.

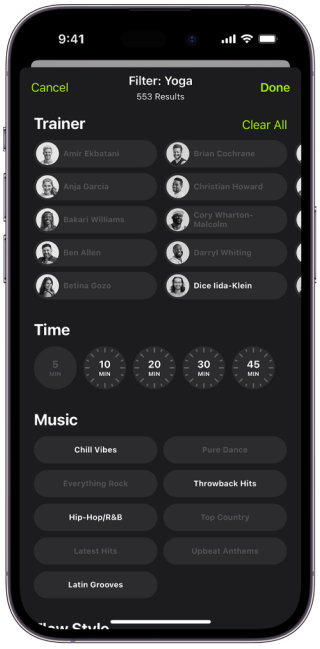
1. Open the Fitness app on your iPhone, then tap Fitness+.
2. Scroll down to Trainer Tips, then tap the tip to watch it.

   You can also tap Show All to view all Trainer Tips.

Note: A new tip appears every week.

Sort and filter workouts and meditations

To make it easier to find the activity you're looking for, you can sort and filter specific types of activities (like Rowing or Dance) by trainer, length of activity, music genre, and more.



1. Open the Fitness app on your iPhone, then tap Fitness+.
2. Select an activity type, then do any of the following:

   - *Sort activities:* Tap Sort, then tap an option like Trainer or Time.
   - *Filter activities:* Tap Filter, then tap the filters you want to apply.

     If you can't select a filter, there are no activities that apply to that filter.

Try a workout or meditation program with multiple episodes

1. Open the Fitness app on your iPhone, then tap Fitness+.
2. Do one of the following:

   - *Workout programs:* Scroll to Workout Programs, then tap Show All.
   - *Meditation programs:* Scroll to Meditation Programs, then tap Show All.
3. Tap a program.

   Each program shows the workout types and number of episodes.
4. Do any of the following:

- *Preview the program:* Tap Watch the Film to watch a video about the goals of the program and the types of workouts included. You can also read about the program to learn more.
- *Add episodes to My Library:* Tap + next to the episode you want to add, or tap + ADD ALL at the bottom of the screen to add all episodes to My Library.
- *Start an episode from the program:* Tap an episode in the list, then tap the button that begins the workout or meditation.

To help you keep your place after completing an episode, the next episode is automatically displayed under Next Workout, but you can choose any episode at any time.

See also

Start an Apple Fitness+ workout or meditation on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Subscribe to Apple Fitness+

Next
Start an Apple Fitness+ workout or meditation

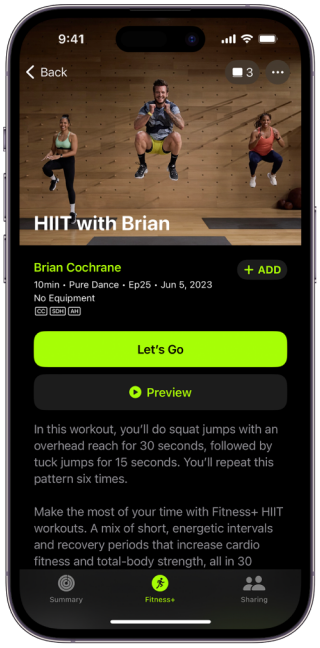
Support > iPhone User Guide > Find Apple Fitness+ workouts and meditations on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Start an Apple Fitness+ workout or meditation on iPhone

In Apple Fitness+ in the Fitness app, you can start a workout or meditation from your iPhone. Apple Fitness+ workouts are for all levels, so you can challenge yourself, whether you're just starting out or repeating one of your favorites. You can pause and resume an activity at any time, and review the details when you finish it.

Start a workout or meditation



1. Open the Fitness app on your iPhone, then tap Fitness+.
2. Tap an activity type at the top of the screen, then select a workout or meditation, or select a workout from one of the categories (like Simple and Quick).

   To learn more about workout and meditation programs, smart suggestions, and more, see Browse workouts and meditations.
3. Do any of the following:

   - *Add the activity to My Library:* Tap + ADD.
   - *Preview the activity:* Tap Preview.

     You can also view the playlist for the activity. If you subscribe to Apple Music, tap Listen in Music to open the playlist and download it in the Music app. See Subscribe to Apple Music on iPhone.
   - *Start the activity:* Tap the button that begins the workout, then tap. If you're starting a treadmill workout, choose Run or Walk to get the most accurate metrics.

     To stream your workout to an AirPlay 2.0 compatible device such as a TV or HomePod, tap the screen during an activity, tap, then choose a destination.

In all workouts, additional trainers demonstrate modifications of the exercises to help you make the workout easier or more advanced. Trainers may also offer directions on how to modify an exercise, such as doing the movement using your bodyweight instead of a dumbbell.

Pause and resume a workout or meditation

Do any of the following:

- *Pause an activity:* Tap the screen, then tap ⏸.
- *Resume an activity:* Tap ▶.
- *Start Picture-in-Picture:* Tap ⧉ to watch the activity while you use another app.

End and review a workout or meditation

When your workout ends, you can share your workout, cool down, and more.

1. Tap ✕, then tap End Workout.

   Your workout summary is displayed. Tap ⊕ to add the workout to My Library, tap ⎙ to share your workout, tap Mindful Cooldown to choose a cooldown workout, or tap Done to return to Apple Fitness+.

After you've taken a class, it appears in the list of workouts with a checkmark on the thumbnail.

See also

Create a custom plan in Apple Fitness+ on iPhone

Find Apple Fitness+ workouts and meditations on iPhone

Change what's on the screen during an Apple Fitness+ workout or meditation on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Find Apple Fitness+ workouts and meditations

Next
Create a custom plan in Apple Fitness+

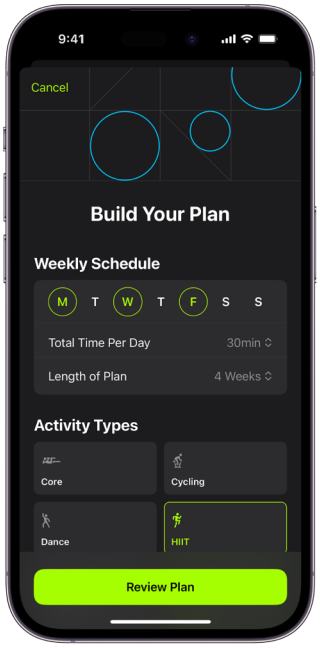
Support › iPhone User Guide › Start an Apple Fitness+ workout or meditation on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Create a custom plan in Apple Fitness+ on iPhone

In Apple Fitness+, you can create a custom plan that fits in your schedule and helps you stay on track with your fitness goals. You can add a variety of different activities to your custom plan, including HIIT, Yoga, Strength, Meditation, and more.

Build your custom plan



1. Open the Fitness app on your iPhone, then tap Fitness+.
2. Tap Build Your Plan, then do the following:
   - *Select your weekly schedule:* Tap the days you want to work out.
   - *Select the total duration of your workouts:* Tap a duration next to Total Time Per Day.
   - *Select how long you want your plan to last:* Tap a duration next to Length of Plan.
   - *Select the types of activities you want to do:* Tap up to 5 activities.

     Note: You may need to increase the total duration of workouts and the number of days you want to work out each week to include more activities in your custom plan.
3. Tap Review Plan, then do any of the following:
   - *Choose when to start the plan:* Tap a start date below Review Plan.
   - *Change the activities in your plan:* Swipe left on your weekly schedule to review the types of activities featured in your plan.

     Tap an activity to change the activity type and its settings, then tap Update.

- *Add an activity to your plan:* If you feel like adding an extra activity to one of the days in your plan, swipe left on a day, then tap Add. Tap the activity to change the activity type and its settings, then tap Add.

- *Choose preferences for trainers and music:* Tap Trainers or Music below Preferences to select the types of trainers or music genres you want featured in your plan.

4. When you're finished, tap Create Plan.

Modify your custom plan

After you create your custom plan, you can change the activities that have been scheduled for you based on your preferences.

1. Open the Fitness app on your iPhone, then tap Fitness+.
2. Tap View Plan, then do any of the following:

   - *Rename your plan:* Tap , then tap Rename Plan.

   - *Review the workouts in your plan:* Swipe left to see all of the activities scheduled in each week of your plan.

   - *Swap a workout:* Tap next to an activity, then tap a new workout to replace it.

     Note: You can only swap workouts on the day you have activities scheduled.

Start your custom plan

1. Open the Fitness app on your iPhone, then tap Fitness+.
2. Tap Let's Go below Your Plan, then tap .

Note: When you start your custom plan, you receive reminders to get started. For more information on Fitness notifications, see Customize notifications for Fitness on iPhone.

Delete your custom plan

1. Open the Fitness app on your iPhone, then tap Fitness+.
2. Tap View Plan, tap , then tap End Plan.

After you've deleted a custom plan, you can restart it at any time. Scroll down to My Library, tap Custom Plans, tap the plan below Previous Custom Plans, then tap Repeat Plan.

See also

Track your daily activity and change your move goal in Fitness on iPhone

Find Apple Fitness+ workouts and meditations on iPhone

Start an Apple Fitness+ workout or meditation on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Work out together using SharePlay in Fitness on iPhone

In Apple Fitness+, you and up to 32 other people can work out together using SharePlay. You can start a FaceTime call on your iPhone, and then start a group workout in the Fitness app. You can also start a group workout directly from the Fitness app.

The workout plays in sync with everyone on the call, and everyone can control playback from their devices—so you and your friends can cheer each other on, see when someone closes an Activity ring, and get notifications when someone moves ahead of the pack on the Burn Bar during HIIT, Treadmill, Cycling, and Rowing workouts.

Tip: You can start SharePlay instantly by holding two iPhone devices close together.

Start a group workout in the Fitness app

1. Open the Fitness app on your iPhone, then tap Fitness+.
2. Select a workout, tap, then tap SharePlay.
3. In the To field, enter the contacts you want to work out with, then tap FaceTime.
4. When the FaceTime call connects, tap Let's Begin.

   The recipient must tap the workout title at the top of the FaceTime controls, then tap Open to participate in the workout. For everyone on the call who has access, the workout starts playing at the same time. Those who don't have access are asked to get access (through a subscription or a free trial, if available).

   Everyone can use playback controls on their respective devices to play or pause the workout.

To end a workout before it completes, tap, then tap End Workout Only for Me or End Workout for All.

See also

Make FaceTime calls on iPhone

Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together in FaceTime on iPhone

Change what's on the screen during an Apple Fitness+ workout or meditation on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Change what's on the screen during an Apple Fitness+ workout or meditation on iPhone

During a workout in Apple Fitness+ in the Fitness app, metrics like timers and trainer guidance appear onscreen. You can change these at any time.

Note: Metrics settings sync in the Fitness app on all your Apple devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

Change onscreen metrics

1. During a workout, tap.
2. Do one of the following:
   - *Turn off all metrics:* Turn off Show Metrics.
   - *Change how time is displayed:* Select Off, Show Time Elapsed, or Show Time Remaining.

     Even if you turn off the time display setting, you still see the timer for intervals in your workout.

Turn on Audio Hints

You can turn on Audio Hints during your workout, which provide additional spoken cues to describe what the trainer is doing.

1. During a workout, tap.
2. Tap Audio Hints, then tap On.

   To adjust the speed, tap Audio Hints again, then tap the speed you prefer.

Turn on captions and subtitles

All Apple Fitness+ workouts and meditations support standard captions, as well as subtitles for the deaf and hard of hearing (SDH). After you choose a workout, you can check if it includes closed captions and SDH below the length, music genre, and date added.

1. During a workout, tap.
2. Tap, then choose a language.

See also

Find Apple Fitness+ workouts and meditations on iPhone

Start an Apple Fitness+ workout or meditation on iPhone

Download an Apple Fitness+ workout or meditation on iPhone

Download an Apple Fitness+ workout or meditation on iPhone

You can download workouts and meditations to your iPhone so you can work out even when you're offline.

1. Open the Fitness app on your iPhone, then tap Fitness+.

   If you don't have the Fitness app on your device, you can download it from the App Store.

2. Do any of the following:

   - *Download an activity to your device:* Tap an activity, tap + ADD to add it to My Library, then tap .
   - *Show all downloaded activities:* Scroll to My Library, then tap Downloaded.

     To start a downloaded activity, tap the one you want, then tap the button to begin the workout.
   - *Remove a downloaded activity from your device:* Tap the activity, tap , then tap Remove Download.

See also

Find Apple Fitness+ workouts and meditations on iPhone

Start an Apple Fitness+ workout or meditation on iPhone

Change what's on the screen during an Apple Fitness+ workout or meditation on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Get started with Freeform on iPhone

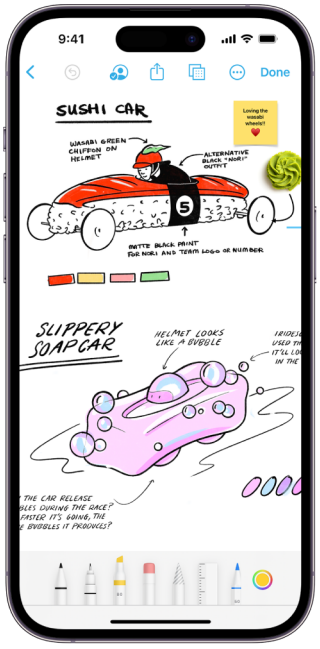
The Freeform app gives you a boundless canvas for creativity. Bring everything together, including photos, drawings, links, and files. And invite others to work with you.

Gather ideas freely

You can put just about any kind of file in a Freeform board—an online whiteboard—without worrying about layouts or page sizes. To create a board, tap .

Collaborate with others

Tap to invite people to start working together in real time on a board. You can add sticky notes to conduct a brainstorming session or provide feedback.

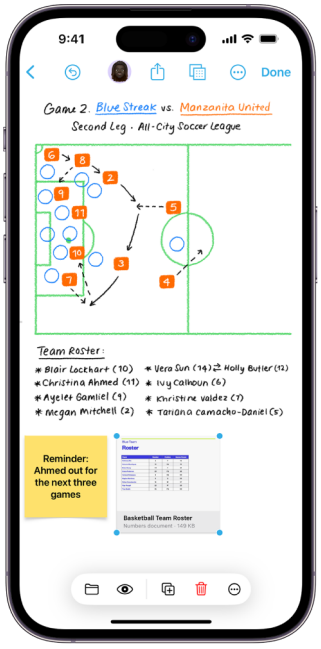


Get creative with the drawing tools

Tap to start drawing. Adjust the line's thickness, transparency, color, and more, and pinch to zoom in and out as you work.

Start on your iPhone, keep working on your Mac

The Freeform boards you store in iCloud—and any changes you make to them—stay up to date on all your Apple devices when you're signed in with the same Apple ID. To use iCloud with Freeform, go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > Show All (below Apps Using iCloud), then turn on Freeform.



Want to learn more?

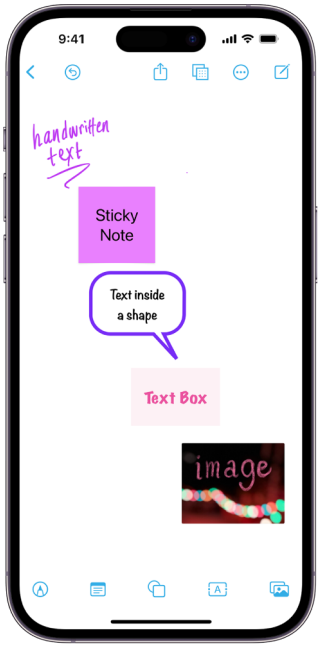
- Create a Freeform board on iPhone
- Draw or handwrite on a Freeform board on iPhone
- Add shapes, lines, arrows, and diagrams to a Freeform board on iPhone
- Share Freeform boards and collaborate on iPhone
- iCloud User Guide: Set up iCloud for Freeform on all your devices

Create a Freeform board on iPhone

Use the Freeform app to create boards for brainstorming and collaborating.

Create a new board

1. Open the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Tap .
3. Tap one of the options at the bottom of the screen, such as a sticky note or text box, to start building your board.



4. Move around your board by dragging your finger, and zoom in or out by pinching open or closed.

   Tip: To magnify more precisely, tap , then tap Zoom to.

5. To name your board, tap , then tap Rename.

To learn how to align items or move something to the background, see Position items on a Freeform board on iPhone.

Create a board from another app

You can start a new Freeform board using content from another supported app, such as Notes, Maps, Safari, Files, Photos, and more.

1. In the other app, open the item you want to share (for example, a note, map, webpage, PDF, or screenshot).

   To share just one part of a file to a board (rather than the entire webpage or note), select the item. If your selection includes text, only the text is shared.

2. Tap Share or , then tap the Freeform app icon .

3. Tap New Board or the name of an existing board.

   Either a link or the item appears in the board.

Open a board

1. Open the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the board you want to open, or do one of the following:

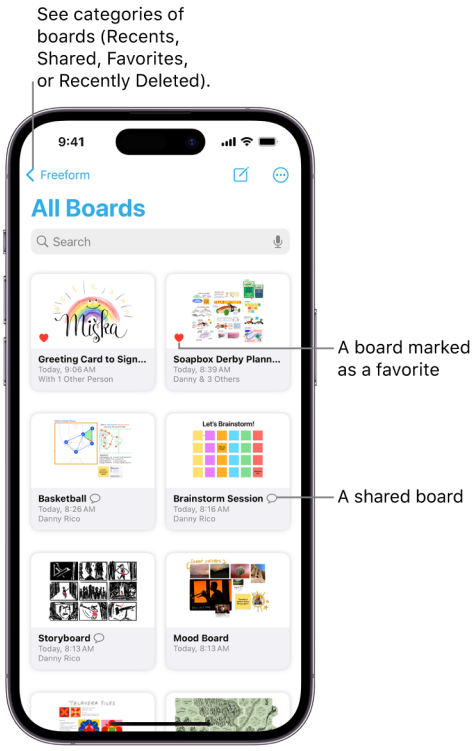
   - *Open a board you've opened recently or marked as a favorite:* Tap in the upper-left corner, tap a category, then tap a board.
   - *If you're working in a board:* Tap in the upper-left corner, tap a category, then tap a board.

3. To sort boards by name (instead of by most recently updated), tap , then tap Icons or List.

   Note: Any collaborations you get invited to in Messages appear in an Invitations section on the Shared Boards screen until you accept them.

4. To add a board to Favorites, do one of the following:

   - *While browsing All Boards:* Touch and hold the thumbnail or name of the board, then tap Favorite .
   - *If you're working in a board:* Tap , then tap Favorite .



Duplicate a board

When you want to copy an existing Freeform board, do one of the following:

- *While browsing All Boards:* Tap , then tap Select. Tap the boards you want to copy (a checkmark appears as you select each one), then tap Duplicate.

  Or, touch and hold the thumbnail or name of the board, then tap Duplicate .

- *If you're working in a board:* Tap , then tap Duplicate.

Note: If you duplicate a shared board, the copy isn't shared.

See also

Share Freeform boards and collaborate on iPhone

Draw or handwrite on a Freeform board on iPhone

iCloud User Guide: Set up iCloud for Freeform on all your devices

Helpful? Yes No

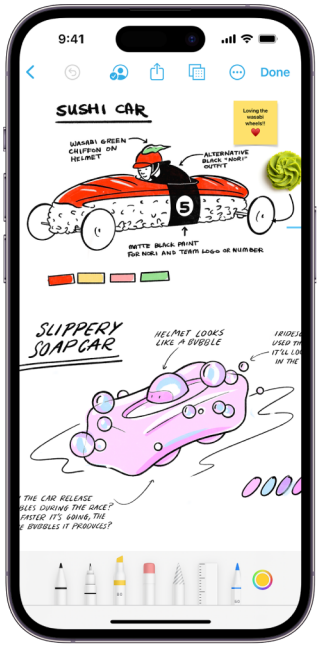
Previous
Get started with Freeform

Next
Draw or handwrite

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Draw or handwrite on a Freeform board on iPhone

In the Freeform app, you can sketch or jot a handwritten note with your finger.



Draw or handwrite

1. Open the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Open a board, or tap to start a new one.
3. Tap, then draw with your finger.

   Tip: Hold your finger still for a moment when you finish the drawing to straighten its shape.
4. Tap a tool to switch to it. (Swipe to see other tools, such as Fill, Crayon, Fountain Pen, or Watercolor Brush.)

Tap any tool a second time to change its qualities, like the thickness or opacity of a stroke.

To fill a closed shape with color, use the Fill tool (the paint tube).

To draw a straight line, tap the Ruler tool. (You can rotate it by placing two fingers on it and turning your hand.)

Select and edit parts of a drawing

When you draw in the Freeform app, your strokes are grouped. If you want to break a drawing apart, you can separate and merge your strokes. You can also delete, resize, or straighten parts of a drawing.

1. After you draw or write on your Freeform board with the drawing tools, tap (between the Eraser and Ruler) in the drawing tools.
2. Tap or circle the part of the drawing you want to select, then choose an option. (Tap to see other options.)

   Tip: Choose Snap to Shape to straighten hand-drawn lines.

You can also tap to select an entire drawing or other item when you're not using the drawing tools. Tap an item to select it, tap in the formatting tools, then tap Cut, Copy, or Duplicate.

See also

Add shapes, lines, arrows, and diagrams to a Freeform board on iPhone

Position items on a Freeform board on iPhone

Add accessibility descriptions

Write and draw in documents with Markup on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Create a Freeform board

Next
Add text

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Add text in sticky notes, shapes, and text boxes on a Freeform board on iPhone

In the Freeform app, you can add text to a board using a sticky note or text box, or you can add text within a shape.

1. Open the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Open a board, or tap to start a new one.
3. Tap , , or .
4. Double-tap the sticky note, shape, or text box, then enter text. (If you have a keyboard connected, you can start typing as soon as the item appears.)
5. To change the font, alignment, and more, double-tap to show the object's formatting tools, then tap Aa.

See also

Draw or handwrite on a Freeform board on iPhone

Position items on a Freeform board on iPhone

Add accessibility descriptions

Apply consistent styles and formatting in Freeform on iPhone

Add shapes, lines, arrows, and diagrams to a Freeform board on iPhone

In the Freeform app, you can add shapes, lines, arrows, and diagrams to a board.

Add and format shapes, lines, and arrows

1. Open the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Open a board, or tap to start a new one.
3. Tap, and tap a shape, line, or arrow to add it to the board.
4. Tap to select the shape or line and show its formatting tools, then do any of the following:

   - *Change the fill color:* Tap.
   - *Change the line style:* Tap, then choose the stroke color and weight you want for a shape or line.

     Tap to turn lines into arrows, or to add other styles of endings.

     If you've selected a connection line, tap to change its style to straight, corner, or curved.
   - *Change the type of shape:* Tap, tap Change Shape, then choose another shape.

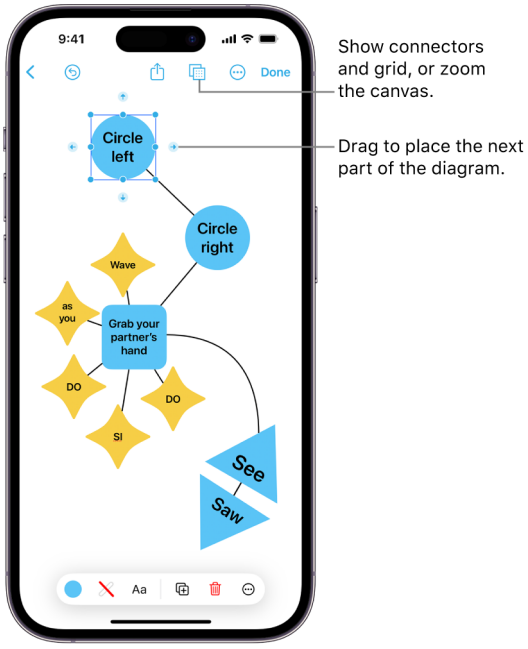
You can also add shapes and lines to your board by drawing them and then straightening the strokes. See Draw or handwrite on a Freeform board on iPhone.

Note: The color of a button may change to reflect its current state.

Create a diagram

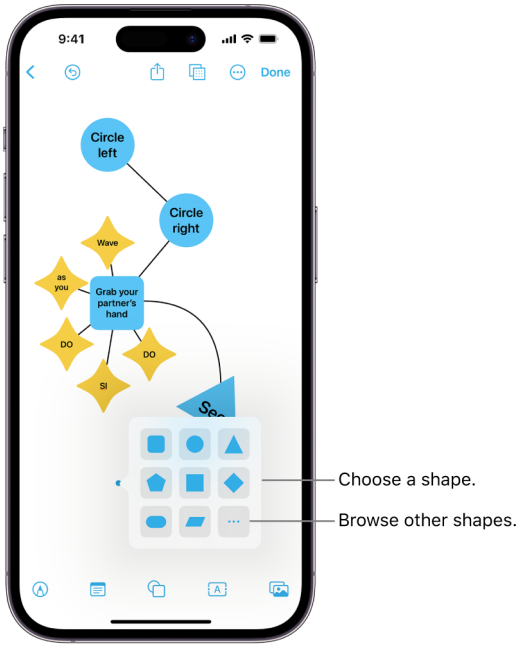
You can easily create a connected diagram, such as a flowchart, by using connectors and the shape picker in Freeform.

1. Open the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Open a board, or tap to start a new one.
3. Tap, then tap Show Connectors. (In a shared board, tap, then tap Show Connectors.)



4. Begin your diagram by tapping , , , or and adding an item.
5. Drag a connector arrow to where you want the next part of your diagram. When you let go, a small menu of shapes opens. Tap to select the next shape you want to add.

   (Tap to browse other shapes.)



You don't see connector arrows when you select a line or multiple items.

Tip: You can quickly add equally spaced, aligned shapes with connectors. Tap to select a shape, then touch and hold a connector arrow. As you hold, a preview of the shape and line appears. When you let go, the shape and line are added to the board.

Split or combine shapes

When you add multipart shapes in the Freeform app , you can divide them into their parts and then edit each part individually. For example, you can divide the map of the United States (in the Places category) and change the color of each state. You can also subtract shapes from other shapes, remove the overlapping area between two shapes, or create a new shape by combining one shape with another.

After you've added shapes to your Freeform board, do one of the following:

- *Split a multipart shape apart:* Tap , then tap Break Apart.

- *Combine shapes:* Select multiple items, tap , then below Combine Shapes tap an option to unite, intersect, subtract, or exclude.

Change size, width, or length

After you add a shape or line in the Freeform app , you can change its dimensions.

Tap to select a shape, then drag a dot.

- *Shapes:* Drag a blue dot to change the size or proportions of the shape. Drag any green dot to change aspects particular to that shape, such as its number of sides.
- *Connection lines:* Drag a blue dot to attach an endpoint to another item on the board. Drag the green dot to adjust the curve.

See also

Draw or handwrite on a Freeform board on iPhone

Position items on a Freeform board on iPhone

Add accessibility descriptions

Apply consistent styles and formatting in Freeform on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

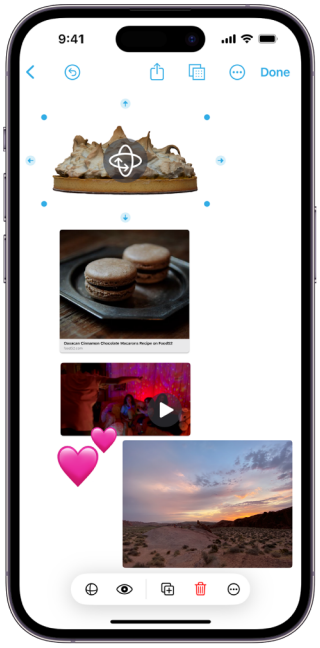
Previous
Add text

Next
Add files

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Add photos, videos, stickers, scans, links, and other files to a Freeform board on iPhone

In the Freeform app, you can add any photo or video to a board, or take a new one with your iPhone camera. You can also add any kind of file to your board by scanning, linking, or inserting it.



Add a photo, video, sticker, link, or other file

1. Open the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Open a board, or tap to start a new one.
3. Do one of the following:

   - Copy the item to your Clipboard, tap on an empty space, then when a menu appears, tap Paste.
   - Tap, then choose, for example, Stickers.

Note: You can insert files saved on your iPhone or in iCloud Drive. For most file types, Freeform makes a copy of the inserted file. When you add a link to a collaborative Keynote presentation, Numbers spreadsheet, or Pages document, participants in your Freeform board can tap the card to move to the shared file in iCloud. (If you want others to be able to collaborate on the file, you must save it in iCloud.)

Double-tap any media item—photo, video, scan, or other file—to preview it.

Scan and add a document

You can scan a paper document and add it to your board as a PDF without leaving Freeform.

1. Open the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Open a board, or tap to start a new one.

3. Tap , then tap Scan.
4. Position the document so that it appears on the screen, then tap or press a volume button.
5. Drag the corners to select the area you want in the scanned document, then tap Keep Scan.
6. Scan additional pages, then tap Save when you're done.

A card with an image of the first page of your scan appears on your board.

Tip: To save your scan to iCloud Drive or on your iPhone, select the card, tap , tap , then tap Save to Files.

Format a photo or video

After you add photos or videos in the Freeform app , you can crop them, mask them, or change their formatting. Do any of the following:

- *Crop or mask the photo:* Tap .
- *Remove the photo's background:* Tap , then tap Remove Background. If the background of the photo can't be made transparent, Remove Background isn't available.

  You can also paste an image without a background. See Lift a subject from the photo or video background on iPhone.
- *Add a shadow, round the corners, add a description, and more:* Tap , then choose an option.
- *Replace the photo or video:* Select the photo or video, tap or , tap Replace, then select a replacement.
- *Preview the photo or video:* Tap , or double-tap the photo or video.

  To preview a movie in full screen, double-tap it.

Put an image inside a shape

You can use a shape as a mask or frame for an image. For example, you can put your photo inside a circle.

1. Open the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Open a board, or tap to start a new one.
3. Add a photo or other image to the board.
4. Tap , then choose a shape.
5. Position the shape over the image, then select both it and the image. (See Select, align, and group multiple items on a board.)
6. Tap , then tap Mask with Shape.

Or drag an image onto a shape to use it as a frame.

To remove it from the shape, select the masked image, tap , then tap Reset Mask.

Tip: To add a photo, video, file, or link to a Freeform board from supported apps (such as Notes, Photos, Safari, and more), select it and tap in the other app, tap the Freeform app icon, then tap New Board or the name of an existing board.

See also

Draw or handwrite on a Freeform board on iPhone

Position items on a Freeform board on iPhone

Add accessibility descriptions

Apply consistent styles and formatting in Freeform on iPhone

Apply consistent styles and formatting in Freeform on iPhone

In the Freeform app, when you want the text in your sticky notes, shapes, or text boxes to have a consistent look—for example, font, size, and color—you can copy the style from one item and paste it in another. You can also save styles.

1. Tap an item on your Freeform board and make any adjustments to the formatting—so it has the style you want to copy.
2. When you have an item that's formatted in a style you like, tap it to show its formatting tools.
3. Tap, tap Style, then tap Copy Style.
4. Tap to select and show the formatting tools for an item whose style you want to change.
5. Tap, tap Style, then tap Paste Style.

   Depending on the item you're pasting a style into, fonts, line weight, or color are matched.

   For linked or placed files, pasted styles update corners and shadows.

Tip: If you like the style of an item, you can save its style. Then, every time you add another item like that to your board, it uses that saved style. Tap, tap Style, then choose Save as Insert Style.

See also

Position items on a Freeform board on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

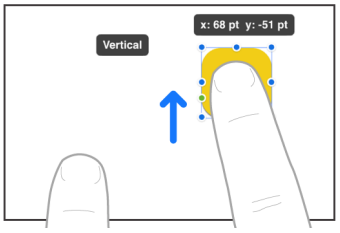
Position items on a Freeform board on iPhone

In the Freeform app, you can move, rotate, or resize items on your board. You can align, distribute, or group them, and move them to the background or foreground. You can turn on a grid or guides to help you position items, and lock items when you want to prevent any further changes.

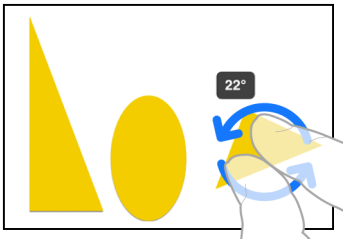
Move, rotate, or resize an item

After you add an item to a board in the Freeform app, you can tap to select it and then do any of the following:

- *Reposition it:* Drag from the center of the item.
- *Move it in a straight line:* To constrain an item's movement horizontally, vertically, or diagonally, drag the item with one finger while you use another finger to touch and hold anywhere on the board.

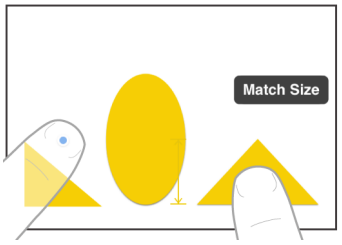


- *Rotate it:* Place two fingers on the item, then turn your hand in the direction you want to rotate the item.



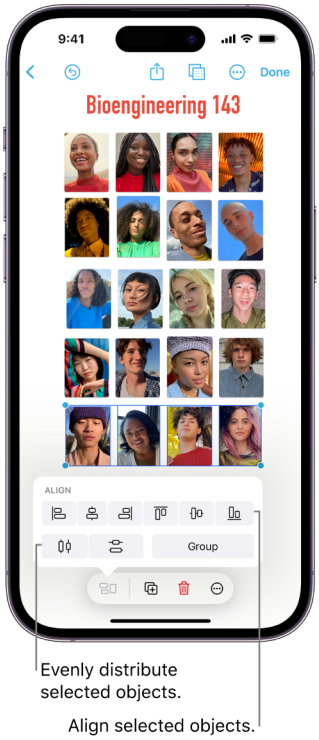
- *Put it in the background or foreground:* Tap, then tap Back or Front.
- *Resize it:* Drag a blue dot.

  In text boxes, drag a green dot to resize both the box and the text within it.
- *Match its size to another item:* Use a second finger to touch and hold the one you want to match after you start resizing. When the words Match Size appear, lift both your fingers at the same time.



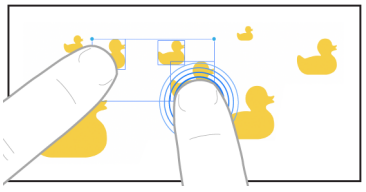
Select, align, and group multiple items on a board

After you add items to a board in the Freeform app, you can select and align multiple items relative to one another. You can also group several items to more easily move, rotate, or resize them as a single unit.

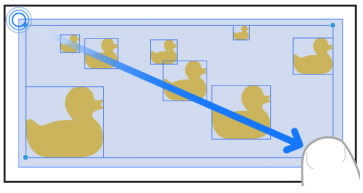


1. Select multiple items by doing one of the following:

   - Tap and hold an item on your board, then, with another finger, tap other items.



   - Touch and hold the canvas, then drag the box that appears around the items you want to select.



   - Tap an empty space on the canvas, then tap Select Objects. Tap each item you want to select. Tap the item again if you want to deselect it.

2. Move, rotate, or resize the selected items, or tap, then tap an alignment option or Group.

Hide or show the grid

You can show a grid of gray dots in your boards. This allows you to see more easily if items line up.

1. Open the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Open a board, or tap to start a new one.
3. Tap, then tap Hide Grid or Show Grid.

Turn guides on or off

Guides can help you place items precisely in the Freeform app. When guides are on, they appear as you drag an item on a board and it aligns with another item. They also indicate when three or more items are equally spaced. You can turn the guides off and on as needed.

Go to Settings > Freeform. Turn Center Guides, Edge Guides, and Spacing Guides on or off.

Lock an item on a board

After you add an item to a board in the Freeform app, you can lock it so you don't inadvertently move, modify, or delete it. For example, you might lock one or more text boxes to serve as headings. (This could help set off areas on a board where participants can share items.)

1. Tap a drawing, shape, text box, or other item on your board.
2. Tap, then tap Lock.

Tip: When you want to define a workspace for your participants (rather than having a wide open canvas), try adding a large rectangle shape. Select the shape, tap, tap Back, then lock it.

See also

Create a Freeform board on iPhone

Apply consistent styles and formatting in Freeform on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Apply consistent styles

Next
Search Freeform boards

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Search your Freeform boards on iPhone

In the Freeform app, you can search all your Freeform boards for text in sticky notes, text boxes, shapes, and filenames.

Do any of the following:

- *Search within a board:* Tap the board's name or (near the top-right corner), then tap Find.
- *Search all boards:* Tap the search bar near the top of the All Boards screen. Any board that contains the text appears in the search results.

  (If you're in a board, tap to access Search in All Boards.)

See also

Create a Freeform board on iPhone

Delete and recover your Freeform boards on iPhone

iCloud User Guide: Set up iCloud for Freeform on all your devices

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Share Freeform boards and collaborate on iPhone

In the Freeform app, you can invite people to collaborate on a board in iCloud, and everyone will see the latest changes when they're online and signed in with their Apple ID. To make sure the board is accessible to all, you can add descriptions for visual items. You can also export your Freeform board as a PDF to send a copy of it to others.

Invite others to collaborate on a board

When you collaborate with others on a shared Freeform board, you can see edits as others make them. Changes are saved in iCloud, so everyone with access to the board sees the latest version whenever they open it.

Note: Boards are stored only in the iCloud account of the owner. The iCloud storage of participants isn't affected by items in a board.

1. Open the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
   - *While browsing All Boards:* Touch and hold the board you want to share, then tap Share.
   - *From inside a board:* Open the board you want to share (or tap to start a new one), then tap.
3. The current sharing setting is described below the name of the board, such as "Only invited people can edit." Tap the setting to change it.

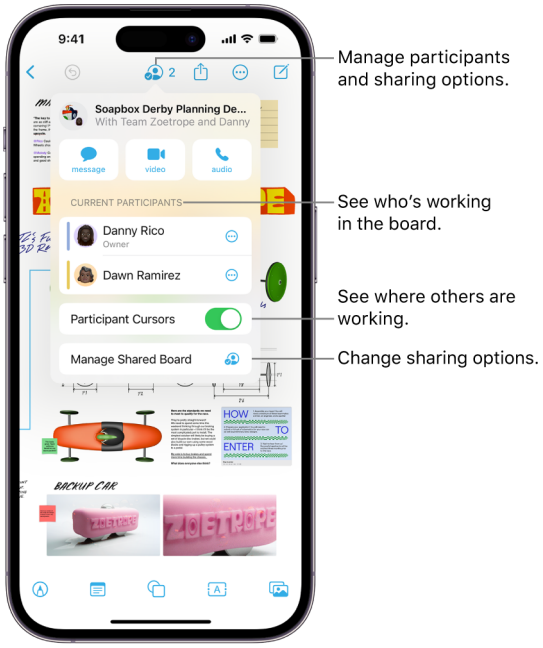
   Note: If you want to be the only one who can invite others, select "Only invited people" and turn off "Allow others to invite" (green is on).
4. Choose how you want to share the board—such as Messages or Mail—or tap the icon of anyone you've communicated with recently to share with them.

You can add people after you've started sharing a board. Tap , tap Manage Shared Board, then tap Share With More People. Depending on the settings of others in Messages, may change appearance.

Note: To edit or view the board, everyone you share with must be signed in with their Apple ID with iOS 16.2, iPadOS 16.2, macOS 13.1, or later. To collaborate using Messages, you and anyone you invite must also turn on iMessage.

View others in a board

You can see where others are working on your board in real time or follow along while another participant moves in a board. For example, if you're following someone who's presenting their design proposal on a Freeform board, you can see where they are on the board and what they see.



1. Open the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Open the shared board where you want to see others at work, then tap . (Turn on Participant Cursors if it's off.)
3. Do any of the following:

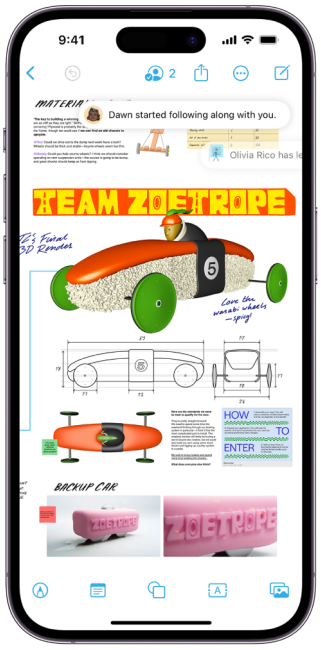
   - *Jump to where they're working:* Tap the name of a participant.

     The color next to the participant's name matches the color marking their place on the board.

   - *Follow their board view as they work or present:* Tap next to the name of a participant, then tap Follow Along. Or you can just tap the person's avatar wherever they are on the board, then tap Follow.

     Anything you'd selected before entering the mode is deselected. A border (with a color matching the cursor of the person you're following) frames what they see on the board.

     Both you and the presenter you're following need to be online.



When you're following along, you can't select anything on the board, and zoom level is based on the other person's view.

To stop following along, tap Stop in the top-right corner, or just make an edit, or scroll or zoom.

Note: Others working with you on the board can only undo and redo their own changes while the board is open. Use to move through the changes you made on your own iPhone. To redo a change after you undo it, touch and hold , then tap Redo.

Manage sharing settings

You can change access and permissions for individuals or for everyone after you've started sharing a board.

1. Open the Freeform app on your iPhone, then open the board whose sharing settings you want to change.
2. Tap .

   A list of participants appears, showing who is working in the board.
3. Tap Manage Shared Board, then do any of the following:

   - *Lock the board for edits:* Tap Share Options, then tap "View only."
   - *Give editing access:* Tap Share Options, then tap "Can make changes."
   - *Change access and permissions individually:* Tap a participant's name, then adjust their settings.
   - *Invite others with a link:* Tap Share Options, tap "Anyone with the link," tap , then tap Copy Link.

     Note: Anyone can copy the link to send to others, but if you select "Only people you invite," then only those invited to open the board can use the link. If you don't want participants to be able to invite others, select "Only people you invite" and "Only you can add people."

Tip: You can also manage any board you've previously shared while browsing All Boards. Touch and hold its thumbnail or name, then tap Manage Shared Board.

Add accessibility descriptions

You can add a description of your visual content to any item on your board. That way, people who use assistive technology such as VoiceOver can hear the visual content described aloud. (Descriptions aren't visible on the board itself.)

1. Open the Freeform app on your iPhone, then open the board where you want to add accessibility descriptions.
2. Select the item you want to describe, tap, then tap Description.
3. Enter a description of the visual content, then tap.
4. To hear the description, turn on VoiceOver, then tap the item.

Stop sharing or collaborating

1. Open the Freeform app on your iPhone, then open the board you want to stop sharing or collaborating on.
2. Tap, then tap Manage Shared Board.
3. Do any of the following:

   - *Remove people:* Tap the name of the participant you want to remove, then tap Remove Access.
   - *Remove yourself from someone else's board:* Tap your name, then tap Remove Me.
   - *Stop sharing with everyone:* Tap Stop Sharing, then tap Stop Sharing.

     When you choose this option, the board no longer appears on the devices of the other participants, even though you still have access to it.

Send a PDF copy of a board

1. Open the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Open a board, or tap to start a new one.
3. In the board you want to send, tap, then tap Export as PDF.
4. Choose how you want to send the board, such as in Messages or Mail, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   People and groups you've recently communicated with appear as icons. Tap one to send the board to them.

You can also export a board as a PDF while browsing All Boards. Touch and hold the thumbnail or name of the board, then tap Export as PDF.

Tip: To send a PNG of your board, take a screenshot, then share it from the Photos app. You can also select and copy items you want to share and then paste them into other apps (Mail or Files, for example) as a PNG.

To use the collaboration features fully, all participants must be online, signed in with their Apple IDs, have Freeform turned on in iCloud (see Set up iCloud for Freeform on all your devices in the iCloud User Guide), and have two-factor authentication turned on.

See also

iCloud User Guide: Set up iCloud for Freeform on all your devices

Print from iPhone

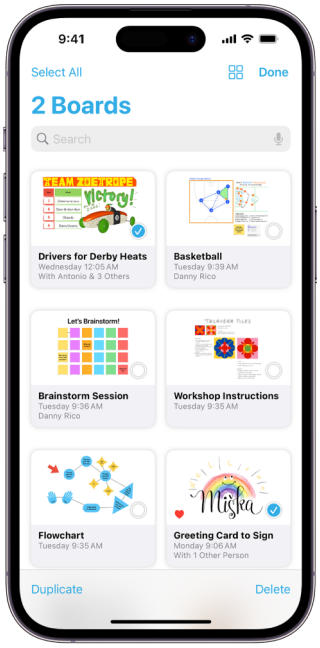
Delete and recover your Freeform boards on iPhone

Collaborate on projects with Messages on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Delete and recover your Freeform boards on iPhone

In the Freeform app, you can delete or remove boards you no longer need. You can also recover deleted boards you want to keep.



Delete a board

1. Open the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. While browsing All Boards, tap near the top-right corner, tap Select, then tap the boards you want to delete. (A checkmark appears as you select each one.)

   (If you're in a board, tap to browse All Boards.)
3. Tap Delete at the bottom-right corner of the screen.

You can also touch and hold the thumbnail or name of the board, then tap Delete.

If you're the *owner* of a board and you delete it, it no longer appears on anyone's devices.

If you're a *participant* in a shared board and you delete it, it no longer appears on your devices, but others can still access it.

Recover a recently deleted board

If you change your mind about deleting a board, you can recover it.

1. Open the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. While browsing All Boards, tap , then tap Recently Deleted.
3. Do one of the following:

- *Recover a board:* Touch and hold the thumbnail or name of the recently deleted board, then tap Recover.
- *Recover several boards:* Tap ⋯ near the top-right corner, tap Select, then tap the boards you want to recover. (A checkmark appears as you select each one.) Tap Recover at the bottom of the screen.

Deleted boards remain in Recently Deleted for 30 days.

If you were the *owner* of a shared board that you deleted, it no longer appears on anyone's device, and you have to reshare it after recovering it.

If you delete a board you don't own, you may be able to access it again with the invitation link.

Permanently remove a recently deleted board

After deleting a board, you can permanently remove it.

1. Open the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. While browsing Recently Deleted, touch and hold the board, tap Delete, then tap Delete.

See also

Share Freeform boards and collaborate on iPhone

Search your Freeform boards on iPhone

iCloud User Guide: Set up iCloud for Freeform on all your devices

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Share and collaborate

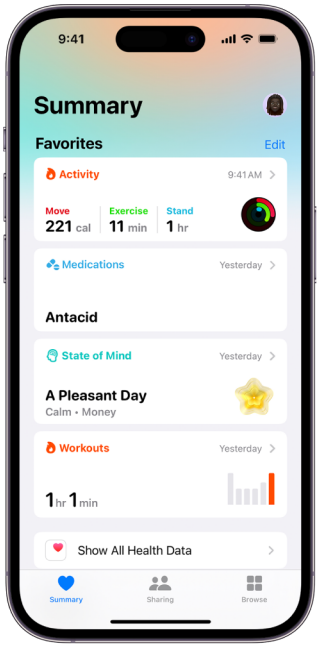
Next
Get started with Health

Support › iPhone User Guide › Delete and recover your Freeform boards on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Get started with Health on iPhone

The Health app on iPhone stores health data from a number of different sources: your iPhone, iPad, Apple Watch, and compatible apps and third-party devices. You can set up a sleep schedule, check your headphone levels, schedule when to take your medications, and much more.

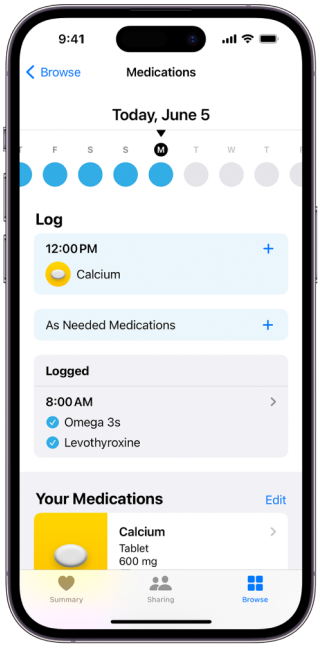


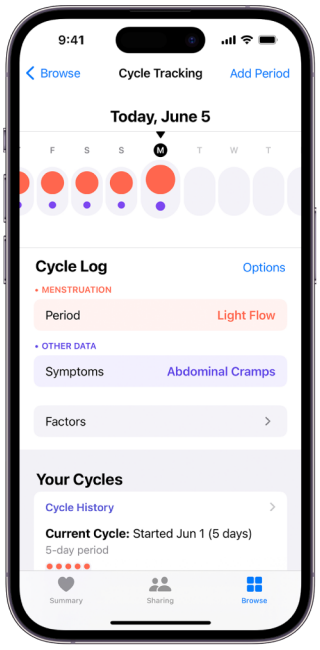
Find your health data in one place

iPhone automatically stores and analyzes valuable health details, including mobility data, sleep history, and even health records from your medical providers. You can also manually add information about medications you're taking, your menstrual cycle, and more. To display all of your health data, open the Health app and scroll down to see highlights.

Schedule your medications

Create a list of the medications you're taking, schedule when to take them, and log when you do. To add a new medication, tap Browse, tap Medications, then tap Add a Medication.



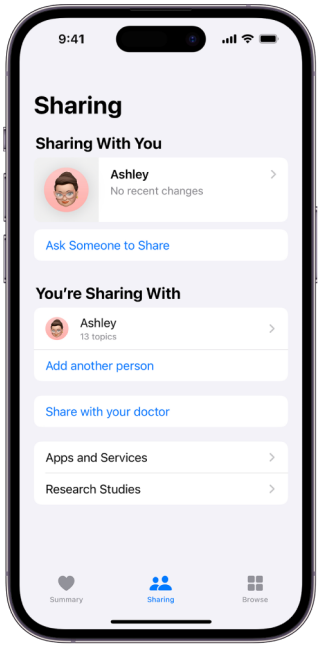


Track your menstrual cycle

With Cycle Tracking, you can log your period, record symptoms like cramps, and track cycle factors like lactation. You can also use it to help predict when your next period or fertile window will begin. To set up Cycle Tracking, tap Browse, tap Cycle Tracking, then tap Set Up Cycle Tracking.

Share your health data

Securely share data with friends, family, doctors, and others caring for you. You control which details to share, who to share it with, and when to stop sharing. To share your health data, tap Sharing, then tap “Share with your doctor.”



Want to learn more?

- View health records in Health on iPhone
- Add or change sleep schedules in Health on iPhone
- Track your mental wellbeing in Health on iPhone
- Share your data in Health on iPhone
- Back up your Health data in iCloud on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Fill out your Health Details in Health on iPhone

To personalize the Health app, add your name, date of birth, sex, and other basic information into Health Details. To help first responders and others in case you have a medical emergency, create a Medical ID that contains information about medical conditions, medications, allergies, emergency contacts, and more. To better manage your health with the help of the Health app, periodically review the Health Checklist.

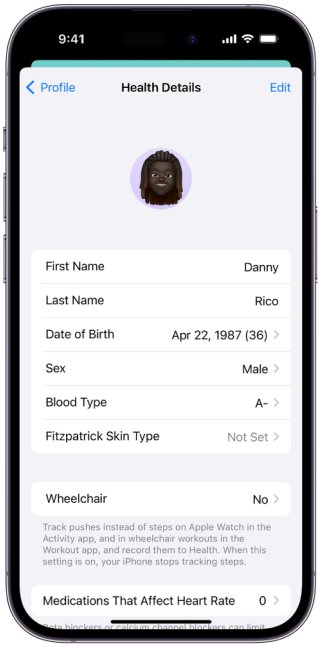
Fill out the Health Details screen

When you first open Health, you're asked to provide basic health information about yourself. If you don't supply all of the requested information, you can add it later on the Health Details screen.

1. Tap your picture or initials at the top right.

   If you don't see your picture or initials, tap Summary or Browse at the bottom of the screen, then scroll to the top of the screen.

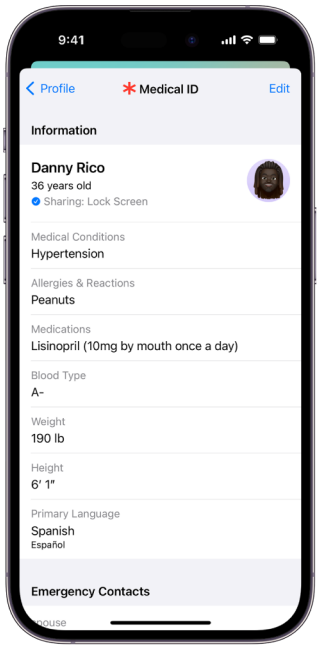
2. Tap Health Details, then tap Edit.



3. To make a change, tap a field.
4. When you're finished, tap Done.

Create a Medical ID

First responders and others can view critical medical information about you in your Medical ID, even while your iPhone is locked. See Set up and view your Medical ID.



Review your Health Checklist

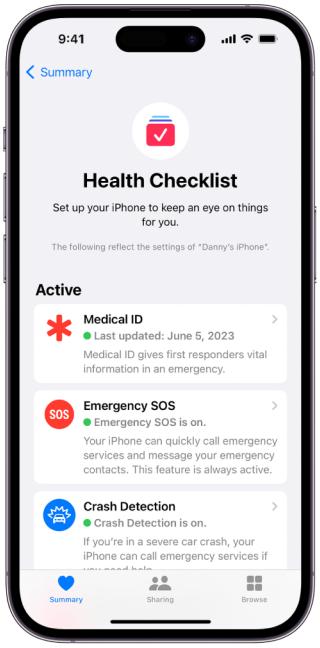
1. Tap your picture or initials at the top right.

   If you don't see your picture or initials, tap Summary or Browse at the bottom of the screen, then scroll to the top of the screen.

2. Tap Health Checklist.

3. To turn on or learn more about an item in the list, tap it.

4. When you're finished, tap Done.



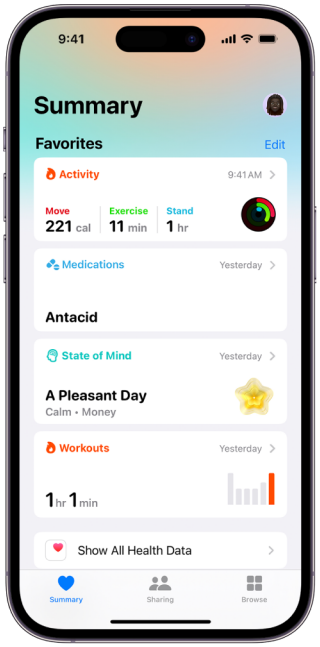
See also

Get started with Health on iPhone

Intro to Health data on iPhone

Intro to Health data on iPhone

The Health app securely stores your health information from iPhone, iPad, and Apple Watch, as well as from compatible third-party apps and connected devices. You can also manually enter data for body measurements, symptoms, menstrual cycle information, and more.



Health data from iPhone

iPhone automatically stores and analyzes valuable health data, including the following:

- *Steps, flights of stairs, and other walking data:* Built-in sensors on your iPhone capture the number of steps you take, the number of flights of stairs you climb, your walking speed, and more. You can browse highlights, trends, and details about this data in the Activity category in Health.

- *Mobility data:* iPhone stores important mobility metrics such as walking asymmetry, double support time, and more. Over time, as you walk with iPhone in your pocket or wear it near your waist, these metrics are used to calculate and record your walking steadiness. You can browse this data in the Mobility category. You can also receive a notification and share your notification with others if your steadiness becomes low enough to put you at increased risk of falling in the next 12 months.
- *Headphone audio levels:* Audio level measurements from connected AirPods, EarPods, or other compatible headphones are automatically stored in Health. You can review this data in the Hearing category to help you understand your headphone listening habits.
- *Sleep history:* If you set up a sleep schedule in Health, iPhone estimates the periods you're lying in bed with the intention to sleep. You can review this data in the Sleep category to help you meet your sleep goals.
- *Health records from your healthcare providers:* You can set up automatic downloads of health records of your allergies, medical conditions, medications, and more from supported healthcare organizations (not available in all countries or regions). You can browse these records in Health.

Health data from Apple Watch

After you pair iPhone with Apple Watch, periodic heart rate and blood oxygen measurements are automatically sent from Apple Watch to Health, where you can browse highlights, trends, and details in the Heart and Respiratory categories. You can also set up Apple Watch to send additional information to Health, including the following:

- Exercise minutes and other activity metrics. You can view these metrics in the Activity category in Health on iPhone.
- A history of time in daylight (Apple Watch SE 2nd generation, Apple Watch Series 6 and later, and Apple Watch Ultra). The ambient light sensor in Apple Watch estimates how much time you've spent in daylight. You can view details in the Other Data category in Health on iPhone.
- Notifications about high or low heart rates, low cardio fitness (watchOS 7.2 or later), and irregular heart rhythms (not available in all countries or regions). You can view the details about these notifications in the Heart category.
- Environmental noise levels and notifications about loud sounds. You can view the details about noise in your environment in the Hearing category.
- A history of hard falls (Apple Watch SE and Apple Watch Series 4 and later). In the Other Data category, you can view details about the number of times fallen.

To learn more about health data from Apple Watch, see Track important health information, Monitor time in daylight data, Measure noise levels, and Manage Fall Detection in the Apple Watch User Guide.

Health data from other apps and devices

As you set up health and fitness apps that you download from the App Store, follow their onscreen instructions to allow them to share data with Health.

To store data from devices like blood pressure monitors and weight scales, follow their setup instructions. Bluetooth® devices need to be paired with iPhone.

Note: You can change health data permissions for apps and devices at any time.

Data that you add manually

You can manually enter data about your menstrual cycles, medications, body measurements, and more.

- *Add information about your menstrual cycles:* By logging menstrual cycle information, you can get period and fertile window predictions. See Log menstrual cycle information in Health on iPhone.
- *Add your medications, vitamins, and supplements:* By adding these items, you can get reminders to take them and learn more about them. See Track your medications in Health on iPhone.
- *Set up a sleep schedule:* Scheduling regular times for getting to bed and waking up can help you meet your sleep goals. See Set up a Sleep Focus schedule in Health on iPhone.
- *Add information to a Medical ID:* You can provide information about your medical conditions, medications, emergency contacts, and more in an emergency Medical ID. First responders and others can view this critical information directly on your iPhone, even while it's locked. See Set up and view your Medical ID.
- *Add information to other Health categories:* Tap Browse at the bottom right of Health, tap a category, tap > for the data you want to update, then tap Add Data at the top right.

Important: iPhone, iPad, and Apple Watch aren't medical devices. See Important safety information for iPhone.

See also

View your data in Health on iPhone

Share your data in Health on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Fill out your Health Details

Next
View your health data

Support > iPhone User Guide > Intro to Health data on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

View your data in Health on iPhone

In the Health app, you can view your health and fitness information in one place. For example, you can check whether your symptoms are improving over time, and see how well you're meeting goals for activity, sleep, mindfulness, and more.

View your health trends

To help you keep track of your health data over time, Health can alert you to significant changes in types of data like resting heart rate, number of steps, and amount of sleep. Trend lines show you how much these metrics have changed and for how long.

1. Tap Summary at the bottom left, then scroll down to Trends to view any recent trends.
2. If Health has detected trends, you can do the following:
   - *View more data about a trend:* Tap its graph.
   - *View more trends:* Tap View Health Trends.

To receive notifications about your health trends, tap Summary at the bottom left, tap your picture or initials at the top right, tap Notifications, then turn on Trends.

View your highlights

Tap Summary at the bottom left, then scroll down to see highlights of your recent health and fitness data.

To see more details about a highlight, tap >.

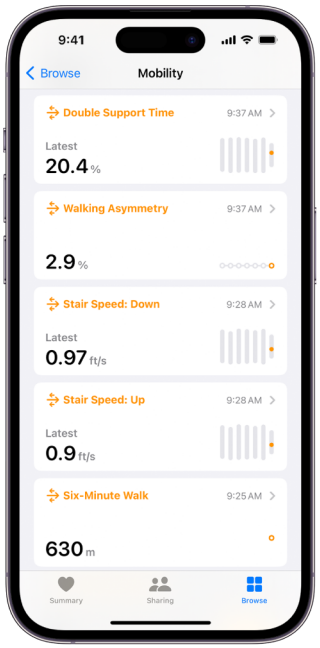
Add or remove a health category from Favorites on the Summary screen

1. Tap Summary at the bottom left.
2. Tap Edit for the Favorites section.
3. Tap a category to turn it on or off, then tap Done.

View trends, highlights, and details for a specific health category

Tap Browse at the bottom right to display the Health Categories screen, then do one of the following:

- Tap a category. (To see all categories, scroll up and down.)
- Tap the search field, then type the name of a category (such as Mobility) or a specific type of data (such as Walking Speed).



Depending on the data type, you may be able to do the following:

- *View details about any of the data:* Tap >.
- *See weekly, monthly, and yearly views of the data:* Tap the tabs at the top of the screen.
- *Manually enter data:* Tap Add Data in the top-right corner of the screen.
- *Add a data type to Favorites on the Summary screen:* Tap Add to Favorites. (You may need to scroll down.)
- *View which apps and devices are allowed to share the data:* Below Options, tap Data Sources & Access. (You may need to scroll down.)
- *Delete data:* Tap Show All Data below Options, swipe left on a data record, then tap Delete. To delete all data, tap Edit, then tap Delete All.
- *Change the measurement unit:* Tap Unit below Options, then select a unit.

Learn more about health and fitness

The bottom of the Summary screen provides introductory articles, app suggestions, and other information. Tap an item to learn more.

When you view the details in many health categories, recommended apps are shown in addition to your data.

See also

Intro to Health data on iPhone

Share your data in Health on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Intro to Health data

Next
Share your health data

Support > iPhone User Guide > View your data in Health on iPhone

Share your data in Health on iPhone

You can share health data stored in the Health app—such as health alerts and trends—with friends, family, and others caring for you.

Share health data with a loved one

People you share health data with can also view the health notifications you receive, including high heart rate and irregular rhythm notifications. You can also share notifications for significant trends, such as a steep decline in activity.

Note: To share health data with someone, you need to include them in your contacts.

1. Tap Sharing at the bottom of the screen.
2. Do one of the following:
   - *Set up sharing for the first time:* Tap Share with Someone.
   - *Share with an additional contact:* Tap "Add another person," then tap Next.
3. Use the search field to find someone in your contacts list, then tap their contact information to select them.
4. Tap See Suggested Topics or Set Up Manually, then choose topics to share.
5. Scroll down to see all topics on a screen, then tap Next to see the next screen.
6. Tap Share, then tap Done.

You receive a notification when your invitation is accepted.

Share health data with your doctor

You can share health data (such as heart rate, exercise minutes, hours of sleep, lab results, and heart health notifications) with your doctors. Doctors view the data in a dashboard in their health records systems (U.S. only; on systems that support Health app data Share with Provider).

1. Tap Sharing at the bottom of the screen.
2. Do one of the following:
   - *Set up sharing for the first time:* Tap "Share with your doctor."
   - *Share with an additional provider:* Tap "Share with another doctor."
3. Tap Next, then select one of the suggested providers, or use Search to find your provider.
4. If Connect to Account appears, tap it, enter the user name and password you use for the patient web portal for that account, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   In addition to sharing your health data, connecting to your account also causes your health records for that account to download to Health.
5. Choose topics to share with your doctor.
6. Scroll down to see all topics on a screen, then tap Next to see the next screen.
7. Tap Share, then tap Done.

Review or change the data you're sharing with others

1. Tap Sharing at the bottom of the screen.
2. Tap the name of a person or a healthcare provider.
3. Scroll down, then tap View Shared Data.
4. Make any changes, then tap Done.

Stop sharing data with a contact or a provider

1. Tap Sharing at the bottom of the screen.
2. Tap the name of a person or a healthcare provider.
3. Tap Stop Sharing or Remove Account.

Note: If you start sharing data with someone, simply removing them from Contacts doesn't stop the information from being shared.

Share health and fitness data with apps and devices

You can give other apps permission to share health and fitness data with Health. For example, if you install a workout app, its exercise data can appear in Health. The workout app can also read and make use of data (such as your heart rate and weight) shared by other devices and apps. If you didn't give an app permission to share data with Health when you set up the app, you can give permission later. You can also remove permission from an app.

To share your records from healthcare providers with apps, see Share your health records with other apps.

1. Tap your picture or initials at the top right.

   If you don't see your picture or initials, tap Summary or Browse at the bottom of the screen, then scroll to the top of the screen.
2. Below Privacy, tap Apps and Services or Devices.

   The screen lists the items that requested access to Health data.
3. To change the access for an item, tap it, then turn on or off permission to write data to—or read data from—Health.

Share your health and fitness data in XML format

You can export all of your health and fitness data from Health in XML format, which is a common format for sharing data between apps.

1. Tap your picture or initials at the top right.

   If you don't see your picture or initials, tap Summary or Browse at the bottom of the screen, then scroll to the top of the screen.
2. Tap Export All Health Data, then choose a method for sharing your data.

See also

Share your medication list

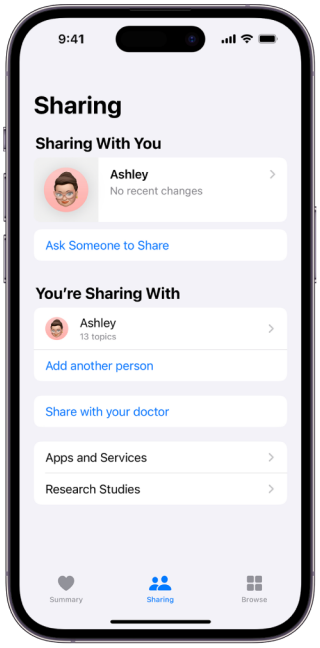
Intro to Health data on iPhone

Sync a third-party workout app to Fitness on iPhone

View data shared by others in Health on iPhone

View data shared by others in Health on iPhone

You can receive notifications about a loved one's health, and you can view data about their activity, mobility, heart rate, and health trends in the Health app.



Accept an invitation to view another person's health data

1. After the invitation arrives, do one of the following:
   - Tap the invitation, such as on the Lock Screen or in Notification Center.
   - In Health, tap Sharing at the bottom of the screen, then tap View in the invitation at the top of the screen.
2. Tap Accept, then tap Done.

View shared data and quickly respond to it

1. Tap Sharing at the bottom of the screen.
2. Tap the contact card listed below Sharing With You.
3. You can do any of the following:
   - *Quickly respond:* Tap Message, Call, or FaceTime.
   - *See more detail:* Tap an item on the screen.

If the detail includes chart data, you can start a conversation about it by tapping Message. The chart is included in your message.

Ask another person to share their health data with you

You can ask someone to share their health data with you, if they have an iPhone with iOS 15.6 or later or an iPad with iPadOS 17. They control what data they share and when to stop sharing.

1. Tap Sharing at the bottom of the screen.
2. Tap Ask Someone to Share, then choose an option.
3. Let your invitee know that you need to be included in their contacts to share with you, and that if they need assistance, sharing instructions are available in Share health data with a loved one.

See also

Intro to Health data on iPhone

View health records in Health on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Share your health data

Next
Download health records

Support > iPhone User Guide > View data shared by others in Health on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Download health records on iPhone

The Health app offers secure access to information about your vaccinations, allergies, conditions, medications, and more (not available in all countries or regions).

You can use a QR code or a link from a healthcare provider or authority to download a verifiable COVID-19 vaccination or test result record, and you can set up automatic downloads for a range of health records from supporting healthcare organizations.

Note: When iPhone is locked with Face ID, Touch ID, or a passcode, all of the health data in the Health app—other than what you add to your Medical ID—is encrypted.

Use a QR code or a link to download a verifiable COVID-19 vaccination or test result record

You can securely download verifiable COVID-19 vaccination and test result records and store them in the Health app. You can also add verifiable COVID-19 vaccination records to the Wallet app.

1. If your healthcare provider or authority makes a QR code or a link available to you, do one of the following:
   - Use your iPhone camera to scan the QR code.
   - Tap the link.
2. Do one of the following:
   - *Add a vaccination record to Wallet and Health:* Tap Add to Wallet & Health, then tap Done.
   - *Add a test result to Health:* Tap Add to Health, then tap Done.

To view a verifiable COVID-19 vaccination or test result record in Health, tap Browse at the bottom right of the screen, scroll down, then tap Immunizations (for a vaccination) or Lab Results (for a test result).

You can also view and present a vaccination record as a vaccination card in Wallet on your iPhone. See Use COVID-19 vaccination cards in Wallet on iPhone. If you have an Apple Watch paired with your iPhone, the vaccination card is also added to and accessible from your Apple Watch (watchOS 8 or later). See Use vaccination cards in Wallet on Apple Watch in the Apple Watch User Guide.

Note: If you set up automatic health record downloads from a healthcare provider that supports verifiable health records and Health Records on iPhone, and you receive a COVID-19 vaccination or test from the provider, the record is automatically downloaded to Health.

Set up automatic health record downloads from your healthcare provider

Supporting healthcare organizations can securely and automatically download records of your allergies, medical conditions, medications, labs, vaccinations, and more to Health.

1. Tap your picture or initials at the top right.

   If you don't see your picture or initials, tap Summary or Browse at the bottom of the screen, then scroll to the top of the screen.
2. Tap Health Records, then do one of the following:

- *Set up your first download:* Tap Get Started.
- *Set up downloads for additional accounts:* Tap Add Account.

A list of nearby organizations appears. If your organization doesn't appear in the list, enter the name of a clinic, hospital, or other place where you obtain health records. Or enter the name of a city, state, or province to find organizations near there.

3. Tap the name of your organization.
4. Tap Connect Account (below Available to Connect) to go to the sign-in screen for your patient portal.
5. Enter the user name and password you use for the patient web portal of that organization, then follow the onscreen instructions.

After you set up downloads from an organization, you automatically receive new records in Health as they become available.

Note: Your healthcare organization might not appear in this feature. Organizations are added frequently. See the Apple Support article Institutions that support health records on iPhone and iPod touch.

Add a previously downloaded vaccination record to Wallet

You may have a verifiable COVID-19 vaccination record in Health that doesn't appear in Wallet if you did either of the following:

- You set up health record downloads from a healthcare provider that supports verifiable health records and Health Records on iPhone, and you received your COVID-19 vaccination from the provider.
- You used a QR code or a link to obtain a verifiable COVID-19 vaccination record using a version of iOS earlier than iOS 15.1.

To add this information as a vaccination card in Wallet, do the following:

1. Tap Summary in Health (at the bottom left of the screen).
2. Tap Add to Wallet (in an alert near the top of the screen).

See also

View health records in Health on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
View health data shared by others

Next
View health records

Support › iPhone User Guide › Download health records on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

View health records in Health on iPhone

After you set up health record downloads from a healthcare provider, your records are securely and automatically downloaded to iPhone, where they're available for viewing in the Health app.

View your health records

Tap Browse at the bottom right to display the Health Categories screen, then do one of the following:

- Tap the search field, then enter the name of a health record category (such as clinical vitals) or a type of data (such as blood pressure).
- Scroll down, then tap a category (such as Allergies or Clinical Vitals) below Health Records.
- Scroll down, then tap the name of a specific organization.

To see more details, tap any section where you see >.

Note: If you don't see health records that you expect from a healthcare provider, make sure that you're signed in to your account with the provider. Tap Browse, scroll to your list of accounts, tap the name of your provider, then sign in if asked.

Pin important lab results

You can pin results so that they appear at the top of the Lab Results screen for quick access.

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, scroll down, then tap Lab Results.
2. Do any of the following:
   - Swipe right on a result, then tap.
   - Touch and hold a result, then tap Pin this Lab.

Share your health records with other apps

Third-party apps can request access to your health records. Before you grant access, be sure that you trust the app with your records.

1. To grant access, choose which categories to share—such as allergies, medications, or immunizations—when asked.
2. Choose whether to grant access to your current and future health records or to only your current records.

   If you choose to share only your current records, you're asked to grant access whenever new records are downloaded to your iPhone.

To stop sharing health records with the app, turn off its permission to read data from Health.

Delete an organization and its records from iPhone

1. Tap your picture or initials at the top right, then tap Health Records.

If you don’t see your picture or initials, tap Summary or Browse at the bottom of the screen, then scroll to the top of the page.

2. Tap the name of an organization, then tap Remove Account.

See also

Share health data with your doctor

Monitor your walking steadiness in Health on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Download health records

Next
Monitor your walking steadiness

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Monitor your walking steadiness in Health on iPhone

When you carry your iPhone in a pocket or holster near your waist, the Health app uses custom algorithms that assess your balance, strength, and gait. You can receive a notification if your steadiness becomes low or stays low, and you can automatically share the notification with someone close to you. Health can also show you exercises to help improve your walking steadiness. (iPhone 8 and later.)

Receive notifications when your steadiness is low or very low

1. Tap your picture or initials at the top right.

   If you don't see your picture or initials, tap Summary or Browse at the bottom of the screen, then scroll to the top of the screen.

2. Tap Health Checklist.

3. Tap Set Up for Walking Steadiness Notifications, then following the onscreen instructions.

To review your notifications, tap Browse at the bottom right, tap Mobility, scroll down, then tap Walking Steadiness Notifications.

To automatically share your walking steadiness notifications with somebody close to you, see Share your data in Health on iPhone.

View your walking steadiness data

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Mobility.

2. Tap Walking Steadiness (you may need to scroll down).

3. To learn about the three steadiness levels (OK, Low, and Very Low), tap ⓘ.

Learn how to improve your walking steadiness

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Mobility.

2. Scroll down, then tap Exercises That May Improve Walking Steadiness.

See also

Intro to Health data on iPhone

Log menstrual cycle information in Health on iPhone

Previous
View health records

Next
Log menstrual cycle information

Support › iPhone User Guide › Monitor your walking steadiness in Health on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Log menstrual cycle information in Health on iPhone

In the Health app, you can log menstrual cycle information to get period and fertile window predictions.

Set up cycle tracking

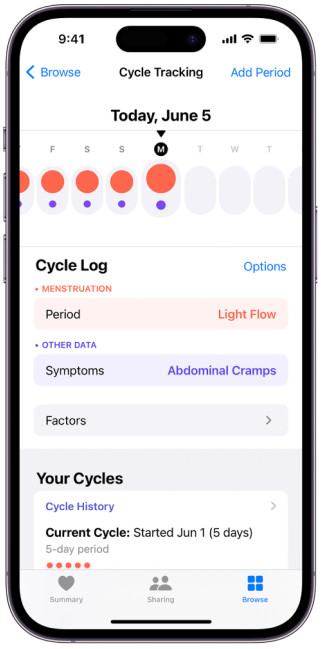
1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Cycle Tracking.
2. Tap Get Started, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   To help improve predictions for your period and fertile windows, enter the requested information.

Log your cycle information

You can log the days of a period and track information like symptoms, spotting, basal body temperature, and more.

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Cycle Tracking.
2. Do any of the following:



- *Log a period day:* Tap a day in the timeline at the top of the screen. Or tap Add Period at the top right, then select days from the monthly calendar.
- *Log the flow level for a day:* Swipe the timeline to select a day, tap Period (below Menstruation), choose an option, then tap Done.
- *Log symptoms, spotting, or other information:* Swipe the timeline to select a day, tap a category (below Other Data), supply the information, then tap Done.

To add categories to the data logging screen, tap Options next to Cycle Log, then choose from the categories below Cycle Log.

Note: You can use Apple Watch to help log your cycle information. See Use Cycle Tracking on Apple Watch in the Apple Watch User Guide.

Edit your log

Your logged information appears in the timeline at the top of the screen, where a solid red circle represents a day you logged a period and a purple dot represents a day you logged with additional information. Data for the day selected in the timeline appears in the Cycle Log (below the timeline). To change your logged information, do the following:

1. Swipe the timeline to select a day.
2. Tap a category of data (such as Menstruation or Symptoms), make your changes, then tap Done.

To unmark a period day, tap its solid red circle in the timeline.

Manage cycle factors

When you enter information about pregnancy, lactation, and contraceptive use, that information is used to help manage your cycle predictions.

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Cycle Tracking.
2. Tap Factors, then do any of the following:
   - *Add a factor:* Tap Add Factor, select a factor, tap Started if you need to change the start date, then tap Add.
   - *Change the end date for a current factor:* Tap the factor, tap Ended, select a date, then tap Done.
   - *Delete a current factor:* Tap the factor, then tap Delete Factor.

The information you add about yourself in Health is yours to use and share. You can decide what information is stored in Health as well as who can access your data. When your iPhone is locked with Face ID, Touch ID, or a passcode, all of your health and fitness data in Health, other than your Medical ID, is encrypted. Any health data synced to iCloud is encrypted both in transit and on Apple servers. And if you have a version of iOS, iPadOS, and watchOS (if you're using iPad and Apple Watch for cycle tracking) with default two-factor authentication and a passcode, your health and activity data is stored in a way that Apple can't read it. This means that when you use the Cycle Tracking feature and two-factor authentication, your health data synced to iCloud is encrypted end-to-end, and Apple doesn't have the key to decrypt the data and therefore cannot read it.

See also

View menstrual cycle predictions and history in Health on iPhone

Apple Support article: Track your period with Cycle Tracking

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Monitor your walking steadiness

Next
View menstrual cycle predictions and history

Support › iPhone User Guide › Log menstrual cycle information in Health on iPhone

View menstrual cycle predictions and history in Health on iPhone

When you log your menstrual cycle in the Health app, you can check the date for your next period or fertile window, receive notifications about when your next period or fertile window is approaching, view details about your cycle history, and more.

Note: Health can also use data from Apple Watch to improve the predictions for your period and fertile windows. See Use Cycle Tracking on Apple Watch in the Apple Watch User Guide.

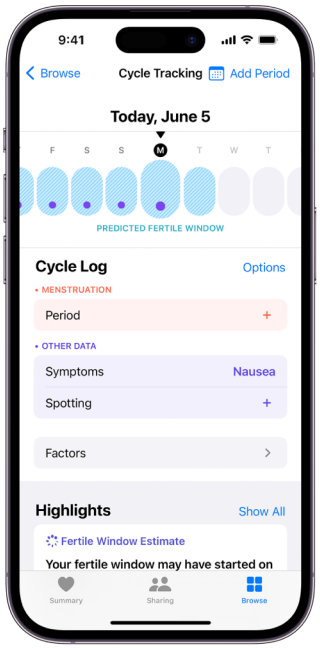
View your cycle timeline

Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Cycle Tracking.

At the top of the screen, a timeline shows the following icons.

Icon	Description
	A predicted period day.
	A predicted day of your fertile window.
	A day you likely ovulated (requires Apple Watch Series 8 or later, or Apple Watch Ultra to be paired with your iPhone; not available in all regions).
	A day you logged a period.
	A day you added information (for example, noting a headache or cramping).

To select different days, swipe the timeline.



Check the dates for your predicted next period and for your reported last period

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Cycle Tracking.
2. Scroll to Highlights to see when your next period is likely to start.

   If you don't see the estimate, tap Show All next to Highlights.
3. Scroll to Summary to see the date of your last period and your typical cycle length.

Change cycle tracking notifications, cycle prediction displays, and other options

You can turn off period, fertility, and cycle deviation notifications, hide period and fertility predictions, and more. You can turn these on again at any time.

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Cycle Tracking.
2. Scroll down, tap Options, then turn options on or off.

View your cycle history

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Cycle Tracking.
2. To see a summary of your last three cycles, scroll down to Your Cycles.
3. To see summaries of all previous cycles, tap Cycle History.

   To send or a save a PDF of your cycle history, tap Export PDF, tap , then choose an option.
4. To see details about a cycle, tap it.

   To change any details for the cycle, tap Edit.

   To send or a save a PDF of the cycle details, tap Export PDF, tap , then choose an option.

If you receive a Cycle Deviation notification

You can receive a notification if your logged cycle history shows a possible cycle deviation. Irregular periods, infrequent periods, prolonged periods, and persistent spotting are common cycle deviations that may indicate an underlying condition, or may be due to other factors.

When you receive a notification, do the following to review your logged cycle history:

1. Open the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Review Cycle History in the Possible Cycle Deviation notification.
3. Follow the onscreen instructions to confirm, add, or edit the data in your cycle history.

If a cycle deviation is detected, a screen suggests what to do next.

The information you add about yourself in Health is yours to use and share. You can decide what information is stored in Health as well as who can access your data. When your iPhone is locked with Face ID, Touch ID, or a passcode, all of your health and fitness data in Health, other than your Medical ID, is encrypted. Any health data synced to iCloud is encrypted both in transit and on Apple servers. And if you have a version of iOS (and watchOS, if you're using Apple Watch for cycle tracking) with default two-factor authentication and a passcode, your health and activity data is stored in a way that Apple can't read it. This means that when you use the Cycle Tracking feature and two-factor authentication, your health data synced to iCloud is encrypted end-to-end, and Apple doesn't have the key to decrypt the data and therefore cannot read it.

*For information about the availability of the retrospective ovulation estimates feature, see watchOS Feature Availability.

See also

Apple Support article: Track your period with Cycle Tracking

Track your medications in Health on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

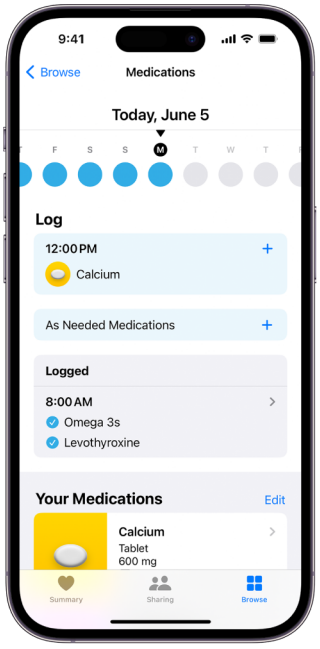
Previous
Log menstrual cycle information

Next
Track your medications

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Track your medications in Health on iPhone

In the Health app, you can track and manage the medications, vitamins, and supplements you take.



Note: Some features are not available in all countries or regions. The Medications feature is not a substitute for professional medical judgment. Additional information is available on the labels of your medications. Consult your healthcare provider prior to making any decisions related to your health.

Add and schedule a new medication

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Medications.
2. Tap Add a Medication (to start your list) or Add Medication (to add to your list).
3. To identify the medication, do one of the following:

   - *Type the name:* Tap the text field, enter the name, then tap Add.

     In the U.S. only, suggestions appear as you begin typing. You can select a suggestion, or finish typing the name, then tap Add.

   - *Use the camera:* (U.S. only; on supported models) Tap next to the text field, then follow the onscreen instructions.

     If a match isn't found, tap Search by Name, then type the name (as described above).

4. Follow the onscreen instructions to choose the type and strength of the medication. You can also create a custom visual of the medication and set a schedule.
5. When you're finished, tap Done.

Turn on Follow Up Reminders and Critical Alerts

If you set a medication schedule, you receive notifications from Health reminding you to log the medication. You can receive follow up reminders if a medication hasn't been logged 30 minutes after the scheduled time.

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Medications.
2. Tap Options at the bottom of the screen, then turn on Follow Up Reminders.

   When you turn on Follow Up Reminders, you can also turn on Critical Alerts for each of your medications. Critical Alerts appear on the Lock Screen and play a sound (even if a Focus is on or iPhone is muted).
3. Tap Critical Alerts, tap the button next to a medication, then tap Allow.

   To turn off Critical Alerts, go to Settings > Health > Notifications, then tap the button next to Critical Alerts.

Change the schedule for a medication or update other information

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Medications.
2. Scroll down to Your Medications, then do any of the following:

   - *Change the schedule for a medication:* Tap a medication, scroll down to Schedule, tap Edit, then tap a field to change it.
   - *Change the icon, nickname, or notes for a medication:* Tap a medication, scroll down to Details, tap Edit to change the icon or tap either of the text fields, then make your changes.
   - *Reorder your list:* Tap Edit above the list of your medications, touch and hold ☰ for a medication, then drag it to a new position.
   - *Archive a medication:* Swipe left on its name in the list of your medications, then tap Archive.
   - *Make an archived medication reappear in your list of medications:* Tap Edit above the list of your medications, then tap ⊕ next to the medication name. Any schedule you previously set is not preserved.
   - *Delete a medication:* Tap a medication, scroll down, then tap Delete Medication.
   - *Change how you receive notifications about taking medications:* See View and respond to notifications on iPhone and Change notification settings on iPhone.
3. When you're finished, tap Done.

Log when you take a medication

You can log a medication, scheduled or unscheduled, at any time. By default, your iPhone will remind you when it's time to log your medications based on the schedule you've created in the Health app.

Note: In order for your Health app data to sync across devices, make sure your devices are signed in with the same Apple ID, are connected to the internet, and are updated to the latest OS version.

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Medications.
2. Select a day at the top of the screen.
3. Do one of the following:

   - *Log whether you took a scheduled medication:* Tap the name of a medication in the list below Log, then below the medication, tap Taken or Skipped.

- *Log an unscheduled medication:* Tap As Needed Medications in the list below Log, then below the medication, tap Taken.

4. When you're finished, tap Done.

Tip: When you receive a notification to log a scheduled medication, press and hold the notification, then choose an option.

To review your history of taking the medication, tap Browse at the bottom right, tap Medications, then tap the medication (in the list of your medications).

Share your medication list

1. Do one of the following:

   - *Share your list (or just specific medications) with a loved one:* See Share your data in Health on iPhone.

     Tip: If you add a new medication after you start sharing, add it to your shared list.

   - *Share your list as a PDF:* Tap Browse at the bottom right, tap Medications, scroll down, tap Export PDF, tap , then choose an option.

See also

Learn more about your medications in Health on iPhone (U.S. only)

View your data in Health on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
View menstrual cycle predictions and history

Next
Learn more about your medications

Support > iPhone User Guide > Track your medications in Health on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Learn more about your medications in Health on iPhone (U.S. only)

You can learn more about the medications you add to your medications list in the Health app.

Learn about a medication

You can learn more about what a medication is used for, how it works, potential side effects, and how to pronounce it.

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Medications.
2. Tap the medication (in the list of your medications), then scroll down.

Learn about interactions between your medications

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Medications.
2. Tap Drug Interactions.
3. To learn whether interaction factors like alcohol might interact with your medications, tap Edit (in the Interaction Factors area), select the factors that apply, then tap Done.
4. To learn more about an interaction, tap it.

See also

Track your medications in Health on iPhone

Track your mental wellbeing in Health on iPhone

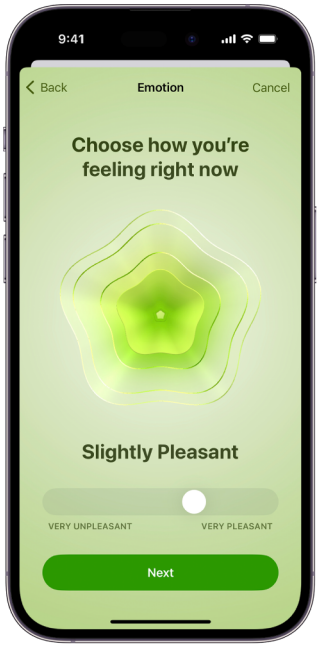
Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Track your mental wellbeing in Health on iPhone

You can use the Health app to reflect on how you're feeling and log your momentary emotions and daily moods. You can also learn how your state of mind may correlate with lifestyle factors like exercise, sleep, time in daylight, and mindful minutes.

You can also take age-appropriate standardized mental health assessments (often used by clinicians) to answer questions about how you're feeling, and see your current risk for depression or anxiety. This will help you understand if you should talk to your doctor, and you'll have a PDF of the results that you can share.

Log your state of mind



1. Open the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Browse, tap Mental Wellbeing, then tap State of Mind.
3. Tap Get Started (if this is your first time) or Log (if you've logged your state of mind before).
4. Choose one of the following:
   - *Log an emotion:* Tap "How you feel right now," then tap Next.
   - *Log a mood:* Tap "How you've felt overall today," then tap Next.
5. Drag the slider to indicate how you're feeling, then tap Next.
6. Tap any words that describe how you're feeling (optional), then tap Next.
7. Tap any words that describe what's having the biggest impact on you (optional), then tap Done.

If you've described what's having the biggest impact on you, you can tap Additional Context to enter more information.

Tip: To get reminders to log your state of mind, tap Options, then turn During Your Day and End of Day on or off. You can also tap Add Reminder to create additional reminders.

View your state of mind history

1. Open the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Browse, tap Mental Wellbeing, then tap State of Mind.
3. Tap Show in Charts, then do any of the following:

   - *View your state of mind over time:* Tap an option from the time range selections at the top of the chart.
   - *View the types of entries you've logged:* Tap States, then tap Daily Moods or Momentary Emotions to see those entries on the graph.
   - *View factors associated with your entries:* Tap Associations, then scroll through the different factors you logged in your state of mind entries.
   - *View lifestyle factors associated with your entries:* Tap Life Factors, then tap a lifestyle factor to see it alongside your state of mind entries.

     You can also tap next to each lifestyle factor to learn more about how it can impact your mental wellbeing.

Take a mental health assessment

1. Open the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Browse, tap Mental Wellbeing, then tap Anxiety Risk or Depression Risk.

   To take an assessment for both anxiety and depression, tap Take Questionnaire below Get More From Health.
3. Tap Take Questionnaire, tap Begin, then answer the prompts.
4. When you're finished, you can do any of the following:

   - *Learn more about your level of risk:* Tap next to your level or risk.
   - *Export your results as a PDF:* Below Next Steps, tap Export PDF.
   - *Get access to articles and crisis resources:* Scroll down to Mental Health Resources and Learn More.
5. When you're finished, tap Done.

Note: The Patient Health Questionnaire-9 (PHQ-9) and Generalized Anxiety Disorder-7 (GAD-7), developed by Drs. Robert L. Spitzer, Janet B.W. Williams, Kurt Kroenke and colleagues, with an educational grant from Pfizer Inc., can be useful tools to help identify if you are at risk for depression and/or anxiety. They are provided in Health for informational purposes only and the results are not a medical diagnosis. The assessments are only clinically validated in certain countries and languages. If you have concerns about your mental health, you should consult a clinician.

Adjust your mental health assessment settings

1. Open the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Browse, then tap Mental Wellbeing.
3. Tap Anxiety Risk or Depression Risk, scroll down to tap Options, then turn Periodic Questionnaires and Unpleasant Logging on or off.

When you turn on Periodic Questionnaires and Unpleasant Logging, you receive a prompt to take a questionnaire a couple of times a year, or when you have a pattern of unpleasant moods.

See also

Set up a Sleep Focus schedule in Health on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Learn more about your medications

Next
Set up a schedule for a Sleep Focus

Support › iPhone User Guide › Track your mental wellbeing in Health on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Set up a Sleep Focus schedule in Health on iPhone

You can use the Health app to help meet your sleep goals by scheduling regular times for going to bed and waking up. You can create multiple schedules—for example, one for weekdays and another for weekends.

For the sleep schedules you set, a Sleep Focus helps reduce distractions before and during bedtime. For example, it can filter out notifications and phone calls, and it can signal to others that you're not available. You can also schedule a wind down period to begin from 15 minutes to 3 hours before your bedtime. Your Sleep Focus begins at the start of your wind down time.

To help you wake up on time, you can select an alarm sound, a vibration, and a snooze option. Or you can choose to have no alarm at all.

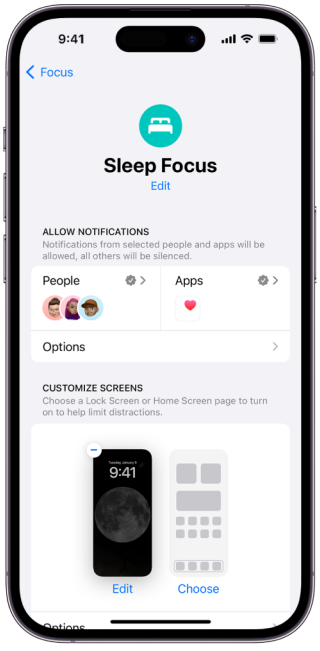
Set up a Sleep Focus

1. Go to Settings > Focus, then tap Sleep.

   If you don't see Sleep as an option, tap + at the top right, tap Sleep, then tap Customize Focus.

2. Customize your focus.

   For example, you can allow interruptions from people important to you, customize the Lock Screen and Home Screen, and customize how apps and your iPhone behave when a Sleep Focus is on. See Set up a Focus.



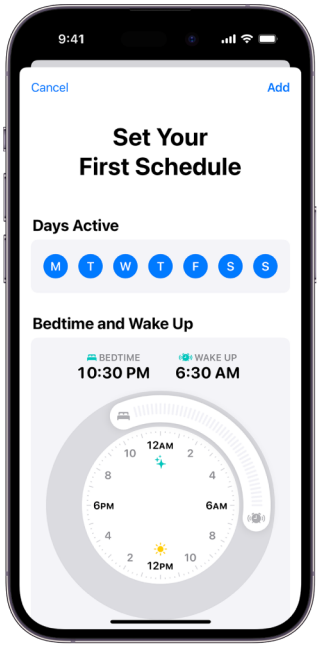
Set up your first recurring sleep schedule

When you set up a Sleep Focus, you can set your next bed and wake up times. This schedule repeats only once. To set up a recurring sleep schedule, do the following:

1. In the Health app, tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Sleep.
2. Scroll down to Your Schedule, then tap Full Schedule & Options.
3. Tap Set Your First Schedule, then select your options:

    - *Set the days for your schedule:* Tap a day at the top of the screen to add or remove it from your schedule. The schedule applies only to days shown with solid-color circles.
    - *Adjust your bedtime and wake up schedule:* Drag to change your bedtime, to change your wake up time, or the semicircle between the icons to shift both times simultaneously.
    - *Set the alarm options:* Turn Alarm on or off.

      When Alarm is turned on, you can choose a sound, its volume, a vibration, and the snooze option.
4. Tap Add.



Add, modify, or delete sleep schedules

After setting up your first sleep schedule, you can do the following:

- *Set up additional schedules:* For example, if you have a weekday schedule, you can add a weekend schedule. See Add or change a sleep schedule.
- *Change schedules:* You can adjust the bedtimes, wake up times, and alarm options for an entire sleep schedule or for only your next schedule. See Add or change a sleep schedule.
- *Turn off alarms:* You can turn off alarms for all sleep schedules, for a particular schedule, or for only your next scheduled wake up time. See Turn off alarms and delete sleep schedules in Health on iPhone.
- *Remove a schedule:* See Delete a sleep schedule and its alarm.

Note: You can use the Clock app to set one-time and repeating alarms that don't turn on a Sleep Focus.

See also

Turn off alarms and delete sleep schedules in Health on iPhone

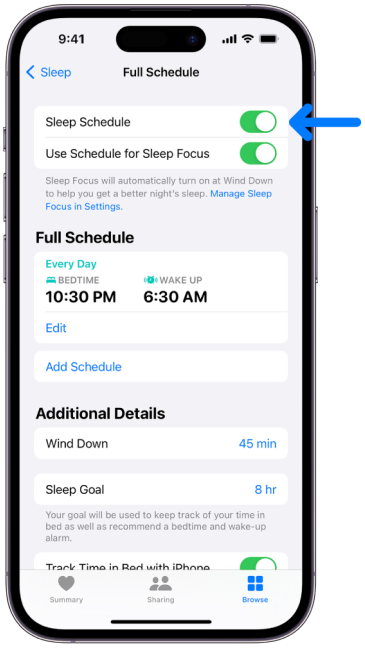
Turn off alarms and delete sleep schedules in Health on iPhone

In the Health app, you can turn off your scheduled alarms and turn off or delete your sleep schedules.

Turn off all sleep schedules and alarms

After you create one or more sleep schedules, you can turn them all off at once. When all sleep schedules are turned off, scheduled alarms are also turned off.

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Sleep.
2. Scroll down to Your Schedule.
3. Tap Full Schedule & Options, then turn off Sleep Schedule (at the top of the screen).



You can turn them all on again later.

Note: To turn off alarms you set in the Clock app, see Turn off an alarm.

Delete a sleep schedule and its alarm

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Sleep.
2. Scroll down to Your Schedule, then tap Full Schedule & Options.
3. Tap Edit for the schedule you want to remove.
4. Tap Delete Schedule (at the bottom of the screen).

Permanently turn off the alarm for a sleep schedule

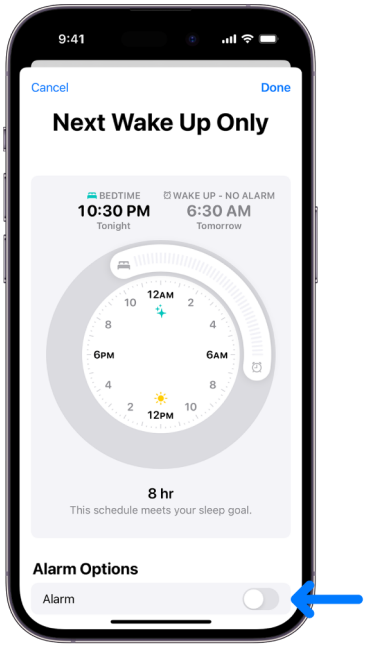
1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Sleep.
2. Scroll down to Your Schedule, then tap Full Schedule & Options.
3. Tap Edit for the sleep schedule you want to change.
4. Turn off Alarm.

   You can turn it back on again later.
5. Tap Done.

The rest of your sleep schedule remains in effect.

Turn off only your next scheduled alarm

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Sleep.
2. Scroll down to Your Schedule, then tap Edit (below Next).
3. Turn off Alarm.



4. Tap Done.

After your next wake up time, your normal alarm resumes.

Note: You can also use the Clock app to change your next sleep schedule alarm.

See also

Set up a Sleep Focus schedule in Health on iPhone

Add or change sleep schedules in Health on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

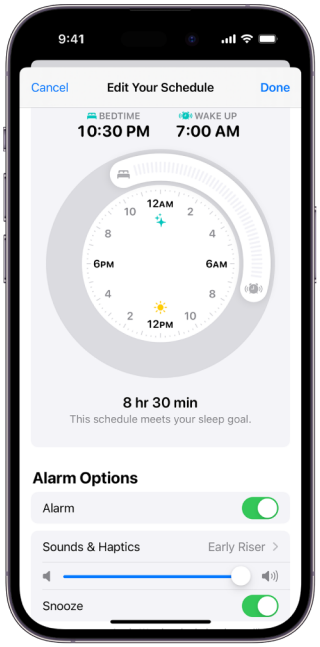
Previous
Set up a schedule for a Sleep Focus

Next
Add or change sleep schedules

Support › iPhone User Guide › Turn off alarms and delete sleep schedules in Health on iPhone

Add or change sleep schedules in Health on iPhone

After you set up your first sleep schedule in the Health app, you can set additional schedules—for example, you can create separate schedules for weekdays and the weekend. You can also modify any schedule—for example, you can change its wake up time.



Add or change a sleep schedule

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Sleep.
2. Scroll down to Your Schedule, then tap Full Schedule & Options.
3. Do one of the following:
   - *Add a sleep schedule:* Tap Add Schedule.
   - *Change a sleep schedule:* Tap Edit for the schedule you want to change.
4. Do any of the following:
   - *Set the days for your schedule:* Tap a day at the top of the screen to add or remove it from your schedule. The schedule applies only to days shown with solid-color circles.
   - *Adjust your bedtime and wake up schedule:* Drag to change your bedtime, to change your wake up time, or the semicircle between the icons to shift both times simultaneously.
   - *Set the alarm options:* Turn Alarm on or off.

     When Alarm is turned on, you can choose a sound, its volume, a vibration, and the snooze option.

     Note: You can't select a song for a sleep schedule alarm. However, you can select a song for an alarm with the Clock app.

5. When you're finished, tap Add or Done.

   When you tap Done, the changes apply to every day in the schedule.

Change only your next schedule

You can make a temporary change to a sleep schedule.

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Sleep.
2. Scroll down to Your Schedule, then tap Edit (below Next).
3. Drag to change your bedtime, to change your wake up time, or the semicircle between the icons to shift both times simultaneously.
4. Choose alarm options.

   When Alarm is turned on, you can choose a sound, its volume, a vibration, and the snooze option.
5. Tap Done.

Note: You can also use the Clock app to change your next sleep schedule alarm.

After your next wake up time, your normal schedule resumes.

See also

Turn off all sleep schedules and alarms

Delete a sleep schedule and its alarm

Change your wind down period, sleep goal, and more in Health on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Turn off alarms and delete sleep schedules

Next
Turn Sleep Focus on or off

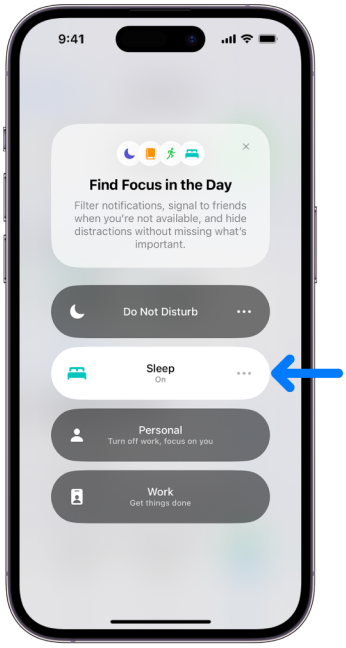
Support › iPhone User Guide › Add or change sleep schedules in Health on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Turn your Sleep Focus on or off on iPhone

Quickly turn your Sleep Focus on or off

Open Control Center, tap Focus, then tap Sleep.



Your Sleep Focus turns on or off again at your next scheduled bedtime or wake up time.

To share your Sleep Focus settings with your other devices, make sure you have Share Across Devices turned on. Go to Settings > Focus > Share Across Devices.

Turn off your Sleep Focus for all sleep schedules

1. In the Health app, tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Sleep.
2. Scroll down to Your Schedule, then tap Full Schedule & Options.
3. Turn off Use Schedule for Sleep Focus.

When this setting is off, your sleep schedules remain in effect, but your Sleep Focus doesn't automatically turn on. You can turn this setting on again at any time.

See also

Set up a Sleep Focus schedule in Health on iPhone

Turn on or schedule a Focus on iPhone

Change your wind down period, sleep goal, and more in Health on iPhone

You can change Sleep options in the Health app.

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Sleep.
2. Scroll down to Your Schedule, then tap Full Schedule & Options.
3. Scroll down to Additional Details, then make your changes:
   - *Wind down period:* Tap Wind Down, then select how many minutes or hours to give yourself to wind down before your scheduled bedtime. Your Sleep Focus turns on at the beginning of the wind down period.
   - *Sleep goal:* Tap Sleep goal, then select a time. Any new schedules you set up reflect your new goal.
   - *Track time in bed with iPhone:* When you turn this on, iPhone automatically tracks your time in bed by analyzing when you pick up and use your iPhone. You can view this data in your sleep history in Health. Alternatively, you can turn off this setting and use a sleep tracker or monitor to help determine the amount of time you're in bed, or open the Sleep category in Health, then tap Add Data to manually add the data.
   - *Sleep notifications:* Turn Sleep Reminders or Sleep Results on or off.

     Note: Sleep Results notifications require data from Apple Watch or other sleep tracking apps and hardware.

View your sleep history in Health on iPhone

Sleep data in the Health app provides insight into your sleep habits.

To obtain sleep data, you can use a sleep tracker or monitor, set up a sleep schedule and let iPhone estimate your time in bed, or manually add the data.

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Sleep.
2. Do any of the following:
   - *View sleep data by week or month:* Tap a tab at the top of the screen.
   - *Change the time span displayed in the graph:* Swipe the graph left or right.
   - *View the details for a day:* Tap the column for the day.
   - *Manually add sleep data:* Tap Add Data in the top-right corner of the screen.
   - *Get cumulative sleep data:* Tap Show More Sleep Data.

See also

Intro to Health data on iPhone

Check your headphone audio levels on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Check your headphone audio levels on iPhone

While using headphones with iPhone, you can check the audio level by viewing the Hearing control in Control Center. In the Health app, you can review the history of your headphone listening habits.

If you listen to loud headphone audio long enough to affect your hearing, iPhone automatically sends you a notification that you should turn down the volume. After you receive a notification, the next time you plug in your headphones or connect them using Bluetooth®, your volume is automatically set to a lower level. You can turn the volume up again if you choose.

Tip: To review the details of a headphone notification, tap Browse at the bottom right of Health, tap Hearing, then tap Headphone Notifications.

Check your headphone levels while you listen

1. Go to Settings > Control Center, then add Hearing.
2. Connect your headphones, then play audio.
3. Open Control Center, then tap .

   The audio level (in decibels) of your headphones is displayed on the Headphone Level meter.

Note: You can also tap Live Listen (below the Headphone Level meter) to turn Live Listen on or off. See Use iPhone as a remote microphone with Live Listen. Typically, headphone level monitoring and Live Listen aren't used at the same time. The Headphone Level monitor is intended for listening to audio playback. Live Listen is intended for listening to external sounds with the iPhone microphone.

Check your headphone levels over time

1. Open the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Hearing.
3. Tap Headphone Audio Levels, then do any of the following:

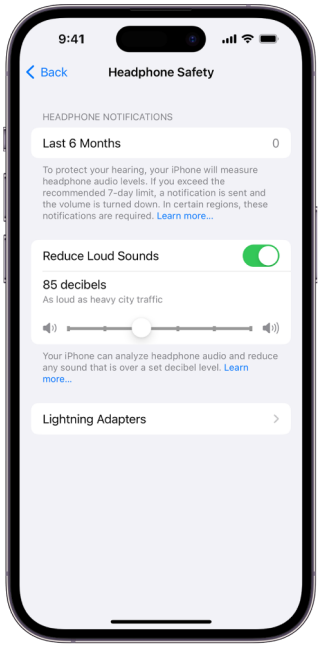
   - *See exposure levels over a period of time:* Tap the tabs at the top of the screen. (All levels are measured in decibels.)
   - *Learn about the sound level classifications:* Tap .
   - *Change the time span displayed in the graph:* Swipe the graph left or right.
   - *Display highlights:* Scroll down to Highlights, then tap Show All.

To learn more about your headphone audio levels, tap Show More Data.

Reduce loud headphone sounds

1. Go to Settings > Sounds & Haptics, then tap Headphone Safety.
2. Turn on Reduce Loud Sounds, then drag the slider.

   iPhone analyzes your headphone audio and reduces any sound above the level you set.



Note: If you set up Screen Time for family members, you can prevent them from changing the Reduce Loud Sounds level. Go to Settings > Screen Time > Content & Privacy Restrictions > Reduce Loud Sounds, then select Don't Allow.

Get headphone audio notifications

You can find headphone notifications on the Summary screen of the Health app.

Note: Depending on your country or region, Headphone Notifications may be turned on by default, and in some countries or regions, you may not be able to turn it off. If allowed in your country or region, you can turn Headphone Notifications on or off in Settings > Sounds & Haptics > Headphone Safety.

In addition, you can use the Settings app to set a maximum decibel level that keeps your headphone audio at a comfortable level.

Headphone audio measurements are most accurate when using Apple or Beats headphones. Audio played through other headphones can be estimated based on the volume of your iPhone.

See also

Use audiogram data in Health on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
View your sleep history

Next
Use audiogram data

Support > iPhone User Guide > Check your headphone audio levels on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use audiogram data in Health on iPhone

An audiogram depicts the results of a pure-tone audiometry test—it displays how loud sounds need to be for you to hear them. You can use data from an audiogram to set headphone accommodations and improve the accuracy and sound quality of your headphones.

You can import an audiogram to Health by taking a photo or importing a saved file. You can also download suggested apps from the Health app where you can get audiogram data.

Import an audiogram

You can import an audiogram from Camera, Photos, or Files.

1. Open the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Browse, then tap Hearing.
3. Tap Audiogram, then tap Add Data at the top right.
4. Tap Continue, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Download a third-party audiogram app

1. Open the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Browse, then tap Hearing.
3. Tap Audiogram, then scroll down to Audiogram Apps.
4. Choose an app, then download it from the App Store.
5. Open the app and, if prompted, grant permission to share data with the Health app.

Note: To find out if an app you've downloaded is compatible with Health, see the Apple Support article Manage Health data on your iPhone or Apple Watch.

See also

Adjust audio settings on iPhone

Get apps in the App Store on iPhone

Customize headphone audio levels on your iPhone or iPad

Register as an organ donor in Health on iPhone (U.S. only)

In the Health app, you can register to be an organ, eye, or tissue donor with Donate Life America. If you later change your decision, you can remove your registration. Your decision to donate is accessible to others in your Medical ID.

Learn about organ donation

1. Tap your picture or initials at the top right.

   If you don't see your picture or initials, tap Summary or Browse at the bottom of the screen, then scroll to the top of the screen.

2. Tap Organ Donation, then tap Learn More for an overview of organ donation and Donate Life America.

Register with Donate Life America

1. Tap your picture or initials at the top right.

   If you don't see your picture or initials, tap Summary or Browse at the bottom of the screen, then scroll to the top of the screen.

2. Tap Sign Up with Donate Life.

To later change your donor information or remove your registration, tap your picture or initials, tap Organ Donation, then tap Edit Donor Registration.

See also

Get started with Health on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Back up your Health data in iCloud on iPhone

If you sign in with your Apple ID, your health and fitness information in the Health app is stored automatically in iCloud. Your information is encrypted as it goes between iCloud and your device and while it's stored in iCloud.

In addition to using iCloud, or if you aren't using iCloud, you can back up your Health data by encrypting a computer backup. See Back up iPhone.

Note: In order for your Health app data to sync across devices, make sure your devices are signed in with the same Apple ID, are connected to the internet, and are updated to the latest OS version.

Manage your Health data in iCloud

You can make sure your Health data is synced across all of your devices. You can also stop storing your data at any time.

1. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud.
2. Tap Show All, tap Health, then turn Sync with iPhone on or off.

See also

Intro to Health data on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Intro to Home on iPhone

You can use the Home app to securely control and automate HomeKit and Matter-enabled accessories, such as lights, locks, and thermostats. When you set up security cameras that support HomeKit Secure Video, you can capture video, and receive a notification when a camera recognizes someone or when a package is left at the door. You can also open a compatible lock with a home key, group multiple speakers to play the same audio, and send and receive Intercom messages on supported devices.

You can create automations to run automatically at certain times, or when you activate a particular accessory (for example, when you unlock the front door). You can also control your home remotely with the aid of a home hub—an Apple TV (4th generation or later) or HomePod speakers. This lets you, and others you invite, securely control your home while you're away.

Note: Matter-enabled accessories require a home hub, such as a HomePod speaker or Apple TV 4K. Thread accessories require a Thread-enabled home hub, such as Apple TV 4K (3rd generation) Wi-Fi + Ethernet, HomePod mini, or a supported third-party border router.

Home overview

The Home app lets you easily navigate and control your accessories. In the Home app, tap the Home tab to show the following sections:

- *Categories:* Tap a category such as Climate, Lights, Security, Speakers & TVs, or Water to show all related accessories on one screen, organized by room.
- *Cameras:* Video from up to four cameras can appear below Cameras. Swipe left to see more cameras.
- *Scenes:* Create scenes to control multiple accessories with a tap or Siri request—tap a scene to close the blinds and turn on the lights in the evening, for example.
- *Favorites:* Add to Favorites the accessories you use most often to quickly control them from the Home tab.
- *Rooms:* Accessories are organized by room, helping you find just the accessory you need.

Edit the Home tab

You can organize the Home tab in ways that suit you best.

Tap ⋯, then do any of the following.

- *Rearrange items:* Select Edit Home View, then drag tiles to a different position. Tap Done when you're finished.
- *Reorder sections:* To change the way sections such as Favorites or Scenes are ordered on the Home tab, choose Reorder Sections, then drag ☰ next to a section to a new position. Tap Done when you're finished.
- *Resize icons:* Select Edit Home View, tap a tile, tap ⤡, then tap Done.

To learn more about how to create and accessorize a smart home with your Apple devices, tap Discover at the bottom of the screen.

See also

Upgrade to the new Home architecture on iPhone

Set up security cameras in Home on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Back up your Health data

Next
Upgrade to the new Home architecture

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Upgrade to the new Home architecture on iPhone

iOS 16.2 introduced a new Home architecture that's more reliable and efficient. For availability and details, see the Apple Support article Upgrade to the new Home architecture.

Before you upgrade, make sure that Apple devices connected to your home are using the latest software. This includes any owner's devices and any shared users' devices.

Note: A home hub such as Apple TV (4th generation or later) or HomePod is required for features such as remote access, sharing your Home, notifications, automations, HomeKit Secure Video, and Adaptive Lighting. iPad is not supported as a home hub with the new Home architecture. You can continue to use the Home app on iPad to connect and control your smart home accessories.

Upgrade your home

1. On the Home tab, tap ⋯, then tap Home Settings.
2. Tap Software Update, tap Learn More, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   Note: Any connected devices that aren't using the latest software will lose access to the upgraded home until they're updated.

See also

Set up accessories with Home on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Set up accessories with Home on iPhone

The first time you open the Home app, the setup assistant helps you create a home, where you can add accessories and define rooms. If you've already created a home when setting up a different accessory, you skip this step.

Add an accessory to Home

Before you add an accessory such as a light or camera, be sure that it's connected to a power source, is turned on, and has network connectivity.

1. Tap Home at the bottom left, then tap Add Accessory.

   You can also tap + at the top of the screen, then choose Add Accessory.

2. If you're pairing a Matter accessory that was previously paired to another app, tap More options, then select your accessory. Open the accessory's app, then generate a pairing code, which will be used to complete pairing with the Home app.

3. Follow the onscreen instructions.

You may need to scan a QR code, enter an 8-digit HomeKit setup code found on the accessory itself (or its box or documentation), or enter an 11 or 21-digit code for Matter-enabled accessories. A supported smart TV displays a QR code for you to scan. You can assign the accessory to a room, give it a name, then use this name when controlling the accessory with Siri. You can also add suggested automations during setup.

When you set up Apple TV in tvOS and assign it to a room, it automatically appears in that room in the Home app on iPhone.

Paired Matter accessories are synced across devices and stored in the Settings app using iCloud Keychain, regardless of which app you used to set them up. You can easily add a previously paired accessory that's stored in Keychain to another Matter ecosystem app. To manage these accessories, go to Settings > General, then tap Matter accessories. See the Apple Support article Pair and manage your Matter accessories.

Show accessories in a room

You can show individual rooms, scenes assigned to them, and a room's accessories organized by category.

In Room View, do one of the following.

- Tap > next to a room's name.
- Tap ···, then choose a room.

Change an accessory's room assignment

1. Touch and hold an accessory tile, then tap Accessory Settings.
2. Tap Room, then choose a room.

Edit a room

You can change a room's name and wallpaper, remove the room, and more. When you remove the room, the accessories assigned to it move to Default Room.

1. On the Home tab, tap > next to a room, or tap ⋯, then choose a room.
2. Tap ⋯, then tap Room Settings.

Organize rooms into zones

You can group rooms together into a zone to easily control different areas of your home with Siri. For example, if you have a two-story home, you can assign the rooms on the first floor to a downstairs zone. Then you can say something to Siri like "Turn off the lights downstairs."

1. Tap > next to a room on the Home tab or tap ⋯, then choose a room.
2. Tap ⋯, then tap Room Settings.
3. Tap Zone, then tap an existing zone, or tap Create New to add the room to a new zone.

See also

Control accessories with Home on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Upgrade to the new Home architecture

Next
Control accessories

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Control accessories with Home on iPhone

Use the Home app and Control Center to control accessories in your home.

Control accessories in the Home app

On the Home tab, tap an accessory's icon on the left side of the tile—a light, for example—to quickly turn the accessory on or off. Tap the accessory's name on the right side of the tile to show the accessory's control.

The available controls depend on the type of accessory. For example, with some lightbulbs, there are controls for changing colors. With your smart TV, you can choose an input source.

Control accessories in Control Center

When you're home with your iPhone, you can see the relevant scenes and accessories for that moment in Control Center. For example, a coffee maker may appear in the morning and be replaced by your bedside lamp at night.

Open Control Center, then tap a button to turn an accessory on or off, or touch and hold the button until controls appear.

To quickly see all your scenes and accessories (except cameras), tap .

If you don't want accessories to appear in Control Center, go to Settings > Control Center, then turn off Show Home Controls.

View categories and home status

The Lights, Climate, Security, Speakers and TVs, and Water categories let you quickly access all the relevant accessories organized by room.

1. Open the Home app to show the Home tab.

   Below your home's name, buttons show the status of accessories belonging to a category—for example, a Lights category that shows "3 on."

2. Tap one of the category buttons to show all accessories within that category, organized by room.

3. While viewing a category, tap the icon on the left side of an accessory tile to perform an action—turn a light or group of lights on or off, start playing music on a HomePod, or lock the front door.

View Activity History

When you have a home hub using the new Home architecture and latest software, all the members of your home can view the activity history for accessories like garage doors, locks, and security systems. For example, you can learn when a door was unlocked and who unlocked it.

1. On the Home tab, tap , then tap Home Settings.

2. Go to Safety & Security > Home History, then tap One Month to view up to 30 days of activity.

3. In the Home tab, tap the Security category, then tap Home Activity to show the Activity History.

Turn on Adaptive Lighting

Some lights let you adjust their color temperature, from cool blue to warm yellow. You can set supported lights to automatically adjust the color temperature throughout the day. Wake up to warm colors, stay alert and focused mid-day with cooler ones, and wind down at night by removing blue light. For a light that supports Adaptive Lighting, follow these steps.

1. Tap the light's tile to show the controls.

   You can also touch and hold the tile, and then choose Accessory Settings.

2. Tap , then turn on Adaptive Lighting.

Note: Adaptive Lighting requires a home hub—a device such as Apple TV (4th generation or later) or HomePod speakers.

Edit home accessories

To edit accessory settings, tap the right side of an accessory tile, tap , then do any of the following:

- *Rename an accessory:* Tap to delete the old name, then type a new one.
- *Change an accessory's icon:* Tap the icon next to the accessory's name, then select a new icon. If you don't get a choice of other icons, it means the icon can't be changed for this accessory.

Group accessories

You can control multiple accessories with the tap of a button by grouping them.

1. Tap the right side of an accessory tile, tap , then tap Group with Other Accessories.
2. Tap the accessory you want to group with this accessory—another light in the room, for example.
3. In the Group Name field, type a name for the group.
4. Tap Done.

   Turn on Include in Favorites to include the group in Favorites on the Home tab.

See also

Set up accessories

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Set up accessories

Next
Control your home using Siri

Support › iPhone User Guide › Control accessories with Home on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Control your home using Siri on iPhone

In addition to using the Home app, you can use Siri to control your accessories and scenes. Here are some of the things you can say to Siri for the accessories you add and the scenes, rooms, or homes you set up:

- “Turn off the lights” or “Turn on the lights”
- “Set the temperature to 68 degrees”
- “Turn on the bedroom lights at 9 PM”
- “Did I lock the front door?”
- “Show me the entryway camera”
- “Turn down the kitchen lights”
- “Set my reading scene”
- “Turn off the lights in the Chicago house”

Learn how to use Siri.

See also

Control accessories

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Use Grid Forecast to plan energy use in Home on iPhone (U.S. only)

The electricity powering your home comes from different sources, which can include renewable energy, like solar and wind, or fossil fuels like coal and natural gas. The sources powering your home can change throughout the day. In the Home app on your iPhone you can see a forecast for your area that highlights cleaner times, that can help reduce carbon emissions, and less clean times, to help you choose when to use electricity.

To view the Grid Forecast, you must be connected to the internet, and location services must be turned on for the Home app.

Note: Grid Forecast is available only in the contiguous United States; it's not available in Alaska or Hawaii.

Show Grid Forecast

1. Open the Home app to show the Home tab.
2. Tap the Energy category at the top of the screen to show the Grid Forecast widget.

   Green bars in the widget indicate when cleaner energy is available in your area—from 4 p.m. until 10 p.m., for example. If there are no bars, cleaner energy isn't forecast for the near future.

If you're traveling, Grid Forecast shows energy information for both your home location and the location of your iPhone.

Note: If you haven't added accessories to your home, the Grid Forecast widget appears when you open the Home app.

Receive Grid Forecast notifications

To receive notifications when the electricity powering your home is being generated by cleaner or more renewable sources of energy, do any of the following:

- In the Grid Forecast widget in the Home app, tap .
- On the Home tab, tap , tap Home Settings, tap Energy, then turn on Grid Forecast Notifications.
- Touch and hold the Grid Forecast widget on the Home screen, then tap Notify Me.

To receive Grid Forecast notifications only when you're at home, open Home Settings, tap Energy, turn on Grid Forecast Notifications, then turn on When at Home Only.

Turn off Grid Forecast

1. On the Home tab, tap , then tap Home Settings.
2. Tap Energy, then turn off Show Grid Forecast.

See also

Set up HomePod in Home on iPhone

You can use the Home app to set up HomePod and control many HomePod settings.

To learn what you can do with iPhone and HomePod, see the following in the HomePod User Guide:

- Set up HomePod
- Play audio on HomePod using an iOS or iPadOS device
- Make Personal Requests on HomePod
- Use HomePod for phone calls

Note: HomePod is not available in all countries or regions.

Use Home to send and receive Intercom messages

1. On the Home tab, tap ⋯, then tap Home Settings.
2. Tap Intercom, then configure these settings:
   - When you can receive Intercom messages
   - Who is allowed to send or receive Intercom messages
   - Which HomePod speakers can use Intercom

   Note: Any member of the Home can choose when they receive Intercom messages. Only a home owner or admin can choose who can send or receive Intercom messages and which HomePod speakers can use Intercom.
3. Tap Back, then tap Done.
4. Tap , say something like "Who ate the last cookie?" then tap Done.

   Your Intercom message is sent to all the HomePod speakers in your home, and to the iOS, iPadOS, and watchOS devices of all members of your home who can send and receive Intercom messages.

   To send a message to a HomePod in a specific room or zone, say something like "Siri, tell the office 'The movie is starting'" or "Siri, announce upstairs 'I'm going to the store.'"

See Use HomePod as an Intercom in the HomePod User Guide.

Use Home to add and edit HomePod alarms and timers

In the Home app, tap the right side of a HomePod tile, swipe up, then do any of the following:

- *Add an alarm:* Tap New Alarm, create the alarm, then tap Done.
- *Edit an alarm:* Tap the alarm, change the time, then tap Done.
- *Turn alarms on or off:* Tap the switch next to an alarm.
- *Delete an alarm:* Tap the alarm, then tap Delete Alarm.
- *Create a new timer:* Tap New Timer, enter a timer label (optional), choose the length of the timer, then tap Start.
- *Pause and restart a timer:* Tap , tap to restart the timer.

- *Remove a timer:* Tap ⊗.

Change HomePod settings

You can assign HomePod to a different room, add an automation, create a stereo pair with two HomePod speakers of the same kind in the same room, and more.

1. In the Home app, tap the right side of a HomePod tile.
2. Tap ⚙, then configure HomePod settings.

Use HomePod to listen for alarm sounds

HomePod can notify you when an alarm sound is detected in your home.

1. In the Home app, tap the right side of a HomePod tile.
2. Tap ⚙, then tap Sound Recognition.
3. Turn on Smoke & CO Alarm, then choose which HomePods will listen for alarms.

Your HomePod will listen for certain sounds and notify you when alarm sounds may be recognized.

Important: Sound Recognition may detect smoke and carbon monoxide alarm sounds and send you notifications when recognized. Sound Recognition should not be relied upon in circumstances where you may be harmed or injured, or in high-risk or emergency situations. Sound Recognition requires the new Home architecture.

Add a Siri-enabled accessory

You can extend access to HomePod throughout your home by enabling Siri on compatible HomeKit accessories. If you enable Siri on these accessories, you can control them with your voice, get help with everyday questions or tasks, and play your favorite music and podcasts.

See Set up a Siri-enabled accessory in the HomePod User Guide.

See also

Control your home remotely with iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use Grid Forecast to plan your energy usage

Next
Control your home remotely

Support › iPhone User Guide › Set up HomePod in Home on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Control your home remotely with iPhone

In the Home app, you can control your accessories even when you're away from home. To do so, you need a home hub—a device such as Apple TV (4th generation or later) or HomePod.

Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud, tap Show All, then turn on Home.

You must be signed in with the same Apple ID on your home hub device and your iPhone.

If you have an Apple TV or HomePod, and you're signed in with the same Apple ID as your iPhone, it's set up automatically as a home hub.

See also

Set up accessories

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Create and use scenes in Home on iPhone

In the Home app, you can create scenes that allow you to control multiple accessories at once. For example, you might define a "Reading" scene that adjusts the lights, plays soft music on HomePod, closes the drapes, and adjusts the thermostat.

Create a scene

1. On the Home tab, tap +, then tap Add Scene.
2. Tap Custom, enter a name for the scene (such as "Dinner Party" or "Watching TV"), then tap Add Accessories.
3. Select the accessories you want this scene to include, then tap Done.

   The first accessory you select determines the room the scene is assigned to. If you first select your bedroom lamp, for example, the scene is assigned to your bedroom.
4. Set each accessory to the state you want it in when you run the scene.

   For example, for a Reading scene, you could set the bedroom lights to 100 percent, choose a low volume for the HomePod, and set the thermostat to 68 degrees.
5. Test the scene and choose whether or not to show it on the Home tab (scenes appear on the Home tab by default), then tap Done.

Use scenes

Do one of the following:

- *Run a scene:* Tap the scene on the Home tab.

  If you've decided not to show the scene on the Home tab, tap ···, choose the room the scene is assigned to, then tap the scene.
- *Edit a scene:* Touch and hold a scene, then tap Edit Scene.

  You can change the scene's name, test the scene, add or remove accessories, and more.

See also

Set up accessories

Use automations in Home on iPhone

Use automations in Home on iPhone

In the Home app, you can run automations based on the time of day, your location, the activation of a sensor, or the action of an accessory. You can use preconfigured automations included with the Home app, or create automations of your own.

Use a preconfigured automation

1. On the Home tab, touch and hold an accessory, then tap Accessory Settings.
2. Turn on an automation.

To disable an automation, return to the accessory's setting screen, then turn it off.

Create an automation

1. On the Home tab, tap +.
2. Tap Add Automation, then choose one of the following automation triggers:

   - *When arriving at or leaving a location:* Tap People Arrive or People Leave. Choose when the automation is activated by people arriving or leaving, the location, and the time the automation works.
   - *At a time of day:* Tap A Time of Day Occurs, then choose when you want this automation to run.

     If you choose Sunset or Sunrise, times vary as the season changes.

     You can also set an automation to only occur after sunset, which is useful for turning on lights just when they're needed.
   - *When an accessory changes:* Tap An Accessory is Controlled, select an accessory, tap Next, then follow the onscreen instructions.

     You might use this, for example, to run a scene when you unlock the front door.
   - *A sensor detects something:* If you've added a sensor to Home, tap A Sensor Detects Something, select an accessory, tap Next, then follow the onscreen instructions.

     You might use this, for example, to turn on lights in a stairway when motion is detected nearby.

Manage and edit automations

1. Tap the Automation tab at the bottom of the Home app screen.
2. Tap an automation, then do any of the following:

   - Enable or disable the automation
   - Choose when the automation happens
   - Add or remove accessories

- Test the automation
- Delete the automation

Add a Siri shortcut

To make your automation even more efficient, you can add a Siri Shortcut to it.

1. When choosing accessories to control with an automation, swipe up, then tap Convert To Shortcut.
2. Tap Next, name the automation (optional), then tap Done.

See the Shortcuts User Guide.

See also

Set up accessories

Set up security cameras in Home on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Create and use scenes

Next
Set up security cameras

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Set up security cameras in Home on iPhone

You can use the Home app to view video activity captured by your home's cameras. With any HomeKit-compatible camera, you can view video streams in the Home app, choose who can view those streams, and set up notifications when activity is detected.

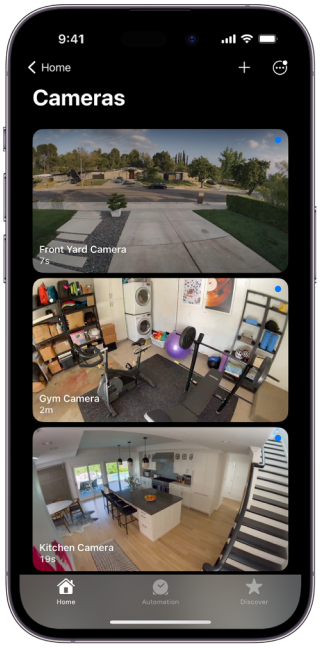
See the Home accessories website for a list of compatible security cameras.

If you have one or more HomeKit Secure Video cameras, you can additionally take advantage of these features:

- *Encrypted video:* Video captured by your cameras is privately analyzed and encrypted on your home hub device (Apple TV or HomePod) and securely uploaded to iCloud so that only you and those you share it with can view it.
- *Record video:* If you subscribe to iCloud+, you can view the last 10 days of activity from one to an unlimited number of cameras. The 50 GB iCloud+ plan supports a single camera, the 200 GB iCloud+ plan supports up to five cameras, and the 2 TB iCloud+ plan supports an unlimited number of cameras.

  Note: Video content doesn't count against your iCloud storage limit.
- *Activity Zones:* Create zones that focus your camera on the most important areas within its view.
- *Face recognition:* Receive notifications when people you've tagged in the Photos app are within the camera's view.

See Store encrypted security camera footage in iCloud with HomeKit Secure Video and Set up HomeKit Secure Video on all your devices in the iCloud User Guide.



Camera options

When you add a camera in the Home app, you can choose streaming options and assign the camera to a room. With a HomeKit Secure Video camera, you can also choose recording options. By default, up to four cameras are marked as favorites and appear on the Home tab. To edit those settings later, tap the Camera tile, then tap to see these options:

- *Room:* A camera can be located in a room inside your home, or you can create a room for an outside location such as your front porch or back yard.
- *Notifications:* Tap Status and Notifications, then choose to receive notifications when the camera detects activity, changes status, or goes offline.
- *Recording options for HomeKit Secure Video cameras:* You can create separate recording settings for when you're home and when you're away. For example, when you're home, you might choose to stop streaming and recording from a camera inside your home, but continue to stream and record from an outdoor camera.

  Note: The Home app uses the location of devices belonging to members of the home to switch between Home and Away modes. For example, when you leave home with your iPhone, the camera switches from the When Home settings to the When Away settings.

Set up notifications

1. On the Home tab, tap ⋯, then tap Home Settings.
2. Tap Cameras & Doorbells.
3. Tap a camera, then turn on Activity Notifications.

   All HomeKit-compatible cameras can send a notification when motion is detected. HomeKit Secure Video cameras can additionally send notifications based on these factors:

   - The time of day
   - When someone is or isn't home
   - When a clip is recorded
   - When any or a specific type of motion is detected

     When you choose a specific motion, you receive a notification when the camera detects people, animals, or vehicles, or when a package is delivered. For a package to be detected, it must be within the camera's view after delivery.

     Choosing a specific motion, rather than any motion, results in fewer clips (and fewer clip notifications) and less video to review. For example, if you choose to detect people, your camera doesn't capture the movement of leaves on a tree or a squirrel leaping from branch to branch.

Create Activity Zones for HomeKit Secure Video cameras

You can create zones that focus your HomeKit Secure Video camera on the most important areas within its view—your front walkway but not the sidewalk behind it, for example. You can then be alerted when motion is detected in these zones.

Note: You can create Activity Zones only for cameras set up to record when a specific motion is detected. Activity Zones don't affect motion detection automations.

1. On the Home tab, tap the camera tile, then tap ⚙.
2. Tap Select Activity Zones, then tap the video to create a zone.

   To have your camera detect motion only outside the zone you defined, tap Invert Zone.
3. Create any additional zones you want within the camera's view—one for the driveway and another for the mailbox, for example.
4. Tap Done.

To remove an activity zone, tap Select Activity Zones, tap inside a zone, then tap Clear.

View video

1. On the Home tab, tap the camera tile.

   Live video should play automatically.

2. If you've chosen to record video with your HomeKit Secure Video camera, swipe through the timeline at the bottom of the screen to browse recorded clips.

3. Tap a clip to play it.

4. Tap Live to switch back to live video.

When you set up the camera to detect specific motion, the timeline displays unique symbols for people, animals, vehicles, and packages.

Note: If there are more cameras in your home than Home Hubs that can analyze the cameras' video, video captured from some of the cameras may not be analyzed. Clips are still recorded, but they'll show , which indicates that the video wasn't analyzed for specific motion.

You can also view live and recorded video in the Home app on your Mac with macOS 10.15.1 or later.

Choose access options

To allow other people to view video from your cameras, follow these steps:

1. On the Home tab, tap , then tap Home Settings.

2. Below the People heading, tap a person.

3. Tap Cameras, then choose an option.

To learn how to allow other people to view video from your cameras, see Invite others to control accessories in your home.

See also

Set up accessories

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use automations

Next
Use Face Recognition

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use Face Recognition in Home on iPhone

With a HomeKit Secure Video camera or doorbell, you can use the Home app to receive notifications when people you've tagged in the Photos app are within the camera's view.

Set up Face Recognition

Face Recognition identifies people by the faces that appear in your photo library or pictures of recent visitors captured by your camera or doorbell.

If you're setting up a camera or doorbell for the first time, do the following:

1. Add the accessory to the Home app.
2. In the Recognize Familiar Faces card, turn on Face Recognition, then tap Continue.
3. Choose who can access your photo library:
   - *Never:* Only faces you've added from clips in the Home app are recognized.
   - *Only Me:* Only the notifications you receive have the names of people in your photo library.
   - *Everyone in this Home:* The notifications for everyone in your home have the names of people in your photo library.
4. Tap Continue, then finish setting up the camera or doorbell.

If you have an existing doorbell or camera and want to use it to identify visitors, tap it on the Home tab, tap , tap Face Recognition, then turn on Face Recognition. Tap your photo library, then choose who can access it.

Note: Notifications can appear on any of the devices associated with your Apple ID.

Identify recent visitors

You can use Face Recognition to help identify people that aren't in your photo library using a picture captured by your camera or doorbell.

1. With Face Recognition turned on, open the Home app .
2. On the Home tab, tap the camera or doorbell, then tap .
3. Tap Face Recognition, tap an unidentified person listed below Recent, then tap Add Name.
4. Add the person's name or their relationship to you—Mom or Mail Carrier, for example.
5. Choose whether to be notified when they're seen by your camera or doorbell.

Note: People with a face mask don't appear in this list.

Share faces with your household

You can allow the members of your household to see the names of visitors identified in your photo library.

1. With Face Recognition turned on, open the Home app , tap , then tap Home Settings.
2. Tap Cameras & Doorbells below Notifications, then tap Face Recognition.

3. Tap your photo library, then tap Everyone in this Home.

See also

Set up accessories

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Set up security cameras

Next
Unlock your door with a home key

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Unlock your door with a home key on iPhone

Some lock makers provide the ability to unlock your door with a home key in Apple Wallet on your compatible iPhone and Apple Watch (Series 4 and later). You add a home key to Apple Wallet with the Home app on your iPhone.

When you have a home key on your iPhone or Apple Watch, place your device near the lock to unlock it. You can use the Home app to share access with other people.

Set up a home key

1. Add a supported lock to the Home app.
2. Choose an unlocking option.
   - *Express Mode:* Unlock the door just by holding your iPhone or Apple Watch near the lock.
   - *Require Face ID or Passcode:* Hold your device near the lock, then use Face ID or Touch ID to unlock it.
3. Choose automations such as Lock After Door Closes and Lock When Leaving Home.

If the lock you add supports HomeKit, all residents of your household receive the home key automatically.

Set up an access code for a guest

In the Home app you can set up an access code for people who need temporary access to your home.

1. Open the Home app on your iPhone.
2. On the Home tab, touch and hold the lock, tap Accessory Settings, tap Manage Access, then tap Add Guest.
3. Give the guest a name—Dog Walker, for example—then turn on the locks you want them to have access to.
4. Tap Change Access Code, enter an access code, then tap Done.
5. Touch and hold the access code, tap Share, choose a sharing option, then share the access code with the guest.

You can return to this screen to change the access code, turn off access to some or all of the locks, or remove the guest.

See also

Access your car, home, workplace, and hotel room with keys in Wallet

Configure a router in Home on iPhone

You can use the Home app to make your smart home more secure by allowing a compatible router to control which services your HomeKit accessories can communicate with on your home Wi-Fi network and on the internet. HomeKit-enabled routers require that you have an Apple TV or HomePod set up as a home hub. See the Home Accessories website for a list of compatible routers.

To configure the router's settings, follow these steps:

1. Set up the router with the manufacturer's app on an iPhone or iPad.
2. On the Home tab, tap , then tap Home Settings.
3. Tap Wi-Fi Network & Routers.
4. Turn on HomeKit Accessory Security, tap an accessory, then choose one of these settings:

   - *Restrict to Home:* The router only allows the accessory to connect to your home hub.

     This option may prevent firmware updates or other services.

   - *Automatic:* The router allows the accessory to connect to an automatically updated list of manufacturer-approved internet services and local devices.

   - *No Restriction:* The router allows the accessory to connect to any internet service or local device.

     This provides the lowest level of security.

See also

Set up accessories

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Invite others to control accessories in your home

In the Home app, you can invite other people to control your smart accessories. You and the people you invite need to be using iCloud and have iOS 11.2.5, iPadOS 13, or later. You also need to be at your home or have a home hub set up in your home.

Invite others to control accessories

1. On the Home tab, tap +, then tap Add People.
2. Tap ⊕ to choose people with an Apple ID from your contacts list, or enter their Apple ID email addresses in the To field.
3. Tap Send Invite.
4. Ask the invitee to do one of the following:
   - *In the notification:* (iPhone or iPad) Tap Accept.
   - *In the Home app:* (iPhone or iPad) On the Home tab, tap ⋯, tap Home Settings, then tap the invitee's name.
   - *On Apple TV:* Tap Show Me on Apple TV, then turn on one or more Apple TVs.

Allow others to access your AirPlay-enabled speakers and TVs

1. On the Home tab, tap ⋯, then tap Home Settings.
2. Tap Speaker & TV, then choose an option.

You can allow everyone, anyone on the same network, or only people you've invited to share the home. You can also require a password that allows speaker access. To learn more about HomePod speaker and Apple TV access, see the HomePod User Guide and the Apple TV User Guide.

See also

Set up HomePod in Home

Add more homes with iPhone

In the Home app, you can add more than one physical space—a home and a small office, for example.

1. Tap +, then tap Add New Home.
2. Name the home, choose its wallpaper, then tap Save.
3. To switch to another home, tap ···, then tap the home you want.

See also

Set up accessories

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Get music, movies, and TV shows in the iTunes Store on iPhone

Use the iTunes Store app to add music, movies, and TV shows to iPhone.

Note: You need an internet connection to use the iTunes Store. The availability of the iTunes Store and its features varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Find music, movies, and TV shows

1. In the iTunes Store, tap any of the following:
   - *Music, Movies, or TV Shows:* Browse by category. To refine your browsing, tap Genres at the top of the screen.
   - *Charts:* See what's popular on iTunes.
   - *Search:* Enter what you're looking for, then tap Search on the keyboard.
   - *More:* Browse recommendations based on what you bought from iTunes.
2. Tap an item to see more information about it. You can preview songs, watch trailers for movies and TV shows, or tap to do any of the following:
   - *Share a link to the item:* Choose a sharing option.
   - *Give the item as a gift:* Tap Gift.
   - *Add the item to your wish list:* Tap Add to Wish List.

     To view your wish list, tap , then tap Wish List.

Buy and download content

1. To buy an item, tap the price. If the item is free, tap Get.

   If you see instead of a price, you already purchased the item, and you can download it again without a charge.
2. If required, authenticate your Apple ID with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode to complete the purchase.
3. To see the progress of a download, tap More, then tap Downloads.

Redeem or send an App Store & iTunes Gift Card

1. Tap Music, then scroll to the bottom.
2. Tap Redeem or Send Gift.

Get ringtones, text tones, and alert tones in the iTunes Store on iPhone

In the iTunes Store app, you can purchase ringtones, text tones, and other alert tones for clock alarms and more.

Buy new tones

1. In the iTunes Store, tap More, then tap Tones.
2. Browse by category or tap Search to find a specific song or artist.
3. Tap a tone to see more information or play a preview.
4. To buy a tone, tap the price.

Redownload tones purchased with your Apple ID

If you bought tones on another device, you can download them again.

1. Go to Settings > Sounds & Haptics (on supported models) or Sounds (on other iPhone models).
2. Below Sounds and Haptic Patterns, tap any sound.
3. Tap Download All Purchased Tones. You might not see this option if you already downloaded all the tones that you purchased or if you haven't purchased any tones.

See also

Change iPhone sounds and vibrations

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Manage your iTunes Store purchases and settings on iPhone

In the iTunes Store app, you can review and download music, movies, and TV shows purchased by you or other family members. You can also customize your preferences for the iTunes Store in Settings.

Approve purchases with Family Sharing

With Family Sharing set up, the family organizer can review and approve purchases made by other family members under a certain age. See Turn on Ask to Buy for a child later.

View and download music, movies, or TV shows purchased by you or family members

1. In the iTunes Store, tap More, then tap Purchased.
2. If you set up Family Sharing, choose a family member to view their purchases.

   Note: You can see purchases made by family members only if they choose to share their purchases.
3. Tap Music, Movies, or TV Shows.
4. Find the item you want to download, then tap .

View your entire iTunes Store purchase history

To see a chronological list of the apps, songs, movies, TV shows, books, and other items purchased with your Apple ID, view your iTunes Store purchase history.

In your purchase history, you can do any of the following:

- View when an order was billed to your account.
- View the date of a purchase.
- Resend email receipts.
- Report a problem with purchased content.

Set content restrictions

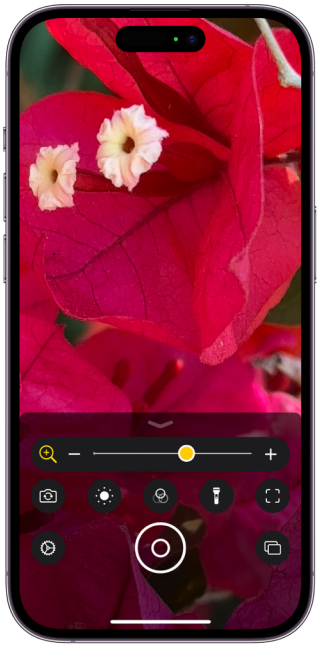
After you turn on content and privacy restrictions, go to Settings > Screen Time > Content & Privacy Restrictions > Content Restrictions, then set any of the available restrictions. You can block explicit content, turn off music videos, restrict content by age-appropriate ratings, and more.

See also

Apple Support article: Hide and unhide music, movies, TV shows, audiobooks, and books

Magnify and examine objects around you with iPhone

In the Magnifier app, you can use your iPhone as a magnifying glass to zoom in on objects near you. You can also use your iPhone to filter colors, add contrast, increase focus, and freeze frames. On supported models, you can interpret your environment with Detection Mode.



Turn on Magnifier

Open the Magnifier app in any of the following ways:

Siri: Say something like: "Open Magnifier." Learn how to use Siri.

- Tap on your iPhone.

  (If you don't see the Magnifier app icon on the Home Screen, go to App Library, then look in the Utilities folder.)

- Open Control Center, then tap .

  (If you don't see , add it to Control Center—go to Settings > Control Center, then tap next to Magnifier.)

You can also set up your iPhone to turn on Magnifier by tapping the back of iPhone or triple-clicking a button (see Quickly open features with Accessibility Shortcut on iPhone).

Adjust the image

1. Open the Magnifier app on your iPhone.
2. To adjust the zoom, drag the slider left or right.
3. Use any of the following controls:

- *Adjust the brightness:* Tap .
- *Adjust the contrast:* Tap .
- *Apply color filters:* Tap . (See Choose your favorite color filters.)
- *Add more light:* Tap to turn on the flashlight.
- *Lock the focus:* Tap .
- *Switch to a different camera:* Tap to switch to the front or rear camera. On iPhone 13 Pro, iPhone 13 Pro Max, iPhone 14 Pro, iPhone 14 Pro Max, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max, you can also choose Close-up when you need to see something very small that's very close to the camera.

4. Swipe left to reveal more controls. If you don't see the controls you want, you can add more controls.

You can save your preferred controls for recurring tasks and situations—like reading a menu at a restaurant, for example. Tap , then tap Save New Activity. To edit your saved activities, tap , tap Settings, tap Activities, then tap the name of the activity you want to edit.

Freeze the frame

You can freeze one or more frames and review them.

Note: Freeze frames aren't saved to Photos.

1. Open the Magnifier app on your iPhone.
2. Tap .
3. To freeze more frames, tap , reposition the camera, then tap .

   To review the freeze frames, tap View, then tap the frames you want to see.
4. To return to the live lens, tap or Done.

Use Detection Mode

On supported models, you can use the Magnifier app to detect people or doors, to get image descriptions of your surroundings, and to read text or interactive labels around you.

1. Open the Magnifier app on your iPhone.
2. Tap to access Detection Mode.
3. Do any of the following:

   - *Detect people:* Tap . See Detect people around you using Magnifier on iPhone.
   - *Detect doors:* Tap . See Detect doors around you using Magnifier on iPhone.
   - *Describe images:* Tap . See Receive image descriptions of your surroundings in Magnifier on iPhone.
   - *Detect text:* Tap . See Read all text captured on the Magnifier screen.
   - *Point at labels:* Tap . See Point to speak interactive labels.

Important: Detection Mode should not be relied on in high-risk or emergency situations, in circumstances where you may be harmed or injured, or for navigation.

Change Magnifier settings on iPhone

In the Magnifier app, you can add controls to lock the focus, change the camera, and more. You can also reorder the controls and choose your favorite color filters.

Add and organize the controls you use most often

Tap, tap Settings, then do any of the following:

- *Add or remove controls:* Tap or next to a control.
- *Reorder controls:* Drag next to a control to move it up or down.

Choose your favorite color filters

If you have color blindness or other vision challenges, you can use color filters to help you differentiate between colors. To customize the filters shown in the Filters control, do the following:

1. Tap, tap Settings, then tap Filters (below Other Controls).
2. Choose your favorite filters.

   Filters with a checkmark are shown when you tap.

See also

Detect people around you using Magnifier on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Detect people around you using Magnifier on iPhone

On supported models, you can use the Magnifier app to detect people around you and help you maintain a physical or social distance from others. When iPhone detects people nearby, you're notified with sounds, speech, or haptic feedback. The feedback becomes more frequent when a person is closer to you.

Important: Detection Mode should not be relied on in high-risk or emergency situations, in circumstances where you may be harmed or injured, or for navigation.

Detect people near you

1. Turn on Magnifier, tap , then tap .
2. Position iPhone so the rear camera can detect people around you.

   If you don't hear the sound or speech feedback, make sure Silent mode is turned off. See Adjust the volume on iPhone.
3. When you're finished, tap Done to return to the Magnifier screen.

Customize the settings for People Detection

1. Tap , then tap Settings.
2. Tap People Detection to customize any of the following:

   - *Units:* Choose Meters or Feet.
   - *Sound pitch distance:* Tap − or + to adjust the distance. When people are detected within this distance, the pitch of the sound feedback increases.
   - *Feedback:* Turn on any combination of Sounds, Speech, and Haptics. If you turn on Speech, iPhone speaks the distance between you and another person.
3. When you're finished, tap Back, then tap Done.

See also

Detect doors around you using Magnifier on iPhone

Receive image descriptions of your surroundings in Magnifier on iPhone

Detect doors around you using Magnifier on iPhone

On supported models, you can use the Magnifier app to detect doors around you, help you understand how far you are from a door, how to open the door, and get a description of the door's attributes.

When doors are detected nearby, you're notified with sounds, speech, or haptic feedback. The feedback becomes more frequent as you get closer to a door.

Important: Detection Mode should not be relied on in high-risk or emergency situations, in circumstances where you may be harmed or injured, or for navigation.

Detect doors near you

1. Turn on Magnifier, tap , then tap .
2. Position iPhone so the rear camera can detect doors around you.

   If you don't hear the sound or speech feedback, make sure Silent mode is turned off. See Adjust the volume on iPhone.
3. When you're finished, tap Done to return to the Magnifier screen.

Customize the settings for Door Detection

1. Tap , then tap Settings.
2. Tap Door Detection to customize any of the following:

   - *Units:* Choose Meters or Feet.
   - *Sound pitch distance:* Tap − or + to adjust the distance. When a door is detected within this distance, the pitch of the sound feedback increases.

- *Feedback:* Turn on any combination of sounds, speech, and haptics. If you turn on Speech, iPhone speaks the distance between you and the door.
- *Color:* Select a color to outline detected doors.
- *Back tap:* When you double-tap the back of your iPhone, you can hear more information about doors around you.
- *Door Attributes:* Turn on any combination of door attributes, such as the size of the detected door, how to open the door, and if the door is currently open.
- *Door Decorations:* Turn on Door Decorations to get information about text and signs on or near the detected door, such as a sign for an accessible entrance or a restroom.

3. When you're finished, tap Back, then tap Done.

See also

Receive image descriptions of your surroundings in Magnifier on iPhone

Detect people around you using Magnifier on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Detect people around you

Next
Receive image descriptions of your surroundings

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Receive image descriptions of your surroundings in Magnifier on iPhone

On all models, you can use the Magnifier app to scan your surroundings and receive live image descriptions of the scenes and people detected in the camera view.

You're notified of live descriptions by text or speech feedback.

Important: Detection Mode should not be relied on in high-risk or emergency situations, in circumstances where you may be harmed or injured, or for navigation.

Receive live image descriptions

1. Turn on Magnifier, then do one of the following:
   - *On models with a LiDAR Scanner:* Tap, then tap.
   - *On other models:* Tap.
2. Position iPhone so the rear camera can get image descriptions of the world around you.

   If you don't hear the speech feedback, make sure Silent mode is turned off. See Adjust the volume on iPhone.
3. When you're finished, tap Done to return to the Magnifier screen.

Customize settings for image descriptions

1. Turn on Magnifier, then do one of the following:
   - *On models with a LiDAR Scanner:* Tap, tap, then tap Image Descriptions.
   - *On other models:* Tap, tap Settings, then tap Image Descriptions below Detectors.
2. Turn on any combination of text and speech.
   - *Text:* Image descriptions appear in the camera view.
   - *Speech:* When you turn on Speech, iPhone speaks the description of the scenes and people detected in the camera view.
3. When you're finished, tap Back, then tap Done.

See also

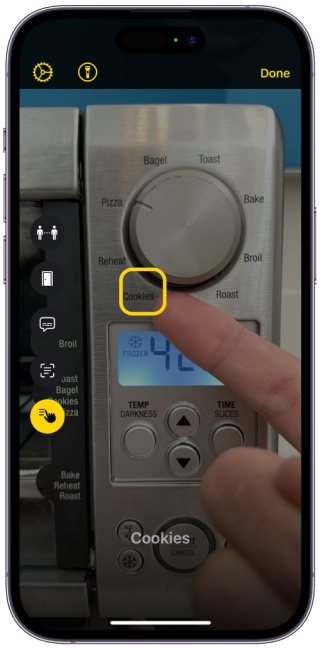
Use Live Text with the iPhone camera

Detect people around you using Magnifier on iPhone

Detect doors around you using Magnifier on iPhone

Read aloud text and labels around you using Magnifier on iPhone

On supported models and for selected languages, you can use the Magnifier app to point to any text or interactive labels in your environment to have your iPhone read them out loud.



Important: Detection Mode should not be relied on in high-risk or emergency situations, in circumstances where you may be harmed or injured, or for navigation.

Read all text captured on the Magnifier screen

On supported models and for selected languages, you can use the Magnifier app to identify and read out loud all the text that's visible in the field of view of your iPhone camera.

1. Open the Magnifier app on your iPhone.
2. Tap to go to Detection Mode.
3. Tap , then aim your lens at whatever you want read aloud.

Point to speak interactive labels

On supported models and for selected languages, you can use the Magnifier app to point to any interactive labels in your environment to have your iPhone speak their text out loud.

When several knobs or buttons have small text labels, you can use Point and Speak, and your iPhone will read the text so you can tell them apart. You can use this for objects with text labels such as:

- Digital screens, like grocery self-checkouts
- Keypads

- Folders in a file cabinet
- Household appliances
- ATMs

1. Open the Magnifier app on your iPhone.
2. Tap to go to Detection Mode.
3. Tap , aim your lens at whatever you want read aloud, then point your finger to identify which text to read.

To change how you point to a label, while in Detection Mode tap (in the top-left corner), tap Point and Speak, then below Location, tap Under (to read text under your fingertip) or Above (to read text directly above your finger).

Text Detection and Point and Speak work with VoiceOver. See Turn on and practice VoiceOver on iPhone.

See also

Detect people around you using Magnifier on iPhone

Detect doors around you using Magnifier on iPhone

Receive image descriptions of your surroundings in Magnifier on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Receive image descriptions of your surroundings

Next
Set up shortcuts for Detection Mode

Support > iPhone User Guide > Read aloud text and labels around you using Magnifier on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Set up shortcuts for Detection Mode in Magnifier on iPhone

In the Magnifier app, you can set up accessibility shortcuts to quickly and easily access Detection Mode:

- *Accessibility Shortcut:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > Accessibility Shortcut, then select Detection Mode.
- *VoiceOver gesture:* By default, the four-finger triple-tap gesture turns Detection Mode on or off. To assign a different gesture, go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Commands > Touch Gestures.
- *Tap the back of iPhone:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch > Back Tap, choose Double Tap or Triple Tap, then choose Detection Mode.

See also

Get started with accessibility features on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Add and remove email accounts on iPhone

To send and receive email using the Mail app, you need to add the email accounts you want to use. When you first open Mail, you're asked to set up an account. At any time, you can add additional email accounts to your iPhone, or remove email accounts you no longer need.

Add an email account

You can add one or more email accounts to the Mail app so that you can receive all your email in one place and easily send email from any of your accounts.

1. Go to Settings > Mail.
2. Tap Accounts, then tap Add Account.
3. Tap the email service you want to use—for example, iCloud or Microsoft Exchange—then enter your email account information.

   If your email service isn't listed, tap Other, tap Add Mail Account, then enter your email account information.

Note: If you set up multiple accounts, you can choose which account you want to send from when composing your email message. See Send email in Mail on iPhone.

Temporarily stop using an email account

If you want to temporarily stop sending and receiving email from an account on your iPhone, you can turn it off in Settings. You can easily turn it back on at any time.

1. Go to Settings > Mail > Accounts.
2. Tap the email account you want to turn off, then do one of the following:

   - *Turn off an iCloud email account:* Tap iCloud, tap iCloud Mail, then turn off Use on this iPhone.
   - *Turn off another email account:* Turn off Mail.

Tip: You can choose if you want to continue using other apps with this account—including Contacts, Calendars, and Reminders. Turn each individual app on or off.

Delete an email account

You can remove an email account from the Mail app and from all the apps that use it on your iPhone.

Note: This action doesn't cancel the email account; it just removes it from your iPhone. To close the account completely, visit your email account provider.

1. Go to Settings > Mail > Accounts.
2. Tap the email account you want to remove from your iPhone, then tap Sign Out or Delete Account.

   Note: If you change your mind later, you can add the email account back to your iPhone. See Add an email account.

Add the Mail app back to your Home Screen

If you don’t see the Mail app on your Home Screen, you can find it in the App Library and add it back.

1. On the Home Screen, swipe left until you see the App Library.
2. Enter “Mail” in the search field.
3. Touch and hold , then tap Add to Home Screen.

To rearrange your Home Screen so it’s just right for you, see Move apps and widgets on the Home Screen on iPhone.

See also

Check your email

Send email

Set up a custom email domain with iCloud

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Set up shortcuts for Detection Mode

Next
Set up a custom email domain

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Set up a custom email domain with iCloud Mail on iPhone

When you subscribe to iCloud+, you can add up to five custom email domains and create email addresses for those domains on your iPhone. Then, you can send and receive mail in the Mail app on your iPhone, iPad, and Mac, in your Mail account on iCloud.com, and in an email app on a Windows computer.

You need to have a primary iCloud Mail address before you can add a custom email domain on iPhone. See Create a primary email address for iCloud Mail in the iCloud User Guide.

To learn more, see Personalize iCloud Mail with a custom email domain and share with others in the iCloud User Guide.

Note: Make sure you're signed in with the same Apple ID on each device. If you have devices where you're not signed in with your Apple ID or that have the Mail feature turned off, you won't be able to see your custom email domains and mail on those devices.

Add a custom email domain to iCloud Mail

You can add a custom email domain you already own to iCloud Mail, or buy a new one.

Note: You need to have a primary iCloud Mail address before you can add a custom email domain on iPhone. See Create a primary email address for iCloud Mail in the iCloud User Guide.

1. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > iCloud Mail, then make sure "Use on this iPhone" is turned on.
2. Tap Custom Email Domain, then tap one of the following:
   - *Buy a Domain:* Choose this option if you don't yet have a custom domain. After you purchase it, you can create custom email addresses.
   - *Use a Domain You Own:* Choose this option if you already have a domain, and you want to use it with iCloud Mail. You can configure email addresses you already have at that domain, and create more.
3. Follow the onscreen instructions.

   If you're adding a domain you already own, some registrars require you to change DNS records to set up your domain. See the Apple Support article Set up an existing domain with iCloud Mail.

Import existing email messages

After you or a member of your Family Sharing group sets up a custom email domain for iCloud Mail, you can use iCloud.com to import existing email messages from your previous email provider (not available for all email providers). See Import existing email messages to your custom iCloud Mail address in the iCloud User Guide.

Create and delete email addresses

After you add a custom email domain, you can easily create and delete email addresses for that domain.

1. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > iCloud Mail, then make sure “Use on this iPhone” is turned on.
2. Tap Custom Email Domain, then tap the domain you want to make changes to.
3. Tap Manage Email Addresses, then do one of the following:
   - *Add a new email address:* Tap Create Email Address, enter the new address, then tap Continue.
   - *Delete an email address:* Swipe left on an email address, tap Delete, then tap Remove.
   - *Add People:* Tap to invite someone to your custom email domain.

Remove a custom email domain

If you no longer want to use a custom email domain, you can remove it using your iPhone. When you remove a custom email domain, you can’t send or receive email for any addresses at that domain in Mail.

1. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > iCloud Mail.
2. Tap Custom Email Domain, then tap Edit next to Your Domains.
3. Tap ⛔, then tap Delete.
4. If you’re moving your domain to a new provider, make sure to do the following:
   - Go to your domain registrar to update the domain records to your new email provider and remove iCloud-related records.
   - Set up any email addresses you want to continue using with your new provider.

Note: When you remove a custom email domain, you can still send and receive email from your primary @icloud.com address.

Allow all incoming messages to your domain

You can use your iCloud Mail email address as a catch-all address. This allows you to receive all messages sent to your custom email domain, even if the exact address they were sent to hasn’t already been created.

1. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > iCloud Mail.
2. Tap Custom Email Domain, then tap your custom domain.
3. Turn on Allow All Incoming Messages.

If the domain owner allows all incoming messages, any messages that aren’t sent to an active email address go to the domain owner’s inbox. If this setting isn’t turned on, those messages are returned to the sender.

Note: Messages sent to deleted email addresses are automatically returned to the sender.

See also

Add an email domain you already own to iCloud Mail

Check your email

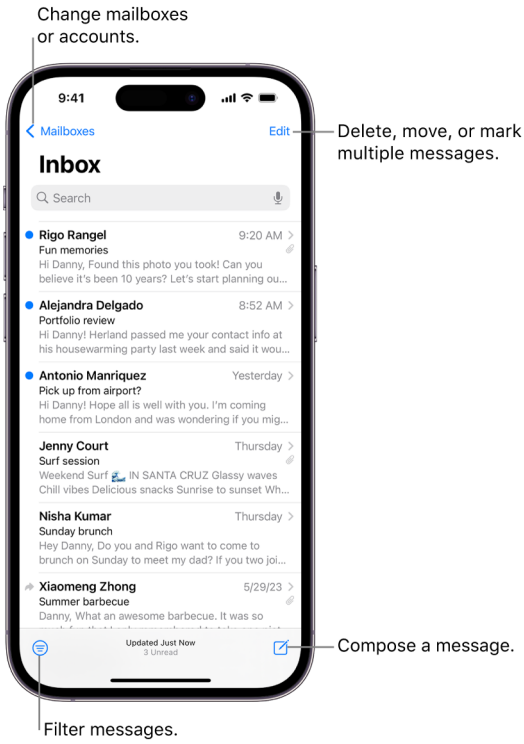
Send email

Use Hide My Email

Helpful? Yes No

Check your email in Mail on iPhone

In the Mail app, you can read emails, add contacts, and preview some of the contents of an email without opening it.



Read an email

In the inbox, tap the email you want to read.

Use Remind Me to come back to emails later

If you don't have time to handle an email right away, you can set a time and date to receive a reminder and bring a message back to the top of your inbox.

Tap, tap Remind Me, then choose when to be reminded.

Preview an email and a list of options

If you want to see what an email is about but not open it completely, you can preview it. In the inbox, touch and hold an email to preview its contents and see a list of options for replying, filing it, and more. See Perform quick actions on iPhone.

Show a longer preview for every email

In your inbox, Mail displays two lines of text for each email by default. You can choose to see more lines of text without opening the email.

Go to Settings > Mail > Preview, then choose up to five lines.

Show the whole conversation

Go to Settings > Mail, then turn on Organize by Thread.

Tip: You can also change other settings in Settings > Mail—such as Collapse Read Messages or Most Recent Message on Top.

Show To and Cc labels in your Inbox

Go to Settings > Mail, then turn on Show To/Cc Labels (below Message List).

You can also view the To/Cc mailbox, which gathers all mail addressed to you. To show or hide it, tap < in the upper-left corner of the Mail app until you see Mailboxes, tap Edit, then select "To or Cc."

Add someone to your contacts or make them a VIP

You can save someone to your contacts to easily find their email again in the future, or make them a VIP so any email you receive from them is automatically starred. In an email, tap a person's name or email address, then do one of the following:

- *Add to your contacts:* Tap Create New Contact or Add to Existing Contact.

  You can add a phone number, other email addresses, and more.

- *Add to your VIP list:* Tap Add to VIP.

See also

Send email

Reply to and forward emails

Add and remove email accounts

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Set up a custom email domain

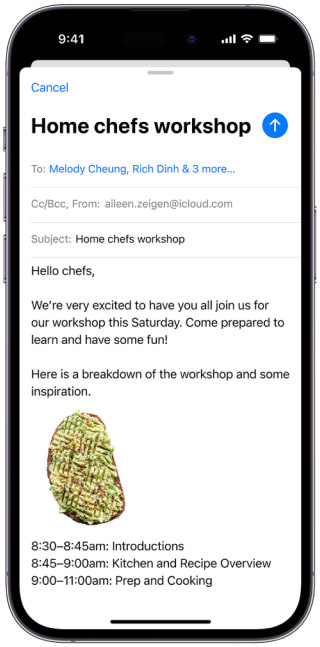
Next
Send email

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

This manual was copied from Apple Support website
and compiled by www.iphone15manual.com

Send email in Mail on iPhone

In the Mail app, you can write, send, and schedule email from any of your email accounts.



Write an email message

1. Tap .
2. Tap in the email, then type your message.
3. To change the formatting, tap above the keyboard, then tap Aa.

   You can change the font style and color of text, use a bold or italic style, add a bulleted or numbered list, and more.
4. Tap to send your email.

Tip: You can create and add stickers to emails as you compose them. See Add emoji and stickers from the iPhone keyboard.

Add recipients

1. Tap the To field, then type the names of recipients.

   As you type, Mail automatically suggests people from your Contacts.

   You can also tap to open Contacts and add recipients from there.
2. If you want to send a copy to other people, tap the Cc/Bcc field, then do any of the following:

   - Tap the Cc field, then enter the names of people you're sending a copy to.
   - Tap the Bcc field, then enter the names of people you don't want other recipients to see.

Tip: After you enter recipients, you can reorder their names in the address fields, or drag them from one address field to another—for example, to the Bcc field if you decide you don't want their names to appear.

Add a hyperlink to an email

1. In Safari or another web browser, copy the URL of a webpage.
2. As you compose a message in Mail, highlight the text you want to link.
3. Tap Paste.

Edit a link in an email draft

Tap a link or linked text, then tap .

Do any of the following:

- *Show Link Preview:* Change the hyperlinked text to a rich embedded website preview image.
- *Open Link:* Go to that website in a web browser.
- *Edit Link:* Change the URL of the link.
- *Remove Link:* Delete the link from your email draft.
- *Edit Text Description:* Change the text that's linked.

Use Camera to capture an email address

You can use Live Text to scan an email address printed on a business card, poster, and more using the Mail app on iPhone. This allows you to quickly begin emails without entering an address manually.

1. Open the Camera app, then position iPhone so the email address appears within the camera frame.
2. Tap the email address, then tap in the lower-right corner of the camera field.
3. To draft an email, tap the email address in the lower-left side of the camera field.

Tip: You can also capture an email address from a photo. See Use Live Text to interact with content in a photo or video on iPhone.

Schedule an email with Send Later

Touch and hold , then choose when you want to send the email.

To see more options, tap Send Later.

Send an email from a different account

If you have more than one email account, you can specify which account to send email from.

1. In your email draft, tap the Cc/Bcc, From field.
2. Tap the From field, then choose an account.

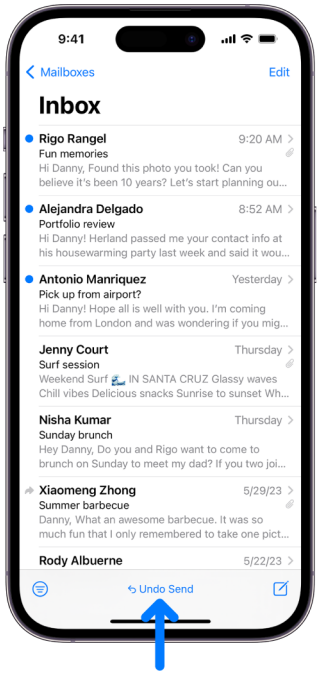
See also

Check your email

Reply to and forward emails

Unsend email with Undo Send in Mail on iPhone

With the Mail app, you can change your mind and unsend an email. You can also set a delay for all emails to give yourself a little more time to unsend them.



Undo a sent email

You have 10 seconds to change your mind after you send an email.

Tap Undo Send at the bottom of the Inbox to pull back the email.

Delay sending emails

You can give yourself a little more time to change your mind and unsend emails by setting a delay.

Go to Settings > Mail, tap Undo Send Delay, then choose a length of time to delay outgoing email messages.

See also

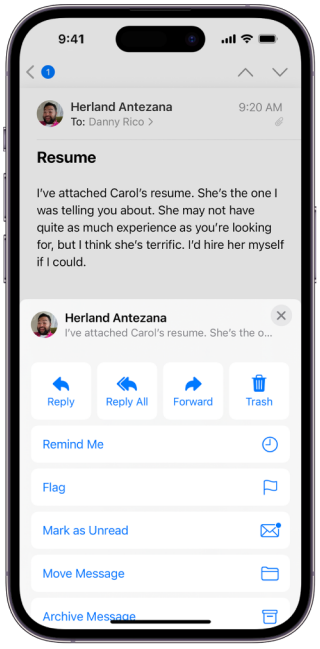
Check your email

Send email

Save a draft in Mail

Reply to and forward emails in Mail on iPhone

With the Mail app, you can reply to or forward emails.



Reply to an email

1. Tap in the email, tap, then do one of the following:
   - *Reply to just the sender:* Tap Reply.
   - *Reply to the sender and the other recipients:* Tap Reply All.
2. Type your response.

Quote some text when you reply to an email

When you reply to an email, you can include text from the sender to clarify what you're responding to.

1. In the sender's email, touch and hold the first word of the text, then drag to the last word. (See Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPhone.)
2. Tap, tap Reply, then type your message.

Note: To turn off the indentation of quoted text, go to Settings > Mail > Increase Quote Level (below Composing), then turn off Increase Quote Level.

Forward an email

You can send an email forward to new recipients.

1. Tap in the email, tap, then tap Forward.

If there are attachments in the original email—like photos or documents—you can decide whether to include them in the forwarded email. Choose Include or Don't Include.

2. Enter the email addresses of the new recipients.
3. Tap in the email, then type your response. The forwarded message appears below.

Follow up on emails

If you send a message and don't receive a response for several days, the email automatically moves back to the top of your inbox to help you remember to follow up.

To turn off follow-up suggestions, go to Settings > Mail.

Set up an automatic reply in Mail

On iCloud.com, you can set up an automatic reply to respond to incoming email messages or automatically forward messages to another inbox. See Set up an automatic reply in Mail on iCloud.com.

See also

Check your email

Send email

Save a draft in Mail

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Unsend email with Undo Send

Next
Save an email draft

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Save a draft in Mail on iPhone

In the Mail app, you can save a draft to finish later, or look at existing emails while you're writing a new one.

Save a draft for later

If you're writing an email and want to finish it later, tap Cancel, then tap Save Draft.

To resume work on an email you saved as a draft, touch and hold, then select a draft.

You can also swipe down on the title bar of an email you're writing to save it for later. When you're ready to return to your email, tap its title at the bottom of the screen.

Tip: If you have a Mac with OS X 10.10 or later, you can also hand off unfinished emails between your iPhone and your Mac. See Hand off tasks between iPhone and your other devices.

Show draft emails from all your accounts

If you have more than one email account, you can show draft emails from all your accounts.

1. Tap in the upper-left corner until your see Mailboxes.
2. Tap Edit at the top of the list.
3. Tap Add Mailbox, then turn on the All Drafts mailbox.

See also

Send email

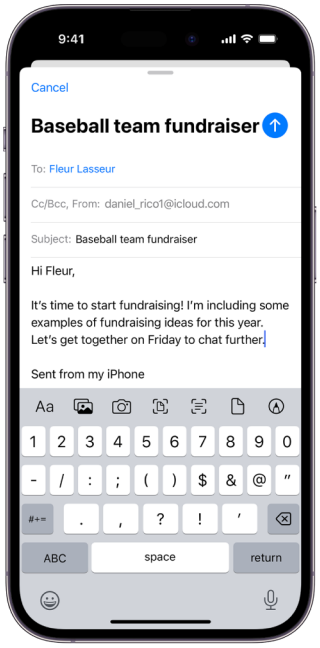
Reply to and forward emails

Add email attachments

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Add email attachments in Mail on iPhone

In the Mail app, you can attach photos, videos, and documents to an email. You can also scan a paper document and send it as a PDF attachment, or draw directly in an email and send the drawing as an attachment. Depending on the file size, the attachment might appear inline with the text in the email or as at the end of the email.



Attach a photo, video, or document to an email

You can attach and send documents, videos, and photos in your emails for recipients to easily download and save.

1. Tap in the email where you want to insert the attachment, then tap above the keyboard.
2. Do one of the following:

   - *Attach a document:* Tap above the keyboard, then locate the document in Files.

     In Files, tap Recent, Shared, or Browse at the bottom of the screen, then tap a file, location, or folder to open it.

   - *Attach a saved photo or video:* Tap above the keyboard, then choose a photo or video. Tap to return to the email.

   - *Take a new photo or video and attach it to the email:* Tap above the keyboard, then take a new photo or video. Tap Use Photo or Use Video to insert it into your email, or tap Retake if you want to reshoot it.

Note: If your file exceeds the maximum size allowed by your email account, follow the onscreen instructions to send it using Mail Drop. See the Apple Support article Mail Drop limits.

Scan and attach a document to an email

You can scan a paper document and send it as a PDF.

1. Tap in the email where you want to insert the scanned document, then tap ‹ above the keyboard.
2. Tap above the keyboard.
3. Position iPhone so that the document page appears on the screen—iPhone automatically captures the page.

   To capture the page manually, tap or press a volume button. To turn the flash on or off, tap .
4. Tap Retake or Keep Scan, scan additional pages, then tap Save when you're done.
5. To make changes to the saved scan, tap it, then do any of the following:

   - *Crop the image:* Tap .
   - *Apply a filter:* Tap .
   - *Rotate the image:* Tap .
   - *Delete the scan:* Tap .

Create and attach a drawing to your email

You can draw in an email to demonstrate ideas that are hard to put into words. Your drawing is added to the email as an attachment for recipients to view and download.

1. Tap in the email where you want to insert a drawing, then tap ‹ above the keyboard.
2. Tap to show the Markup toolbar.
3. Choose a drawing tool and color, then write or draw with your finger.

   See Write and draw in documents with Markup on iPhone.
4. When you're finished, tap Done, then tap Insert Drawing.

To resume work on a drawing, tap the drawing in the email, then tap .

See also

Download email attachments

Annotate email attachments

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Save an email draft

Next
Download email attachments

Support › iPhone User Guide › Add email attachments in Mail on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Download email attachments in Mail on iPhone

In the Mail app, you can download attachments that are sent to you in email or easily search for emails with attachments in your mailboxes.

Download an attachment sent to you

Touch and hold the attachment, then choose Save Image or Save to Files.

If you choose Save Image, you can find it later in the Photos app. If you choose Save to Files, you can find it later in the Files app.

Tip: To open the attachment with another app, tap Share, then choose the app.

Find emails with attachments

If you're having trouble finding an attachment someone sent you, you can filter your emails to show only those with attachments.

1. In a mailbox, tap to turn on filtering.
2. Tap "Filtered by," then turn on Only Mail with Attachments.

Tip: You can also show emails with attachments from all accounts in one mailbox. To set up the attachment mailbox, tap at the top left, tap Edit, then select Attachments. The attachments mailbox appears in the mailboxes list with your other mailboxes.

See also

Add email attachments

Annotate email attachments on iPhone

In the Mail app, you can give feedback on a draft, decorate a photo, and more. You can also draw and write on a photo, video, or PDF attachment, then save it or send it back.

1. In the email, tap the attachment, then tap .
2. Using the drawing tools, draw with your finger.
3. When you're finished, tap Done, then choose to reply to the attachment sender, start a new message, save the annotated attachment to your files, or discard your edited attachment.

See also

Add email attachments

Download email attachments

Write and draw in documents with Markup on iPhone

Set email notifications on iPhone

In the Mail app, you can change your Mail notification settings and choose which mailboxes and email threads to receive notifications from.

Mute email notifications

To reduce interruptions from busy email threads, you can mute notifications from messages in a conversation.

1. Open an email in the conversation.
2. Tap, then tap Mute.

To specify what you want done with emails you muted, go to Settings > Mail > Muted Thread Action, then select an option.

Receive notifications about replies to an email or thread

You can set up mail notifications that let you know when you receive emails in favorite mailboxes or from your VIPs.

- *When reading an email:* Tap, then tap Notify Me.
- *When writing an email:* Tap the Subject field, tap in the Subject field, then tap Notify Me.

To change how notifications appear, go to Settings > Mail > Notifications, then turn on Allow Notifications.

Change your Mail notification settings

1. Go to Settings > Mail > Notifications, then make sure that Allow Notifications is on.
2. Tap Customize Notifications, then tap the email account you want to make changes to.
3. Select the settings you want, like Alerts or Badges. When you turn on Alerts, you have the option to customize your sounds by changing the alert tone or ringtone.

You can set times when you want to allow notifications from the Mail app. See Change notification settings.

See also

Set up a Focus

Flag emails in Mail

Search for email in Mail on iPhone

In the Mail app, you can search for emails using different criteria.

Search for text in an email

1. From a mailbox, swipe down to reveal the search field, tap it, then type the text you're looking for.
2. Choose between searching all mailboxes or the current mailbox above the results list.
3. Tap search, then tap an email in the results list to read it.

Mail searches the address fields, the subject, the email body, documents, and links. The most relevant emails appear in Top Hits above the search suggestions as you type.

Tip: To quickly find travel booking confirmations for flights and hotels, enter the three-letter airport code or the city name.

Search by timeframe

1. Tap the search field of a mailbox list.
2. Enter a timeframe, like "September," then tap to see all emails from that timeframe.

   To narrow the search, tap the search field again, then enter a keyword, like "meeting."

Search by email attributes

1. In an inbox, tap the search field.

   Before you begin typing, you may see suggested recent searches, recent documents, and links listed.
2. Enter your search criteria, then tap one of the listed items, or do any of the following:

   - *Find all flagged emails:* Enter "flag" in the search field, scroll down, then tap Flagged Messages below Other.
   - *Find all unread emails:* Enter "unread" in the search field, scroll down, then tap Unread Messages below Other.
   - *Find all emails with attachments:* Enter "attachment" in the search field, scroll down, then tap Messages with Attachments below Other.

See also

Send email in Mail

Set email notifications

Organize email in mailboxes

Organize email in mailboxes on iPhone

In the Mail app, you can manage your email in mailboxes.

Manage an email with a swipe

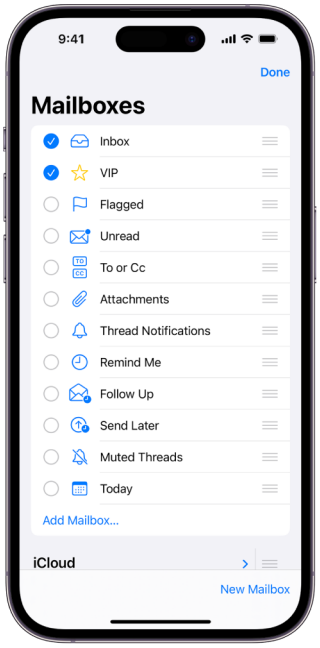
While viewing an email list, you can use a simple swipe to move individual emails to the Trash, mark them as read, and more. Do any of the following:

- To reveal a list of actions, slowly drag an email to the left until the menu appears, then tap an item.
- To quickly use the rightmost action, swipe all the way to the left.
- Swipe right to reveal other actions.

To choose the actions you want to appear in the menus, go to Settings > Mail > Swipe Options (below Message List).

Organize your mail with mailboxes

You can choose which mailboxes to view, reorder your mailboxes, create new ones, or rename or delete mailboxes. (Some mailboxes can't be changed.)



To organize your mailboxes, tap < in the upper-left corner until you see Mailboxes. Tap Edit, then do any of the following:

- *View mailboxes:* Select the checkboxes next to the mailboxes you want to include in the mailboxes list.
- *Reorder mailboxes:* Touch and hold ☰ next to a mailbox until it lifts up, then drag it to the new position.
- *Create a new mailbox:* Tap New Mailbox in the lower-right corner, then follow the onscreen instructions.
- *Rename a mailbox:* Tap the mailbox, then tap the title. Delete the name, then enter a new name.

- *Delete a mailbox:* Tap the mailbox, then tap Delete Mailbox.

Move or mark multiple emails

1. While viewing a list of emails, tap Edit.
2. Select the emails you want to move or mark by tapping their checkboxes.

   Tip: To select multiple emails quickly, swipe down through the checkboxes.
3. Tap Mark, Move, or Trash at the bottom of the screen.

View emails from one account at a time

If you use multiple email accounts with the Mail app, you can use the mailboxes list to view emails from one account at a time.

Tap < in the upper-left corner until you see Mailboxes, then tap a mailbox below the email account you want to access.

Each mailbox listed below a particular email account only displays emails from that email account. For example, to view only emails sent from your iCloud account, tap iCloud, then tap Sent.

Move an email to Junk

To move an email to the Junk folder, open it, tap ↩, then tap Move to Junk.

See also

Flag emails

Filter emails

Use Hide My Email

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Search for email

Next
Flag or block emails

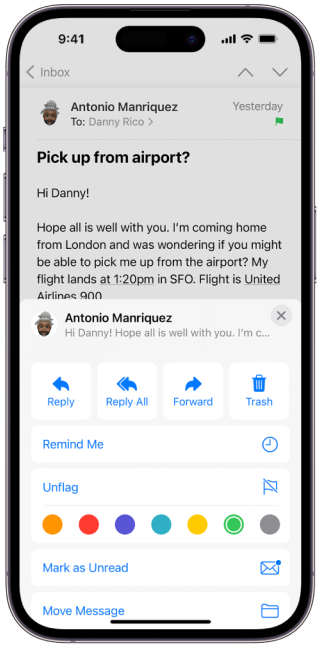
Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Flag or block emails in Mail on iPhone

In the Mail app, you can flag important emails, create flagged mailboxes, and flag emails from VIPs. You can also block emails from specified senders.

Flag an email

You can flag an important email to make it easier to find later. An email you flag remains in your Inbox and also appears in the Flagged mailbox.



1. Open the email, tap, then tap Flag.
2. To choose a color for the flag, tap a colored dot.

   To change or remove a flag, open the email, tap, then select another color, or tap Unflag.

Note: Flags you add to an email appear on that email in Mail on all your Apple devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

Create a Flagged mailbox

You can add a Flagged mailbox so all your flagged emails are easily accessible in one location.

1. Tap in the upper-left corner until you see Mailboxes.
2. Tap Edit, then select Flagged.

Flag emails from your VIPs

Add important people to your VIP list, so their emails appear with a VIP flag and in the VIP mailbox. See Add someone to your contacts or make them a VIP.

Block email from specified senders

You can block an email address to prevent a particular sender from emailing you in the future.

Tap their email address, then select Block this Contact.

See also

Filter emails

Search for email

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Organize email in mailboxes

Next
Filter emails

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Filter emails in Mail on iPhone

In the Mail app, you can use filters to temporarily show only certain messages—the ones that meet all the criteria you select in the filter list. For example, if you select Unread and Only Mail with Attachments, you see only unread emails that have attachments.

You can also specify which email accounts are visible in Mail when a particular Focus is on.

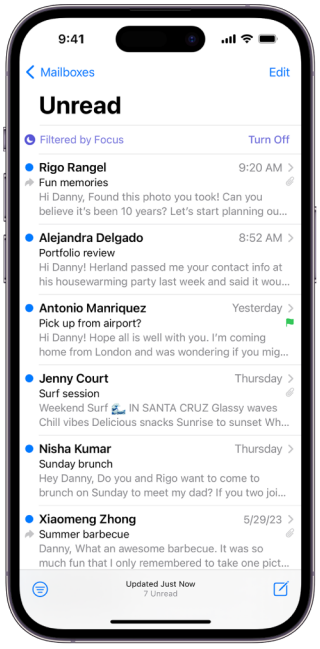
Filter emails

1. Tap in the bottom-left corner of a mailbox list.
2. Tap "Filtered by," then select or turn on the criteria for emails you want to view.

To turn off all filters, tap. To turn off a specific filter, tap "Filtered by," then deselect it.

Match a mail account to a Focus

You can choose which email accounts to receive notifications from when a Focus is on. For example, you can set a filter to show only your work email account and its notifications when your Work Focus is on.



1. Go to Settings > Focus, then tap a Focus.

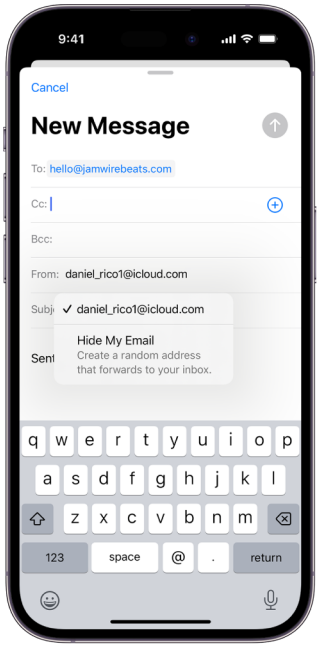
   If you don't see the Focus option you want, click Add Focus. See Set up a Focus.

2. Tap Add Filter below Focus Filters, then tap Mail.
3. Select the accounts you want to see in your inbox during that Focus.

See also

Use Hide My Email in Mail on iPhone

When you subscribe to iCloud+, Hide My Email lets you send and receive email messages that forward to your real email account, to keep your real email address private. You can also generate unique email addresses on demand in the Mail app.



Send an email with Hide My Email

1. Tap .
2. Add a recipient and subject for your email.

   Note: You can only send a message using Hide My Email to one recipient at a time.
3. Tap the From field, tap it again, then tap Hide My Email. A new, unique email address appears in the From field.

Tip: When the recipient replies to an email you sent with Hide My Email, their reply forwards to your real email address. To set a Forward To address, see Create and manage Hide My Email addresses in Settings.

Reply to an email using Hide My Email

When you receive an email sent to one of your unique, random addresses, you can reply using the same address. This allows you to continue the conversation and keep your real email address private. To reply, do the following:

1. Tap , then tap Reply.
2. Type your response.

   You can tap the From field to view the email address the recipient sees.

Manage the addresses generated by Hide My Email

You can create, deactivate, reactivate, and manage the random addresses you create with Hide My Email. See Create and manage Hide My Email addresses in Settings.

See also

Use Mail Privacy Protection

Send email

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Filter emails

Next
Use Mail Privacy Protection

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use Mail Privacy Protection on iPhone

In the Mail app, turn on Mail Privacy Protection to make it harder for senders to learn about your Mail activity. Mail Privacy Protection hides your IP address so senders can't link it to your other online activity or determine your exact location. It also prevents senders from seeing if you've opened the email they sent you.

1. Go to Settings > Mail > Privacy Protection.
2. Turn on Protect Mail Activity.

   Note: When you subscribe to iCloud+, you can also use Hide My Email to generate unique, random email addresses that forward to your personal email account, so you don't have to share your personal email address when filling out forms on the web or signing up for newsletters. See Use Hide My Email.

See also

Block email from specified senders

Change email settings

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Change email settings in Mail on iPhone

In the Mail app, you can customize your email signature and mark addresses outside specific domains.

Customize your email signature

You can customize the email signature that appears automatically at the bottom of every email you send.

1. Go to Settings > Mail, then tap Signature (below Composing).
2. Tap the text field, then edit your signature.

   You can only use text in your Mail signatures.

Tip: If you have more than one email account, tap Per Account to set a different signature for each account.

Mark addresses outside certain domains

When you're addressing an email to a recipient who's not in your organization's domain, you can have the recipient's name appear in red to alert you.

1. Go to Settings > Mail > Mark Addresses (below Composing).
2. Enter the domains that are in your organization—ones that you don't want marked in red.

   You can enter multiple domains separated by commas (for example, "apple.com, example.org").

   The names of recipients in domains outside your organization appear in red, whether you send them an email or receive one from them.

See also

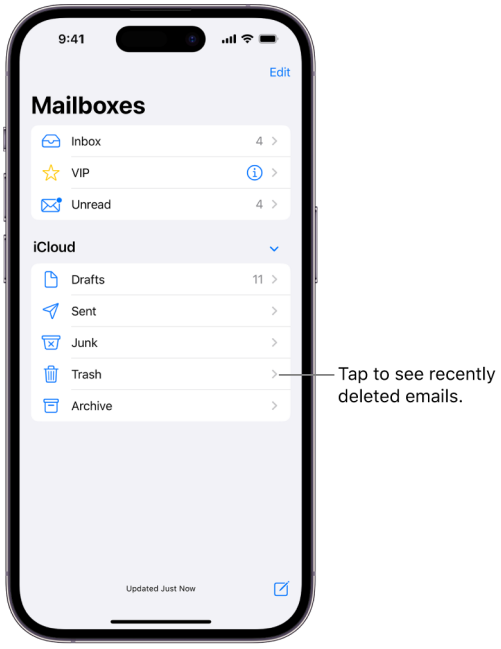
Organize email in mailboxes

Set email notifications

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Delete and recover emails in Mail on iPhone

In the Mail app, you can delete or archive emails you no longer need. If you change your mind, you can recover deleted emails.



Delete emails

There are multiple ways to delete emails. Do any of the following:

- *While viewing an email:* Tap .
- *While viewing the email list:* Swipe an email left, then choose Trash from the menu.

  To delete the email in a single gesture, swipe it all the way to the left.
- *Delete multiple emails at once:* While viewing a list of emails, tap Edit, select the emails you want to delete, then tap Trash.

  To select multiple emails quickly, swipe down through the checkboxes.

To turn off the deletion confirmation, go to Settings > Mail, then turn off Ask Before Deleting (below Messages).

Recover a deleted email

1. Tap in the upper-left corner until you see Mailboxes.
2. Tap, tap the email you want to recover, then tap .
3. Tap Move Message, then choose another mailbox.

Tip: To easily see all deleted emails, you can add a mailbox with deleted emails across all your accounts. Tap in the upper-left corner until you see Mailboxes, tap Edit at the top right, then select the All Trash mailbox.

Archive instead of delete

Instead of deleting emails, you can archive them in the Archive mailbox.

1. Go to Settings > Mail, then tap Accounts.
2. Do one of the following:
   - *If you're using an iCloud email account:* Tap iCloud, tap iCloud again, tap iCloud Mail, then tap Mailbox Behaviors.
   - *If you're using another email account:* Tap an email account, tap your email account, then tap Advanced.
3. Select Archive Mailbox (below Move Discarded Messages Into).

When this option is turned on, to delete an email instead of archiving it, touch and hold , then tap Trash Message.

Decide how long to keep deleted emails

With some email clients, you can set how long deleted emails stay in the Trash mailbox.

1. Go to Settings > Mail, then tap Accounts.
2. Do one of the following:
   - *If you're using an iCloud email account:* Tap iCloud, tap iCloud again, tap iCloud Mail, then tap Mailbox Behaviors.
   - *If you're using another email account:* Tap your email account, tap your address, then tap Advanced.
3. Tap Remove, then select a time interval.

Note: Some email services might override your selection; for example, iCloud doesn't keep deleted emails longer than 30 days, even if you select Never.

See also

Organize email in mailboxes

Change email settings

Add the Mail app back to your Home Screen

Automatically fill in one-time verification codes on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Change email settings

Next
Add a Mail widget to your Home Screen

Support > iPhone User Guide > Delete and recover emails in Mail on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Add a Mail widget to your iPhone Home Screen

Widgets show you current information from your favorite apps at a glance. On iPhone, you can add a Mail widget and customize which mailbox it shows on your Home Screen. Choose between displaying recent unread emails, new emails from your VIPs, or any other mailbox.

To add a Mail widget, see Add, edit, and remove widgets on iPhone.

See also

Add the Mail app back to your Home Screen

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Print an email or attachment in Mail on iPhone

In the Mail app, you can print an email or an attachment.

Print an email

In the email, tap, then tap Print.

Print an attachment or picture

Tap an attachment to view it, tap Share, then choose Print.

See also

Print from iPhone

Add email attachments in Mail

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

View maps on iPhone

In the Maps app, you can find your location on a map and zoom in and out to see the detail you need.

On supported models and in select cities, Maps provides enhanced detail for elevation, roads, trees, buildings, landmarks, and more. (For availability, see Detailed City Experience on the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.)

WARNING: For important information about navigation and avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see Important safety information for iPhone.

Allow Maps to use your precise location

To find your location and provide accurate directions, iPhone must be connected to the internet, and Precise Location must be on.

- *If Maps displays a message that Location Services is off:* Tap the message, tap Turn On in Settings, then turn on Location Services.
- *If Maps displays a message that Precise Location is off:* Tap the message, tap Turn On in Settings, tap Location, then turn on Precise Location.

Cellular data rates may apply (see View or change cellular data settings on iPhone).

Note: To get useful location-related information in Maps, leave Significant Locations turned on in Settings > Privacy & Security > Location Services > System Services. See Find nearby attractions, restaurants, and services in Maps on iPhone.

Show your current location

Tap .

Your position is marked in the middle of the map. The top of the map is north. To show your heading instead of north at the top, tap . To resume showing north, tap or .

See Search for places in Maps on iPhone to navigate from your current location to another.

Choose the right map

The button at the top right of a map indicates if the current map is for exploring , driving , riding transit , or viewing from a satellite . To choose a different map, do the following:

1. Tap the button at the top right.
2. Choose another map type, then tap .

You can get driving, cycling, walking, and transit directions or get traffic and weather info in Maps.

View a 3D map

On a 2D map, do one of the following:

- Drag two fingers up.
- On the Satellite map, tap 3D near the top right.
- On supported models and in select cities, tap 3D near the top right. (See Detailed City Experience on the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.)

On a 3D map, you can do the following:

- *Adjust the angle:* Drag two fingers up or down.
- *See buildings and other small features in 3D:* Zoom in.
- *Return to a 2D map:* Tap 2D near the top right.

You can also take Flyover tours or look around places.

Move, zoom, or rotate a map or 3D globe

- *Move around in a map:* Drag the map.
- *Zoom in or out:* Double-tap (leaving your finger on the screen after the second tap), then drag up to zoom in or drag down to zoom out. Or, pinch open or closed on the map.
- *Rotate the map:* Touch and hold the map with two fingers, then rotate your fingers.

  To show north at the top of the screen after you rotate the map, tap .
- *View the earth with an interactive 3D globe:* Zoom out until the map changes to a globe. Drag the globe to rotate it, or zoom in or out to explore details for mountain ranges, deserts, oceans, and more (supported models).

Add a name to Maps, or report an issue with Maps

1. Tap your picture or initials next to the search field, then tap Reports.

   If neither your picture nor initials appears, tap Cancel next to the search field, or tap the search field, then tap Cancel.

2. Choose one of the options, then provide your information.

Note: Apple is committed to keeping personal information about your location safe and private. Read more about Apple's commitment: go to Settings > Maps, then tap About Apple Maps & Privacy. You can also delete significant locations or delete recent directions.

See also

View a route overview or a list of turns in Maps on iPhone

Get travel directions on iPhone

Share your estimated time of arrival (ETA) in Maps on iPhone

Find your Maps settings on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Print emails

Next
Get travel directions

Support > iPhone User Guide > View maps on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Get travel directions on iPhone

You can get travel directions using the Maps app, the Maps widget, Siri, CarPlay, or other devices. You can also get them in the Maps app on your Mac before you leave.

Important: To get directions, iPhone must be connected to the internet, and Precise Location must be turned on. Cellular data rates may apply (see View or change cellular data settings on iPhone).

Get directions in Maps

1. Open the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Tap a destination (for example, a landmark on a map or a spot that you marked with a pin).
   - Touch and hold anywhere on the map.
   - Tap the search field, begin typing, then tap a result.
3. Tap the directions button on the place card.

   After you tap the directions button, you can choose a different mode of travel, a different starting point, and other options. See Select other route options in Maps on iPhone.
4. Tap Go for the route you want.

   After you tap Go, you can share your ETA, get an overview of your route or a list of directions, add stops to your driving directions, and more.

Use the Maps widget

To get directions to a likely destination and track your ETA during navigation, add the Maps widget to your Home Screen.

See Add, edit, and remove widgets on iPhone.

Use Siri to get directions

You can keep focused on the road by using Siri to get directions. And by listening to turn-by-turn spoken directions, you can follow driving, cycling, and walking directions without even looking at your iPhone.

Siri: Say something like:

- "Get directions to the nearest coffee shop"
- "Find a charging station"
- "Give me directions home"

Learn how to use Siri

Tip: To use "home" or "work" when using Siri or searching in Maps, add your home and work addresses to My Card in Contacts.

Get directions with CarPlay or other devices

In addition to using your iPhone, you can also get directions from the following:

- *Your car:* After you connect your iPhone to CarPlay, you can use CarPlay to get driving directions, estimate your arrival time, and more. See Get turn-by-turn directions with CarPlay.
- *Your Mac:* You can plan a route on your Mac, then follow the driving, walking, transit, or cycling directions on your iPhone. See Plan a route on your Mac in the Maps User Guide.
- *Your Apple Watch:* You can use Apple Watch to get driving, walking, transit, and cycling directions, which you can follow on the watch face and your iPhone. See Get directions on Apple Watch in the Apple Watch User Guide.

Choose your default mode of travel

Maps defaults to your preferred way to travel when providing directions. To change your preference, do the following:

1. Tap your picture or initials at the top right of the search card, then tap Preferences.

If neither your picture nor initials appears, tap Cancel next to the search field, or tap the search field, then tap Cancel.

2. Tap Driving, Walking, Transit, or Cycling.

Use Maps on your Mac to get directions

Before a big trip or a day of cycling, you can plan your route on your Mac and then share the details to your iPhone. You must be signed in with the same Apple ID on both your Mac and your iPhone.

1. In Maps on your Mac, create a route for your trip.

   For information, see Plan a route on your Mac in the Maps User Guide.

2. Choose File > Share > Send to [*your device*].

You can also use Handoff to send directions from iPhone to Mac. See Hand off tasks between iPhone and your other devices.

See also

Get driving directions in Maps on iPhone

Get walking directions in Maps on iPhone

Get cycling directions in Maps on iPhone

Get transit directions in Maps on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

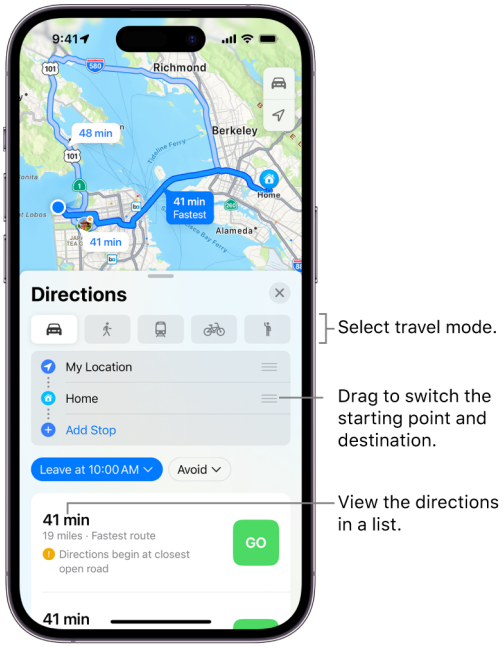
Previous
View maps

Next
Select other route options

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Select other route options in Maps on iPhone

With a route showing in the Maps app, you can select various options before you tap Go.



Change the starting point or destination

- *Switch the starting point and destination:* In the Directions list, touch and hold ☰ for the starting location, then drag it below the destination.
- *Choose a different starting point or destination:* In the Directions list, tap either the start or destination, then use the search field or a recent search result to find and select a different location.

Switch to a different mode of travel

Tap a travel mode (above the starting point of the directions): 🚗, 🚶, 🚆, 🚲, or 🧍. (Ridesharing available in select areas.)

Add a stop to your driving directions

You can add up to 14 stops along your route.

1. Do one of the following:

   - Tap Add Stop (below Directions), use the search field or a recent search result to find and select a place to stop, then tap Add (in the list of search results) or Add Stop (in the place card for a search result).
   - Zoom in and move the map, tap a place (for example, a landmark or business), then tap Add Stop in the place card. Or touch and hold a spot to mark it with a pin, then tap Add Stop in the place card.

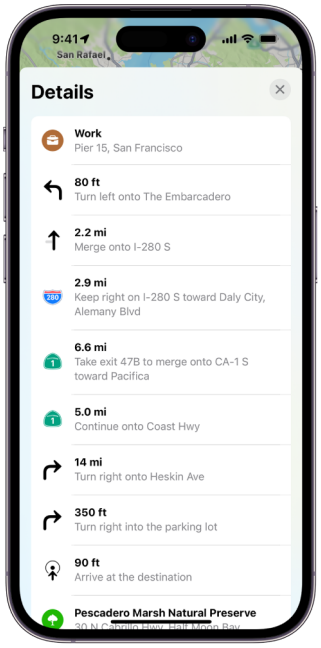
Your selected stop appears as the final destination in the Directions list.

2. Touch and hold ☰ for the stop, then drag it ahead of your final destination.

   To delete the stop, swipe it left.

View a route's directions in a list

1. Tap the route's estimated travel time on the route card so that the route appears at the top of the card.
2. Tap the estimated travel time again.
3. To share the directions, scroll to the bottom of the card, then tap Share.
4. When you're finished, tap Done.



Depending on the mode of travel, you may have other route options, such as choosing an arrival time when driving, avoiding heavy traffic when cycling or walking, or choosing which transit method you prefer.

Note: Directions for multiple stops are available in select countries and regions.

See also

Get directions in Maps

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Get travel directions

Next
Find stops along your route

Support › iPhone User Guide › Select other route options in Maps on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Find stops along your route in Maps on iPhone

While following driving or cycling directions in the Maps app, you can find places to stop along your route.

Add a stop while following a driving route

1. Tap the route card at the bottom of the screen.
2. Tap Add Stop, then use the search field or a recent search result to find and select a place to stop.
3. Tap Add (in the list of search results) or Add Stop (in the place card for a search result).

   Your directions are rerouted to take you to the stop next.
4. While on your route, you can do the following:

   - *Remove the stop:* Tap the route card at the bottom of the screen, then tap next to the stop.
   - *Pause directions when you stop:* Tap Pause Route; when you get back on the road, tap Resume Route.

You can plan a multistop route before you start your trip. See Add a stop to your driving directions.

Add a stop while following a cycling route

1. Tap the route card at the bottom of the screen.
2. Tap Add a Stop, then tap a category.
3. Tap Go for one of the nearby suggestions.
4. To get directions again to your original destination, tap Resume Route at the top of the screen.

Note: Directions for multiple stops are available in select countries and regions.

See also

Get directions in Maps

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

View a route overview or a list of turns in Maps on iPhone

While following driving, cycling, and walking directions in the Maps app, you can get an overview of your route and a list of upcoming turns.

Get an overview of your route

Tap . To return to turn-by-turn directions, tap .

View a list of upcoming directions

Tap the banner at the top of the screen. Scroll down to see more directions. When finished, tap .

See also

Get directions in Maps

View a route's directions in a list

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Change settings for spoken directions in Maps on iPhone

In the Maps app, you can turn off spoken directions, change their volume, and more.

Turn spoken directions on or off

On the map, tap the audio button (for example,), then choose an option.

Button	Description
	All directions are spoken.
	Only driving alerts are spoken.
	No directions are spoken.

Change the volume for spoken directions

Press the volume buttons on the side of iPhone.

Change other settings for spoken directions

Go to Settings > Maps > Spoken Directions, then turn on or off the following options:

- *Directions Pause Spoken Audio:* Turn on this setting to pause spoken audio (like podcasts and audio books) when you receive spoken directions.
- *Directions Wake Device:* Turn on this setting to wake the iPhone display when you receive spoken directions while following driving or cycling directions.
- *Directions on Radio:* On supported cars, turn on this setting to hear spoken directions when you're listening to the radio.

Turn-by-turn spoken directions require iPhone to be connected to the internet, and Precise Location must be turned on. Cellular data rates may apply (see View or change cellular data settings on iPhone).

Note: Turn-by-turn spoken directions are available in select areas. Features vary by country and region. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

See also

Get directions in Maps

Get driving directions in Maps on iPhone

In the Maps app, you can get detailed driving directions to your destination.

When you drive in select cities, you see enhanced details for crosswalks, bike lanes, buildings, and a street-level perspective that helps you find the right lane as you approach complex interchanges (supported models).

Note: Turn-by-turn spoken directions and directions for multiple stops are available in select areas. Features vary by country and region. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Get directions for driving

1. Do one of the following:

   - Say something like "Give me driving directions home." Learn how to use Siri.
   - Tap your destination (such as a search result in Maps or a landmark on a map), or touch and hold anywhere on the map, then tap the directions button.

2. When a suggested route appears, you can do any of the following:

   - *Switch to driving directions:* If driving isn't your default mode of travel or if you're viewing a transit map, tap .
   - *View a route's directions in a list:* On the route card, tap the route's estimated travel time so that the route appears at the top of the card, then tap the estimated travel time again. To share the directions, scroll to the bottom of the card, then tap Share.
   - *Choose a future departure or arrival time:* Tap Now (below the Directions list), select a time or date for departure or arrival, then tap Done. The estimated travel time may change based on predicted traffic.
   - *Add stops along your route:* You can add up to 14 stops on the way to your destination. See Add a stop to your driving directions.
   - *Avoid tolls or highways:* Tap Avoid (below the Directions list), choose your options, then tap Apply.
   - *Choose other route options:* You can switch the starting point and destination, select a different starting point or destination, and more. See Select other route options.

3. Tap Go for the route you want.

As you travel along your route, Maps speaks turn-by-turn directions to your destination.

While following the route, you can share your ETA, find a place to stop, turn off spoken directions, and view a route overview or a list of turns.

When Driving Focus is turned on, or if iPhone locks automatically, Maps remains onscreen and continues to speak directions. Even if you open another app, you continue to receive turn-by-turn directions. (To return to Maps from another app, tap the directions banner at the top of the screen or the navigation indicator 9:41 in the status bar.)

End driving directions before you arrive

Siri: Say something like: "Stop navigating." Learn how to use Siri.

Or without using Siri, tap the card at the bottom of the screen, then tap End Route.

Show or hide the compass or the speed limit

Go to Settings > Maps, tap Driving (below Directions), then turn Compass or Speed Limit on or off.

See also

Stay focused while driving with iPhone

Get directions to your parked car in Maps on iPhone

Get turn-by-turn directions with CarPlay

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Change settings for spoken directions

Next
Get directions to your parked car

Support > iPhone User Guide > Get driving directions in Maps on iPhone

Get directions to your parked car in Maps on iPhone

When you disconnect iPhone from your car's CarPlay or Bluetooth® system and exit your vehicle, a parked car marker is dropped in the Maps app so you can easily find the way back to your car.

Find your parked car

Choose Parked Car below Siri Suggestions on the search card.

If you don't find your parked car in Maps

Make sure your iPhone is paired to CarPlay or Bluetooth in your car, then make sure of the following settings:

- Location Services is turned on in Settings > Privacy & Security.
- Significant Locations is turned on in Settings > Privacy & Security > Location Services > System Services.
- Show Parked Location is turned on in Settings > Maps.

Note: Your parked car isn't marked at a location where you frequently park, like at home or work.

Don't show your parked location

Do one of the following:

- *Remove the Parked Car marker for your car's current location:* Touch and hold the marker, then tap Remove Car.
- *Never show your parked location:* Go to Settings > Maps, then turn off Show Parked Location.

See also

Search for places in Maps on iPhone

Get directions in Maps

Set up electric vehicle routing in Maps on iPhone

The Maps app can help you plan trips that include stops for charging your electric vehicle (EV) and monitor changes in your charge while driving.

Important: EV routing is available on select vehicles and in select areas. Features vary by country and region. Refer to your vehicle's owner guide for compatibility information.

When you get driving directions, Maps can track your vehicle's charge. By analyzing elevation changes along the route and other factors, Maps identifies appropriate charging stations along the way, and, for select charge providers and countries, it provides real-time charging station availability. If you drive until your charge gets too low, you're offered a route to the nearest compatible charging station.

Set up EV routing through CarPlay

For a compatible electric vehicle (EV) that doesn't require an app from its manufacturer, use CarPlay to set up EV routing in the Maps app.

Note: Refer to the owner's guide for your vehicle for compatibility information.

1. Connect your iPhone to CarPlay.
2. Open the Maps app on your iPhone, get driving directions, tap Connect (above the list of routes), then follow the onscreen instructions.

See Intro to CarPlay and iPhone.

Set up EV routing using a vehicle manufacturer's app

For a compatible vehicle that requires an app from its manufacturer, use the app to set up EV routing in Maps.

Note: Refer to the owner's guide for your vehicle for compatibility information.

1. Open the App Store on your iPhone.
2. Search for the manufacturer of your vehicle, then download the app that supports EV routing for it. (See Get apps in the App Store on iPhone.)
3. Open the app, then follow its setup instructions.
4. In the Maps app, tap your picture or initials at the top right of the search card.

   If neither your picture nor initials appears, tap Cancel next to the search field, or tap the search field, then tap Cancel.
5. Tap Vehicles, tap Connect Your Electric Vehicles, then follow the onscreen instructions.

You can designate a preferred charging network for your vehicle. The Maps app provides real-time charging station availability for select charging providers and countries, and you can search by plug type and network.

Choose a different vehicle when you get directions

If you drive multiple vehicles, you can change which vehicle Maps provides routing instructions for.

1. Open the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Get driving directions.
3. Before you tap Go, scroll down in the route card.
4. Choose another electric vehicle, or if you're driving a vehicle that doesn't have an EV routing app on your iPhone, tap Different Car.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Get directions to your parked car

Next
Report traffic incidents

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Report traffic incidents in Maps on iPhone

You can report accidents, hazards, speed checks, and road work in the Maps app, and you can report when they're cleared (features vary by region and country).

Apple evaluates incoming incident reports. When there's a high level of confidence in the reports, incident markers—such as for hazards and accidents—are displayed for other Maps users too.

Note: Speed checks, where supported, aren't displayed with incident markers. Instead, notifications for speed checks appear when you follow turn-by-turn driving directions.

Report traffic incidents

Siri: Say something like:

- "Report an accident"
- "There's something on the road"
- "There's a speed check here"

Learn how to use Siri

Or without using Siri, do the following:

- *When following turn-by-turn driving directions:* Tap the route card at the bottom of the screen, tap Report an Incident, then choose an option.
- *When not following directions:* Tap your picture or initials next to the search field, then tap Reports, tap Report an Incident, then choose an option.

  If neither your picture nor initials appears, tap Cancel next to the search field, or tap the search field, then tap Cancel.

Report on the status of a hazard or accident

A map may display hazard and accident markers. When you're near the incidents in select countries or regions, you can report whether they cleared.

Siri: Say something like: "The hazard is gone" or "Clear the accident." Learn how to use Siri.

Or without using Siri, do the following:

1. Tap the incident marker.
2. Tap Cleared or Still Here.

   (You can't clear reports of speed checks.)

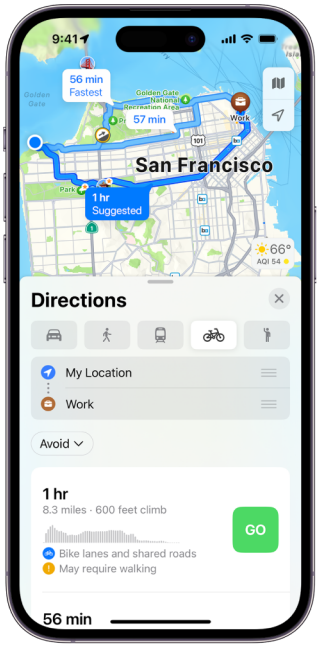
Apple evaluates incoming incident reports. When there's a high level of confidence in reports that an incident has been cleared, its marker is removed from Maps.

See also

Get driving directions in Maps on iPhone

Get cycling directions in Maps on iPhone

In the Maps app, you can get detailed cycling directions. Maps offers routes on bike paths, bike lanes, and bike-friendly roads (when available). You can preview the elevation for your ride, check how busy a road is, and choose a route that best avoids hills.



As you travel along your route, Maps speaks cycling-specific directions for turns and maneuvers. With a handlebar mount for iPhone, you can glance at the directions on the iPhone screen. Or with Apple Watch, you can glance at them on your wrist. (Handlebar mount and Apple Watch sold separately.)

Note: Cycling directions and turn-by-turn spoken directions are available in select areas. Features vary by country and region. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Get directions for cycling

1. Do one of the following:
   - Say something like "Give me cycling directions home." Learn how to use Siri.
   - Tap your destination (such as a search result in Maps or a landmark on a map), or touch and hold anywhere on the map, then tap the directions button.
2. When a suggested route appears, you can do the following:
   - *Switch to cycling directions:* If cycling isn't your default mode of travel or if you're viewing a transit map, tap 🚲.
   - *Avoid hills or busy roads:* Tap Avoid (below the Directions list), choose your options, then tap Apply.
   - *Choose other route options:* You can switch the starting point and destination, select a different starting point or destination, and more. See Select other route options in Maps on iPhone.
3. Tap Go for the route you want.

As you travel along your route, Maps speaks turn-by-turn directions to your destination.

While following the route, you can share your ETA, find a place to stop, turn off spoken directions, and view a route overview or a list of turns.

End cycling directions before you arrive

Siri: Say something like: "Stop navigating." Learn how to use Siri.

Or without using Siri, tap the card at the bottom of the screen, then tap End Route.

See also

View maps on iPhone

Search for places in Maps on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Report traffic incidents

Next
Get walking directions

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Get walking directions in Maps on iPhone

In the Maps app, you can get detailed walking directions to your destination. You can preview the elevation for your walk and choose a route that best avoids hills, stairs, and busy roads.

As you walk along your route, Maps speaks walking-specific directions for turns and maneuvers like walking up stairs.

On supported models and in select areas, you can view immersive walking instructions that use the iPhone camera and augmented reality to show you where to turn.

For thousands of trails in parks across the U.S., you can find out their length, preview elevation information, see photos, and more.

Note: Turn-by-turn spoken directions are available in select areas. Features vary by country and region. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Get directions for walking

1. Open the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Say something like "Give me walking directions home." Learn how to use Siri.
   - Tap your destination (such as a search result in Maps or a landmark on a map), or touch and hold anywhere on the map, then tap the directions button.
3. When a suggested route appears, you can do the following:
   - *Switch to walking directions:* If walking isn't your default mode of travel or if you're viewing a transit map, tap .

- *Avoid hills, busy roads, or stairs:* Tap Avoid (below the Directions list), choose your options, then tap Apply.
- *Choose other route options:* You can switch the starting point and destination, select a different starting point or destination, and more. See Select other route options in Maps on iPhone.

4. Tap Go for the route you want.
5. To view directions in augmented reality, tap , then follow the onscreen instructions. To return to the map, tap .

   Note: To automatically return to the augmented reality screen whenever you raise iPhone after tapping , go to Settings > Maps > Walking, then turn on Raise to View.

While following the route, you can share your ETA, turn off spoken directions, and view a route overview or a list of turns.

To improve the accuracy of determining your location and which way you're facing while walking, iPhone uses the camera and the motion sensors (models with Face ID and iPhone SE 2nd generation and later). This feature may increase battery usage. To turn this feature off, go to Settings > Maps > Walking (below Directions), then turn off Enhanced.

End walking directions before you arrive

Siri: Say something like: "Stop navigating." Learn how to use Siri.

Or without using Siri, tap the card at the bottom of the screen, then tap End Route.

See also

View maps on iPhone

Search for places in Maps on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

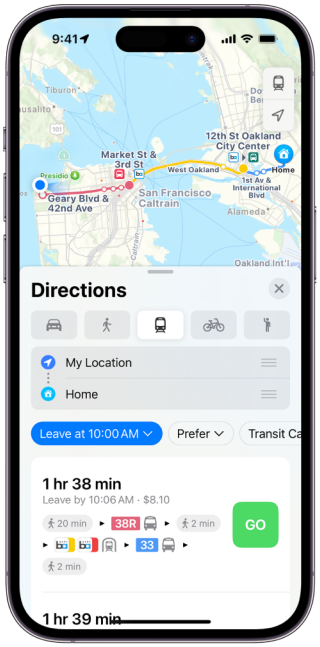
Previous
Get cycling directions

Next
Get transit directions

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Get transit directions in Maps on iPhone

In the Maps app, you can get detailed transit directions to your destination, including departure times, connection information, and fare amounts. You can also add transit cards, see low balances, and replenish your card while using Maps to get directions.



Note: Public transportation information is available in select areas. Features vary by country and region. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Find a transit route

1. Do one of the following:

   - Say something like "Give me transit directions to the Ferry Building." Learn how to use Siri.

     Note: Siri transit directions are available in select areas. Features vary by country and region.

   - Tap your destination (such as a search result in Maps or a landmark on a map), or touch and hold anywhere on the map, then tap the directions button.

2. When a suggested route appears, you can do any of the following:

   - *Switch to transit directions:* If transit isn't your default mode of travel, tap.

   - *Choose a future departure or arrival time:* Tap Now (below the Directions list), select a time or date for departure or arrival, then tap Done.

   - *Select which transit method you prefer:* Tap Prefer (below the Directions list), then select your preferences.

   - *Switch from transit card to cash fares:* In some countries and regions, fares are listed for the suggested routes. To view cash fares (where available), tap Transit Card Fares (below the

Directions list), then tap Cash Fares.

- *Choose other route options:* You can switch the starting point and destination, select a different starting point or destination, and more. See Select other route options in Maps on iPhone.

3. Tap Go for the route you want.

   To get upcoming directions during your trip, scroll down in the route card.

Find nearby transit departures in Favorites

You can get one-tap access to the departure times for stops and stations near you.

- *Add Nearby Transit to Favorites:* In the row of Favorites on the search card, tap +, tap Nearby Transit, then tap Done. (If + doesn't appear, swipe the Favorites row left.)
- *View upcoming departures:* Tap Transit in the row of Favorites on the search card. To see stop details and additional departure times, tap any row on the Nearby Transit card.
- *Choose a line to appear at the top of the Nearby Transit list:* Tap Transit in the row of Favorites on the search card, touch and hold a line, then tap Pin. (To remove the pin, touch and hold the line again, then tap Remove Pin.)

Add a transit station or stop to Favorites

You can get one-tap access to the departure times for and directions to your favorite stop or station.

1. Do one of the following:

   - Use Siri or search to find a transit station or stop.
   - View a transit map, zoom in or move the map until you see the transit stop or station, then tap the transit stop or station.

2. Tap More ••• (on the right side of the place card), then tap Add to Favorites.

See the major transit lines

1. With a map showing, tap the button at the top right.
2. Select Transit, then tap ⊗.

Pay for transit with your iPhone

With many transit agencies, you can use your iPhone to pay for your fare.

- *Use Apple Pay:* With Apple Cash, credit, and debit cards stored in the Wallet app, you can make contactless transit payments with agencies that support Apple Pay.
- *Use transit cards:* With participating transit systems, you can pay for your fare when you store your transit cards in Wallet. See Pay for transit using iPhone.

When you get directions for select transit systems in Maps, you may also get a message that you can use Apple Pay to pay for transit, add a transit card, or add money to your transit card without opening the Wallet app or leaving Maps.

See also

View maps on iPhone

Search for places in Maps on iPhone

Delete recent directions in Maps on iPhone

You can delete directions that you recently viewed in the Maps app.

Scroll down in the search card to Recents, then do one of the following:

- Swipe left on a recent route.
- Tap More directly above the list, then swipe left on a recent route, or to delete a group of routes, tap Clear above the group.

See also

Find or delete recent searches

Delete significant locations on iPhone

Delete a place from your favorites

Delete a pin marker

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Get traffic and weather info in Maps on iPhone

You can view traffic conditions and find out about the weather and air quality in the Maps app.

Find out about traffic conditions

1. With a map showing, tap the button at the top right, choose Driving or Satellite, then tap .

   Yellow indicates slowdowns, and red indicates stop-and-go traffic.

2. To get an incident report, tap an incident marker.

   Markers indicate incidents such as hazards, road closures, road construction, accidents, and more.

You can also report traffic incidents.

Note: Traffic features and information are available in select areas. Features vary by country and region. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Find out about the weather and the air quality

Zoom in on a map until the weather icon appears in the lower-right corner; the icon shows the current conditions for that area. In some regions, the air quality index (AQI) also appears in the lower-right corner.

To get the hourly forecast, touch and hold the weather icon. Tap the hourly forecast to get a multiday forecast in the Weather app.

If you don't want to get the weather information or the air quality index in Maps, go to Settings > Maps, then turn off Weather Conditions or Air Quality Index.

Note: Weather and air quality data are available in select areas. Features vary by country and region.

See also

View maps on iPhone

View weather maps on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Book rides in Maps on iPhone

In the Maps app, you can request a ride with a compatible ridesharing app. If you don't have one installed, Maps shows you apps that are available from the App Store.

Note: Ridesharing is available in select areas. Features vary by country and region.

1. Open the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Search for the place you want to go, then tap the blue button with your travel mode and estimated travel time.
3. Tap (at the right), tap Show Apps, then tap the ridesharing app you want to use.

To estimate wait times and fares with ridesharing apps, Maps may share your location with these apps. To stop sharing your location with a ridesharing app, go to Settings > Maps > Ride Booking, then turn off the app.

See also

Use Check In on iPhone to let your friends know you've arrived

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Share your estimated time of arrival (ETA) in Maps on iPhone

You can share your estimated time of arrival (ETA) while following driving, cycling, and walking directions in the Maps app.

Note: Available in select areas. Features vary by country and region.

1. Open the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Search for the place you want to go.
3. Tap the route card at the bottom of the screen, then tap Share ETA.
4. Choose one or more suggested contacts, or tap Open Contacts to find a contact.

You can also add a location to your Favorites, then choose a contact to automatically receive your ETA whenever you start turn-by-turn navigation to that location.

Siri: Say something like: "Share my ETA." Learn how to use Siri.

To turn off Share ETA, go to Settings > Maps.

To stop sending ETA information, tap Sharing at the bottom of the screen, then tap a name.

People using iOS 13.1, iPadOS 13.1, or later receive a Maps notification with your ETA, and they can track your progress in Maps. People using earlier versions receive the notification through iMessage. People using other mobile devices receive an SMS message.

Note: Standard carrier data and text rates may apply.

You can also use the Messages, Find My, and Contacts apps to share your ETA with others.

When you're near the person you're looking for and both of you have an iPhone 15 model, you can use Find My to get precise directions to each other's location. See Use Precision Finding on iPhone 15 models to meet up with a friend.

See also

Get directions in Maps

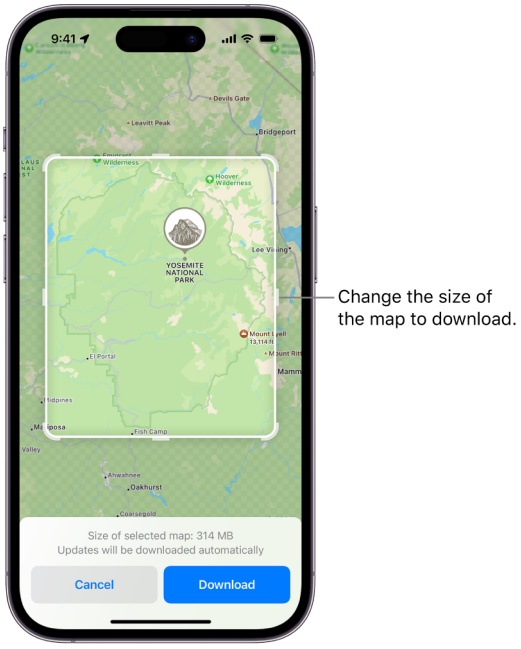
Share your location in Messages on iPhone

Notify a friend when your location changes in Find My on iPhone

Use Check In on iPhone to let your friends know you've arrived

Download offline Maps on iPhone

You can save an area for use in the Maps app so you can refer to it even when your iPhone is offline.



Download maps

1. Open the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your picture or initials next to the search field, then tap Offline Maps.
3. Tap Download New Map, then enter a location in the search field, or tap My Location.
4. Select an area, then tap Download.

   To reduce the size of the map you download, select a smaller area.

Open or edit a map you've downloaded

Any maps you download appear in the downloaded maps list.

You can view information like hours and ratings on place cards, get turn-by-turn directions for driving, walking, cycling, or riding transit, and see your estimated time of arrival even when you can't access Wi-Fi or cellular service.

1. Open the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your picture or initials next to the search field, then tap Offline Maps.
3. Do any of the following:

   - *Open a map:* Tap its name.
   - *Rename a map:* Swipe left on the map, then tap Rename.

- *Change the area covered by a map:* Tap the map's name, then tap Resize on the image of the map.

Change your settings for offline maps

If you've downloaded maps to use offline, you can change your settings—like when to download or update a map—depending on your data storage needs and preferences.

1. Open the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your picture or initials next to the search field, then tap Offline Maps.
3. Scroll down and choose the settings you want to change.

Note: Offline maps are available in select areas. Features vary by country and region.

See also

Search for places in Maps on iPhone

Set up cellular service on iPhone

Read and bookmark the iPhone User Guide

Use Emergency SOS via satellite on your iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Share your ETA

Next
Search for places

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

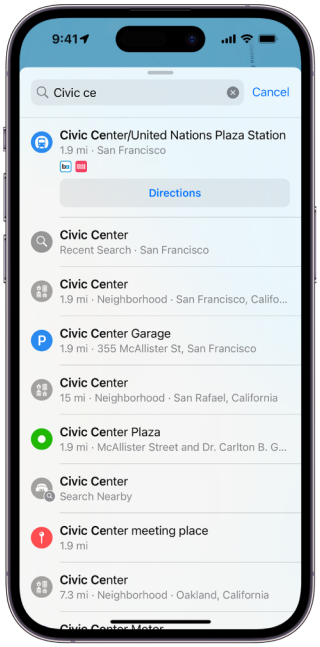
Search for places in Maps on iPhone

You can use the Maps app to search for addresses, landmarks, services, and more.

Search for a place

Siri: Say something like: “Show me the Golden Gate Bridge.” Learn how to use Siri.

Or you can tap the search field (at the top of the search card), then begin typing.



You can search in different ways. For example:

- Intersection (“8th and Market”)
- Area (“Greenwich Village”)
- Landmark (“Guggenheim”)
- Zip code (“60622”)
- Business (“movies,” “restaurants San Francisco CA,” “Apple Inc New York”)

If you get a list of results, scroll the list to see more. To learn about a place or get directions to it, tap a search result.

Display, lengthen, or shorten the search card

If you see a different kind of card instead of the search card, tap at the top right of the card.

To resize the search card, drag the top of the card up or down.

Find or delete recent searches

To get a list of recent search results, scroll down in the search card to Recents.

To delete an item from the list, swipe the item left. Or tap More directly above the list, then do one of the following:

- *Delete a group:* Tap Clear above the group.
- *Delete a single item:* Swipe the item left.

See Delete recent directions in Maps on iPhone, Delete significant locations on iPhone, Delete a place from your favorites, and Delete a pin marker.

See also

Get directions in Maps

Find nearby attractions, restaurants, and services in Maps on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Download offline maps

Next
Find nearby attractions, restaurants, and services

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Find nearby attractions, restaurants, and services in Maps on iPhone

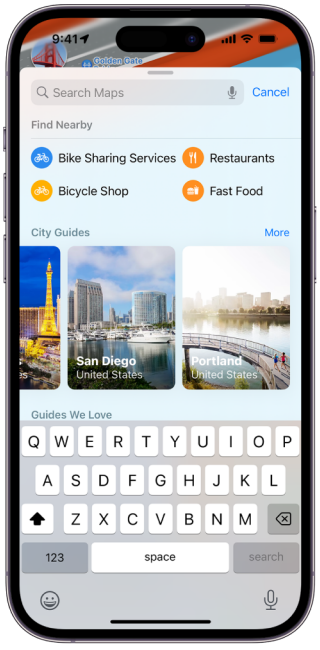
You can use the Maps app to find nearby attractions, services, and more.

Find a nearby attraction, restaurant, or other service

Siri: Say something like: “Find a gas station” or “Find coffee near me.” Learn how to use Siri.

Or without using Siri, tap the search field, then do one of the following:

- Tap a category like Grocery Stores or Restaurants in the Find Nearby section of the search card.
- Enter something like “playgrounds” or “parks” in the search field, then tap the Search Nearby result.



To change the nearby area, drag the map.

Depending on what you look for, you may be able to apply more search criteria, tap a suggestion to get additional information, and more.

Note: Nearby suggestions are available in select areas. Features vary by country and region. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Find your way around an airport or shopping mall

1. Do one of the following:

   - *Zoom in:* Drag the map to show the airport or mall, zoom in, then tap Look Inside on the map (or tap Browse at the bottom of the screen).

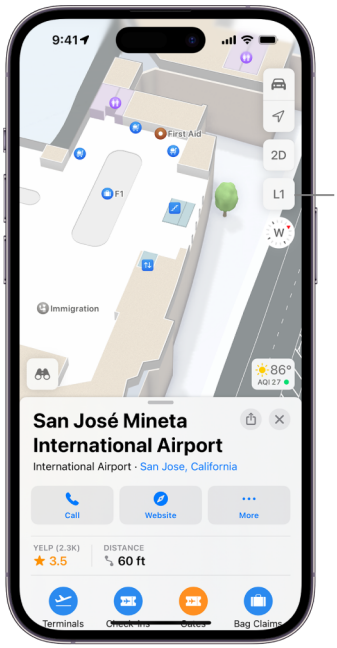
   - *Use search:* Search for the airport or mall in Maps, then tap Indoor Map if it appears in the search result.

- *When you're at the airport or mall:* Open Maps, tap ⌖, then tap Look Inside.

2. To find nearby services, tap a category (like Food, Restrooms, or Gates) on the place card, then scroll down to see all results.

   To get more information about a result, tap it.

3. To get a map of a different floor, tap the button showing the floor level (zoom in if the button doesn't appear).



Note: Indoor maps are available for select airports and shopping malls. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Images of Las Vegas, San Diego, and Portland in City Guides courtesy of Wikipedia.

See also

Get directions in Maps

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Search for places

Next
Get information about places

Support › iPhone User Guide › Find nearby attractions, restaurants, and services in Maps on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Get information about places in Maps on iPhone

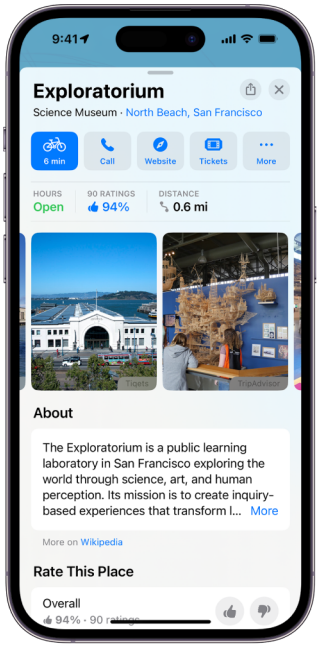
You can find street addresses and other information about places that appear in the Maps app.

Get information about a place

Tap the place (for example, a city or landmark on a map, a spot that you marked with a pin, or a search result in Maps), then do any of the following:

- *Get a route to the location:* Tap the directions button.
- *View more information:* Scroll down in the place card.

  The information might include the street address, a phone number, a webpage link, customer reviews, and more. Many restaurants and other businesses offer App Clips that allow you to order or make a reservation by tapping buttons on their place cards.
- *Close the place card:* Tap .



Note: If you install an app that has a table booking extension, it can also help you make reservations at restaurants. If you want to stop sending the names of restaurants that you view to the extension, go to Settings > Maps > Restaurant Booking, then turn off the app extension.

Save information about a place

You can save a place as one of your favorites, in one of your My Guides, and as one of your contacts.

Tap a place on a map or a search result in Maps, tap More ••• (on the right side of the place card), then choose an option.

Mark places in Maps on iPhone

You can mark places in the Maps app with pins to help you find those places later.

Tip: To mark your location so you can find your way back later, touch and hold the Maps icon on the Home Screen, then choose Mark My Location. See Perform quick actions on iPhone.

Mark an unlabeled location

Touch and hold the map until a pin marker appears, then do any of the following:

- *Refine the location:* Tap Move, then drag the map.
- *Save the location to your favorites:* Tap More ••• (on the right side of the place card), then Tap Add to Favorites. (You can give the location a name in your Favorites.)
- *Save the location to a guide you created:* Tap More •••, tap Add to Guides, choose a guide, enter a name for the location, then tap Save. See Organize places in My Guides in Maps on iPhone.
- *Close the place card:* Tap ×.

Delete a pin marker

1. Tap the marker.
2. Scroll down in the place card, then tap Remove.

You can also touch and hold the marker, then tap Remove Pin.

Share places in Maps on iPhone

In the Maps app, you can share places with others. For example, you can send a message or email to show people where to meet you.

Tip: To share your current location, touch and hold Maps on the Home Screen, then tap Send My Location. See Perform quick actions from the Home Screen and App Library.

1. Tap a place on the map or a search result in Maps.
2. Tap (at the top of the place card), then choose an option.

You can also touch and hold the place, then tap Share Location.

See also

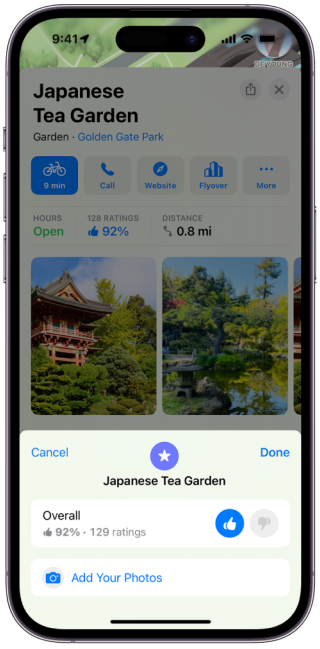
View maps on iPhone

Search for places in Maps on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Rate places in Maps on iPhone

In the Maps app, you can provide ratings and photos of places you visit to help others.



Note: Apple Ratings and Photos is available in select areas. Features vary by country and region.

Provide ratings and photos for a place

1. Tap a place on the map or a search result in Maps.
2. Depending on the location, either scroll down the place card or tap Rate (near the top of the place card), then do any of the following:

   - *Provide ratings:* Tap 👍 or 👎 for the available categories.
   - *Submit photos:* Tap Add Your Photos, then follow the onscreen instructions.

     Before you tap Add to submit your photos, you can credit yourself for the photos you contribute, using either your name or a nickname. Tap Photo Credit, then turn on Show Credit and if desired, enter a nickname for yourself. (The photo credit option you choose applies to all photos you previously submitted and continue to submit.)

   Note: If you don't see ratings categories or the Rate button on the place card, you can't rate the location or add a photo.

To upload your photos to Apple, you must have an Apple ID.

View or edit your ratings and photos

You can view and change your ratings, add and remove photos, add or remove your photo credit, and provide a nickname for your photo credit.

1. Tap your picture or initials at the top right of the search card, then tap Ratings & Photos.

   If neither your picture nor initials appears, tap Cancel next to the search field, or tap the search field, then tap Cancel.

2. Select one of your rated places.
3. To edit your ratings, tap Rate, make your changes, then tap Done.
4. To edit your photos, tap the Your Photos album, then do any of the following:

   - *Submit another photo:* Tap Add.
   - *Remove a photo:* Select the photo, tap ⋯, then tap Delete Your Photo.
   - *Change your photo credit:* Select the photo, tap ⋯, then tap Change Photo Credit. The photo credit option you choose applies to all photos you previously submitted and continue to submit.

Your ratings and photos appear everywhere you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

You may receive suggestions in Maps to submit a rating or photo if you recently visited or took a photo of a point of interest. These suggestions use on-device processing and can't be read by Apple. If you wish to stop receiving these suggestions, go to Settings > Maps, then turn off Show Ratings and Photos Suggestions.

See also

View maps on iPhone

Search for places in Maps on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

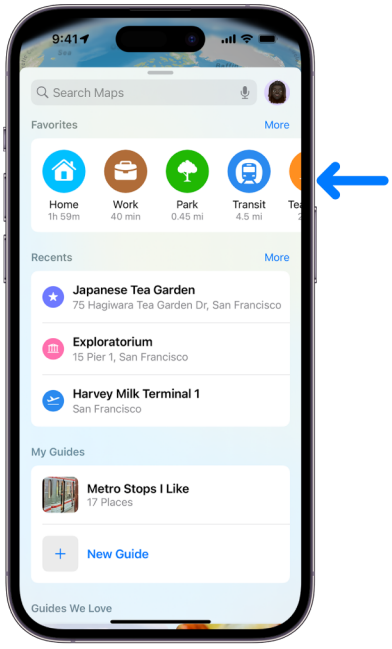
Previous
Share places

Next
Save favorite places

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Save favorite places in Maps on iPhone

In the Maps app, you can save places—such as your home, your work, and where you go for coffee—to your favorites list. You can find your favorites on the search card.



Tip: To make Home and Work automatically appear as favorites, add your work and home addresses to My Card in Contacts.

Add a place to your favorites

1. In the row of Favorites on the search card, tap +.

   If + doesn't appear, swipe the Favorites row left.

2. Do one of the following:

   - Choose a suggestion below the search field.
   - Enter a place or address in the search field, then choose a search result.

You can also tap a place on a map or a search result in Maps, tap More ••• (on the right side of the place card), then tap Add to Favorites.

Find your favorites

A row of Favorites appears near the top of the search card.

To see more, swipe the row left, or tap More above the row.

Edit a favorite

1. On the search card, tap More above the row of favorites.
2. Tap ⓘ next to the favorite.
3. Depending on the location, you may be able to make the following changes:
   - *Rename the favorite:* Double-tap the Label field, then enter a new name.
   - *Change the address:* Tap Contact Card, then make your changes.
   - *Delete the location from your favorites list:* Tap Remove Favorite.
   - *Tell someone your ETA:* Tap Add Person, then choose one or more suggested contacts, or search for a contact. Whenever you start turn-by-turn navigation to this location, the person automatically receives a notification about your estimated time of arrival (ETA). See Share your estimated time of arrival (ETA) in Maps on iPhone.
4. Tap Done.

Refine your home or work location

If Maps isn't precisely locating your home or work place, you can help improve directions to and from your home or work by correcting the location.

1. On the search card, tap More above the row of favorites, then tap ⓘ next to Home or Work.
2. Tap Refine Location on Map, drag the map to move the marker over the correct location, then tap Done.

Delete a place from your favorites

On the search card, tap More above the row of favorites, then swipe the item left.

See also

Find nearby transit departures in Favorites

Add a transit station or stop to Favorites

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Rate places

Next
Explore new places with Guides

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Explore new places with Guides in Maps on iPhone

Editorially curated Guides from trusted brands and partners are available in the Maps app to help you discover great places around the world to eat, shop, and explore. Guides are automatically updated when new places are added, so you always have the latest recommendations.

Explore cities of the world with Guides

Scroll down in the search card, then tap Explore Guides.

You can browse by interest, publisher, city, and more. For example, to browse Guides for locations worldwide, tap at the top of the screen.

View, share, and save a Guide

To open a Guide, tap its cover. To view its contents, scroll down.

You can also do the following:

- *Save the Guide:* Scroll to the top of the Guide, then tap Save.

  It's saved in your collection of My Guides. See Organize places in My Guides.

- *Share the Guide:* Scroll to the top of the Guide, tap Share, then choose an option.
- *Add a destination to My Guides:* Tap, then select one of your guides.
- *Explore related media:* In select Guides, tap links to find relevant music, books, and more.
- *Close the Guide:* Tap.

Tip: Look for App Clips buttons. These allow you to do things like reserve a table directly from a Guide.

Guides are available for many cities worldwide, with more places coming.

Helpful? Yes No

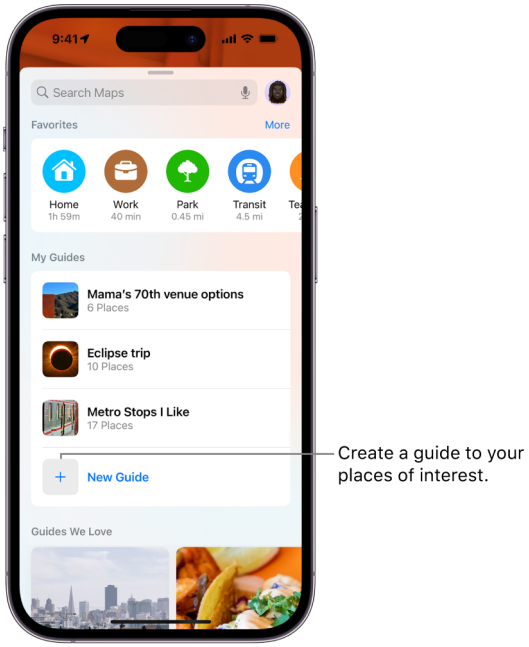
Previous
Save favorite places

Next
Organize places in My Guides

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Organize places in My Guides in Maps on iPhone

In the Maps app, you can organize places into your own guides for easy reference. For example, you can add destinations for an upcoming vacation into a guide named *Summer Road Trip*. You can get to your guides from the search card, and you can share your guides with others.



Create a guide

Scroll down in the search card, tap New Guide, enter a name, then tap Create.

Add a place to My Guides

1. Tap a place on a map or a search result in Maps.
2. Tap More ••• (on the right side of the place card).
3. Tap Add to Guides, then choose one of your guides.

You can also add editorially curated Guides to My Guides. See Explore new places with Guides in Maps on iPhone.

Share a guide

1. Tap your picture or initials at the top right of the search card, then tap Guides.

   If neither your picture nor initials appears, tap Cancel next to the search field, or tap the search field, then tap Cancel.

2. Choose a guide.

3. Tap at the bottom of the guide card, then choose an option.

Edit a guide that you created

For any guide that you create, you can supply a cover image, change the title, and remove places.

1. Tap your picture or initials at the top right of the search card, then tap Guides.

   If neither your picture nor initials appears, tap Cancel next to the search field, or tap the search field, then tap Cancel.

2. Choose a guide that you created.
3. Tap Edit at the bottom of the guide card.
4. Make your changes, then tap at the top right of the guide card.

Remove a guide

1. Tap your picture or initials at the top right of the search card, then tap Guides.

   If neither your picture nor initials appears, tap Cancel next to the search field, or tap the search field, then tap Cancel.

2. Tap Edit at the bottom of the screen.
3. Select a guide, then tap Delete.

See also

View maps on iPhone

Search for places in Maps on iPhone

Save favorite places in Maps on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Explore new places with Guides

Next
Delete significant locations

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Delete significant locations on iPhone

The Maps app uses information about your significant locations from Location Services to provide you with personalized services like predictive traffic routing. Your significant locations are end-to-end encrypted and can't be read by Apple. You can delete your significant locations at any time—for example, to reset predictive traffic routing and similar personalized services.

1. Go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Location Services > System Services, then tap Significant Locations.
2. Tap Clear History.

   This action clears all your significant locations everywhere you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

See also

Delete recent directions in Maps on iPhone

Find or delete recent searches

Delete a place from your favorites

Delete a pin marker

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Look around places in Maps on iPhone

In the Maps app, you can look around some places with 360-degree panoramic views. For example, you can take a virtual walk through the streets or orient yourself to landmarks you can use to navigate when you get to your destination.

1. In select cities, tap near the bottom of a map.
2. To change the view, do any of the following:
   - *Pan:* Drag a finger left or right on the scene.
   - *Move forward:* Tap the scene.
   - *Zoom in or out:* Pinch open or closed.
   - *View another point of interest:* Tap elsewhere on the map, or drag the map.
   - *Switch to or from full-screen view:* Tap or .
   - *View another point of interest:* Switch from full-screen view, then tap elsewhere on the map.
   - *Hide labels in full-screen view:* Swipe up from the place name near the bottom of the screen, then tap Hide Labels .
3. When finished, tap Done.

Look Around is available in select cities. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Take Flyover tours in Maps on iPhone

In the Maps app, you can fly over many of the world's major landmarks and cities. Flyover landmarks are identified by the Flyover button on their place cards.

1. Open the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Search for a city or the name of a landmark, then tap its name in the search results.
3. Tap Flyover on the place card.

   If Flyover doesn't appear on the place card, tap More ••• (on the right side of the place card), then tap Flyover.
4. Do any of the following:
   - *Change viewing direction:* Point or tilt iPhone in the direction you want to view.
   - *Move around:* Drag a finger in any direction. To rotate perspective, touch and hold the screen with one finger, then continue holding it in place while you drag another finger around it.
   - *Watch an aerial 3D tour:* Tap Start Tour or Start City Tour in the card at the bottom of the screen. (If the card doesn't appear, tap anywhere on the screen.)
5. To return to the map, tap ⊗. (Tap anywhere on the screen if ⊗ doesn't appear.)

For a list of sites with Flyover, see the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

See also

View maps on iPhone

Find your Maps settings on iPhone

In the Maps app, you can find your settings for preferences, guides, favorites, and more.

Tap your picture or initials at the top right of the search card, then choose an option.

(If neither your picture nor initials appears next to the search field, tap Cancel next to the field, or tap the search field, then tap Cancel.)

To find more Maps settings, choose Preferences, scroll down, then tap Maps Settings at the bottom of the screen.

See also

Save favorite places in Maps on iPhone

Organize places in My Guides in Maps on iPhone

Rate places in Maps on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Measure dimensions with iPhone

Use the Measure app and your iPhone camera to measure nearby objects. iPhone automatically detects the dimensions of rectangular objects, or you can manually set the start and end points of a measurement.

For best results, use Measure on well-defined objects located 0.5 to 3 meters (2 to 10 feet) from iPhone. (Measurements are approximate.)

Note: Measure works on external displays without mirroring.

Start a measurement

1. Open Measure, then use the iPhone camera to slowly scan nearby objects.
2. Position iPhone so that the object you want to measure appears on the screen.

Note: For your privacy, when you use Measure to take measurements, a green dot appears at the top of the screen to indicate your camera is in use.

Take an automatic rectangle measurement

1. When iPhone detects the edges of a rectangular object, a white box frames the object; tap the white box or ⊕ to see the dimensions.
2. To take a photo of your measurement, tap ◎.

Take a manual measurement

1. Align the dot at the center of the screen with the point where you want to start measuring, then tap ⊕.
2. Slowly pan iPhone to the end point, then tap ⊕ to see the measured length.

3. To take a photo of your measurement, tap ◎.
4. Take another measurement, or tap Clear to start over.

Use edge guides

On supported models, you can easily measure the height and straight edges of furniture, countertops, and other objects using guide lines that appear automatically.

1. Position the dot at the center of the screen along the straight edge of an object until a guide appears.
2. Tap ⊕ where you want to begin measuring.
3. Slowly pan along the guide, then tap ⊕ at the endpoint to see the measured length.
4. To take a photo of your measurement, tap ◎.

Use Ruler view

On supported models you can see more detail in your measurements with Ruler view.

1. After measuring the distance between two points, move iPhone closer to the measurement line until it transforms into a ruler, showing incremental inches and feet.
2. To take a photo of your measurement, tap ◎.

See also

View and save measurements on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Find your Maps settings

Next
View and save measurements

Support › iPhone User Guide › Measure dimensions with iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

View and save measurements on iPhone

In the Measure app on supported models you can save a list of all the measurements you take in a single session, complete with screenshots, so you can easily share and access them whenever you need them.

1. Tap to see a list of your recent measurements.

   Swipe up from the top of the list to see more measurements.

2. To save the measurements, tap Copy, open another app (for example, Notes), tap in a document, then tap Paste.

   Note: Height measurements aren't included in this list. To save a person's height measurement, see Measure a person's height.

See also

Measure a person's height with iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Measure a person's height with iPhone

On supported models, you can use the Measure app to instantly measure a person's height from the floor to the top of their head, hair, or hat. (You can even measure a person's seated height.)

1. Position iPhone so that the person you want to measure appears on the screen from head to toe.

   After a moment, a line appears at the top of the person's head (or hair, or hat), with the height measurement showing just below the line.

2. To take a photo of the measurement, tap .

3. To save the photo, tap the screenshot in the lower-left corner, tap Done, then choose Save to Photos or Save to Files.

   You can easily access and share the height measurement image from Photos or Files on iPhone whenever you want.

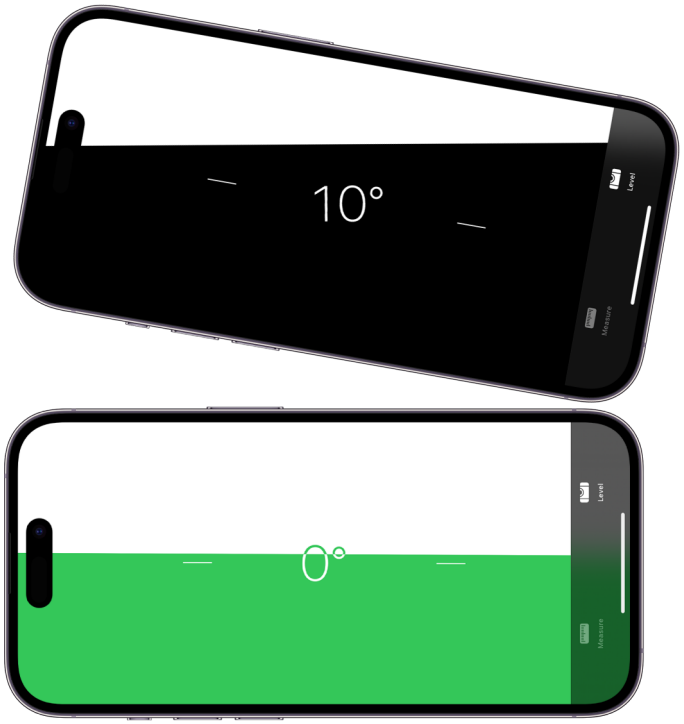
To take the measurement again, turn iPhone away for a moment to reset the height.

See also

View photos and videos in the Photos app on iPhone

Use iPhone as a level

Use your iPhone to determine whether an object near you is level, straight, or flat (measurements are approximate).



1. Open Measure.
2. Tap Level, then hold iPhone against an object, such as a picture frame.
   - *Make an object level:* Rotate the object and iPhone until you see green.
   - *Match the slope:* Tap the screen to capture the slope of the first object. Hold iPhone against another object and rotate them until the screen turns green.

     To reset the level, tap the screen again.

See also

Measure dimensions with iPhone

Table of Contents

Set up Messages on iPhone

In the Messages app, you can send text messages in two different ways:

- Over Wi-Fi or cellular service, using **iMessage** with others who also use iMessage on an iPhone, iPad, or Mac. Your iMessage texts appear in blue bubbles.
- With SMS/MMS messages, which appear in green bubbles.

For more information, see the Apple Support article **What is the difference between iMessage and SMS/MMS?**

Turn on iMessage

1. Go to Settings > Messages, then turn on iMessage.
2. To select which of your phone numbers and email addresses you want to use with iMessage, go to Settings > Messages > Send & Receive, then choose from the available options below "You can receive iMessages to and reply from."

Learn more about **iMessage**.

Share your name and photo

In Messages, you can share your name and photo with others. You decide whether to share it whenever you send or receive a message from someone new.

Your photo can be a Memoji or custom image. When you open Messages for the first time, follow the instructions on your iPhone to choose your name and photo.

You can change your name, photo, or sharing options.

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In the Messages conversation list, do one of the following:
   - Tap Edit in the top-left corner.
   - Tap in the top-right corner.
3. Tap Set Up Name & Photo, turn on Name & Photo Sharing, then change any of the following:
   - *Your picture:* Tap Edit below the circle, then choose an option.
   - *Your name:* Tap Name.
   - *Who can see your name and picture:* Tap Share Automatically, then choose an option.

After you set them up, if you want to change your name, picture, or who can see them, tap Edit > Name & Photo.

Note: Your name and photo may not appear as expected when you send messages to recipients who are using non-Apple devices.

Access your messages on all your Apple devices

When you turn on Messages in iCloud, every message you send and receive on your iPhone is saved in iCloud. And, when you sign in with the same Apple ID on a new device that also has Messages in iCloud turned on, all your conversations show up there automatically.

1. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud, then tap Show All.
2. Turn on Messages (if it's not already turned on).
3. To confirm which other devices will receive any SMS/MMS text messages you get on your iPhone, go to Settings > Messages > Text Message Forwarding.

After you turn on Messages in iCloud, any messages or attachments you delete from iPhone are also deleted from your other Apple devices (iOS 11.4, iPadOS 13, macOS 10.13.5, or later) where Messages in iCloud is turned on. See Set up iCloud for Messages on all your devices in the iCloud User Guide.

Note: Messages in iCloud uses iCloud storage. See Sign in to your iPhone with Apple ID for information about iCloud storage.

Send and receive SMS/MMS text messages on your other devices

You can set up your iPhone so that when you send or receive an SMS message, it appears on your other Apple devices (whether or not you've set up Messages in iCloud).

1. Go to Settings > Messages.
2. Tap Text Message Forwarding, then turn on any devices you want to include.
3. If you're not using two-factor authentication, a six-digit activation code appears on your other device; enter this code on your iPhone, then tap Allow.

See also

Apple Support article: Add or remove your phone number in Messages or FaceTime

Send and reply to messages on iPhone

Change message notifications on iPhone

Manage information sharing with Safety Check on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use the level

Next
About iMessage

Support > iPhone User Guide > Set up Messages on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

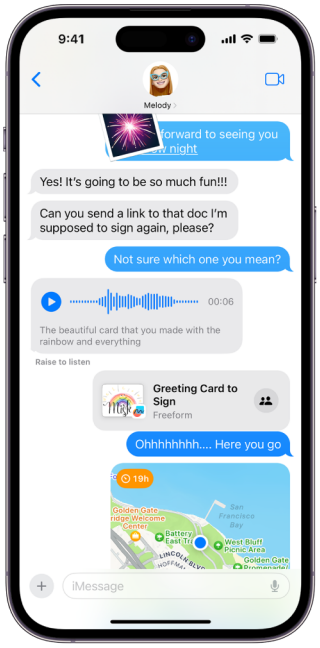
About iMessage on iPhone

iMessage is a secure messaging service that you can use to send and receive messages in the Messages app on your iPhone, iPad, Mac, or Apple Watch.

If someone sends a message to your email address or phone number using iMessage, you receive the message on all your Apple devices that are set up to receive messages sent to that email address or phone number. When you view an iMessage conversation, you see all messages sent from any device, so you can keep in touch with others wherever you are.

For security, messages sent using iMessage are encrypted before they're sent.

You need an Apple ID to use iMessage. If you've made purchases from the iTunes Store or App Store or you've signed in to iCloud, you have an Apple ID.



Some things to know about communicating in iMessage:

- You can send texts over Wi-Fi or cellular service.
- Texts you send and receive using iMessage don't count against your SMS/MMS allowances in your cellular messaging plan, but cellular data rates may apply.
- When you communicate with others who also use iMessage on an Apple device, the texts appear in blue bubbles. (SMS/MMS messages appear in green bubbles.)

  Your message will be sent with iMessage when you see a blue send button; a green send button indicates the message will be sent with SMS/MMS or your cellular service.
- You can see when other people are typing.
- You can use more apps and features, like collaboration, read receipts, Tapbacks, inline replies, undo send, audio messages, message effects, Memoji, junk reporting, group conversation management, and more.
- For security, messages sent using iMessage are encrypted before they're sent.
- When you use iMessage, you can report spam or junk messages to Apple.

See also

Turn on iMessage

Set up Messages on iPhone

Send and reply to messages on iPhone

Apple Support article: What is the difference between iMessage and SMS/MMS?

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Set up Messages

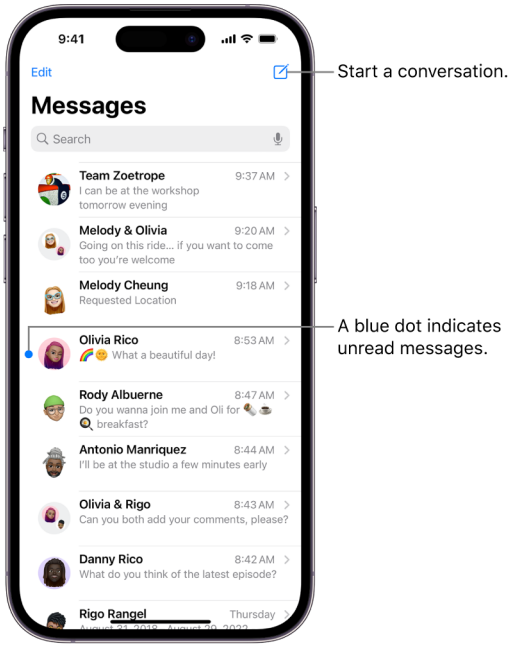
Next
Send and reply to messages

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Send and reply to messages on iPhone

You can use the Messages app to send and reply to text messages, images, and much more. Recipients can add to the conversation at any time, or reply to a specific comment in the thread. You can even use Siri to listen and respond to your messages.

To fully use all the features in the Messages app, make sure you've set up Messages.



Send a text message

You can send a text message to one or more people to start a new conversation.

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Tap at the top of the screen.
3. Enter the phone number, contact name, or Apple ID of each recipient.

   Or tap on the right, then choose **contacts** from the list.

   Note: If your iPhone is set up with **Dual SIM**, you can also tap your number to switch to your other outgoing line.
4. Do any of the following:

   - Tap the text field above the keyboard, then type your message. (Tap or to add **emoji**.)
   - Tap to **dictate text** in the language of your **keyboard**.
   - Tap the to send **photos**, **videos**, **your location**, **payments**, **audio messages**, **stickers**, and more with **iMessage apps**.
5. Tap to send.

   If a message can't be sent, an alert appears. Tap the alert to try sending the message again.

To return to the Messages list from a conversation, tap .

Reply to a message

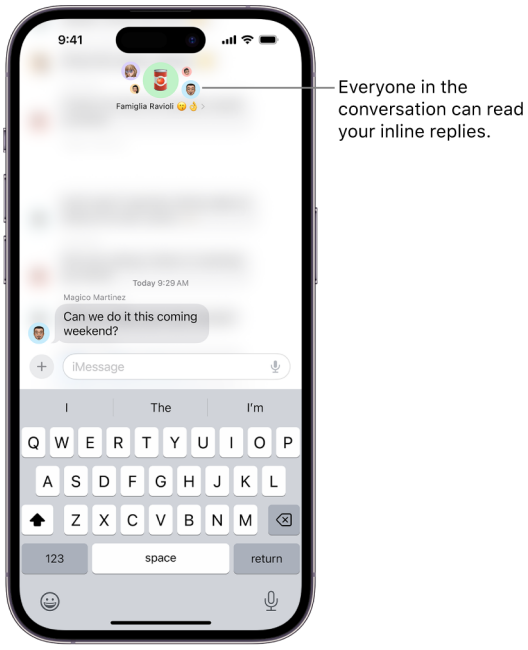
Messages are grouped by conversation in the Messages list. You can reply to any conversation. A dot indicates you haven't yet read one or more messages in that conversation.

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In the Messages list, tap the conversation that you want to participate in.
3. Tap the text field, create your message, then tap to send your message.

Tip: Find out when a message was sent to you. Drag the message bubble to the left to see timestamps for all messages in the conversation.

Reply inline to a specific message

You can respond to a specific message inline. Inline replies quote the message you're responding to. This keeps a busy conversation organized by clarifying which response relates to which message.



1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Swipe right on the message bubble that you want to reply to.
3. Enter your message, then tap .
4. To return to the main conversation, tap the blurred background.

Touch and hold a message to reply with a Tapback symbol, such as a thumbs-up or a heart.

If you're replying in a group conversation and you don't want everyone to read your message, start a new conversation with the person you want to reply to.

Tip: You can automatically let others know when you've seen their messages. Go to Settings > Messages, then turn on Send Read Receipts.

Use Siri to send, read, and reply to messages

You can use Siri to send messages for you, read your incoming texts out loud, and reply to messages. Learn how to use Siri.

Siri: Say something like:

- "Send a message to Mayuri saying, how about tomorrow?"
- "Read my last message from Antonio"
- "Reply, that's great news!"

Siri can send a message right after it has been read back to you. Go to Settings > Siri & Search > Automatically Send Messages, then turn on Automatically Send Messages.

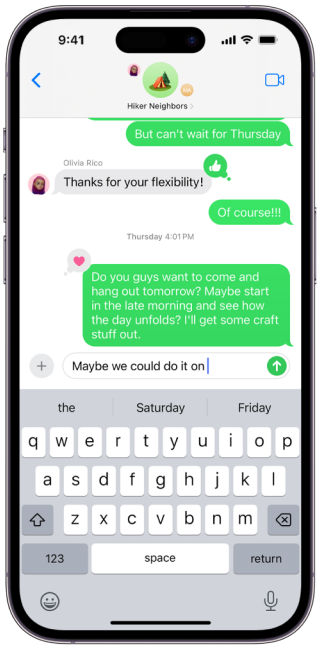
WARNING: Avoid distractions while driving. See Important safety information for iPhone.

Why are some bubbles blue and others green?

If a message can be sent using iMessage, you see a blue Send arrow , and the message appears in a blue bubble.

If you can't use iMessage (which happens, for example, when a recipient isn't using an Apple device), you can use SMS/MMS. Messages sent with SMS/MMS appear in green bubbles.

For more information, see the Apple Support article What is the difference between iMessage and SMS/MMS?



Note: Content may not appear as expected when you send messages to recipients who are using non-Apple devices.

See also

Unsend and edit messages on iPhone

Have a group conversation in Messages on iPhone

Animate messages on iPhone

Collaborate on projects with Messages on iPhone

Send and receive text messages with CarPlay

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
About iMessage

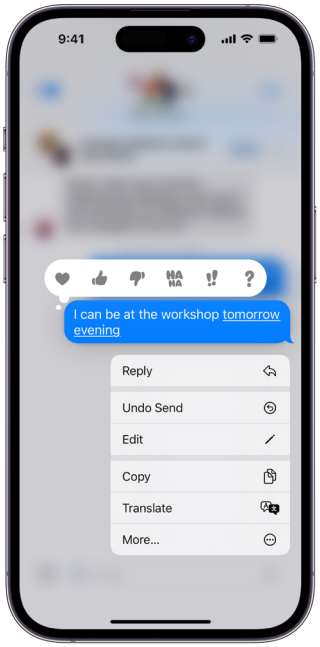
Next
Unsend and edit messages

Support › iPhone User Guide › Send and reply to messages on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Unsend and edit messages on iPhone

In the Messages app, you have 2 minutes to unsend and 15 minutes to edit recent messages, giving you the opportunity to fix a typo or pull back a message that you accidentally sent to the wrong person. Your recipient sees that you unsent a message and your edit history.



Note: To unsend or edit text messages, you must be using iMessage.

Unsend a message

You can undo a recently sent message for up to 2 minutes after sending it.

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the message bubble, then tap Undo Send.

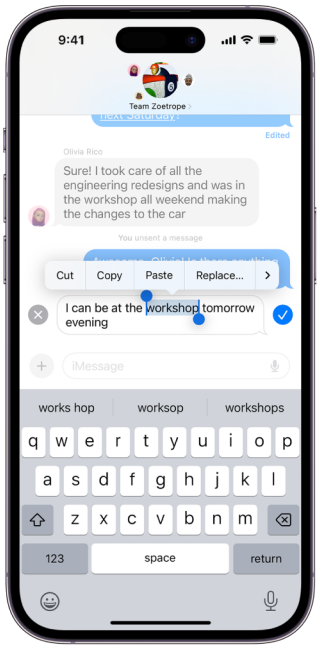
   A note confirming that you unsent the message appears in both conversation transcripts: yours and your recipient's.

Unsending removes the message from your recipient's device.

If you're sending messages to someone who isn't using iOS 16, iPadOS 16, macOS 13, or later, the original message remains in the conversation. When you unsend a message, you're notified that the recipient may still see the original message in the message transcript.

Edit a sent message

You can edit a recently sent message up to five times within 15 minutes of sending it.



1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Select a conversation with the message you want to edit.
3. Touch and hold the message bubble, then tap Edit.
4. Make any changes, then tap to resend with edits or to revert.

   Note: The message is marked as Edited in the conversation transcript.

The message bubble is updated to reflect your edits on your recipient's device, and both of you can tap Edited to see previous versions of your message.

If you're sending messages to someone who isn't using iOS 16, iPadOS 16, macOS 13, or later, they receive follow-up messages with the preface "Edited to" and your new message in quotation marks.

See also

Delete messages and attachments on iPhone

Keep track of messages on iPhone

Block, filter, and report messages on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Send and reply to messages

Next
Keep track of messages

Support > iPhone User Guide > Unsend and edit messages on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Keep track of messages on iPhone

In the Messages app, you can mark messages as unread or pin and unpin conversations to prioritize messages in the Messages list.

Mark messages as unread

When you don't have time to respond, you can mark conversations as unread so you can return to them later.

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In the Messages list, do one of the following:
   - Swipe right on a conversation to mark it as unread.
   - Drag right and tap .

Tip: You can also mark several messages as unread at the same time. Tap Edit or , tap Select Messages, select the conversations you want to mark as unread, then tap Unread in the bottom-left corner.

See a list of your unread messages

To see a list of your unread messages, you must first set up message filtering.

1. Go to Settings > Messages.
2. Scroll down to Message Filtering, then turn on Filter Unknown Senders.
3. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
4. In the Messages conversation list, tap Filters, then tap Unread Messages.

Pin a conversation

You can pin specific conversations to the top of the Messages list so the people you contact most always come first in the list. Pinned conversations appear as larger icons at the top of your messages list.

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold a conversation, then tap Pin.

Unpin a conversation

You can unpin specific conversations so that they don't appear at the top of the Messages list.

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold a pinned conversation, then do one of the following:
   - Drag the message to the bottom of the list, and let go.

- Tap Unpin.

See also

Delete messages and attachments on iPhone

Search in Messages on iPhone

Change message notifications on iPhone

Block, filter, and report messages on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

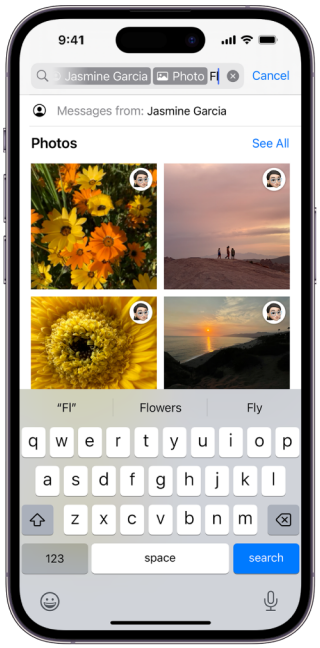
Previous
Unsend and edit messages

Next
Search

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Search in Messages on iPhone

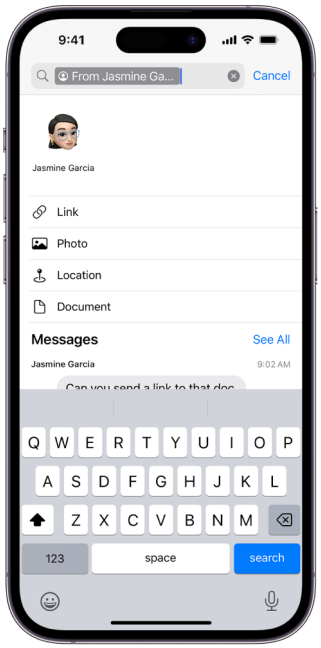
In the Messages app, you can search for messages and attachments using different criteria to narrow your results.



1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the search field above the conversation list. (You may need to swipe down to reveal the search field.)
3. Enter what you're looking for (such as a word or phrase).

   When you enter a search term—such as Photo, Link, Wallet (for passes), or the name of a conversation or person—a filter appears below the search field. Tap it to add it to the search as a filter.

   Tip: To limit your search to one person or conversation, start by typing a person's name, tap "Messages with" or "Messages in", then tap other criteria that appear or add any text you want to find in your conversation.



4. To combine search criteria, add another search term or filter.
5. Tap search, then tap a message in the results list to read it.

The search field also opens suggestions—such as conversations, photos, locations, links, and more. Tap any suggestion to quickly jump to a conversation.

See also

Send and reply to messages on iPhone

Change message notifications on iPhone

Keep track of messages on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Keep track of messages

Next
Forward and share messages

Support > iPhone User Guide > Search in Messages on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Forward and share messages on iPhone

In the Messages app, you can forward one or more messages in a conversation to a different recipient.

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold a message bubble you want to forward, then tap More.
3. Tap to select one or more messages to forward, then tap .
4. Enter recipients, then tap .

Tip: To show the message bubbles and timestamps just as they appear in a conversation, send a screenshot as an attached image instead of forwarding messages.

To share your messages on other devices, see Set up iCloud for Messages on all your devices in the iCloud User Guide.

See also

Send and reply to messages on iPhone

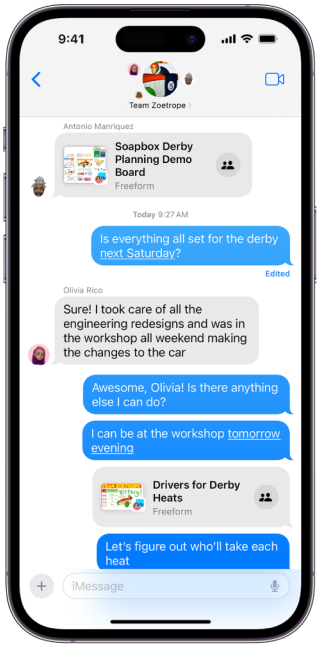
Take and edit photos or videos in Messages on iPhone

Have a group conversation in Messages on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Have a group conversation in Messages on iPhone

Use the Messages app to send a group text message. In a group conversation, you can call people's attention to specific messages and even collaborate on projects.



Send a new message to a group

You can send a message to multiple people to start a group conversation.

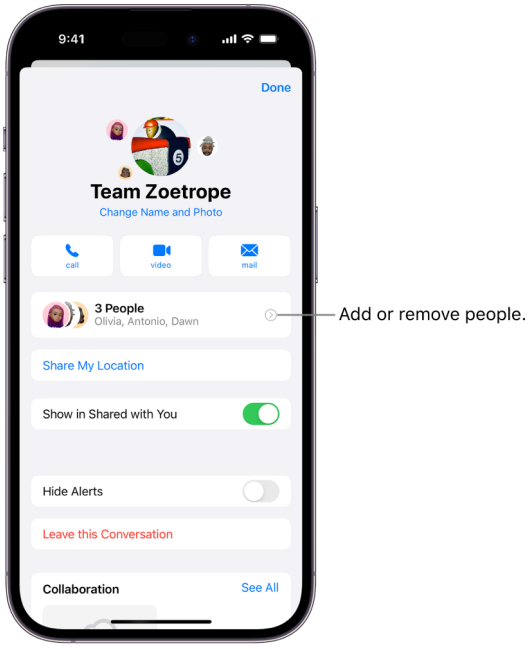
1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Tap at the top of the screen to start a new conversation.
3. Enter the phone number, contact name, or Apple ID of each recipient, or tap , then choose contacts.

   Note: If one or more of your recipients isn't using iMessage, messages appear in green bubbles instead of blue ones.
4. Tap the text field, type your message, then tap .

Add someone to an existing group conversation

If you have at least two other people in a group conversation, you can add additional contacts. Otherwise, you need to start a new group conversation.

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the group conversation you want to add someone to.
3. Tap the group name at the top of the conversation, then tap the button that shows how many people are in the conversation.



4. Tap Add Contact, then enter the new recipient's phone number, contact name, or Apple ID.

   Or tap ⊕, then choose a contact from the list.

Note: If the group includes someone who hasn't turned on iMessage, follow the onscreen instructions to start a new group.

To remove someone from a group conversation, swipe left on their name, then tap Remove.

Leave a group conversation

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the group conversation you want to leave.
3. Tap the group name at the top of the conversation.
4. Scroll down and tap Leave This Conversation or Delete and Block This Conversation.

   Blocked conversations are moved to the Recently Deleted folder, where you can recover them. Learn more about deleting and blocking conversations.

You can also stop notifications for a conversation.

Mention people in a group conversation

You can mention someone by name in a group conversation to call their attention to a specific message, and they'll get a notification. Depending on their settings, the person you mention may be notified even if they have the conversation muted.

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, begin typing a contact's name in the text field.
3. Tap the contact's name when it appears.

   You can also mention a contact in Messages by typing @ followed by the contact's name.

   To set your own notification preferences for when you're mentioned in Messages, go to Settings > Messages > Notify Me.

Change the name and image of a group conversation

You can name a group conversation and choose an image to represent it. Everyone who has turned on iMessage will see the new name and image.

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the name or number at the top of the conversation.
3. Tap Change Name and Photo, then choose an option.

See also

Apple Support article: Send a group text message

Send and reply to messages on iPhone

Collaborate on projects with Messages on iPhone

Share content in Messages on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Forward and share messages

Next
Watch, listen, or play together using SharePlay

Support > iPhone User Guide > Have a group conversation in Messages on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Enjoy content together live using SharePlay on iPhone

In the Messages app, you can get together with friends to watch the latest episode of your favorite show or listen to a new song in real time using SharePlay. On an iPhone that meets the minimum system requirements, you can start a Messages conversation right from a supported app like Apple TV and Music. Shared playback controls keep everyone in sync.

For everyone who has access to the content, the video starts playing at the same time. People who don't have access are asked to get access (through a subscription, a transaction, or a free trial, if available).

1. In a supported app, find a show, movie, song, album, or other content you want to share, then tap the item to see its details.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Tap, then tap SharePlay.
   - Tap ••• at the top right, tap, then tap SharePlay.
   - Tap ••• next to the content, then tap SharePlay.
3. In the To field, enter the contacts you want to share with, then tap Messages.
4. Tap Start or Play to begin using SharePlay.

   To begin viewing or listening, recipients tap the content's title at the top of the Messages conversation, then tap Open.

   Note: If the shared content requires a subscription, the service may ask those who don't have access to subscribe, make a transaction, or sign up for a free trial, if available.

   When you select content to share and tap the Play button, you can also select Play for Everyone (if it appears) to begin it for everyone in the conversation. (Others on the thread may have to tap Join SharePlay to see the video.)

Each person in the conversation can use the playback controls to play, pause, rewind, or fast-forward for everyone, but settings like closed-captioning and volume are controlled separately by each person.

Use Messages when you want no interruptions to the sound of the movie, show, song, or podcast, or switch to FaceTime when you want to see and hear other people as you chat.

Tip: After the video starts playing, you can stream it to Apple TV. See Send what you're watching in SharePlay to Apple TV.

See also

Have a group conversation in Messages on iPhone

Collaborate on projects with Messages on iPhone

Share content in Messages on iPhone

Collaborate on projects with Messages on iPhone

You can send an invitation to collaborate on a project in the Messages app, and everyone in the conversation is added to the document, spreadsheet, or other shared file.

Note: To start collaborating on a project with Messages, you and your recipients must be using **iMessage** with iOS 16, iPadOS 16, macOS 13, or later, and you must first save the content somewhere it can be accessed by others, such as **iCloud Drive**. For iPhone apps, you may need to turn on iCloud to use their collaboration features: go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > Show All (below Apps Using iCloud).

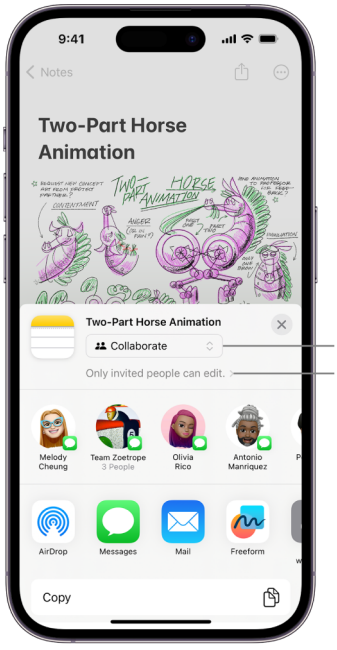
Invite people to collaborate

You can invite people to collaborate on a project from another app, and then discuss your content in Messages. Share files from apps like **Notes**, **Freeform**, **Reminders**, **Safari**, **Keynote**, **Numbers**, **Pages**, and more, as long as you first turn on their collaboration features in iCloud settings and save the content somewhere it can be accessed by others, such as **iCloud Drive**.

The process for inviting someone to collaborate depends on the app. Here's one way you might start a collaboration in a supported app:

1. Select the file you want to share, then tap, or tap Collaborate.
2. Make sure Collaborate (rather than Send Copy) is selected, then tap the group or individual you want to collaborate with. If you don't see the group or person listed, tap.

   The suggested icons may correspond with groups or individuals with active FaceTime calls or recent Messages conversations.
3. A Messages conversation opens with the invitation ready to send. Add a note (optional), then tap.



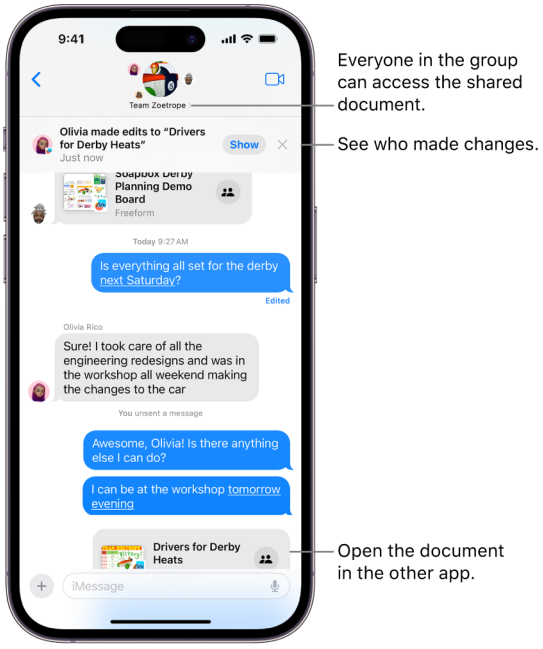
After you invite participants in Messages, you can work on the project in the other app and return to the Messages conversation by tapping the Collaborate button in that app.

When someone edits the file, you see updates at the top of the Messages thread. To return to the shared project and see changes, tap an update.

Note: Your participants may need to accept your invitation or join the shared item before they can interact with it or see any updates.

Collaborate on a project in Messages

After you share your project, you see activity updates at the top of the Messages conversation whenever someone makes an edit.



1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Open the conversation that contains the invitation to the project you've started collaborating on, then do any of the following to return to the project:
   - Tap the file in your conversation to open it.
   - If you see an update at the top of the conversation, tap Show.
   - Tap the name of your participant or group at the top of the screen, scroll to Collaboration, then tap the shared project.

When you make any changes or edits to the project, your participants get updates in the conversation.

Note: If you add a new person to a group conversation, you have to grant them access to the projects you're collaborating on. If they've been added to the group conversation recently, you can tap a notification at the top of screen to add them. Or invite them to collaborate.

Manage the collaboration and group

The group of people in the Messages collaboration and the group collaborating on the file may not match. For example, you may invite people to collaborate on the file outside of Messages. Or you may have two different groups in Messages, each with its own collaboration conversation.

If you share a project with two or more people in a Messages conversation, you can add or remove participants.

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Open the conversation you want to manage, then tap the group icon at the top of the conversation to open details about the group's conversation.

3. Tap the button showing the participants in the conversation, then do any of the following:

   - *Add new participants:* Scroll to the bottom of the list, tap Add Contact ⊕, then add contacts.

     If you started collaborating with just one other person, you must start a new conversation to add people to the collaboration.

     Note: You must add new participants to any files that were shared in the conversation before they joined. As you add participants, a notification appears at the top of the conversation. Tap Show in the notification to review the previously shared files you can add new participants to.

   - *Remove participants from the conversation:* Swipe left on the name of the person you want to remove, then tap Remove.

     Important: The apps where the collaboration happens usually control access to the project. Check participant access in the app itself to remove viewing or editing privileges completely.

When you add someone to a document you've shared with others earlier, you have the option of adding them to an existing conversation or keeping the conversations separate. People added to conversations aren't able to read messages sent before they joined the conversation.

Stop collaborating on a project in Messages

The apps where the collaboration happens usually control access to the project. For example, if you're collaborating on a document in the Pages app, the Pages settings take precedence over the Messages settings. You can, however, unsend or delete the invitation from the conversation just as you would any other message.

Important: When you delete an invitation from a thread, that conversation is no longer associated with the collaboration, but it doesn't remove participants from the file. Check participant access in the app to remove viewing or editing privileges completely.

See also

Share content in Messages on iPhone

Have a group conversation in Messages on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Watch, listen, or play together using SharePlay

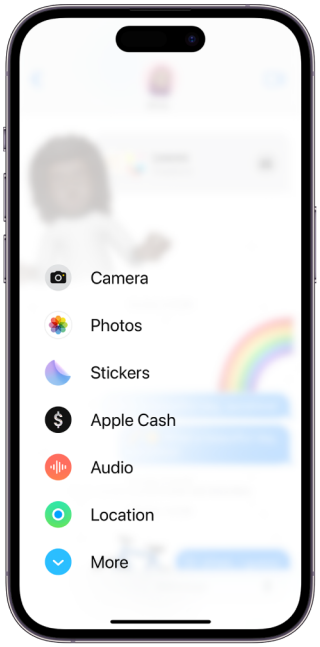
Next
iMessage apps

Support › iPhone User Guide › Collaborate on projects with Messages on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use iMessage apps in Messages on iPhone

You can play a game, record audio messages, share songs, and more—all through iMessage apps—without leaving the Messages app. You can customize the list or expand your options with iMessage apps you find in the App Store.



Rearrange iMessage apps

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation, then tap +.
3. Touch and hold any app icon in the list until it shrinks a little, then drag it to the location where you want it.

   To move the app icon to a different page, drag it to the top or bottom edge of the screen. You might need to wait a moment for the new page to appear.

Add iMessage apps

The Messages app comes with iMessage apps you can use to send photos, videos, audio messages, payments, stickers, and more. If you want to expand your message options, you can download more iMessage apps.

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation, then tap +.
3. Tap Store to open the App Store for iMessage.
4. Tap an app to see more details and reviews, then tap the price to purchase an app or tap Get to download a free app.

   All purchases are made with the payment method associated with your Apple ID.

Take and edit photos or videos in Messages on iPhone

You can capture photos and videos directly in the Messages app. You can also modify the photos and videos before you send them by editing the image, marking it up, or adding effects.

Note: Your carrier may set size limits for attachments; iPhone may compress photo and video attachments when necessary.

Go back to the message.

Customize effects.

Add effects.

Take and edit a new photo or video

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation, tap +, then tap Camera.
3. To change the camera mode, tap Slo-Mo, Video, Photo, Portrait, or Pano. (You may have to swipe left or right.)
4. To add camera effects to your photo or video—such as filters, stickers, labels, and shapes—tap , then tap a button, such as or . Choose an option, then tap to add the effect to your image.
5. Do one of the following:
   - *Take a photo:* Frame the shot in the viewfinder, then tap .
   - *Take a video:* Tap to begin recording and to stop.
6. Tap Done to add the photo or video to the message bubble, add a comment, then tap to send your message. (Or just tap to send the photo or video without adding a message.)

   Note: To send SMS/MMS attachments on models with Dual SIM, you need to set up Dual SIM.

You can also send a photo or video with a Digital Touch effect or record a video message in the FaceTime app.

Note: You can have your (or a family member's) iPhone receive warnings about sensitive content on iPhone and warn you before they're sent or received. See Receive warnings about sensitive content on iPhone or Check for sensitive images on a family member's iPhone.

Add and edit an existing photo

You can edit or mark up an existing image from your photo library before you send it in a Messages conversation.

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Tap +, tap Photos to see recent shots, then tap the images you want to send.

   (Swipe up to search, browse through all photos, or change albums.)
3. To alter the photo, tap the photo in the message bubble, then do any of the following:

   - Tap Markup, write or draw with the Markup tools on the photo, tap Save, then tap Done.
   - Tap Edit, use the photo editing tools to change the photo, then tap Done.
4. Add a comment (optional), then tap to send the photo.

To remove a photo or video from the message bubble before sending it, tap .

Note: Attachments you send over iMessage (such as photos or videos) may be uploaded to Apple and encrypted so that no one but the sender and receiver can access them. To improve performance, your iPhone may automatically upload attachments to Apple while you're composing a message. If your message isn't sent, the attachments are deleted from the server after several days.

See also

Share content in Messages on iPhone

Animate messages on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
iMessage apps

Next
Share photos, links, and more

Support › iPhone User Guide › Take and edit photos or videos in Messages on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Share content in Messages on iPhone

You can share images, links, and other content in the Messages app. When someone shares content with you, you can find it in a Shared with You section in the corresponding apps. Apps that support Shared with You include Photos, Music, News, and more.

Share content with others

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Copy and paste an image or a link into your message.
   - Tap +, tap Photos to browse recent photos and videos, then tap to add.
   - Tap a message attachment, tap, then tap a contact or.

     Tip: When you tap, you can also copy, save, or print your attachment.
4. Add a message (optional), then tap.

From another app (like Podcasts, News, or Music), select the content you want to share, tap •••, tap Share, then choose Messages.

Find all the content someone shared with you

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Open the conversation whose content you want to see.
3. Tap the name of the person or group you're communicating with at the top of a conversation.
4. Scroll down to the Shared with You section.

Note: Content only appears in Shared with You if the person who sent it is in your contacts.

You can find a Shared with You section in Photos, Safari, News, Music, Podcasts, and other supported apps.

Review and save photos or videos

If you receive multiple photos or videos at the same time, they're automatically grouped into a collage (two to three items) or a stack (four or more).

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
   - *Look inside a stack:* Tap to open, then swipe through a stack to view, reply, or interact with each photo or video individually.
   - *Save a photo or video:* Tap next to the photo or stack.

Pin shared content

If someone shares content that's especially interesting, you can quickly pin it in Messages, and it will be elevated in the Shared with You section of supported apps, in Messages search, and in the conversation details (the info you see when you tap the name at the top of the conversation).

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Open the conversation with the content you want to pin.
3. Touch and hold the message bubble containing the link, then tap Pin.

Note: Photos can be saved to your library, but not pinned.

Hide shared content

You can adjust your settings to hide an app's Shared with You section.

1. Go to Settings > Messages > Shared with You.
2. Turn off Automatic Sharing, or turn off Shared with You for a specific app.

Note: You can have your (or a family member's) iPhone receive warnings about sensitive content on iPhone and warn you before they're sent or received. See Receive warnings about sensitive content on iPhone or Check for sensitive images on a family member's iPhone.

See also

Take and edit photos or videos in Messages on iPhone

Enjoy content together live using SharePlay on iPhone

Collaborate on projects with Messages on iPhone

Delete messages and attachments on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Take and edit photos or videos

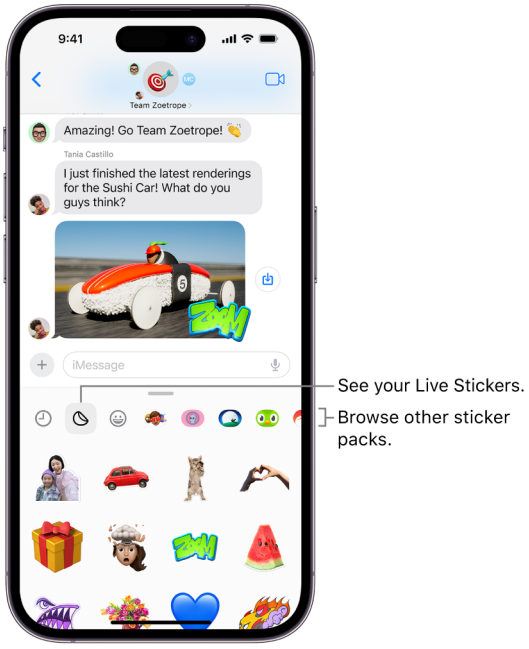
Next
Send stickers

Support > iPhone User Guide > Share content in Messages on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Send stickers in Messages on iPhone

Use the Messages app to express yourself with stickers that match your personality and mood.



Decorate with stickers

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation, tap +, tap Stickers, then add stickers made from any of the following:
   - *Your own photos and videos:* See Create new Live Stickers, below.
   - *Emoji:* Tap ☺.
   - *Memoji:* Tap, then tap a Memoji in the top row to view the stickers in the sticker pack. Each Memoji—even the ones you create—automatically generates a range of poses and expressions.
   - *Other creators:* Download a sticker app from the App Store. See Add iMessage apps.
3. Tap a sticker to add it in a message. Or to place it anywhere on the screen, drag it onto the conversation, and, before you release it, do any of the following:
   - *Adjust the angle:* Rotate a second finger around the finger dragging the sticker.
   - *Adjust the size:* Move a second finger closer to or away from the finger dragging the sticker.

   You can also place the sticker on top of another sticker, or on a photo.

   The sticker is sent automatically when you add it to the message.

Create new Live Stickers

You can create your own Live Stickers to use in the Messages app by lifting subjects from photos and adding effects that help bring the stickers to life.

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation, tap +, then tap Stickers.
3. Tap , then tap +.
4. Tap a photo, then tap Add Sticker.

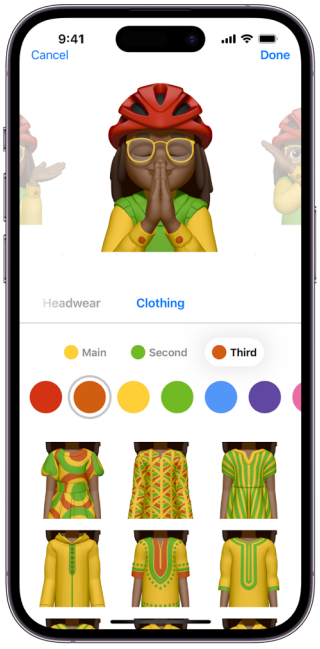
   Tip: To create a Live Sticker that moves, use a Live Photo. See Make stickers from your photos on iPhone.
5. To add an effect, touch and hold the sticker, tap Add Effect, choose an option .

After you create a sticker in Messages, it's added to your keyboard. You can use stickers anywhere you can use Markup and access emoji—including some third-party apps.

You can also download a sticker app from the App Store. See Add iMessage apps.

Create and edit your own Memoji stickers

You can design your own personalized Memoji—choose skin tone, headwear, glasses, and more. You can create multiple Memoji for different moods.



1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation, tap +, tap Stickers, then tap .
3. Tap , then tap New Memoji or Edit.
4. Tap each feature (Skin, Hairstyle, and others to the right) and choose the options you want.
5. Tap Done to save the Memoji to your collection.

You can also send animated Memoji or Memoji recordings that use your voice and mirror your facial expressions.

Tip: Touch and hold a sticker to delete it or find out who sent it, or double-tap the sticker to see any text it covers up.

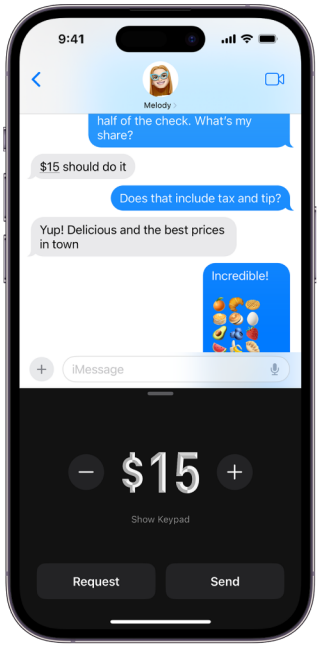
See also

Use iMessage apps in Messages on iPhone

Request, send, and receive payments in Messages on iPhone (U.S. only)

You can use Apple Cash to request, send, and receive money quickly and easily in the Messages app. There's no additional app to download, and you can use the cards you already have in Apple Pay.

When you receive money in Messages, it's added to your Apple Cash card in the Wallet app. See Set up and use Apple Cash in Wallet on iPhone (U.S. only).



Request or send a payment in Messages

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation with someone also using iMessage, then do one of the following:
   - Tap +, tap Apple Cash, then adjust the value, as needed.
   - If the requested amount is mentioned in a sent message, tap it, then tap Send with Apple Cash.
3. Tap Request or Send to send a one-time payment.

   If you want to start paying someone regularly, tap Show Keypad, tap Send Recurring Payment, then follow the onscreen instructions.
4. Tap ↑.

   If you're sending a payment, authorize the payment with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.

   If you don't have sufficient funds in Apple Cash, you can pay the balance using your debit card in Wallet.

To send payments using Wallet, see Send payments with Apple Cash.

Receive a payment

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Open a conversation where you've received a payment.
3. Tap Accept, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Apple Cash and sending and receiving payments through Apple Pay are services provided by Green Dot Bank, member FDIC.

See also

Use iMessage apps in Messages on iPhone

Send payments with Apple Cash

Helpful? Yes No

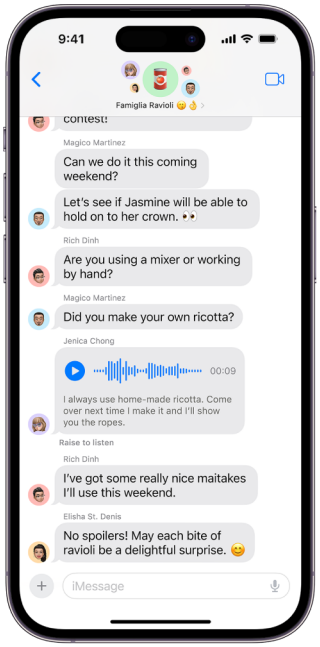
Previous
Send stickers

Next
Send and receive audio messages

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Send and receive audio messages on iPhone

You can use the Messages app to record and send audio messages, along with transcripts of what's said in the message in select languages. Audio messages are automatically deleted to save space on your iPhone, but if you want to save them, you can.



Record and send an audio message

Instead of writing a text message, you can record an audio message that can be played right in the Messages conversation.

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation, tap +, then tap Audio.
3. Begin speaking, tap to pause or end your recording, then do any of the following to your message:
   - *Send it:* Tap .
   - *Listen to review it:* Tap .
   - *Add to the end of it:* Tap + (with the message duration).
   - *Cancel it:* Tap .
4. Tap Keep to save an incoming or outgoing audio message on your iPhone.

   Otherwise, the recording is deleted from the conversation—on your iPhone only—2 minutes after you send or listen to it. Recipients can play your recording any time after they receive it. To save it, they need to tap Keep within 2 minutes after listening to it.

   If you always want to keep audio messages, go to Settings > Messages > Expire (below Audio Messages), then tap Never.

Tip: Send subsequent audio messages more quickly by tapping in the text field above the keyboard.

Audio messages are automatically transcribed in the language of the sender's keyboard. See Add or change keyboards on iPhone to switch to another language.

Listen or reply to a recorded audio message

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Open a conversation with an audio message, then tap to play it.
3. Do any of the following:
   - Slide right and left on the audio message to fast-forward or rewind.
   - Touch and hold or to adjust the playback speed.
4. Tap Keep to save an audio message in the Messages conversation.

   To save the message in the Voice Memos app, touch and hold the audio message, then tap Save to Voice Memos.

Tip: You can raise your iPhone up to your ear to play an audio message. Lower your iPhone and raise it to your ear again to reply to it (after you hear a tone), then tap to send your reply. To turn off this feature (so that you can't listen to and record audio messages in response to moving iPhone), go to Settings > Messages, then turn off Raise to Listen.

To make an audio or video call instead of sending a message, you can switch to FaceTime. In a Messages conversation, tap .

See also

Make a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

Hear iPhone speak the screen, selected text, and typing feedback

Make FaceTime calls on iPhone

Dictate text on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

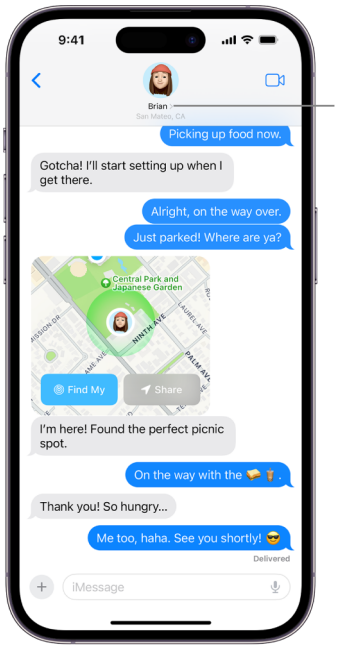
Previous
Request, send, and receive payments

Next
Share your location

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Share your location in Messages on iPhone

In an **iMessage** conversation in the Messages app, you can let others know where you are (or find out where they are) by using location sharing.



Share and update your location automatically

When you share your location in a Messages conversation, it updates in real time right in the conversation. When somebody asks "Where are you?", you can share your location by tapping Current Location (above the keyboard), or do the following:

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation, then do one of the following:
   - Tap +, tap Location, then tap Share.
   - Tap the name of the person you want to share your location with at the top of the conversation, then tap Share Location or Share My Location.
3. Decide how long you want to share your location.

   Tap Indefinitely if you want to share your location until you manually stop sharing it.
4. Tap to send your location. (Or tap if you change your mind.)

You can also use Messages to check in with someone—for example, to notify a family member or friend that you've made it to your destination safely. See Use Check In on iPhone to let your friends know you've arrived.

If both of you are using an iPhone 15 model, you can use Find My to get precise directions to their location once you're near one another. See Use Precision Finding on iPhone 15 models to meet up with a friend.

When you share your location in a group conversation and then add other people to the group, you can reshare your location to let everyone see where you are.

When you want to share your location in an SMS conversation, send a pinned location instead.

Stop sharing your location

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Open a conversation, then do one of the following:
   - Tap the message with your shared location, then tap Stop Sharing My Location.
   - Tap the name of the person you're sharing your location with at the top of the conversation, then tap Stop Sharing or Stop Sharing My Location.

The previous bubbles in the conversation no longer display a map.

Ask for someone else's location

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation with one other person, then do one of the following:
   - Tap +, tap Location, then tap Request.
   - Send a message that ends with the question, "Where are you?", then tap Request Location (above the keyboard).
   - Tap the name of the person whose location you want at the top of the conversation, then tap Request Location.
3. Tap to send your request.

After someone shares their location with you, their location appears below their name at the top of the conversation. Tap their name to see where they are on a map. Tap the map to enlarge it.

When you are near the person you're looking for and both of you are using an iPhone 15 model, you can use Find My to get precise directions to their location. See Use Precision Finding on iPhone 15 models to meet up with a friend.

Send a pinned location

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation, tap +, then tap Location.
3. Tap , drag the map until the pin is in the right place, then tap Send Pin.
4. Tap to send your pin.

Messages uses the Find My app when you share your location. Learn how to share your location and locate someone.

See also

Use iMessage apps in Messages

Use Check In on iPhone to let your friends know you've arrived

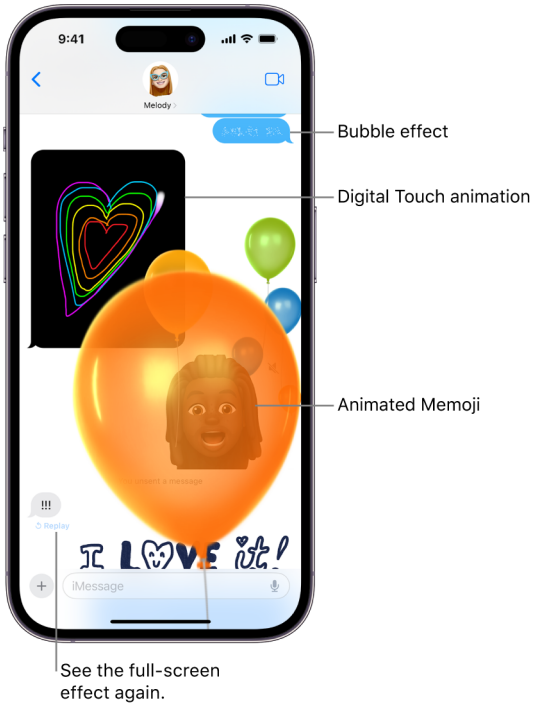
Share your location with a friend

Apple Support article: Find people and share your location with Find My

Animate messages on iPhone

In the Messages app, you can animate a single message with a bubble effect or fill the entire conversation with a full-screen effect (for example, balloons or confetti). You can send Digital Touch messages, and, on supported models, you can send animated Memoji messages that record your voice and mirror your facial expressions.

You need **iMessage** to send and receive message effects.



Animate the message bubble

Use effects to animate the message bubble: you can send a message with Slam or Loud so that it appears to pop out, or use Gentle so it arrives softly. You can even send a personal message with Invisible Ink that remains blurred until the recipient swipes to reveal it.

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In a new or existing conversation, type a message or insert an image or link.
3. Touch and hold , then tap the gray dots to preview different bubble effects.
4. Tap to send the message or to cancel the effect and return to your message.

Animate effects over the full screen

You can send messages with full-screen effects—such as lively lasers, a moving spotlight, or echoing bubbles—that play when your recipient gets your message.

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In a new or existing conversation, type a message or insert a photo or Memoji.

3. Touch and hold , then tap Screen.
4. Swipe left to preview different screen effects.
5. Tap to send the message or to cancel the effect and return to your message.

Messages automatically uses the following screen effects for specific text strings:

- Balloons for “Happy birthday”
- Confetti for “Congratulations”
- Fireworks for “Happy New Year”

Send animated Memoji or Memoji recordings

On supported models, you can send Memoji messages that record your voice and mirror your facial expressions.

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation, tap , tap Memoji, then swipe and tap to choose a Memoji.
3. Tap to record your facial expressions and voice, then tap to stop.

   Tap Replay to review your message.
4. Tap to send your message or to cancel.

You can also take a photo or video of yourself as a Memoji, decorate it with stickers, then send it. Or you can become a Memoji in a FaceTime conversation.

Send a Digital Touch effect

You can send animated sketches, taps, kisses, heartbeats, and more. You can even add a Digital Touch effect to a photo or video.

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Tap , swipe up or tap More, then tap Digital Touch.
3. Do one of the following:

   - *Send an animated gesture:* Tap or touch and hold with one or two fingers. Your gesture is sent automatically when you finish it.

     Touch and hold the color dot to choose a color for the one-finger taps.

     Note: If you have Apple Watch or another sensor that records heartbeat data, Messages may use the recorded data when you touch and hold with two fingers to send a heartbeat.

   - *Send an animated drawing:* Draw with one finger.

     You can change the color, then start drawing again.

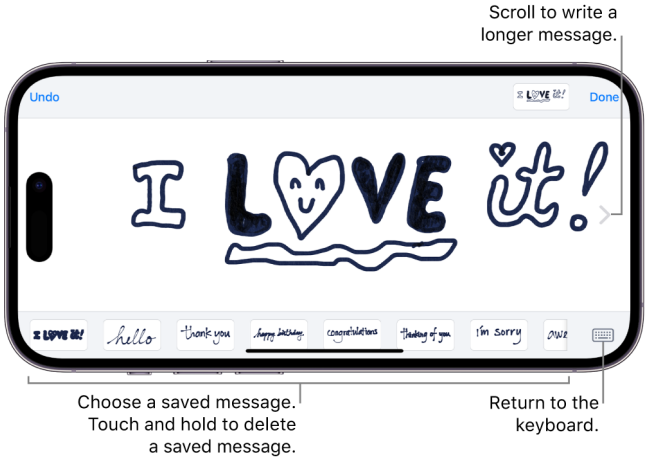
   - *Add an effect to a new image:* Tap , then tap to take a photo or to record a video.
4. Tap to send your drawing or image, or tap to delete it.

Send a handwritten message or doodle

Use your finger to write a message or draw a doodle. Recipients see what you wrote or drew, re-created before their eyes.

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, rotate iPhone to landscape orientation.

3. Tap on the keyboard.
4. Write a message with your finger or choose a saved message at the bottom, then tap Done.
5. Tap to send your message or to cancel.



After you create and send a handwritten message, the message is saved at the bottom of the handwriting screen. To use the saved message again, tap it. To delete the saved message, touch and hold it until the messages jiggle, then tap .

See also

Send and reply to messages on iPhone

Send stickers in Messages on iPhone

Take and edit photos or videos in Messages on iPhone

Use iMessage apps in Messages on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Share your location

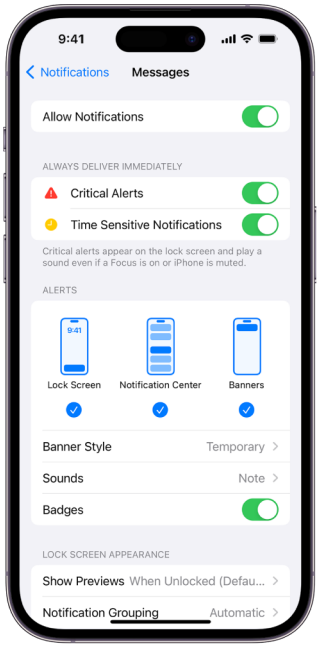
Next
Change notifications

Support › iPhone User Guide › Animate messages on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Change message notifications on iPhone

You can change whether or not you're notified about messages you receive in the Messages app and how they appear or sound. For example, you can turn off message notifications so you aren't distracted by notification sounds when you're in class or other quiet settings, or assign a special sound for certain contacts so you know when you get a message from them.



Pause all notifications

You can temporarily stop notifications for all apps by turning on Do Not Disturb (or another Focus). Your status appears in the Messages app to let people know you're busy.

1. Open Control Center on your iPhone.
2. Tap Focus, then tap Do Not Disturb.

   Note: If you want to allow urgent messages to get through, go to Settings > Notifications > Messages, then turn on Time Sensitive Notifications.

Stop all notifications

You can stop getting notified about activity in the Messages app while continuing to receive messages. You can open Messages to see the texts you missed while notifications were off when you're ready to read them.

1. Go to Settings > Notifications > Messages.
2. Turn off Allow Notifications.

When you want to get notified again, turn on Allow Notifications. If you also want to hear them, make sure the Ring/Silent switch isn't in Silent mode and your volume is audible.

You can also stop notifications from other Apple apps and third-party apps. See Change notification settings on iPhone.

Change the sound and vibration for notifications

You can choose the sound volume for alerts, choose between a tone or sound for alerts, or change the notification vibration pattern (when the phone is silenced).

1. Go to Settings > Sounds & Haptics.
2. Do any of the following:
   - *Make notifications quieter or louder:* Adjust the volume with the slider.
   - *Choose a tone or sound:* Tap Text Tone, then tap a sound below Alert Tones (or tap Tone Store to download one).
   - *Choose a vibration pattern:* Tap Text Tone, tap Vibration, then choose an option (or tap Create New Vibration to make your own).

Tip: The tone and vibration you choose apply to both the Messages app and other apps that have notifications on, such as Mail, Phone, and other Apple or third-party apps. To change them just for the Messages app, go to Settings > Notifications > Messages, then tap Sounds.

You can set how many times to repeat a notification (from Never to 10 Times) in Settings > Notifications > Messages > Customize Notifications.

Mute sounds or vibrations for sent and received messages

When you send a message, a swoosh sound plays by default. When you receive a message, a tone plays. If you don't want to hear these sounds, you can set your text tone to None.

1. Go to Settings > Notifications > Messages.
2. Do either of the following:
   - *Mute sounds:* Tap Sounds, then tap None (below Alert Tones).
   - *Turn off vibrations:* Tap Vibration (near the top), then tap None.

You can also put the Ring/Silent switch in Silent mode.

Note: The None and the Ring/Silent switch setting affect both incoming and outgoing sounds. (You can't mute only one.)

See also Flash the LED for alerts on iPhone.

Change the notification sound for certain people

You can choose a specific sound or vibration pattern to play when you get a message from one specific contact or group.

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a conversation, then tap the number or name of the person or group you're communicating with at the top of the conversation.
3. Tap Info, tap Edit in the top-right corner, then tap Text Tone.

   If you don't see Edit, tap Create New Contact or Add to Existing Contact.
4. Do any of the following:
   - *Specify a tone or sound:* Tap a sound below Alert Tones (or tap Tone Store to download one).

- *Specify a vibration pattern:* Tap Haptics, then choose an option (or tap Create New Vibration to make your own).
- *Mute notifications for this conversation:* Tap None below both Haptics and Alert Tones.

To give this contact the option to override a Focus, so any important messages can get through, turn on Emergency Bypass. You might turn it on for a family member, caretaker, or colleague, for example.

Stop notifications for one conversation

You can stop getting notifications for a conversation while you continue to receive its messages.

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In the Messages list, do one of the following:
   - Swipe left on a conversation, then tap .
   - Touch and hold a conversation, then tap Hide Alerts.

To completely stop getting messages for a conversation, you can leave it or block a specific person or number.

Siri can also announce messages on your iPhone speaker, supported headphones, and when using CarPlay. (To announce on MFi hearing devices, see Announce calls and notifications for specific apps in Accessibility.)

See also

Change iPhone sounds and vibrations

Schedule a Focus to turn on automatically

Delete messages and attachments on iPhone

Block, filter, and report messages on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Animate messages

Next
Block, filter, and report messages

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Block, filter, and report messages on iPhone

In the Messages app, you can reduce the number of unwanted messages you receive when you block individuals, filter unknown senders, and report spam or junk messages.

Note: A known sender is anyone you've added to the Contacts app or sent a message to.

Block messages from a specific person or phone number

When you block a specific contact or phone number, messages from that person or number aren't delivered. (The person sending the message doesn't know that their message was blocked.)

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In a Messages conversation, tap the name or number at the top of the conversation.
3. Tap Info, scroll down, then tap Block this Caller.

Tip: Instead of blocking all the senders in a group conversation, you can simply leave it or stop its notifications.

If you're still having trouble with unwanted messages, see the Apple Support article Block phone numbers, contacts, and emails on your iPhone or iPad.

Filter messages from unknown senders

With iMessage, you can prevent unknown senders from texting you directly. Their messages are filtered to another folder, and you don't get notified about them.

1. Go to Settings > Messages > Message Filtering.
2. Turn on Filter Unknown Senders.

If this setting is on and you're missing a message, check to see if it was filtered to Unknown Senders. Tap Filters in the top-left corner of the conversation list, then tap Unknown Senders.

Note: You can't open any links in a message from an unknown sender until you add the sender to your contacts or reply to the message.

Report spam or junk messages

When you use iMessage, you can report spam or junk messages to Apple, which then receives the sender's information and message. Depending on your carrier and country or region, you can also report spam you receive with SMS and MMS.

A Report Junk link appears at the bottom of any message from any unknown sender.

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:

   - *If you haven't opened the message:* Swipe left on the message, tap, then tap Delete and Report Junk.

- *If you've already opened the message:* Tap Report Junk (at the bottom of the message), then tap Delete and Report Junk.

  Note: You can't report a message after you've replied to it.

- *If you don't see the option to report spam or junk messages you receive with SMS or MMS:* Contact your carrier. See the Apple Support article Wireless carrier support and features for iPhone.

If you accidentally report and delete messages, you can recover them.

Note: Reporting junk or spam doesn't *prevent* the sender from sending messages, but you can block the number to stop receiving them.

To decrease incoming spam or junk messages from new numbers, you can filter them. See Filter messages from unknown senders, above.

Manage your list of blocked contacts

1. Go to Settings > Messages > Blocked Contacts.
2. Do any of the following:

   - *Unblock a number you've blocked:* Swipe left on a number in the list, then tap Unblock.

     Or click Edit, then tap ⛔.

   - *Add additional contacts or numbers directly to the list:* Scroll down, then tap Add New.

To learn about other ways you can report and prevent unwanted messages, see the Apple Support article Recognize and avoid phishing messages, phony support calls, and other scams.

See also

Keep track of messages on iPhone

Change message notifications on iPhone

Delete messages and attachments on iPhone

Manage information sharing with Safety Check on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Change notifications

Next
Delete messages and attachments

Support > iPhone User Guide > Block, filter, and report messages on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Delete messages and attachments on iPhone

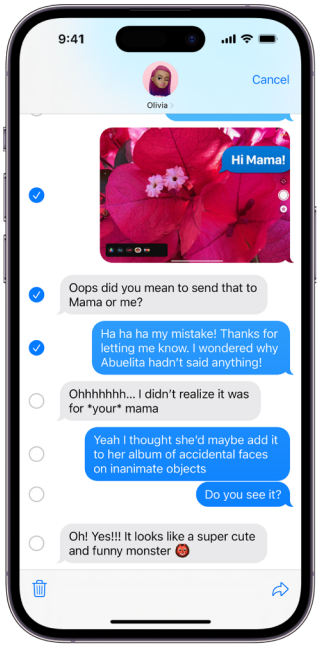
In the Messages app, you can delete messages, attachments, and entire conversations from your iPhone anytime, without affecting what your recipients see.

Tip: Use Undo send to retract (within 2 minutes) a message you sent accidentally, deleting it from both your phone *and* your recipient's phone.

Deleted messages and attachments remain in your Recently Deleted folder for up to 30 days, and you can recover them.

Delete messages and attachments

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Open a conversation, touch and hold a message bubble or attachment, then tap More.
3. Select the messages or attachments you want to delete, then tap .



You can also delete a conversation entirely.

Delete multiple attachments of the same type

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the name of the person or group you're communicating with at the top of a conversation.
3. Scroll down to a category, such as Photos, then tap See All.
4. Tap Select, tap each item you want to delete, then tap Delete.

Delete a conversation

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In the Messages conversation list, swipe left on the conversation, then tap .

To delete multiple conversations, tap Edit in the top-left corner, tap Select Messages, choose the conversations you want to delete, then tap Delete.

Permanently remove recently deleted messages and attachments

Deleted messages and attachments remain in the Recently Deleted folder for 30 days, but you can permanently remove them before that.

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In the Messages conversation list, do one of the following:

   - Tap Edit in the top-left corner, then tap Show Recently Deleted.
   - Tap Filters in the top-left corner, then tap Recently Deleted.

   If you're in a conversation, tap to return to the conversation list.
3. Select the conversations whose messages you want to delete permanently, tap Delete, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Automatically delete old messages

You can delete messages and attachments that are older than 30 days or a year old, on an ongoing basis.

1. Go to Settings > Messages.
2. Scroll down, tap Keep Messages (below Message History), then choose an option.

Important: If you choose an option other than Forever, your conversations (including all attachments) are automatically removed after the specified time period elapses.

If you use Messages in iCloud, deleting a message or conversation on your iPhone deletes it from all your devices where Messages in iCloud is on. See Keep your messages up to date with iCloud in the iCloud User Guide.

Deleting messages only affects your iPhone and other devices. You can't delete messages, attachments, and conversations for anyone else.

See also

Unsend and edit messages on iPhone

Block, filter, and report messages on iPhone

Automatically delete one-time verification codes

Apple Support article: Delete texts and attachments in Messages

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Block, filter, and report messages

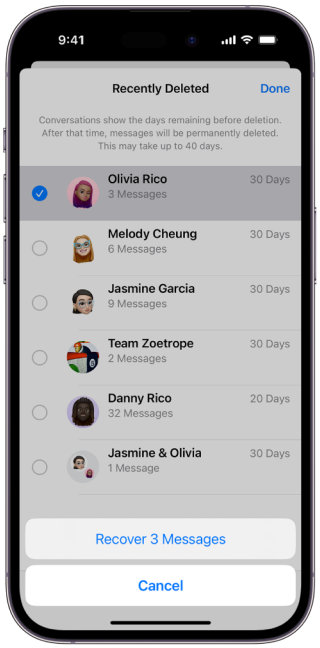
Next
Recover deleted messages

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Recover deleted messages on iPhone

In the Messages app, you can recover deleted messages on your iPhone.

You can restore messages you deleted for up to 30 days.



1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In the Messages conversation list, do one of the following:
   - Tap Edit in the top-left corner, then tap Show Recently Deleted.
   - Tap Filters in the top-left corner, then tap Recently Deleted.

   If you're in a conversation, tap to return to the conversation list.
3. Select the conversations whose messages you want to restore, then tap Recover.
4. Tap Recover Messages.

If you use Messages in iCloud, recovering a message or conversation on your iPhone recovers it on all your devices where Messages in iCloud is on. See Keep your messages up to date with iCloud in the iCloud User Guide.

Deleting and recovering messages changes only your own Messages conversations, not those of your recipients.

Once you recover a blocked conversation whose participants haven't all turned on iMessage, incoming messages will no longer be automatically deleted.

Note: Any message that you delete from a conversation using Undo Send is permanently deleted.

See also

Get music on iPhone

Use the Music app to enjoy music stored on iPhone as well as music streamed over the internet. With an optional Apple Music subscription, you can listen to millions of songs ad-free, stream and download files encoded using lossless compression, listen to thousands of Dolby Atmos tracks, choose favorite artists and be notified when they release new music, and discover and share music together with friends. With an Apple Music Voice subscription, you can use Siri to stream any song, album, playlist, or radio station in the Apple Music catalog.

WARNING: For important information about avoiding hearing loss, see Important safety information.

Get music to play on iPhone in the following ways:

- *Become an Apple Music subscriber:* With a subscription and a Wi-Fi or cellular connection, stream as much music as you like from the Apple Music catalog and your music library. You can download songs, albums, and playlists, and share music with friends. See Subscribe to Apple Music.
- *Become an Apple Music Voice subscriber:* With a subscription and a Wi-Fi or cellular connection, stream as much music as you like from the Apple Music catalog and play the purchased music you've added to your music library. See Listen to music with Apple Music Voice.
- *Participate in Family Sharing:* Purchase an Apple Music family subscription, and everyone in your Family Sharing group can enjoy Apple Music. See Share Apple and App Store subscriptions with family members.
- *Purchase music from the iTunes Store:* See Get music, movies, and TV shows in the iTunes Store.
- *Sync music with Music (macOS 10.15 or later) or iTunes (macOS 10.14 or earlier and Windows PCs) on your computer:* See Sync supported content.
- *Listen to Apple Music radio:* Apple Music radio offers three worldwide radio stations broadcasting live on Apple Music—Apple Music 1, Apple Music Hits, and Apple Music Country. Apple Music radio is available on Apple and Android devices as well as popular web browsers at music.apple.com.

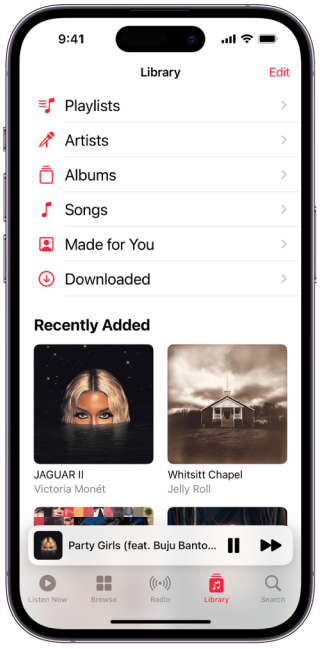
Note: Services and features aren't available in all countries or regions, and features may vary by region. Additional charges may apply when using a cellular connection.

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

View albums, playlists, and more in Music on iPhone

In the Music app, the library includes music you added or downloaded from Apple Music, music and videos you synced to iPhone, TV shows and movies you added from Apple Music, and your iTunes Store purchases.

Note: Not all features are available in the Apple Music Voice Plan. For more information, see the Apple Support article How to use Apple Music Voice.



Browse and play your music

1. In the Music app, tap Library, then tap a category, such as Albums or Songs; tap Downloaded to view only music stored on iPhone.
2. Scroll to browse or swipe down the page and type in the search field to filter your results and find what you're looking for.
3. Tap an item, then tap Play, or tap Shuffle to shuffle an album or playlist.

   You can also touch and hold the album art, then tap Play.

To change the list of categories, tap Edit, then select categories you'd like to add, such as Genres and Compilations. Tap any existing categories to remove them.

Sort your music

1. Tap Library, then tap Playlists, Albums, Songs, TV & Movies, or Music Videos.
2. Tap , then choose a sorting method, such as title, artist, recently added, or recently played.

Play music shared on a nearby computer

If a computer on your network shares music through Home Sharing, you can stream its music to your iPhone.

1. On your iPhone, go to Settings > Music, tap Sign In below Home Sharing, then sign in with your Apple ID.
2. Open the Music app, go to Library > Home Sharing, then choose a shared library.

Remove Apple Music songs from iPhone

Go to Settings > Music, then turn off Sync Library.

The songs are removed from iPhone but remain in iCloud. Music you purchased or synced also remains.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Get music

Next
Play music

Support > iPhone User Guide > View albums, playlists, and more in Music on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Play music on iPhone

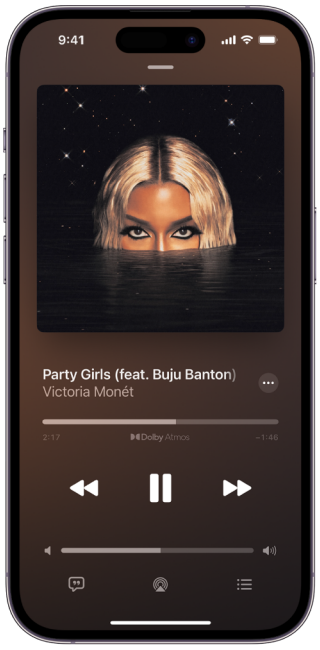
Use Now Playing in the Music app to play, pause, skip, shuffle, and repeat songs. You can also use Now Playing to view album art.

Note: Not all features are available in the Apple Music Voice Plan. For more information, see the Apple Support article How to use Apple Music Voice.

Control playback

Tap the player near the bottom of the screen to show the Now Playing screen, where you can use these controls:

Control	Description
	Play the current song.
	Pause playback.
	Skip to the next song. Touch and hold to fast-forward through the current song.
	Return to the song's beginning. Tap again to play the previous song in an album or playlist. Touch and hold to rewind through the current song.
	Open the queue, then tap to repeat an album or playlist. Double-tap to repeat a single song.
	Open the queue, then tap to play your songs in random order. Tap again to turn off shuffle.
	Hide the Now Playing Screen button.
	Tap for more options.
	Show time-synced lyrics (lyrics not available for all songs).
	Stream music to Bluetooth or AirPlay-enabled devices.
	Show the Queue.



Adjust the volume, scrub through a song, and more

The Now Playing screen contains additional options for controlling and accessing music.

- *Adjust volume:* Drag the volume slider.

  You can also use the volume buttons on the side of iPhone.

- *Scrub to any point in a song:* Drag the playhead.

- *Navigate to the artist, album, or playlist:* Tap the artist name below the song title, then choose to go to the artist, album, or playlist.

Get audio controls from the Lock Screen or when using another app

Open Control Center, then tap the audio card.

Stream music to Bluetooth or AirPlay-enabled devices

1. Tap the player to open Now Playing.
2. Tap , then choose a device.

See Play audio from iPhone on HomePod and other wireless speakers.

Note: You can play the same music on multiple AirPlay 2-enabled devices, such as two or more HomePod speakers. You can also pair two sets of AirPods to one iPhone and enjoy the same song or movie along with a friend. See Play audio on multiple AirPlay 2-enabled devices in this user guide and Share audio with AirPods and Beats in the AirPods User Guide.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
View albums, playlists, and more

Next
Show song credits and lyrics

Show song credits and lyrics on iPhone

In the Music app, you can show song credits and view and share lyrics.

Note: You need an Apple Music subscription to view credits and lyrics and share lyrics.

Show song credits

On iPhone with iOS 17, you can view song credits that include performing artists, composition and lyrics, production and engineering roles, and available audio quality.

1. Open the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Tap the player to open Now Playing, tap, then tap Show Credits.
   - Tap ••• next to a song in a list, then tap Show Credits.

See time-synced lyrics

Time-synced lyrics appear for many songs in Apple Music.

1. Open the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the player to open Now Playing, then tap.

   Tip: Tap a specific lyric—the first line of the chorus, for example—to go to that part of the song.
3. To see all of a song's lyrics, tap, tap Show Credits, then tap View Lyrics.

To hide lyrics, tap.

Share lyrics

You can share up to 150 characters of a song's lyrics if time-synced lyrics are available.

1. Tap the player to open Now Playing.
2. Tap, then tap Share Lyrics.

   You can also touch and hold a lyrics line to open the sharing screen.
3. Tap the first and last lyrics you want to share, then choose a sharing option.

Report a concern

To report a concern about time-synced lyrics, touch and hold a lyrics line, then tap Report a Concern at the bottom of the screen.

Queue up your music on iPhone

Use the queue in the Music app to see a list of upcoming songs, add songs and videos to the queue, and see what you've recently played.

Note: Not all features are available in the Apple Music Voice Plan. For more information, see the Apple Support article How to use Apple Music Voice.

Use the queue

1. Tap the player to open Now Playing.
2. Tap, then tap a song to play it and the songs that follow.

   To reorder the list, drag.
3. Tap again to hide the queue.

Note: When you turn off Autoplay on a device that uses your Apple ID—your iPhone, for example—Autoplay is turned off on all other devices that use the same Apple ID.

Add music and videos to the queue

When browsing or playing music, touch and hold a song, album, playlist, or video, then choose an option.

- *Add music right after the currently playing item:* Tap Play Next.
- *Add music to the end of the queue:* Tap Play Last.

Tip: If you're using HomePod to stream music and your friends are on the same Wi-Fi network, they can add and reorder items in the queue. To learn more about HomePod speaker access, see the HomePod User Guide.

See what you've recently played

1. Tap the player to open Now Playing.
2. Tap, then swipe down to see your playing history.

   To play a song in the history, tap it. To remove your playing history, tap Clear.

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Listen to broadcast radio on iPhone

You can play thousands of broadcast radio stations on iPhone.

- *Use Siri:* Activate Siri, then say something like, “Play Wild 94.9” or “Tune in to ESPN Radio.”
- *Search for a station:* Tap Search, enter the station in the search field, then tap a result to play the station.

  You can search for stations by name, call sign, frequency, and nickname.
- *Choose a station in the Radio tab:* Tap Radio, swipe up, then choose a station below the Local Broadcasters or International Broadcasters heading.

Note: You don’t need a subscription to Apple Music to listen to broadcast radio. Broadcast radio isn’t available in all countries or regions and not all stations are available in all countries or regions.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Queue up your music

Next
Subscribe to Apple Music

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Subscribe to Apple Music on iPhone

Apple Music is an ad-free streaming music service that lets you listen to millions of songs and your music library. As a subscriber, you can listen any time—online or off—and create your own playlists, stream and download lossless and Dolby Atmos music, get personalized recommendations, follow artists and receive notifications when they release new music, see music your friends are listening to, watch exclusive video content, and more.

You can subscribe to Apple Music or to Apple One, which includes Apple Music and other services. See the Apple Support article Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One.

Alternatively, you can subscribe to Apple Music Voice and use Siri to stream any song, album, playlist, or radio station in the Apple Music catalog. See Listen to music with Apple Music Voice.

Note: Apple Music, Apple Music Voice, Apple One, lossless, and Dolby Atmos aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Subscribe to Apple Music

You can subscribe to Apple Music when you first open the Music app; to subscribe later, go to Settings > Music, then tap the subscription button.

New subscribers can start a trial and cancel at any time. If you end your Apple Music subscription, you can no longer stream Apple Music songs or play Apple Music songs you downloaded.

Qualified students can purchase a student subscription at a discounted price. See the Apple Support article Get an Apple Music student subscription.

Share Apple Music with family members

When you subscribe to Apple Music, Apple One Family, or Apple One Premier, you can use Family Sharing to share Apple Music with up to five other family members. Your family group doesn't need to do anything—Apple Music is available to them the first time they open the Music app after your subscription begins.

If you join a family group that subscribes to Apple Music, Apple One Family, or Apple One Premier, and you already subscribe, your subscription isn't renewed on your next billing date; instead, you use the group's subscription. If you join a family group that doesn't subscribe, the group uses your subscription.

Note: To stop sharing Apple Music with a family group, you can cancel the subscription, leave a Family Sharing group, or remove a member from a Family Sharing group.

Listen to music shared with you

When a friend shares music with you with the Message app, you can easily find it in Shared with You in Apple Music. (Music must be turned on in Settings > Messages > Shared with You, and your friend must be in your contacts list in Contacts.)

1. Open the Music app, then tap Listen Now.
2. Swipe up to Shared with You, then do any of the following:

   - Tap a song to listen to it.

- Tap the name of the person, people, or group that shared the song to reply to them using the Messages app.
- Touch and hold the song to take other actions—for example, add it to your library, create a station, reply to the sender, or remove it.

Change or cancel your Apple Music subscription

You can change your subscription plan or cancel your subscription.

1. Tap Listen Now, then tap or your profile picture.
2. Tap Manage Subscription, then follow the onscreen instructions.

If you're not a subscriber, you can use Music to listen to music synced to iPhone from a Mac or a Windows PC, play and download previous iTunes Store purchases, and listen to Apple Music radio for free.

See also

Use SharePlay to watch and listen together in FaceTime

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Listen to broadcast radio

Next
Play music together in the car with iPhone

Support › iPhone User Guide › Subscribe to Apple Music on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Play music together in the car with iPhone

Using SharePlay and CarPlay, you and your passengers can all control the music that's playing in the car.

Passengers can join a SharePlay session in two ways: by tapping a notification on their iPhone or by scanning a QR code, either on the CarPlay Now Playing screen or on the Now Playing screen of another passenger's iPhone.

Before you begin

- The driver must have an iPhone with iOS 17 or later and be an Apple Music subscriber.
- Passengers must have an iPhone with iOS 17 or later, but don't need to have an Apple Music subscription.

Host a SharePlay session

To use SharePlay in the car, you and your passengers each play a part.

1. Begin playing music from your iPhone using CarPlay.

   A notification appears on the Lock Screen of passengers' iPhones, asking if they'd like to join the SharePlay session. After they tap Connect, you receive a notification in CarPlay.

2. Tap a passenger's name, then tap to allow the passenger to choose and stream music from your iPhone.

   After you approve a passenger, they'll have access to future SharePlay sessions until you revoke their access.

Use a QR code to join a SharePlay session

Passengers can also join a SharePlay session over Bluetooth by scanning a QR code.

1. In the Now Playing screen in CarPlay, tap in CarPlay.

   A QR code appears on the CarPlay screen.

2. Ask a passenger to open the Camera app on their iPhone and point the camera at the QR code.

   A button appears below the picture of the QR code on their iPhone to request a connection to the SharePlay session. The passenger taps the button, then taps Connect.

3. Tap on the CarPlay screen to allow the passenger to join.

Use a QR code to add other passengers

If you're a passenger using SharePlay to control music in a car, you can invite other passengers while the driver focuses on the road.

1. In the Music app, open Now Playing, then tap at the bottom of the screen to show the SharePlay window, which lists all the participants as well as a QR code for joining the session.

2. Ask a passenger to open the Camera app on their iPhone and point the camera at the QR code, tap the button that appears below the code, then tap Connect.

   The driver taps on the CarPlay screen to allow the passenger to join.

Leave or end a SharePlay session in the car

- *If you're a passenger:* Tap at the bottom of Now Playing, then tap Leave.
- *If you're the driver:* Tap End on the CarPlay screen.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Subscribe to Apple Music

Next
Listen to lossless music

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Listen to lossless music on iPhone

In the Music app, Apple Music subscribers can access millions of tracks encoded using lossless audio compression.

Lossless compression is a form of compression that preserves all of the original data. Apple has developed its own lossless audio compression technology called Apple Lossless Audio Codec (ALAC). The entire Apple Music catalog is encoded using ALAC in resolutions ranging from 16-bit/44.1 kHz (CD Quality) up to 24-bit/192 kHz.

Note: Lossless music isn't available in the Apple Music Voice Plan. For more information, see the Apple Support article How to use Apple Music Voice.

What you need to know about lossless in Apple Music

- Streaming lossless audio over a cellular or Wi-Fi network consumes significantly more data. And downloading lossless audio uses significantly more space on your device. Higher resolutions use more data than lower ones.
- AirPods, AirPods Pro, AirPods Max, and Beats wireless headphones use Apple AAC Bluetooth Codec to ensure excellent audio quality. However, Bluetooth connections aren't lossless.
- To get a lossless version of music that you already downloaded from Apple Music, just delete the music and redownload it from the Apple Music catalog.
- To listen to songs at sample rates higher than 48 kHz on iPhone, you need an external digital-to-analog converter.

Note: Apple Music and lossless aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Turn on Lossless Audio and choose audio quality settings

You can choose audio quality settings for cellular streaming, Wi-Fi streaming, and downloads.

1. Go to Settings > Music.
2. Tap Audio Quality, then tap Lossless Audio to turn it on or off.
3. Choose the audio quality for streaming and downloading audio.
   - Choose Lossless for a maximum resolution of 24-bit/48 kHz.
   - Choose Hi-Res Lossless for a maximum resolution of 24-bit/192 kHz.

The audio quality of streamed music depends on song availability, network conditions, and the capability of connected headphones or speakers.

Identify lossless music

If music is available in lossless, appears on album pages. When you turn on Lossless Audio in Settings > Music > Audio Quality, the Lossless badge also appears in Now Playing. To learn more about a song's lossless encoding, tap on an album page or in Now Playing.

For more information, see the Apple Support article About lossless audio in Apple Music.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Play music together in the car with iPhone

Next
Listen to Dolby Atmos music

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Listen to Dolby Atmos music on iPhone

In the Music app, Apple Music subscribers can listen to available tracks in Dolby Atmos. Dolby Atmos creates an immersive, three-dimensional audio experience on stereo headphones and speakers or receivers compatible with Dolby Atmos.

Note: Dolby Atmos music isn't available in the Apple Music Voice Plan. For more information, see the Apple Support article How to use Apple Music Voice.

Albums available in Dolby Atmos have the Dolby Atmos badge. If a track is playing in Dolby Atmos, the badge also appears on the Now Playing screen.

Note: Apple Music and Dolby Atmos aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Turn on Dolby Atmos

1. Go to Settings > Music > Dolby Atmos.
2. Choose Automatic or Always On.

- *Automatic:* Plays Dolby Atmos whenever iPhone is connected to compatible headphones such as AirPods (3rd generation), AirPods Pro, or AirPods Max, or to speakers or receivers compatible with Dolby Atmos.
- *Always On:* Plays Dolby Atmos on any headphones or speakers. The Music app will attempt to play Dolby Atmos tracks on any headphones or speakers connected to iPhone.

Dolby Atmos will play on any headphones, but not all speakers will play Dolby Atmos as intended.

Control Spatial Audio and head tracking on iPhone

When you listen to supported music on your iPhone with AirPods (3rd generation), AirPods Pro, or AirPods Max, you can use Spatial Audio and head tracking to create an immersive theater-like environment with sound that surrounds you. Follow these steps to control Spatial Audio and head tracking in Control Center.

1. Wear your AirPods, then open Control Center.
2. Touch and hold the volume control, then tap Spatial Audio at the lower right.
3. Tap one of the following:

   - *Off:* Turns off both Spatial Audio and head tracking.
   - *Fixed:* Turns on Spatial Audio without head tracking.
   - *Head Tracked:* Turns on both Spatial Audio and head tracking. This setting allows the sound to follow the movement of your head.

The settings you choose are saved and applied automatically the next time you use that app. For example, if you tap Fixed while listening to a song in Apple Music, the Fixed setting is automatically used the next time you play a song in Apple Music.

Note: To disable head tracking for all apps on your iPhone, go to Settings > Accessibility > AirPods, tap your AirPods, then turn off Follow iPhone.

Download songs in Dolby Atmos

1. Go to Settings > Music.
2. Turn on Download in Dolby Atmos.

For more information, see the Apple Support article About Spatial Audio with Dolby Atmos in Apple Music.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Listen to lossless music

Next
Apple Music Sing

Support > iPhone User Guide > Listen to Dolby Atmos music on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

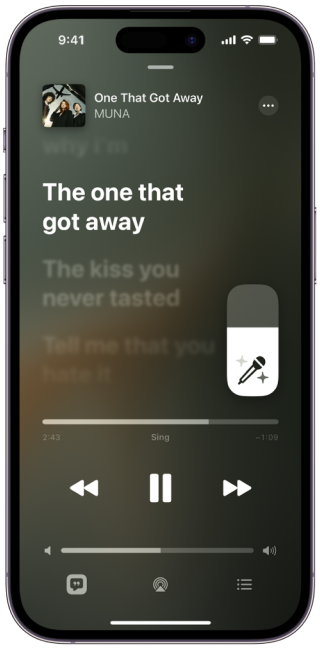
Sing along with Apple Music on iPhone

In the Music app, Apple Music subscribers can use Apple Music Sing to view real-time, beat-by-beat lyrics for select songs, as well as adjust the volume of a song's vocals—allowing you to sing along with the music while viewing the lyrics as they're highlighted.

Adjust a song's vocal volume

1. Tap the player to open Now Playing, then tap.
2. Touch and hold, then drag the slider up or down to adjust the vocal volume.
3. To turn off Apple Music Sing for the song, tap the slider.

If you're listening to a song playing with Dolby Atmos and you turn on Apple Music Sing, Dolby Atmos turns off and the song plays without surround sound. If you turn off Apple Music Sing, the song plays with Dolby Atmos.



Sing onscreen with visual effects on Apple TV 4K

You can use your iPhone as a Continuity Camera to see yourself singing onscreen along with lyrics. You can add visual effects to your image and lyrics, which enhances the singalong experience.

See Use iPhone as a webcam for Mac or Apple TV and Sing along with Apple Music on Apple TV in the Apple TV User Guide.

Apple Music Sing is available on iPhone 11 and later and iPhone SE (3rd generation) using iOS 16.2 or later.

Find new music with Apple Music on iPhone

In the Music app, Apple Music subscribers can browse new and noteworthy music, music videos, playlists, and more.

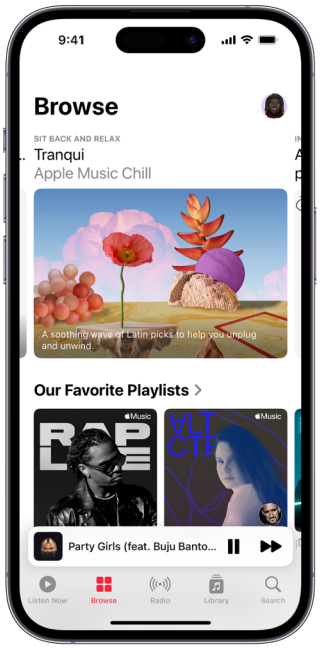
Note: Browsing isn't available in the Apple Music Voice Plan. For more information, see the Apple Support article How to use Apple Music Voice.

Browse Apple Music

Tap Browse to find new music. Do any of the following:

- *Explore featured music:* Swipe through featured songs and videos at the top of the Browse screen.
- *Browse playlists created by music experts:* Tap one of the many playlists created by music experts.
- *Explore new music:* Swipe through the albums listed below New Music.
- *Play music that matches your mood:* Tap a mood, such as Feel Good, Romance, or Party, then tap a playlist.
- *See what's hot:* Tap a song below the Best New Songs heading. Swipe left to see more songs.
- *Listen to the top songs from around the world:* Tap one of the Daily Top 100 playlists. These playlists reflect the day's most popular songs in countries across the globe.
- *Listen to songs from upcoming albums:* Tap an album below Coming Soon, then tap an available song to play it.
- *Browse your favorite categories:* Tap Browse by Category, choose a category, then tap a featured playlist, song, album, artist, radio station, or music video to enjoy music handpicked by music experts.
- *Play the day's most popular songs:* Tap Charts, then tap a song, playlist, album, or music video to play it. Tap All Genres at the top of the screen to see the top songs and music videos in a genre you choose.
- *Watch music videos:* Tap Music Videos, then tap a featured music video or playlist of music videos.

Note: To see more music, swipe left on the album art. To see all the music in a section—New Music, for example—tap > next to the section's name.



Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Apple Music Sing

Next
Add music and listen offline

Support > iPhone User Guide > Find new music with Apple Music on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Add music to iPhone and listen offline

In the Music app, Apple Music subscribers can add and download songs and videos from Apple Music. You can stream music you add to iPhone when you have an internet connection. To play music when you're not connected to the internet, you must first download it.

Note: You can't add and download music in the Apple Music Voice Plan. For more information, see the Apple Support article How to use Apple Music Voice.

Add music from Apple Music to your library

Do any of the following:

- Touch and hold a song, album, playlist, or video, then tap Add to Library.
- When viewing the contents of an album or playlist, tap near the top of the screen to add the album or playlist, or tap ••• next to a song, then tap Add to Library to add that song.
- On the Now Playing screen, tap, then tap Add to Library.

To delete music from the library, touch and hold the song, album, playlist, or music video, then tap Delete from Library.

Music you add to iPhone is also added to other devices if you're signed in to the iTunes Store and App Store using the same Apple ID and have Sync Library turned on (go to Settings > Music, then turn on Sync Library).

Add music to a playlist

1. Touch and hold an album, playlist, song, or music video.
2. Tap Add to a Playlist, then choose a playlist.

Download music from Apple Music to your iPhone

- *Download a song, album, or playlist:* Touch and hold music you've added to your library, then tap Download.

  After you've added a playlist or album, you can also tap at the top of the screen.

  Note: You must turn on Sync Library to download music from Apple Music to your library (go to Settings > Music, then turn on Sync Library).

- *Always download music:* Go to Settings > Music, then turn on Automatic Downloads.

  Songs you add are automatically downloaded to iPhone.

- *See download progress:* On the Library screen, tap Downloaded Music, then tap Downloading.

Note: If the music you're downloading is available in Dolby Atmos, the Dolby button appears next to the item, and you can download it either in Dolby Atmos or in stereo. To download music in Dolby Atmos when available, go to Settings > Music, then turn on Download in Dolby Atmos. See Listen to Dolby Atmos music on iPhone.

Manage storage space

- *Free up music storage:* If iPhone is low on storage space, you can automatically remove downloaded music that you haven't played in a while. Go to Settings > Music > Optimize Storage.
- *Remove music and videos stored on iPhone:* Touch and hold a song, album, playlist, music video, TV show, or movie that you've downloaded. Tap Remove, then tap Remove Downloads.

  The item is removed from iPhone, but not from iCloud Music Library.
- *Remove all songs or certain artists from iPhone:* Go to Settings > Music > Downloaded Music, tap Edit, then tap next to All Songs or the artists whose music you want to delete.

Choose cellular data options for Music

Go to Settings > Music, turn on Cellular Data, then do any of the following:

- Turn Download over Cellular on or off.
- Tap Audio Quality, turn on Lossless Audio, then tap Cellular Streaming to choose a setting (None, High Efficiency, High Quality, Lossless, or High-Resolution Lossless).

  High Quality, Lossless, and High-Resolution Lossless use significantly more cellular data than High Efficiency, which may incur additional charges from your cellular carrier. Songs may also take longer to start playing.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Find new music

Next
Get personalized recommendations

Support > iPhone User Guide > Add music to iPhone and listen offline

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

See recommended music on iPhone

In the Music app, Apple Music subscribers can use Listen Now to discover and play your favorite albums, playlists, interviews, and personal mixes, based on your taste.

Note: Not all features are available in the Apple Music Voice Plan. For more information, see the Apple Support article How to use Apple Music Voice.

Select your favorite genres and artists

When you first tap Listen Now, you're asked to tell Apple Music about your preferences. Apple Music uses these preferences when recommending music.

1. Tap the genres you like (double-tap those you love, and touch and hold the genres you don't care for).
2. Tap Next, then do the same with the artists that appear.

To add a specific artist who isn't listed, tap Add an Artist, then enter the artist's name.

Play music

1. Tap Listen Now, then tap a playlist or album.
2. Tap Play, or tap Shuffle to shuffle the playlist or album.

You can also touch and hold a playlist or album, then tap Play.

Play songs from an artist's catalog

Go to an artist page, then tap next to the artist's name.

The Music app plays songs from the artist's entire catalog, mixing hits and deep cuts.

Add favorite artists

Go to an artist page, then tap at the top of the screen.

When you mark an artist as a favorite, they appear under Favorite Artists in For You, and their music is recommended more often. You can also choose to receive notifications when they release new music.

Tell Apple Music what you love

Do any of the following:

- Touch and hold an album, playlist, or song, then tap Love or Suggest Less Like This.
- On the Now Playing screen, tap , then tap Love or Suggest Less Like This.

Telling Apple Music what you love and dislike improves future recommendations.

Discover your most-played music of the year

For every year you're subscribed to Apple Music (and listen to enough music to become eligible), Apple Music creates a Replay personal chart, ranking the songs you've played the most. Find a playlist for each year you've been a subscriber by tapping Listen Now, swiping up to Replay: Your Top Songs by Year, then tap a year. You can also find deeper insights into your listening throughout the year at replay.music.apple.com. See the Apple Support article How to get your Apple Music Replay.

Discover music you've never played before

Using your listening history and taste profile, Apple Music recommends music you may like that you've never played before.

1. Tap Listen Now, then swipe down to Stations for You.
2. Tap Discovery Station, then choose an option.

Rate music in your library

1. Go to Settings > Music.
2. Turn on Show Star Ratings.
3. In Music, touch and hold a song in your library, tap Rate Song, then choose a rating from one to five stars.

Song ratings sync to all devices that use the same Apple ID.

This option appears only if you already have star ratings from a synced library on your device.

Tell Apple Music to ignore your listening habits

If you don't want your followers on Apple Music to see any of the music you play, follow these steps.

1. Go to Settings > Music.
2. Turn off Use Listening History.

Turning off your listening history impacts new music recommendations and the contents of Replay playlists.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Add music and listen offline

Next
Listen to radio

Support > iPhone User Guide > See recommended music on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Listen to radio on iPhone

In the Music app, Apple Music subscribers can listen to Apple Music radio in the Radio tab. Apple Music radio features three world-class radio stations (Apple Music 1, Apple Music Hits, and Apple Music Country), the latest music from a variety of genres, and exclusive interviews. You can also listen to featured stations that have been created by music experts, and create your own custom stations from songs or artists you choose.

Listen to Apple Music radio

Tap Radio, then tap one of the currently playing Apple Music radio stations. No subscription is required to listen to Apple Music 1, Apple Music Hits, or Apple Music Country.

Note: Because Apple Music radio stations are live radio, you can't rewind or skip songs.

Listen to your favorite music genre

1. Tap Radio, then tap a genre listed below More to Explore.
2. Tap a featured station.

Create a station

You can create a radio station based on a particular artist or song. Chances are, if you like that artist or song, you'll like the music the station plays.

1. Touch and hold an artist or song.
2. Tap Create Station.

To create a station in Now Playing, tap , then tap Create Station.

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Search for music on iPhone

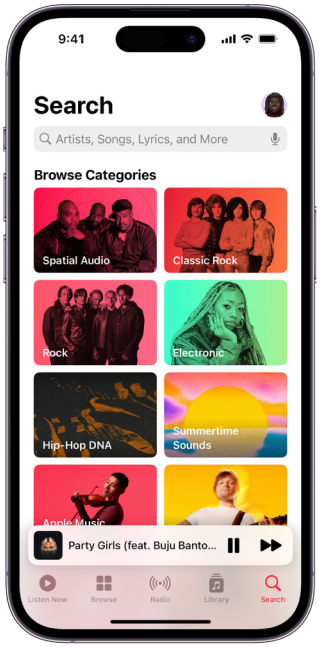
Using Search in the Music app, you can quickly browse through music categories, see recent searches, and search Apple Music or your library.

Note: Not all features are available in the Apple Music Voice Plan. For more information, see the Apple Support article How to use Apple Music Voice.

1. Tap Search, then do any of the following:
   - Tap a category such as Pop or Fitness.
   - Tap the search field, then tap something you recently chose while searching—a song or artist, for example.
   - Tap the search field, tap Apple Music, then enter a song, artist, album, playlist, radio show or episode, station, video, category, curator, record label, or profile.
   - Tap the search field, tap Your Library, then enter a song, album, playlist, artist, video, compilation, or composer.
2. Tap a result to play it.

You can search for a song in Apple Music based on its lyrics. In the search field, enter a few of the words you remember to find a song.

Siri: Say something like: “Play the song with the lyrics” and then say a key phrase from the lyrics. Learn how to use Siri.



Explicit lyrics and lyrics search aren’t available in all countries or regions.

Table of Contents

Create playlists on iPhone

In the Music app, you can organize music into playlists that you can share with your friends.

Note: You can't create playlists in the Apple Music Voice Plan. For more information, see the Apple Support article How to use Apple Music Voice.

Create playlists to organize your music

1. To create a new playlist, do any of the following:
   - Tap Library, tap Playlists, then tap New Playlist.
   - Touch and hold a song, album, or playlist; tap Add to a Playlist; then tap New Playlist.
   - On the Now Playing screen, tap, tap Add to a Playlist, then tap New Playlist.
2. To more easily identify the playlist later, enter a name and description.
3. To give your playlist cover art, tap, then take a photo or choose an image from your photo library.
4. To add music to the playlist, tap Add Music, then tap Listen Now, Browse, Library, or the search field.
5. Choose or search for music, then tap to add it to the playlist.

Tip: If you want to add songs to your library when you add them to a playlist, go to Settings > Music, then turn on Add Playlist Songs.

Edit a playlist you created on iPhone

Tap the playlist, tap, tap Edit, then do any of the following:

- *Add more songs:* Tap Add Music, then choose music.

  You can also touch and hold an item (song, album, playlist, or music video), tap Add to a Playlist, then choose a playlist.
- *Delete a song:* Tap, then tap Delete. Deleting a song from a playlist doesn't delete it from your library.
- *Change the song order:* Drag next to a song.

Changes you make to your music library are updated across all your devices when Sync Library is turned on in Music settings. If you're not an Apple Music subscriber, the changes appear in your music library the next time you sync with your computer.

Sort a playlist

1. Tap a playlist, then tap at the top right of the screen.
2. Tap Sort By, then choose an option—Playlist Order, Title, Artist, Album, or Release Date.

Delete a playlist

Touch and hold the playlist, then tap Delete from Library.

You can also tap the playlist, tap ⋯, then tap Delete from Library.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Search for music

Next
See what your friends are listening to

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

See what your friends are listening to

When you're an Apple Music subscriber, you can see music your friends are listening to by following them. You can also see the playlists they've shared. Likewise, your followers can see your shared playlists and the music you're listening to. You see this information on your profile screen in the Music app.

Note: Not all features are available in the Apple Music Voice Plan. For more information, see the Apple Support article How to use Apple Music Voice.

Create a profile

When you first open Music, you're asked to set up a profile and start following friends. If you skipped this step, you can set up a profile at any time.

1. Tap Listen Now, then tap.
2. Tap Start Sharing with Friends.

   Friends can now follow you.

View your profile

1. Tap Listen Now, then tap or your profile picture.
2. Tap View Profile at the top of the screen.

Follow your friends

There are several ways to follow people:

- Add friends when you set up your profile.
- After you set up your profile, swipe to the bottom of the profile screen, tap Follow More Friends, then tap Follow next to those you want to follow.

  You can follow friends who are in your contacts list and who use Apple Music.
- On the profile screen, touch and hold a profile picture, then tap Follow.
- Tap Search, enter a friend's name, tap it in the results, then tap Follow.

  Note: Your friends must have a profile for you to find them using search.

To see the people you're following and those who follow you, open the profile screen, then swipe up.

If a profile picture has a lock on it, you need to ask that person to follow them. After your request is accepted, you see the person's shared playlists and the music they're listening to.

Respond to follow requests

You can allow everyone to follow you, or just people you choose. You receive follow requests only if you choose who can follow you.

1. Tap Listen Now, then tap or your profile picture.

2. Tap View Profile.
3. Tap Edit, then tap People You Approve if you want to be followed only by people you choose.
4. Tap Follow Requests, then accept or decline the requests.

You may receive follow requests in other ways—as a link in an email or a text message, for example. To accept, tap the link.

Stop following and block followers

- *Stop following:* Touch and hold the profile picture of a person you follow, then tap Unfollow.
- *Block followers:* Touch and hold a profile picture, then choose Block.

  People you block won't see your music or be able to find your profile. They can still listen to your shared playlists if they've added them to their library.

Share music with followers

By default, your followers see the playlists you create, but you can choose not to share some playlists.

1. Tap Listen Now, then tap or your profile picture.
2. Tap View Profile.
3. Tap Edit, then turn playlists on or off.
4. Drag to reorder them.

Your followers will see the playlists you create on your profile unless you turn off those playlists you don't want to share. You can turn off this option when you create a playlist or later, when you edit the playlist.

To share playlists with people who don't follow you, touch and hold a playlist, then tap Share Playlist.

Note: If you make changes to music you share—edit or stop sharing a playlist, for example—those changes are reflected on your followers' devices.

Hide music from your followers

1. Tap Listen Now, then tap or your profile picture.
2. Tap View Profile.
3. Touch and hold the playlist or album (below Listening To).
4. Tap Hide from Profile.

The listening history for this item won't appear in your profile or be visible to the people who follow you. If you don't want your followers to see any of the music you listen to, tap Edit on the profile screen, then turn off Listening To at the bottom of the screen.

Note: It may take up to 10 minutes before music you hide is no longer visible to your followers.

See what others are listening to

Tap Listen Now, then do any of the following:

- *See what your friends are listening to:* Scroll down to Friends Are Listening To, then tap an item to play it.
- *Listen to a mix of songs your friends are listening to:* Swipe left on Made For You, then tap Friends Mix.
- *See what a follower or person you follow is listening to:* Tap or your profile picture, then tap View Profile. Tap a person's profile picture to see shared playlists and music they're listening to. You also see their followers and the people they follow.

Share your profile

You can share your profile using email, Messages, or another app you choose.

1. Tap Listen Now, then tap or your profile picture.
2. Tap View Profile.
3. Tap , tap Share Profile, then choose a sharing option.

You can also share the profile of anyone you follow, or who follows you.

Report a concern

If you have a concern about a follower, touch and hold their profile picture, then tap Report a Concern.

See also

Invite friends to listen to music together from a supported app during a FaceTime call

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Create playlists

Next
Use Siri to play music

Support > iPhone User Guide > See what your friends are listening to

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use Siri to play music on iPhone

You can use Siri to control music playback in the Music app.

Activate Siri, then make your request. You can use Siri in a wide variety of ways:

- *Play Apple Music:* You can play any song, artist, album, playlist, or station. Say, for example, "Play 'Party Girls' by Victoria Monét" or "Play Tainy." Siri can also play popular songs from different genres or years. Say "Play the top songs from 1990." You can also play music on AirPlay-enabled devices in a specific room. Say something like "Play the latest album by Loraine James in the living room."
- *Let Apple Music be your personal DJ:* Say something like "Play my Chill Mix" or "Play something I like."
- *Add music from Apple Music to your library:* Say, for example, "Add 'Clutch Pearlers' by Clark to my library." Or while playing something, say "Add this to my library." (Apple Music subscription required. Not available with Apple Music Voice.)
- *Add a song or album to a playlist:* While playing a song, say something like "Add this song to my Workout playlist" or "Add this album to my Sunday Morning playlist."
- *Find out more about the current song:* Say "What's playing?", "Who sings this song?", or "Who is this song by?"

  Tip: You can also identify a song playing on or near iPhone by adding the Music Recognition control to Control Center. Go to Settings > Control Center, then tap next to Music Recognition. With a song playing, open Control Center, then tap.
- *Play songs based on their lyrics:* Say "Play the song with the lyrics" and then say a key phrase from the lyrics.

Learn how to use Siri.

Siri can also help you find music in the iTunes Store. See Get music, movies, and TV shows in the iTunes Store on iPhone.

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Listen to music with Apple Music Voice on iPhone

Apple offers the Apple Music Voice Plan, a subscription option for Apple Music designed around Siri. Using just your voice, you can access millions of songs, tens of thousands of playlists (including hundreds of mood and activity playlists), personalized mixes, genre stations, and Apple Music radio.

In addition to streaming music from Apple Music, you can play music you purchased from the iTunes Store and music you've synced to iPhone. You can also stream music with AirPlay, play music using Home Sharing, and search the Apple Music library and your music library.

Note: Not all features are available in the Apple Music Voice Plan. For more information, see the Apple Support article How to use Apple Music Voice.

Subscribe to Apple Music Voice

You can subscribe to Apple Music Voice when you first open the Music app.

As an Apple Music Voice subscriber, you can play music on all your devices that have Siri turned on, including HomePod mini, AirPods, or any other Apple device, and when using CarPlay.

Tip: If you don't subscribe to Apple Music, you can get a 7-day free preview of Apple Music Voice by using Siri to play a song or artist in Apple Music. This one-time free preview will not renew. After 7 days, you can subscribe to the Voice plan in the Apple Music app and get a 1-month free trial.

New subscribers can start a trial and cancel at any time. If you end your Apple Music Voice subscription, you can no longer stream Apple Music songs.

Play music with Apple Music Voice

To play music with Apple Music Voice, just say "Hey Siri," then make your request:

- "Play 'Party Girls' by Victoria Monét"
- "Play Apple Music Country"
- "Play cool jazz"
- "Play the dinner party playlist"
- "Play a playlist to help me relax"
- "Play more like this"

To see Siri suggestions created just for you, open the Music app, tap Listen Now, then swipe through the suggestions below Just Ask Siri. Say "Hey Siri," then speak the suggestion or tap to play it.

Play music you recently listened to

Open the Music app, tap Listen Now, then tap an item. Playlists and albums play in their original order.

Play purchased and synced music

You can play music you purchased from the iTunes Store as well as music you synced to your iPhone from a computer.

Open the Music app, tap Library, tap a category such as Playlists, Artists, or Albums, then tap an item.

To play music from a Home Sharing library, tap Library, tap Home Sharing, then tap a library.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use Siri to play music

Next
Change the way music sounds

Support > iPhone User Guide > Listen to music with Apple Music Voice on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Change the way music sounds on iPhone

Change the way music sounds on iPhone with EQ and Sound Check. Crossfade songs in playlists.

Use EQ and normalize volume levels

- *Choose an equalization (EQ) setting:* Go to Settings > Music > EQ.
- *Normalize the volume level of your audio:* Go to Settings > Music, then turn on Sound Check.

Crossfade songs in playlists

In iOS 17, you can crossfade songs in a playlist, which creates a listening experience with no audio gaps between songs.

1. Go to Settings > Music, then turn on Crossfade.
2. Drag the slider to choose the length of the crossfade.

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Get started with News on iPhone

The News app collects all the stories you want to read, from your favorite sources, about the topics that interest you most. To personalize News, you can choose from a selection of publications (called *channels*) and topics such as Entertainment, Food, and Science.

You need a Wi-Fi or cellular connection to use News.

The more you read, the better News understands your interests. Siri learns what's important to you and suggests stories you might like. You can receive notifications about important stories from channels you follow.

And you can subscribe to Apple News+, which includes hundreds of magazines, popular newspapers, and premium digital publishers. Apple News+ subscribers can also listen to audio stories and solve daily crossword and crossword mini puzzles.

Note: Apple News and Apple News+ aren't available in all countries or regions.

Personalize your news

When you follow a channel or topic, related stories appear more often in the Today feed, and the channel or topic appears in the Following tab.

1. In News, tap Following, then, below Suggested by Siri, tap ⊕ next to the channels and topics you want to follow.

   To make a channel or topic a favorite, tap Edit, then tap ★ next to the channel or topic. It will appear in a group near the top of the Today feed.

   If there's a channel or topic that you don't want to appear in your feed, touch and hold it, then choose Block Channel, Block Topic, or Stop Suggesting.

   When you block a channel or topic, its stories don't appear in the Today feed and widgets. To see the channels and topics you've blocked, tap Following > Blocked Channels & Topics.

   Note: When you browse Top Stories and other areas that feature stories curated by Apple News editors, stories from channels you blocked show a gray headline and a message indicating that you blocked the channel. See Follow, unfollow, block, and unblock channels and topics.

2. Tap Discover Channels at the bottom of the screen, then tap ⊕ for each channel you want to follow.

To stop following a channel or topic, swipe it to the left, then tap Unfollow.

To quickly find specific channels and topics to follow, tap the search field at the top of the screen, enter the channel or topic's name, then tap ⊕ in the results below.

Get notifications

Some channels you follow may send notifications about important stories.

1. Tap Following, swipe to the bottom of the screen, then tap Notifications & Email below Manage.
2. Turn on notifications for your preferred channels.
3. Turn on notifications from Apple News, such as Apple News Top Stories, Apple News Spotlight, and more.

If you subscribe to Apple News+, you can additionally receive notifications when new issues are available of publications you follow. You can also receive New Features & Tips notifications.

Receive Apple News newsletters

You can choose to receive newsletters in your email inbox from Apple News editors. Newsletters feature top stories, personalized based on your interests. If you subscribe to Apple News+, newsletters can also include new issues of your favorite magazines.

1. Tap Following, swipe to the bottom of the screen, then tap Notifications & Email.
2. Swipe to the bottom of the screen, then turn on Apple News Newsletters or tap Sign Up for Newsletters, then tap Sign Me Up.

In the U.S., several different newsletters may be available, and you can choose which ones you'd like to receive. Tap Sign Up to opt in, or Subscribed to opt out.

To stop receiving newsletters, return to the Notifications & Email screen, then turn off Apple News Newsletters. In the U.S., tap Manage Newsletters, then unsubscribe from each newsletter you no longer want to receive.

Note: Personalized newsletters aren't available in all countries or regions.

See stories only from the channels you follow

Go to Settings > News, turn on Restrict Stories in Today, then confirm your choice.

Note: Restricting stories significantly limits the variety of stories that appear in the Today feed and all other feeds. For example, if you restrict stories and follow only one entertainment-related channel, your Entertainment topic feed will contain stories only from that channel. When you restrict stories, you don't see Top Stories and Trending Stories.

See also

Use News widgets on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Change the way music sounds

Next
Use News widgets

Support > iPhone User Guide > Get started with News on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use News widgets on iPhone

You can easily see the day's top and trending stories from the News app, as well as stories about a topic of your choosing, just by tapping the Today or Topic widget.

Access stories from News widgets

In the Today or Topic widget, tap a story headline to open the story in News.

See Add, edit, and remove widgets on iPhone.

See also

See news stories chosen just for you on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

See news stories chosen just for you on iPhone

The Today feed in the News app presents top stories selected by Apple News editors, the best stories from the channels and topics you follow, and stories and issues from Apple News+. The Today feed also includes stories suggested by Siri, trending stories that are popular with other News readers, My Sports, and more. Depending on your location, the Today feed can also include Apple News Today audio briefings, puzzles, and local news with your local weather conditions.

Note: Apple News Today audio briefings, local news, and puzzles aren't available in all countries or regions.

Access stories in the Today feed

- *Open a story:* Tap the story.
- *Read more stories within a group:* Tap the arrow at the bottom of the group.
- *Play a video:* Tap in the thumbnail.
- *Get newer stories:* Pull down to refresh the Today feed with the latest stories.

Follow, unfollow, block, and unblock channels and topics

You can influence what appears in the Today feed by following and blocking channels and topics.

1. Do any of the following:
   - *Open a channel feed:* Touch and hold a story, tap the channel name, then tap Go to Channel. Or tap a story in the Today feed, then tap the channel name at the top of the story.
   - *Open a topic feed:* Tap the topic title—Movies or Travel, for example.
2. At the top of the feed, do any of the following:
   - *Follow:* Tap .
   - *Unfollow:* Tap , then tap Unfollow Channel or Unfollow Topic.
   - *Block:* Tap , then tap Block Channel or Block Topic.
   - *Unblock:* Tap , then tap Unblock Channel or Unblock Topic.

Note: When you browse Top Stories and other areas that feature stories curated by Apple News editors, stories from channels you blocked show a gray headline and a message indicating that you blocked the channel. To read a story from a blocked channel, tap it, then tap Read Story.

See the Apple Support article Block and unblock channels and topics in Apple News.

Manage your favorites

Favorites shows the channels and topics from your Following list that you like best (you can have only a limited number of Favorites). Your Favorites group appears near the top of your Following list and your Today feed. Adding channels and topics to your Favorites makes them quicker and easier to access.

Note: Only channels and topics that you currently follow can be added to your Favorites.

The first time you use the News app on your iPhone, you won't see any Favorites. You create your Favorites group by marking channels and topics as favorites. You can customize your list at any time.

Tap Following, tap Edit, then do any of the following.

- *Add a channel or topic to your Favorites:* Tap ☆ next to a channel or topic to mark it as a favorite, then tap Done.
- *Remove a favorite:* Tap ★ next to a channel or topic you no longer want as a favorite, then tap Done.
- *Reorder favorites:* Touch and hold ☰, drag favorites to the order you prefer, then tap Done,

You can also swipe up to Favorites in the Today feed, tap ⋯, then tap Manage Favorites.

To remove the Favorites group from your Today feed, swipe up to Favorites, tap ⋯, then tap Block from Today. To unblock Favorites, tap Following, swipe up, tap Blocked Channels & Topics, tap ⛔ next to Favorites, then tap Unblock.

Note: If you tap Block from Today in the Today feed, your Favorites group still appears in your Following list.

Stop suggesting specific channels and topic groups in the Today feed

Suggested channels and topic groups may appear in the Today feed, but you can stop these suggestions.

1. Tap Today.
2. Tap ⋯ in a channel or topic group, then tap Stop Suggesting.

The channel or topic isn't blocked, but News stops displaying the story group in Today.

Tell News what kind of stories you prefer

1. Tap Today.
2. Tap ••• below a headline, then tap Suggest More or Suggest Less.

See also

Read stories in News on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

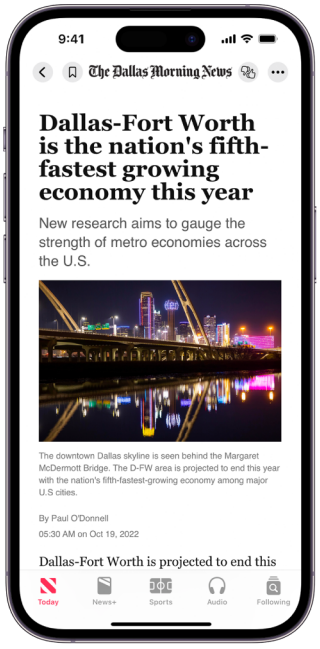
Previous
Use News widgets

Next
Read stories

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Read stories in News on iPhone

You can read and share the stories in the News app on iPhone.



Note: Apple News and Apple News+ aren't available in all countries or regions.

Read a story

Tap a story to read it. While viewing a story, you have these options:

- *Read the next story:* Swipe left.
- *Read the previous story:* Swipe right.
- *Return to the list of stories:* Swipe from the left edge or tap ‹ at the top left of the screen.
- *Tell News what stories you prefer:* When viewing a story, tap , then choose Suggest More or Suggest Less. Your feedback is taken into account for future recommendations.
- *Change the text size:* Tap , tap Text Size, then tap the smaller or larger letter to change the text size in the story and all other stories in the channel. (Not available in all channels.)
- *Share a story:* Tap , tap Share Story, then choose a sharing option, such as Messages or Mail.
- *Report a concern:* If you believe that a story you're viewing is mislabeled, inappropriate, offensive, or doesn't display properly, tap , tap Report a Concern, then choose a concern.

In Apple News+ issues in PDF format, the Suggest More, Suggest Less, Save Story, and Report a Concern options aren't available. See Browse and read Apple News+ stories and issues on iPhone.

Read stories shared with you

When a friend shares stories with you using the Messages app, you can easily find them in the Shared with You section in Apple News. (News must be turned on in Settings > Messages > Shared with You, and your friend must be in your contacts list in Contacts.)

1. In the News app, tap Following.
2. Tap Shared with You, then do any of the following:
   - Tap a shared story to read it in News.
   - Tap the name of the person who shared a story to reply to them in the Messages app. You can also reply while reading the story—tap the name shown below the channel's logo.

See also

Follow your favorite teams with My Sports on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
See news stories chosen just for you

Next
Follow your favorite teams with My Sports

Support > iPhone User Guide > Read stories in News on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Follow your favorite teams with My Sports on iPhone

In My Sports in the News app, you can follow your favorite sports, teams, leagues, and athletes; receive stories from top sports publications, local newspapers, and more; access scores, schedules, and standings for the top professional and college leagues; and watch highlights.

Set up iPhone to use My Sports

Before you can use My Sports, you must do the following:

- *Sign in with your Apple ID:* Go to Settings > Sign in to your iPhone.
- *Sign in to the App Store:* Go to Settings > [*your name*], then tap Media & Purchases.

Get started with My Sports

Before you can use My Sports, you must allow syncing between Apple News and the Apple TV app. When you allow syncing, teams you follow in News are followed automatically in the Apple TV app, and vice versa.

1. Tap Sports at the bottom of the screen, tap Get Started, then tap Pick Your Teams.
2. On the Manage My Sports screen, tap next to sports, teams, leagues, and major sporting events to follow them.

   Sports topics you've previously expressed interest in appear below Suggested.
3. To search for a sports topic, tap the search field, enter a search term such as a team's name or location, tap next to a result, then tap Done.

View My Sports

Tap Sports at the bottom of the screen to view comprehensive sports coverage.

Note: To see the most important sports coverage at a glance, tap Today, then swipe up to the My Sports group.

You can also find the sports topics you follow in the Following tab.

Browse all available sports

1. Tap Sports, then tap All Sports at the top of the screen.
2. Tap a sport or league to go to its feed.
3. To follow that sport or league, tap at the top of the screen.

Manage sports topics

You can follow and unfollow sports topics after you've set up My Sports.

Tap Sports, tap ⋯ at the top right, then tap Manage My Sports, where you can do any of the following:

- *Follow topics:* Tap ⊕ next to each topic you want to follow, then tap Done.
- *Unfollow topics:* Tap ⊖ next to topics you want to unfollow, tap Unfollow, then tap Done.
- *Reorder topics:* Touch and hold ☰, drag topics to the order you prefer, then tap Done.

Show scores and schedules, highlights, and more

My Sports offers scores and schedules for your favorite teams, stats and stories for individual games and events, video highlights, and stories related to your favorite teams.

Tap Sports, then do any of the following:

- *Show scores and schedules:* Tap Scores & Schedule, then tap the Schedule or Scores tab.
- *Show stats and stories for individual games:* In My Sports, tap the tile for a game or event below Scores & Schedule.
- *Watch a live game:* Tap Scores & Schedule, tap the Schedule tab, then tap Open in Apple TV (before or after the game) or Watch in Apple TV (during a live game) next to a game. If the game is available in your area and you've subscribed to a service that broadcasts the game, you can watch it in the Apple TV app or in a supported app.

  Note: Supported sports apps may require a separate subscription. Not all games are available in all areas.
- *View highlights:* Swipe up to the Highlights section, then tap ▶ in the thumbnail. Tap › to see more highlights.

  Note: Highlights are available only for select leagues.
- *Read sports stories related to topics you follow:* Swipe up to For You, then tap a story.

Get My Sports notifications

Receive notifications about teams you follow.

1. Tap Following, swipe to the bottom of the screen, then tap Notifications & Email below Manage.
2. Turn on notifications for My Sports.

Note: To receive My Sports notifications, you must allow syncing between Apple News and the Apple TV app, and follow at least one sports topic.

Remove the My Sports group from Today

1. In Today, swipe up to My Sports, then tap ⋯.
2. Tap Block from Today.

When you block My Sports, the group no longer appears in your Today feed.

Stop syncing My Sports

To stop syncing between Apple News and the Apple TV app, go to Settings ⚙ > News, then turn off Sync My Sports.

Note: When you turn off Sync My Sports, you can no longer use My Sports.

Listen to Apple News Today on iPhone

In the News app, you can listen to Apple News Today, an audio briefing of the day's top stories hosted by Apple News editors. With an Apple News+ subscription, you can also listen to audio versions of select Apple News+ stories in the News app and in the Podcasts app.

Note: Apple News, Apple News+, and the audio feature aren't available in all countries or regions.

Play Apple News Today

1. Tap, then tap an episode of Apple News Today.

   Apple News Today briefings also appear in the Today feed below Listen Now.

2. For more audio controls, tap the mini player at the bottom to open the full-screen player.

   See Listen to audio stories.

3. To return to the mini player, swipe down to minimize the full-screen player.

   To close the full-screen player, tap, then tap Close Audio Player. To close the mini player, tap.

If you're not an Apple News+ subscriber, a preview of an Apple News+ audio story plays when the briefing concludes.

Get Apple News Today show notes notifications

1. Tap Following, swipe to the bottom of the screen, then tap Notifications & Email below Manage.
2. Turn on notifications for Apple News Today.

See also

Subscribe to Apple News+ on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Subscribe to Apple News+ on iPhone

In the News app, Apple News+ lets you enjoy hundreds of magazines, popular newspapers, and content from premium digital publishers directly on your iPhone.

You can subscribe to Apple News+ or to Apple One Premier, which includes Apple News+ and other Apple services. See the Apple Support article Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One.

As a subscriber, you have access to current and available back issues of publications, you can listen to audio stories, and you can download content for offline reading and share stories and issues with others. You can also solve crossword and crossword mini puzzles.

As a nonsubscriber, you can browse, but not read, a collection of story headlines and publications personalized just for you, view the entire Apple News+ catalog, and browse issues by category—Entertainment and Food, for example. Nonsubscribers may be able to play a few puzzles for free and listen to short previews of audio stories. To read stories and issues, listen to complete Apple News+ audio stories, and play daily puzzles, start a free trial or subscribe.

Note: Apple News, Apple News+, Apple One, puzzles, and the audio feature aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Subscribe to Apple News+

Tap the subscription button shown in a magazine, puzzle, or story in News, then follow the onscreen instructions.

You may be asked to sign in with your Apple ID.

Share Apple News+ with family members

When you subscribe to Apple News+ or Apple One Premier, you can use Family Sharing to share Apple News+ with up to five other family members. Your family group members don't need to do anything—Apple News+ is available to them the first time they open the News app after your subscription begins.

If you join a family group that subscribes to Apple News+ or Apple One Premier, and you already subscribe, your subscription isn't renewed on your next billing date; instead, you use the group's subscription. If you join a family group that doesn't subscribe, the group uses your subscription.

Note: To stop sharing Apple News+ with a family group, you can cancel the subscription, leave a Family Sharing group, or remove a member from a Family Sharing group.

Cancel or change your Apple News+ subscription

Tap Following, swipe up, tap Subscriptions below Manage, then do one of the following:

- *Apple News+ only:* Tap Cancel Subscription, then follow the onscreen instructions.
- *Apple News+ and individual channels:* Select Apple News+, tap Cancel Subscription, then follow the onscreen instructions.

If you subscribe to Apple News+ as part of an Apple One Premier subscription and want to cancel your subscription, see the Apple Support article If you want to cancel a subscription from Apple.

Browse and read Apple News+ stories and issues on iPhone

To get the most out of Apple News+, follow your favorite publications, and browse through current and back issues.

Note: Apple News and Apple News+ aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Follow and unfollow publications

You follow an Apple News+ publication by following its channel. Do any of the following:

- Tap Today or News+ at the bottom of the screen, tap a story or issue from an Apple News+ publication, tap the publication's name at the top of the screen, then tap ⊕.
- Tap Following, enter the publication's name in the search field, then tap ⊕.
- Tap News+, swipe left on the categories near the top of the screen, tap Newspapers or Catalog, then tap Follow below the publication's cover.

To unfollow a publication, tap Following, swipe left, then tap Unfollow.

Browse Apple News+ issues and stories

Stories and issues from Apple News+ appear in the Today feed and channel feeds. Stories (but not issues) can also be found in topic feeds and search results. To access entire issues, tap the News+ tab at the bottom of the screen, where you can do any of the following:

- *View all available publications:* Near the top of the screen, swipe the options left, then tap Catalog.
- *View a specific content category:* Swipe left on the options near the top of the screen, tap Catalog, tap Featured, then tap a category such as Money & Business, Entertainment, or Sports.
- *View new and recent issues:* Tap My Magazines. By default, new issues appear near the top of the screen. The issue you've most recently read appears first. If you've recently downloaded an issue, it appears next. To choose a different sorting option, tap ⋯, then tap Sort by Name or Sort by Date.

  Note: If you block an Apple News+ publication, its issues are removed from My Magazines.

To open a story or issue, do any of the following:

- Tap an issue cover in News+ or the Today feed.
- Tap Following, enter the name of the Apple News+ channel in the search field, tap the channel, then tap the issue.
- Follow a link to a story or issue that someone shared with you.

Access back issues

Do any of the following:

- Tap News+, tap My Magazines, tap ••• below the issue cover (or touch and hold the cover), then tap Browse Back Catalog.

- Tap a channel you follow, or search for a channel, then tap it. Below Recent Issues, swipe to the issue you want to read, then tap to open it. Tap Issues near the top of the screen to browse all available issues.

Read Apple News+ issues

Open the issue, where you can do any of the following:

- *View the table of contents:* Tap the cover thumbnail at the bottom left of the screen.
- *Navigate to a story:* In an issue in Apple News Format, tap the story link in the table of contents. In a PDF issue, tap the thumbnail of the page you want to view.
- *Page through an issue:* Swipe left to go to the next story, or swipe right to go to the previous story.
- *Change the text size:* In stories in Apple News Format, tap ⋯, choose Text Size, then tap the smaller or larger letter to change the text size in the story and all other stories in the channel. In PDF issues, pinch to zoom.

If you sign out in Settings > [*your name*] > Media & Purchases, you can only access free stories—you must sign back in to access stories and download issues that require an Apple News+ subscription.

See also

Download Apple News+ issues on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Subscribe to Apple News+

Next
Download Apple News+ issues

Support > iPhone User Guide > Browse and read Apple News+ stories and issues on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Download Apple News+ issues on iPhone

With the News app and an Apple News+ subscription, you can download issues to read later.

Note: Apple News and Apple News+ aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Download an Apple News+ issue

1. Do any of the following:

   - Tap Today, then swipe down to My Magazines.
   - Tap News+, then tap My Magazines. You can also tap Catalog near the top of the screen, then tap a stack of magazines.
   - Tap Following, then tap a magazine channel you follow.
   - Tap Following, enter the magazine channel name in the search field, then tap the channel.

2. When you find the issue you want, tap ••• below the issue cover (or touch and hold the cover), then tap Download Issue.

   To download multiple issues, tap My Magazines, tap , tap Select, tap the issues you want to download, then tap .

When you subscribe to Apple News+, the most recent issues of magazines you follow are automatically downloaded when iPhone is plugged into power, has sufficient storage space, and is connected to Wi-Fi. If you don't want to download issues automatically, go to Settings > News, then turn off Download Issues. You can download issues only if you're an Apple News+ subscriber.

Read a downloaded issue

1. Tap the News+ tab.
2. Tap Downloaded near the top of the screen, then tap an issue.

Manually remove an Apple News+ issue

Under most conditions, automatically downloaded issues are removed from iPhone after 30 days, but you can remove them sooner.

Tap the News+ tab, then do any of the following:

1. Tap Downloaded near the top of the screen, tap ••• below the issue cover (or touch and hold the cover), tap Remove, then tap Remove Download.

   The issue is removed from the Downloaded tab, but its cover remains in My Magazines so you can easily access the issue again.

2. Tap My Magazines near the top of the screen, tap ••• below the issue cover (or touch and hold the cover), tap Remove, then tap Remove from My Magazines.

The issue's cover and content are removed from iPhone and from any other devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID and where News is turned on in iCloud preferences or settings.

To remove multiple issues, tap My Magazines or Downloaded near the top of the screen, tap ⋯, tap Select, tap the issues you want to remove, then tap 🗑.

To remove all downloaded issues, tap Following > History, tap Clear, then tap Clear All.

When storage on iPhone is limited, issues may be automatically removed sooner than 30 days. See the Apple Support article Read magazines with Apple News+.

See also

Listen to audio stories in News on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Browse and read Apple News+ stories and issues

Next
Listen to audio stories

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Listen to audio stories in News on iPhone

If you subscribe to Apple News+, you can listen to audio versions of select News+ in the News app. You can also listen to select Apple News+ audio stories in the Podcasts app.

Note: Apple News, Apple News+, and the audio feature aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Browse audio stories

Tap 🎧 to show Apple News+ audio stories and Apple News Today. If you're a subscriber, you have access to the following:

- *Editors' Picks:* Features audio stories chosen by the Apple News editors as well as the latest episodes of Apple News Today and Apple News In Conversation.
- *Up Next:* Stories you're currently listening to or have added to the Up Next queue.
- *For You:* Stories recommended to you based on your interests.
- *Story groups:* Dynamic collections of stories curated by the Apple News editors, based on a topic or theme, such as space exploration or stories to accompany your commute.
- *More to Explore:* Links to all audio stories, Apple News Today episodes, recently played stories, and story categories such as Arts & Entertainment, News & Politics, and Sports.

To learn more about a story before listening to it, tap See Details.

If you're not an Apple News+ subscriber, you can hear previews of audio stories in Editors' Picks, Audio Stories For You, and in story groups. You can also listen to full episodes of Apple News Today and Apple News In Conversation.

Play audio stories

1. Tap 🎧, then tap a story.
2. For more playback controls, tap the mini player at the bottom to open the full-screen player.
3. To return to the mini player, swipe down to minimize the full-screen player.

   To close the full-screen player, tap ⋯, then tap Close Audio Player. To close the mini player, tap ⊗.

   Audio stories can also appear in a feed. To listen to the story, tap Play Now (Apple News+ subscription required). You can also tap the story to read it, then tap Play Now at the top of the story. If you're not a subscriber, you can listen to a preview of the story.

   Use any of the following controls:

Control	Description
▶	Play
⏸	Pause
⏭	Next story
15	Jump back 15 seconds
1×	Choose a faster or slower playback speed
	Stream audio to other devices
⋯	Choose more actions such as place a story next or last in the queue, read a story, or share it

---

Add stories to Up Next

Do one of the following:

- In the Audio tab or a news feed, tap •••, then choose Play Next or Play Last.
- At the top of a story, touch and hold Play Now, then choose Play Next or Play Last.

  To continue listening from your most recent reading or listening position, tap Play Next from Here or Play Last from Here.

To reorder stories in the queue, tap See All, touch and hold ☰, then drag stories to the order you prefer.

Note: By default, if you're an Apple News+ subscriber, audio stories in your queue are automatically downloaded when iPhone is plugged into power, has sufficient storage space, and is connected to Wi-Fi. If you don't want them to download automatically, go to Settings ⚙ > News, then turn off Download Audio.

Read, share, and remove audio stories

Do any of the following:

- *Read, share, and more:* Tap •••, then choose an option.
- *Remove stories from the Up Next queue or For You:* Touch and hold the story, then select Remove.

Note: Some of these options are also available when you swipe a story left or right.

When listening to a story, open the full-screen player, then tap ••• to see a list of similar options.

Solve crossword puzzles in Apple News on iPhone

In iOS 17 and later, Apple News+ subscribers can solve daily crossword and crossword mini puzzles. Nonsubscribers may be able to play a few puzzles for free.

Note: Puzzles are not available in all countries or regions.

View the Puzzles feed

To view the Puzzles feed, do one of the following:

- Tap Following, then tap Puzzles.
- Tap Today, then tap the Puzzles group.

Follow the feed for a puzzle type

After opening the Puzzles feed, tap Crossword or Crossword Mini, tap ⋯, then tap Follow.

A Puzzles category appears in Following, with the puzzle types appearing below. To make them favorites, tap Edit, tap ★ next to a puzzle type, then tap Done.

Choose a puzzle

You can select the kind of puzzle you want to solve—crossword or crossword mini. You can choose to solve new puzzles or puzzles from the archive. Each puzzle has a difficulty rating—easy, moderate, or challenging.

1. Go to the Puzzles group in the Today feed, the Puzzles feed, or the feed for a puzzle type (crossword or crossword mini).
2. Tap a puzzle to open it.

Solve puzzles

You can navigate and solve crossword and crossword mini puzzles in multiple ways. For example, you can display puzzles in the traditional grid view, or instead choose to show clues and answers in a list. You can tap squares to select words, or hide the keyboard and choose clues from a list.

- *Grid view:* Tap a square to show the clue below the puzzle, then use the keyboard to enter the answer. You move to other squares as you type. You can also tap < or > next to the clue to move to the previous or next clue.

  With the keyboard showing, switch from across to down, or vice versa, by tapping the selected square again or tapping the clue.

  To hide the keyboard and show a scrollable list of all the clues, tap ⌨. Tap a clue to show the keyboard and select the corresponding answer in the grid.

- *List view:* To show clues and answers in a list rather than the traditional grid, tap . Tap Across or Down to show those clues. Tap to return to grid view.

Note: You don't have to solve puzzles all at once; you can return at any time. The timer pauses while you're away.

Puzzle options

If you're unsure of an answer you've entered, you can get a little help. Tap , where you find the following options:

- *Autocheck:* Tap Autocheck to check the letters you've entered, and any letters you enter later. Any incorrect letters are marked with a slash.
- *Check Square, Check Word, Check Puzzle:* Tap an option to see any incorrect letters, as indicated by slashes.
- *Reveal:* Tap Reveal, then tap Square, Word, or Puzzle to display the correct answer.

  Note: When you reveal the entire puzzle, it's completely filled in and considered to be solved.
- *Clear Puzzle:* If you'd like a fresh start, you can clear a puzzle's answers and reset the timer.

Puzzle settings

Tap , then tap Settings to change these settings:

- *Show Timer:* Tap Show Timer to show or hide the timer that appears above each puzzle. (You can also tap to show or hide it.)
- *Highlight Linked Clues:* Some puzzles have clues that reference other clues. You can choose whether to highlight the words that correspond to these clues.
- *Skip Filled Squares:* By default, after entering a letter, the next empty square in the puzzle is selected. Turn this off to select the square to the right or the square below, whether or not it's filled.
- *At End of Word:* Choose Advance If Complete, Always Advance, or Don't Advance.

You can also tap to learn more about the puzzle, and share it with Messages, Mail, and more.

Get Puzzles notifications

1. Tap Following, swipe to the bottom of the screen, then tap Notifications & Email below Manage.
2. Turn on notifications for Puzzles.

Remove the Puzzles group from Today

1. In Today, swipe up to Puzzles, then tap .
2. Tap Block from Today.

When you block Puzzles, the group no longer appears in your Today feed.

See also

Search for stories in News on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Search for stories in News on iPhone

The News app keeps track of a wide variety of channels, topics, and stories, which makes it easy to find content that interests you.

Search for channels, topics, or stories

1. Tap Following, then tap the search field.
2. Enter any of the following:
   - The name of a channel, such as CNN or *Washington Post*
   - A topic, such as fashion, business, or politics
   - An event, such as an upcoming meteor shower

In the results list, tap to follow the channel or topic.

See also

Save stories in News on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Save stories in News on iPhone

In the News app, you can save stories to read later, online or offline.

Save a story

When reading a story, tap to save it.

To read a saved story, tap Following, tap Saved Stories, then tap the story. To delete a saved story, swipe the story left.

Check and edit your reading history

Tap Following, tap History, then do any of the following:

- *Read a story:* Tap the story.
- *Delete a story:* Swipe the story left.
- *Remove your reading history:* Tap Clear, then tap Clear History.
- *Remove the information used to create recommendations:* Tap Clear, then tap Clear Recommendations.
- *Clear everything:* Tap Clear, then tap Clear All.

  Your News history, recommendation information, saved stories, and downloaded issues and audio stories are removed from all your devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

  Note: Story titles remain in Saved Stories, but you must be online to read the stories.

  If you clear recommendations, and Show in App is on in Settings > News > Siri & Search, recommendations based on your Safari and app usage and your reading habits in News are cleared. To prevent News from suggesting stories based on your Safari and app usage, turn off Show in App.

When you clear your history, the identifier used by Apple News to report statistics to news publishers is also reset. You can reset the identifier at any time by going to Settings > News, then turning on Reset Identifier.

See also

How to subscribe to individual channels on iPhone

How to subscribe to individual channels on iPhone

In the News app, in addition to subscribing to Apple News+, you can subscribe to individual publications from select publishers. There are three ways to access these subscriptions in News:

- *Subscribe within News:* You can purchase a subscription directly in News. In a channel that offers subscriptions, tap the subscription button.
- *Access an existing subscription purchased from a publisher's app:* If you've downloaded a publisher's app from the App Store, and subscriptions you've bought as in-app purchases are also available in News, you're automatically granted access in News. See the Apple Support article Buy additional app features with in-app purchases and subscriptions.
- *Access an existing subscription purchased from a publisher:* If you've purchased a subscription directly from a publisher's website or from the publisher's app on a non-Apple device, the publisher may allow you to sign in to your account in News to access your subscription there.

  To sign in, tap a story that requires a subscription to read, then tap Already a Subscriber? Enter the user name and password for your existing subscription.

When you subscribe to a channel, you automatically follow it, and stories from the channel appear in the Today feed.

To cancel a subscription, tap the Following tab, swipe up, tap Subscriptions below the Manage heading, select the subscription, then tap Cancel Subscription.

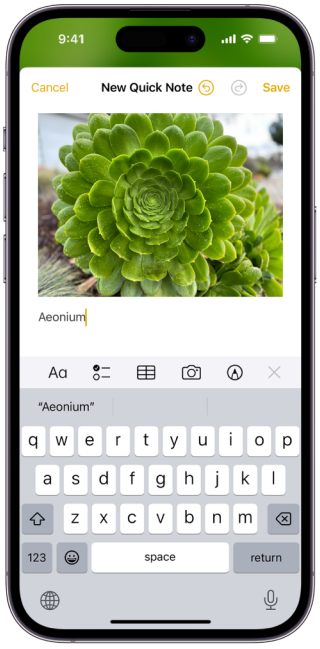
See also

Get started with News on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Get started with Notes on iPhone

Use the Notes app to quickly capture your thoughts. You can add images and sketches, make checklists, or even scan documents. And with iCloud, your notes stay up to date on all your devices wherever you go.

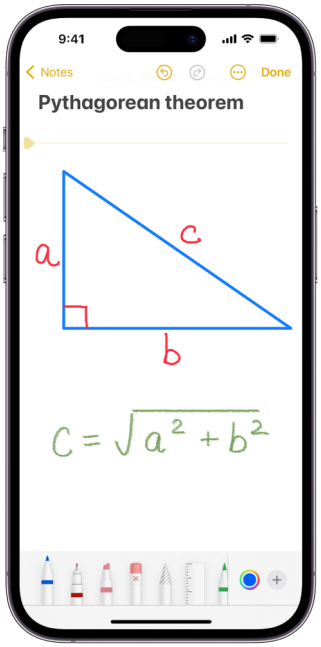


Jot down a quick note

Use Quick Notes to jot down information from any app or screen. Tap, then tap New Quick Note. Add images, handwriting, links, and more.

Add sketches and more

Tap, then draw or write with your finger. You can choose from a variety of Markup tools and colors and draw straight lines with the ruler.

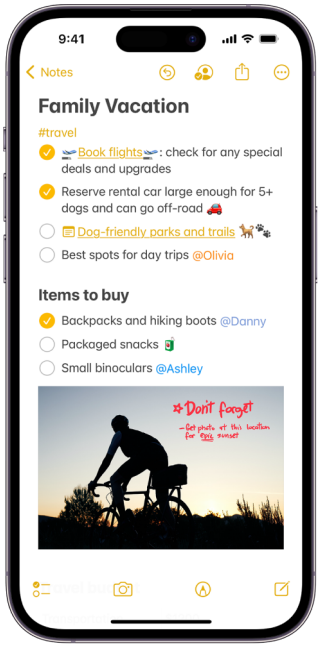


Scan documents

In a note, tap , choose Scan Documents, then position iPhone so that the document page appears on the screen. After iPhone scans the page, you can save it in the note, mark it up, and even add your signature.

Organize with tags and Smart Folders

Use tags as a fast and flexible way to categorize and organize your notes. When you create or edit a note, type # followed by the tag name or choose a tag from the menu above the keyboard. You can add multiple tags to a note and easily search and filter your notes across folders.



Want to learn more?

- Create Quick Notes anywhere on iPhone
- Draw or write in Notes on iPhone
- Scan text and documents in Notes using the iPhone camera
- Organize your notes with tags on iPhone

The availability of features may vary depending on your language and country or region.

Helpful? Yes No

Add or remove accounts in Notes on iPhone

In the Notes app, you can use multiple accounts—such as iCloud, enterprise managed iCloud, Microsoft Exchange, Google, and Yahoo—and keep all your notes in one place. Your notes stay up to date on all your devices that use the same accounts. You can also have an On My iPhone account for notes you keep only on this device.

Note: All Notes features described in this guide are available when you use iCloud and the On My iPhone account. Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

Keep your notes up to date on all your devices with iCloud

Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud, then turn on Notes.

Your iCloud notes—and any changes you make to them—appear on your iPhone, iPad, and Mac where you're signed in with your Apple ID.

Add other accounts

You can use the Notes app to manage your notes in other accounts, such as Microsoft Exchange, Google, and Yahoo.

1. Go to Settings > Notes > Accounts > Add Account.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose an account provider, then enter your account information.
   - If your account provider isn't listed, tap Other, tap Add Mail Account, enter your email account information, then turn on Notes for that account.

Set up an On My iPhone account

Notes in this account appear only on your iPhone, and they're included in your iPhone backups to iCloud.

Go to Settings > Notes, then turn on "On My iPhone" Account.

Remove an account

When you remove an account, the notes in that account no longer appear on your iPhone. The notes remain in your internet account (for example, iCloud.com or Google) and any other devices you had already set up.

- *Temporarily stop using an account:* Go to Settings > Notes > Accounts, tap the account, then turn off Notes.

  To view the notes in that account on your iPhone again, turn on Notes.

- *Delete an account:* Go to Settings > Notes > Accounts, tap the account, then tap Sign Out (for an iCloud account) or Delete Account (for other accounts).

If you don’t see Sign Out or Delete Account, your account may be managed by your organization. See an administrator for removal instructions.

See also

Change your Notes settings on iPhone

Create and format notes on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

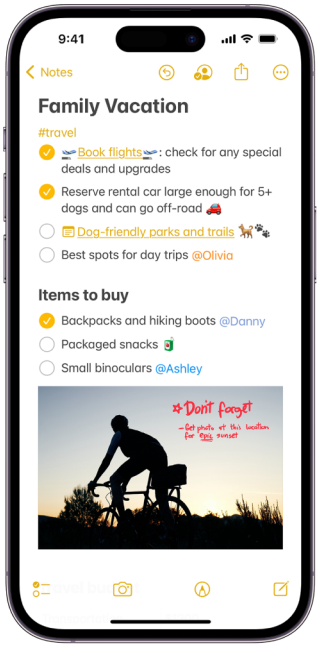
Previous
Get started with Notes

Next
Create and format notes

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Create and format notes on iPhone

Use the Notes app to jot down quick thoughts or organize detailed information with checklists, images, web links, scanned documents, handwritten notes, and sketches.



Make a new note

1. Open the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. Tap, then enter your text.

   The first line of the note becomes the note's title.
3. To save the note, tap Done.

Format text

1. In a note, select the text you want to format.
2. Tap Aa, then choose a style such as Heading, Monostyled, bold or italic font, block quote, bulleted or numbered list, and more.

Tip: To choose a default style for the first line in all new notes, go to Settings > Notes > New Notes Start With.

Add a checklist

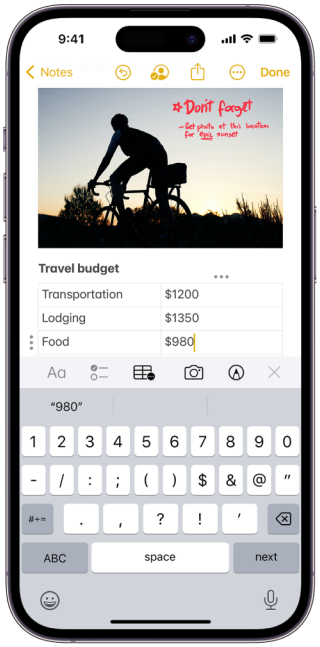
In a note, tap, then do any of the following:

- *Add items to the list:* Enter text, then tap return to enter the next item.
- *Increase or decrease the indentation:* Swipe right or left on the item.

- *Mark an item as completed:* Tap the empty circle next to the item to add a checkmark.
- *Reorder an item:* Touch and hold the empty circle or checkmark next to the item, then drag the item to a new position in the list.
- *Manage items in the list:* Tap the list to see the menu, tap >, tap Checklist, then tap Check All, Uncheck All, Delete Checked, or Move Checked to Bottom.

To automatically sort checked items to the bottom in all your notes, go to Settings > Notes > Sort Checked Items, then tap Automatically.

Add or edit a table



In a note, tap , then do any of the following:

- *Enter text:* Tap a cell, then enter your text. To start another line of text in the cell, touch and hold the Shift key and tap next.
- *Move to the next cell:* Tap next. When you reach the last cell, tap next to start a new row.
- *Format a row or column:* Tap the three dots at the beginning of the row or at the top of the column. Tap the three dots again, tap Format, then choose a style, such as bold or italic.
- *Add or delete a row or column:* Tap the three dots at the beginning of the row or at the top of the column. Tap the three dots again, then choose to add or delete.
- *Move a row or column:* Tap the three dots at the beginning of the row or at the top of the column, then drag it to a new position.
- *See more columns:* If the table becomes wider than your screen, swipe right or left on the table to see all the columns.

To remove the table and convert its contents to text, tap a cell in the table, tap , then tap Convert to Text.

See also

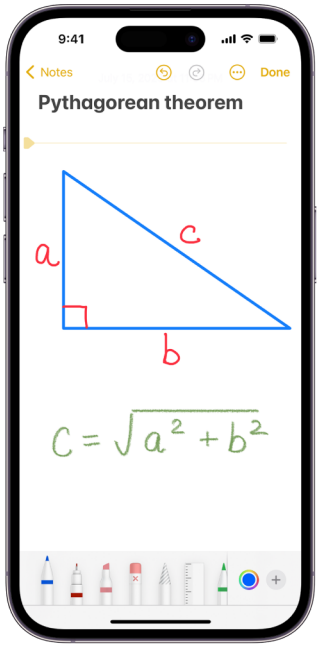
Add photos, videos, and more to notes on iPhone

Create Quick Notes anywhere on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Draw or write in Notes on iPhone

Use the Notes app to draw a sketch or jot a handwritten note with your finger. You can choose from a variety of Markup tools and colors and draw straight lines with the ruler.



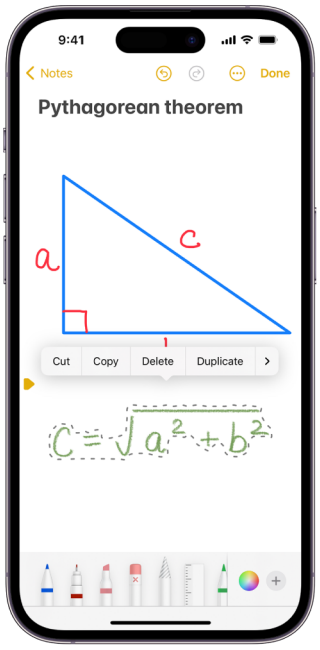
Draw or write in a note

1. Open the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. In a note, tap, then draw or write with your finger.
3. Do any of the following:
   - *Change color or tools:* Use the Markup tools.
   - *Adjust the handwriting area:* Drag the resize handle (on the left) up or down.

Tip: You can search handwritten text (in supported languages) in Notes. If the note doesn't have a title, the first line of handwritten text becomes the suggested title. To edit the title, scroll to the top of the note, then tap Edit.

Select and edit drawings and handwriting

With Smart Selection, you can select drawings and handwriting. You can move, copy, or delete the selection within the note. You can even paste it as typed text in another note or app.



Note: Smart Selection and handwriting transcription work if the system language of your iPhone is set to English, Simplified Chinese, or Traditional Chinese in Settings > General > Language & Region > iPhone Language.

1. In the tool palette, tap the Lasso tool (between the eraser and ruler).
2. Select objects by circling them with the Lasso.
3. Tap the selection, then choose Cut, Copy, Delete, Duplicate, Copy as Text, Insert Space Above, Translate, or Straighten.

   Tip: If you choose Copy as Text, you can paste the transcribed text in another note or another app.

Drag images from other apps

You can drag images from other apps to a note and combine them with handwritten and drawn content. After you add an image to the drawing area, you can reposition and resize the image.

See also

Add photos, videos, and more to notes on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Create and format notes

Next
Add photos, videos, and more

Support > iPhone User Guide > Draw or write in Notes on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Table of Contents

Add photos, videos, and more to notes on iPhone

In the Notes app, you can add photos, videos, and info from other apps, such as maps, links, and documents, to a note.

Add a photo or video

1. Open the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. In a note, tap .
3. Choose a photo or video from your photo library, or take a new photo or video.

Tip: To draw on a photo, tap the photo, then tap .

To save photos and videos taken in Notes to the Photos app, go to Settings > Notes, then turn on Save to Photos.

Change the preview size of attachments

You can change the preview size of the following:

- *A single attachment:* Touch and hold the attachment, tap View As, then choose Small or Large.
- *All attachments in a note:* Tap , tap Attachment View, then choose Set All to Small or Set All to Large.

Add info from another app to a note

You can add information from another app as an attachment to a note—for example, a location in Maps, a webpage in Safari, a PDF in Files, or a screenshot.

1. In the other app, open the item you want to share (for example, a map or webpage).
2. Tap Share or , then tap Notes or New Quick Note.

View all attachments in Notes

1. Above the notes list, tap , then tap View Attachments to see thumbnails of photos, links, documents, and other attachments. (Attachments in locked notes aren't shown.)
2. To go to a note with a specific attachment, tap the attachment thumbnail, then tap Show in Note.

See also

Scan text and documents in Notes using the iPhone camera

Work with PDFs in Notes on iPhone

Table of Contents

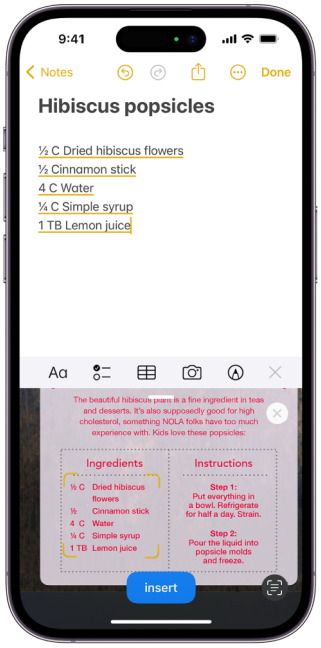
Scan text and documents in Notes using the iPhone camera

In the Notes app, you can use the camera to scan text and documents.

Scan text into a note

You can insert scanned text using the camera (on supported models; in supported languages).

1. In a note, tap, then tap Scan Text.
2. Position iPhone so that the text appears within the camera frame.



3. Drag or use grab points to select text, then tap Insert.

Scan a document

1. In a note, tap, then choose Scan Documents.
2. Position iPhone so that the document page appears on the screen; iPhone automatically captures the page.

To manually capture the page, tap ◯ or press a volume button. To turn the flash on or off, tap ⚡.

3. Scan additional pages, then tap Save when you're done.

   The document is saved as a PDF in the note.

See also

Work with PDFs in Notes on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Add photos, videos, and more

Next
Work with PDFs

Support › iPhone User Guide › Scan text and documents in Notes using the iPhone camera

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Work with PDFs in Notes on iPhone

In the Notes app, you can attach, view, edit, and collaborate on PDFs, including documents you scanned into a note. Annotate or sketch directly on PDFs and scanned documents in your note. You can even preview multiple PDFs in the same note.

Attach a PDF to a note

To attach a PDF from an app such as Files or Mail, do any of the following:

- Drag the file into a note.
- Touch and hold the file, tap Share, tap Notes, then choose a note.

View and edit a PDF in a note

1. Open the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. In the note with the PDF, tap , then do any of the following:
   - *Change the preview size:* Tap View As, then choose Small, Medium, or Large.
   - *View in full screen:* Tap Quick Look.
   - *Copy, share, rename, or delete the PDF:* Choose an action.
3. When using the Medium or Large preview size, you can also do any of the following:
   - *Show or hide thumbnails:* Tap .
   - *Zoom in and see more:* Pinch the screen or swipe right to see more pages.
   - *Edit a page:* Tap the thumbnail for the page, tap , then choose an action such as Rotate Left, Rotate Right, Filters, Crop Page, or Insert Blank Page. (Filters and Crop Page are supported only in scanned documents.)

Annotate a PDF in a note

- *Small preview size:* Tap the PDF to open it, then tap .
- *Medium and large preview sizes:* Tap .

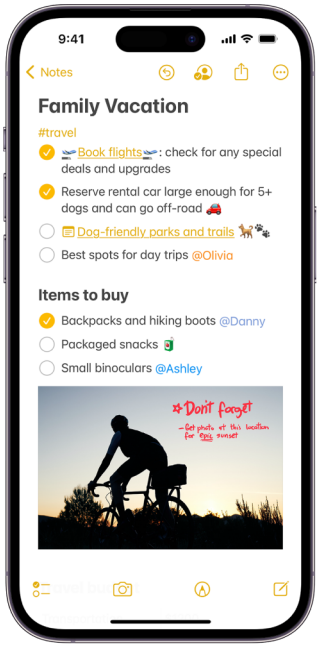
See Write and draw in documents with Markup on iPhone.

Collaborate with others

Get real-time updates when you collaborate on a note with other people. As you mark up a document, draw a diagram, or add a sticker, your collaborators can see the changes on their devices.

Add links in Notes on iPhone

In the Notes app, you can add links to webpages. You can also link to related notes, like a trip itinerary and a list of recommended restaurants. When you add street and email addresses, phone numbers, and dates automatically become underlined text that you can tap to take action.



Link to a webpage

1. Open the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. In the note where you want to insert a link, do either of the following:

   - Select the text, then tap Add Link. The selected text becomes the text link. Enter the URL to specify the link destination.
   - Tap to place the insertion point, tap Add Link, then enter the URL and the name (optional).

Link to another note using the title

You can create a link to another note using the title of the target note. If the title of the target note changes, the link text updates to the new title.

1. In the note where you want to add a link, tap the insertion point, then tap Add Link. Or simply type “>>”.
2. Enter the title of the target note, then choose a note or create a new note.

To edit or remove the link, touch and hold the link, then choose an action.

Link to another note using custom link text

Instead of using the title of the target note, you can use custom link text. If the title of the target note changes, the link text doesn't change.

1. In the note where you want to add a link, select the link text, then tap Add Link.
2. Enter the title of the target note, then choose a note.

Take action on addresses, phone numbers, dates, and more

In your notes, an underline appears below text that's recognized as a street or email address, phone number, date, or other data. Tap the underlined text to take action on it. For example, you can see a street address in Maps, compose an email, call a phone number, add a calendar event, or convert units and currency.

Note: Data detection is available when the system language of your iPhone is set to a supported language in Settings > General > Language & Region. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

See also

Create Quick Notes anywhere on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Work with PDFs

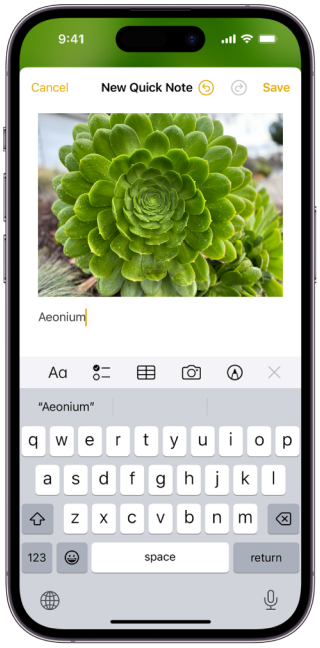
Next
Create Quick Notes

Support > iPhone User Guide > Add links in Notes on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Create Quick Notes anywhere on iPhone

You can use Quick Notes to jot down information over any app or screen on iPhone. Add links, images, tags, and mentions to a Quick Note so you can get to important names, numbers, and ideas easily. When you highlight text in Safari or add a link from an app, you see a Quick Note thumbnail next time you visit the site, taking you right to what you were viewing before.



You can access all your Quick Notes in the Notes app. And when you make a Quick Note on your iPhone, you can see the note on your iPad and Mac, too.

Make a Quick Note

To start a Quick Note from any app, do any of the following:

- Tap, then tap New Quick Note.
- Open Control Center, then tap.

  (If you don't see, add it to Control Center—go to Settings > Control Center, then choose Quick Note.)

View and organize Quick Notes

To view all your Quick Notes in the Notes app, tap Quick Notes in the folders list.

Note: You can't lock a Quick Note unless you move it to a different folder.

If you move an individual Quick Note to a different folder, it becomes a standard note and no longer appears as a Quick Note in other apps.

Search your notes on iPhone

In the Notes app, you can search through all your notes for typed and handwritten text, objects in images, and text in scanned documents. You can also search for text within a note.

Search for text, objects, and more in all your notes

You can search for tags, typed and handwritten text (in supported languages), objects that appear in images, and text in scanned documents.

Note: If a note is locked, only its title appears in the search results.

1. Swipe down on the notes list to reveal the search field.
2. Tap the search field, then enter what you're looking for. You can also choose a suggested search, such as "Notes with Drawings," then enter additional text to refine your search.

   If a note is locked, only its title appears in the search results. The search includes handwritten text (in supported languages), photos, and scanned documents.

Search within a note for typed and handwritten text

1. Open the note you want to search.
2. Tap, then tap Find in Note.
3. Type the text you're looking for in the search field.

See also

Organize your notes with Smart Folders on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Table of Contents

Organize your notes in folders on iPhone

In the Notes app, you can organize your notes into folders and pin the important notes to the top of the notes list.

Create, rename, move, or delete folders

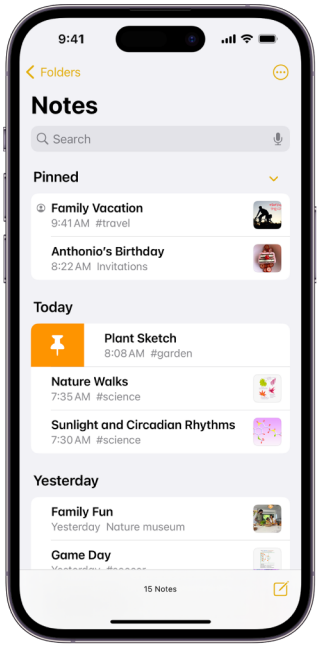
In the folders list, do any of the following:

- *Create a folder:* Tap, choose an account (if you have more than one), tap New Folder, then enter a name.
- *Create a subfolder:* Touch and hold a folder, then drag it onto another folder.
- *Rename a folder:* Touch and hold a folder, tap Rename, then enter a new name.
- *Move a folder:* Touch and hold the folder, then drag it to a new location. The folder becomes a subfolder if you drag it onto another folder.
- *Delete a folder:* Swipe left on the folder, then tap. Or touch and hold the folder, then tap Delete.

  If you change your mind, open the Recently Deleted folder to recover the notes.

Pin notes

To pin an important note to the top of the notes list, touch and hold the note, then tap Pin Note. Or swipe right on the note, then tap the pin.



Sort and change the folder view

In the notes list, tap, then do any of the following:

- *Change the folder view:* Choose View as Gallery or View as List.
- *Sort the notes by title:* Tap Sort By, then choose Title.
- *Sort the notes by date:* Tap Sort By, then choose Date Edited or Date Created.

  By default, the notes are grouped by date. To turn this off, tap ⋯, then tap Group By Date.
- *Reverse the sort order:* Tap Sort By, then choose Oldest First (when sorting by date) or Descending (when sorting by title).

  To choose a default sorting method for all your folders, go to Settings > Notes > Sort Notes By.

Move a note to another folder

Swipe left on the note, then tap. Or touch and hold the note, tap Move, then choose a folder.

Delete a note

Swipe left on the note, then tap. Or touch and hold the note, then tap Delete.

If you change your mind, open the Recently Deleted folder to recover the note.

See also

Organize your notes with tags on iPhone

Organize your notes with Smart Folders on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Search notes

Next
Organize with tags

Support > iPhone User Guide > Organize your notes in folders on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Organize your notes with tags on iPhone

In the Notes app, you can use tags as a fast and flexible way to categorize and organize your notes. You can add one or more tags to a note, such as #shopping and #work, and easily search and filter your notes across folders using the Tag Browser or Smart Folders.

Add tags to notes

When you create or edit a note, type # followed by the tag name or choose a tag from the menu above the keyboard. A tag can only be one word, but you can use dashes and underscores to combine words. You can add multiple tags to a note.

Tip: You can use your finger to write a tag in a note. Tap the underlined tag, then tap "Convert to tag."

Rename or delete a tag

Do any of the following:

- Below Tags at the bottom of the screen, touch and hold a tag, then tap Rename Tag or Delete Tag.
- Tap Edit (at the top of the folders list), scroll down to the tags, then tap a tag to rename it or tap .

When you delete a tag, it's also removed from all Smart Folders that use it.

View notes with tags

Below Tags at the bottom of the screen, do any of the following:

- *View all notes with tags:* Tap All Tags.
- *View notes with specific tags:* Tap one or more tags; to exclude a tag, tap the tag until the name has a line through it. Then choose to view notes matching any or all of the selected tags.

See also

Organize your notes with Smart Folders on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Organize your notes with Smart Folders on iPhone

In the Notes app, you can easily search and filter your notes across folders using Smart Folders.

Create a Smart Folder

1. Tap, choose an account (if you have more than one), enter a name, then tap Make Into Smart Folder.
2. Choose one or more filters, then choose to include notes matching any or all of the selected filters. You can filter by tags, dates, mentions, and more.

You can also create a Smart Folder when viewing a list of tagged notes; tap, then tap Create Smart Folder.

Convert a folder to a Smart Folder

When viewing the folder you want to convert, tap, scroll to the bottom, then tap Convert to Smart Folder.

When you convert a folder, its notes are moved to the Notes folder and tagged with the name of the Smart Folder.

Note: You can't convert a shared folder, a folder with a subfolder, or a folder that contains locked notes.

Edit a Smart Folder

Do either of the following:

- In the folders list, tap Edit, then tap to add, move, and rename folders.
- Touch and hold a Smart Folder, then tap Edit Smart Folder. You can change the name or filters.

See also

Organize your notes with tags on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Share notes and collaborate on iPhone

In the Notes app, you can send a copy of a note to a friend. You can also invite people to collaborate in real time on a note or on a folder of notes in iCloud, and everyone will see the latest changes.

Share a copy of a note

1. Open the note you want to share.
2. Tap, choose Send Copy, then choose how to send your note.

Collaborate on a note or folder of notes using iCloud

To collaborate with others, you can share a note or a folder of notes in iCloud. You can set permissions for other collaborators (such as allowing them to edit notes, add attachments, and create subfolders), and all the collaborators can see everyone's changes in real time. Everyone you collaborate with must be signed in with their Apple ID and have Notes turned on in iCloud settings.

Note: You can't collaborate on a locked note or on a folder with locked notes.

1. Do one of the following:
   - In the notes list, swipe left on the note you want to share, then tap.
   - Open the note you want to share, then tap.
   - In the folder list, swipe left on the folder you want to share, then tap.
   - Open the folder you want to share, tap, then tap Share Folder.
2. Choose Collaborate.
3. To change the access and permissions, tap the share options below Collaborate. You can set any of the following:
   - Allow access only to people you invite or to anyone with the link.
   - Give collaborators permission to make changes or view only.
   - Allow others to invite new collaborators (available only when collaborators have permission to make changes).
4. Choose Messages or Mail to send your invitation. (AirDrop isn't supported for collaboration.)

   If you send the invitation in Messages, you get activity updates in the Messages conversation when someone makes changes in the shared note. Tap the updates to go to the shared note.

View activity in a note

In the notes list, an orange dot to the left of a note title indicates the note has changed since you last looked at it.

1. Open the note, then swipe right on the note or swipe up on the Activity card to see who made changes and when.
2. To adjust how the activity is shown, tap , then choose any of the following:
   - *Show Updates:* Shows changes made since you last opened the note.
   - *Show All Activity:* Shows all activity in the note.
   - *Show Highlights:* Shows names, dates, and changes made by each collaborator.

Tip: To mention a collaborator and notify them of important updates, type an @ sign followed by their name.

View activity in a folder

Touch and hold the folder, then tap Show Folder Activity.

Change sharing settings

1. The owner of a shared note or folder can change the sharing settings by doing one of the following:
   - *Manage a shared note:* Tap , then tap Manage Shared Note.
   - *Manage a shared folder:* Tap , then tap Manage Shared Folder.
2. Do any of the following:
   - *Remove people:* Tap the collaborator you want to remove, then tap Remove Access.
   - *Change access and permission settings:* To change the settings for all collaborators, tap Share Options. To change the settings for an individual collaborator, tap their name.
   - *Stop sharing:* When you choose this option, the shared note or folder is deleted from the devices of the other participants.

See also

Collaborate on projects with Messages on iPhone

Collaborate on a document in FaceTime on iPhone

Apple Support article: If you can't share or collaborate in the Notes app on your iPhone or iPad

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use Smart Folders

Next
Export or print notes

Support › iPhone User Guide › Share notes and collaborate on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Export or print notes on iPhone

In the Notes app, you can open a note in the Pages app and continue working. You can also export the note as a PDF or print the note.

Open a note in Pages

1. Make sure your iPhone has the latest version of Pages.
2. In the Notes app, open the note you want to export, tap, then tap Open in Pages.

Note: If the note is locked, you must unlock it before exporting the contents of the note to Pages. You can't edit drawings in Pages. Content such as scanned documents and PDFs appear as thumbnail images in Pages. Tags, mentions, checklists, and links to notes aren't active items in Pages. If a note is shared, the resulting Pages document isn't shared.

Export a note as a PDF

You can create a PDF of a note, using the note's current view settings for its attachments. In a note with a multipage PDF or scanned document, the exported PDF contains only the first page of the original PDF or scanned document.

1. Open the note, tap, then tap Markup.
2. Mark up the pages in the exported PDF as needed, then tap Done to save the PDF.

Print a note

1. Open the note, tap, then tap Print.
2. Choose the printer and other options, then tap Print.

See also

Print from iPhone

Share notes and collaborate on iPhone

Pages User Guide for iPhone

Lock your notes on iPhone

In the Notes app, you can lock notes to protect your sensitive information. You can access your locked notes using your device passcode or a custom password. If you have multiple Notes accounts, you choose the locking method for each account (for example, your iCloud account).

Lock notes with your device passcode

If you use your device passcode to access locked notes, you don't have to create and remember a separate password, which reduces the chance of losing access to your locked notes. If you use your device passcode, you can also use Face ID or Touch ID to access your locked notes.

If you have multiple devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID, you use each device's passcode (or login password for a Mac) to access your locked notes on that device.

To access notes locked with a device passcode, you must be using iOS 16, iPadOS 16, macOS 13, or later. On devices with an earlier version of the OS, you won't be able to access the locked notes.

1. Go to Settings > Notes > Password.
2. If you have multiple accounts, choose the account you want to set a password for.
3. Tap Use Device Passcode.
4. For added convenience, you can also turn on Face ID or Touch ID.

Lock notes with a custom password

Creating a custom password for locked notes can provide additional security, but if you forget the password, you may lose access to your locked notes.

You use your custom password to access your locked notes on all devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID. If you have more than one iCloud account or an "On my iPhone" account, you can set a different custom password for each account.

To access notes locked with a custom password, you must be using iOS 9.3, iPadOS 13, OS X 10.11.4, or later. On devices with an earlier version of the OS, you won't see the notes.

1. Go to Settings > Notes > Password.
2. If you have multiple accounts, choose the account you want to set a password for.
3. Tap Use Custom Password.
4. For added convenience, you can also turn on Face ID or Touch ID.

   Don't rely on Face ID or Touch ID as the only means of unlocking your notes. If you update your Face ID or Touch ID settings, or want to change your Notes password, you have to reenter your Notes password.

Important: If you forget your custom password, and you can't use Face ID or Touch ID to access your locked notes, Apple can't help you regain access to those notes.

You can reset your custom password, but this doesn't give you access to previously locked notes. The new custom password applies to all notes you lock from now on. Go to Settings > Notes > Password > Reset Password.

See the Apple Support article How to lock or unlock notes on your iPhone or iPad.

Change the locking method

If you're using a custom password, you can switch to using your device passcode. Go to Settings > Notes > Password, choose an account (if you have more than one), then tap Use Device Passcode.

When you change your locking method, notes that you can access using the previous method begin using the new method.

Lock a note

You can only lock notes on your device and notes in iCloud. You can't lock notes that have PDFs, audio, video, Keynote, Pages, or Numbers documents attached; notes that sync with other accounts; or Quick Notes. You can't lock an iCloud note that has collaborators.

1. Open the note, then tap .
2. Tap Lock.

When a note is locked, the title remains visible in the notes list.

To remove a lock from a note, tap , then tap Remove.

Open your locked notes

Opening one locked note opens all your locked notes in the same account for several minutes so you can easily jump into another note or copy and paste information from other apps.

1. Tap the locked note, then tap View Note.
2. To open the note, use Face ID, Touch ID, your device passcode, or your Notes password.

To lock your notes again, do any of the following:

- Tap the lock icon at the top of the screen.
- Tap Lock Now at the bottom of the notes list.
- Close the Notes app.
- Lock your iPhone.

See also

Change your Notes settings on iPhone

Protect access to your iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Export or print notes

Next
Change Notes settings

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Change your Notes settings on iPhone

You can customize the default style and settings for the Notes app. Choose the default account for new notes, set a password, and more.

Show lines or grids in notes

- *In an existing note:* Tap, tap Lines & Grids, then choose a style.
- *Choose the default style for all new notes:* Go to Settings > Notes > Lines & Grids.

Customize your Notes settings

From the Home Screen or App Library, go to Settings > Notes, then adjust any of the settings. For example:

- *Default Account:* Choose the default account for Siri and the Notes widget.
- *Password:* Lock important notes.
- *Sort Notes By:* Choose Date Edited, Date Created, or Title.
- *Save to Photos:* Save photos and videos taken in Notes to the Photos app.
- *Access Notes from Lock Screen:* Choose Always Create New Note or Resume Last Note. Or turn it off to prevent access from the Lock Screen.

See also

Add or remove accounts in Notes on iPhone

Find settings on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Make a call on iPhone

To start a call in the Phone app, dial the number on the keypad, tap a favorite or recent call, or choose a number in your contacts list.

Dial a number

Siri: Say "call" or "dial" followed by a number. Speak each digit separately—for example, "four one five, five five five…." For the 800 area code in the U.S., you can say "eight hundred." Learn how to use Siri.

Or do the following:

1. Tap Keypad.
2. Do any of the following:
   - *Use a different line:* On models with Dual SIM, tap the line at the top, then choose a line.
   - *Enter the number using the keypad:* If you make a mistake, tap .
   - *Redial the last number:* Tap to see the last number you dialed, then tap to call that number.
   - *Paste a number you've copied:* Tap the phone number field above the keypad, then tap Paste.
   - *Enter a soft (2-second) pause:* Touch and hold the star (*) key until a comma appears.
   - *Enter a hard pause (to pause dialing until you tap the Dial button):* Touch and hold the pound (#) key until a semicolon appears.
   - *Enter a "+" for international calls:* Touch and hold the "0" key until "+" appears.
3. Tap to start the call.

To end the call, tap .

Call your favorites

1. Tap Favorites, then choose one to make a call.

   On models with Dual SIM, iPhone chooses the line for the call in the following order:

   - The preferred line for this contact (if set)
   - The line used for the last call to or from this contact
   - The default voice line

2. To manage your Favorites list, do any of the following:

   - *Add a favorite:* Tap +, then choose a contact.
   - *Rearrange or delete favorites:* Tap Edit.

Redial or return a recent call

Siri: Say something like: "Redial that last number" or "Return my last call." Learn how to use Siri.

You can also do the following:

1. Tap Recents, then choose one to make a call.
2. To get more info about a call and the caller, tap ⓘ.

   A red badge indicates the number of missed calls.

Call someone on your contacts list

Siri: Say something like: "Call Eliza's mobile." Learn how to use Siri.

Or do the following:

1. In the Phone app, tap Contacts.
2. Tap the contact, then tap the phone number you want to call.

   On models with Dual SIM, the default voice line is used for the call unless you set a preferred line for this contact.

Change your outgoing call settings

1. Go to Settings > Phone.
2. Do any of the following:

   - *Turn on Show My Caller ID:* (GSM) Your phone number is shown in My Number. For FaceTime calls, your phone number is displayed even if caller ID is turned off.
   - *Turn on Dial Assist for international calls:* (GSM) When Dial Assist is turned on, iPhone automatically adds the correct international or local prefix when you call your contacts and favorites.

     For information about making international calls (including rates and other charges that may apply), contact your carrier.

Turn on Dial Assist

Dial assist automatically determines the correct international or local prefix when dialing. To turn on Dial Assist:

1. Open Settings, then tap Phone.
2. Scroll down and turn on Dial Assist.

WARNING: For important information about avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see Important safety information for iPhone.

See also

Answer or decline incoming calls on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Change Notes settings

Next
Answer or decline incoming calls

Support > iPhone User Guide > Make a call on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Table of Contents

Answer or decline incoming calls on iPhone

You can answer, silence, or decline an incoming call. If you decline a call, it goes to voicemail. You can respond with a text or remind yourself to return the call.

Answer a call

Do one of the following:

- Tap .
- If iPhone is locked, drag the slider.

Tip: You can have Siri announce incoming calls, which you can accept or decline using your voice.

Silence a call

Press the side button or either volume button.

You can still answer a silenced call until it goes to voicemail.

Decline a call and send it directly to voicemail

Do one of the following:

- Press the side button twice quickly.
- Tap .
- Swipe up on the call banner.

You can also swipe down on the call banner for more options.

Do any of the following:

- Tap Remind Me, then choose when you want a reminder to return the call.
- Tap Message, then choose a default reply or tap Custom.

  To create your own default replies, go to Settings > Phone > Respond with Text, then tap any default message and replace it with your own text.

Note: In some countries or regions, declined calls are disconnected without being sent to voicemail.

See also Respond to a second call on the same line.

See also

While on a call on iPhone

While on a call on iPhone

When you're on a phone call, you can switch the audio to the speaker or a Bluetooth device. If you get another incoming call, you can respond or ignore it.

Adjust the audio during a call

To change the volume, press the volume buttons on the side of iPhone. Or swipe down on the call banner, then do any of the following:

- *Mute:* Tap the mute button.
- *Put the call on hold:* Touch and hold the mute button.
- *Talk handsfree:* Tap the audio button, then choose an audio destination.

Use another app while on a call

1. Go to the Home Screen, then open the app.
2. To return to the call, tap the green call indicator at the top of the screen.

Respond to a second call on the same line

If you're on a call and receive a second call, do one the following:

- *Ignore the call and send it to voicemail:* Tap Ignore.
- *End the first call and answer the new one:* When using a GSM network, tap End + Accept. With a CDMA network, tap End and when the second call rings back, tap Accept, or drag the slider if iPhone is locked.
- *Put the first call on hold and answer the new one:* Tap Hold + Accept.

  With a call on hold, tap Swap to switch between calls, or tap Merge Calls to talk with both parties at once. See Start a conference call.

Note: With CDMA, you can't switch between calls if the second call was outgoing, but you can merge the calls. You can't merge calls if the second call was incoming. If you end the second call or the merged call, both calls are terminated.

On models with Dual SIM, note the following:

- Wi-Fi Calling must be turned on for a line to enable that line to receive calls while the other line is in use for a call. If you receive a call on one line while the other is in use for a call, and no Wi-Fi connection is available, iPhone uses the cellular data of the line that's in use for the call to receive the other line's call. Charges may apply. The line that's in use for the call must be permitted for data use in your Cellular Data settings (either as the default line, or as the non-default line with Allow Cellular Data Switching turned on) to receive the other line's call.
- If you don't turn on Wi-Fi Calling for a line, any incoming phone calls on that line (including calls from emergency services) go directly to voicemail (if available from your carrier) when the other line is in use; you won't receive missed call notifications.

If you set up conditional call forwarding (if available from your carrier) from one line to another when a line is busy or not in service, the calls don't go to voicemail; contact your carrier for setup information.

Start a conference call

With GSM, you can set up a conference call with up to five people (depending on your carrier).

Note: Conference calls may not be available if your call is using VoLTE (Voice over LTE) or Wi-Fi Calling.

1. While on a call, tap Add Call, make another call, then Tap Merge Calls.

   Repeat to add more people to the conference.

2. During the conference call, do any of the following:

   - *Talk privately with one person:* Tap ⓘ, then tap Private next to the person. Tap Merge Calls to resume the conference.
   - *Add an incoming caller on the same line:* Tap Hold Call + Answer, then tap Merge Calls.
   - *Drop one person:* Tap ⓘ next to a person, then tap End.

See also

Set up your voicemail on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Answer or decline incoming calls

Next
Set up voicemail

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Table of Contents

Set up your voicemail on iPhone

In the Phone app, Visual Voicemail and Live Voicemail (available from select carriers in select countries or regions) shows a list of your messages. You can choose which ones to play and delete without listening to all of them. A badge on the Voicemail icon indicates the number of unheard messages.

Voicemail transcription (beta; available only in certain countries or regions) shows your messages transcribed into text. Transcription is limited to voicemails in English received on your iPhone with iOS 10 or later. Transcription depends on the quality of the recording.

Note: Voicemail and Visual Voicemail are available from select carriers in select countries or regions.

Set up voicemail

The first time you tap Voicemail, you're asked to create a voicemail password and record your voicemail greeting.

1. Tap Voicemail, then tap Set Up Now.
2. Create a voicemail password.
3. Choose a greeting—Default or Custom; if you choose Custom, you can record a new greeting.

Turn on Live Voicemail

Live Voicemail lets you automatically see a real-time transcription as someone is leaving you a message. You can pick up the call even as they're leaving their voicemail.

To turn on Live Voicemail, do the following:

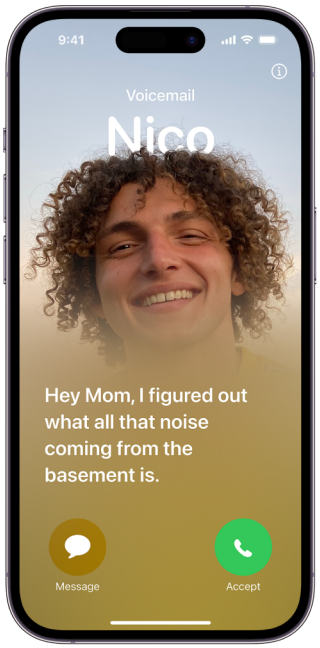
1. Go to Settings > Phone > Live Voicemail.
2. Tap to turn on Live Voicemail.

   When Live Voicemail is enabled, your iPhone will answer an incoming call in order to capture the caller's voicemail for you to see in real-time. Data rates may apply. The caller will not be able to hear you and you will not be able to hear them unless you choose to answer the call.

   If your iPhone is turned off or out of your carrier network's range, the call will be sent to carrier voicemail, if available.

   If you have Silence Unknown Callers turned on, unknown numbers will go directly to Live Voicemail without ringing you first. Calls identified as spam by your carrier don't go through Live Voicemail and are instead instantly declined.

Note: Live Voicemail is available in English (US, Canada).



See also

Check your voicemail on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
While on a call

Next
Check voicemail

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Table of Contents

Check your voicemail on iPhone

Use the Phone app to listen, delete, or share your voicemail messages. You can also check your voicemail messages when Visual Voicemail isn't available.

Play, share, or delete a voicemail message

Siri: Say something like: "Play the voicemail from Eliza." Learn how to use Siri.

Or do the following:

1. Tap Voicemail, then tap a message.
2. Do any of the following:

   - *Play the message:* Tap ▶.

     Messages are saved until you delete them or your carrier erases them.

   - *Share the message:* Tap.

   - *Delete the message:* Tap.

     Important: In some countries or regions, deleted messages may be permanently erased by your carrier. Your voice messages may also be deleted if you change your SIM card.

To recover a deleted message, tap Deleted Messages, tap the message, then tap Undelete.

Check your messages when Visual Voicemail isn't available

- *On your iPhone:* Tap Voicemail, then follow the instructions.
- *On another phone:* Dial your own mobile number, press * or # (depending on your carrier) to bypass your greeting, then enter your voicemail password.

See also

Change your voicemail greeting and settings on iPhone

Change your voicemail greeting and settings on iPhone

In the Phone app, you can change your voicemail greeting, password, and alert sounds.

Do any of the following to change your voicemail settings:

- *Change your greeting:* Tap Voicemail, then tap Greeting (not supported by all carriers or in all countries and regions).
- *Change your voicemail password:* Go to Settings > Phone > Change Voicemail Password, then enter the new password.

  If you forgot your voicemail password, contact your wireless carrier.
- *Change the alert for new voicemail:* Go to Settings > Sounds & Haptics or Settings > Sounds.

Note: To change your Contact Photo & Poster, see Add or edit your photo and poster.

See also

Select ringtones and vibrations on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Select ringtones and vibrations on iPhone

You can set the default ringtone and assign distinctive ringtones to certain people. You can also use vibrations and turn the ringer off.

Change the alert tones and vibrations

See Change iPhone sounds and vibrations.

iPhone comes with ringtones that play for incoming calls. You can also purchase more ringtones in the iTunes Store.

Assign a different ringtone to a contact

1. Open the Contacts app .
2. Select a contact, tap Edit, tap Ringtone, then choose a ringtone.

Turn the ringer on or off

Flip the Ring/Silent switch to turn Silent mode on or off. Clock alarms still play when Silent mode is turned on.

To temporarily silence incoming calls, Turn on or schedule a Focus on iPhone.

See also

Make calls using Wi-Fi on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Make calls using Wi-Fi on iPhone

When your iPhone has a low cellular signal, use Wi-Fi Calling to make and receive calls through a Wi-Fi network.

1. On your iPhone, go to Settings > Cellular.
2. If your iPhone has Dual SIM, choose a line (below SIMs).
3. Tap Wi-Fi Calling, then turn on Wi-Fi Calling on This iPhone.
4. Enter or confirm your address for emergency services.

   Note: Emergency calls on your iPhone are routed through cellular service when available. In the event that cellular service isn't available, and you have enabled Wi-Fi Calling, emergency calls may be made over Wi-Fi, and your device's location information may be used for emergency calls to aid response efforts, regardless of whether you enable Location Services. Some carriers may use the address you registered with the carrier when signing up for Wi-Fi Calling as your location. When connected to Wi-Fi calling, your iPhone may not receive emergency alerts.

When Wi-Fi Calling is available, "Wi-Fi" is displayed after your carrier name in the status bar, and all your calls go through Wi-Fi.

Note: If the Wi-Fi connection is lost when you make calls, calls switch automatically to your carrier's cellular network using VoLTE (Voice over LTE), if available and turned on. See View or change cellular data settings on iPhone. (VoLTE calls also switch to Wi-Fi when a Wi-Fi connection becomes available.) Contact your carrier for feature availability.

See also

Set up call forwarding and call waiting on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Set up call forwarding and call waiting on iPhone

You can set up call forwarding and call waiting on iPhone if you have cellular service through a GSM network.

If you have cellular service through a CDMA network, contact your carrier for information about enabling and using these features.

1. Go to Settings > Phone.
2. Tap any of the following:
   - *Call Forwarding:* appears in the status bar when call forwarding is on. You must be in range of the cellular network when you set iPhone to forward calls, or calls won't be forwarded.

     On models with Dual SIM, choose a line.
   - *Call Waiting:* If you're on a call and call waiting is turned off, incoming calls go directly to voicemail.

     On models with Dual SIM, call waiting works only for incoming calls on the same line, unless the other line has Wi-Fi calling enabled and a data connection is available. See Set up cellular service on iPhone.

For information about conditional call forwarding (if available from your carrier) when the line is busy or not in service, contact your carrier for setup information.

See also

Avoid unwanted calls on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Avoid unwanted calls on iPhone

You can avoid unwanted calls by blocking certain people and sending unknown and spam callers directly to voicemail.

Block voice calls, FaceTime calls, and messages from certain people

In the Phone app, do any of the following.

- Tap Favorites, Recents, or Voicemail. Tap next to the number or contact you want to block, scroll down, then tap Block this Caller.
- Tap Contacts, tap the contact you want to block, scroll down, then tap Block this Caller.

Manage your blocked contacts

1. Go to Settings > Phone > Blocked Contacts.
2. Tap Edit.

Send unknown and spam callers to voicemail

Go to Settings > Phone, then tap any of the following:

- *Silence Unknown Callers:* You get notifications for calls from people in your contacts, recent outgoing calls, and Siri Suggestions.
- *Call Blocking & Identification:* Turn on Silence Junk Callers (available with certain carriers) to silence calls identified by your carrier as potential spam or fraud.

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Table of Contents

View photos and videos in the Photos app on iPhone

Use the Photos app to find and view all of the photos and videos on your iPhone.

How photos and videos are organized in Photos

You navigate Photos using the Library, For You, Albums, and Search buttons at the bottom of the screen.

Tap to navigate Photos.

- *Library:* Browse your photos and videos organized by days, months, years, and all photos.
- *For You:* View your memories, shared photos, and featured photos in a personalized feed; see Watch memories in Photos on iPhone.
- *Albums:* View albums you created or shared, and your photos organized automatically by categories—for example, People & Pets, Places, and Media Types; see Use photo albums in Photos on iPhone and Edit, share, and organize albums in iPhone.
- *Search:* Type in the search field to search for photos by date, location, caption, or objects they contain. Or browse photos already grouped by important events, people, places, and categories; see Search for photos on iPhone.

Browse photos in your library

To browse your photos and videos by when they were taken, tap Library, then select any of the following:

- *Years:* Quickly locate a specific year in your photo library.
- *Months:* View collections of photos that you took throughout a month, organized by significant events—like a family outing, social occasion, birthday party, or trip.

- *Days:* View your best photos in chronological order, grouped by the time or place the photos were taken.
- *All Photos:* View all of your photos and videos.

Tip: When viewing All Photos, pinch the screen to zoom in or out. You can also tap ··· to zoom in or out, view photos by aspect ratio or square, filter photos, or see photos on a map.

Years, Months, and Days views are curated to show your best shots, and visual clutter like similar photos, screenshots, whiteboards, and receipts aren't shown. To see every photo and video, tap All Photos.

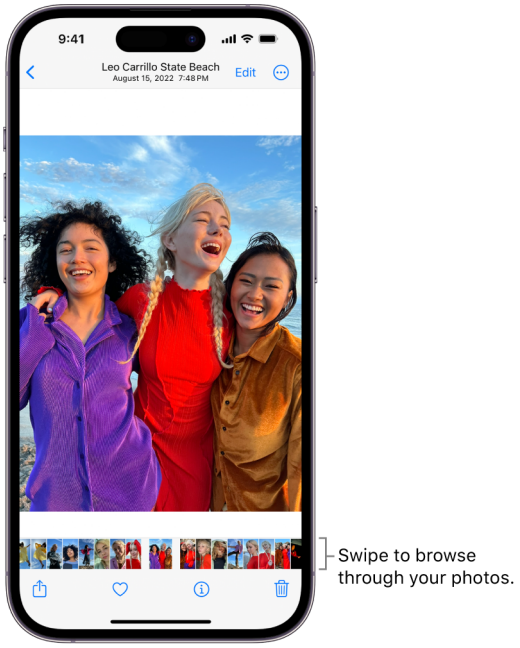
View individual photos

Tap a photo to view it in full screen on your iPhone.

Double-tap or pinch out to zoom in on the photo—drag to see other parts of the photo; double-tap or pinch closed to zoom back out.

Tap ♡ to add the photo to your Favorites album. See Use albums in Photos.

Tip: When viewing a Live Photo ◎, touch and hold the photo to play it.

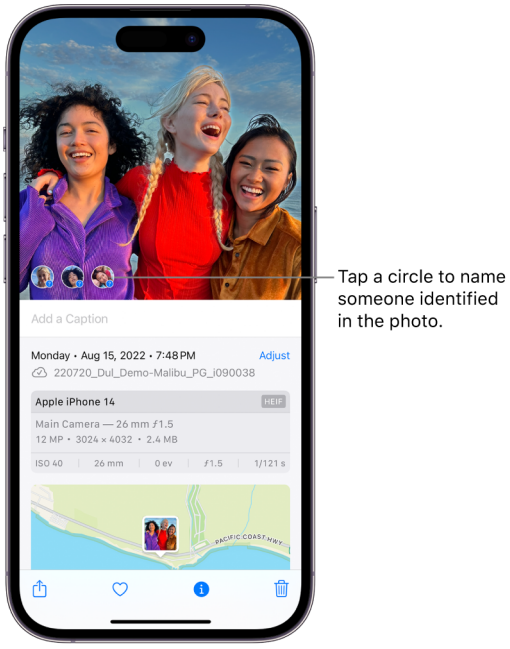


Tap ‹ or drag the photo down to continue browsing or return to the search results.

See photo and video information

To see saved metadata information about a photo or video, open it, then tap ⓘ or swipe up. Depending on the photo or video, you see the following details:

- People identified in the photo
- A caption field to describe the photo or video, and make it easier to find in Search
- Items detected by Visual Look Up
- Whether the photo was shared with you in Messages, another app, or iCloud Shared Photo Library
- The date and time the photo or video was taken; tap Adjust to edit the date and time
- Camera metadata such as lens, shutter speed, file size, and more
- Where the photo or video was taken; tap the link to view the location in Maps; tap Adjust to edit the location



See also

Play videos and slideshows in the Photos app on iPhone

Edit photos and videos on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Avoid unwanted calls

Next
Play videos and slideshows

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Play videos and slideshows in the Photos app on iPhone

Use the Photos app to play videos you've recorded or saved on your iPhone. You can also create slideshows of the photos, videos, and Live Photos in your library.

Play a video

As you browse photos and videos in the Photos app, tap a video to play it on your iPhone. While it plays, you can do any of the following:

- Tap the player controls below the video to pause, unmute, favorite, share, delete, or see video information; tap the screen to hide the player controls.
- Double-tap the screen to switch between full screen and fit-to-screen.
- Touch and hold the frame viewer at the bottom of the screen to pause the video, then slide the viewer left or right to move back or forward.

Make and play a slideshow

You can create a slideshow to view a collection of photos and videos that you choose from your library. Slideshows are automatically formatted and set to music.

1. Tap Library, then view photos by All Photos or Days.
2. Tap Select.
3. Tap each photo you want to include in the slideshow, then tap .
4. Tap Slideshow from the list of options.

To change the slideshow theme, music, and more, tap the screen while the slideshow plays, then tap Options.

Note: You can also make a slideshow from an album. Tap Albums, tap the album you want to create a slideshow from, then follow the steps above.

See also

Edit photos and videos on iPhone

Trim video length and adjust slow motion on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
View photos and videos

Next
Delete or hide photos and videos

Support > iPhone User Guide > Play videos and slideshows in the Photos app on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Delete or hide photos and videos on iPhone

In the Photos app, you can delete photos and videos from your iPhone or hide them in the Hidden album. You can also recover photos you recently deleted. Photos you delete and hide are saved in the Hidden and Recently Deleted albums, which you unlock using your iPhone authentication method.

When you use iCloud Photos on iPhone, any photos you delete or hide are synced across your other devices.

Delete or hide a photo or video

Tap a photo or video, then do either of the following:

- *Delete:* Tap to delete a photo from your iPhone and other devices using the same iCloud Photos account.

  Deleted photos and videos are kept in the Recently Deleted album for 30 days, where you can recover or permanently remove them from all devices.

- *Hide:* Tap, then tap Hide in the list of options.

  Hidden photos are moved to the Hidden album. You can't view them anywhere else.

  To turn off the Hidden album so it doesn't appear in Albums, go to Settings > Photos, then turn off Hidden Album.

  Tip: If you accidentally delete or hide a photo or video, shake your iPhone (within 8 minutes), then tap Undo Delete or Undo Hide.

Delete or hide multiple photos and videos

While viewing photos in an album or in the Days or All Photos view in your library, do either of the following:

- *Delete:* Tap Select, tap or drag your finger on the screen to select the items you want to delete, then tap .
- *Hide:* Tap Select, tap or drag your finger on the screen to select the items you want to hide, tap , then tap Hide.

Recover or permanently delete deleted photos

To recover deleted photos, or to permanently delete them, do the following:

1. Tap Albums, then tap Recently Deleted under Utilities.
2. Tap Select, then choose the photos and videos you want to recover or delete.
3. Choose Recover or Delete at the bottom of the screen.

Unlock Recently Deleted and Hidden albums

The Recently Deleted and Hidden albums are locked by default. You unlock these albums using your iPhone authentication method—Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.

To change the default setting from locked to unlocked, go to Settings > Photos, then turn off Use Passcode.

See also

Wake and unlock iPhone

Use iCloud Photos on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Play videos and slideshows

Next
Edit photos and videos

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Edit photos and videos on iPhone

After you take a photo or video, use the tools in the Photos app to edit it on your iPhone. You can adjust the light and color, crop, rotate, add a filter, and more. If you don't like how your changes look, tap Cancel to revert back to the original.

When you use iCloud Photos, any edits you make to your photos and videos are saved across all your devices.

Adjust light and color

1. In Photos, tap a photo or video thumbnail to view it in full screen.
2. Tap Edit, then swipe left under the photo to view the effects you can edit such as Exposure, Brilliance, Highlights, and Shadows.
3. Tap the effect you want to edit, then drag the slider to make precise adjustments.

   The level of adjustment you make for each effect is indicated by the outline around the button, so you can see at a glance which effects have been increased or decreased. Tap the effect button to toggle between the edited effect and the original.

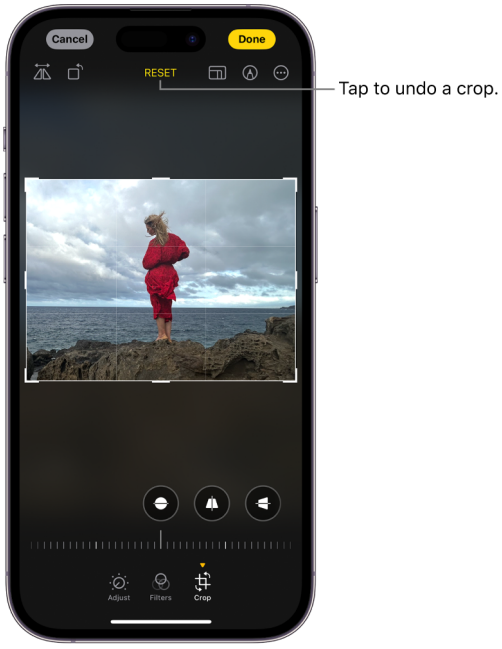
4. Tap Done to save your edits, or if you don't like your changes, tap Cancel, then tap Discard Changes.

Tip: Tap to automatically edit your photos or videos with effects.

Crop, rotate, or flip a photo or video

1. In Photos, tap a photo or video thumbnail to view it in full screen.
2. Tap Edit, tap , then do any of the following :

- *Crop manually:* Drag the rectangle corners to enclose the area you want to keep in the photo, or you can pinch the photo open or closed.
- *Crop to a standard preset ratio:* Tap , then choose an option such as square, wallpaper, 16:9, or 5:4.
- *Rotate:* Tap to rotate the photo 90 degrees.
- *Flip:* Tap to flip the image horizontally.



3. Tap Done to save your edits, or if you don't like your changes, tap Cancel, then tap Discard Changes.

To quickly crop a photo while you're viewing it, pinch the photo to zoom in. When the photo appears as you want it cropped, tap Crop in the top-right corner of the screen. Make any further adjustments with the crop tools, then tap Done.

Straighten and adjust perspective

1. In Photos, tap a photo or video thumbnail to view it in full screen.
2. Tap Edit, then tap .
3. Swipe left under the photo to view the effects you can edit: Straighten, Vertical, or Horizontal.
4. Tap the effect you want to edit, then drag the slider to make precise adjustments.

   The level of adjustment you make for each effect is displayed by the outline around the button, so you can see at a glance which effects have been increased or decreased. Tap the button to toggle between the edited effect and the original.
5. Tap Done to save your edits, or if you don't like your changes, tap Cancel, then tap Discard Changes.

Apply filter effects

1. In Photos, tap a photo or video thumbnail to view it in full screen.
2. Tap Edit, then tap to apply filter effects such as Vivid or Dramatic.

   To remove a filter that was applied when you took the photo, apply Original.

3. Tap a filter, then drag the slider to adjust the effect.

   To compare the edited photo to the original, tap the photo.

4. Tap Done to save your edits, or if you don't like your changes, tap Cancel, then tap Discard Changes.

Undo and redo edits

As you edit a photo or video, tap ↺ and ↻ at the top of the screen to undo and redo multiple edit steps.

Tip: You can tap the photo or video to compare the edited version to the original.

Copy and paste edits to multiple photos

You can copy the edits you made to one photo (or video) and paste them onto another photo, or a batch or photos, all at the same time.

1. Open the photo or video that contains the edits you want to copy.
2. Tap ⋯, then tap Copy Edits.
3. Tap ‹ to return to your library.
4. Tap Select, then tap the thumbnails of the photos you want to paste the edits onto. Or, open a single photo or video.
5. Tap ⋯, then tap Paste Edits.

Note: Photos automatically adjusts the white balance and exposure of the edited photos to create a better match and make the photos look even more similar.

Revert an edited photo or video

After you edit a photo or video and save your changes, you can revert to the original.

1. Open the edited photo or video, then tap ⋯.
2. Tap Revert to Original.

Change the date, time, or location

You can change the date, time, and location that's stored within the photo or video's metadata information. See See photo and video information.

1. Open the photo or video, then tap ⋯.
2. Tap Adjust Date & Time or Adjust Location.
3. Enter the new information, then tap Adjust.

To change the date, time, or location of a batch of photos, tap Select, tap the thumbnails you want to change, then follow the steps above.

You can revert a photo or video to its original date, time, or location. Tap ⋯, tap Adjust Date & Time or Adjust Location, then tap Revert.

Write or draw on a photo

1. In Photos, tap a photo to view it in full screen.
2. Tap Edit, then tap Ⓐ.
3. Annotate the photo using the different drawing tools and colors. Tap + to magnify or add a caption, text, shapes, or even your signature.
4. Tap Done to save your edits, or if you don't like your changes, tap Cancel.

See also

Edit Cinematic mode videos on your iPhone

Edit Live Photos on iPhone

Edit portraits on iPhone

Use Markup to add text, shapes, signatures, and more to documents on iPhone

Apple Support article: How to edit with third-party apps and extensions in Photos

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Delete or hide photos and videos

Next
Trim video length and adjust slow motion

Support › iPhone User Guide › Edit photos and videos on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Trim video length and adjust slow motion on iPhone

In the Photos app, you can trim a video you recorded on your iPhone to change where it starts and stops. You can also adjust the portion of a video that appears in slow motion when you record in Slo-mo mode.

Trim a video

1. In Photos, open the video, then tap Edit.
2. Drag either end of the frame viewer below the video to change the start and stop times, then tap Done.
3. Tap Save Video to save only the trimmed video, or Save Video as New Clip to save both versions of the video.

To undo the trim after you save, open the video, tap Edit, then tap Revert.

Note: A video saved as a new clip can't be reverted to the original.

Change the slow-motion section of a video shot in Slo-mo mode

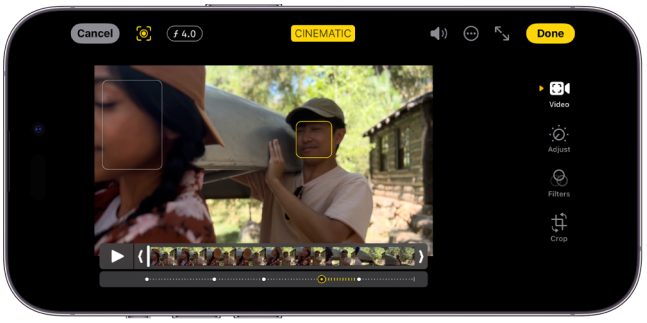
1. Open a video shot in Slo-mo mode, then tap Edit.
2. Drag the white vertical bars beneath the frame viewer to set where the video is played in slow motion.

See also

Edit Cinematic mode videos on your iPhone

On iPhone 13 models, iPhone 14 models, and iPhone 15 models, Cinematic mode applies a depth-of-field effect that keeps the subject of your video sharp while creating a beautifully blurred foreground and background. In the Photos app, you can change the focus subject where the effect is applied, and adjust the level of background blur—or depth of field—in your Cinematic mode videos. You can also turn off the effect.

Cinematic mode videos can be edited on iPhone Xs, iPhone Xr, and later models with iOS 15 or later.



Turn off the Cinematic effect

1. In Photos, open a video you recorded in Cinematic mode, then tap Edit.
2. Tap Cinematic at the top of the screen, then tap Done.

Repeat these steps to turn Cinematic mode back on.

Change the focus subject in a Cinematic mode video

Camera automatically identifies where to focus while you record in Cinematic mode and can automatically change focus if a new subject is identified. You can also change the focus subject manually.

1. In Photos, open a video you recorded in Cinematic mode, then tap Edit.

   White dots under the frame viewer indicate where Camera automatically changed the focus while recording. Yellow dots indicate where the focus was manually changed.

2. Play the video, or slide the white vertical bar in the frame viewer, to the point where you want to change the focus.
3. Tap the new subject, outlined in yellow, on the screen to change the focus; double tap to set automatic focus tracking on the subject.

   A yellow dot appears under the frame viewer to indicate the focus was changed.

   Note: You can also touch and hold the screen to lock the focus at a specific distance from the camera.

4. Repeat the steps above to change focus points throughout the video.

   To remove a manual focus change, tap the yellow dot under the frame viewer, then tap .

5. Tap Done to save your changes.

Tap to toggle between Camera's automatic focus tracking and your manually selected focus points.

After you save your changes, you can revert a Cinematic mode video to the original if you don't like your edits. Open the video, tap Edit, then tap Revert.

Adjust the depth of field in a Cinematic mode video

1. In Photos, open a video you recorded in Cinematic mode, then tap Edit.
2. Tap ƒ at the top of the screen.

   A slider appears below the video.
3. Drag the slider left or right to adjust the depth of field effect, then tap Done.

To undo the change after you save, open the video, tap Edit, then tap Revert.

Export Cinematic mode videos to your Mac

You can use AirDrop to transfer Cinematic mode videos—with depth and focus metadata—from your iPhone to your Mac to edit in other apps.

Note: To edit Cinematic mode videos recorded on an iPhone with iOS 16 or later, make sure your Mac is using macOS 13 or later.

1. In Photos, open the Cinematic mode video, then tap .
2. Tap Options at the top of the screen, turn on All Photos Data, then tap Done.
3. Tap AirDrop, then tap the device you want to share with (make sure the device you're sharing with has AirDrop turned on).

For information about editing Cinematic mode videos on your Mac using Photos, see Edit a Cinematic mode video in Photos on Mac.

For information about editing Cinematic mode videos on your Mac using Final Cut Pro, iMovie, or Motion, see the Apple Support article Edit Cinematic mode video in Final Cut Pro, iMovie, and Motion on Mac.

Export Cinematic mode videos to an external storage device

You can export Cinematic mode videos directly to an external drive, a memory card, or other storage device.

Note: For photos and videos that have been edited, the unmodified original version will be exported.

1. Connect your iPhone to the storage device using the Lightning or USB-C connector on iPhone.
2. Open the Photos app, then select the video you want to export.
3. Tap , then tap Export Unmodified Original.
4. Tap your storage device (below Locations), then tap Save.

See also

Edit photos and videos on iPhone

Record video in Cinematic mode with your iPhone camera

Helpful? Yes No

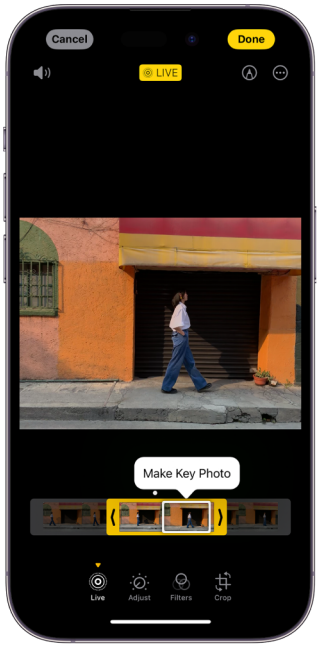
Previous Next

Edit Live Photos on iPhone

In the Photos app, you can edit Live Photos, change the key photo, and add fun effects like Bounce and Loop.

Make Live Photo edits

In addition to the photo editing tools on iPhone, you can also change a Live Photo's key photo, trim its length, mute the sound, and turn a Live Photo into a still photo.



1. Open the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Open a Live Photo, then tap Edit.
3. Tap, then do any of the following:

   - *Set a key photo:* Move the white frame on the frame viewer, tap Make Key Photo, then tap Done.
   - *Trim a Live Photo:* Drag either end of the frame viewer to choose the frames the Live Photo plays.
   - *Make a still photo:* Tap the Live button at the top of the screen to turn off the Live feature. The Live Photo becomes a still of its key photo.
   - *Mute a Live Photo:* Tap at the top of the screen. Tap again to unmute.

Note: Live Photos taken on an iPhone 15 model with a portrait effect lose the portrait effect if you change the key photo.

Add effects to a Live Photo

You can add effects to Live Photos to turn them into fun videos.

1. Open the Photos app on your iPhone.

2. Open a Live Photo.
3. Tap ◎ Live in the top-left corner, then choose one of the following:
   - *Live:* Applies the Live video playback feature.
   - *Loop:* Repeats the action in a continuous looping video.
   - *Bounce:* Rewinds the action backward and forward.
   - *Long Exposure:* Simulates a DSLR-like long exposure effect by blurring motion.
   - *Live Off:* Turns off the Live video playback feature or applied effect.

See also

Take Live Photos with your iPhone camera
Send stickers in Messages on iPhone
Add emoji and stickers from the iPhone keyboard
Add a sticker with Markup

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Edit Cinematic mode videos

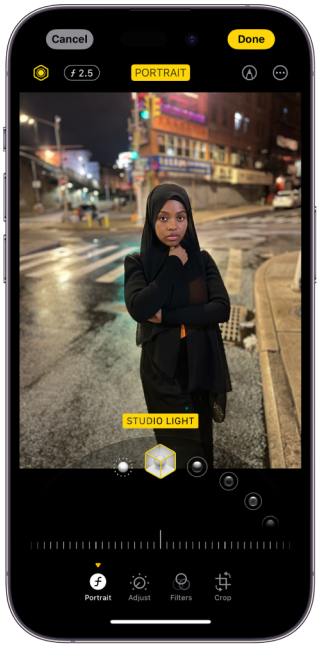
Next
Edit portraits

Support > iPhone User Guide > Edit Live Photos on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Edit portraits on iPhone

In the Photos app, you can change and adjust the lighting effects, depth of field, and focus point of your portraits. You can also apply portrait effects to photos taken in Photo mode (on supported models).



Change the Portrait Lighting effect

On models that support Portrait Lighting, you can apply, change, or remove the Portrait Lighting effects in portraits.

1. Tap any portrait to view it in full screen, then tap Edit.
2. Tap, then drag to choose a lighting effect.
   - *Natural Light:* The face is in sharp focus against a blurred background.
   - *Studio Light:* The face is brightly lit, and the photo has an overall clean look.
   - *Contour Light:* The face has dramatic shadows with highlights and lowlights.
   - *Stage Light:* The face is spotlit against a deep black background.
   - *Stage Light Mono:* The effect is like Stage Light, but the photo is in classic black and white.
   - *High-Key Light Mono:* Creates a grayscale subject on a white background (on supported models).

   Note: On iPhone XR, only the front camera supports Natural Light, Studio Light, and Contour Light.
3. Drag the slider left or right to adjust the intensity of the lighting effect.
4. Tap Done to save your changes.

To undo Portrait Lighting after you save, tap Edit, then tap Revert to go back to the original lighting.

Note: To remove Portrait Lighting from a photo, tap Portrait at the top of the screen.

Adjust Depth Control in portraits

Use the Depth Control slider (on supported models) to adjust the level of background blur in your portraits.

1. Tap any portrait to view it in full screen, then tap Edit.
2. Drag the Depth Control slider to increase or decrease the background blur effect.

   A white dot marks the original depth value for the photo.
3. Tap Done to save your changes.

Change the focus point of a portrait

You can change the subject (or focus point) using Focus Control. When you select a new subject, the background blur automatically adjusts so the new subject appears sharp and in focus. Make sure that the new subject isn't blurred or too far in the distance.

1. Open the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap any portrait to view it in full screen, then tap Edit.
3. Tap a new subject or focus point in the photo.
4. Tap Done.

Note: Available on portraits taken on iPhone 13 models and later, with iOS 16 or later.

Apply the portrait effect to photos taken in Photo mode

On iPhone 15 models, photos with a person, dog, or cat taken in Photo mode can become portraits in the Photos app.

1. Open the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap any photo taken in Photo mode to view it in full screen, then tap Edit.
3. If portrait effects are available, tap , then tap Portrait at the top of the screen.
4. Use the Depth Control slider to increase or decrease the level of background blur in the portrait.
5. Tap Done.

To undo the portrait effects, open the photo, tap Edit, then tap Revert.

Note: When the portrait effect is applied to a Live Photo taken in Photo mode, the Live Photo effects aren't available. Tap Live to view the Live Photo or apply a Live Photo effect without the portrait effect applied.

See also

Take portraits with your iPhone camera

Edit photos and videos on iPhone

Edit Cinematic mode videos on your iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Edit Live Photos

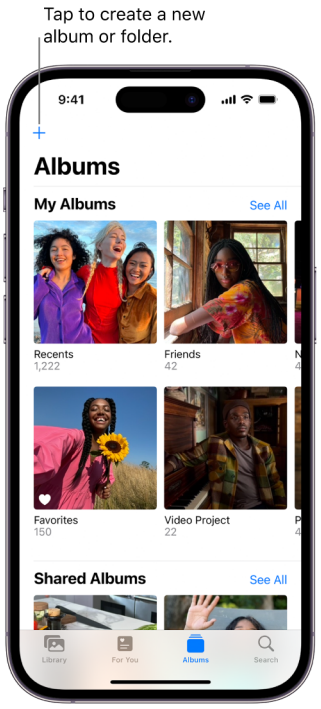
Next
Use photo albums

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use photo albums in Photos on iPhone

Use albums in the Photos app to view and organize your photos and videos. Tap Albums to view your photos and videos organized into different categories and media types, like Videos, Portrait, and Slo-mo. You can also look at your photos arranged on a world map in the Places album, or browse your photos based on who's in them in the People album.

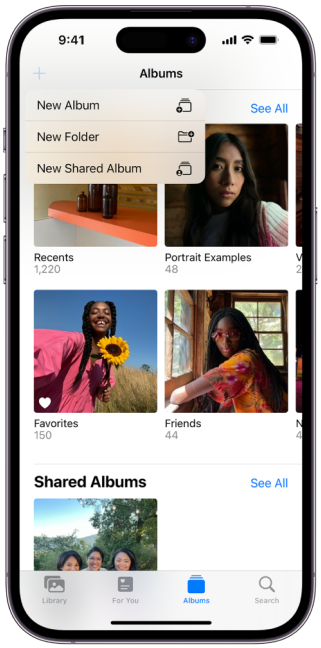
The Recents album shows your entire photo collection in the order that you added them to your library and the Favorites album shows photos and videos that you marked as favorites.



If you use iCloud Photos, albums are stored in iCloud. They're up to date and accessible on devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID. See Use iCloud Photos on iPhone.

Create a new album

1. Tap Albums at the bottom of the screen.
2. Tap +, then choose New Album.



3. Name the album, then tap Save.
4. Tap the photos and video thumbnails you want to add to the album, then tap Add.

To create a shared album, see Share photos with Shared Albums in iCloud.

Add a photo or video from your library to an album

1. Tap Library, open the photo or video in full screen, then tap ⋯.
2. Tap Add to Album, then do one of the following:
   - *Start a new album:* Tap New Album, then give the album a name.
   - *Add to an existing album:* Tap an existing album below My Albums.

Add multiple photos and videos from your library to an album

1. Tap Library, then tap Days or All Photos.
2. Tap Select at the top of the screen, tap the photo and video thumbnails you want to add, then tap ⋯.
3. Tap Add to Album, then do one of the following:
   - *Start a new album:* Tap New Album, then give the album a name.
   - *Add to an existing album:* Tap an existing album under My Albums.

Rename an album

You can rename an album that you created in Photos.

1. Tap Albums, then tap the album you want to rename.
2. Tap ⋯, then tap Rename Album.
3. Enter the new name in the text field, then tap Save.

Edit, share, and organize albums in iPhone

You can update, rename, rearrange, and delete albums in the Photos app. You can also create folders to contain multiple albums. For example, you could create a folder named “Vacations,” and then create multiple albums within the folder of all your vacations. You can also create folders inside folders.

Add photos to an album

1. Open the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Albums, then tap the album.
3. Tap at the top of the screen, or tap after the last photo in the album’s photo grid.
4. Tap Add Photos, then tap the photos or videos you want to add to the album.

   Tip: Use the search field at the top of the screen to find photos from a specific time or place.
5. Tap Add.

Remove photos from an album

1. Open the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Albums, tap the album, then tap the photo or video you want to remove to view it in full screen.
3. Tap , then choose one of the following:

   - *Remove from Album:* The photo is removed from that album, but remains in other albums and your library.
   - *Delete from Library:* The photo is removed from all albums and your library and moved to the Recently Deleted album.

To remove multiple photos or videos from an album, tap Select, tap the photo and video thumbnails you want to remove, then tap .

Change how photos appear in an album

You can adjust the size and aspect ratio of photos displayed in an album.

1. Open the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Albums, then tap the album.
3. Tap , then tap one of the following:

   - Zoom In
   - Zoom Out
   - Aspect Ratio Grid

To filter and sort photos in an album, see Filter and sort photos and videos in albums on iPhone.

Share photos from an album

You can share all of the photos in an album or just the ones you select.

1. Open the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Albums, then tap the album.
3. Tap Select, then tap the photos and videos you want to share.

   Tip: Tap Select All to share all of the photos and videos in an album.
4. Tap, choose a sharing option—AirDrop, Messages, or Mail, for example—then send.

Rearrange and delete albums

1. Open the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Albums, then tap See All.
3. Tap Edit, then do any of the following:

   - *Rearrange:* Touch and hold the album's thumbnail, then drag it to a new location.
   - *Delete:* Tap.
4. Tap Done.

Albums that Photos creates for you, such as Recents, People, and Places, can't be deleted.

Organize albums in folders

1. Open the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Albums, then tap +.
3. Choose New Folder.
4. Name the folder, then tap Save.
5. Open the folder, tap Edit, then tap + to create a new album or folder inside the folder.

See also

Use photo albums in Photos on iPhone

Filter and sort photos and videos in albums on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use photo albums

Next
Filter and sort photos and videos in albums

Support › iPhone User Guide › Edit, share, and organize albums in iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Filter and sort photos and videos in albums on iPhone

You can filter and sort photos and videos in the albums you create in the Photos app. For example, you can filter an album to show only videos, only photos, or photos and videos you marked as favorites. You can also sort photos and videos in an album by newest to oldest, oldest to newest, or in a custom order.

Filter photos and videos in an album

1. Open an album, then tap .
2. Tap Filter, then choose how you want to filter the photos and videos in the album.
3. Tap Done.

To remove a filter from an album, tap , tap All Items, then tap Done.

Sort photos and videos in an album

1. Open an album, then tap .
2. Tap Sort, then choose how you want to sort the photos and videos in the album.

To move an individual photo, touch and hold the thumbnail, then drag it to a new location for a custom sort.

See also

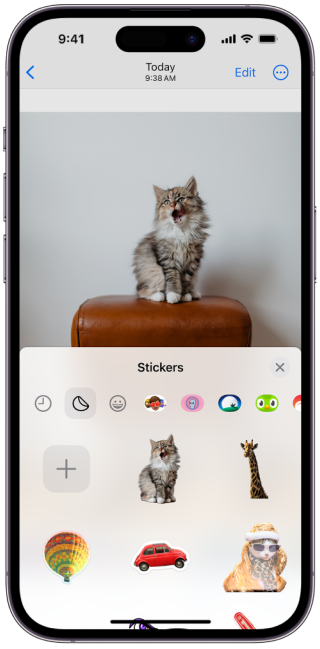
Use photo albums in Photos on iPhone

Edit, share, and organize albums in iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Make stickers from your photos on iPhone

In the Photos app, you can make stickers from the subjects in your photos and Live Photos.



Turn a photo into a sticker

You can turn the main subject of a photo into a sticker.

1. Open the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a photo to open it in full screen.
3. Touch and hold the subject, then tap Add Sticker.

   The sticker appears in your sticker drawer, which you can access when you use the iPhone onscreen keyboard or Markup tools.

   Tap Add Effect to apply a visual effect such as Outline, Comic, or Puffy.
4. Tap to close the sticker menu.

Turn a Live Photo into an animated sticker

You can turn the moving subject of a Live Photo into an animated sticker.

1. Open the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a Live Photo to open it in full screen.
3. Touch and hold the subject of the Live Photo, slide it up, then release the subject.
4. Tap Add Sticker.

   The animated sticker appears in your stickers drawer, which you can access when you use the iPhone onscreen keyboard or Markup tools.

Tap Add Effect to apply a visual effect such as Outline, Comic, or Puffy.

5. Tap ⊗ to close the stickers drawer.

Your stickers sync with iCloud, so they're available on your iPhone, iPad, and Mac devices signed in with the same Apple ID.

See also

Add emoji and stickers from the iPhone keyboard

Use Markup to add text, shapes, signatures, and more to documents on iPhone

Send stickers in Messages on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Filter and sort photos and videos in albums

Next
Duplicate and copy photos and videos

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Duplicate and copy photos and videos on iPhone

In the Photos app on iPhone, you can duplicate a photo or video while preserving the original version. You can also copy a photo and then paste it into another document such as an email, text message, or presentation.

Duplicate a photo or video

1. Open a photo or video, then tap .
2. Tap Duplicate.

   A duplicate copy appears next to the original in your library.

Duplicate multiple photos or videos

1. Tap Library, then tap All Photos or Days.
2. Tap Select, then tap the thumbnails you want to duplicate.
3. Tap , then tap Duplicate.

Copy a photo

1. Open a photo, then tap .
2. Tap Copy, then paste the photo into another document.

Copy multiple photos or videos

1. Tap Library, then tap All Photos or Days.
2. Tap Select, then tap the thumbnails you want to copy.
3. Tap , then tap Copy.
4. Paste the copies into another document.

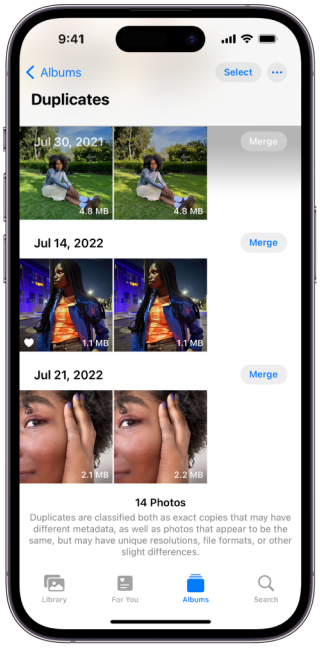
See also

Merge duplicate photos and videos on iPhone

Lift a subject from the photo or video background on iPhone

Merge duplicate photos and videos on iPhone

The Photos app identifies duplicate photos and videos in your photo library in the Duplicates album. You can merge duplicate photos and videos to save space and clean up your library.



1. Tap Albums, then tap Duplicates below Utilities.

   Duplicate photos and videos appear next to each other.

2. Tap Merge to combine the duplicates, then tap Merge [*number*] Items.

   Merging combines the highest quality version and all of the relevant data across the duplicates, and keeps that one in your library. The remaining duplicates are moved to the Recently Deleted album.

If you don’t have any duplicate photos or videos in your library, the Duplicates album doesn’t appear.

See also

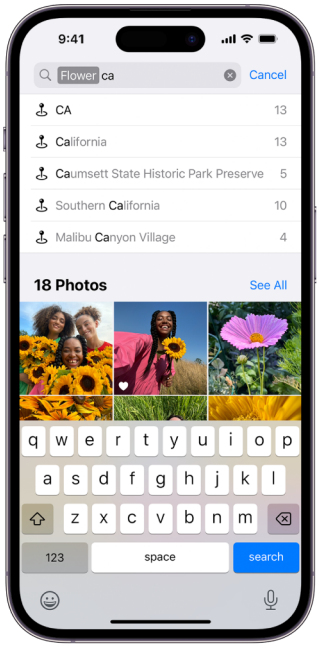
Delete or hide photos and videos on iPhone

Edit, share, and organize albums in iPhone

Filter and sort photos and videos in albums on iPhone

Search for photos on iPhone

When you tap Search in the Photos app, you see suggestions for moments, people, places, and categories to help you find what you're looking for, or rediscover an event you forgot about. You can also type a keyword into the search field—for example, a person's name, date, or location—to help you find a specific photo.



Tap Search, then tap the search field at the top of the screen to search by any of the following:

- Date (month or year)
- Place (city or state)
- Business names (museums, for example)
- Category (beach or sunset, for example)
- Events (sports games or concerts, for example)
- A person identified in your People album (see Find and identify people in Photos)
- Text (an email address or phone number, for example)
- Caption (see See photo and video information)
- The person who added the photo to the library (see Set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library in Photos on iPhone)

Tip: Looking for something more specific? Refine your search with multiple keywords—simply keep adding keywords until you find the right photo. Search also suggests keywords to add to your search.

See also

Identify people and pets in Photos on iPhone

The Photos app recognizes people, dogs, and cats in your photos and sorts them in the People & Pets album (or the People album if no dogs or cats are identified). When you add names to the people and pets identified, you can search Photos to find them by name. You can name a person, dog, or cat directly from a photo or video in your photo library, or in the People & Pets album.

Name a person or pet in a photo or video

When you name a person or pet in a photo or video, they're automatically added to your People & Pets album and identified in other photos and videos in your library.

1. Open the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Open a photo or video, then tap or swipe up to see the details. People or pets already named appear in the bottom-left corner of the photo. A question mark appears next to those you haven't named.
3. Tap the person or pet with a question mark next to their picture, then tap Tag with Name.
4. Enter their name, tap Next, then tap Done.

Name a person or pet in the the People & Pets album

1. Open the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Albums, tap People & Pets, then tap the person or pet you want to name.
3. Tap Add Name at the top of the screen, then enter the name or tap a name from the list of suggested contacts.
4. Tap Next.

   If a person or pet is identified more than once, tap Select, tap each instance where they appear, then tap Merge.
5. Tap Done.

Photos displays the faces of people and pets that appear frequently in the People & Pets album. If you'd like to name a person or pet that hasn't been identified, tap Add People at the bottom of the People & Pets album.

Find photos of a specific person or pet

To find photos of a specific person or pet that you named, do either of the following:

- Tap Albums, tap People & Pets, then tap a person or pet to see all of the photos and videos they're in.
- Tap Search, then enter a name in the search field, or tap a name under People.

Set a key photo

1. Open the Photos app on your iPhone.

2. Tap Albums, tap People & Pets, then tap a person or pet.
3. Tap Select, then tap Show Faces.
4. Tap the photo you want to set as the key photo.
5. Tap, then tap Make Key Photo.

Mark people or pets as a favorite

Mark the people or pets that you interact with the most as a favorite so that it's easier to find them.

1. Open the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Albums, then tap People & Pets.
3. Tap ♡ next to the person or pet's photo.

   To set multiple favorites at the same time, tap Select, tap each person or pet that you want to favorite, then tap Favorite at the bottom of the screen.

To unfavorite a person or pet, tap ♡ next to the person or pet's photo.

Fix misidentifications

1. Open the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Albums, tap People & Pets, then tap the person or pet that's misidentified.
3. Tap Select, then tap Show Faces.
4. Tap the images that are misidentified, tap ⋯, then tap These are Not [*name*].

You can also fix misidentifications while viewing a photo in your library. Tap ⓘ or swipe up to see the photo information. Tap the misidentified person or pet in the bottom-left corner of the photo, then tap This is Not [*name*].

Sort People & Pets alphabetically or manually

1. Open the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Albums, then tap People & Pets.
3. Tap ⇅, then choose one of the following:

   - *Sort alphabetically:* Tap Name.
   - *Sort manually:* Tap Custom, then touch and hold a key photo and drag it to a new position.

Feature a person or pet you've identified less frequently

You can make photos of certain people or pets less likely to appear in your memories and featured photos, and in the Photos widget.

1. Open the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Albums, tap People & Pets, then tap the person or pet you want to see less often.
3. Tap ⋯, then tap Feature [*name*] Less.
4. Choose to feature the person or pet less or never, then tap Confirm.

See Manage memories and featured photos in Photos on iPhone to further customize the photos that appear in your memories and featured photos, and in the Photos widget.

Remove a person or pet

1. Open the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Albums, tap People & Pets, then tap Select.
3. Tap the person or pet that you want to remove, then tap Remove.

When you use iCloud Photos, the People & Pets album is kept up to date on all your devices that meet these minimum system requirements: iOS 11, iPadOS 13, or macOS 10.13. (You must be signed in with the same Apple ID on all the devices.)

See also

Search for photos on iPhone

Watch memories in Photos on iPhone

Browse photos by location on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Search for Photos

Next
Browse photos by location

Support › iPhone User Guide › Identify people and pets in Photos on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

This manual was copied from Apple Support website
and compiled by www.iphone15manual.com

Browse photos by location on iPhone

The Photos app creates collections of your photos and videos in the Places album based on where they were taken. View photos taken in a specific location, or look for photos taken nearby. See a collection of all your places on a map, or even watch a memory of a certain place.

Browse photos by location

1. Open the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Albums, then tap Places.
3. Select Map or Grid view.

   Only pictures and videos that have embedded location information (GPS data) are included.

   Tip: Pinch the map to zoom in and out, or drag to see more locations.

See where a photo was taken

1. Open the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Open a photo, then swipe up to see photo information.
3. Tap the map or address link to see more details.

   To change the location or address where the photo was taken, see Change the date, time, or location.

Watch a location-based memory

1. Open the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Albums, tap the Places album, then tap Grid.
3. Find a location with several images, then tap the name of the location.

   A memory appears at the top of the screen, and a photo collection below it.
4. Tap in the bottom-right corner of the memory to play it.

See also

Watch memories in Photos on iPhone

Search for photos on iPhone

Share photos and videos on iPhone

Share photos and videos on iPhone

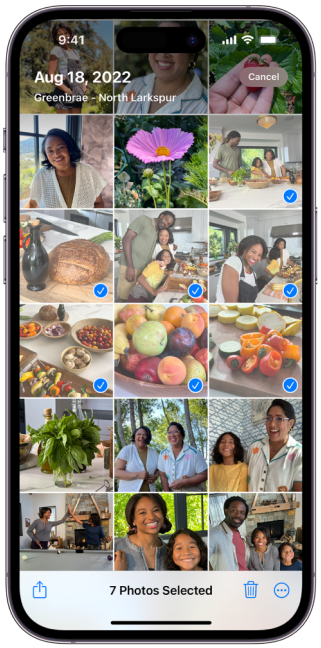
You can share photos and videos from the Photos app in Mail or Messages, or other apps you install. You can also share photos and videos by bringing one iPhone close to another.

To learn about transferring photos and video to an external storage device, see Import and export photos and videos on iPhone.

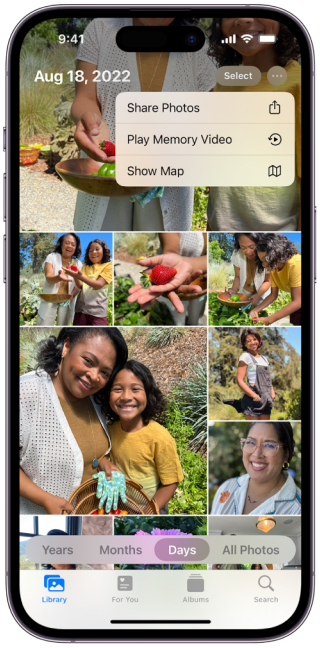
Share photos and videos

- *Share a single photo or video:* Open the photo or video, tap, then choose a share option such as Mail, Messages, or AirDrop.

- *Share multiple photos or videos:* When viewing a screen with multiple thumbnails, tap Select, then tap the thumbnail of the photos and videos you want to share. Tap, then choose a share option such as Mail, Messages, or AirDrop.



- *Share photos or videos from a day or month:* Tap Library, tap Days or Months, tap ⋯, then tap Share Photos and choose a share option such as Mail, Messages, or AirDrop.



When iCloud Photos is turned on, you can share multiple full-quality photos with an iCloud link. iCloud links remain available for 30 days, can be viewed by anyone, and can be shared using any app, such as Messages or Mail.

You can also use Shared Albums to share photos and videos with just the people you choose. See Create shared albums in Photos on iPhone.

Note: The size limit of attachments is determined by your service provider. For devices or services that don't support Live Photos, a Live Photo is shared as a still photo.

Adjust the sharing options

Before you share a photo or video, you can adjust the format, file type, and information that gets shared with it.

1. Open the photo or video, tap ⎙, tap Options, then do any of the following:

    - *Turn off location data:* Tap the button next to Location (green is on).

- *Adjust the file format:* Tap Automatic for the best file format for the destination, tap Current to prevent a file format conversion, or tap Most Compatible and files may convert to .JPG or .MOV.
- *Send as iCloud link:* Tap the button next to iCloud Link (green is on) to share a URL to view or download the photos or videos. iCloud links are available for 30 days.
- *Send all photo data:* Tap the button next to All Photos Data (green is on) to share the original file with edit history and metadata; the recipient can view the current version and modify edits (available with AirDrop and iCloud links only).

2. Tap Done.

Share photos and videos by bringing one iPhone close to another

You can transfer photos and videos from one iPhone to another simply by bringing the two devices close together.

1. Make sure each iPhone is turned on, unlocked, and has AirDrop turned on.
2. Make sure the sender and receiver are already contacts in each other's Contacts app.
3. On the iPhone with the items you want to share, open the Photos app, then do one of the following:
   - *Share a single photo or video:* Open the photo or video you want to share and keep it on the screen.
   - *Share multiple photos or videos:* Tap Select, then tap multiple photos or videos to share from your library.
4. Bring the devices together, then tap Share.

   The shared items are added to the recipient's Photos library.

Save or share a photo or video you receive

- *From email:* Tap to download the item if necessary, then tap. Or, touch and hold the item, then choose a sharing or saving option.
- *From a text message:* Tap the photo or video in the conversation, tap, then choose a sharing or saving option. You can also tap in the Messages conversation to save the photo or video directly to your Photos library.
- *From an iCloud link:* Tap in the Messages conversation to save the collection directly to your Photos library. To share the collection, open Photos, tap For You, then tap the collection under iCloud Links. Tap, then tap Share.

See also

Create shared albums in Photos on iPhone

Use AirDrop on iPhone to send items to nearby devices

Import and export photos and videos on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Share long videos on your iPhone

You can send long videos that you record with your iPhone camera using AirDrop, iCloud, or Mail Drop from the Photos app.

Send a video using AirDrop

With AirDrop, you can send a large video to a nearby iPhone, iPad, or Mac. AirDrop sends information using Wi-Fi and Bluetooth®, so before sending, make sure both you and the recipient have these controls turned on in Control Center.

Note: AirDrop requires iOS 7, iPadOS 13, OS X 10.10, or later.

1. If the person you're sending the video to isn't in your contacts, have them do one of the following:

   - *On iPhone or iPad:* Have them go to Settings > General > AirDrop, then tap Everyone for 10 Minutes.

   - *On a Mac:* Have them go to Apple menu > System Settings > General > AirDrop & Handoff, then click Everyone.

2. Open your photo library, tap the video you want to send, then tap.

   If you want to send the video in its original format, including metadata, location, and any associated edit history or captions, tap Options, then turn on All Photos Data.

3. Tap AirDrop, then tap the contact or device you want to share with.

   After you share, the recipient receives an alert to accept or decline the AirDrop transfer.

Send a video using an iCloud link

An iCloud link is a URL that you can use to send a large video with Messages or Mail.

To send an iCloud link, make sure you have iCloud Photos turned on. Then follow these steps:

1. Open your photo library, tap the video you want to send, then tap.
2. Tap Options, tap iCloud Link, then tap Done.
3. Tap Messages or Mail, enter the recipient of the iCloud link, then tap to send the message or email.

   Recipients have 30 days to download a video sent with an iCloud link.

Send a video using Mail Drop

With Mail Drop, you can send a large video as an attachment in Mail.

Note: Mail Drop requires iOS 9.2, iPadOS 13, OS X 10.10, or later.

1. Open your photo library, then tap the video you want to send.
2. Tap, then tap Mail.
3. Tap the To field, then enter the name or email of the recipient.

If you want to add a subject or message, tap the Subject field or email body.

4. Tap ↑ to send.

   Recipients have 30 days to download Mail Drop attachments.

See also

The Apple Support article: How to use AirDrop on your iPhone or iPad

The Apple Support article: Mail Drop limits

Share photos and videos on iPhone

Import and export photos and videos on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Share photos and videos

Next
View photos and videos shared with you

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

View photos and videos shared with you on iPhone

When someone shares photos and videos with you using the Messages app, you can easily find them in the Shared with You section in the Photos app. (Automatic Sharing and Photos must be turned on in Settings > Messages > Shared with You, and your friend must be in your contacts.)

1. Tap For You, then scroll down to Shared with You.
2. Do any of the following:
   - Tap a photo to view it in full screen, save it to your library, share it, or delete it.
   - Tap See All to view all photos shared with you.
   - Tap the name of the person who shared the photo, then reply to them using the Messages app.

You can also tap Library, then tap All Photos to see photos and videos shared with you in Messages. These photos and videos have a chat bubble in the bottom-left corner of the thumbnail. Tap the thumbnail to share the photo or video, save it to your library, or delete it. To hide photos and videos shared with you in Messages, tap, then tap Your Photos Only.

Note: Photos and videos you don't save from a Messages conversation are deleted in Shared with You and your library if the conversation in Messages is deleted.

To turn off Shared with You, go to Settings > Messages > Shared with You, then turn off Photos (green is on).

See also

Search for photos on iPhone

Share photos and videos on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Table of Contents

Watch memories in Photos on iPhone

The Memories feature in the Photos app creates a personalized collection of photos and videos that are set to music and you watch like a movie. Each memory features a significant person, place, or event from your Photos library. You can also create your own memories and share them with your friends and family.

Play a memory

1. Open the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap For You.
3. Swipe left below Memories, or tap See All to browse through your memories.
4. Tap a memory to play it. As you watch, you can do any of the following:
   - *Pause:* Touch and hold the screen, or tap the screen, then tap ⏸ at the bottom of the screen.
   - *Go backward or forward:* Swipe left or right on the screen. Or, tap the screen, then slide the frames at the bottom of the screen left or right.
   - *Close a memory:* Tap the screen, then tap ✕.

Create a memory

You can create your own memory from an event, a specific day in your library, or an album.

1. Tap Library, tap Days or Months, then tap ⋯. Or, tap Albums, open an album, then tap ⋯.
2. Tap Play Memory Video.

Share a memory

1. Tap For You, then play the memory you want to share.
2. While the memory plays, tap the screen, tap , then choose how you want to share.

Share photos from a memory

You can share multiple or individual photos from a memory.

1. Tap a memory to play it.
2. While the memory plays, tap the screen, then tap .
3. Tap , tap Select, then tap the photos you want to share.
4. Tap , then choose how you want to share.

Add a memory to Favorites

Tap For You, then tap ♡ in the top-right corner of the memory. Or, while a memory is playing, tap the screen, tap , then tap Add To Favorites.

To view your favorite memories, tap For You, tap See All next to Memories, then tap Favorites.

Delete a memory

1. Tap For You, then tap in the top-right corner of the memory you want to delete.
2. Tap Delete Memory.

See also

Personalize your memories in Photos on iPhone

Manage memories and featured photos in Photos on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
View photos and videos shared with you

Next
Personalize your memories

Support › iPhone User Guide › Watch memories in Photos on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Table of Contents

Personalize your memories in Photos on iPhone

In the Photos app, you can edit your memories to make them even more personal. Try out Memory mixes, which let you apply different songs with a matching photographic look. You can also choose new songs, edit the title of a memory, change the length, and add, reorder, or remove photos. Apple Music subscribers can add songs from the millions of songs available in the Apple Music catalog.

Add a Memory mix

Memory mixes are curated combinations of different songs, pacing, and styles that change the look and feel of a memory.

1. Tap For You, then tap a memory to play it.
2. Tap the screen, then tap .
3. Swipe left to view different Memory mixes.
4. Tap the screen to apply a Memory mix.

Change the Memory look

Use Memory looks to apply consistent color and style adjustments to all the photos in a memory.

1. Play a memory, then tap the screen.
2. Tap , then tap .
3. Tap a Memory look, then tap Done.

Change the music

You can change a memory's music by choosing from memory soundtracks or Apple Music's suggested songs. Apple Music subscribers can also access their Apple Music library and view suggested songs based on musical preferences or the content of the memory.

1. Play a memory, then tap the screen.
2. Tap , then tap .

   Apple Music subscribers can tap to search for songs in the Apple Music library.
3. Tap a song, then tap Done.

Add or remove photos

You can choose the photos that appear in a memory—add or remove suggested featured photos, or choose photos and videos directly from your library.

1. Play a memory, then tap the screen.
2. Tap , tap Manage Photos, then do any of the following:

   - *Add a featured photo:* Tap photos in the photo grid that don't have a checkmark to add them to the memory (photos with a checkmark are already in the memory).

     Deselect a photo to remove it from the memory.

   - *Add a photo from your photo library:* Tap All, scroll through your library, then tap the photos you want to add.

   - *Search for photos in your photo library:* Tap the search bar, then type the name of a person, place, or date. Tap a search result, then tap the photos you want to add.
3. Tap Done.

Edit the title and subtitle

You can change or edit the title and subtitle of a memory.

1. Tap in the top-right corner of the memory, then tap Change Title.
2. Enter the new title or subtitle in the text field, then tap Save.

Reorder photos in a memory

1. Tap a memory to play it.
2. While the memory plays, tap the screen, then tap .
3. Touch a photo, then drag it to a new position in the grid.
4. Tap to return to the memory.

Change the length of a memory

Depending on the number of photos in a memory, you can change the length of a memory to be short, medium, or long.

1. Play a memory, then tap the screen.
2. Tap , then tap Short, Medium, or Long.

Manage memories and featured photos in Photos on iPhone

The Photos app can show certain people, places, days, and holidays less frequently or not at all in your memories and featured photos and in the Photos widget. You can also turn off memories and featured photos in the Photos app and widget on your iPhone Home Screen.

Show a person less frequently or not at all

1. Open a photo of the person you want to show less often.
2. Tap, then tap Feature This Person Less.
3. Choose Feature This Person Less or Never Feature This Person, then tap Confirm.

Note: You can also show a person less often if they appear in your People album. See Feature a person or pet you've identified less frequently.

Feature certain content less frequently in memories

You can make certain people, pets, and photos less likely to appear in your memories and featured photos, and in the Photos widget.

1. Tap For You, then tap in the top-right corner of the memory.
2. Tap Feature Less, then choose to feature fewer photos of a specific person or pet, that day, or that place.

Turn off holiday memories

You can turn off all memories that feature holiday events in your home country or region.

Go to Settings > Photos, then turn off Show Holiday Events.

Turn off Memories and Featured Photos

You can turn off the Memories and Featured Photos features in the For You section of the Photos app and the Photos widget.

Go to Settings > Photos, then turn off Show Featured Content.

See also

Feature a person or pet you've identified less frequently

Personalize your memories in Photos on iPhone

Use iCloud Photos on iPhone

You can use iCloud Photos to keep the photos and videos in your Photos app securely stored in iCloud, and in sync on your iPhone, iPad, Mac, Apple TV, and Windows computer. You can also access your iCloud photos and videos in a web browser. The photos and videos you take are uploaded automatically and stored in their original format at full resolution. Any changes you make to your Photos collection on one device are reflected on your other devices too.

To use iCloud Photos, make sure that you sign in with the same Apple ID on all devices and that your devices meet these minimum system requirements: iOS 8.3, iPadOS 13.1, macOS 10.10.3, or a PC with iCloud for Windows 7.x.

Turn on iCloud Photos

1. Tap Settings, then tap [*your name*].
2. Tap iCloud.
3. Tap Photos, then turn on Sync this iPhone.

Save space on your iPhone

iCloud Photos can help you make the most of the storage space on your iPhone. When Optimize iPhone Storage is turned on, all your full-resolution photos and videos are stored in iCloud in their original formats, with storage-saving versions kept on your iPhone as space is needed.

Optimize iPhone Storage is turned on by default. To turn it off, go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > Photos, then tap Optimize iPhone Storage.

Get more iCloud storage

If your uploaded photos and videos exceed your storage plan, you can upgrade to iCloud+ for more storage and additional features. See Subscribe to iCloud+ on iPhone.

See also

Use iCloud on iPhone

Apple Support article: Set up and use iCloud Photos

Apple Support article: Download iCloud photos and videos

Create shared albums in Photos on iPhone

With Shared Albums in the Photos app, you can create albums to share photos and videos with just the subscribers you choose—and they can add their own photos, videos, and comments for everyone to see. If you set up a shared album, you can also rename or delete it.

Before you begin

1. Make sure you're signed in with your Apple ID on your iPhone and any other devices you want to use with Shared Albums.
2. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > Photos, then turn on Shared Albums (green is on).

Create a shared album

1. Open the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Albums, tap + at the top of the screen, then tap New Shared Album.
3. Enter a name for the shared album, then tap Next.
4. Type the name of the contact you want to add, or type the email address or phone number associated with the recipient's Apple ID. When you've added everyone, tap Create.

Join a shared album

When you're invited to join a shared album, a notification appears on your iPhone screen.

Tap the notification, then tap Accept on the album in the Photos app.

If you don't join the shared album by tapping the notification, you can also do the following:

1. Open the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap For You.
3. Tap Accept on the new album, below Shared Album Activity.

Note: The person who created the album receives a notification when a subscriber accepts the invitation to join a shared album.

Rename a shared album

The creator of a shared album can change its name.

1. Open the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Albums, then tap the shared album.
3. Tap ···, then tap Rename Album.
4. Enter a new name, then tap Save.

Delete or remove yourself from a shared album

1. Open the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Albums, then tap the shared album.
3. Tap .
4. Tap Delete Shared Album if you created the album, or tap Unsubscribe if you're a subscriber.

Photos that you saved or downloaded from a shared album to your Photos library stay in your library even if the shared album is deleted, or the person who created the album stops sharing it. See Save photos and videos from a shared album to your Photos library.

See also

Add and delete photos and videos in a shared album in Photos on iPhone

Add and remove people in a shared album in Photos on iPhone

Use iCloud Shared Photo Library on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use iCloud Photos

Next
Add and remove people in a shared album

Support › iPhone User Guide › Create shared albums in Photos on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Add and remove people in a shared album in Photos on iPhone

If you're the creator of a shared album, you can invite more subscribers to join the album in the Photos app. You can also remove subscribers from the album, manage album notifications, and turn posting for subscribers off and on. If you have friends and family who don't use iCloud, you can share the album with them by sending an iCloud URL.

Invite more people

The creator of a shared album can invite new subscribers to join a shared album.

1. Open the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Albums, tap the shared album, then tap .
3. Tap Invite People, then enter the name of the contact you want to add, or type the email address or phone number associated with the recipient's Apple ID.
4. Tap Add.

Remove subscribers

The creator of a shared album can remove subscribers from a shared album.

1. Open the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Albums, tap the shared album, then tap .
3. Tap the subscriber you want to remove, then tap Remove Subscriber.

Share an album with people who don't use iCloud

The creator of a shared album can create a unique iCloud URL to share the album with people who don't use iCloud.

1. Open the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Albums, then tap the shared album.
3. Tap , then turn on Public Website (green is on).
4. Tap Share Link, then tap how you want to share—Mail or Messages, for example.
5. Enter the names, phone numbers, or email addresses of the people you want to share the link with, then send the link.

When Public Website is turned on, anyone with the URL can access the album.

Manage posts and notifications

The creator of a shared album can turn subscriber posting and album activity notifications off and on.

1. Open the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Albums, tap the shared album, tap , then do one of the following:.
   - Turn off Subscribers Can Post so only you can add photos and videos to the album; tap again to turn subscriber posting back on.
   - Turn off Notifications to stop notifications when subscribers like, comment, or add photos and videos to the album; tap again to turn album notifications back on.
3. Tap Done.

See also

Create shared albums in Photos on iPhone

Add and delete photos and videos in a shared album in Photos on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Create shared albums

Next
Add and delete photos and videos in a shared album

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Add and delete photos and videos in a shared album in Photos on iPhone

You can add and delete photos and videos in a shared album that you created or subscribe to. You can also add photos and videos from a shared album to your Photos library in the Photos app.

Add photos and videos to a shared album

1. Open the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Albums, tap the shared album, then tap +.
3. Tap all the items you want to add, then tap Add.
4. Type a comment (optional), then tap Post.

When you add new photos, the people you share the album with are automatically notified.

Delete photos, videos, and comments from a shared album

Creators of a shared album can delete any photos, videos, or comments in the album. Subscribers can delete anything that they personally added. Anything that gets deleted is automatically deleted from the shared album on all your devices and the devices of all subscribers.

1. Open the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Albums, then tap the shared album.
3. Tap the photo or video, then tap .
4. Tap Delete Photo or Delete Video.

To delete a comment, touch and hold it, then tap Delete.

Save photos and videos from a shared album to your Photos library

1. Open the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Albums, tap the shared album, then tap a photo or video.
3. Tap , swipe up, then tap Save Image or Save Video.

See also

Create shared albums in Photos on iPhone

Add and remove people in a shared album in Photos on iPhone

Set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library in Photos on iPhone

With iCloud Shared Photo Library in the Photos app, you can set up or join a Shared Library to share photos and videos with up to five other friends or family members. You and those close to you can collaborate on the photo collection and enjoy more complete memories, all in one place. You can belong to one Shared Library at a time.

When you join a Shared Library, the photos and videos that you contribute move from your Personal Library to the Shared Library, and all members of the library can view, edit, and delete them. Shared Library photos and videos are integrated seamlessly in the Photos app alongside your personal content, but you can also use a filter to quickly switch between your Personal and Shared Libraries.

Note: iOS 16.1, iPadOS 16.1, macOS 13, or later are the minimum system requirements to use iCloud Shared Photo Library. Photos and videos added to a Shared Library won't be available on devices with earlier versions of the software.

Before you begin

Before you set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library, make sure you have iCloud Photos turned on.

Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > Photos, then make sure Sync this iPhone is on.

Note: You don't need Family Sharing turned on to set up a Shared Library.

Set up iCloud Shared Photo Library

The person who sets up iCloud Shared Photo Library is the organizer.

Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > Photos, tap Shared Library, then follow the instructions onscreen to add participants and move photos and videos into the Shared Library.

During setup, you can add existing photos and videos from your Personal Library to the Shared Library in these ways:

- *All My Photos and Videos:* Add all of the photos and videos in your Personal Library to the Shared Library.
- *By People or Date:* Add photos and videos that include specific people or were taken when those people were nearby. Or, tap Skip, then select a date on the calendar (such as an anniversary or other meaningful day) to automatically add all photos and videos that were taken after that date.
- *Manually:* Select the specific photos and videos that you want to add to the Shared Library.

Note: Photos and videos you add to the Shared Library don't appear in your Personal Library; see Switch library views.

You can preview the photos and videos you add to the Shared Library and make changes before you invite participants using Messages or a web link.

Join a Shared Library

To join an iCloud Shared Photo Library, tap the invitation sent from the organizer, tap Get Started, then follow the onscreen instructions. During setup, you can add photos and videos to the Shared Library the same way as the organizer (see Set up iCloud Shared Photo Library, above).

After you join a Shared Library, you can add photos and videos to the Shared Library in several ways, and access the same content within the Shared Library as the organizer and other participants. See Add content to an iCloud Shared Photo Library.

Add participants to a Shared Library

The person who sets up iCloud Shared Photo Library (the organizer) can add new participants to the Shared Library. Go to Settings > Photos > Shared Library, then tap Add Participants.

Note: A Shared Library can include up to six participants including the organizer; you can belong to one Shared Library at a time.

Leave a Shared Library

To leave an iCloud Shared Photo Library, go to Settings > Photos > Shared Library, then tap Leave Shared Library.

When you leave a Shared Library, you can copy everything from the Shared Library into your own library, or just the content you contributed.

Delete a Shared Library

Only the organizer can delete an iCloud Shared Photo Library.

Go to Settings > Photos > Shared Library, then tap Delete Shared Library.

When a Shared Library is deleted, participants who have been members of the Shared Library for over seven days can copy everything from the Shared Library into their own libraries and participants who have been members for less than seven days can copy the content they contributed.

All content added to a Shared Library counts toward the iCloud storage space of the library organizer. See Add storage space to your Shared Library.

See also

Add content to an iCloud Shared Photo Library in Photos on iPhone

After you set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library in the Photos app, you can continue to add photos and videos in several ways:

- Manually move photos from your Personal Library
- Save photos and videos you take directly to the Shared Library from Camera
- Share photos you take when other members of the Shared Library are nearby
- Share photos and videos you take at home

Note: iOS 16.1, iPadOS 16.1, macOS 13, or later are the minimum system requirements to use iCloud Shared Photo Library. Photos and videos added to a Shared Library won't be available on devices with earlier versions of the software.

Manually add photos and videos to the Shared Library

You can add individual photos and videos from your Personal Library to the Shared Library.

1. Tap the photo or video you want to add to view it in full screen on your iPhone. Or, to add multiple photos and videos at the same time, tap Select, then tap the thumbnails you want to add.
2. Tap, then tap Move to Shared Library.

After content is moved to the Shared Library, it's no longer in your Personal Library and is visible to all of the Shared Library participants. To move content from the Shared Library back to your Personal Library, follow the steps above, but tap Move to Personal Library instead of Move to Shared Library.

Add photos and videos to the Shared Library directly from Camera

When you open Camera, a Shared Library button appears at the top of the screen to let you switch between saving the photos and videos you take directly to your Personal Library or to the Shared Library. By default, Shared Library is off and Camera saves to your Personal Library. To switch, tap to save to the Shared Library; tap to switch back to your Personal Library.

To turn the feature on or off after you complete the setup process, go to Settings > Photos > Shared Library > Sharing from Camera, then turn Sharing from Camera on or off (green is on).

Add photos and videos when Shared Library participants are nearby

When you set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library, you can choose an option to automatically turn on the Shared Library button in Camera when other Shared Library participants are nearby, so you can always add the photos and videos you take together directly to the Shared Library.

To detect when participants of your Shared Library are nearby, everyone needs to be signed in to their device with their Apple ID and have Bluetooth turned on in Settings > Bluetooth.

To turn the feature on or off after you complete the setup process, go to Settings > Photos > Shared Library > Sharing from Camera, then tap Share Automatically or Share Manually.

Automatically add photos and videos taken at home

When you set up or join a Shared Library, you can choose an option to automatically add photos and videos you take at home to the Shared Library.

To turn the feature on or off after you complete the setup process, go to Settings > Photos > Shared Library > Sharing from Camera, then turn on Share When At Home (green is on).

Add photo and videos with sharing suggestions

Sharing suggestions recommends photos you might want to add to your Shared Library, such as photos you took with participants of the Shared Library, photos you took when participants were nearby, or photos of people you indicated interest in during the setup process. iPhone sends a notification to review sharing suggestions. Or, follow these steps:

1. Open Photos, then tap For You.
2. Scroll down to For Your Shared Library, then tap See All.
3. Tap Move All or tap Select to manually choose the photos you want to add to the Shared Library.

If you want to get sharing suggestions for additional people, go to Settings > Photos > Shared Library > Shared Library Suggestions, tap Add Other People, tap a person, then tap Add. The person doesn't have to be a member of the Shared Library. See Identify people and pets in Photos on iPhone.

To turn off sharing suggestions, go to Settings > Photos > Shared Library Suggestions, then turn off Shared Library Suggestions.

For more information about accessing content in a Shared Library, see the Apple Support article If you are missing photos after joining an iCloud Shared Photo Library.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library

Next
Use iCloud Shared Photo Library

Support > iPhone User Guide > Add content to an iCloud Shared Photo Library in Photos on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use iCloud Shared Photo Library on iPhone

After you set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library, you can share photos and videos with friends and family in the Photos app. You and up to five other participants can add photos and videos to the library, and any edits, comments, or favorites made to them is seen by everyone in real time. Content in a Shared Library is also added to everyone's memories, featured photos, and to the Photos widget, so everyone can experience more complete memories.

Photos and videos added to the Shared Library are separate from your Personal Library. You can easily switch between viewing the Shared Library, your Personal Library, or both in Photos.

Switch library views

After you set up iCloud Shared Photo Library, you can switch between viewing your Personal Library, the Shared Library, or both libraries in the Photos app.

1. Open Photos, then tap at the top right of the screen.
2. Do one of the following:
   - *View your Photos content and iCloud Shared Photo Library content:* Tap Both Libraries.
   - *View only your personal Photos content:* Tap Personal Library.
   - *View only iCloud Shared Photo Library content:* Tap Shared Library.
3. The library button in the top-right corner changes depending on which library you're viewing; tap it when you want to switch between Shared, Personal, or Both libraries.

Content that's part of the Shared Library has a badge in the top-right corner of the thumbnail when you select the All Photos option at the bottom of the screen. To turn off the Shared Library badges, tap the Library button, then tap Shared Library Badge (a checkmark indicates it's on).

Make edits and changes to content in the Shared Library

When you make the following changes to photos and videos in the Shared Library, all participants in the Shared Library see the changes:

- Edits; see Edit photos and videos on iPhone.
- Favorites, captions, keywords, or date and time adjustments; see See photo and video information.
- Deleted content; see Delete or hide photos and videos on iPhone.

  Note: You receive notifications if content you added to the Shared Library is deleted. To turn off notifications, go to Settings > Photos > Shared Library, then turn off Delete Notifications. If content you added is deleted, you can move it from the Recently Deleted album back to your Personal Library within 30 days.

Search for Shared Library content

You can find photos and videos shared by specific participants of the Shared Library.

1. Tap Search, then type the participant's name in the search field.

   Tip: You can narrow the search by adding keywords such as "beach" or a specific location with the participant's name in the search field.

2. Tap "Shared by [*participant's name*]".

3. Tap See All to view all of the photos added by that person or scroll down to see photos added from specific moments.

You can also open a photo in the Shared Library, tap ⓘ, then tap "Added by [*participant's name*]" to see all the photos and videos added by that person.

Move shared content back to your Personal Library

You can move photos and videos that you contributed to the Shared Library back to your Personal Library.

1. View the Shared Library (👥 appears at the top of the screen).

2. Tap Select, then tap the photo and video thumbnails you want to move.

3. Tap ⋯, then tap Move to Personal Library.

Add storage space to your Shared Library

The content in iCloud Shared Photo Library is available to all participants, but the iCloud storage used to store the content counts against the library organizer's storage space.

If the Shared Library content exceeds the organizer's available storage space, the organizer can upgrade to iCloud+ or add additional storage to their existing iCloud+ subscription. See Subscribe to iCloud+ on iPhone.

See also

Set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library in Photos on iPhone

Add content to iCloud Shared Photo Library in Photos on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Add content to an iCloud Shared Photo Library

Next
Import and export photos and videos

Support › iPhone User Guide › Use iCloud Shared Photo Library on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Import and export photos and videos on iPhone

You can import photos and videos directly to the Photos app from a digital camera, an SD memory card, or another iPhone or iPad that has a camera. You can also export unmodified versions of your photos and videos directly to an external drive, memory card, or other storage device that's connected to your iPhone.

Import photos and videos to your iPhone

Import photos and videos saved on another device such as a digital camera or an external drive to the Photos app on your iPhone.

1. Insert the camera adapter or card reader into the Lightning or USB-C connector, or connect the device directly to your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
   - *Connect a camera:* Connect the adapter to the camera, then turn on the camera and make sure it's in transfer mode. For more information, see the documentation that came with the camera.
   - *Connect an external storage device or insert an SD memory card into the card reader:* Don't force the card into the slot on the reader; it fits only one way.
   - *Connect an iPhone or iPad:* Use the Lightning adapter or the USB-C cable that came with the device to connect it to the camera adapter. Turn on and unlock the device.
3. Open the Photos app on your iPhone, then tap Import.
4. Select the photos and videos you want to import, then select your import destination.
   - *Import all items:* Tap Import All.
   - *Import selected items:* Tap the items you want to import (a checkmark appears for each), tap Import, then tap Import Selected.
5. After the photos and videos have been imported, keep or delete them on the camera, card, iPhone, or iPad.
6. Disconnect the camera adapter or card reader.

Export photos and videos to an external storage device

You can export photos and videos you took on your iPhone directly to an external drive, a memory card, or other storage device.

Note: For photos and videos that have been edited, the unmodified original version will be exported.

1. Connect your iPhone to the storage device using the Lightning or USB-C connector, or connect the device directly to your iPhone.
2. Open the Photos app, then select the photos and videos you want to export.
3. Tap , then tap Export Unmodified Original.
4. Tap your storage device (below Locations), then tap Save.

Print photos on iPhone to an AirPrint-enabled printer

Print your photos directly from the Photos app on your iPhone with any AirPrint-enabled device.

- *Print a single photo:* While viewing the photo, tap, then tap Print.
- *Print multiple photos:* While viewing photos, tap Select, select each photo you want to print, tap, then tap Print.

See also

Print from iPhone

Import and export photos and videos on iPhone

Share photos and videos on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Find podcasts on iPhone

Use the Podcasts app to find shows about science, news, politics, comedy, and more. If you find a show you like, you can *follow* it to add it to your library. Then you can easily listen offline, get notified about new episodes, and more.

Note: Shows may offer paid subscriptions that give you access to exclusive shows and episodes, new releases, episodes without ads, and more. You can subscribe to a show or channel and manage your subscriptions. If you already subscribe to Apple Music, Apple News+, or an eligible third-party app, you can listen to its subscriber content in Podcasts. See Listen to subscriber-only content in Podcasts on iPhone.

Find podcasts

- *Search by title, person, or topic:* Tap Search at the bottom right of the screen, enter what you're looking for in the search bar on the top of the screen, then tap Search on the onscreen keyboard.

  Tip: Tap Top Results, Shows, Episodes, or Channels to only display results from that category.

- *Discover new shows:* Tap Browse at the bottom of the screen to see new and trending shows, and the Apple editorial collections. You can also tap Search to see Top Charts and browse by categories.

- *Get personalized recommendations:* Tap Listen Now at the bottom of the screen to view Up Next, where you can find shows based on what you've listened to previously. You can tap ••• below an episode to download it, save it, remove it from the Up Next section, and more.

- *Add shows by URL:* Tap Library, tap , then tap Follow a Show by URL.

  Note: The URL must be in RSS format.

View shared podcasts

When a friend shares a show with you in Messages, you can easily find it in the Podcasts app. Tap Listen Now in the sidebar, then scroll to the Shared with You section.

(If the Shared with You section doesn't appear, check to make sure your friend is in your contacts, and that Podcasts is turned in Settings > Messages > Shared with You.)

See also Find all the content someone shared with you.

Browse episodes within a specific podcast

1. Tap a podcast to see its information page.
2. Scroll to see recent episodes or tap See All (if available).

See also

Download, save, and share podcast episodes on iPhone

Listen to podcasts on iPhone

Listen to podcasts on iPhone

In the Podcasts app, you can play an episode, see what's playing next, listen to an episode when you're offline, set a sleep timer, and use the playback controls.

Play a podcast

To start playing a podcast, tap the play button under the episode title (or tap an episode in the Up Next section). You can also do any of the following:

- *Jump to a specific time:* Drag the slider below the episode information.
- *Resume playing a previous show or episode:* Tap Listen Now, scroll to the bottom of the screen, then tap an episode below Recently Played.

Choose what to play next

You can add episodes to Playing Next, then listen to them later.

1. Tap ••• below an episode, then tap Add to Queue.
2. Tap the player at the bottom of the screen to open the Now Playing tab, then tap ☰.
3. In the Queue section, do any of the following:

   - *Play an episode:* Tap the episode. The next episode in the queue plays immediately after the previous episode finishes.
   - *Reorder episodes:* Drag ☰ to move an episode up or down in the list.
   - *Remove an episode from the queue:* Swipe left on the episode, then tap Delete.
   - *Remove all episodes from the queue:* Tap Clear.

If you listen to multiple episodes of a show in a row, additional episodes appear in the Continue Playing section of Now Playing. These episodes play after the ones you added to the Queue section, so you can easily pick up where you left off in a show. You can also tap an episode in Continue Playing to start listening right away.

Set a sleep timer

You can set a sleep timer so that playback stops automatically after a specified period of time.

1. Tap the player at the bottom of the screen to open the Now Playing tab.
2. Tap , then choose an option.

Use the playback controls

Tap the player at the bottom of the screen to open the Now Playing tab, then use any of the following controls.

Control	Description
	Play
	Pause
1×	Choose a faster or slower playback speed
15	Jump back 15 seconds To change the number of seconds you skip back, go to Settings > Podcasts, then tap Back.
30	Jump forward 30 seconds To change the number of seconds you skip forward, go to Settings > Podcasts, then tap Forward.
	Set a timer for podcasts to stop playing
	Stream the audio to other devices
	See what's playing next, or play more episodes from a show you've recently listened to
•••	Choose more actions such as sharing or downloading the episode

See also

Organize your podcast library on iPhone

Listen to subscriber-only content in Podcasts on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Find podcasts

Next
Follow your favorite podcasts

Follow your favorite podcasts on iPhone

When you find a show you like in the Podcasts app, follow it to add it to your library so you can get notified about new episodes, change the playback order, and more.

Follow a podcast

When you follow a podcast, it's added to your library.

1. Tap a show to see its information page.
2. Tap Follow in the upper right.

   Or touch and hold a show's artwork, then tap Follow Show.

Unfollow a podcast

1. Tap a show you follow to see its information page.
2. Tap in the top-right corner of the screen, then tap Unfollow Show.

   Or touch and hold the artwork for a show you follow, then tap Unfollow Show.

Get notifications for new episodes

Get notified when new episodes are available for podcasts you follow.

1. Tap Listen Now.
2. Tap or your picture.
3. Tap Notifications, then turn Notifications on or off.

See also

Subscribe to a show or channel in Podcasts on iPhone

Find podcasts on iPhone

Organize your podcast library on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use the Podcasts widget on iPhone

You can add the Podcasts widget to your Home Screen to view and play episodes in your Up Next queue without opening the Podcasts app.

Add a Podcasts widget to the Home Screen

1. Touch and hold the Home Screen until the apps begin to jiggle.
2. Tap + at the top of the screen to open the widget gallery.
3. Scroll down, then tap Podcasts.
4. Swipe left and right to view the different widget sizes and layouts. When you see the option you want, tap Add Widget, then tap Done.

To move the widget on your Home Screen, touch and hold the Home Screen until the apps begin to jiggle. Drag the widget to a new location, then tap Done.

To remove the widget from your Home Screen, touch and hold the Home Screen until the apps begin to jiggle, then tap − at the top left of the widget.

See also

Listen to podcasts on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Organize your podcast library on iPhone

In the Podcasts app, you can organize the podcasts you follow, catch up on the latest episodes, and create your own stations.

View your podcast library

Tap Library at the bottom of the screen to see any of the following:

- *Shows:* Tap to see shows that you follow. If you downloaded or saved individual episodes from podcasts you don't follow, tap All to see them. Tap Followed to view only shows you follow. You can tap any show to see the information page or the episodes in your library.

  To automatically hide all episodes you've already played, go to Settings > Podcasts, then turn on Hide Played Episodes.

- *Channels:* Tap to see channels from shows you follow and browse all shows in a channel.
- *Saved:* Episodes you marked as appear here.
- *Downloaded:* Episodes you download appear here. You can listen to these episodes without an internet connection.
- *Latest Episodes:* The most recent episodes from each show you follow are displayed here. To change how long episodes stay in this playlist, tap .
- *Recently Updated:* See shows you follow with recently released episodes.

Filter episodes by unplayed, saved, downloaded, and season

1. Tap a show to see its information page.
2. Tap Episodes (or the current filter) above the list of episodes.
3. Choose an option, like Unplayed or Season 1.

Note: Some filter options, such as Unplayed, Downloaded, Saved, and Played, are only available for shows that you follow or shows with saved or downloaded episodes.

Change the episode playback order

1. Tap a show you follow to view its information page.
2. Tap , then tap Settings.
3. Choose an option, like Oldest to Newest.

Limit the number of downloads from each podcast

1. Tap a show you follow to view its information page.
2. Tap , then tap Settings.

3. Tap Limit Downloads, then select an option to limit downloads by number or time.

Mark an episode as played

1. Tap a show to view its information page.
2. Swipe right on an episode, then tap Played.

If you're already looking at a specific episode, tap ···, then tap Mark as Played.

Hide episodes you've already played

You can change a show's settings to hide episodes you've already played.

1. Tap a show you follow to view its information page.
2. Tap ···, then tap Hide Played Episodes.

To automatically hide played episodes for all shows you follow, go to Settings > Podcasts, then turn on Hide Played Episodes.

Create your own station

Use stations (similar to a music playlist) to group shows you follow based on themes like news, comedy, or morning commute. Episodes from the podcasts you choose are automatically added to your station regularly.

1. Tap Library, then tap ··· in the top-right corner.
2. Tap New Station, add a title, then tap Save.
3. Tap Choose Podcasts.

Tip: To adjust the number of episodes from each podcast that are added to your station, tap the station you want to change, then tap ···. Tap Station Settings, then tap Episodes.

See also

Download, save, and share podcast episodes on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use the Podcasts widget

Next
Download, save, or share podcasts

Support > iPhone User Guide > Organize your podcast library on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Download, save, and share podcast episodes on iPhone

In the Podcasts app, you can download, save, and share podcast episodes.

Download an episode

1. Tap a show to see its information page.
2. Swipe left on an episode, then tap.

Save an episode

1. Tap a show to see its information page.
2. Swipe left on an episode, then tap.

When you save an episode, it's automatically downloaded so you can listen to it offline. To turn off this option, go to Settings > Podcasts, then turn off Download When Saving.

Remove a downloaded episode

1. Tap Library, tap Downloaded, then tap a show.
2. Swipe left on an episode, then tap Remove Download.

   You can also remove a saved episode while looking at its information page. Tap, then tap Unsave Episode.

Remove a saved episode

1. Tap Library, tap Saved, then tap a show.
2. Swipe left on an episode, then tap Unsave. While looking at the information page for a specific episode, you can tap, then tap Unsave Episode.

Remove all downloaded episodes from a show

1. Tap Library.
2. Tap Shows, then tap a show to see its information page.
3. Tap, then tap Remove Downloads.

Remove all downloaded episodes

1. Tap Library, then tap Downloaded.
2. Tap, then tap Remove All Downloads.

Share a podcast show or episode

1. Tap a show to see its information page. If you want to share a specific episode, tap the episode.
2. Tap ··· in the top-right corner of the screen, then tap Share Show or Share Episode.

See also

Subscribe to a show or channel in Podcasts on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Organize your podcast library

Next
Subscribe to podcasts

Support › iPhone User Guide › Download, save, and share podcast episodes on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Subscribe to a show or channel in Podcasts on iPhone

In the Podcasts app, subscribe to, change, cancel, and share your podcasts subscriptions. Paid subscriptions allow you to support the shows you love, and they often include premium extras, early access to new episodes, or ad-free listening.

Note: Not all subscriptions and channels are available in all countries, regions, or languages. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Subscribe to a show or channel

1. Select the show or channel you want to subscribe to.
2. Tap the subscription button (if available).

When you subscribe to a show, you automatically follow it. See Follow your favorite podcasts on iPhone. When you subscribe to a channel or follow one of its shows, the channel appears in the Channels section of your library.

Change or cancel your subscriptions

1. Tap Listen Now.
2. Tap or your picture, then tap Manage Subscriptions.
3. Tap a subscription to change or cancel it.

Share Apple Podcasts subscriptions

When you subscribe to podcast channels, you can use Family Sharing to share your subscriptions with up to five other family members. Your family group members will automatically have access to the channels you subscribe to.

If you join a family group and a family group member subscribes to a show you already subscribe to, your subscription isn't renewed on your next billing date; instead, you use the group's subscription. If you join a family group that doesn't subscribe, the group uses your subscription.

Note: To stop sharing a show subscription with a family group, you can cancel the subscription or leave a Family Sharing group.

See also the Apple Support article Get and manage your Apple Podcasts Subscriptions.

See also

Apple Support article: Get and manage your Apple Podcasts Subscriptions

Listen to subscriber-only content in Podcasts on iPhone

Listen to subscriber-only content in Podcasts on iPhone

In the Podcasts app, you can listen to audio content from Apple Music, Apple News+, and eligible third-party subscription apps.

Note: Not all apps offer audio content that's available in Podcasts.

Connect app subscriptions to Podcasts

Your eligible app subscriptions are automatically connected to Podcasts if you subscribed through the App Store and the app offers audio content in Podcasts.

If you subscribed using another method, do the following:

1. Open the Podcasts app and browse or search for a channel with an eligible subscription.
2. On the Channel page, tap the Already a Subscriber link, then follow the instructions to connect your app subscription.

After an app subscription is connected, you can find the channel in your library. You can use Podcasts to play all subscriber-only shows and episodes.

See also

Subscribe to a show or channel in Podcasts on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Change your download settings for Podcasts on iPhone

Podcasts you follow are automatically downloaded to your Apple device. Episodes you've played are automatically deleted from your device. You can change those settings, and adjust other download options.

Turn automatic downloads on or off

1. Go to Settings > Podcasts.
2. Tap Automatically Download, then tap an option.

Tip: To automatically download episodes from a particular podcast, open the Podcasts app, tap Library, then tap Shows. Touch and hold the show's artwork, tap Settings, then tap Automatic Downloads to choose a download option.

Remove downloaded podcasts after you listen to them

1. Go to Settings > Podcasts.
2. Turn on Remove Played Downloads.

   Or, to adjust this setting for a particular podcast you follow, tap Library, tap Shows, then touch and hold the show's artwork. Tap Settings, then turn on Remove Played Downloads.

Limit how much cellular data is used when downloading podcasts

Go to Settings > Podcasts, then choose any of the following:

- *Block downloads when using cellular data:* Turn off Allow Over Cellular.
- *Choose whether to be notified before downloading over a cellular connection:* Tap Cellular Downloads, then choose an option.

Turn off automatic syncing across Apple devices

1. Go to Settings > Podcasts.
2. Turn off Sync Library.

See also

Download, save, and share podcast episodes on iPhone

Add or remove accounts in Reminders on iPhone

In the Reminders app, you can use multiple accounts—such as iCloud, enterprise managed iCloud, Microsoft Exchange, Google, and Yahoo—and keep all your to-do lists in one place. Your reminders stay up to date on all your devices that use the same accounts.

Note: All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use updated reminders in iCloud. Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

Keep your reminders up to date on all your devices with iCloud

Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > Show All, then turn on Reminders.

Your reminders stored in iCloud—and any changes you make to them—appear on your iPhone, iPad, Apple Watch, and Mac where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

Update your reminders stored in iCloud

If you've been using Reminders with iOS 12 or earlier, you may need to update your reminders stored in iCloud to use features such as attachments, flags, list colors and icons, and more.

1. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > Show All, then make sure Reminders is turned on.
2. Open the Reminders app.
3. On the Welcome to Reminders screen, choose one of the following options:
   - *Update Now:* Begin the update process.
   - *Update Later:* A blue Update button appears above your lists; tap it when you're ready to update your reminders.

Note: Updated reminders aren't backward compatible with the Reminders app in earlier versions of iOS and macOS. See the Apple Support article Upgrading the Reminders app in iOS 13 or later.

Add other accounts

You can use the Reminders app to manage your to-do lists in other accounts, such as Microsoft Exchange, Google, and Yahoo.

1. Go to Settings > Reminders > Accounts > Add Account.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose an account provider, then enter your account information.
   - If your account provider isn't listed, tap Other, tap Add CalDAV Account, enter your account information, then turn on Reminders for that account.

Remove an account

When you remove an account, the reminders in that account no longer appear on your iPhone. The reminders remain in your internet account (for example, iCloud.com or Google) and any other devices you had already set up.

- *Temporarily stop using an account:* Go to Settings > Reminders > Accounts, tap the account, then turn off Reminders.

  To view the reminders in that account on your iPhone again, turn on Reminders.

- *Delete an account:* Go to Settings > Reminders > Accounts, tap the account, then tap Sign Out (for an iCloud account) or Delete Account (for other accounts).

  If you don't see Sign Out or Delete Account, your account may be managed by your organization. See an administrator for removal instructions.

See also

Use iCloud on iPhone

Set up mail, contacts, and calendar accounts on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

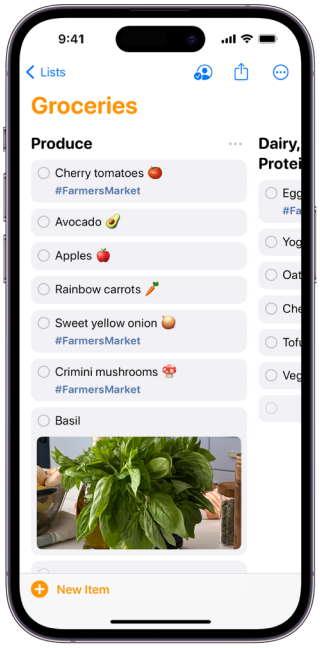
Previous
Change download settings

Next
Make a grocery list

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Make a grocery list in Reminders on iPhone

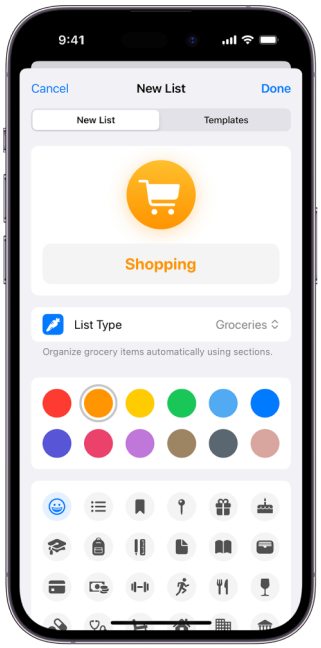
In the Reminders app, you can create a grocery list to make shopping easier. Items are automatically sorted into categories. You can change how items are grouped, and the list remembers your preferences. With the column view, the sections are organized as columns across your screen, making it easy to visualize the items on your list.



Note: All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use updated reminders in iCloud. Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

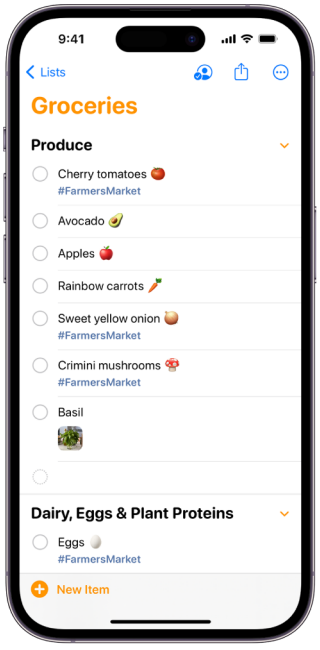
Create a new grocery list

1. Open the Reminders app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Add List, then choose an account (if you have more than one account).
3. Enter a name for the list, tap List Type, then choose Groceries.



4. Choose a color and symbol for the list (optional).

Add a new item to your grocery list



1. In your grocery list, tap New Item, then enter the item description.
2. Tap Add Note, then enter any additional information.
3. Tap ⓘ to edit the item details. For example, you can attach a photo, set a location-based reminder, or flag an important item.

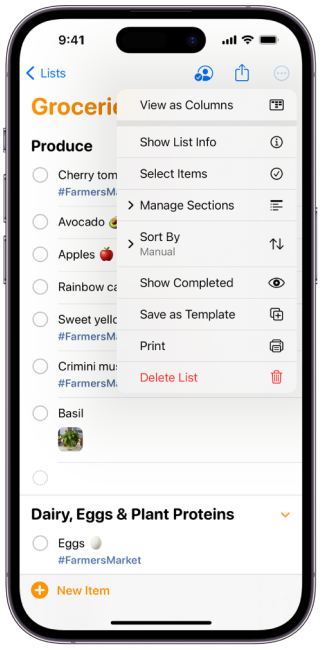
You can also add items using Siri.

Siri: Say something like: “Add artichokes to my groceries list.” Learn how to use Siri.

Show the list in columns

You can display the sections as columns across your screen, making it easy to visualize the items on your list.

1. In your grocery list, tap ⋯, then tap View as Columns.



2. To recategorize an item, drag it into a different column.

   (When you manually move an item to a different section, the list remembers your preference.)

Create a custom section

1. In your grocery list, tap ⋯, then tap Manage Sections.
2. Tap New Section, then enter a name

Rename and reorder sections

- *Rename a section:* Select the name of the section, then enter the new name.
- *Move a section:* Touch and hold a section, then drag it a new position.

You can also tap ⋯, tap Manage Sections, then tap Edit Sections.

Move items into different sections

You can touch and hold an item, then drag it into a different section.

To move multiple items, do the following:

1. Tap ⋯, tap Select Items, then choose the items you want to move.
2. Tap ☰, then choose a section.

See also

Search and organize lists in Reminders on iPhone

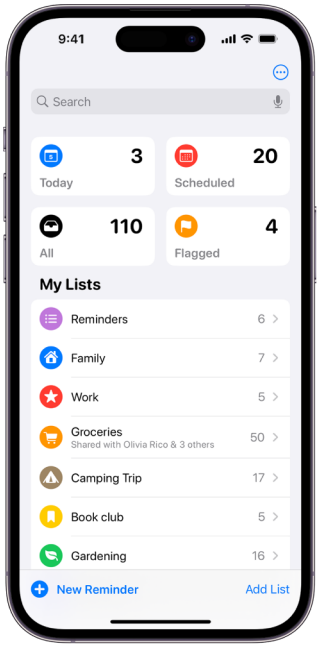
Share lists and collaborate in Reminders on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous Next

Add items to a list in Reminders on iPhone

In the Reminders app, you can easily make to-do lists for shopping, tasks around the house, projects at work, and more. Grocery lists automatically sort items into categories to make shopping easier. When you add an item to a list, you can attach images; set flags; get alerts based on time, date, and location; and more.

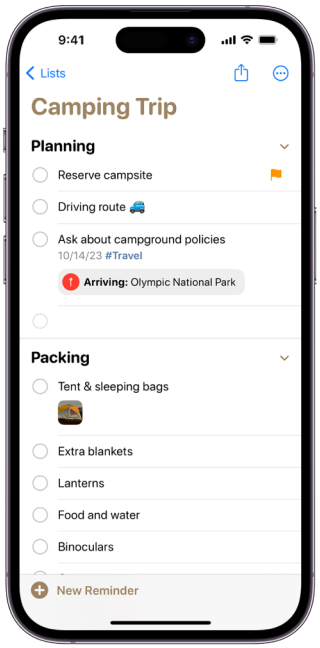


Note: All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use updated reminders in iCloud. Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

Make a new list

1. Open the Reminders app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Add List, then choose an account (if you have more than one). If you don't see Add List, tap Lists at the top left.
3. Enter a name, then choose a color and symbol for the list.
4. Tap List Type, then choose Standard, Groceries, or Smart List.

Add an item to a list



1. Choose a list, tap New Reminder or New Item, then enter text.

   If you type text that matches a previously completed reminder, that reminder appears as a suggestion. (To turn off these suggestions, go to Settings > Reminders, then turn off Show Suggestions.)

2. To enter additional information, tap Add Note.

Set when and where to be reminded

You can be reminded on a certain date, at a specific time or location, or when you're texting someone in Messages.

- *Schedule a date and time:* Tap , then choose an option.
- *Set a recurring reminder:* Tap ⓘ, tap Repeat, then choose the frequency.
- *Get an early reminder before the scheduled date and time:* Tap ⓘ, tap Early Reminder, then choose when you want to be reminded. For example, "5 minutes before," "2 days before," or another choice.
- *Add a location:* Tap , then choose where you want to be reminded—for example, when you arrive home or get into a car with a Bluetooth® connection to your iPhone.

  Note: To receive location-based reminders, you must allow Reminders to use your precise location. Go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Location Services. Turn on Location Services, tap Reminders, choose While Using the App, then turn on Precise Location.

- *Get a reminder in Messages:* Tap ⓘ, turn on When Messaging, then choose someone from your contacts list. The reminder appears the next time you chat with that person in Messages.

Set a flag and priority

- *Flag an important item:* Tap .
- *Set a priority:* Tap ⓘ, tap Priority, then choose Low, Medium, or High.

Add a photo or scan a document

1. Tap .
2. Do any of the following:

   - Take a new photo.

- Choose a photo from your photo library.
- Scan a document.
- Scan and insert text.

Edit the item details

Tap the item, then tap ⓘ.

See also

Edit and manage a list in Reminders on iPhone

Search and organize lists in Reminders on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Make a grocery list

Next
Edit and manage a list

Support › iPhone User Guide › Add items to a list in Reminders on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Edit and manage a list in Reminders on iPhone

In the Reminders app, you can easily edit and manage the items in a list.

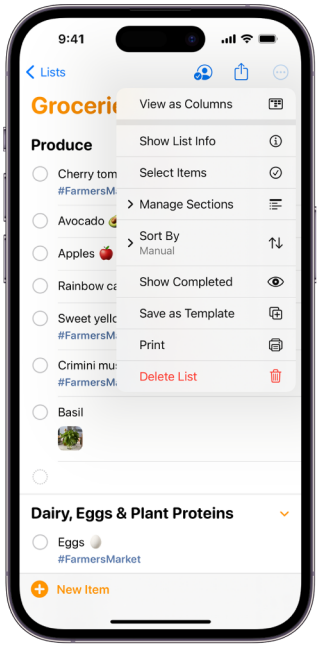
Note: All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use updated reminders in iCloud. Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

Mark items as completed

Tap the empty circle next to an item to mark it as completed and hide it.

To unhide completed items, tap, then tap Show Completed. To delete the completed items, tap Clear.

Edit multiple items at the same time



1. While viewing a list, tap, tap Select Reminders or Select Items, then select the items you want to edit. You can also drag two fingers over the items.
2. Use the buttons at the bottom of the screen to add a date and time, move, delete, assign, complete, tag, or flag the selected items.

Organize related items using sections

1. While viewing a list, tap, tap Manage Sections, tap New Section, then enter a name.
2. Add more sections as needed.
3. To rename a section, tap its name, then enter a new name.
4. To move a section, touch and hold the section, then drag it to a new position.
5. Categorize items by dragging them into the sections.

To remove a section, swipe left on the section, then tap Delete.

Create a subtask

Swipe right on the item, then tap Indent. Or drag an item onto another item.

If you complete a main task, the subtasks are also completed. If you delete or move a main task, the subtasks are also deleted or moved.

Sort and reorder items in a list

- *Sort items by due date, creation date, priority, or title:* (not available in the All and Scheduled Smart Lists) In a list, tap ⋯, tap Sort By, then choose an option.

  To reverse the sort order, tap ⋯, tap Sort By, then choose a different option, such as Newest First.

- *Manually reorder items in a list:* Touch and hold an item you want to move, then drag it to a new location.

  The manual order is saved when you re-sort the list by due date, creation date, priority, or title. To revert to the last saved manual order, tap ⋯, tap Sort By, then tap Manual.

When you sort or reorder a list, the new order is applied to the list on your other devices where you're using updated reminders. If you sort or reorder a shared list, other participants also see the new order (if they use updated reminders).

Delete an item

Swipe left on the item, then tap Delete.

If you change your mind, you can recover the deleted item—tap with three fingers or shake to undo.

See also

Search and organize lists in Reminders on iPhone

Organize your reminders with tags on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Add items to a list

Next
Search and organize lists

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Search and organize lists in Reminders on iPhone

In the Reminders app, you can arrange items in lists and groups. You can also easily search all your lists for items that contain specific text.

Note: All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use updated reminders in iCloud. Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

Search for items in all your lists

In the search field above the reminder lists, enter a word or phrase.

Create or edit lists and groups

You can organize your items into lists and groups of lists such as work, school, or shopping. Do any of the following:

- *Create a new list:* Tap Add List, choose an account (if you have more than one), enter a name, then choose a color and symbol for the list.
- *Create a group of lists:* Drag a list onto another list; or tap, tap Edit Lists, tap Add Group, enter a name, then tap Create.
- *Rearrange lists and groups:* Drag a list or group to a new location. You can even move a list to a different group.
- *Change the name and appearance of a list or group:* Swipe left on the list or group, then tap.

Pin a list for easy access

To pin an important list above the other lists, touch and hold the list, then tap Pin. You can also swipe right on the list, then tap.

You can have a maximum of nine pinned lists.

To change the position of a pinned list, tap, tap Edit Lists, then drag to a new position.

Delete a list or a group and their reminders

Swipe left on the list or group, then tap. When you delete a group, you have the option to keep the lists.

See also

Organize your reminders with tags on iPhone

Use Smart Lists in Reminders on iPhone

Work with templates in Reminders on iPhone

In the Reminders app, you can save a list as a template to reuse it for routines, packing lists, and more. Create a link to publish and share a template with others, or download templates that others have shared.

Save a list as a template

1. When viewing a list, tap, then tap Save as Template.
2. Enter a name for the template.
3. Turn on or off Include Completed Reminders, then tap Save.

After you make a template from a list, any changes you make to that list don't affect the template.

Make a new list from a template

1. When viewing your lists, tap, tap Templates, then tap the name of a template.
2. Enter a name for the list, then tap Create.

Edit or delete a template

Any changes you make to a template don't affect lists previously created from the template.

1. When viewing your lists, tap, tap Templates, then tap next to the template you want to manage.
2. Choose one of the following:

   - *Edit Template:* Add, edit, or delete any items in the template. You can also change the name, color, and icon for the template.
   - *Delete Template:* Remove the template.

Share a template

When you share a template, Apple servers have access so that anyone with the link can download a copy of the template on a device using iOS 16, iPadOS 16, macOS 13, or later. You can choose whether to keep any dates, tags, or locations in the shared template; images are removed.

1. When viewing your lists, tap, tap Templates, then tap next to the template you want to share.
2. Tap Share Template, then choose a method for sharing.

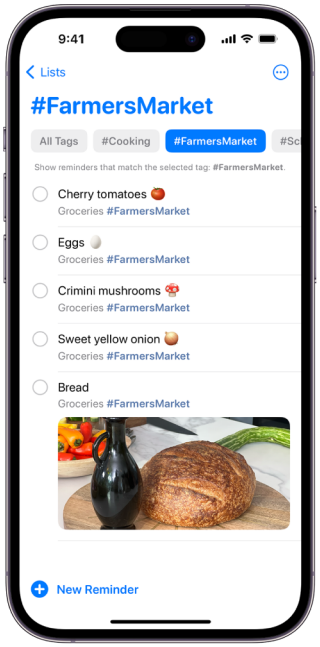
To manage a shared template, tap, tap Templates, tap, then tap Manage Link.

If you make changes to the template after sharing, you can update the shared version. Anyone who downloaded the previous version needs to download the template again to get the updates.

If you stop sharing a template, this doesn't affect anyone who has already downloaded the template.

Organize your reminders with tags on iPhone

In the Reminders app, you can use tags as a fast and flexible way to categorize and organize your reminders. You can add one or more tags to a reminder, such as #shopping and #work, and easily search and filter your reminders across lists using the Tag Browser or Smart Lists.



Note: All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use updated reminders. Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

Add tags

When you create or edit an item in a list, type # followed by the tag name or choose a tag from the menu above the keyboard. A tag can be only one word, but you can use dashes and underscores to combine words. You can add multiple tags to an item.

View items with tags

Below Tags at the bottom of the screen, do any of the following:

- *View all items with tags:* Tap All Tags.
- *View items with specific tags:* Tap one or more tags, then choose to view items matching any or all of the selected tags.

Tip: To save this list as a Smart List, tap, then tap Create Smart List.

Rename or delete a tag

Below Tags at the bottom of the screen, touch and hold a tag, then tap Rename Tag or Delete Tag.

When you delete a tag, it's also removed from all Smart Lists that use it.

See also

Use Smart Lists in Reminders on iPhone

Search and organize lists in Reminders on iPhone

Make a grocery list in Reminders on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Work with templates

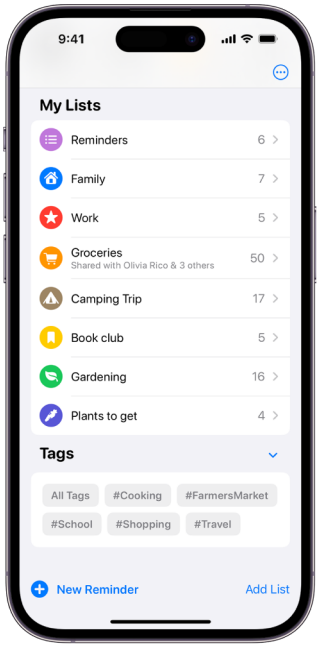
Next
Use Smart Lists

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Table of Contents

Use Smart Lists in Reminders on iPhone

In the Reminders app, you can easily filter your items across lists using Smart Lists. You can create custom Smart Lists to automatically include items filtered by tags, dates, times, locations, flags, and priority. You can choose more than one tag (such as #gardening and #errands) and combine them with other filters.



Note: All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use updated reminders in iCloud. Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

Organize items automatically using the default Smart Lists

You can view the following default Smart Lists:

- *Today:* Items scheduled for today and overdue items
- *Scheduled:* Items scheduled by date or time
- *Flagged:* Items with a flag
- *Completed:* Items with a checkmark
- *Assigned to Me:* Items assigned to you in shared lists
- *Siri Suggestions:* Suggested items detected in Mail and Messages
- *All:* All items across all your lists

To show, hide, or rearrange the default Smart Lists, tap, then tap Edit Lists.

Make a custom Smart List

1. Tap Add List, enter a name, choose a color and icon, then tap Make into Smart List.
2. Choose one or more filters, then choose to include items matching any or all of the selected filters. You can filter by tags, dates, locations, and more.

Convert a list to a Smart List

When you convert a list, its items are moved to the top level of the default list and tagged with the name of the Smart List.

Note: You can't convert a shared list.

1. View the list you want to convert.
2. Tap ⋯, tap Show List Info, scroll to the bottom, then tap Convert to Smart List.

Add an item to a Smart List

Choose a list, tap New Reminder, then enter text.

The item inherits the attributes of the Smart List and gets saved to your default list.

See also

Organize your reminders with tags on iPhone

Search and organize lists in Reminders on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Organize with tags

Next
Share and collaborate

Support › iPhone User Guide › Use Smart Lists in Reminders on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Share lists and collaborate in Reminders on iPhone

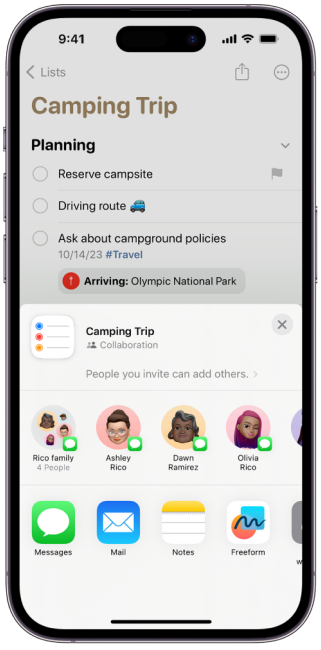
In the Reminders app, use iCloud to share to-do lists. You can collaborate and assign tasks to other people who also use iCloud.

Note: All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use updated reminders in iCloud. Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

Collaborate on a list using iCloud

You can share a list and collaborate with people who use iCloud. People who accept the invitation can add and edit items, mark items as completed, and all the collaborators can see everyone's changes. Everyone you collaborate with must be signed in with their Apple ID and have Reminders turned on in iCloud settings.

1. Open the Reminders app on your iPhone.
2. View the list you want to share, then tap.



3. By default, collaborators on the list can invite other people. To restrict sharing, tap "People you invite can add others," then turn off "Allow others to invite."
4. Choose how to send your invitation (for example, using Messages or Mail).

   If you send the invitation in Messages, you get activity updates in the Messages conversation when someone makes changes in the shared list. Tap the updates to go to the shared list.

Assign items in a shared list

When you create or edit a reminder, you can assign it to any person on the list, including yourself. Do any of the following:

- Type @ followed by the person's name or choose a person from the menu above the keyboard.
- Tap , then choose a person.

Tip: To quickly see all items assigned to you, use the Assigned to Me Smart List.

Turn notifications on or off for a shared list

1. Open the Reminders app on your iPhone.
2. In the shared list, tap , then tap Manage Shared List.
3. Below Notify When, turn on or off any of the following:
   - *Adding Items:* Receive an alert when someone adds an item to the list.
   - *Completing Items:* Receive an alert when someone completes an item on the list.

See also

Make a grocery list in Reminders on iPhone

Collaborate on projects with Messages on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use Smart Lists

Next
Print reminders

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Print reminders on iPhone

In the Reminders app, you can print a list.

1. View the list you want to print.
2. Tap, then tap Print.

See also

Print from iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Use the Reminders widget on iPhone

You can get the Reminders widget so you can complete items from the Lock Screen or Home Screen without opening the Reminders app.

1. Add the Reminders widget to the Home Screen or Lock Screen.
2. To change the list shown in the widget, touch and hold the widget, tap Edit Widget, then choose a list.
3. To complete an item, tap the item in the widget.

See also

Add, edit, and remove widgets on iPhone

Move apps and widgets on the Home Screen on iPhone

Create a custom iPhone Lock Screen

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Change your Reminders settings on iPhone

You can customize your preferences for the Reminders app in Settings. Choose the default list for new items, set a time to see notifications for all-day reminders, and more.

From the Home Screen or App Library, go to Settings > Reminders, then adjust any of the settings. For example:

- *Siri & Search:* Allow content in Reminders to appear in Siri Suggestions or search results.
- *Notifications:* Set how you receive notifications, choose the alert style, and have Siri announce notifications.
- *Accounts:* Manage your accounts and how often data is updated.
- *Default List:* Choose the list for new items you create outside of a specific list, such as items you create using Siri.
- *Today Notification:* Set a time to see notifications for all-day reminders that have been assigned a date without a time.
- *Show as Overdue:* The scheduled date turns red for overdue all-day reminders.
- *Include Due Today:* The badge count includes overdue items and items due today.
- *Mute Notifications:* Turn off notifications for assigned items.

See also

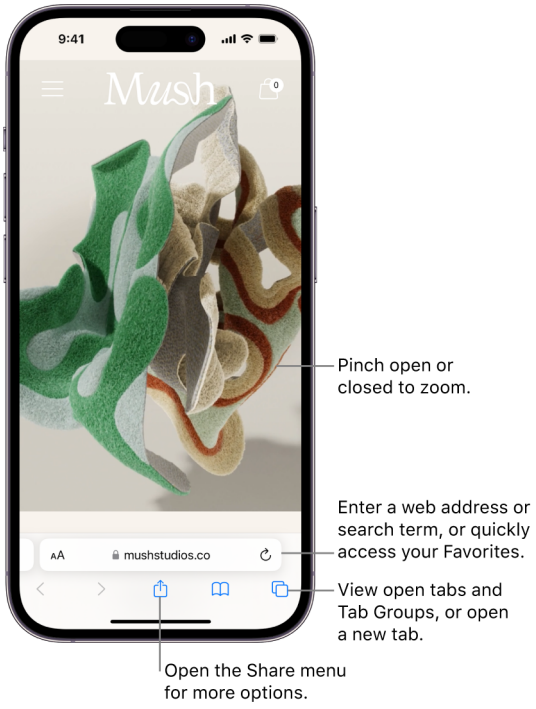
Add or remove accounts in Reminders on iPhone

Find settings on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Browse the web using Safari on iPhone

In the Safari app, you can browse the web, view websites, preview website links, translate webpages, and add the Safari app back to your Home Screen if it gets removed. Sign in to iCloud with the same Apple ID on multiple devices to keep your open tabs, bookmarks, history, and Reading List up to date across all your devices.



View websites with Safari

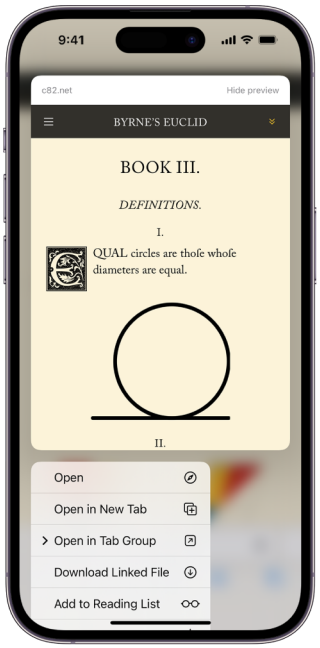
You can easily navigate a webpage with a few taps.

- *Get back to the top:* Double-tap the top edge of the screen to quickly return to the top of a long page.
- *See more of the page:* Turn iPhone to landscape orientation.
- *Refresh the page:* Pull down from the top of the page.
- *Share links:* At the bottom of the page, tap .

Preview website links

Touch and hold a link in Safari to see a preview of the link without opening the page. To open the link, tap the preview, or choose Open.

To close the preview and stay on the current page, tap anywhere outside the preview.



Translate a webpage or image

When you view a webpage or image that's in another language, you can use Safari to translate the text (not available in all languages or regions).

Tap AA, then tap (if translation is available).

Add Safari back to your Home Screen

If you don't see Safari on your Home Screen, you can find it in App Library and add it back.

1. On the Home Screen, swipe left until you see the App Library.
2. Enter "Safari" in the search field.
3. Press and hold , then tap Add to Home Screen.

See also

Search for websites

Change the layout in Safari

Clear your cache

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Change Reminders settings

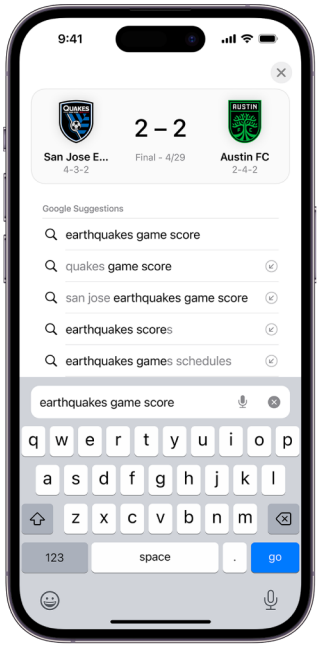
Next
Search for websites

Support > iPhone User Guide > Browse the web using Safari on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Search for websites in Safari on iPhone

In the Safari app, enter a URL or a search term to find websites or specific information.



Search the web

1. Enter a search term, phrase, or URL in the search field.
2. Tap a search suggestion, or tap Go on the keyboard.

If you don't want to see suggested search terms, go to Settings > Safari, then turn off Search Engine Suggestions.

See your favorite websites while you search

Go to Settings > Safari > Favorites, then select the folder with the favorites you want to see.

Search a webpage

You can find a specific word or phrase on a webpage.

1. Tap, then tap Find on Page.
2. Enter the word or phrase in the search field.
3. Tap to jump to other mentions.

Choose a search engine

Go to Settings > Safari > Search Engine.

Search for objects in your photos

With Visual Look Up, you can identify and learn about popular landmarks, plants, pets, and more that appear in your photos and videos. See Use Visual Look Up to identify objects in your photos and videos.

Tip: You can use the same feature to scan text and search online. See Use Live Text with your iPhone camera.

See also

Browse the web

Bookmark webpages

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Browse the web

Next
Customize your Safari settings

Support > iPhone User Guide > Search for websites in Safari on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Customize your Safari settings on iPhone

In the Safari app, you can customize your start page, change the text size on websites, and change display and privacy settings. Sign in to iCloud with the same Apple ID on multiple devices to keep your open tabs, bookmarks, browsing history, and Reading List up to date across all your Apple devices.

Customize your start page

When you open a new tab, you begin on your start page. You can customize your start page with new background images and options.

1. Open the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Tap, then tap +.
3. Scroll to the bottom of the page, then tap Edit.
4. Choose the options you want to appear on your start page:

   - *Favorites:* Display shortcuts to your favorite bookmarked websites. See Bookmark a favorite website.
   - *Frequently Visited:* Go straight to the websites you visit most.
   - *Shared with You:* See links shared with you in Messages, Mail, and more. See Find links shared with you.
   - *Privacy Report:* Stay updated on how many trackers and websites Safari blocked from tracking you. See View the Privacy Report.
   - *Siri Suggestions:* As you search, allow websites shared in Calendar and other apps to appear.

- *Reading List:* Show webpages currently in your Reading List. See Add the current webpage to your Reading List.
- *Recently Closed Tabs:* Go back to tabs you previously closed.
- *iCloud Tabs:* Show open tabs from other Apple devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID and Safari is turned on in iCloud settings or preferences. See Organize your tabs with Tab Groups.
- *Background Image:* Choose the image you want to appear in the background each time you open a new start page in this Tab Group. To use a photo as your background, tap +.

Note: Your custom start page settings are updated on all your Apple devices where you have Use Start Page on All Devices turned on, and you're signed in with the same Apple ID using two-factor authentication.

Change the text size for a website on Safari

Use the Page Settings button to increase or decrease the text size.

1. Open the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Tap AA on the left side of the search field.
3. Tap the large A to increase the font size or the small A to decrease it.

Change the display controls for a website on Safari

You can hide the search field, switch to Reader, and more.

1. Open the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Tap AA, then do any of the following:
   - *Hide the search field:* Tap Hide Toolbar (tap the bottom of the screen to get it back).
   - *See a streamlined view of the webpage:* Tap Show Reader (if available).

     To return to the normal view, tap Hide Reader.
   - *See what the webpage looks like on a desktop computer:* Tap Request Desktop Website (if available).

You can also adjust Safari settings in Accessibility settings. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Per-App Settings. Tap Add App, choose Safari, then tap Safari to adjust the settings.

Choose where to save downloads

When you download a file in Safari, you can choose whether to save it to iCloud or on your iPhone.

Go to Settings > Safari > Downloads, then choose one of the following:

- *iCloud Drive:* Select this option to save downloads to the Downloads folder in iCloud Drive. This allows you to access the downloaded file on any iPhone, iPad, or Mac where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.
- *On My iPhone:* Select this option to save downloads to the Downloads folder on your iPhone.

Share website passwords with a group

You can create a group of trusted contacts and share a set of passwords. Passwords stay up to date for everyone in the group, and you can remove someone at any time.

See Create shared password groups.

Adjust privacy settings for Safari

You can choose what privacy settings you want across Safari, and create individual exceptions for websites. See Browse privately.

See also

Change the layout in Safari

Clear your cache on iPhone

Get extensions to customize Safari on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Search for websites

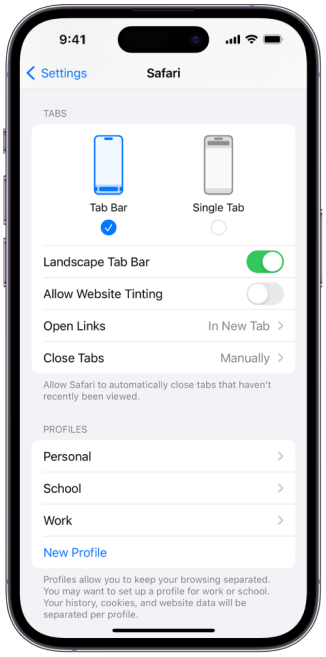
Next
Change the layout

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Change the layout in Safari on iPhone

In the Safari app, you can choose the tab bar layout that works best for you. Depending on the layout, the search field appears at the top (Single Tab layout) or bottom (Tab Bar layout) of the screen.

Go to Settings > Safari, then scroll down to Tabs. Select either Tab Bar or Single Tab.



See also

Customize your Safari settings

Organize your tabs

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

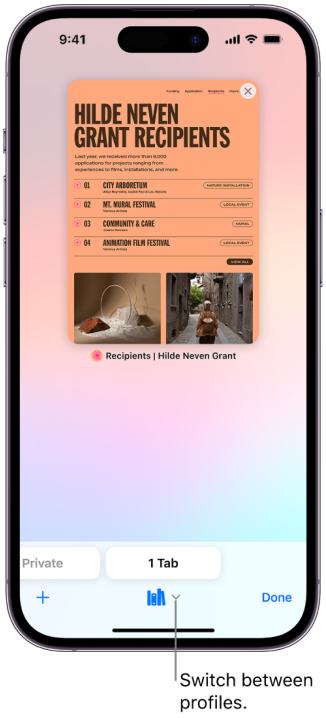
iOS 17

Search this guide

Table of Contents

Create multiple Safari profiles on iPhone

In the Safari app, you can create multiple Safari profiles—like work and personal—and use them to separate your internet browsing into different themes. Each profile has separate favorites, histories, tabs, and Tab Groups. You can add, edit, or remove a profile at any time.



Create a profile

The profiles you create on iPhone also appear in Safari settings on any iPhone, iPad, or Mac where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

1. Go to Settings > Safari, then tap New Profile.
2. Tap Name, enter a name for this profile, then choose an icon and color.
3. Below Settings, tap Favorites to choose a bookmarks folder.

   If you have multiple folders of bookmarks, this option selects the folder of bookmarked websites that will be recommended as you enter an address, search, or create a new tab. For example, if you have a folder of bookmarks related to work, you can create a work profile and use this field to ensure that those websites are suggested as you type in the address field.
4. Tap Open New Tabs and choose the page you want new tabs to open to.

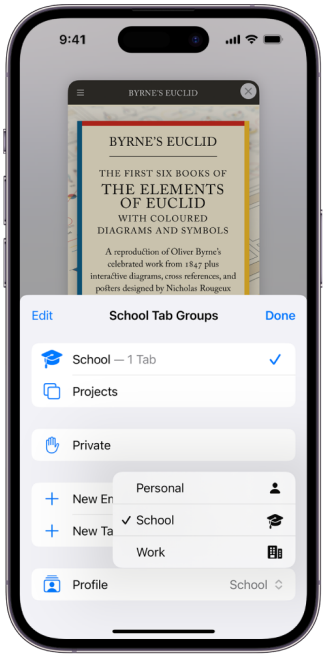
Use profiles in Safari

You can easily browse the internet with a profile, or move between profiles.

1. Open the the Safari app on your iPhone.

2. Tap , then tap .
3. Tap Profile, then select the profile you want to use.

Note: You can access your saved bookmarks and passwords in iCloud keychain from any profile.



Edit a profile

Go to Settings > Safari, then tap the profile you want to edit.

Choose which extensions to use with a profile

You can install extensions to customize the way your browser works on iPhone. See Get extensions to customize Safari.

If you have extensions installed on your iPhone, you can customize which extensions you want to use with each profile.

1. Go to Settings > Safari, then tap Extensions.
2. Tap an extension, then turn on the profiles you want to use with this extension (below Allow Extension In).

Remove a profile

You can delete a profile at any time. This action also erases the favorites, history, and Tab Groups associated with the profile, and closes all websites open in the profile.

Important: This action can't be undone.

1. Go to Settings > Safari, then tap a profile.
2. Tap Delete Profile.

See also

Customize your Safari settings

Clear your cache

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Change the layout

Next
Open and close tabs

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Open and close tabs in Safari on iPhone

In the Safari app, use tabs to help you navigate between multiple open webpages.

Note: If you're using the Single Tab layout, the menus and other items may look different from what's described in this guide. See Change the layout of Safari.

Open a link in a new tab

Touch and hold the link, then tap Open in New Tab.

To stay on the current webpage when you open new links in a separate tab, go to Settings > Safari > Open Links, then tap In Background.

View a tab's history

You can see which webpages you previously visited in this tab.

Touch and hold < or >.

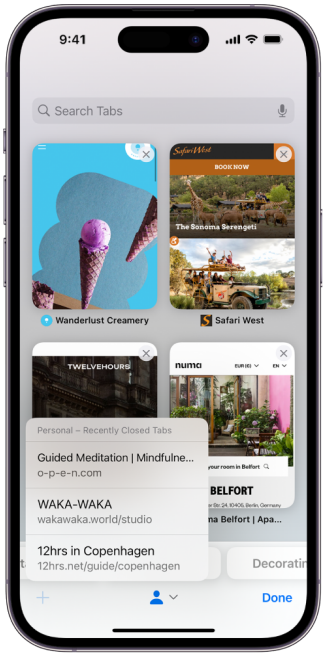
Close tabs

Tap, then tap in the upper-right corner of a tab to close it.

Tip: To close all tabs in this Tab Group at the same time, touch and hold Done, then tap Close All Tabs.

Open a recently closed tab

Tap, touch and hold +, then choose from the list of recently closed tabs.



See also

Organize your tabs

View your Safari tabs from another Apple device

Share Tab Groups

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use Safari profiles

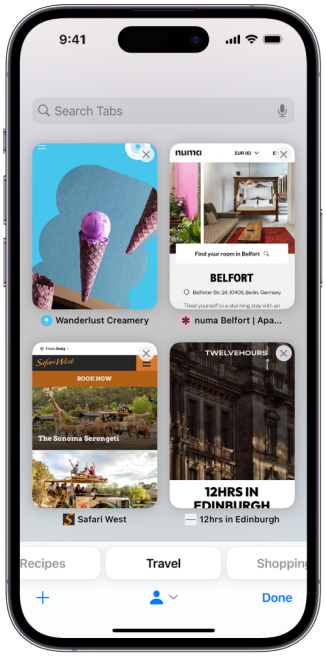
Next
Organize your tabs

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Table of Contents

Organize your tabs with Tab Groups in Safari on iPhone

In the Safari app, you can create Tab Groups to keep tabs organized and make them easier to find again later.



Create a new Tab Group

1. Tap to view your open tabs.
2. Touch and hold a tab, then choose Move to Tab Group.
3. Tap New Tab Group, enter a name, then tap Move.

Tip: To move between your Tab Groups, tap in the bottom center of the screen.

Reorder tabs in a Tab Group

1. Tap to view the open tabs in that Tab Group.
2. Touch and hold a tab in the Tab Group.
3. In the menu that appears, tap Arrange Tabs By, then choose an option.

   Or, just drag the tab to where you want it.

Rename a Tab Group

1. Tap, then tap .
2. Tap Edit, then tap .

3. Tap Rename, enter a name, then tap Save.

Pin a tab at the top of a Tab Group

You can customize your Tab Groups with pinned tabs in each group. The pinned tab stays at the top of the Tab Group.

1. Tap to view the open tabs in that Tab Group.
2. Touch and hold the tab you want to pin.
3. In the menu that appears, tap Pin Tab.

Move a tab to another Tab Group

1. Touch and hold , then tap Move to Tab Group.
2. Choose one of the Tab Groups you created previously, or create a new group.

See also

Open and close tabs

View your Safari tabs from another Apple device

Share Tab Groups

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Open and close tabs

Next
View your Safari tabs from another Apple device

Support > iPhone User Guide > Organize your tabs with Tab Groups in Safari on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

View your Safari tabs from another Apple device on iPhone

In the Safari app, you can view the tabs that are open on your other Apple devices and keep tabs and Tab Groups updated across devices.

Note: You must be signed in to iCloud with the same Apple ID on all your devices to manage Safari tabs across your devices.

View tabs that are open on your other Apple devices

Tap, tap +, then scroll to see the tabs open on your other devices at the bottom of the start page.

To close a tab on another Apple device, touch and hold the link, then choose Close.

Note: To view tabs open on your other devices, you must have iCloud Tabs turned on for your start page. See Customize your start page.

Keep tabs and Tab Groups updated across your devices

Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > Show All, then make sure Safari is turned on.

Note: To also see tabs open on your Mac, you must have Safari turned on in iCloud settings on your Mac, be signed in with the same Apple ID, and use two-factor authentication.

See also

Organize your tabs with Tab Groups

Open and close tabs

Share Tab Groups

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Share Tab Groups and collaborate in Safari on iPhone

In the Safari app, you can share a Tab Group and collaborate with people who use iCloud. You can add and remove people from the Tab Group at any time, and even start a message conversation, phone call, or FaceTime call without leaving Safari. Collaborators can add and remove tabs from the Tab Group, and everyone sees updates in real time.

Everyone you collaborate with must be signed in with their Apple ID, have Safari turned on in iCloud settings, and have two-factor authentication turned on.

Share a Tab Group

1. Open the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Tap to view the open tabs in that Tab Group.
3. Tap at the top-right corner of the Tab Group.
4. Tap Messages, then choose the person or group you want to share it with.

   You get activity updates in the Messages conversation when someone makes changes in the Shared Tab Group. Tap the updates to go to the Shared Tab Group.

Add and remove people from a shared Tab Group

1. Open the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Tap at the top-right corner.
3. Tap Manage Shared Tab Group, then do any of the following:

   - *Remove someone:* Tap a name, then tap Remove Access.
   - *Add someone:* Tap Share With More People, then invite them.
   - *Stop Sharing with everyone:* Tap Stop Sharing.

Start a Messages, audio, or video conversation from Safari

You can start a conversation—using Messages, FaceTime audio, or FaceTime video—with everyone that shares the Tab Group, without leaving Safari.

In Safari, tap, then tap message, audio, or video to start the conversation.

See also

Collaborate on projects with Messages

Organize your tabs with Tab Groups

View your tabs from another Apple device

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
View your Safari tabs from another Apple device

Next
Use Siri to listen to a webpage

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Use Siri to listen to a webpage in Safari on iPhone

You can use Siri to read supported webpages aloud in the Safari app.

Listen to a webpage

1. Open the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Open the page you want to listen to, then do one of the following:
   - Tap AA, then tap Listen to Page.
   - Activate Siri, then say something like "Read this" or "I want to listen to this page."

Pause listening

While listening to a webpage, tap, tap Listening Controls, then tap.

To start listening again, tap, then tap.

See also

Find out what Siri can do on iPhone

Search for websites in Safari on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Bookmark a website in Safari on iPhone

In the Safari app, you can bookmark a website, add a website to Favorites, or add a website icon to the Home Screen to easily revisit later.

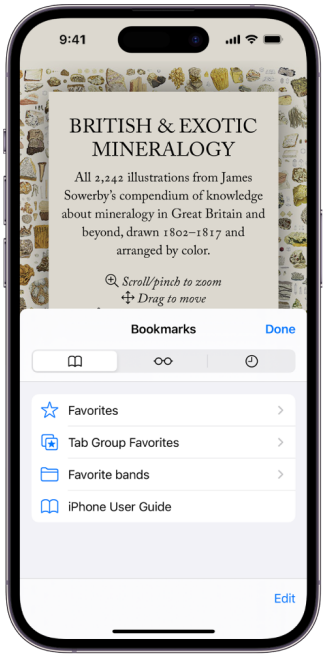
Bookmark a favorite website

Touch and hold, then tap Add Bookmark.

View and organize your bookmarks

1. Tap.
2. Tap Edit, then do any of the following:

   - *Create a new folder:* Tap New Folder at the bottom left, enter a name, then tap Done.
   - *Move a bookmark into a folder:* Tap the bookmark, tap below Location, then tap a folder. Tap to return to your bookmarks.
   - *Delete bookmarks:* Tap, then tap Delete.
   - *Rename bookmarks:* Tap the bookmark, enter a new name, then tap Done.
   - *Reorder bookmarks:* Touch and hold, then drag the bookmark to a new location.



See your Mac bookmarks on iPhone

1. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud.
2. Tap Show All (below Apps Using iCloud), then make sure Safari is turned on.

Note: You must also have Safari turned on in iCloud settings on your Mac and be signed in with the same Apple ID. See Set up iCloud for the Safari app on all your devices in the iCloud User Guide.

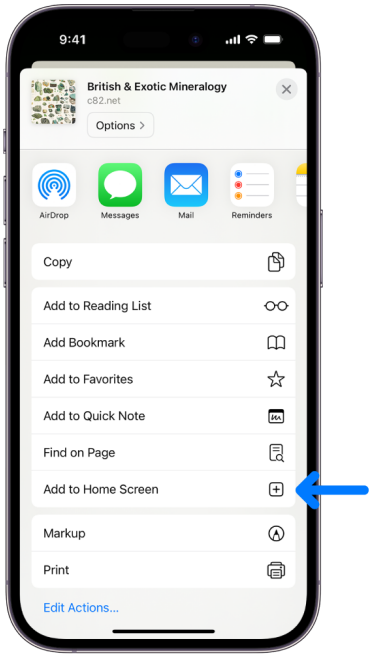
Add a website icon to your Home Screen

You can add a website icon to your iPhone Home Screen for quick access.

1. While viewing the website, tap in the menu bar.
2. Scroll down the list of options, then tap Add to Home Screen.

   If you don't see Add to Home Screen, you can add it. Scroll down to the bottom of the list, tap Edit Actions, then tap Add to Home Screen.

The icon appears only on the device where you add it.



Note: Some websites may ask for permission to send you notifications. You can change your notification settings at any time. See Change notification settings.

See also

Save pages to read later

Find links shared with you

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use Siri to listen to a webpage

Next
Save pages to a Reading List

Support > iPhone User Guide > Bookmark a website in Safari on iPhone

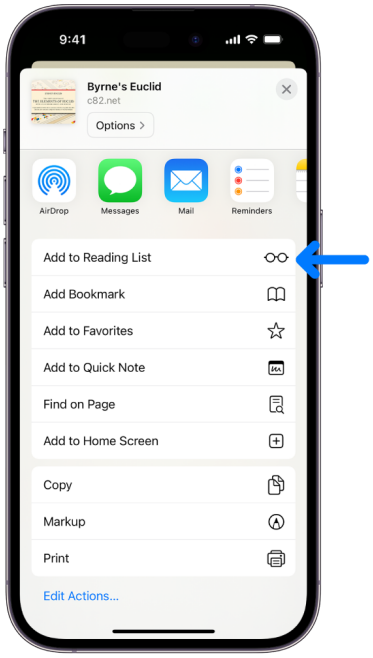
Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Save webpages to read later in Safari on iPhone

In the Safari app, save interesting items in your Reading List so you can revisit them later. You can even save the items in your Reading List and read them when you're not connected to the internet.

Add the current webpage to your Reading List

Tap, then tap Add to Reading List.



Tip: To add a linked webpage without opening it, touch and hold the link, then tap Add to Reading List.

View your Reading List

1. Tap.
2. Tap.

To delete an item from your Reading List, swipe left on the item.

Automatically save all Reading List items to iCloud for offline reading

Go to Settings > Safari, then turn on Automatically Save Offline (below Reading List).

See also

Find links shared with you

Bookmark a website

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Bookmark favorite webpages

Next
Find links shared with you

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Find links shared with you in Safari on iPhone

In the Safari app, you can easily find and organize web links friends share with you in Messages conversations. Links shared with you are added to the Safari start page (the page that first appears when you open a new Safari window). You can keep those links on your start page, remove them, or organize related links into Tab Groups. (Safari must be turned on in Settings > Messages > Shared with You, and your friend must be in your contacts.)

See links from friends in Safari

To find links shared with you, you can display them on your Safari start page. Then, every time you open a new page, you see them listed there.

In Safari, tap, then tap + to open a new tab.

If you don't see a Shared with You section, scroll down, tap Edit, then turn on Shared with You.

Tip: To change where shared links appear on your start page, touch and drag.

Remove a link from the Shared with You section

1. While viewing your shared links in Safari, touch and hold the preview image of a link.
2. Tap Remove Link.

Organize shared links in a Tab Group

You can group related shared web links into Tab Groups to make them easier to find.

1. Touch and hold the preview image of the link you want to move, then tap Open in Tab Group.

2. Tap New Tab Group to create one, or add the link to a Tab Group you already have.

To learn more about Shared with You, see Share content in Messages on iPhone.

See also

Annotate and save a webpage as a PDF

Bookmark a website

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Save pages to a Reading List

Next
Annotate and save a webpage as a PDF

Support › iPhone User Guide › Find links shared with you in Safari on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Annotate and save a webpage as a PDF in Safari on iPhone

In the Safari app, you can mark up a webpage, highlight your favorite parts, draw and write notes, and share your document as a PDF with others.

1. Tap.
2. Tap Markup, then use the tools to annotate the webpage.
3. Tap Done, then tap Save File To.
4. Choose a file to save it to, then tap Save.

See also

Find links shared with you

Bookmark a website

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Automatically fill in your information in Safari on iPhone

In the Safari app, use AutoFill to automatically fill in credit card information, contact information, and user names and passwords.

Important: Never enter your password or credit card number on sites with a "Not Secure" warning. See If you see a "Not Secure" warning while browsing with Safari.

Set up AutoFill

You can save your personal information or credit card number on your iPhone to speed up filling in online forms and making purchases.

1. Go to Settings > Safari > AutoFill.
2. Do any of the following:
   - *Set up contact info:* Turn on Use Contact Info, tap My Info, then choose your contact card. The contact information from that card is entered when you tap AutoFill on webpages in Safari.
   - *Set up credit card info:* Turn on Credit Cards, tap Saved Credit Cards, then tap Add Credit Card. Enter your credit card information into the fields provided or tap Use Camera to enter the information without typing.

Fill in your contact information automatically

You can quickly add your personal information to online forms using AutoFill.

1. In a form on a website that supports AutoFill, tap a blank field.
2. Tap AutoFill Contact above the keyboard, then select a contact.
3. Tap any field to make changes.
4. When all the information is correct, tap Done.
5. Follow the onscreen instructions to submit the form.

Note: You can AutoFill another person's information from your contact list. For example, if you're purchasing a gift and shipping it to a friend, you can use AutoFill to enter their address. Tap AutoFill Contact, tap Other Contact, then choose their contact card.

Fill in your credit card information automatically

After you add a credit card, you can use AutoFill to make online purchases without having to enter your full credit card number.

1. Tap the credit card information field.
2. Tap the saved credit card you want to use, or tap Scan Card to take a picture of the front of the card.

Tip: After you enter a new card, you can save it in Safari Autofill, then add it to Wallet. See Set up Apple Pay in Wallet on iPhone.

You can use virtual card numbers at checkout and keep your real credit card number private. See Set up Apple Pay in Wallet on iPhone. After you've set up a virtual card number, tap a card with above the keyboard to use it at checkout.

Automatically fill in strong passwords

When you sign up for services on websites and in apps, you can let iPhone create and save strong passwords for many of your accounts. See Automatically fill in strong passwords on iPhone.

Turn off AutoFill

You can turn off AutoFill for your contact or credit card information, and for passwords. This is helpful in situations where you don't want your contact or credit card information to be readily available—for example if you share a device with others.

- *Turn off AutoFill for your contact or credit card information:* Go to Settings > Safari > AutoFill, then turn off either option.
- *Turn off AutoFill for passwords:* Go to Settings > Passwords, unlock the screen, tap Password Options, then turn off AutoFill Passwords and Passkeys.

See also

Keep cards and passes in Wallet

Use passkeys in Safari on iPhone

Get extensions

Automatically fill in one-time verification codes on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

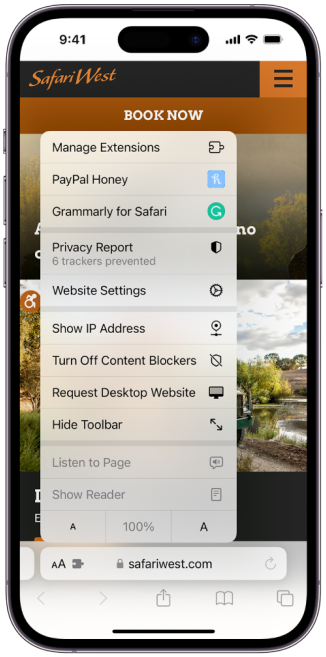
Previous
Annotate and save a webpage as a PDF

Next
Get extensions

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Get extensions to customize Safari on iPhone

In the Safari app, you can install extensions to customize the way your browser works. For example, extensions can help you find coupons when shopping, block content on websites, give you access to features from other apps, and more.



Add Safari extensions

1. Open the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Tap AA, then tap Manage Extensions.
3. Tap More Extensions to browse through extensions in the App Store.
4. When you find one you want, tap the price, or if the app is free, tap Get, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Manage your extensions

Tap AA on the left side of the search field, then tap Manage Extensions. Select or deselect each extension to turn that extension on or off.

Use extensions

You can use an extension to customize the way your browser works. You can turn Safari extensions on or off at any time.

1. Go to Settings > Safari, then tap Extensions.
2. Tap an extension, then turn on Allow Extension.

3. If you have Safari profiles set up, turn on the extension for each profile you want to use it with.

Important: Check the extensions you have installed and make sure you're familiar with what they do.

Change extension settings for an individual website

You can turn an extension on or off for an individual website without changing your overall Safari settings.

1. Open the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Tap AA on the left side of the search field, then tap Manage Extensions.
3. Turn each extension on or off.

Remove an extension

1. Swipe down on the Home Screen, then search for the extension you want to remove.
2. Touch and hold the extension icon, tap "Delete app," then follow the onscreen instructions.

See also

Hide ads and distractions

Get apps in the App Store

Helpful? Yes No

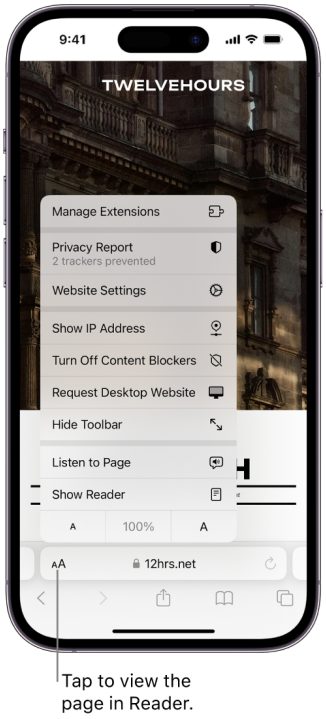
Previous
Automatically fill in forms

Next
Hide ads and distractions

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Hide ads and distractions in Safari on iPhone

In the Safari app, use Reader to hide ads, navigation menus, or other distracting items.



Show Reader

Reader formats a webpage to show just the relevant text and images.

Tap AA, then tap Show Reader.

To return to the full page, tap AA, then tap Hide Reader.

Note: If Show Reader is dimmed, Reader isn't available for that page.

Automatically use Reader for a website

1. On a supported website, tap AA, then tap Website Settings.
2. Turn on Use Reader Automatically.

Note: To automatically use Reader for all websites that support it, go to Settings > Safari > Reader.

Block pop-ups

Go to Settings > Safari, then turn on Block Pop-ups.

See also

Get extensions

Customize your Safari settings

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Get extensions

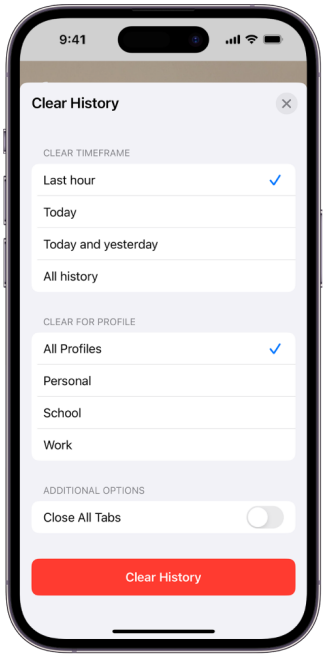
Next
Clear your cache

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Clear your cache on iPhone

In the Safari app, you can erase your browsing history and data to clear the cache on your iPhone. This action removes the history of websites you visited and recent searches from your iPhone. This process also removes the cookies and permissions you granted to websites to use your location or send you notifications.

Note: Clearing your browsing history in Safari doesn't clear any browsing histories kept independently by websites you visited, or your browsing history in other apps.



1. Open the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Tap, tap, then tap Clear.
3. Below Clear Timeframe, choose how much of your browsing history to clear.

   Note: If you have Safari profiles set up, select a profile to clear only the history of that profile, or select All Profiles.
4. Tap Clear History.

See also

Protect your web browsing with iCloud Private Relay

Browse privately in Safari

Previous
Hide ads and distractions

Next
Browse the web privately

Support › iPhone User Guide › Clear your cache on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Browse privately in Safari on iPhone

You can view the Privacy Report and adjust settings in the Safari app to keep your browsing activities private, and help protect yourself from malicious websites.

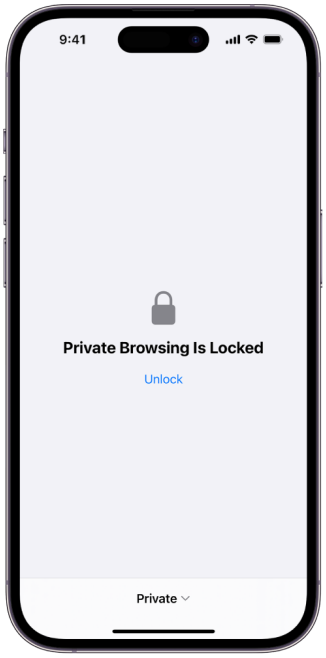
Visit sites privately

You can use Private Browsing to open private tabs that don't appear in History on iPhone or in the list of tabs on your other devices. Tabs in Private Browsing aren't shared with your other Apple devices, even if you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

If you have a passcode set on your iPhone, Private Browsing locks when it's not in use. Private Browsing may not lock immediately.

1. Open the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Tap .
3. Swipe right on the tab bar at the bottom of the screen until Private Browsing opens, then tap Unlock.

   To exit Private Browsing, tap , then swipe left to open a Tab Group from the menu at the bottom of your screen. The websites you have open in Private Browsing stay open, and Private Browsing locks.



To disable Private Browsing locking, go to Settings > Safari, then turn off Require Face ID to Unlock Private Browsing (supported models) or Require Touch ID to Unlock Private Browsing (supported models).

Note: Any Safari extensions you have installed that have access to browsing data are automatically turned off in Private Browsing. To turn on an extension in Private Browsing, see Use extensions.

Choose a search engine for Private Browsing

Go to Settings > Safari > Private Search Engine.

View the Privacy Report

Safari helps prevent trackers from following you across websites and viewing your IP address. You can review the Privacy Report to see a summary of trackers that have been encountered and prevented by Intelligent Tracking Prevention on the current webpage you're visiting. You can also review and adjust Safari settings to keep your browsing activities private from others who use the same device, and help protect yourself from malicious websites.

1. Open the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Tap AA, then tap Privacy Report.

Use iCloud Private Relay to browse the web with more privacy

When you subscribe to iCloud+, you can use iCloud Private Relay to help prevent websites and network providers from creating a detailed profile about you. When iCloud Private Relay is turned on, the traffic leaving your iPhone is encrypted and sent through two separate internet relays. This prevents websites from seeing your IP address and exact location while it prevents network providers from collecting your browsing activity in Safari.

See Protect your web browsing with iCloud Private Relay on iPhone to learn how to:

- Turn iCloud Private Relay completely on or off for your iPhone.
- Turn iCloud Private Relay on or off for a specific Wi-Fi or cellular network.
- Turn iCloud Private Relay off temporarily.
- Set the specificity of your IP address location.

Temporarily allow a website to see your IP address

If a website relies on IP filtering, monitoring, or rate-limiting, it might require your IP address to be visible. You can turn off iCloud Private Relay temporarily for that website only.

Note: iCloud Private Relay isn't available in all countries or regions. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

1. Open the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. On a website, tap AA on the left side of the URL field.
3. Tap Show IP Address.

   Your IP address remains visible to that website until you leave the website or close its Safari tab. iCloud Private Relay remains on for other websites.

To turn off or pause iCloud Private Relay for all websites, see Protect your web browsing with iCloud Private Relay on iPhone.

Control privacy and security settings for Safari

Go to Settings > Safari, then turn any of the following on or off:

- *Prevent Cross-Site Tracking:* Safari limits third-party cookies and data by default. Turn this option off to allow cross-site tracking.
- *Hide IP address:* Safari automatically protects your IP address from known trackers. For eligible iCloud+ subscribers, your IP address is protected from trackers and websites as you browse in Safari. If this option is off, your IP address isn't hidden.

- *Fraudulent Website Warning:* Safari displays a warning if you're visiting a suspected phishing website. Turn this option off if you don't want to be warned about fraudulent websites.
- *Camera:* Choose whether Safari websites can use your camera without asking you first. Tap Camera, then choose Ask, Deny, or Allow.
- *Microphone:* Choose whether Safari websites can use your microphone without asking you first. Tap Microphone, then choose Ask, Deny, or Allow.
- *Location:* Choose whether Safari websites can use your location without asking you first. Tap Location, then choose Ask, Deny, or Allow.

To set exceptions for a specific website, open the website in the Safari app, tap AA, tap Website Settings, then tap the setting you want to change.

See also

Turn on iCloud Private Relay

Use passkeys in Safari

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Clear your cache

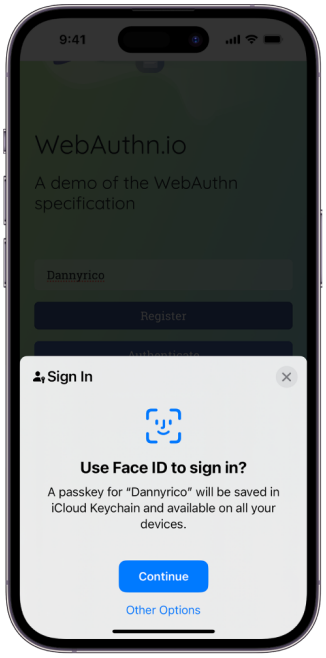
Next
Use passkeys in Safari

Support › iPhone User Guide › Browse privately in Safari on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use passkeys in Safari on iPhone

In the Safari app, you can use Face ID (supported models) or Touch ID (supported models) to securely sign in to supporting websites. See Sign in with passkeys.



See also

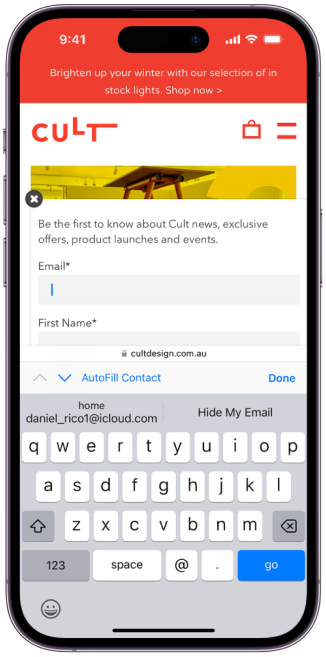
Turn on iCloud Private Relay

Browse privately in Safari

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use Hide My Email in Safari on iPhone

When you subscribe to iCloud+, you can use Hide My Email to keep your personal email address private. With Hide My Email, you can generate unique, random email addresses that forward to your personal email account, so you don't have to share your real email address when filling out forms on the web or signing up for newsletters.



1. Open the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. When you're asked for your email address on a website, tap the email field.
3. Tap Hide My Email above the keyboard.

   The Hide My Email screen suggests a new, randomly generated Hide My Email address.
4. If you don't want to use the suggested address, tap to get a new randomly generated email address.
5. To use the suggested address, tap Continue.
6. Tap Continue.

You can delete the Hide My Email address at any time. See Create and manage Hide My Email in Settings.

See also

Create and manage Hide My Email addresses

Browse privately

Use passkeys

Helpful? Yes No

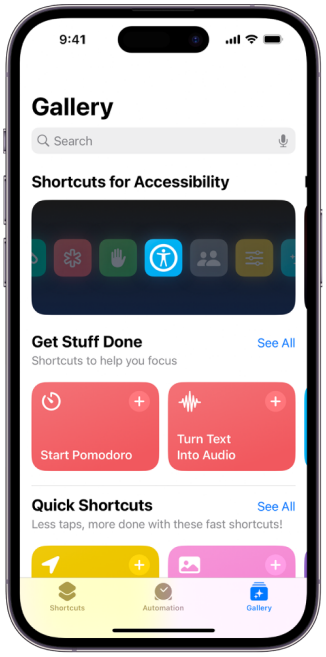
Previous
Use passkeys in Safari

Next
Shortcuts

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use Shortcuts to automate tasks on iPhone

The Shortcuts app lets you automate tasks you do often with just a tap or by asking Siri. Create shortcuts to get directions to the next event in your Calendar, move text from one app to another, and more. Choose ready-made shortcuts from the Gallery or build your own using different apps to run multiple steps in a task.



To learn more, see the Shortcuts User Guide.

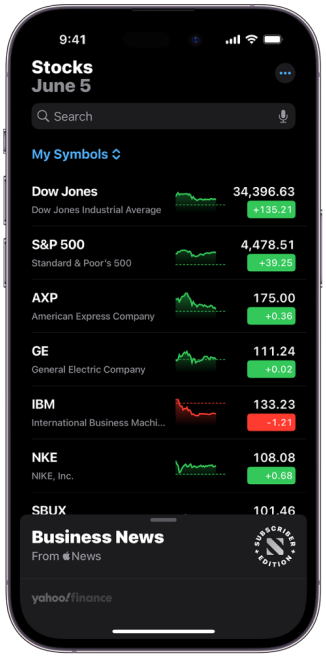
Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Check stocks on iPhone

Use the Stocks app to track market activity and view the performance of stocks you follow.

Siri: Say something like: "How are the markets doing?" or "How's Apple stock today?" Learn how to use Siri.



Check stocks

1. Open the Stocks app, then tap a ticker symbol in the My Symbols watchlist for more details.
2. To search for a specific stock, enter a ticker symbol, company name, fund name, or index in the search field at the top of the screen, then tap the symbol in the search results.

See View charts, details, and news.

Manage symbols in the My Symbols watchlist

When you first open the Stocks app, a list of ticker symbols appears on the screen; this is called the My Symbols watchlist. You can update and manage the My Symbols watchlist and create your own watchlists.

Tap a symbol to view its most recent price, daily percentage change, market capitalization value, and more.

To make changes to the My Symbols watchlist, do any of the following:

- *Add a symbol:* In the search field, enter a ticker symbol, company name, fund name, or index. In the search results, tap +, then tap Done.
- *Delete a symbol:* Swipe left on the symbol in your watchlist.

  Note: If you delete a symbol from the My Symbols watchlist, that symbol is also deleted from your other watchlists (see Manage multiple watchlists).

- *Reorder symbols:* Touch and hold a symbol in your watchlist, then drag it to a new position.
- *Show currency:* Tap ···, then tap Show Currency to display the currency the stock is traded in.
- *Share a symbol:* Swipe left on a symbol in your watchlist, tap ⬆, then choose a sharing option, such as Messages or Mail.

View charts, details, and news

You can view interactive charts, performance details, and related news stories about the ticker symbols in your watchlist and the symbols you search for.

Tip: Touch and hold a ticker symbol in your watchlist to see a quick view of the stock's performance.

1. Tap a symbol you want to see more details about, then do any of the following:

   - *View the performance over time:* Tap an option from the time range selections at the top of the chart.
   - *View the value for a specific date or time:* Touch and hold the chart with one finger.
   - *View the difference in value over time:* Touch and hold the chart with two fingers.
   - *View more details:* Swipe the data below the chart to see additional details like 52-week high and low, Beta, EPS, and average trading volume.
   - *Read news:* Swipe up to see additional news stories, then tap a story.

2. To return to your watchlist, tap ⊗.

See also

Manage multiple watchlists in Stocks on iPhone

Read business news in Stocks on iPhone

Use a Stocks widget on your iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Shortcuts

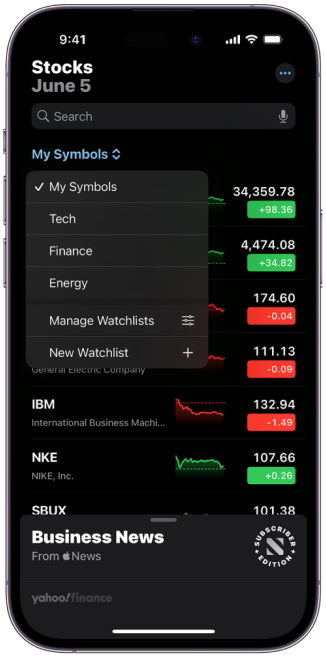
Next
Manage multiple watchlists

Support › iPhone User Guide › Check stocks on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Manage multiple watchlists in Stocks on iPhone

You can create your own watchlists in the Stocks app to organize the stocks you follow according to categories such as tech, energy, or entertainment. Switch between watchlists; edit, update, and delete them; and view them in the Stocks app on your other devices. Any symbols you add to a custom watchlist are also added to the My Symbols watchlist.



Create a new watchlist

1. Tap My Symbols, then tap New Watchlist.
2. Name the watchlist, then tap Save.

To switch between your watchlists, tap My Symbols or the name of the current watchlist you're viewing, then tap the name of the watchlist you want to see.

Add symbols to a watchlist

1. In the search field, enter the name of a ticker symbol, company, fund, or index.
2. Tap +, then tap Done.

   Tip: You can easily add a symbol that's in one watchlist to another watchlist. Swipe left on the symbol, tap, select a watchlist, then tap Done.

Each symbol you add to a new watchlist is also added to the My Symbols watchlist. See Manage symbols in the My Symbols watchlist.

Remove symbols from a watchlist

To remove a symbol from a watchlist, swipe left on the symbol.

When you remove a symbol from a watchlist that you created, that symbol remains in the My Symbols watchlist. See Manage symbols in the My Symbols watchlist.

Sort symbols in a watchlist

You can choose how the symbols in your watchlists are sorted.

1. Select the watchlist you want to sort, then tap .
2. Tap Sort Watchlist By, then tap one of the following options:
   - Manual
   - Price Change
   - Percentage Change
   - Market Cap
   - Symbol
   - Name

To change the order of the symbols in the watchlist, tap , tap Sort Watchlist By, then tap Ascending or Descending.

Change the value displayed in a watchlist

You can change the value displayed below each symbol's price in a watchlist.

1. Select the watchlist you want to change, then tap .
2. Tap Watchlist Shows, then tap one of the following options:
   - Price Change
   - Percentage Change
   - Market Cap

Delete, reorder, and rename watchlists

Tap the name of the watchlist, tap Manage Watchlists, then do any of the following:

- *Delete a watchlist:* Tap next to the symbol, tap , then tap Delete Watchlist.
- *Reorder your watchlists:* Touch and hold , then drag the watchlist to a new position.
- *Rename a watchlist:* Tap , type a new name, then tap Save.

View your watchlists across devices

You can view your watchlists on your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, and Mac when you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

- *On your iPhone or iPad:* Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud, then turn on Stocks.

- *On a Mac with macOS 13 or later:* Choose Apple menu > System Settings, click [*your name*] at the top of the sidebar, click iCloud, then turn on Stocks. (If you don't see your name, click Sign in with your Apple ID to enter your Apple ID or to create one.)
- *On a Mac with macOS 10.15–12.5:* Choose Apple menu > System Preferences, click Apple ID, click iCloud, then select Stocks.
- *On a Mac with macOS 10.14 or earlier:* Choose Apple menu > System Preferences, then click iCloud. Select iCloud Drive, click Options, then select Stocks.

See also

Check stocks on iPhone

Read business news in Stocks on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Check stocks

Next
Read business news

Support › iPhone User Guide › Manage multiple watchlists in Stocks on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Read business news in Stocks on iPhone

In the Stocks app, you can read business stories and listen to audio stories that highlight the current news driving the market. In countries where Apple News is available, you also see stories selected by the Apple News editors and stories from Apple News+. (Apple News and Apple News+ content isn't available in all countries or regions.)

To learn more about Apple News+, see Subscribe to Apple News+.

Read a story

1. Open Stocks, then swipe up on Business News or Top Stories to view stories.

   Stories about companies in your watchlist are grouped by ticker symbol. See Manage symbols in the My Symbols watchlist.

2. Tap a story to read it. While viewing a story, you have these options:

   - *Return to your newsfeed in Stocks:* Tap < or Done in the top-left corner.
   - *See more stories from the publication in Apple News:* Tap the publisher logo at the top of the screen.
   - *Save the story to Apple News:* Tap in the top-left corner.

     Note: In order to save stories to Apple News, make sure you're signed in with your Apple ID, then go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > Show All, and turn on News.
   - *Change the text size:* Tap AA in the top-right corner, then tap the smaller or larger letter to change the text size in the story.
   - *Share the story:* Tap in the top-right corner, tap Share Story, then choose a sharing option, such as Messages or Mail.

   Note: If you tap an Apple News+ story and you're not an Apple News+ subscriber, tap the subscribe or free trial button, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   Stories from publications you have blocked in Apple News don't appear in the newsfeed. See See news stories chosen just for you on iPhone.

Listen to audio stories

Some news stories include an audio version that you can listen to in the Stocks app or listen to later in the News app (not available in all countries or regions).

1. To listen to the audio version of a story, tap Play Now. Or, tap the story to read it, then tap Play Now at the top of the story.
2. Use the mini player at the bottom of the screen to pause the story or jump back 15 seconds. To open the full-screen player, tap the mini player.
3. To return to the mini player, swipe down to minimize the full-screen player.
4. To close the mini player, tap .

Add an audio story from Stocks to your News queue

If you subscribe to Apple News+, you can add an audio story from Stocks to your Up Next queue in News.

1. Make sure you're signed in with your Apple ID, then go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > Show All, and turn on News.
2. Do either of the following:

   - *Add from a Stocks newsfeed:* Touch and hold the story, tap Play Later in News, then choose Play Next or Play Last.
   - *Add from the story:* Open the story, then touch and hold Play Now at the top of the story. Tap Play Later in News, then choose Play Next or Play Last.

See also

Check stocks on iPhone

Get started with News on iPhone

Sign in to your iPhone with Apple ID

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Manage multiple watchlists

Next
Add earnings reports to your calendar

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Add earnings reports to your calendar in Stocks on iPhone

In the Stocks app, you can see when a company has an upcoming earnings report and add it as an event in the Calendar app.

Add an earnings report event to your calendar

If a stock has an upcoming earnings report, you can add it in the Calendar app and be reminded on the day that it's happening.

1. Tap a ticker symbol in your watchlist, or use the search field to search for a symbol.
2. If an earnings report is upcoming, tap Add to Calendar, then tap Add.

The earnings report is saved as an all-day event in the Calendar app. Calendar sends you an event reminder on the day of the earnings report.

Delete an earnings report event from your calendar

1. Open the Stocks app, then tap the ticker symbol in your watchlist or use the search field to search for the symbol.
2. Tap Edit, then tap Delete Event.

See also

Check stocks on iPhone

Create and edit events in Calendar on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use a Stocks widget on your iPhone

Use a Stocks widget to check stocks at a glance on your iPhone Home Screen. You can choose the size of the Stocks widget and the amount of information the widget displays.

Add a Stocks widget

1. Touch and hold the iPhone Home Screen until the apps begin to jiggle.
2. Tap + at the top of the screen to open the widget gallery.
3. Swipe up to find Stocks, then tap it.
4. Swipe left and right to view the different widget types (Watchlist and Symbol) and sizes. When you see the option you want, tap Add Widget, then tap Done.

To move the widget on your Home Screen, touch and hold the Home Screen until the apps begin to jiggle. Drag the widget to a new location, then tap Done.

Change the widget display

After you add a Stocks widget to your Home Screen, you can change its appearance and the information it displays.

1. Touch and hold the Stocks widget on your Home Screen.
2. Tap Edit Widget.
3. Depending on the type of widget you chose, Watchlist or Symbol, you can make the following changes:

   - *Change the widget symbol:* Tap the current symbol, then tap the new symbol you want from the watchlist. Or use the search field to search for a new symbol.
   - *Change the widget watchlist:* Tap the name of the current watchlist, then tap the watchlist you want to display.
   - *Change when news stories appear:* Tap In Off Hours, then choose an option.
   - *Show the watchlist name:* Turn on Show Watchlist Name.
   - *Show more symbols or additional symbol information:* Turn on Show More Details.

Tip: You can add more than one Stocks widget to your Home Screen—and choose a different size for each—so you can quickly see updates for different symbols or watchlists.

See also

Check stocks on iPhone

Manage multiple watchlists in Stocks on iPhone

Move apps and widgets on the Home Screen on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

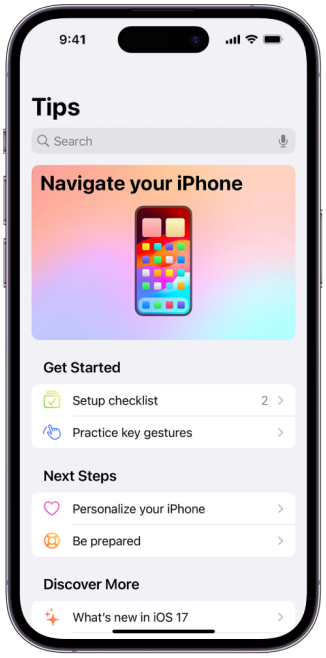
Previous
Add earnings reports to your calendar

Next
Tips

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Get tips on iPhone

In the Tips app, see collections of tips that help you get the most from iPhone.



Get tips

In the Tips app, you can learn how to personalize your Lock Screen, add widgets, unsend an email, take a screenshot, and much more. New tips are added frequently.

To start learning, tap a collection, then tap a tip.

Get notified when new tips arrive

1. Go to Settings > Notifications.
2. Tap Tips below Notification Style, then turn on Allow Notifications.
3. Choose options for the location and style of tip notifications, when they should appear, and more.

Save tips

You can add tips to your personal Saved tips collection, so you can quickly find them later.

- To add a tip, tap.
- To view your saved tips, tap twice, then tap "Saved tips."
- To remove a tip from your Saved tips collection, tap.

Learn more about your other Apple devices

If you have other Apple devices—like an Apple Watch, AirPods, or a HomePod—you can read about them in the Tips app.

Scroll to the bottom of the Tips app, then tap the user guide you want to browse.

See also

Get apps in the App Store

Change notification settings

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use a Stocks widget

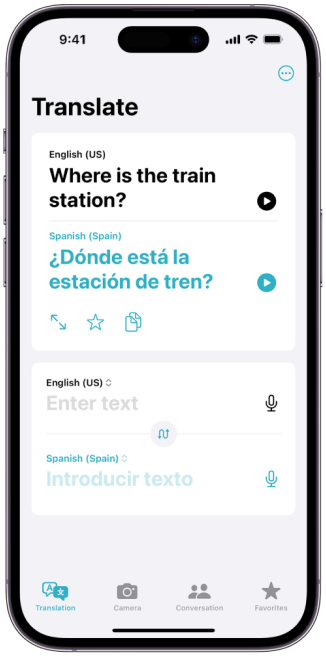
Next
Translate text, voice, and conversations

Support > iPhone User Guide > Get tips on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Translate text, voice, and conversations on iPhone

In the Translate app, you can translate text, voice, and conversations into any supported language. You can also download languages to translate entirely on a device, even without an internet connection.



Note: Translation is available for supported languages. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Translate text or your voice

1. Open the Translate app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the language you want to translate your selected text to.

   To swap languages, tap .
3. Tap one of the following:

   - *Translate text:* Tap "Enter text," type a phrase (or paste text), then tap Next in the keyboard.

     You can also tap Done in the top-left corner of the screen.

   - *Translate your voice:* Tap , then say a phrase.

   Note: Words are translated as you type or speak.
4. When the translation is shown, do any of the following:

   - *Play the audio translation:* Tap .

     Tip: Touch and hold to adjust the playback speed.

- *Show the translation to someone else:* Tap ↘.
- *Save the translation as a favorite:* Tap ☆.
- *Copy the translation:* Tap.

Tip: To view your recent history, swipe the translation down.

Translate a conversation

iPhone shows the translated text bubbles from both sides of the conversation. Conversations work for downloaded languages when you don't have an internet connection or when On-Device Mode is turned on.

1. Tap Conversation.
2. Tap one of the following:
   - *Type text:* Tap "Enter text," type a phrase (or paste text), then tap Done.
   - *Use your voice:* Tap, then say a phrase.

   Note: Words are translated as you type or speak.
3. Tap to hear the audio translation.

   To hear audio translations automatically, tap, then tap Play Translations.

Tip: You can translate a conversation without tapping the microphone button before each person speaks. Tap, tap Auto Translate, then tap to start the conversation. iPhone automatically detects when you start speaking and when you stop.

When chatting face to face, tap View in the top left, then tap Face to Face so that each person can see the conversation from their own side.

Review words with multiple meanings

When translating a word that has several meanings, you can choose the one you want. You can also select feminine or masculine translations for words that have grammatical gender variations.

Note: When gender hasn't been specified, translations automatically default to the gender-neutral form of a word.

1. Open the Translate app on your iPhone.
2. Translate a word or phrase, then tap Next in the keyboard.
3. When available, do any of the following:

   - *Choose a different meaning:* When available, tap the light-colored word to select the intended meaning.
   - *Choose grammatical gender translations:* When available, tap the light-colored word to select a feminine or masculine translation.

To turn off grammatical gender translations, tap , then tap Show Grammatical Gender.

Download languages for offline translation or On-Device Mode

Download languages to translate when you don't have an internet connection or when On-Device Mode is turned on.

1. Go to Settings > Translate.
2. Do any of the following:

   - Tap Downloaded Languages, then tap next to the languages you want to download.
   - Turn On-Device Mode on.

See also

Translate text in apps on iPhone

Translate text with the camera view in the Translate app on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Translate text in apps on iPhone

On iPhone, you can translate text in apps such as Camera, Photos, Safari, Messages, Mail, supported third-party apps, and more.

Note: Translation is available for supported languages. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Translate text in apps

You can select any text to translate in apps such as Safari, Messages, Mail, supported third-party apps, and more. When you enter text on your iPhone, you can even replace what you wrote with a translation.

1. Select the text you want to translate, then tap Translate.

   If you don't see Translate, tap › to see more options.

2. Tap the language you want to translate your selected text to.

3. Below the text translation, choose any of the following:

   - *Replace with Translation:* Replace your original text with the translation (available only when translating editable text).
   - *Copy Translation:* Copy the translated text.
   - *Add to Favorites:* Add the translation to a list of favorites.
   - *Open in Translate:* Do more with the translation in the Translate app.
   - *Download Languages:* Download languages for offline translation.
   - *Listen to Original Text:* Tap more, then tap to listen to the original text.
   - *Listen to Translated Text:* Tap to listen to the translated text.

Translate text in photos

On supported models, when you view a photo that includes text, tap, touch and hold the text you want to translate, then tap Translate.

If you don't see Translate, tap › to see more options.

Translate text in the Camera app

On supported models, you can use the Camera app to translate text around you—like a recipe, for example.

1. Open the Camera app, then position iPhone so that the text appears on the screen.

2. When the yellow frame appears around detected text, tap.

3. Select the text you want to translate, then tap Translate.

   If you don't see Translate, tap > to see more options.

See also

Use Live Text to interact with content in a photo or video on iPhone

Use Live Text with your iPhone camera

Translate text with the camera view in the Translate app on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Translate text, voice, and conversations

Next
Translate with the camera view

Support > iPhone User Guide > Translate text in apps on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Translate text with the camera view in the Translate app on iPhone

On iPhone, you can use the camera view in the Translate app to translate text around you—for example, a restaurant menu or street signs. You can also translate text in photos from your photo library.

Note: Translation is available for supported languages. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Translate text using the camera view

1. Open the Translate app on iPhone, then tap Camera.
2. Choose the language you want to translate your selected text into.
3. Position iPhone so the rear camera can translate text around you.

   Note: As you move the rear camera, text is translated in real time.
4. Tap to pause the view.

   You can zoom in to get a closer look at the overlaid translations.
5. Tap an overlaid translation to show the translation card, then do any of the following:

   - *Copy Translation:* Copy the translated text.
   - *Add to Favorites:* Add the translation to a list of favorites.
   - *Listen to Original Text:* Tap more, then tap to listen to the original text.
   - *Listen to Translated Text:* Tap to listen to the translated text.
6. When you're finished, tap .

Translate text in photos from your photo library

1. Open the Translate app on iPhone, then tap Camera.
2. Choose the language you want to translate your selected text into.
3. Tap , then select a photo that contains text from your photo library.
4. When you're finished, tap .

Share and save translated text

After translating text from the camera view or a photo, tap , then do any of the following:

- *Share the translation:* Choose a share option.
- *Save the translation as an image:* Tap Save Image.

See also

Use Live Text to interact with content in a photo or video on iPhone

Use Live Text with your iPhone camera

Translate text in apps on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Translate text in apps

Next
Connect apps and add your TV provider

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Connect apps and add your TV provider to the Apple TV app on iPhone

With the Apple TV app, you can watch shows and movies from streaming services and cable and satellite providers. The Apple TV app is on your iPhone, iPad, Mac, Apple TV, and supported smart TVs and streaming devices, so you can watch at home or wherever you go.

Note: The availability of the Apple TV app and its features and services (such as Apple TV+, Apple TV channels, sports, and supported apps) varies by country or region. See the Apple Support articles Availability of Apple Media Services and Availability of supported apps in the Apple TV app.

Connect video streaming apps

The Apple TV app recommends new content or the next episode in a series you watch from a connected app (supported streaming apps only). Connected apps appear in the Apple TV app on all your devices where you're signed in with your Apple ID.

To connect supported streaming apps, do the following:

1. Tap Watch Now, scroll down to the Streaming Apps row, then tap a streaming app.

   If you don't see the streaming app you want to connect, swipe left, then tap Connect More Streaming Apps.

2. Tap "Connect to watch [*streaming app*]," then follow the onscreen instructions.

To disconnect supported streaming apps, tap your picture or initials in the top left, then tap Connected Apps.

Add your cable or satellite service to the Apple TV app

Single sign-on provides immediate access to all the supported video apps in your subscription package.

1. Go to Settings > TV Provider.
2. Choose your TV provider, then sign in with your provider credentials.

If your TV provider isn't listed, sign in directly from the app you want to use.

See also

Subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, and Apple TV channels on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, and Apple TV channels on iPhone

In the Apple TV app, you can subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, and Apple TV channels. Apple TV+ is a subscription streaming service featuring Apple Originals—award-winning series, compelling dramas, groundbreaking documentaries, kids' entertainment, comedies, and more—with new items added every month.

MLS Season Pass is a subscription streaming service featuring every match of the Major League Soccer season, all in one place, with consistent match times, and no blackouts.

Apple TV channels let you easily subscribe to just the channels you watch—like Paramount+, STARZ, and more—without downloading any apps.

A subscription gives you access to content on demand on iPhone, iPad, Mac, Apple TV, and supported smart TVs and streaming devices. You can also download content to watch offline on iPhone, iPad, and Mac.

You can choose to bundle your Apple TV+ subscription with other Apple services by subscribing to Apple One. See the Apple Support article Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One.

Note: Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, Apple TV channels, and Apple One aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Subscribe to Apple TV+

1. Tap Originals, then tap the subscription button.
2. Review the free trial (if eligible) and subscription details, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Subscribe to MLS Season Pass

1. Tap Watch Now, scroll down to the Channels row, then tap MLS Season Pass.
2. Tap the subscription button.
3. Review the subscription details, tap a subscription option, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Subscribe to Apple TV channels

You can subscribe to premium channels such as Paramount+ and STARZ, all in one place. If you use Family Sharing, up to five other family members can share the subscription for no additional charge.

1. Tap Watch Now, scroll down to the Channels row, then tap a channel.
2. Tap the subscription button, review the free trial (if eligible) and subscription details, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Change or cancel your subscriptions to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, or Apple TV channels

1. Tap Watch Now, then tap your picture or initials at the top right.
2. Tap Manage Subscriptions.
3. Follow the onscreen instructions to change or cancel your subscription.

Share Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, and Apple TV channels with family members

When you subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, Apple TV channels, or Apple One, you can use Family Sharing to share your subscriptions with up to five other family members. Your family group members don't need to do anything—a shared subscription is available to them the first time they open the Apple TV app after your subscription begins.

If you join a family group that subscribes to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, Apple TV channels, or Apple One, and you already subscribe, your subscription isn't renewed on your next billing date; instead, you use the group's subscription. If you join a family group that doesn't subscribe, the group uses your subscription.

Note: To stop sharing your subscription with a family group, you can cancel the subscription, leave or remove a member from a Family Sharing group, or (if you're the family group organizer), stop using Family Sharing.

See also

Get shows, movies, and more in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Watch Major League Soccer with MLS Season Pass in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

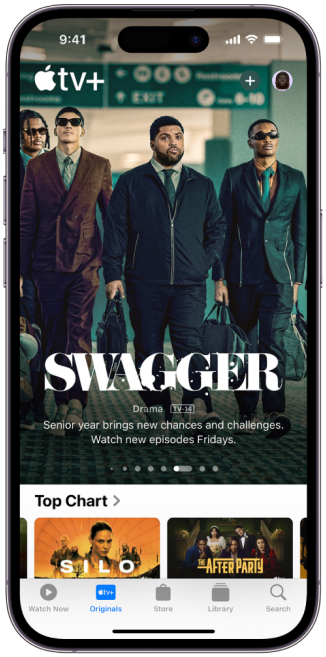
Previous
Connect apps and add your TV provider

Next
Get shows, movies, and more

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Get shows, movies, and more in the Apple TV app on iPhone

The Apple TV app brings your favorite shows, movies, and sports together in one place. Quickly find and watch your favorites, pick up where you left off with Up Next, or discover something new—personalized just for you.



Note: The availability of Apple Media Services varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Discover shows and movies

In the Apple TV app, tap Watch Now, then do any of the following:

- *Get recommendations:* Get video previews of personalized recommendations based on your channel subscriptions, supported apps, purchases, and viewing interests.
- *Browse Apple TV channels:* Scroll down to browse channels you subscribe to. In the Channels row, browse other available channels, then tap a channel to explore its titles.
- *See movies, shows, and episodes sent by friends in Messages:* Scroll down to the Shared with You row. See Share content in Messages on iPhone.

Use the Up Next queue

In the Up Next row, you can find titles you recently added, rented, or purchased, catch the next episode in a series you've been watching, or resume what you're watching from the moment you left off.

Do any of the following:

- *Add an item to Up Next:* Touch and hold the item, then tap Add to Up Next.
- *Remove an item from Up Next:* Touch and hold the item, then tap Remove from Up Next.
- *Continue watching on another device:* You can see your Up Next queue in the Apple TV app on your iPhone, iPad, Mac, Apple TV, or supported smart TV where you're signed in with your Apple ID.

Browse Apple TV+

Discover Apple Originals—award-winning series, compelling dramas, groundbreaking documentaries, kids' entertainment, comedies, and more—with new items added every month.

Tap Originals, then do any of the following:

- *See what's up next:* In the Up Next on Apple TV+ row, find titles you recently added, play the next episode in a series, or continue watching where you left off.
- *Browse a collection:* Swipe left on the collection or tap > to see all items.
- *See descriptions and ratings:* Tap an item.

Search for shows, movies, and more

Tap Search, then enter what you're looking for in the search field. You can search by title, sport, team, cast member, Apple TV channel, or topic (such as "car chase").

Stream or download content

Content from Apple TV+ and Apple TV channels play in the Apple TV app, while content from other providers plays in their video app.

1. Tap an item to see its details.
2. Choose any of the following options (not all options are available for all titles):

    - *Watch Apple TV+ or Apple TV channels:* Tap Play. If you're not a current subscriber, tap Try It Free (available for eligible Apple ID accounts) or Subscribe.
    - *Choose a different video app:* If the title is available from multiple apps, scroll down to How To Watch, then choose an app.
    - *Download:* Tap . You can find the downloaded item in your library and watch it even when iPhone isn't connected to the internet.

Buy, rent, or pre-order items

1. Tap Store, then tap TV Shows or Movies.
2. Choose any of the following options (not all options are available for all titles):

    - *Buy:* Purchased items are added to your library.
    - *Rent:* When you rent a movie, you have 30 days to start watching it. After you start watching the movie, you can play it as many times as you want for 48 hours, after which the rental period ends. When the rental period ends, the movie is deleted.
    - *Pre-order:* When the pre-ordered item becomes available, your payment method is billed, and you receive an email notification. If you turned on automatic downloads, the item is automatically downloaded to your iPhone.
3. Confirm your selection, then complete the payment or pre-order, as applicable.

You can find your purchases and rentals in your library and play them in the Apple TV app.

See also

Watch sports in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, and Apple TV channels

Next
Watch sports

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Watch sports in the Apple TV app on iPhone

In the Apple TV app, the Sports row gives you access to a wide array of live and scheduled sports events (not available in all countries or regions).

You can see live games with up-to-the-minute scores, or browse upcoming games and add them to Up Next.

Explore sports

1. Open the Apple TV app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Watch Now, then scroll down to the Sports row.
3. Do any of the following:
   - Browse live and upcoming games.
   - Tap Live Sports, then scroll down to browse football, baseball, basketball, and more.
4. To filter by sport, tap Live Sports, scroll down to the Browse row, then tap a sport.

Watch a live game

1. Open the Apple TV app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Watch Now, then scroll down to the Sports row.
3. Tap Live Sports, then tap a live game.
4. Tap Watch or Open In, then choose an app.

   You can also scroll down to How to Watch, then choose an app.

If you want to receive live updates for a game on the Lock Screen, tap Follow Live. See Access features from the iPhone Lock Screen.

Select games may also show the current score and play-by-play updates on the game page.

To hide the scores of live games, go to Settings > TV, then turn off Show Sports Scores.

See also

Follow teams with My Sports in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Watch Major League Soccer with MLS Season Pass in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Follow teams with My Sports in the Apple TV app on iPhone

In the Apple TV app, you can add your favorite teams to My Sports to see their games in Up Next and receive notifications when they're about to play.

When you turn on syncing for My Sports, the teams you follow in Apple TV are automatically followed in Apple News and other supported apps. If you've already set up My Sports in the News app, the teams you follow appear in the Apple TV app.

If you have an iPhone, iPad, or Mac signed in with the same Apple ID, you can also see the teams you're following with My Sports in the Apple TV app and in the News app on those devices.

Note: My Sports isn't available in all countries or regions.

Follow your favorite teams

1. Tap Watch Now, scroll down to the Sports row, then tap Live Sports.
2. Tap Follow Your Teams.
3. Tap Turn On to sync your teams across Apple News, Apple TV, and other supported apps.
4. Tap a sports league (MLS, MLB, or NBA, for example), then tap next to a team to follow it.
5. When you're finished, tap Done.

Manage My Sports

You can follow and unfollow teams after you've set up My Sports.

Tap Watch Now, tap Live Sports, then tap Manage My Sports at the bottom of the screen, where you can do any of the following:

- *Follow teams:* Tap a league, tap next to a team you want to follow, then tap Done.
- *Unfollow teams:* Tap next to a team you want to unfollow, tap Remove, then tap Done.

See also

Follow your favorite teams with My Sports on iPhone

Watch Major League Soccer with MLS Season Pass in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Watch Major League Soccer with MLS Season Pass in the Apple TV app on iPhone

When you subscribe to MLS Season Pass in the Apple TV app, you can watch every match of the Major League Soccer season, the entire playoffs, and Leagues Cup all in one place, with no blackouts.

You can also follow your favorite MLS clubs in My Sports (not available in all countries or regions) and watch on-demand content—including MLS club profiles, player profiles, league and club highlights from the last season, and more.

When you follow a club, their matches automatically appear in Up Next.

Note: MLS Season Pass isn't available in all countries or regions.

Browse and watch with MLS Season Pass

1. Tap Watch Now, scroll down to the Channels row, then tap MLS Season Pass.
2. Do any of the following:
   - *Explore featured matches, pregame and postgame shows, and more:* Scroll to a category row.
   - *Follow your favorite MLS clubs in My Sports:* Tap Follow your Clubs. See Follow your favorite teams with My Sports.
   - *Browse matches, club profiles, player profiles, and more for a particular club:* Tap a club in the Eastern Conference or Western Conference row.

     You can also tap › to see all clubs from each conference.
3. To start watching, tap an event or show.

   Note: Some events and shows require a subscription. If you haven't subscribed to MLS Season Pass, tap Subscribe, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Add upcoming matches to Up Next

1. Tap Watch Now, scroll down to the Channels row, then tap MLS Season Pass.
2. Swipe left on the Live Schedule row, then tap a match.
3. Tap ⊕ to add the match to Up Next.

See also

Subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, and Apple TV channels on iPhone

Control playback in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Previous
Follow your favorite teams with My Sports

Next
Control playback

Support › iPhone User Guide › Watch Major League Soccer with MLS Season Pass in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Control playback in the Apple TV app on iPhone

In the Apple TV app, you can use the playback controls to play, pause, skip backward or forward, and more.

When you watch with your friends using SharePlay, the playback controls are shared by everyone on the FaceTime call. To learn more about using SharePlay in the Apple TV app, see Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together in FaceTime on iPhone.

Use the playback controls

During playback, tap the screen to show the controls.

Control	Description
	Play
	Pause
	Skip backward 10 seconds; touch and hold to rewind
	Skip forward 10 seconds; touch and hold to fast-forward
	Stream the video to other devices
	Change the playback speed, display subtitles and closed captions, change the language, and more (features subject to availability)
	Start Picture in Picture—you can continue to watch the video while you use another app
	Stop playback

See also

Get shows, movies, and more in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Manage your library in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Watch Major League Soccer with MLS Season Pass

Next
Manage your library

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Manage your library in the Apple TV app on iPhone

In the Apple TV app, your library contains shows and movies you purchased, rented, and downloaded. If you use Family Sharing, you can also view purchases made by family members.

Browse your library

Tap Library, then tap TV Shows, Movies, or Genres.

Watch a movie you rented

1. Tap Library, tap Rentals, then tap a movie.
2. Do any of the following:
   - *Play:* Tap . The time remaining in the rental period is shown.
   - *Download:* Tap to watch the item later when iPhone isn't connected to the internet.

Share purchases made by family members

If you use Family Sharing, you and your family members can share purchases in the Apple TV app.

Tap Library, tap Family Sharing, then choose a family member.

Remove a downloaded item

1. Tap Library, then tap Downloaded.
2. Swipe left on the item you want to remove, then tap Delete.

Removing an item from iPhone doesn't delete it from your purchases in iCloud. You can download the item to iPhone again later.

See also

Change the Apple TV app settings on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Change the Apple TV app settings on iPhone

You can adjust streaming and download settings for the Apple TV app. You can also change how the Apple TV app uses your viewing history to provide personalized recommendations.

Change streaming and download options

1. Go to Settings > TV.
2. Choose streaming options:
   - *Use Cellular Data:* Turn off to limit streaming to Wi-Fi connections.
   - *Wi-Fi:* Choose High Quality or Data Saver.

     High Quality requires a faster internet connection and uses more data.
3. Choose download options:
   - *Use Cellular Data:* Turn off to limit downloads to Wi-Fi connections.
   - *Wi-Fi:* Choose High Quality or Fast Downloads.

     High Quality results in slower downloads and uses more data.
   - *Languages:* Choose a language. Each added audio language increases the download size. To remove a language, swipe left on the language you want to remove, then tap Delete.

     The default language is the primary language for your country or region. If you turned on Audio Descriptions in Settings > Accessibility, audio descriptions are also downloaded.

Use or clear your viewing history

By default, what you watch on your iPhone affects your personalized recommendations and Up Next queue on all your devices where you're signed in with your Apple ID.

You can do any of the following:

- *Clear your viewing history:* Tap Watch Now, tap your picture or initials at the top right, then tap Clear Play History.
- *Turn off personalization features based on your viewing history:* Go to Settings > TV, then turn off Use Play History.

See also

Connect apps and add your TV provider to the Apple TV app on iPhone

Previous
Manage your library

Next
Make a recording

Support › iPhone User Guide › Change the Apple TV app settings on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

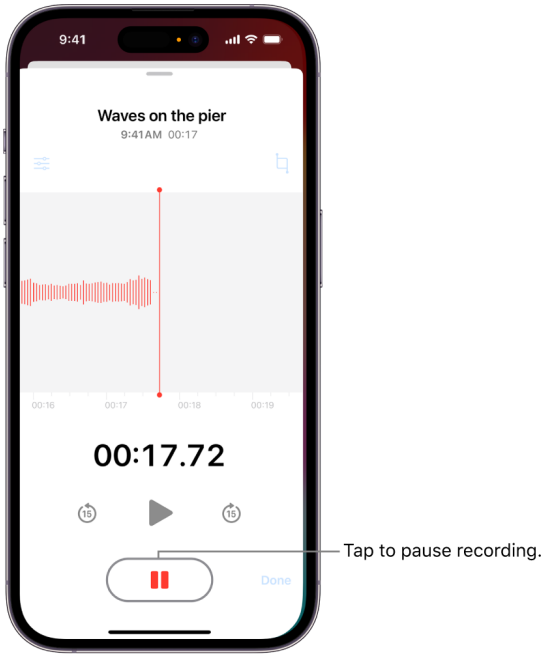
Make a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

With the Voice Memos app (located in the Utilities folder), you can use iPhone as a portable recording device to record personal notes, classroom lectures, musical ideas, and more. You can fine-tune your recordings with editing tools like trim, replace, and resume.

Note: To make the Voice Memos app easier to find and open, you can move it from the Utilities folder to the Home Screen.

Record voice memos using the built-in microphone, a supported headset, or an external microphone.

When Voice Memos is turned on in iCloud settings or iCloud preferences, your recordings appear and update automatically on your iPhone, iPad, and Mac where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.



Make a basic recording

1. To begin recording, tap .

   To adjust the recording level, move the microphone closer to or farther from what you're recording.

2. Tap to finish recording.

Your recording is saved with the name New Recording or the name of your location, if Location Services is turned on in Settings > Privacy & Security. To change the name, tap the recording, then tap the name and type a new one.

To fine-tune your recording, see Edit a recording in Voice Memos.

Note: For your privacy, when you use Voice Memos to make recordings, an orange dot appears at the top of your screen to indicate your microphone is in use.

Use the advanced recording features

You can make a recording in parts, pausing and resuming as you record.

1. To begin recording, tap ⏺.

   To adjust the recording level, move the microphone closer to or farther away from what you're recording.

   To see more details while you're recording, swipe up from the top of the waveform.

2. Tap ⏸ to stop recording; tap Resume to continue.

3. To review your recording, tap ▶.

   To change where playback begins, drag the waveform left or right across the playhead before you tap ▶.

4. To save the recording, tap Done.

Your recording is saved with the name New Recording or the name of your location, if Location Services is turned on in Settings > Privacy & Security. To change the name, tap the recording, then tap the name and type a new one.

To fine-tune your recording, see Edit or delete a recording in Voice Memos.

Mute the start and stop tones

While recording, use the iPhone volume down button to turn the volume all the way down.

Use another app while recording

While you're recording in Voice Memos, you can go to the Home Screen, open another app, and use the other app, as long as it doesn't play audio on your device. If the app starts playing audio, Voice Memos stops recording.

On iPhone 14 Pro, iPhone 14 Pro Max, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max, you can see your recording in progress in the Dynamic Island at the top of the Home Screen and in other apps. You can tap the Dynamic Island to navigate back to Voice Memos. See View Live Activities in the Dynamic Island on iPhone.

You can touch and hold the Dynamic Island to expand it. When you expand it, the Stop button appears in it, allowing you to stop recording without returning to Voice Memos.

If Voice Memos is turned on in iCloud settings or iCloud preferences, your recording is saved in iCloud and appears automatically on your iPhone, iPad, and Mac where you're signed in with the same Apple ID. See Keep recordings up to date in Voice Memos on iPhone.

Recordings using the built-in microphone are mono, but you can record stereo using an external stereo microphone that works with iPhone. Look for accessories marked with the Apple "Made for iPhone" or "Works with iPhone" logo.

See also

Play a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

Organize recordings in Voice Memos on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

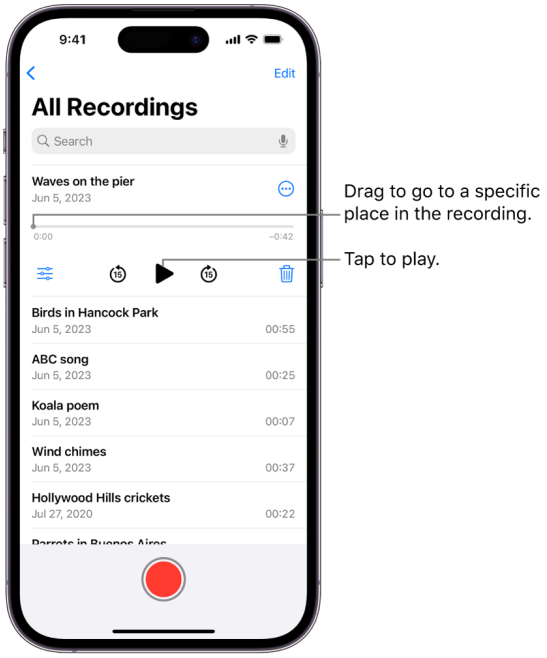
Previous
Change the settings

Next
Play it back

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Play a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

In the Voice Memos app, tap a recording and use the playback controls to listen to it.



Control	Description
▶	Play
⏸	Pause
15	Skip backward 15 seconds
15	Skip forward 15 seconds

Tip: While the recording is open, you can tap its name to rename it.

Change the playback speed

You can play a recording at a faster or slower speed.

1. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to play.
2. Tap, then drag the slider toward the tortoise for a slower speed, or toward the rabbit for a faster speed.
3. Tap, then tap ▶ to play the recording.

Note: Changing the playback speed doesn't change the recording itself, only how fast it plays.

Enhance a recording

When playing a recording, you can enhance it to reduce background noise and echo.

1. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to enhance.
2. Tap , then turn on Enhance Recording.
3. Tap , then tap to play the recording.

Note: Turning on Enhance Recording doesn't change the recording itself, only how it sounds when you play it.

Skip over gaps when playing back a recording

Voice Memos can analyze your audio and automatically skip over gaps when playing it.

1. Tap the recording you want to play.
2. Tap , then turn on Skip Silence.
3. Tap , then tap to play the recording.

Note: Turning on Skip Silence doesn't change the recording itself, only how it sounds when you play it.

Turn off the playback options

To return all the playback options to their original settings, tap , then tap Reset.

See also

Edit or delete a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Make a recording

Next
Edit or delete a recording

Support › iPhone User Guide › Play a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

This manual was copied from Apple Support website
and compiled by www.iphone15manual.com

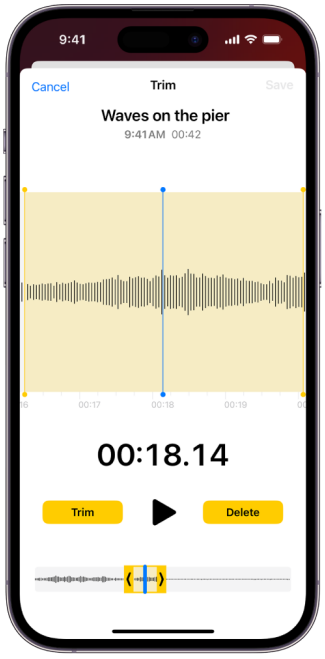
Edit or delete a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

In the Voice Memos app, you can use the editing tools to fine-tune your recordings. You can remove parts you don't want, record over parts, or replace an entire recording. You can also delete a recording you no longer need.

Trim the excess

1. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to edit, tap, then tap Edit Recording.
2. Tap at the top right, then drag the yellow trim handles to enclose the section you want to keep or delete.

   You can pinch open to zoom in on the waveform for more precise editing.



   To check your selection, tap.
3. To keep the selection (and delete the rest of the recording), tap Trim, or to delete the selection, tap Delete.
4. Tap Save, then tap Done.

Replace a recording

1. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to replace, tap, then tap Edit Recording.
2. Drag the waveform to position the playhead where you want to start recording new audio.

   You can pinch open to zoom in on the waveform for more precise placement.
3. Tap Replace to begin recording (the waveform turns red as you record).

Tap ⏸ to pause; tap Resume to continue.

4. To check your recording, tap ▶.
5. Tap Done to save the changes.

Delete a recording

Do one of the following:

- In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to delete, then tap 🗑.
- Tap Edit above the list of recordings, select one or more recordings, then tap Delete.

Deleted recordings move to the Recently Deleted folder, where they're kept for 30 days by default. To change how long deleted recordings are kept, go to Settings > Voice Memos > Clear Deleted, then select an option.

Recover or erase a deleted recording

1. Tap the Recently Deleted folder, then tap the recording you want to recover or erase.
2. Do any of the following:

   - *Recover the selected recording:* Tap Recover.
   - *Recover everything in the Recently Deleted folder:* Tap Edit above the Recently Deleted list, then tap Recover All.
   - *Delete everything in the Recently Deleted folder:* Tap Edit above the Recently Deleted list, then tap Delete All.

See also

Organize recordings in Voice Memos on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Play it back

Next
Keep recordings up to date

Support > iPhone User Guide > Edit or delete a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Keep recordings up to date in Voice Memos on iPhone

With the Voice Memos app and iCloud, your audio recordings appear and are kept up to date automatically on your iPhone, iPad, and Mac where you're signed in with the same Apple ID and Voice Memos is turned on in iCloud settings or preferences.

To turn on Voice Memos in iCloud on your devices, do the following:

- *iOS or iPadOS:* Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > Show All, then turn on Voice Memos.
- *macOS 13:* Choose Apple menu > System Settings, click [*your name*] at the top of the sidebar, then click iCloud on the right. Click iCloud Drive, click Options, click Documents, select Voice Memos, then click Done. (If you don't see your name at the top of the sidebar, click Sign in with your Apple ID to enter your Apple ID or to create one.)
- *macOS 10.15–12.5:* Choose Apple menu > System Preferences, then click Apple ID. Click iCloud in the sidebar, then select iCloud Drive. Click Options next to iCloud Drive, click Documents, then select Voice Memos.

See Sync content between your Mac and iPhone or iPad in the macOS User Guide.

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Organize recordings in Voice Memos on iPhone

In the Voice Memos app, you can mark recordings as favorites and organize your recordings into folders.

Note: Apple Watch recordings, recently deleted recordings, and favorites are grouped into Smart Folders—folders that automatically gather files by type and subject matter.

Mark recordings as favorites

Do one of the following:

- In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to mark as a favorite, tap, then tap.
- Tap Edit above the list of recordings, select one or more recordings, tap Move, then tap favorites.

Recordings marked as favorites automatically appear in the Favorites folder.

Organize recordings into folders

You can group related recordings together into folders so you can locate them easily.

1. Tap Edit above the list of recordings.
2. Select one or more recordings, then tap Move.
3. If you want to create a new folder for the recordings, tap , then type a name for the folder.
4. Tap the folder where you want to store the selected recordings.

To view your folders, tap; tap a folder to check its contents.

To return to the list of recordings, tap All Recordings above the folders.

Delete or reorder folders

1. Tap to go to the list of folders.
2. Tap Edit above the folders, then do any of the following:
   - *Delete a folder:* Tap next to the folder, then tap.
   - *Change the order of the folders:* Drag next to any folder.
3. Tap Done.

See also

Edit or delete a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Keep recordings up to date

Next
Search for or rename a recording

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Search for or rename a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

You can search for your recordings in the Voice Memos app, and rename any recording.

Search for a recording

1. In the Voice Memos list, swipe down to reveal the search field.
2. Tap the search field, enter part or all of the recording name, then tap Search.

Rename a recording

A recording is initially saved with the name New Recording or the name of your location, if Location Services is turned on in Settings > Privacy & Security.

To change the name, tap the recording, tap the name, then type a new one.

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Share a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

In the Voice Memos app, you can share one or more recordings with others (or send it to your Mac or another device) using AirDrop, Mail, Messages, and more.

Share a recording

1. In your Voice Memos list, tap a saved recording, then tap .
2. Tap Share, choose a sharing option, select or enter a recipient, then tap Done or .

Share more than one recording

1. Tap Edit above the list of recordings, then select the recordings you want to share.
2. Tap , choose a sharing option, select or enter a recipient, then tap Done or .

See also

Search for or rename a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Duplicate a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

In the Voice Memos app, you can duplicate a recording, which is useful when you need another version of it. You can make changes to the copy, save it, and give it a new name.

In the Voice Memos list, tap a recording, tap, then tap Duplicate.

The copy appears right below the original version in the list and has “copy” added to its name. To change the name, tap it, then type a new one.

See also

Organize recordings in Voice Memos on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Keep cards and passes in Wallet on iPhone

Use the Wallet app to securely keep your credit and debit cards for Apple Pay, driver's license or state ID, transit cards, event tickets, keys, and more—in one convenient place for easy access.

(Apple Card and Apple Cash are available only in the U.S.)

Wallet can store the following:

- Payment cards
  - Credit and debit cards
  - Apple Card (U.S. only)
  - Apple Cash (U.S. only)
- Identity cards
  - Driver's license or state ID
  - Student ID card
  - Employee badge
- Transit and tickets
  - Transit
  - Boarding passes and tickets
- Keys
  - Home key
  - Hotel key
  - Car key
- And more

- Passes, event tickets, reward cards, and loyalty cards
- COVID-19 vaccination cards
- Apple Account Card

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Duplicate a recording

Next
Set up Apple Pay

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Set up Apple Pay in Wallet on iPhone

Using Apple Pay can be simpler than using a physical card, and safer too. With your cards stored in the Wallet app, you can use Apple Pay to make secure payments in stores, for transit, in apps, and on websites that support Apple Pay. (Available in certain countries and regions; see Countries and regions that support Apple Pay.)

To set up Apple Pay, add your debit, credit, and prepaid cards to Wallet.

(Apple Card and Apple Cash are available only in the U.S.)

Add a credit or debit card

1. Open the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap . You may be asked to sign in with your Apple ID.
3. Do one of the following:

   - *Add a new card:* Tap Debit or Credit Card, tap Continue, then position your card so that it appears in the camera frame, or enter the card details manually.
   - *Apply for Apple Card:* See Set up and use Apple Card on iPhone (U.S. only).
   - *Add your previous cards:* Tap Previous Cards, then choose any cards you previously used. These cards may include the card associated with your Apple ID, cards you use with Apple Pay on your other devices, cards you added to Safari AutoFill, or cards you removed from Wallet. Tap Continue, authenticate with Face ID or Touch ID, then follow the onscreen instructions.
   - *Add a card from a supported app:* Tap the app of your bank or card issuer (below From Apps on Your iPhone).

The card issuer determines whether your card is eligible for Apple Pay, and may ask you for additional information to complete the verification process.

View the information for a card and change its settings

1. In Wallet, tap the card.

   Note: The latest transactions may appear, showing authorized amounts that may differ from the amount of the payment charged to your account. For example, a gas station may request an authorization of $99, even though you pumped only $25 worth of gasoline. To see the final charges, see the statement from your card issuer, which includes all Apple Pay transactions.

2. Tap ⋯, then tap any of the following:

   - *Card Number:* View the last four digits of the card number and Device Account Number—the number transmitted to the merchant.
   - *Card Details:* See more information; change the billing address; turn the transaction history on or off; or remove the card from Wallet.
   - *Notifications:* Turn notifications on or off.

   Note: If you have Apple Card, see Set up and use Apple Card on iPhone (U.S. only).

Change your Apple Pay settings

1. Go to Settings > Wallet & Apple Pay.
2. Do any of the following:

   - *Double-Click Side Button:* (on an iPhone with Face ID) Your cards and passes appear on the screen when you double-click the side button.
   - *Double-Click Home Button:* (on an iPhone with a Home button) Your cards and passes appear on the screen when you double-click the Home button.
   - *Allow Payments on Mac:* Allows iPhone to confirm payments on your nearby Mac.

Remove your cards from Apple Pay if your iPhone is lost or stolen

If you turned on Find My iPhone, you can use it to help locate and secure your iPhone.

To remove your cards from Apple Pay, do any of the following:

- *On a Mac or PC:* Sign in to your Apple ID account. In the Devices section, select the lost iPhone. In the Wallet & Apple Pay section, click Remove Items.
- *On another iPhone or iPad:* Go to Settings > [*your name*], select the lost iPhone, then tap Remove Items (below Wallet & Apple Pay).
- Call the issuers of your cards.

If you remove cards, you can add them again later.

Note: If you sign out of iCloud in Settings > [*your name*], all your credit and debit cards for Apple Pay are removed from iPhone. You can add the cards again the next time you sign in with your Apple ID.

Note: The availability of Apple Pay and its features varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article Countries and regions that support Apple Pay.

See also

Use Apple Pay for contactless payments on iPhone

Use Apple Pay in apps, App Clips, and Safari on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Keep cards and passes in Wallet

Next
Use Apple Pay for contactless payments

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Use Apple Pay for contactless payments on iPhone

With your Apple Cash, Apple Card, and other credit and debit cards stored in the Wallet app on iPhone, you can use Apple Pay for secure, contactless payments in stores, restaurants, and more. (Available in certain countries and regions; see Countries and regions that support Apple Pay.)

Find places that accept Apple Pay

You can use Apple Pay wherever you see contactless payment symbols such as the following:

Siri: Say something like: "Show me coffee shops that take Apple Pay." Learn how to use Siri.

Pay with your default card on an iPhone with Face ID

1. Double-click the side button.
2. When your default card appears, glance at iPhone to authenticate with Face ID, or enter your passcode.
3. Hold the top of your iPhone near the card reader until you see Done or a checkmark on the screen.

Pay with your default card on an iPhone with Touch ID

1. Rest your finger on Touch ID.
2. Hold the top of your iPhone near the card reader until you see Done or a checkmark on the screen.

Pay with a different card instead of your default card

1. When your default card appears, tap it, then choose another card.
2. Authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.
3. Hold the top of your iPhone near the card reader until you see Done or a checkmark on the screen.

Use a loyalty or rewards card and Apple Pay

At participating stores, you can receive or redeem rewards when you use Apple Pay.

1. Add your rewards card to the Wallet app.
2. To have your rewards card appear automatically when you're in the store, tap ⋯ on the card, tap Pass Details, then turn on Automatic Selection.

3. At the payment terminal in the store, present your rewards card by holding iPhone near the contactless reader.

   Apple Pay then switches to your default payment card to pay for the purchase. In some stores, you can apply your rewards card and payment card in one step. In other stores, you need to wait until the terminal or cashier asks for payment.

Note: If you have Location Services turned on, the location of your iPhone at the time you make a payment may be sent to Apple and the card issuer to help prevent fraud. See Control the location information you share on iPhone.

See also

Set up Apple Pay in Wallet on iPhone

Use Apple Pay in apps, App Clips, and Safari on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Set up Apple Pay

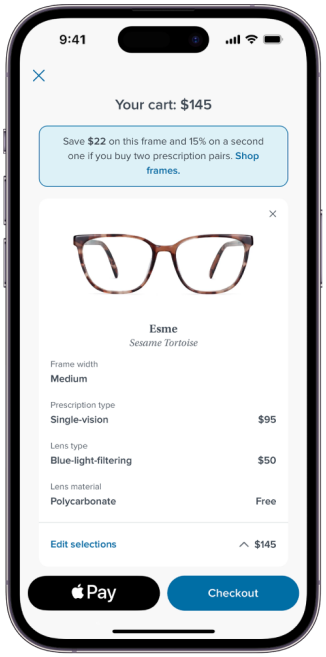
Next
Use Apple Pay in apps, App Clips, and Safari

Support > iPhone User Guide > Use Apple Pay for contactless payments on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use Apple Pay in apps, App Clips, and Safari on iPhone

You can make purchases using Apple Pay in apps, in App Clips, and on the web using Safari wherever you see the Apple Pay button. (Available in certain countries and regions; see Countries and regions that support Apple Pay.)



Pay in an app, in an App Clip, or on the web

1. During checkout, tap the Apple Pay button.
2. Review the payment information and set any of the following:
   - Credit card
   - Billing and shipping addresses
   - Contact information

     Tip: If you subscribe to iCloud+, you can use Hide My Email to keep your real email address private.
   - Frequency and amount of recurring payments (if available)
3. Complete the payment:
   - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Double-click the side button, then glance at iPhone to authenticate with Face ID, or enter your passcode.
   - *On an iPhone with Touch ID:* Authenticate with Touch ID or enter your passcode.

Change your default shipping and contact information

1. Go to Settings > Wallet & Apple Pay.
2. Set any of the following:
   - Shipping address
   - Email
   - Phone

See also

Set up Apple Pay in Wallet on iPhone

Use Apple Pay for contactless payments on iPhone

Track your orders in Wallet on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use Apple Pay for contactless payments

Next
Track your orders

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

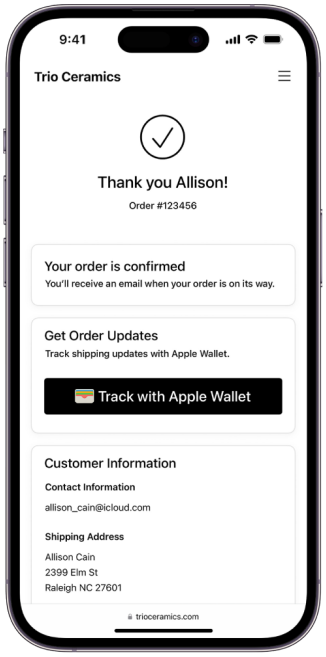
iOS 17

Search this guide

Table of Contents

Track your orders in Wallet on iPhone

When you make a purchase from a participating app or website, you can track your order in the Wallet app and see the order details, shipping status, order management options, and more. You can also contact the merchant directly from the Wallet app.



Track orders

When you make a purchase from a participating merchant, you can track the order in the Wallet app on your iPhone.

- *Automatically:* Track orders for select Apple Pay purchases made on devices with iOS 16, iPadOS 16, macOS 13, or later.
- *Manually:* Tap Track with Apple Wallet on the order confirmation screen in apps with iOS 17 or iPadOS 17, or on the web with iOS 17, iPadOS 17, or macOS Sonoma.

Note: To view orders placed on your other devices, you must be signed in with the same Apple ID.

View and share order tracking details

1. Open the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap, then tap an order to see the details.
3. To share the order information, tap, then choose a sharing option, such as Messages.

Tip: For quick access, add the Order Tracking widget to your Home Screen.

See also

Use Apple Pay in apps, App Clips, and Safari on iPhone

Change your Apple Pay settings

Helpful? Yes No

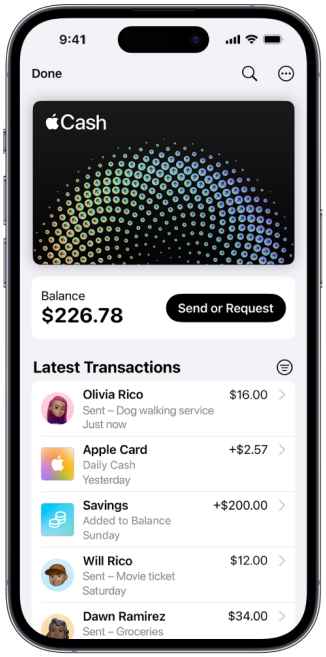
Previous
Use Apple Pay in apps, App Clips, and Safari

Next
Use Apple Cash

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Set up and use Apple Cash in Wallet on iPhone (U.S. only)

With Apple Cash, you can send, request, and receive money in the Wallet app or Messages app, get cash back from Apple Card transactions, make purchases using Apple Pay, and transfer your Apple Cash balance to your bank account.



Set up Apple Cash

1. Open the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Apple Cash card, then tap Set Up Now.

You can also do the following:

- Go to Settings > Wallet & Apple Pay, then turn on Apple Cash.
- In Messages, send or accept a payment.

Make purchases with Apple Cash

You can use Apple Cash at locations that accept Visa and support Apple Pay:

- Use Apple Pay for contactless payments
- Use Apple Pay in apps, App Clips, and Safari

Some stores may require a PIN to complete transactions with Apple Cash.

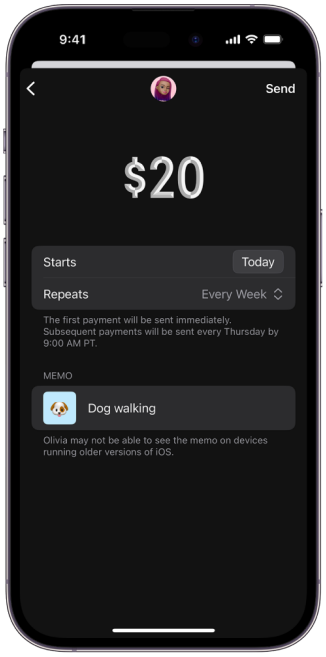
Apple Cash doesn't require a PIN because every payment is authenticated by Face ID, Touch ID, or a secure passcode. However, some terminals may still require you to enter a four-digit code to complete the transaction. To see your PIN, tap, then tap Card Details.

Send payments with Apple Cash

You can send a one-time payment or a recurring payment that repeats every week, every other week, or every month.

1. Open the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Apple Cash card, then tap Send or Request.
3. Enter a recipient or choose a recent contact.
4. Enter the amount, then choose one of the following:

   - *A one-time payment:* Tap Send.
   - *Repeating payments:* Tap Send Recurring Payment, set the start date, and choose the frequency of the payments. You can also add a memo and choose an icon (optional).



5. Add a comment if you want, then tap .

6. Review the information, then authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.

You can also send or request payments in Messages.

Request payments with Apple Cash

1. Open the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Apple Cash card, then tap Send or Request.
3. Enter a recipient or choose a recent contact.
4. Enter the amount, then tap Request.
5. Add a comment if you want, then tap .

View your balance and transactions

1. In Wallet, tap the Apple Cash card to view your balance and latest transactions. Scroll down to see your transactions grouped by year.
2. Do any of the following:

   - *Search your transactions:* Tap , enter what you're looking for, then tap Search on the keyboard. You can also choose a suggested search, such as a category, merchant, location, or contact, then enter additional text to refine your search.
   - *Get a statement:* Tap , tap Card Details, scroll down, then tap Request Transaction Statement.

Review pending requests

1. In Wallet, tap the Apple Cash card.
2. Tap a pending request, then do any of the following:

   - *Send the payment:* Tap Send Money.
   - *Hide or decline the request:* Tap , then choose Dismiss Request or Decline Request. If you dismiss the request, you'll receive a reminder one day before the request expires.

Manage your Apple Cash

In Wallet, tap the Apple Cash card, tap , then tap any of the following:

- *Add Money:* Add funds from a debit card in Wallet. You can also set up Auto Reload.
- *Transfer to Bank:* See the Apple Support article Transfer money in Apple Cash to your bank account or debit card.
- *Card Number:* View the last four digits of the Device Account Number—the number transmitted to the merchant.
- *Card Details:* Update your bank account information, turn Express Transit on or off, manage Apple Cash Family, and more.
- *Notifications:* Turn notifications on or off.

Apple Cash and sending and receiving payments through Apple Pay are services provided by Green Dot Bank, member FDIC.

See also

Set up and use Apple Card on iPhone (U.S. only)

Use Apple Cash and Apple Card with Family Sharing on iPhone (U.S. only)

Helpful? Yes No

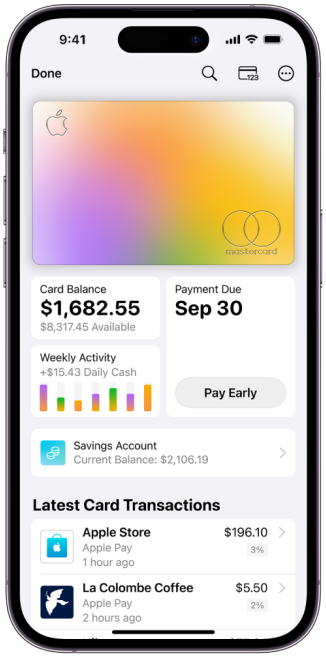
Previous
Track your orders

Next
Use Apple Card

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Set up and use Apple Card on iPhone (U.S. only)

Apple Card is a credit card created by Apple and designed to help you lead a healthier financial life. You can sign up for Apple Card in the Wallet app on iPhone in minutes and start using it with Apple Pay right away in stores, in apps, or online worldwide. Apple Card gives you easy-to-understand, real-time views of your latest transactions and balance right in Wallet, and Apple Card support is available anytime by simply sending a text from Messages.



Get Apple Card

1. Open the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Apply for Apple Card.
3. Enter your information, then agree to the terms and conditions to submit your application.
4. Review the details of your Apple Card offer, including the credit limit and APR, then accept or decline the offer.
5. If you accept the terms, you can do any of the following:
   - Set Apple Card as your default card for Apple Pay transactions.
   - Get a titanium Apple Card to use where Apple Pay isn't accepted.

Use Apple Card

You can use Apple Card wherever you use Apple Pay:

- Make contactless payments using Apple Pay

- Pay in apps or on the web using Apple Pay

You can also use Apple Card at locations where Apple Pay isn't accepted:

- *In apps, on the web, or over the phone:* Tap 123 to see the card number, expiration date, and security code. Use this information to make your purchase.
- *In stores, restaurants, and other locations:* Use the titanium card.

View transactions and statements

1. In Wallet, tap Apple Card.
2. Do any of the following:

   - *Review your transactions:* View your latest transactions, or scroll down to see all your transactions grouped by month and year.
   - *Search your transactions:* Tap 🔍, enter what you're looking for, then tap Search on the keyboard. You can also choose a suggested search, such as a category, merchant, or location, then enter additional text to refine your search.
   - *See weekly, monthly, or yearly activity:* Tap Activity (below Card Balance) to see your spending grouped in categories such as Shopping, Food & Drinks, and Services. Tap Week, Month, or Year to see a different view. Swipe right to see previous periods.
   - *Get monthly statements:* Tap Card Balance to see the balance, new spending, and payments and credits. Scroll down to see your monthly statements. Tap a statement to see the summary for that month, download a PDF statement, or export transactions to a CSV, OFX, QFX, or QBO file.

Make payments

1. In Wallet, tap Apple Card.
2. Tap the payment button, then choose one of the following:

   - *Pay immediately:* To set the amount, drag the checkmark (or tap Other Amount), then tap Pay.
   - *Schedule a one-time payment:* To set the amount, drag the checkmark (or tap Other Amount), tap Schedule, tap One-Time Payment, choose the date, then tap Pay.
   - *Set up automatic payments:* Tap Schedule, tap Recurring Payments, then follow the onscreen instructions.

     You can choose to automatically pay the monthly balance, the minimum balance due, or a custom amount. You can also send the payment on the due date or another date.

View refunds, adjustments, and disputed transactions

1. In Wallet, tap Apple Card.
2. To see only disputed transactions or refunds and adjustments, tap ⊜ (next to Latest Card Transactions), then choose a filter.

See the Apple Support article Dispute a charge to your Apple Card.

Use the Apple Card widget on your Home Screen

With the Apple Card widget, you can see your Apple Card balance, available credit, and spending activity at a glance.

1. Add the Apple Card widget to your Home Screen.
2. To see your spending activity for a different time period, touch and hold the widget, tap Edit Widget, then choose Weekly, Monthly, or Yearly.
3. To go to Apple Card in Wallet, tap the widget.

Manage Apple Card, view details, and more

Tap ⋯, then tap any of the following:

- *Daily Cash:* View the Daily Cash you've received.
- *Card Details:* Share your Apple Card with family members, schedule payments, view your credit limit, and more.
- *Notifications:* Turn notifications on or off.

See also

Set up and use Apple Cash in Wallet on iPhone (U.S. only)

Use Apple Cash and Apple Card with Family Sharing on iPhone (U.S. only)

Helpful? Yes No

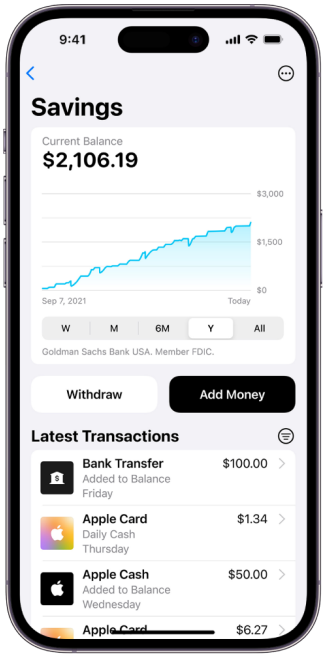
Previous
Use Apple Cash

Next
Use Savings

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use Savings to grow your Daily Cash rewards in Wallet on iPhone (U.S. only)

If you have Apple Card in the Wallet app, you can choose to automatically deposit your Daily Cash into Savings, a savings account provided by Goldman Sachs Bank USA, Member FDIC.[1] You can also deposit additional funds into Savings through a linked external bank account or from your Apple Cash.[2] You can transfer money from Savings to a linked external bank account or to Apple Cash.



Note: Apple Card, Savings, and Apple Cash are available only in the U.S. If you have Apple Card Family, only account owners and co-owners can set up Savings; each account holder can see only their own account balance and details in Wallet.

Set up Savings

1. Open the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apple Card, tap, then tap Daily Cash
3. Tap Set Up next to Savings, then follow the onscreen instructions.

View and manage your Savings

With the Savings dashboard, you can see the current balance, interest rate, account balance over time, and more.

1. Open the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apple Card, tap Savings Account, then do any of the following:

- *View the current balance:* See the current balance at the top left.

- *View the balance on previous dates:* Touch and hold the graph, then drag your finger. To change the date range, tap W (week), M (month), 6M (six months), Y (year), or All.
- *Transfer funds:* Tap Add Money or Withdraw, enter the amount, tap Next, review the information, then authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.
- *Filter your transactions:* Tap ⊜, then tap Daily Cash, Deposits, Interest Paid, or Withdrawals.
- *See your account number, routing number, and more:* Tap ⋯, then tap Account Details.
- *See monthly statements and tax documents:* Tap ⋯, then tap Documents.

---

1. Daily Cash may not be divided between Apple Cash and a Savings account. Apple Card owners and co-owners may individually change where their Daily Cash is deposited at any time. To open Savings, you must add Apple Card to Wallet on an iPhone or iPad with the latest version of iOS or iPadOS. Apple is not a financial institution. Apple Card and Savings are issued and provided by Goldman Sachs Bank USA, Salt Lake City Branch. Member FDIC.

2. Apple Cash is provided by Green Dot Bank. Member FDIC.

See also

Set up and use Apple Card on iPhone (U.S. only)

Apple Support article: Set up and use Savings in Apple Wallet

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use Apple Card

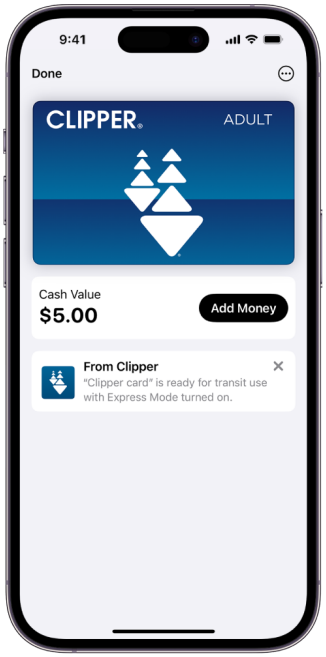
Next
Pay for transit

Support › iPhone User Guide › Use Savings to grow your Daily Cash rewards in Wallet on iPhone (U.S. only)

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Pay for transit using iPhone

You can use your iPhone to pay for your fare with a payment card in Apple Pay or a transit card stored in the Wallet app. (Available for participating transit systems in certain countries and regions; see Where you can ride transit using Apple Pay.)



Add a transit card to Apple Wallet

1. Open the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap, then tap Transit Card.
3. Choose a transit card in the list, or search by location or card name.

Manage your transit card

1. In Wallet, tap your transit card, then tap.
2. Do any of the following:

- *Add Money:* Tap a preset or enter an amount, then tap Add.
- *Card Number:* View your account number.
- *Card Details:* View your account balance; turn on Service Mode to get help at stations and kiosks; turn Express Transit on or off; or remove the card from Wallet.
- *Notifications:* Turn notifications on or off.

Pay for your ride with Express Transit

With Express Transit (available in certain countries or regions), you don't need to authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode, and you don't need to wake or unlock your device or open an app.

1. If you have multiple cards for a transit network, set the default Express Transit card in Settings > Wallet & Apple Pay > Express Transit Card.

   By default, Express Transit is turned on when you add an eligible card.

2. As you approach a fare gate or board the bus, make sure your device is turned on (it doesn't need to be connected to the internet).

3. Hold the top of your iPhone near the middle of the ticket gate scanner until you feel a vibration.

You might be able to use your Express Transit card even when your iPhone needs to be charged. See Use Express Mode with power reserve.

Pay for transit at a fare gate

If you're not using Express Transit, do the following:

1. Make sure your device is turned on (it doesn't need to be connected to the internet).

2. As you approach a fare gate or board a bus, do one of the following:

   - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Double-click the side button, then glance at iPhone to authenticate with Face ID, or enter your passcode.

   - *On an iPhone with Touch ID:* With the Lock Screen showing on your device, double-click the Home button, then rest your finger on Touch ID.

3. Hold the top of your iPhone near the middle of the ticket gate scanner until you feel a vibration.

See also

Set up Apple Pay in Wallet on iPhone

Use passes in Wallet on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use Savings

Next
Use car, home, and hotel keys

Support > iPhone User Guide > Pay for transit using iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Access your car, home, and hotel room with keys in Wallet on iPhone

In the Wallet app, you can store keys to your car, home, and hotel room. iPhone automatically presents the right key when you arrive at your door, allowing you to enter with just a tap using Near Field Communication (NFC).

Unlock and start your car

With a compatible car and a digital car key in Apple Wallet, you can unlock, lock, and start your car using iPhone or Apple Watch.

See the Apple Support article Add your car key to Apple Wallet on your iPhone or Apple Watch.

Unlock your home

With a compatible smart lock and a home key in Wallet, you can unlock your door with just a tap of your iPhone or Apple Watch.

See Unlock your door with a home key on iPhone.

Unlock your hotel room

At participating hotels, you can add your room key to Apple Wallet from the hotel provider's app, check in without going to the lobby, and use your iPhone or Apple Watch to unlock your room.

See the Apple Support article Add a hotel room key to Apple Wallet on your iPhone.

See also

Use passes in Wallet on iPhone

Use Express Mode with cards, passes, and keys in Wallet on iPhone

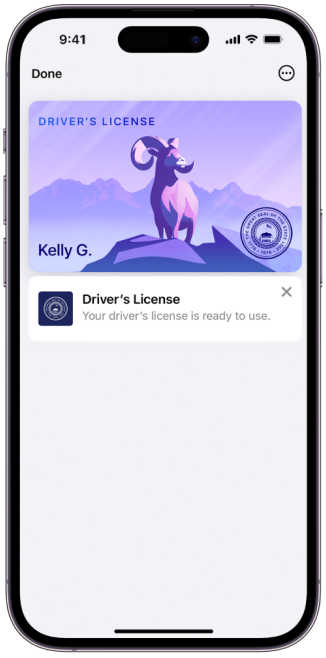
Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Add your identity cards to Wallet on iPhone

In the Wallet app, you can securely store identity cards such as your driver's license or state ID, student ID, and employee badge (must be issued by a participating state, school, or office). You can easily present your identity card with your iPhone or Apple Watch.

Add your driver's license or state ID (U.S. only)

You can easily and securely add your driver's license or state ID to the Wallet app, then use your iPhone or Apple Watch to present your license or ID at select Transportation Security Administration (TSA) security checkpoints and at participating businesses. You can also share in apps that require identity verification. (Supported on iPhone 8 and later with iOS 15.4 or later, and on Apple Watch Series 4 and later with watchOS 8.4 or later. The driver's license or state ID must be issued by a participating state. See the IDs in Wallet website.)



1. In Wallet, tap .
2. Tap Driver's License or State ID, then choose your state. (If your state isn't listed, it might not participate yet.)
3. Choose whether you want to add your license or ID to your iPhone only, or to both your iPhone and paired Apple Watch.
4. Follow the onscreen instructions to scan the front and back of your license or ID, then follow the prompts to confirm your identity.

See the Apple Support articles Present your driver's license or state ID from Apple Wallet, and IDs in Apple Wallet: privacy and security overview.

To learn how to add your license or ID to your Apple Watch, see Use your driver's license or state ID in Wallet on iPhone and Apple Watch (U.S. only) in the Apple Watch User Guide.

Add your student ID card

At participating campuses, you can add your contactless student ID card to the Wallet app, and then use your iPhone or Apple Watch to access locations where your student ID card is accepted, such as your dorm, the library, and campus events. You can even pay for laundry, snacks, and meals around campus.

1. Download the app that supports student ID cards for your school.
2. Open the app, sign in, then add your student ID card to Wallet.

See the Apple Support article Use student ID cards in Wallet on your iPhone or Apple Watch.

Add your employee badge

If you work at a participating corporate office, you can add your employee badge to the Wallet app, and then use your iPhone or Apple Watch to present your badge to readers at your workplace.

See an administrator for setup instructions, or see the Apple Support article Add an employee badge to Apple Wallet.

See also

Keep cards and passes in Wallet on iPhone

Use Express Mode with cards, passes, and keys in Wallet on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use car, home, and hotel keys

Next
Use passes

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use passes in Wallet on iPhone

Use the Wallet app to keep all your passes—such as loyalty and rewards cards, coupons, boarding passes, movie and event tickets, and more—in one convenient place for easy access. Passes can include useful information, such as the points on a loyalty card, the balance on your coffee card, a coupon's expiration date, or boarding information for a flight.

Add a pass to Apple Wallet

When you do something like purchase a ticket, you often have the option to add it to Apple Wallet.

1. Open the app, email, message, notification, or other communication that contains your pass.
2. Tap Add to Apple Wallet.

   Note: If you don't see Add to Apple Wallet, contact the merchant or company that issued it to make sure they support passes in the Wallet app.
3. Follow the onscreen instructions or tap Add in the upper-right corner.

You can also get supported passes by tapping Add to Apple Wallet from any of the following:

- Web browser such as Safari
- AirDrop sharing
- Wallet notification after you use Apple Pay at a supported merchant
- QR code or barcode

  To scan the code, open the Camera app, then position iPhone so that the code appears on the screen.

Use a pass

1. Access the pass in any of the following ways:

   - On the Lock Screen, tap the pass notification. If prompted, authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.
   - If Automatic Selection is turned on for the pass, double-click the side button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or double-click the Home button (on other iPhone models). If prompted, authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.
   - Open the Wallet app, then tap the pass.

2. To use the pass, do one of the following:

   - *Contactless pass:* Hold the top of your iPhone near the pass reader until Done or a checkmark appears on the screen.
   - *Pass with a barcode or QR code:* Scan the code using the reader.

View the information for a pass and change its settings

1. In Wallet, tap the pass, tap ⋯, then tap Pass Details.
2. Choose any of the following (not all options are available on all passes):

   - *Automatic Updates:* Allow the pass to receive updates from the issuer.
   - *Suggest on Lock Screen:* Show the pass based on time or location.

     To allow location access, go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Location Services > Wallet, then tap While Using the App.
   - *Automatic Selection:* Select the pass where it's requested.
   - *Remove Pass:* Delete the pass from all your devices where you're signed in with your Apple ID.
3. Scroll down to view other information such as the associated app, usage details, and terms and conditions.

Share a pass or ticket

You can share certain passes in the Wallet app with other iPhone or Apple Watch users (not available for all passes).

1. In Wallet, tap the pass, tap ⋯, then tap Pass Details.
2. Tap ⬆, then choose a sharing option such as AirDrop, Messages, or Mail.

Change the settings for all your passes

- *Keep your passes up to date on your other devices:* Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud, then turn on Wallet.

  Note: This setting applies only to passes in Wallet, not to cards you use with Apple Pay.

- *Set notification options:* Go to Settings > Notifications > Wallet. See Change notification settings on iPhone.

- *Allow access to Wallet when iPhone is locked:* Go to Settings > Face ID & Passcode or Touch ID & Passcode, then turn on Wallet (below Allow Access When Locked).

See also

Apple Support article: Use Express Mode with transit cards, passes, and keys in Apple Wallet

Access your car, home, and hotel room with keys in Wallet on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Add identity cards

Next
Use COVID-19 vaccination cards

Support > iPhone User Guide > Use passes in Wallet on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use COVID-19 vaccination cards in Wallet on iPhone

If you add a verifiable COVID-19 vaccination record (available in certain countries and regions) in the Health app, you can quickly present the vaccination card in the Wallet app.

Add a vaccination card to Apple Wallet

Do any of the following:

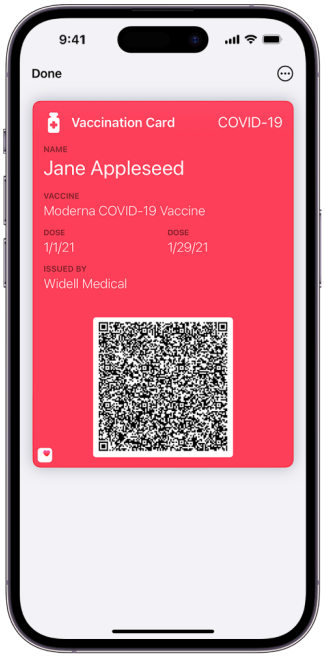
- Download a verifiable COVID-19 vaccination record from a participating healthcare provider or authority, then tap Add to Wallet & Health.
- If you already have a verifiable COVID-19 vaccination record from a supported healthcare provider or authority in the Health app, tap the record, then tap Add to Wallet.

Note: If you have an Apple Watch paired to your iPhone, the vaccination card is also added to and accessible from your Apple Watch (watchOS 8 and later). See Use vaccination cards in Wallet on Apple Watch in the Apple Watch User Guide.

Present a vaccination card

1. Double-click the side button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or double-click the Home button (on other iPhone models).
2. In the Wallet stack, tap the vaccination card. If prompted, authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.

   Note: Your vaccination card may contain sensitive information such as your birthdate. To review the information stored on your card, tap.



3. Present the QR code to the reader. You may be asked to verify your identity by presenting a photo ID such as your driver's license.

Manage or remove a vaccination card

Tap the vaccination card, tap ⋯, then do any of the following:

- *See the immunization details:* Tap Open to see the information in the Health app.
- *Remove the card:* Tap Remove Pass.

  Note: Removing a vaccination card from Wallet doesn't remove the corresponding vaccination record from the Health app. However, if you have an Apple Watch paired to your iPhone, the vaccination card is removed from your Apple Watch.

See also

Keep cards and passes in Wallet on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use passes

Next
Add Apple Account Card

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Add your Apple Account Card to Wallet on iPhone

In the Wallet app, you can store your Apple Account Card as a quick, convenient way to pay at an Apple Store or apple.com. Use your Apple Account balance to buy products, accessories, games, apps, subscriptions like iCloud+ and Apple Music, and more. Adding to your balance is simple—just redeem an Apple Gift Card or add money directly.

Add your Apple Account Card to Apple Wallet

1. Open the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap, then tap Add Apple Account.

Redeem an Apple gift card or code

When you receive an Apple gift card or code, you can add the funds to your Apple Account balance.

1. Open the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your Apple Account Card, tap, then tap Redeem.
3. Tap Use Camera, then position iPhone so that the gift card appears in the frame.

   If you have trouble redeeming the card, tap Enter Code Manually, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Add money to your account balance

1. Open the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your Apple Account Card, then tap Add Money.
3. Choose the amount or set up auto reload, then follow the onscreen instructions to complete the payment.

Use your Apple Account Card at an Apple Store

At checkout, you can pay with your Apple Account Card using Apple Pay.

1. Open the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your Apple Account Card, then double-click the side button.
3. Authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.
4. Hold the top of your iPhone near the card reader until you see Done or a checkmark on the screen.

Manage your Apple Account Card

1. Open the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your Apple Account Card, then tap ⋯.

See also

Set up and use Apple Card on iPhone (U.S. only)

Sign in to your iPhone with Apple ID

Keep cards and passes in Wallet on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use COVID-19 vaccination cards

Next
Use Express Mode

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

iOS 17

Search this guide

Table of Contents

Use Express Mode with cards, passes, and keys in Wallet on iPhone

With Express Mode, you can use some of your cards, keys, and passes in the Wallet app without waking or unlocking your device, or authenticating with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode. You might even be able to use your card, pass, or key when your device needs to be charged.

Select Express Mode for compatible cards, passes, and keys

1. Open the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Choose a card, pass, or key you want to use with Express Mode.
3. Tap, then tap Card Details.
4. Tap Express Transit Settings or Express Mode.
5. Select your preferred transit card, debit or credit card, or other compatible pass or key.

Use Express Mode

1. Hold the top of your iPhone near the contactless reader.
2. When the transaction is successful, a checkmark and Done appear on your device. If you're riding transit, the terminal gate opens and might beep.

Use Express Mode with power reserve

You may be able to use your Express Mode cards, passes, and keys, even when your iPhone needs to be charged. Power reserve works for up to 5 hours with some cards, passes, and keys that have Express Mode turned on.

To check the cards, passes, and keys available for use with power reserve, press the side button or the Home button when your iPhone needs to be charged. However, doing this often may significantly reduce the power reserve. If you turn off your iPhone, this feature isn't available.

Express Mode also works with your cards, passes, and keys in the Wallet app on Apple Watch.

See also

Pay for transit using iPhone

Access your car, home, and hotel room with keys in Wallet on iPhone

Use passes in Wallet on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Add Apple Account Card

Next
Organize your Wallet

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Organize your cards, keys, and passes in Wallet on iPhone

In the Wallet app, you can easily organize the cards, keys, and passes for your convenience. Set the default payment card, reorder the cards, archive expired passes, and remove the cards you don't need anymore.

(Apple Card and Apple Cash are available only in the U.S.)

Set the default card for payments

The first debit or credit card you add to Wallet becomes the default card. To choose a different card, touch and hold the card, then drag it to the front of the stack.

Rearrange your cards, keys, and passes

1. In Wallet, touch and hold a card you want to move.
2. Drag the card to a new position in the stack.

Hide or archive expired passes

Go to Settings > Wallet & Apple Pay, then turn on Hide Expired Passes.

Unhide or restore expired passes

To restore an expired pass to the Wallet stack, do the following:

1. In Wallet, scroll down to the bottom of the stack, then tap View Expired Passes.
2. Choose the pass you want to restore, then tap Unhide.

To unhide all your expired passes, go to Settings > Wallet & Apple Pay, then turn off Hide Expired Passes.

Remove a card or pass

1. In Wallet, tap the card or pass you want to remove, then tap ⋯ or ⓘ.
2. Tap Remove Card or Remove Pass.

See also

Keep cards and passes in Wallet on iPhone

Set up Apple Pay in Wallet on iPhone

Use passes in Wallet on iPhone

Use Express Mode with cards, passes, and keys in Wallet on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use Express Mode

Next
Check the weather

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Check the weather on iPhone

Use the Weather app to check the weather for your current location. You can also view the upcoming hourly and 10-day forecast, see severe weather information, and more.

Note: Weather uses Location Services to get the forecast for your current location. To make sure Location Services is turned on, go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Location Services > Weather. Turn on Precise Location to increase the accuracy of the forecast in your current location.

Check the local forecast and conditions

When you open the Weather app on your iPhone, the details for your current location are shown. If you don't see them, tap, then tap My Location.

Swipe up to view weather details such as:

- *Hourly forecast:* Swipe the hourly display left or right.

  Tip: Tap the hourly forecast to see the hourly temperature forecast, chance of precipitation, high and low temperatures, and more. Tap to change the displayed weather condition. Swipe right to see the same information for the days ahead.

- *10-day forecast:* View weather conditions, chance of precipitation, and high and low temperatures for the coming days.

- *Severe weather alerts:* View updates for weather events such as winter storms and flash floods (not available in all countries or regions). Tap the alert to read the full government-issued alert.

- *Maps:* View a map that displays the temperature, precipitation, air quality, or wind conditions in the area. Tap the map to view it in full screen or to change the map view between temperature, precipitation, air quality, and wind. See View weather maps on iPhone.

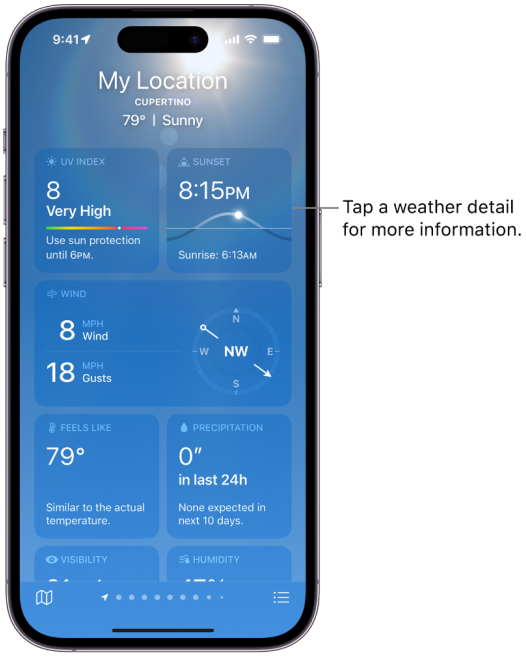
- *Air quality:* View air quality information; tap to view details about health information and pollutants (not available in all countries or regions).

  Note: The air quality scale appears above the hourly forecast when air quality reaches a particular level for that location. For some locations, the air quality scale always appears above the hourly forecast.

- *News:* Read a news article when there's a story relevant to the weather in that location (not available in all countries or regions).

- *Additional weather details:* View additional weather information such as the UV index, wind, visibility, moon phases, and more. Tap a weather detail for more features and information specific to that detail.

  Tip: The Averages weather detail shows how today's temperature or precipitation compares to the historical average; tap it for additional information.



To learn about the data sources for the Weather app, see the Apple Support article Feature availability and data sources in the Weather app.

Customize the weather units

You can change the unit of measurement for displaying weather data, such as Fahrenheit or Celsius for temperature, or miles per hour, kilometers per hour, knots, or Beaufort for wind.

1. Open the Weather app on your iPhone.
2. Tap ☰.
3. Tap ⋯, tap Units, then do any of the following:

   - *Change temperature units:* Tap Fahrenheit, Celsius, or "Use system setting."
   - *Change wind, precipitation, pressure, or distance units:* Tap the arrows next to the current measurement unit, then choose an option.

     Note: Visibility distance refers to how far away you can see objects like buildings and hills.

Send a report about the weather

You can report the weather in your location if it doesn't match what's shown in the Weather app.

1. Open the Weather app on your iPhone.
2. Tap ☰, tap ⋯, then tap Report an Issue.

3. Tap the options that best describe the weather conditions in your location, then tap Submit.

The information you share with Apple isn't associated with your Apple ID.

See also

Check the weather in other locations on iPhone

Use Weather widgets on iPhone

Learn the weather icons on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Organize your Wallet

Next
Check the weather in other locations

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Check the weather in other locations on iPhone

Use the Weather app to check the weather in other locations. You can also create a saved weather list to quickly check the forecast in places that are important to you.

Check the weather in another location

1. Open the Weather app on your iPhone.
2. Tap in the bottom-right corner of the screen.
3. Tap the search field at the top of the screen, then enter the name of the city, neighborhood, or location.
4. Tap the location in the search results to display the forecast.
5. Tap Cancel to close the forecast, then tap Cancel to clear the search results and return to the weather list.

Note: Neighborhood search results aren't available in all locations.

Add a location to your weather list

You can add locations to the weather list to quickly check the weather in places important to you.

1. Open the Weather app on your iPhone.
2. Tap in the bottom-right corner of the screen.
3. Tap the search field at the top of the screen, then enter the name of a city, neighborhood, or location that you want to add to your list.

4. Tap the location in the search results, then tap Add.

To check the weather in locations you added to your weather list, swipe the iPhone screen left or right when viewing a location, or tap ☰, then tap a location.

Delete and rearrange locations in your weather list

1. Open the Weather app on your iPhone.
2. Tap ☰ to display your weather list.
3. Do either of the following:

   - *Delete a location:* Swipe left on the location, then tap 🗑. Or, tap ⋯, then tap Edit List.
   - *Rearrange the order of locations on your list:* Touch and hold the location, then move it up or down. Or, tap ⋯, then tap Edit List.

Your list of locations stays up to date across your devices when you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

See also

Check the weather on iPhone

View weather maps on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Check the weather

Next
View weather maps

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Table of Contents

View weather maps on iPhone

You can use the Weather app to view full-screen precipitation, temperature, air quality, and wind maps in your location or other areas.

View a full-screen weather map

1. Open the Weather app on your iPhone.
2. Select a location, then do either of the following:
   - Tap at the bottom of the screen.
   - Scroll down, then tap the weather map.

Change the map display

1. While viewing a full-screen map, do any of the following to adjust the display:
   - *Change the map display to temperature, precipitation, air quality, or wind:* Tap .

     While viewing the precipitation map, tap to change the view between 12-Hour Forecast and Next-Hour Forecast (not available in all countries or regions).
   - *Move the map:* Touch the screen and drag your finger.
   - *Zoom in and out:* Pinch the screen.
   - *View a location from your weather list:* Tap .

- *Return to your current location:* Tap .
- *Add a location to your weather list, view its current conditions, or view it in Maps:* Touch and hold the location.

2. Tap Done to close the map.

See also

Check the weather on iPhone

Check the weather in other locations on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Check the weather in other locations

Next
Manage weather notifications

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Manage weather notifications on iPhone

You can receive notifications from the Weather app when precipitation and certain severe weather events are forecasted in your current location. You can also receive notifications for locations in your weather list (not available in all countries or regions).

Turn on weather notifications

1. Go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Location Services > Weather, then tap Always.
2. Turn on Precise Location to receive the most accurate notifications for your current location.
3. Open the Weather app on your iPhone, then tap to display your weather list.
4. Tap, then tap Notifications.

   If prompted, allow notifications from the Weather app.
5. Below Current Location, turn on notifications for Severe Weather and Next-Hour Precipitation (green is on).
6. Tap Done.

Turn on weather notifications for locations in your weather list

1. Open the Weather app on your iPhone.
2. Tap to display your weather list.
3. Tap, then tap Notifications.

   If prompted, allow notifications from the Weather app.
4. Below Your Locations, tap a location, then turn on notifications for Severe Weather and Next-Hour Precipitation (green is on).
5. Tap Done.

Note: Weather notifications aren't available in all countries or regions.

See also

Check the weather on iPhone

Check the weather in other locations on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Use Weather widgets on iPhone

Use a Weather widget to check the forecast at a glance on your iPhone Home Screen. You can choose the size of the Weather widget and the amount of information it displays. See Add a widget to your Home Screen.

Tip: You can add more than one Weather widget to your Home Screen—and choose a different size for each—so you can quickly see weather conditions and forecasts in different locations.

Change the location shown in the Weather widget

You can change the location that a Weather widget displays on your iPhone Home Screen.

1. Touch and hold the Weather widget on your Home Screen.
2. Tap Edit widget.
3. Tap My Location, then tap the new location you want to display.

   Note: Location options are generated from your weather list.
4. Tap the screen outside the widget to return to your iPhone Home Screen.

Weather widgets are also available for the iPhone Lock Screen. See Create a custom iPhone Lock Screen.

See also

Check the weather on iPhone

Add, edit, and remove widgets on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Manage weather notifications

Next
Learn the weather icons

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Learn the weather icons on iPhone

The icons in the Weather app indicate different weather conditions, like fog or haze. Here's a list of some of the weather icons and what they mean.

Icon	Description
	Sunrise
	Sunset
	Clear / Mostly clear
	Partly cloudy
	Haze
	Fog
	Windy / Breezy
	Cloudy
	Thunderstorm
	Rain
	Heavy rain
	Drizzle / Freezing drizzle
	Snow
	Heavy snow / Blizzard
	Freezing rain / Sleet / Wintry mix
	Clear / Mostly clear (night)
	Partly cloudy (night)
	Drizzle (night)

See also

Check the weather on iPhone

Check the weather in other locations on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

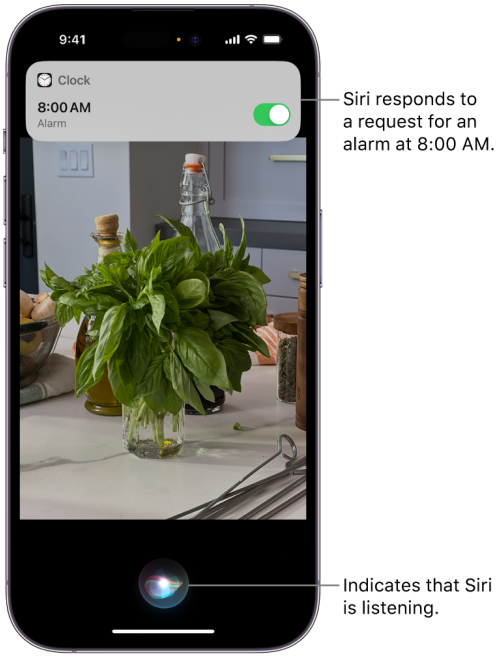
Previous
Use Weather widgets

Next
Use Siri

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Use Siri on iPhone

Get everyday tasks done with just your voice. Use Siri to translate a phrase, set an alarm, find a location, report on the weather, and more.



Set up Siri

If you didn't set up Siri when you first set up your iPhone, do any of the following:

- *If you want to activate Siri with your voice:* Go to Settings > Siri & Search, tap "Listen for," then choose "Hey Siri" or "Siri" (if you have that option).

  Note: The option to say just "Siri" is available on supported iPhone models in some languages and regions.

- *If you want to activate Siri with a button:* Go to Settings > Siri & Search, then turn on Press Side Button for Siri (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Press Home for Siri (on an iPhone with a Home button).

To change additional Siri settings, see Change Siri settings on iPhone.

Activate Siri with your voice

When you activate Siri with your voice, Siri responds out loud.

Say "Siri" or "Hey Siri," then ask a question or make a request.

For example, say something like "Hey Siri, what's the weather for today?" or "Siri, set an alarm for 8 a.m."

Tip: To prevent iPhone from responding to "Siri" or "Hey Siri," place your iPhone face down, or go to Settings > Siri & Search, tap "Listen for," then choose Off.

You can also activate Siri with your voice while you're wearing supported AirPods. See Set up Siri in the AirPods User Guide.

Activate Siri with a button

When you activate Siri with a button, Siri responds silently when iPhone is in silent mode. When silent mode is off, Siri responds out loud. To change this behavior, see Change how Siri responds.

1. Do one of the following:
   - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Press and hold the side button.
   - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Press and hold the Home button.
   - *With EarPods:* Press and hold the center or call button.
   - *With CarPlay:* Press and hold the voice command button on the steering wheel, or touch and hold the Home button on the CarPlay Home Screen. (See Use Siri to Control CarPlay.)
   - *With Siri Eyes Free:* Press and hold the voice command button on your steering wheel.
2. Ask a question or make a request.

   For example, say something like "What's 18 percent of 225?" or "Set the timer for 3 minutes."

You can also activate Siri with a touch on supported AirPods. See Set up Siri in the AirPods User Guide.

Make back-to-back requests

After you activate Siri, you can make follow-up requests without reactivating it. (Available on supported iPhone models with iOS 17 in some countries or regions.)

1. Activate Siri, then make a request.
2. Immediately after you make the request, make another one.

To override a request, interrupt Siri while it is speaking.

For example, say "Hey Siri, what's the weather like in San Francisco? What about Cupertino?"

Make a correction if Siri misunderstands you

- *While making back-to-back requests:* Repeat your request in a different way.
- *If you aren't making back-to-back requests:* Tap , then repeat your request in a different way.
- *Spell out part of your request:* Tap , then repeat your request by spelling out any words that Siri didn't understand. For example, say "Call," then spell the person's name.
- *Change a message before sending it:* Say "Change it."
- *Edit your request with text:* If you see your request onscreen, you can edit it. Tap the request, then use the onscreen keyboard.

Tip: To correct your request without reactivating Siri, make the corrected request immediately after the original one. (Available on supported iPhone models in some countries and regions.)

Type instead of speaking to Siri

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Siri, then turn on Type to Siri.
2. To type a request, activate Siri, then use the keyboard and text field to ask a question or make a request.

More about Siri

Siri is designed to protect your information and to let you choose what you share. To learn more, see the Ask Siri, Dictation & Privacy website and the Improve Siri and Dictation & Privacy website.

For some requests, iPhone must be connected to the internet. Cellular charges may apply.

If Siri doesn't work as expected on your iPhone, see this Apple Support article.

See also

Find out what Siri can do on iPhone

Change Siri settings on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Learn the weather icons

Next
Find out what Siri can do

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Find out what Siri can do on iPhone

Use Siri on iPhone to get information and perform tasks. Siri and its response appear on top of what you're currently doing, allowing you to refer to information onscreen.

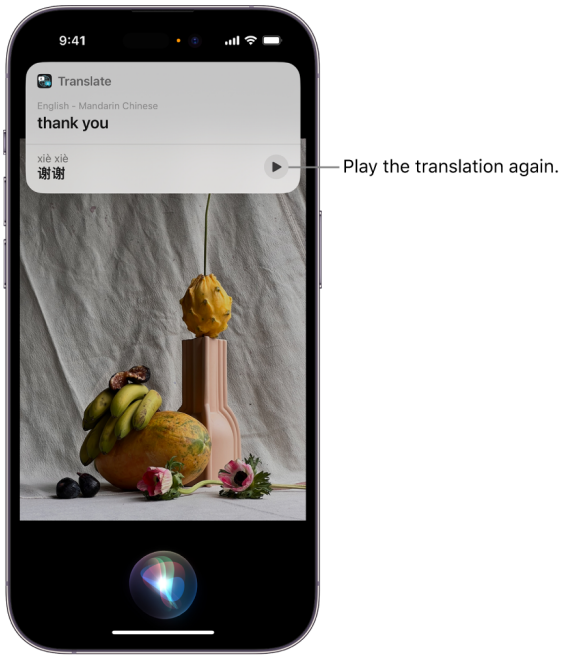
Siri is interactive. When Siri displays a web link, you can tap it to see more information in your default web browser. When the onscreen response from Siri includes buttons or controls, you can tap them to take further action. And you can tap Siri again to ask another question or do an additional task for you.

Below are some examples of what you can use Siri to do. Additional examples appear throughout this guide. You can also discover Siri capabilities on your iPhone and in apps by asking "What can I do here?"

Use Siri to answer questions

Use Siri to quickly check facts, do calculations, or translate a phrase into another language. Get Siri's attention, then say something like:

- "What causes a rainbow?"
- "What does a cat sound like?"
- "What's the derivative of cosine x?"
- "How do you say Thank You in Mandarin?"



Use Siri with apps

You can use Siri to control apps with your voice. With Siri activated, say something like:

- "Set up a meeting with Gordon at 9" to create an event in Calendar.
- "Add artichokes to my groceries list" to add an item to Reminders.

- “Send a message to PoChun saying love you heart emoji” to send a text using Messages.
- “What’s my update?” to get an update about the weather in your area, the news, your reminders and calendar events, and more.

For more examples, see any of the following:

- Announce calls, messages, and more with Siri on iPhone
- Use Siri to play music on iPhone and Listen to music with Apple Music Voice on iPhone
- Control your home using Siri on iPhone
- Get travel directions on iPhone
- Add Siri Shortcuts on iPhone

Use Siri to share information with contacts

You can share onscreen items like photos, webpages, content from Apple Music or Apple Podcasts, Maps locations, and more with people in your contacts.

For example, when looking at a photo in your Photo library, activate Siri and say something like “Send this to mom” to create a new message with the photo.

Personalize your experience with Siri

The more you use Siri, the better it knows what you need. You can also tell Siri about yourself and change how and when Siri responds. See any of the following:

- Siri Suggestions on iPhone
- Tell Siri about yourself on iPhone
- Change Siri settings on iPhone

You can also use accessibility features with Siri.

Siri is designed to protect your information, and you can choose what you share. To learn more, see the Ask Siri, Dictation & Privacy website.

See also

Tell Siri about yourself on iPhone

You can provide information to Siri—including things like your home and work addresses, and your relationships—for a more personalized experience so you can say things like “Give me driving directions home” and “FaceTime mom.”

Tell Siri who you are

1. Open Contacts, then fill out your contact information.
2. Go to Settings > Siri & Search > My Information, then tap your name.

Tell Siri how to say your name

1. Open Contacts, then tap your contact card.
2. Tap Edit, scroll down and tap “add field,” select a pronunciation name field, then type how to say your name.

You can also add a pronunciation for any other contact card in Contacts. See Edit contacts on iPhone.

Tell Siri about a relationship

Say something like “Hey Siri, Eliza Block is my wife” or “Hey Siri, Ashley Kamin is my mom.”

Keep what Siri knows about you up to date on your Apple devices

On each device, go to Settings, then sign in with the same Apple ID.

If you use iCloud, your Siri settings stay up to date across your Apple devices using end-to-end encryption.

If you don’t want Siri personalization to stay up to date across iPhone and your other devices, you can disable Siri in iCloud settings. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud, then turn off Siri.

Note: If you have Location Services turned on, the location of your device at the time you make a request is also sent to Apple to help Siri improve the accuracy of its response to your requests. To deliver relevant responses, Apple may use the IP address of your internet connection to approximate your location by matching it to a geographic region. See Control the location information you share on iPhone.

See also

Change Siri settings on iPhone

Announce calls, messages, and more with Siri on iPhone

Siri can announce calls and notifications from apps like Messages on supported headphones and when using CarPlay. You can answer or reply using your voice without needing to say "Hey Siri."

Announce Calls and Announce Notifications also work with supported third-party apps.

Have Siri announce calls

With Announce Calls, Siri identifies incoming phone calls and FaceTime calls, which you can accept or decline using your voice.

1. Go to Settings > Siri & Search > Announce Calls, then choose an option.
2. When a call comes in, Siri identifies the caller, and asks if you want to answer the call. Say "yes" to accept the call or "no" to decline it.

Have Siri announce notifications

Siri can automatically announce incoming notifications from apps like Messages and Reminders. Siri automatically enables app notifications for apps that use time-sensitive notifications, but you can change the settings at any time. To learn more about time-sensitive notifications, see Set up a Focus on iPhone.

1. Go to Settings > Siri & Search > Announce Notifications, then turn on Announce Notifications.
2. Tap an app you want Siri to announce notifications from, then turn on Announce Notifications.

   For some apps, you can also choose whether to announce all notifications or only time-sensitive notifications.

For apps where you can send a reply, like Messages, Siri repeats what you said, then asks for confirmation before sending your reply. To send replies without waiting for confirmation, turn on Reply Without Confirmation.

See also

Change Siri settings on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Add Siri Shortcuts on iPhone

Apps can offer shortcuts for things you do frequently. You can use Siri to initiate these shortcuts with just your voice.

Some apps have Siri Shortcuts set up automatically. You can also create your own.

Add a suggested shortcut

Tap Add to Siri when you see a suggestion for a shortcut, then follow the onscreen instructions to record a phrase of your choice that performs the shortcut.

You can also use the Shortcuts app to create a new shortcut that uses Siri, or to manage, re-record, and delete existing Siri Shortcuts. See the Shortcuts User Guide.

Use a shortcut

Activate Siri, then speak your phrase for the shortcut. See Use Siri on iPhone.

Based on your routines and how you use your apps, Siri also suggests shortcuts on the Home Screen, the Lock Screen, and when you start a search. To turn off shortcut suggestions for an app, see Change Siri settings on iPhone.

See also

Change Siri settings on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Siri Suggestions on iPhone

Siri makes suggestions for what you might want to do next, such as call into a meeting or confirm an appointment, based on your routines and how you use your apps.

For example, Siri might help when you do any of the following:

- *Glance at the Lock Screen or start a search:* As Siri learns your routines, you get suggestions for just what you need, at just the right time.
- *Create email and events:* When you start adding people to an email or calendar event, Siri suggests the people you included in previous emails or events.
- *Receive calls:* If you get an incoming call from an unknown number, Siri lets you know who might be calling—based on phone numbers included in your emails.
- *Type:* As you enter text, Siri can suggest names of movies, places—anything you viewed on iPhone recently. If you tell a friend you're on your way, Siri can even suggest your estimated arrival time.
- *Confirm an appointment or book a flight on a travel website:* Siri asks if you want to add it to your calendar.

Turn Siri Suggestions on or off for an app

Siri Suggestions are on by default for your apps. You can turn them off or change the settings at any time.

1. Go to Settings > Siri & Search, scroll down, then select an app.
2. Turn settings on or off.

Change where Siri Suggestions appear

Go to Settings > Siri & Search, then turn on or off any of the following:

- Allow Notifications
- Show in App Library & Spotlight
- Show When Sharing
- Show When Listening

Your personal information—which is encrypted and remains private—stays up to date across all your devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID. As Siri learns about you on one device, your experience with Siri is improved on your other devices. If you don't want Siri personalization to update across your devices, you can disable Siri in iCloud settings. See Keep what Siri knows about you up to date on your Apple devices.

Siri is designed to protect your information, and you can choose what you share. To learn more, see the Siri Suggestions, Search & Privacy website.

See also

Change Siri settings on iPhone

Find out what Siri can do on iPhone

Use Siri in your car

With CarPlay or Siri Eyes Free, you can keep focused on the road by using Siri to make calls, send text messages, play music that's on your iPhone, get directions, and use other iPhone features.

CarPlay (available in select cars) takes the things you want to do with your iPhone while driving and puts them on your car's built-in display. CarPlay uses Siri, so you can control CarPlay with just your voice. See Use Siri to Control CarPlay.

With Siri Eyes Free (available in select cars), use your voice to control features of your iPhone without looking at or touching iPhone. To connect iPhone to your car, use Bluetooth® (refer to the user guide that came with your car if you need to). To activate Siri, press and hold the voice command button on your steering wheel until you hear the Siri tone, then make a request.

WARNING: For important information about avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see Important safety information for iPhone.

See also

Intro to CarPlay and iPhone

Get travel directions on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Change Siri settings on iPhone

You can change the voice for Siri, prevent access to Siri when your device is locked, and more.

For information about how to set up and use Siri, see Use Siri on iPhone. To change settings for Siri Suggestions, see Siri Suggestions on iPhone.

Change when Siri responds

You can customize if Siri responds to your voice or a button press. You can also choose what language Siri responds to.

Go to Settings > Siri & Search, then do any of the following:

- *Prevent Siri from responding to the voice request "Hey Siri":* Turn off Listen for "Hey Siri."
- *Prevent Siri from responding to the side or Home button:* Turn off Press Side Button for Siri (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Press Home for Siri (on an iPhone with a Home button).
- *Prevent access to Siri when iPhone is locked:* Turn off Allow Siri When Locked.
- *Change the language Siri responds to:* Tap Language, then select a new language.

You can also activate Siri by typing. See Type instead of speaking to Siri.

Change the voice for Siri

You can change the Siri voice (not available for all languages).

1. Go to Settings > Siri & Search.
2. Tap Siri Voice, then choose a different variety or voice.

Change how Siri responds

Siri can respond out loud or silently (with text onscreen). You can also see your request onscreen.

Go to Settings > Siri & Search, then do any of the following:

- *Change when Siri provides voice responses:* Tap Siri Responses, then choose an option below Spoken Responses.
- *Always see the response from Siri onscreen:* Tap Siri Responses, then turn on Always Show Siri Captions.
- *See your request onscreen:* Tap Siri Responses, then turn on Always Show Speech.

Change Siri settings for Phone, FaceTime, and Messages

You can perform tasks for Phone, FaceTime, and Messages with just your voice. With Siri, you can hang up calls and skip the confirmation step when sending messages. You can enable these features in Settings.

Go to Settings > Siri & Search, then do any of the following:

- *Hang up Phone and FaceTime calls:* Tap Call Hang Up, then turn on Call Hang Up. For more information, see End phone and FaceTime calls.
- *Send messages without confirmation:* Tap Automatically Send Messages, then turn on Automatically Send Messages. See Send and reply to messages on iPhone.

On supported headphones, Siri can also announce calls, messages, and more.

Change which apps appear in search

You can change which apps appear when you search with Siri.

1. Go to Settings > Siri & Search, then scroll down and select an app.
2. Turn settings on or off.

Retrain Siri with your voice

Go to Settings > Siri & Search, turn off Listen for "Hey Siri," then turn on Listen for "Hey Siri" again.

To change Siri accessibility settings, see Change Siri accessibility settings on iPhone.

If Siri doesn't work as expected on your iPhone, see the Apple Support article If "Hey Siri" isn't working on your iPhone or iPad.

See also

Find out what Siri can do on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use Siri in your car

Next
Contact emergency services

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use SOS to contact emergency services on your iPhone

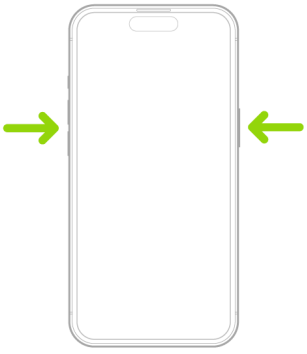
In case of emergency, use your iPhone to quickly and easily call for help and alert your emergency contacts (provided that cellular service is available).

Note: If you have iPhone 14 or later (any model), you may be able to contact emergency services via satellite if cell service isn't available. See Use Emergency SOS via satellite on your iPhone.

Quickly call emergency services (all countries or regions except India)

- Simultaneously press and hold the side button and either volume button until the sliders appear and the countdown on Emergency SOS ends, then release the buttons.

  Or, you can enable iPhone to start Emergency SOS when you quickly press the side button five times. Go to Settings > Emergency SOS, then turn on Call with 5 Presses.



After an emergency call ends, your iPhone alerts your emergency contacts with a text message, unless you choose to cancel. Your iPhone sends your current location (if available) and—for a period of time after you enter SOS mode—your emergency contacts receive updates when your location changes.

Quickly call emergency services (India)

- Quickly press the side button 3 times until the sliders appear and the countdown on Emergency SOS ends.
- If you've turned on Accessibility Shortcut, simultaneously press and hold the side button and either volume button until the sliders appear and the countdown on Emergency SOS ends, then release the buttons.

By default, iPhone plays a warning sound, starts a countdown, then calls the emergency services.

After an emergency call ends, your iPhone alerts your emergency contacts with a text message, unless you choose to cancel. Your iPhone sends your current location (if available) and—for a period of time after you enter SOS mode—your emergency contacts receive updates when your location changes.

Dial the emergency number when your iPhone is locked

1. On the Passcode screen, tap Emergency.
2. Dial the emergency number (for example, 911 in the U.S.), then tap .

Text Emergency Services (not available in all countries or regions)

1. Open the Messages app and type 911 or your local emergency services number in the To field.
2. Type your emergency.
3. Tap the send button.

Change your Emergency SOS settings

1. Go to Settings > Emergency SOS.
2. Do any of the following:

   - *Turn "Call with Hold and Release" on or off:* Hold and release the side and volume buttons to start a countdown to call emergency services.
   - *Turn "Call with 5 presses" on or off:* Rapidly press the side button five times to start a countdown to call emergency services.
   - *Manage your emergency contacts:* In Health, tap Set Up Emergency Contacts or Edit Emergency Contacts. See Set up and view your Medical ID.

Important information about emergency calls on iPhone

- Some cellular networks may not accept an emergency call from iPhone if iPhone isn't activated, if iPhone isn't compatible with or configured to operate on a particular cellular network, or (when applicable) if iPhone doesn't have a SIM card or the SIM card is PIN-locked.
- In certain countries or regions, your location information (if determinable) may be accessed by emergency service providers when you make an emergency call.
- Review your carrier's emergency calling information to understand the limits of emergency calling over Wi-Fi.
- With CDMA, when an emergency call ends, iPhone enters *emergency call mode* for a few minutes to allow a callback from emergency services. During this time, data transmission and text messages are blocked.
- After making an emergency call, certain call features that block or silence incoming calls may be disabled for a short period of time to allow a callback from emergency services. These include Do Not Disturb, Silence Unknown Callers, and Screen Time.
- On an iPhone with Dual SIM, if you don't turn on Wi-Fi Calling for a line, any incoming phone calls on that line (including calls from emergency services) go directly to voicemail (if available from your carrier) when the other line is in use; you won't receive missed call notifications.

  If you set up conditional call forwarding (if available from your carrier) from one line to another when a line is busy or not in service, the calls don't go to voicemail; contact your carrier for setup information.
- When using an iPhone with a USB-C connector and compatible accessory, data transfer over USB 3 and DisplayPort connections will be unavailable once an emergency session (call or text) has been initiated, and will remain unavailable for up to 5 minutes from the end of the session. This time varies by country or region. To continue using your accessory, disconnect and reconnect your device after this period. Charging is not affected and will continue to function.

Use Emergency SOS via satellite on your iPhone

On iPhone 14 or later (any model), you can use Emergency SOS via satellite to text emergency services when you're outside of cellular and Wi-Fi coverage.

Note: Emergency SOS via satellite isn't available in all countries or regions. For information about Emergency SOS via satellite availability see Emergency SOS via satellite availability .

Before you disconnect from cellular and Wi-Fi coverage

If you're going somewhere that might not have cellular and Wi-Fi coverage, create your Medical ID, add emergency contacts, and try the Emergency SOS demo before you go.

1. Go to Settings > Emergency SOS.
2. Scroll down and tap Try Demo.

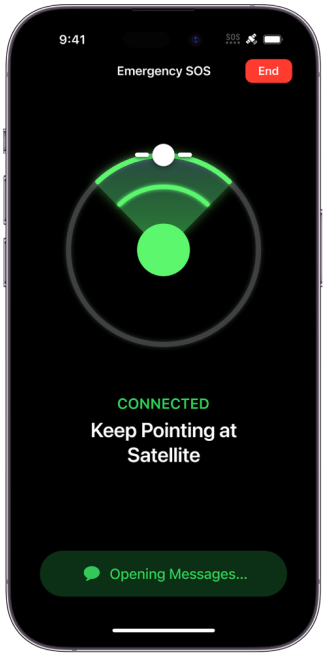
To create your Medical ID and add emergency contacts, see Set up and view your Medical ID.

Note: The Emergency SOS demo doesn't start a call to emergency services.

Connect to Emergency SOS via satellite on your iPhone

If you need emergency services and you don't have a cellular or Wi-Fi connection, you can use Emergency SOS via satellite.

1. Try calling 911 or emergency services. Even if your normal cellular carrier network isn't available, iPhone will attempt to route the 911 call through other networks, if available.
2. If the call doesn't go through, tap Emergency Text via Satellite to text emergency services. You can also go to the Messages app and text 911 or SOS, then tap Emergency Services.
3. Tap Report Emergency and follow the onscreen instructions.



Important: To help you connect to a satellite, make sure to hold your phone naturally in your hand—you don't need to raise your arm or hold your phone up, but make sure your phone has a clear line of sight to the sky. If you're under heavy foliage or surrounded by other obstructions, you might not be able to connect to a satellite.

After you're connected, your iPhone starts a text conversation by sharing critical information like your Medical ID and emergency contact information (if you set them up), your answers to the emergency questionnaire, your location (including elevation), and your iPhone's battery level. You can also choose to share the information you send to emergency services with your emergency contacts.

To learn how to proactively share your location in the Find My app when you're in a location without cellular or Wi-Fi coverage, see Send your location via satellite in Find My on iPhone.

For information about Emergency SOS via satellite and privacy, see Emergency SOS via satellite availability.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Contact emergency services

Next
Request Roadside Assistance via satellite

Support > iPhone User Guide > Use Emergency SOS via satellite on your iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

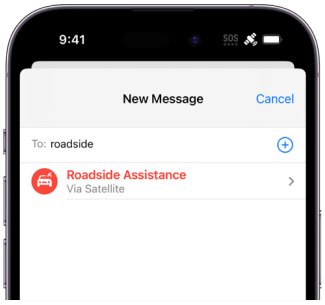
Request Roadside Assistance via satellite on your iPhone

On iPhone 14 or later (any model), you can request Roadside Assistance via satellite when you're outside of cellular and Wi-Fi coverage.

Note: Roadside Assistance via satellite requires iOS 17 or later and isn't available in all countries or regions.

Request Roadside Assistance via satellite on your iPhone

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Tap at the top of the screen, then type "roadside" in the address field.



3. Tap Roadside Assistance and follow the onscreen instructions.

Important: To help you connect to a satellite, make sure to hold your phone naturally in your hand—you don't need to raise your arm or hold your phone up, but make sure your phone has a clear line of sight to the sky. If you're under heavy foliage or surrounded by other obstructions, you might not be able to connect to a satellite.

Once connected, you'll be asked for important information, like the model of your car, and the issue you're having. You'll also be asked if you're already a AAA member, so have your AAA information available or saved on your iPhone. If you're not a AAA member, you can still get help.

After you answer the questions, you'll be guided to connect to a satellite and be able to message directly with a roadside assistance provider. They may ask follow up questions to make sure they're sending you the right kind of help. You can message with them with any questions about the estimated time until someone arrives and any fees associated with the service.

For more information, see the Apple Support article Request Roadside Assistance via satellite on your iPhone.

See also

Use Emergency SOS via satellite on your iPhone

Use Check In on iPhone to let your friends know you've arrived

Manage Crash Detection on iPhone 14 or later

Send your location via satellite in Find My on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use Emergency SOS via satellite

Next
Set up and view your Medical ID

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Set up and view your Medical ID

A Medical ID provides information about you that may be important in an emergency, like allergies, medical conditions, and your emergency contacts. Your iPhone and Apple Watch can display this information so that it's available for someone attending to you in an emergency and your emergency contacts can be notified if you use Emergency SOS via satellite.

Create your Medical ID

Set up a Medical ID in the Health app.

1. Open the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your picture at the top right, then tap Medical ID.
3. Tap Get Started or Edit, then enter your information.
4. Below Emergency Contacts, tap Add Emergency Contact, then add your contacts.

   After an emergency call ends, your iPhone alerts your emergency contacts with a text message, unless you choose to cancel. Your iPhone sends your current location (if available) and—for a period of time after you enter SOS mode—your emergency contacts receive updates when your location changes.
5. Tap Done.

Tip: To view your Medical ID from the Home Screen, touch and hold the Health app icon, then choose Medical ID.

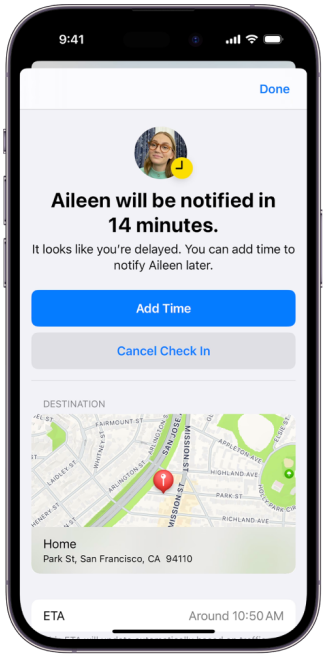
Allow emergency services and first responders to access your Medical ID

The information in your Medical ID can be shared automatically during an emergency call (U.S. and Canada only), and also appears on the Lock Screen of your iPhone and Apple Watch.

1. Open the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your picture at the top right, then tap Medical ID.
3. Tap Edit, scroll to the bottom, then turn on Show When Locked and Emergency Call.

Note: A first responder views your Medical ID from the Lock Screen by swiping up or pressing the Home button (depending on your iPhone model), tapping Emergency on the passcode screen, then tapping Medical ID.

Use Check In on iPhone to let your friends know you've arrived



Note: Check In requires iOS 17 or later for both the sender and recipient and isn't available in all countries or regions.

How Check In works

You can use Check In on iPhone to automatically notify a friend that your iPhone has arrived, and choose what details they can see if you don't successfully complete your Check In.

Similarly, if a friend sends you a Check In but their iPhone hasn't arrived as expected, you can view their location, battery percentage, cellular signal, and more.

Send a Check In

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Tap at the top of the screen and add a recipient, or select an existing conversation.
3. Tap , tap More, tap Check In, then tap Edit.
4. Choose one of the following:

    - *When I Arrive:* Specify your destination, how you're traveling (driving, transit, or walking), and add extra time if needed. Check In monitors your journey and notifies your friend if your iPhone isn't progressing for an extended period of time or if it doesn't reach your destination as expected.

When you arrive at your destination successfully, the Check In automatically completes and notifies your friend that your iPhone has arrived.

- *After a timer:* Specify a period of time—for example, if you're meeting someone new. If you don't end the Check In before the time you set, Check In notifies your friend.

5. Tap .

   If your iPhone doesn't arrive at your destination or you don't cancel the Check In, and you don't respond to the Check In prompts, the details of your iPhone's journey will be sent to your friend.

   To change the details you want to share with your friend if you don't complete your Check In as expected, see Choose what details you share.

   Note: If you start a Check In and then lose service or your iPhone powers off, your Check In recipient may get a delayed or early notification and have the option to view the iPhone details you shared with them.

Add time to your Check In

If you need extra time, you can add time to your Check In.

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Open the conversation with the friend you sent a Check In to.
3. On the Check In message, tap Details, tap Add Time, then select one of the options.

Cancel a Check In

If you've completed your journey, or you want to end your session for any reason, you can cancel your Check In to let your friend know.

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Open the conversation with the friend you sent a Check In to.
3. On the Check In message, tap Details, then tap Cancel Check In and confirm.

Choose what details you share

You can change the details you share with your friend during a Check In.

1. Go to Settings > Messages.
2. Scroll down and tap Check In Data.
3. Choose what details you want to share if you don't complete your Check In as expected:

   - *When I Arrive:* Share your current location, in addition to the network signal and battery details of your iPhone and Apple Watch.

   - *Full:* Share the data above (current location, network signal, and battery details), in addition to the route you've traveled and the last time you unlocked your iPhone or removed your Apple Watch.

Manage Crash Detection on iPhone 14 or later

What is Crash Detection?

If your iPhone 14 or later (any model) detects a severe car crash, it can help connect you to emergency services and notify your emergency contacts.

How Crash Detection works

When your iPhone detects a severe car crash, it will display an alert and will automatically initiate an emergency phone call after 20 seconds unless you cancel. If you are unresponsive, your iPhone will play an audio message for emergency services, which informs them that you've been in a severe crash and gives them your latitudinal and longitudinal coordinates with an approximate search radius.

When a crash is detected, Crash Detection won't override any existing emergency calls placed by other means.

If you're in a severe car crash and unresponsive in a location without a cellular or Wi-Fi connection, iPhone will attempt to contact emergency services using Emergency SOS via satellite, where available.

Turn Crash Detection on or off

Crash Detection is on by default. You can turn off alerts and automatic emergency calls from Apple after a severe car crash in Settings > Emergency SOS, then turn off Call After Severe Crash. If you have third-party apps registered to detect crashes on your device, they will still be notified.

If you have CarPlay or Apple Watch

If your iPhone has Crash Detection turned on and is connected to your vehicle through CarPlay, the Crash Detection features (dialing emergency services) will go through your iPhone.

If you're wearing your Apple Watch at the time of the event, dialing emergency services will be placed by iPhone but Crash Detection features will be routed through Apple Watch.

For more information, see Use Crash Detection on iPhone or Apple Watch to call for help in an accident.

Reset privacy and security settings in an emergency

You can use Safety Check on iPhone to quickly stop sharing your device access and personal information with others. Safety Check helps you quickly change your passcode and Apple ID password, stop sharing your location with Find My, restrict Messages and FaceTime to the device in your hand, and more.

1. Go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Safety Check.
2. Tap Emergency Reset, tap Start Emergency Reset, then follow the onscreen instructions.

You can also use Safety Check to periodically review and update the information you share with people, apps, and devices. To learn more about what Safety Check does, see How Safety Check on iPhone works to keep you safe in the Personal Safety User Guide.

Important: You might also be sharing information that Safety Check can't review or change—for example, accounts and passwords, social media sharing, and information shared from another device. To help you decide on additional steps for reducing the information you share, see Additional considerations when using Safety Check in the Personal Safety User Guide.

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Set up Family Sharing on iPhone

Family Sharing lets you and up to five other family members share access to Apple services, purchases, an iCloud storage plan, and more. You can even help locate each other's missing devices.

One adult family member—the *organizer*—invites other family members to participate. When family members join, Family Sharing is set up on everyone's devices automatically. The group then chooses which services and features they want to use and share.

Family Sharing is available on eligible devices. See the Apple Support article System requirements for iCloud.

Create a Family Sharing group

You only need to set up Family Sharing on one device. Then it's available on all your devices that are signed in with the same Apple ID.

1. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > Family Sharing, then follow the onscreen instructions to set up your Family Sharing group.
2. Add one or more family members. When you add an adult family member, you can designate them as a parent or guardian. Learn about types of Family Sharing members.

   You can also add family members later. See Add a member to a Family Sharing group on iPhone.
3. Tap a feature you want to set up for your Family Sharing group, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   To set up parental controls or Apple Cash for a child, tap their name, tap the feature, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   You can see what you're sharing with your family and adjust sharing settings at any time.

To learn how to set up or join a Family Sharing group on all your devices, see the Apple Support article Set up Family Sharing.

What you can do with Family Sharing

With a Family Sharing group, you can set up or share the following:

- *Passwords and passkeys*: You can share passwords and passkeys with people in your family to access important accounts. See Share passwords or passkeys with people you trust on iPhone.
- *An iCloud Drive folder*: Organize and share family documents, photos, and more. See Share files and folders in iCloud Drive on iPhone.
- *Apple and App Store subscriptions:* You can share Apple subscriptions, including iCloud+, and eligible App Store subscriptions. See Share Apple and App Store subscriptions with family members on iPhone.
- *Purchases:* You can share items purchased in the App Store, Apple Books, and Apple TV. All purchases are billed to the family organizer. See Share App Store, Apple TV, and Apple Books purchases with Family Sharing on iPhone.
- *Locations:* When you share your location with your Family Sharing group, all family members, including any new members added later, can use the Find My app to see your location and help locate a missing device. See Share locations with family members and locate their lost devices on iPhone.
- *Apple Card and Apple Cash:* You can share Apple Card with trusted members of your Family Sharing group or set up an Apple Cash Family account for a child. See Use Apple Cash and Apple Card with Family Sharing on iPhone (U.S. only).
- *Parental controls:* You can manage your children's purchases, how they use their Apple devices, and more. See Set up parental controls with Family Sharing on iPhone.
- *A device for your child:* You can set up a new iPhone or iPad for a child and customize parental controls. See Set up a device for a child with Family Sharing on iPhone.

Tip: You can use Family Checklist to see tips and suggestions for Family Sharing features. Go to Settings > Family, then tap Family Checklist.

See also

Use iCloud on iPhone

Apple Support article: What types of content can I share with my family?

Apple Support article: If you don't see your family's shared content

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Reset privacy and security settings in an emergency

Next
Add Family Sharing members

Support > iPhone User Guide > Set up Family Sharing on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Add a member to a Family Sharing group on iPhone

With Family Sharing, each family member joins the family group with their own Apple ID. That way you can share access to subscriptions and other features without sharing personal information like photos or documents.

The family organizer can easily invite family members who have an Apple ID or create an Apple ID for a child who doesn't have one yet.

Learn about types of Family Sharing members.

Add a family member with an Apple ID

The organizer of the Family Sharing group can add a family member who has their own Apple ID.

1. Go to Settings > Family, then tap in the upper-right corner.
2. Tap Invite Others, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   You can send the invitation using AirDrop, Messages, or Mail. If you're near the family member, you can also tap Invite in Person and ask the family member to enter their Apple ID and password on your device.

Create an Apple ID for a child

If a child is too young to create their own Apple ID, the organizer, a parent, or a guardian can add the child to the Family Sharing group and create an Apple ID for them.

1. Go to Settings > Family.
2. Do one of the following:

   - *If you're the organizer:* Tap , tap Create Child Account.

     Note: If your child already has an Apple ID, tap Invite Others. They can enter their Apple ID password on your device to accept the invitation.

   - *If you're a parent or guardian:* Tap .
3. Follow the onscreen instructions to finish creating the child account. You can set content restrictions, communication limits, and downtime; share your child's location with all members of the Family Sharing group, including any new members added later; and use Ask to Buy. You can change these settings at any time. For more information, see any of the following:

   - Set up Screen Time for a family member on iPhone
   - Share locations with family members and locate their lost devices on iPhone
   - Apple Support article: Approve what kids buy with Ask to Buy

For more information about child accounts and the age at which a child can create their own Apple ID, see the Apple Support article Create an Apple ID for your child.

If you want to join an existing Family Sharing group, ask the organizer to add you. You can only be a member of one Family Sharing group at a time. If you want to join a different group, leave your current group first. See Leave a Family Sharing group.

See also

macOS User Guide: Join a Family Sharing group in Family Sharing on Mac

Apple Support article: Make sure that each family member has a unique Apple ID

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Set up Family Sharing

Next
Remove Family Sharing members

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Leave or remove a member from a Family Sharing group on iPhone

In a Family Sharing group, the organizer can remove members or disband the group, and family members (other than teens with parental controls or children) can remove themselves.

Learn about types of Family Sharing members.

Remove a member from a family group

The organizer of a Family Sharing group can remove other members. When a family member is removed, they immediately lose access to shared subscriptions and content purchased by other members.

1. Go to Settings > Family.
2. Tap [*member's name*], then tap Remove [*member's name*] from Family.

You can't remove a child from your Family Sharing group. However, you can move them to another group or delete their Apple ID. See the Apple Support article Move a child to another group using Family Sharing.

If you turned on Screen Time for a teen, you need to turn off Screen Time settings before you can remove them from the group. See Set up Screen Time for a family member on iPhone.

Leave a Family Sharing group

When you leave a Family Sharing group, you stop sharing your purchases and subscriptions with family members and immediately lose access to any content they've shared.

Note: The organizer can't leave the Family Sharing group. If you want to change the organizer, you must disband the group, and have another adult create a new one.

1. Go to Settings > Family.
2. Tap [*your name*], then tap Stop Using Family Sharing.

Disband a Family Sharing group

When the family organizer turns off Family Sharing, all family members are removed from the group at the same time. When a Family Sharing group is disbanded, all members immediately lose access to the shared content and subscriptions.

Note: If a child is in the Family Sharing group, the organizer must move them to another group or delete their Apple ID before disbanding the group. See the Apple Support article Move a child to another group using Family Sharing.

1. Go to Settings > Family > [*your name*].
2. Tap Stop Using Family Sharing.

See also

Share Apple and App Store subscriptions with family members on iPhone

When you're in a Family Sharing group, you can share Apple subscriptions and eligible App Store subscriptions with other family members.

If your Family Sharing group has purchase sharing turned on, any subscriptions shared with the group are billed directly to the organizer's default payment method.

Note: Not all services are available in all countries or regions, and some selections are subject to content restrictions set in Screen Time.

Share Apple subscriptions

1. Go to Settings > Family.
2. Tap Subscriptions, then do one of the following:
   - Tap a subscription you want to share, then follow the onscreen instructions.
   - Tap Manage Subscriptions, then tap a subscription.

See any of the following to learn more.

- *Apple Arcade:* See Subscribe to Apple Arcade on iPhone. All members of your family can download and play Apple Arcade games from the App Store. Each player gets a personalized account—your progress is carried over between devices.
- *Apple Fitness+:* See All about Apple Fitness+ in the Apple Watch User Guide. All members of your family can access workouts in the Fitness app on their iPhone or iPad.
- *Apple Music:* See Subscribe to Apple Music on iPhone. With a family subscription, each family member gets their own music library and personal recommendations.
- *Apple News+:* See Subscribe to Apple News+ on iPhone. All members of your family can read Apple News+ publications for no additional charge.
- *Apple TV+ and Apple TV channels:* See Subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, and Apple TV channels on iPhone and Subscribe to Apple TV channels. Each family member can watch on their iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, Apple TV, and supported smart TVs and streaming devices, using their own Apple ID and password.
- *iCloud+:* See Subscribe to iCloud+ on iPhone. When you share iCloud+, all family members have access to iCloud+ features and storage. For storage, you only share the space—your photos and documents stay private and everyone keeps using their own accounts.

For information about combining your Apple subscriptions, see the Apple Support article Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One.

Share App Store subscriptions

You can choose which eligible App Store subscriptions you share with family members. For information about the App Store, see Get apps in the App Store on iPhone.

1. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > Subscriptions.

2. Do either of the following:

   - *Share all new subscriptions:* Turn on Share with Family. When you purchase a new subscription that's eligible for sharing, it's shared with your Family Sharing members by default.
   - *Change the settings of a specific subscription:* Tap a subscription, then turn Share with Family on or off.

     If you don't see Share with Family, the subscription isn't eligible for sharing.

See also

Apple Support article: What types of content can I share with my family?

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Remove Family Sharing members

Next
Share purchases

Support › iPhone User Guide › Share Apple and App Store subscriptions with family members on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Share App Store, Apple TV, and Apple Books purchases with Family Sharing on iPhone

With Family Sharing, the organizer can set up purchase sharing to share App Store, Apple Books, and Apple TV purchases.

The organizer adds a payment method that's shared with the family; when a family member makes a purchase, the organizer is billed. The purchased item is added to the initiating family member's account and eligible purchases are shared with the rest of the family.

The family organizer can also require that children in the family group request approval for purchases or free downloads. See Set up parental controls with Family Sharing on iPhone.

Turn on purchase sharing

When the family organizer turns on purchase sharing, they pay for family members' purchases and must have a valid payment method on file.

1. Go to Settings > Family.
2. Tap Purchase Sharing, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Access shared content

When purchase sharing is turned on, you can download apps and play content that your family members buy. See any of the following Apple Support articles:

- How to download apps and content that your family members purchased
- What types of content can I share with my family?
- If you can't find your family's shared content

Turn off purchase sharing for yourself

You can turn off purchase sharing for yourself. Family Sharing members won't see your purchases, but you can still see items other members have shared with you.

Note: Even though your items aren't shared, any purchases you make still use the shared family payment method.

1. Go to Settings > Family > Purchase Sharing.
2. Tap [*your name*], then turn off Share Purchases.

   If the organizer wants to turn off purchase sharing entirely, they can tap Stop Purchase Sharing.

If you don't want to share a specific item with your family members, see the Apple Support article Hide and unhide music, movies, TV shows, audiobooks, and books.

You can also share Apple and App Store subscriptions with family members.

See also

Manage App Store purchases, subscriptions, settings, and restrictions on iPhone

Apple Support article: If you can't remove a payment method from your Apple ID

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Share subscriptions

Next
Share locations with family and locate lost devices

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Share locations with family members and locate their lost devices on iPhone

With Family Sharing, you can share your location with members of your Family Sharing group and help them find lost devices. When the family organizer sets up location sharing in Family Sharing settings, the organizer's location is automatically shared with everyone in the family, including any new members added later. Then, family members can choose whether or not to share their location.

Share your location with family members

When you share locations with your family, they can see your location in Find My. You can also get notified when family members change their locations—for example, if a child leaves school during school hours.

1. Go to Settings > Family > Location Sharing.
2. Tap the name of a family member you want to share your location with.

   You can repeat this step for each family member you want to share your location with. Each family member receives a message that you're sharing your location and can choose to share their location with you.

   You can stop sharing your location with any family member at any time.

Note: Children and teens with Screen Time turned on may not be able to change their own location sharing settings.

To share your location, you must have Location Services turned on in Settings > Privacy & Security. See Control the location information you share on iPhone.

Locate a family member's device

After you share your location with members of your Family Sharing group, they can help locate a missing device added to the Find My app.

See Locate a device in Find My on iPhone.

Your devices are at the top of the list, and your family members' devices are below yours.

Ask a family member to share an AirTag with you

If you receive a notification in the Find My app that says AirTag Detected Near You or Unknown AirTag, you can ask the family member who owns it to share the AirTag with you.

1. Tap Ask Owner to Share AirTag.
2. Tap Ask Owner at the bottom of the screen.

You can also use Find Devices on iCloud.com to locate a family member's missing device. See Locate a device in Find Devices on iCloud.com in the iCloud User Guide.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Share purchases

Next
Set up Apple Cash Family and Apple Card Family

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use Apple Cash and Apple Card with Family Sharing on iPhone (U.S. only)

You can use Apple Cash and Apple Card with your Family Sharing group. The organizer of the Family Sharing group can set up Apple Cash for a child, and share Apple Card with trusted members of their Family Sharing group.

Learn about types of Family Sharing members.

Set up Apple Cash Family for a child

The family organizer can set up Apple Cash for a child.

1. Go to Settings > Family.
2. Tap the child for whom you want to set up Apple Cash.
3. Tap Apple Cash, then follow the onscreen instructions.

To see the card balance, monitor transactions, and limit who the child can send money to, go to Settings > Wallet. See Manage your Apple Cash.

For more information about system requirements and how to manage Apple Cash accounts, see the Apple Support articles Set up and use Apple Cash Family and View and limit your child or teen's Apple Cash activity.

Set up Apple Card Family

You can share your Apple Card with family members, manage payments, and control account settings and limits for children who are 13 years or older. You can also review and manage everyone's details.

1. Go to Settings > Family > Share My Apple Card.

   The option only appears if you have Apple Card.
2. Follow the onscreen instructions.

For more information about what owners, co-owners, and participants can do with Apple Card, see the Apple Support article Set up Apple Card Family and add a co-owner and participants.

See also

Turn on Ask to Buy for a child later

Set up parental controls with Family Sharing on iPhone

With Family Sharing, the organizer can set up parental controls for children in the Family Sharing group. You can use Screen Time to manage how your children use their Apple devices. You can also turn on Ask to Buy, so children must receive approval for purchases or free downloads.

Learn about types of Family Sharing members.

Customize parental controls during setup

When you add a child to your Family Sharing group or set up a device for a child, you can customize parental controls from the start. You can change those settings at any time.

Follow the onscreen instructions during setup to add any of the following:

- Age-related restrictions for content in apps, books, TV shows, and movies
- Downtime and limits for specific apps
- Restrictions for who your child can communicate with
- Approvals for purchases or free downloads

See the Apple Support article Use parental controls on your child's iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch.

Receive warnings about sensitive content

Screen Time can check whether you or other family members have received or sent any sexually explicit photos or videos. See Check for sensitive images.

You can also block sensitive content and set restrictions on purchases. See Block inappropriate content on a family member's device.

Set up Screen Time for a child later

Screen Time allows you to manage settings for downtime, app use, contacts, content ratings, and more. To use Screen Time, your child must be using an eligible device. See the Screen Time section in the Apple Support article System Requirements for iCloud.

1. Go to Settings > Family > [*child's name*] > Screen Time.
2. Tap the child for whom you want to set up Screen Time.
3. Tap Screen Time, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   For information about Screen Time settings, see Set up Screen Time for a family member on iPhone.

   To learn more about the different content & privacy restrictions, see the Apple Support article Use parental controls on your child's iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch.

If your child requests more screen time, you can approve or decline the request in Settings > Screen Time or in Messages.

Turn on Ask to Buy for a child later

When you set up Ask to Buy, a child's purchases must be approved by the family organizer or a parent or guardian in the family group.

1. Go to Settings > Family.
2. Tap the child for whom you want to set up Ask to Buy.
3. Tap Ask To Buy, then follow the onscreen instructions.

See the Apple Support article Approve what kids buy with Ask to Buy.

Note: Age restrictions for Ask to Buy vary by region. In the United States, the family organizer can turn on Ask to Buy for any family member under age 18; for children under age 13, it's on by default.

You can also set up an Apple Cash Family account for a child. See Use Apple Cash and Apple Card with Family Sharing on iPhone (U.S. only).

See also

Apple Support article: If you forgot your Screen Time passcode

Apple Support article: If Ask to Buy isn't working

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Set up Apple Cash Family and Apple Card Family

Next
Set up a child's device

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Set up a device for a child with Family Sharing on iPhone

With Family Sharing, either the organizer, a parent, or a guardian can use Quick Start on their iPhone to set up a new iPhone or iPad for a child and customize parental controls. You can also set up an iPhone or iPad for a child without using Quick Start.

Note: If the child already has an Apple ID, make sure they've been added to your Family Sharing group. If the child doesn't have an Apple ID and they're under 13 (this age varies by region), you can create one for them while adding them to the group.

Use Quick Start to set up an iPhone or iPad for a child

Note: Requires iOS 16 or later. Bluetooth must be turned on.

1. Sign in to your iPhone with your Apple ID.
2. On the new iPhone or iPad you want to set up for your child, press and hold the side button or top button until the Apple logo appears.
3. Bring your iPhone next to the new device.
4. When you see Set Up New [*device*] on your iPhone, tap Continue, follow the onscreen instructions, then do one of the following:
   - If you have a child in your family group, tap your child's name.
   - If you need to create a new Apple ID for a child who is under 13, tap Create New Child Account, then create an Apple ID for your child.
5. Follow the onscreen instructions to finish setting up your child's device.

Set up an iPhone or iPad for a child without using Quick Start

1. Turn on the new device.
2. When the Quick Start screen appears, tap Set Up Without Another Device, follow the onscreen instructions, then tap Set Up for a Child in My Family.
3. Continue to follow the onscreen instructions to complete the setup.

You can set content restrictions, communication limits, and downtime; set up Screen Distance; share locations with all members of the Family Sharing group, including any new members added later; and turn on Ask to Buy. You can change these settings at any time.

Note: Screen Distance is available on supported models.

See also

Family Sharing website

Set up Screen Time for a family member on iPhone

Share locations with family members and locate their lost devices on iPhone

Apple Support article: Approve what kids buy with Ask to Buy

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Set up parental controls

Next
Get started with Screen Time

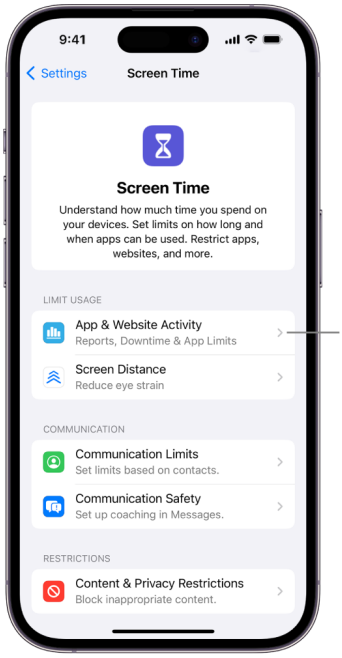
Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Get started with Screen Time on iPhone

You can use Screen Time to get information about how you and your family members spend time on your devices—including which apps and websites you use and how often you pick up your device.

Turn on Screen Time

Go to Settings > Screen Time, tap App & Website Activity, then tap Turn On App & Website Activity.



Use Screen Time on all your devices

You can share your Screen Time settings and reports across all your devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

1. Go to Settings > Screen Time.
2. Scroll down, then turn on Share Across Devices.

View your Screen Time summary

Any time after you turn on App & Website Activity, you can view a report of your device use, including how much time you spend using certain kinds of apps, how often you pick up your iPhone and other devices, what apps send you the most notifications, and more.

1. Go to Settings > Screen Time.
2. Tap See All App & Website Activity, then tap Devices to select which device you want to see usage for.
3. Tap Week to see a summary of your weekly use, or tap Day to see a summary of your daily use.

Use the Screen Time widget to check your device use at a glance

You can quickly check your device use by adding a Screen Time widget to your Home Screen. The widget displays information from your Screen Time summary—the larger the widget you add, the more information it displays.

If you set up Screen Time for family members through Family Sharing, you can tap the widget to see a list of the people in your family group. Tap the name of a family member whose report you want to view.

You can also view your summary by tapping a Screen Time Weekly Report notification when one appears on your screen. (If the notification disappears, you can find it in Notification Center.)

See also

Help protect your vision health with Screen Distance on iPhone

Set up Screen Time on iPhone

Set up Screen Time for a family member on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Set up a child's device

Next
Protect your vision health with Screen Distance

Support › iPhone User Guide › Get started with Screen Time on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Help protect your vision health with Screen Distance on iPhone

Viewing a device (or a book) too closely for an extended period of time can increase the risk of myopia in for younger users and eye strain for users of all ages. The Screen Distance feature in Screen Time uses the TrueDepth camera (on supported models)—the same TrueDepth camera that powers Face ID—to detect when you hold iPhone closer than 12 inches for an extended period, and encourages you to move it farther away.

Screen Distance can remind younger users to engage in healthy viewing habits that can lower their risk of myopia. It gives adult users the opportunity to reduce digital eyestrain.

Note: Screen Distance is turned on by default for children under 13 in a Family Sharing group.

---

1. Go to Settings > Screen Time.
2. Tap Screen Distance, then turn on Screen Distance.

When you hold the screen too close to your face for an extended period, Screen Distance covers the screen with an alert, preventing you from continuing. When you move iPhone more than 12 inches away, you can tap Continue to resume using it.

When you see a Screen Distance alert, move your iPhone to a distance greater than 12 inches, then tap Continue when it becomes active.

Set up Screen Time on iPhone

In Screen Time, you can schedule time away from the screen, set time limits for app use, and more.

Schedule time away from the screen

You can block apps and notifications for periods when you want time away from your devices. For example, you might want to schedule downtime during meals or at bedtime.

During downtime, only calls, messages, and apps you choose to allow are available. You can receive calls from contacts you've selected to allow communication with during downtime, and you can use apps you've chosen to allow at all times.

1. Go to Settings > Screen Time.
2. Tap App & Website Activity, then turn on App & Website Activity if you haven't already.
3. Tap Downtime, then do one of the following:

   - Tap Turn On Downtime Until Tomorrow.
   - Tap Scheduled to schedule downtime in advance.

   When you schedule downtime, a 5-minute reminder is sent before downtime begins. You can ignore the reminder, or turn on downtime until the beginning of the scheduled downtime.
4. Select Every Day or Customize Days, then set the start and end times.

You can turn off the Downtime schedule at any time by turning off Scheduled.

Set limits for app use

You can set a time limit for a category of apps (for example, Games or Social Networking) and for individual apps.

1. Go to Settings > Screen Time.
2. Tap App Limits, then tap Add Limit.
3. Select one or more app categories.

   To set limits for individual apps, tap the category name to see all the apps in that category, then select the apps you want to limit. If you select multiple categories or apps, the time limit you set applies to all of them.
4. Tap Next at the top right, then set the amount of time allowed.

   To set an amount of time for each day, tap Customize Days, then set limits for specific days.
5. When you finish setting limits, tap Add.

Choose apps and contacts to allow at all times

You can specify apps that can be used and contacts you can communicate with at all times—for example, in the event of an emergency—even during downtime.

1. Go to Settings > Screen Time > Always Allowed.
2. Below Allowed Apps, tap or next to an app to add or remove it from the Allowed Apps list.
3. To specify contacts you want to allow communication with, tap Contacts.

   The option you selected in Communication Limits appears here. You can change this setting to Specific Contacts, then choose one of the following:

   - *Choose From My Contacts:* To select specific people to allow communication with.
   - *Add New Contact:* To add a new contact and allow communication with that person.
4. Tap at the top left.

See also

Set up Screen Time for a family member on iPhone

Set communication and safety limits and block inappropriate content on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Protect your vision health with Screen Distance

Next
Set communication and safety limits and block inappropriate content

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

This manual was copied from Apple Support website and compiled by www.iphone15manual.com

Set communication and safety limits and block inappropriate content on iPhone

In Screen Time, you can set limits to protect your privacy and block inappropriate content.

Allow or block calls and messages from specific contacts

You can either allow or block communication—including incoming and outgoing phone calls, FaceTime calls, and messages—from certain contacts in iCloud, either at all times or during certain periods.

1. If you haven't already turned on Contacts in iCloud, go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud, then turn on Contacts.
2. Go to Settings > Screen Time.
3. Tap Communication Limits, tap During Screen Time, then select one of the following for communication at all times (other than during downtime):
   - *Contacts Only:* To allow communication only with your contacts.
   - *Contacts & Groups with at Least One Contact:* To allow one-on-one conversations only with people in your contacts and group conversations that include at least one person in your contacts.
   - *Everyone:* To allow conversations with anyone, including unknown numbers.
4. Tap Back at the top left, then tap During Downtime.

   The option you selected in step 3 (for During Screen Time) is already set here. You can change this setting to Specific Contacts, then choose one of the following:
   - *Specific Contacts:* To select contacts to allow communication with during downtime.
   - *Everyone:* To allow conversations with anyone, including unknown numbers.

If someone who's currently blocked by your Communication Limit settings tries to call you or send you a message, their communication won't go through.

If you try to call or send a message to someone who's currently blocked by your Communication Limit settings, their name or number appears in red in your list of recent calls or messages and your communication won't go through. You can communicate with them when the communication limit is changed. If the limit applies only to downtime, you receive a Time Limit message. You can resume communication with them when downtime is over.

To resume communication with contacts who are blocked by your Communication Limit settings, change the settings by following the steps above.

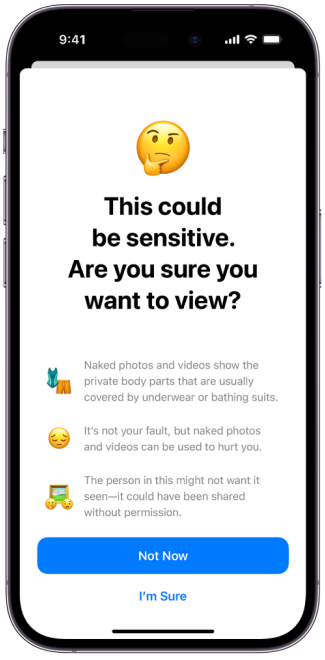
Check for sensitive images

You can have your iPhone (or your family member's iPhone) detect nudity in images before they're sent or received in Messages, AirDrop, Contact Posters, FaceTime messages, the Photos app, and third-party apps that adopt Apple's Communication Safety framework. If nudity is detected in an image, the image is

blurred and resources are provided to help your child handle the situation (not available in all countries or regions). This feature doesn't give Apple access to the photos. See the Apple Support article About communication safety in Messages.

1. Go to Settings > Screen Time.
2. Tap Communication Safety, then turn on Communication Safety.

   When Communication Safety is turned on, iPhone detects nude images before they're viewed or sent, and displays a warning.



Note: When you turn on Communication Safety, it turns on Sensitive Content Warning in Settings > Privacy & Security. You can also turn on Sensitive Content Warning separately in Settings > Privacy & Security. See Receive warnings about sensitive content on iPhone.

Block inappropriate content

Set Content & Privacy Restrictions to have Screen Time block inappropriate content and set restrictions for iTunes Store and App Store purchases.

1. Tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.

   You can also set a passcode that's required before changing settings.
2. Select options to set content allowances for iTunes Store and App Store purchases, app use, content ratings, and more.

Note: To restrict SharePlay in FaceTime calls on your device, go to Settings > Screen Time > Content & Privacy Restrictions > Allowed Apps, then turn off SharePlay. To allow SharePlay, turn it on.

See also

Set up Screen Time for a family member on iPhone

Set up Screen Time on iPhone

About communication safety in Messages

Helpful? Yes No

Set up Screen Time for a family member on iPhone

With Screen Time, you can keep track of how family members are using their devices so you can help them structure the time they spend on them. You can set up Screen Time for a family member on their device or, if you've set up Family Sharing, you can set up Screen Time for a family member through Family Sharing on your device. See Set up parental controls with Family Sharing on iPhone and the Apple Support article Family Sharing and Apple ID for your child.

As the organizer of a Family Sharing group, when you set up a child account, you can set up content restrictions, Communication Limits, and downtime. After the child's account is set up, you can change parental control settings at any time in Settings > Screen Time. See Set up a device for a child with Family Sharing on iPhone.

Note: For children under 13, Communication Safety and Screen Distance are turned on by default, and the Web Content Filter blocks adult content.

Set up Screen Time for a family member

1. On your device, go to Settings > Screen Time.
2. Scroll down and select a family member below Family.
3. To schedule downtime for your family member, follow the instructions in Schedule time away from the screen.

   If your child requests more screen time, you can approve or decline the request in Settings > Screen Time or in Messages.
4. To set limits for app use for your family member, follow the instructions in Set limits for app use.
5. To choose apps and contacts to allow your family member to use at all times, follow the instructions in Choose apps and contacts to allow at all times.

   Note: If your family member needs health or accessibility apps, make sure they're in the Allowed Apps list. If Messages isn't always allowed, your family member may not be able to send or receive messages (including to emergency numbers and contacts) during downtime or after the app limit has expired.
6. To help reduce your family member's risk of myopia or eye strain, turn on Screen Distance.

Allow or block communication on a family member's device

You can block incoming and outgoing communication on your family member's device—including phone calls, FaceTime calls, and messages—from specific contacts, either at all times or during certain periods.

1. If you haven't already turned on Contacts in iCloud on your family member's device, go to Settings > [*child's name*] > iCloud, then turn on Contacts.

   Note: You can only manage your family member's communication if they're using Contacts in iCloud.
2. On your family member's device, go to Settings > Screen Time.
3. Tap Communication Limits, then do any of the following:

- *Limit communication at any time:* Tap During Screen Time, then select Contacts Only, Contacts & Groups with at Least One Contact, or Everyone.

- *Limit communication during downtime:* Tap During Downtime. The option you selected for During Screen Time is already set here. You can change this setting to Specific Contacts.

  If you select Specific Contacts, tap either Choose From My Contacts, Choose From [*child's name*] Contacts, or Add New Contact to select people you want to allow your family member to communicate with during downtime.

- *Manage a child's contacts:* If you're using Family Sharing, you can view, edit, add, or delete your child's contacts. Tap Manage [*child's name*] Contacts.

  If your child already has contacts in iCloud, they receive a notification on their device asking them to approve the request to manage them. If they don't have contacts, they don't get a notification and you can immediately add contacts.

  When you manage your child's contacts, a new row appears beneath Manage [*child's name*] Contacts to show how many contacts your child has. Tap the row to view and edit the contacts.

- *Allow contact editing:* Tap Allow Contact Editing to turn off this option and prevent your child from editing their contacts.

  Turning off contact editing and limiting communication at any time to Contacts Only is a good way to control who your child can communicate with and when they can be contacted.

If someone who's currently blocked by the Communication Limit settings tries to call your family member (by phone or FaceTime), or send them a message, their communication won't go through.

If your family member tries to call or send a message to someone who's currently blocked by the Communication Limit settings, the recipient's name or number appears in red with an hourglass icon, and the communication won't go through. If the limit applies only to downtime, your family member receives a Time Limit message and can resume communication with the contact when downtime is over.

To allow your family member to communicate with contacts who are blocked by the Communication Limit settings, change the settings by following the steps above.

Check for sensitive images on a family member's iPhone

You can have your family member's iPhone detect nudity in images before they're sent or received in Messages, AirDrop, Contact Posters, FaceTime messages, the Photos app, and third-party apps that adopt Apple's Communication Safety framework. If nudity is detected in an image, the image is blurred and resources are provided to help your child handle the situation (not available in all countries or regions). This feature doesn't give Apple access to the photos. See the Apple Support article About communication safety in Messages.

Note: For children under 13 in a Family Sharing group, Communication Safety is turned on by default.

1. On your device, go to Settings > Screen Time.
2. Scroll down and tap the name of your family member.
3. Tap Communication Safety, then turn on Communication Safety.

   You may need to enter the Screen Time passcode.

Note: When you turn on Communication Safety, it turns on the Sensitive Content Warning in Settings > Privacy & Security. See Receive warnings about sensitive content on iPhone.

Block inappropriate content on a family member's device

You can help ensure that the content on your family member's device is age appropriate by limiting the explicitness ratings in Content & Privacy Restrictions.

1. On your family member's device, go to Settings > Screen Time.
2. Tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.
3. Choose specific content and privacy options.

   Note: To protect your family member's hearing, scroll down, tap Reduce Loud Sounds, then select Don't Allow. (This prevents changes to the maximum headphone volume.) See Check your headphone audio levels on iPhone.

   To restrict SharePlay in FaceTime calls for your family member, go to Settings > Screen Time > Content & Privacy Restrictions > Allowed Apps, then turn off SharePlay. To allow SharePlay, turn it on.
4. Tap < at the top left.

Add or change Screen Time settings for a family member later

To add or change Screen Time settings for a family member later, follow the steps described in the sections above.

Important: If you set up Screen Time for a family member on their device (not through Family Sharing), and you forget the Screen Time passcode, you can use your Apple ID to reset it. However, if you set up Screen Time for a family member on your device through Family Sharing and you forget your Screen Time passcode, you can reset it on your device using your device passcode, Touch ID, or Face ID.

See also

Set up parental controls with Family Sharing on iPhone

About communication safety in Messages

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Set communication and safety limits and block inappropriate content

Next
Charging cable

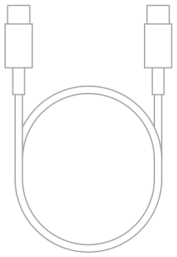
Support > iPhone User Guide > Set up Screen Time for a family member on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Charging cable for iPhone

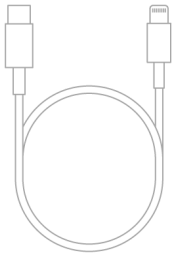
Your iPhone includes one of the following charging cables:

USB-C Cable



You can connect iPhone to a power outlet using a compatible power adapter (sold separately) and the included cable. You can also connect the included cable to your computer's USB-C port for charging, transferring files, and more.

USB-C to Lightning Cable



You can connect iPhone to a power outlet using a compatible power adapter (sold separately) and the included cable. You can also connect the included cable to your computer's USB-C port for charging, transferring files, and more.

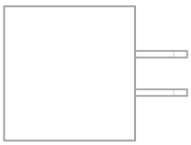
Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Power adapters for iPhone

You can connect iPhone to a power outlet using its charging cable (included) and a compatible power adapter (sold separately).

You can use the following Apple USB power adapters to charge iPhone. The size and style may vary depending on the country or region.

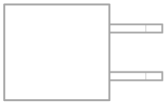
Apple 20W USB-C power adapter



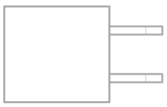
Note: For fast charging, iPhone 12, iPhone SE (3rd generation), and later models require a power adapter with a minimum power output of 20 watts, such as the Apple 20W USB power adapter. If you use a third-party power adapter, it should meet these recommended specifications:

- *Frequency:* 50 to 60 Hz, single phase
- *Line Voltage:* 100 to 240 VAC
- *Output Voltage/Current:* 9 VDC/2.2 A
- *Minimum Power Output:* 20 W
- *Output Port:* USB-C

Apple 18W USB-C power adapter



Apple 5W USB power adapter



You can also use Apple USB power adapters for iPad and Mac notebooks to charge iPhone, and you can use third-party power adapters that are compliant with applicable country regulations and international and regional safety standards.

See also

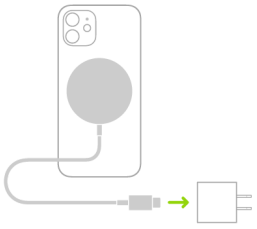
MagSafe chargers and battery packs for iPhone

On supported models, MagSafe chargers and battery packs snap to the back of iPhone or its MagSafe case or sleeve. The magnets ensure proper alignment for fast wireless charging, and you can hold and use iPhone while it's charging.

Without the magnetic alignment, MagSafe chargers can also charge other iPhone models and AirPods. (AirPods and MagSafe chargers, battery packs, cases, and sleeves are sold separately.)

Charge iPhone or AirPods with MagSafe Charger

1. Connect MagSafe Charger to power using the Apple 20W USB-C power adapter or another compatible power adapter (sold separately).



2. Do one of the following:

   - *iPhone:* (supported models) Place MagSafe Charger on the back of iPhone or its MagSafe case or sleeve. The charging symbol appears when iPhone starts charging.

     Note: If iPhone Leather Wallet is attached, remove it before placing MagSafe Charger on the back of iPhone.

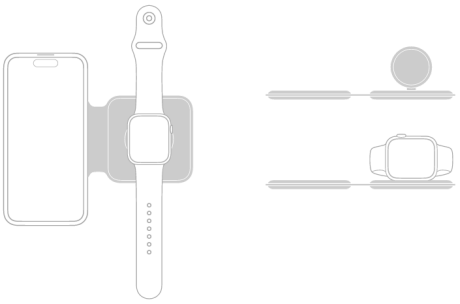
   - *Other iPhone models:* Place iPhone face up on the center of MagSafe Charger. When iPhone is aligned properly with the charger, appears in the status bar.

   - *AirPods (2nd generation) with Wireless Charging Case, AirPods (3rd generation), and AirPods Pro:* Place your AirPods in the charging case, close the lid, then place the case with the status light facing up on the center of MagSafe Charger. When the case is aligned properly with the charger, the status light turns on for several seconds, then turns off while continuing to charge.

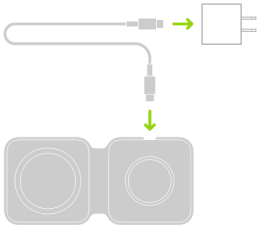
See the Apple Support article How to use your MagSafe Charger.

Charge iPhone or AirPods and Apple Watch with MagSafe Duo Charger

With MagSafe Duo Charger, you can charge your iPhone or AirPods at the same time you charge your Apple Watch. (MagSafe Duo Charger, Apple Watch, and AirPods are sold separately.)



1. Connect MagSafe Duo Charger to power using the Apple 20W USB-C power adapter or another compatible power adapter (sold separately).



2. To charge iPhone or AirPods, do one of the following:

   - *iPhone:* Place iPhone face up on the center of the iPhone charging surface. Supported models help you align iPhone with the charger, and the charging symbol appears when iPhone starts charging. On other models, the battery charging indicator appears when you properly align iPhone with the charging surface. Unless your iPhone is in Silent mode, you hear a chime when charging begins.

     Note: If iPhone Leather Wallet is attached, remove it before placing iPhone on MagSafe Duo Charger.

   - *AirPods (2nd generation) with Wireless Charging Case, AirPods (3rd generation), and AirPods Pro:* Place your AirPods in the charging case, close the lid, then place the case with the status light facing up on the center of the iPhone charging surface. When the case is aligned properly with the charger, the status light turns on for several seconds, then turns off while continuing to charge.

3. To charge Apple Watch, do one of the following:

   - With the Apple Watch charging surface lying flat and the Apple Watch band open, place Apple Watch face up on the charging surface.

   - With the Apple Watch charging surface raised, place Apple Watch on its side with its back against the charging surface. Apple Watch automatically goes into Nightstand mode, so you can also use it as an alarm clock.

   The concave charging surface magnetically snaps to the back of your Apple Watch and aligns it properly. When charging begins, a charging symbol appears on the watch face.

Charge iPhone with MagSafe Battery Pack

MagSafe Battery Pack magnetically attaches to supported models and extends the battery life.

Note: If iPhone Leather Wallet is attached, remove it before placing MagSafe Battery Pack.

- *Charge your iPhone on the go:* Place MagSafe Battery Pack on the back of iPhone or its MagSafe case or sleeve. The charging symbol appears when iPhone starts charging.
- *See the battery status of MagSafe Battery Pack and iPhone:* Check the Batteries widget in Today View or on the Home Screen. See Add a Batteries widget to your Lock Screen or Home Screen.
- *Charge MagSafe Battery Pack and iPhone:* With MagSafe Battery Pack on iPhone, connect either device to power using the USB-C to Lightning Cable or USB-C Cable and the Apple 20W USB-C power adapter or another compatible power adapter (minimum power output of 20 watts; sold separately).

The status indicator on MagSafe Battery Pack is amber while charging, then turns green when charging is complete.

Note: By default, charging is limited to 90 percent to optimize the lifespan of MagSafe Battery Pack. To remove the charging limit, open Control Center, tap Low Power Mode, then tap Charge past 90%.

You can also charge MagSafe Battery Pack without iPhone.

See the Apple Support article How to use your MagSafe Battery Pack.

See also

"Charging" in Important safety information

Qi-certified wireless chargers for iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Power adapters

Next
MagSafe cases and sleeves

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

MagSafe cases and sleeves for iPhone

MagSafe cases and sleeves contain magnets that align iPhone (supported models) with MagSafe chargers and battery packs. You can even hold and use iPhone while it's charging. See MagSafe chargers and battery packs for iPhone.

iPhone Leather Sleeve

When iPhone Leather Sleeve covers your iPhone, you can do the following without removing the sleeve:

- *Get the current time:* If the clock window is dark, raise iPhone or tap the window.
- *See the charging status:* When you charge iPhone, the clock window indicates the battery level and its charging status.
- *See who's calling:* When a phone or FaceTime call arrives, the caller's name or number appears in the clock window.

  To answer, remove iPhone from the sleeve, then drag the slider.

  Or without removing iPhone, use your AirPods or Apple Watch (sold separately) to answer the call. (FaceTime video calls are answered with your video paused.)
- *Make an Express Transit payment:* Position the rear top of iPhone within a few centimeters of the contactless reader at the transit gate. A confirmation message appears in the clock window. See Pay for your ride with Express Transit.

  If your iPhone is in Express Cards power reserve mode, confirmation messages don't appear in the clock window.

  If you carry a separate transit card in iPhone Leather Sleeve, your transit card is used for payment when you position the lower front of iPhone near the contactless reader.

When your iPhone is in iPhone Leather Sleeve, you can also use "Hey Siri," your AirPods, your Apple Watch, and CarPlay to make calls, ask questions, and do tasks that don't require you to look at or touch the iPhone screen.

Note: If you remove your iPhone from the sleeve and see the time for the clock window instead of the Lock Screen, tap ⊗ in the top-right corner.

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Qi-certified wireless chargers for iPhone

You can wirelessly charge iPhone using a Qi-certified charger (sold separately). You can also use a Qi-certified charger to charge AirPods.

Charge iPhone or AirPods with a Qi-certified charger

1. Connect the charger to power. Use the power adapter that came with your charger or a power adapter recommended by the manufacturer.
2. Do one of the following:

   - *iPhone:* Place iPhone face up on the center of the charger. When iPhone is aligned properly with the charger, appears in the status bar.

   - *AirPods (2nd generation) with Wireless Charging Case, AirPods (3rd generation), and AirPods Pro:* Place your AirPods in the charging case, close the lid, then place the case with the status light facing up on the center of the charger. When the case is aligned properly with the charger, the status light turns on for several seconds, then turns off while continuing to charge.

See the Apple Support articles How to wirelessly charge your iPhone and Charge your AirPods and learn about battery life.

See also

MagSafe chargers and battery packs for iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use AirPods with iPhone

After you pair AirPods with iPhone, you can use AirPods to listen to audio playing on iPhone, make and answer calls, listen and respond to messages, hear reminders when you need them, listen to conversations more easily in noisy environments, and more.

Pair AirPods with your iPhone

1. On iPhone, go to Settings > Bluetooth, then turn on Bluetooth.
2. Go to the Home Screen on your iPhone.
3. Do one of the following:
   - *AirPods (1st, 2nd, and 3rd generation) and AirPods Pro:* Open the case with your AirPods inside, then hold it next to your iPhone.
   - *AirPods Max:* Take your AirPods Max out of the Smart Case, then hold AirPods Max next to your iPhone.
4. Follow the onscreen instructions, then tap Done.

   Note: If onscreen instructions for pairing your AirPods Max don't appear, go to Settings > Bluetooth, then select your AirPods Max. If the status light doesn't flash white on AirPods Max, press and hold the noise control button until it does.

Your AirPods are automatically paired with all of your supported devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID (iOS 10, iPadOS 13, macOS 10.12, watchOS 3, or later required).

Note: If you can't pair your AirPods, see the Apple Support article If your AirPods won't connect.

Do more with AirPods and your iPhone

See the AirPods User Guide for detailed instructions on how to get the most out of your AirPods.

See also

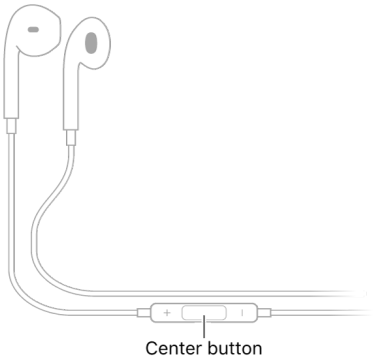
Use audiogram data in Health on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Use EarPods with iPhone

You can use EarPods (sold separately) to listen to music and videos and to make calls on iPhone. EarPods feature a microphone, volume buttons, and the center button.

Use the center button to answer and end calls, control audio and video playback, and use Siri, even when iPhone is locked.



Control audio with your EarPods

- *Pause:* Press the center button. Press again to resume playback.
- *Skip forward:* Press the center button twice quickly.
- *Skip backward:* Press the center button three times quickly.
- *Fast-forward:* Press the center button twice quickly and hold.

Manage calls using your EarPods

- *Answer an incoming call:* Press the center button.
- *End the current call:* Press the center button.
- *Switch to an incoming or on-hold call, and put the current call on hold:* Press the center button. Press again to switch back to the first call.

Ask Siri with your EarPods

Press and hold the center button until you hear a beep. Let go, then ask Siri to perform a task or answer your question. See Use Siri on iPhone.

See also

Use audiogram data in Health on iPhone

Use Apple Watch with iPhone

Pair Apple Watch with iPhone

On your iPhone, tap the Apple Watch app, then follow the onscreen instructions.

See Set up and pair your Apple Watch with iPhone in the Apple Watch User Guide. (Apple Watch sold separately.)

Unlock iPhone with Apple Watch

When you're wearing your Apple Watch (Series 3 and later), you can use it to securely unlock your iPhone (models with Face ID) when you're wearing a face mask (watchOS 7.4 or later required).

Note: On iPhone 12 models, iPhone 13 models, iPhone 14 models, and iPhone 15 models, it's not necessary to use Apple Watch to unlock iPhone when you're wearing a face mask. See Set up Face ID on iPhone.

To allow Apple Watch to unlock your iPhone, do the following:

1. Go to Settings > Face ID & Passcode.
2. Scroll down, then turn on Apple Watch (below Unlock with Apple Watch).

   If you have more than one watch, turn on the setting for each one.

To unlock your iPhone while you're wearing your Apple Watch and a face mask, raise iPhone or tap its screen to wake it, then glance at your iPhone.

Note: To unlock your iPhone, your Apple Watch must have a passcode, be unlocked and on your wrist, and be close to your iPhone.

Work out with Apple Fitness+

Used in conjunction with Apple Watch, Apple Fitness+ is a subscription service that lets you choose from a catalog of workouts led by expert trainers. While you follow a workout on your iPhone, in-session metrics like heart rate and calories burned (which are captured by your watch) appear on your screen. (watchOS 7.2 or later required; Apple Fitness+ availability varies by country or region.) See All about Apple Fitness+ in the Apple Watch User Guide.

Note: With Fitness on iPhone, you can view your active calories and steps, set a move goal, track your progress, and see your movement trends over time—even if you don't have an Apple Watch. See Track your daily activity and change your move goal in Fitness on iPhone.

Collect health and fitness data from Apple Watch

Apple Watch can send data about your health and fitness to iPhone for you to view in Health. Apple Watch can also send notifications about high heart rates, low heart rates, loud environmental sounds, and more to your iPhone.

See Track important health information in the Apple Watch User Guide.

Wirelessly stream videos and photos to Apple TV or a smart TV from iPhone

You can use your Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV to watch videos and view photos streamed from your iPhone.

Play video on Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV

1. While playing video in the Apple TV app or another supported video app on your iPhone, tap the screen to show the controls.
2. Tap, then choose your Apple TV or AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV as the playback destination.

   If an AirPlay passcode appears on the TV screen, enter the passcode on your iPhone.

To change the playback destination, choose a different AirPlay option on your iPhone screen.

Show photos on Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV

1. In Photos on your iPhone, tap a photo, then tap.
2. Swipe up, tap, then choose your Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV as the playback destination.

   If an AirPlay passcode appears on the TV screen, enter the passcode on your iPhone.

To stop streaming photos, tap near the top of the iPhone screen, then tap Turn off AirPlay.

Turn automatic AirPlay streaming on or off

You can allow your iPhone to discover and automatically connect to any frequently used Apple TV or smart TV when playing content from apps that you regularly use with AirPlay.

Go to Settings > General > AirPlay & Handoff, then choose Automatic, Never, or Ask.

Mirror your iPhone on Apple TV or a smart TV

On Apple TV or a smart TV, you can show whatever appears on your iPhone.

1. Open Control Center on your iPhone.
2. Tap, then choose your Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV as the playback destination.

   If an AirPlay passcode appears on the TV screen, enter the passcode on your iPhone.

To switch back to iPhone, open Control Center, tap, then tap Stop Mirroring.

Note: For a list of AirPlay 2-enabled smart TVs, see the Home accessories website.

To learn more about using Apple TV, see the Apple TV User Guide.

See also

Use AirPlay to stream video or mirror the screen of your iPhone

Play audio from iPhone on HomePod and other wireless speakers

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Apple Watch

Next
Connect to a display with a cable

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Connect iPhone to a display with a cable

With the appropriate cable or adapter, you can connect your iPhone to a secondary display, like a computer monitor, TV, or projector.

1. Depending on your iPhone model, plug a Lightning Digital AV Adapter, Lightning to VGA Adapter, USB-C Display AV Adapter, or USB-C VGA Multi-port Adapter into the charging port on the bottom of iPhone.
2. Connect an HDMI or VGA cable to the adapter.
3. Connect the other end of the HDMI or VGA cable to the monitor, TV, or projector.
4. If necessary, switch to the correct video source on the monitor, TV, or projector. If you need help, use the display's manual.

The adapters have an extra port so you can connect the charging cable and charge your iPhone while connected to a monitor, TV, or projector.

See also

Use AirPlay to stream video or mirror the screen of your iPhone

Wirelessly stream videos and photos to Apple TV or a smart TV from iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Play audio from iPhone on HomePod and other wireless speakers

You can play audio from iPhone on wireless devices like HomePod, Apple TV, AirPlay 2-enabled smart TVs, and Bluetooth® headphones and speakers.

Play audio from iPhone on a wireless device

1. On your iPhone, open an audio app, such as Podcasts or Music, then choose an item to play.
2. Tap, then choose a playback destination.

   Note: If your AirPlay 2-enabled devices don't appear in the list of playback destinations, make sure they're on the same Wi-Fi network. With a Bluetooth device, the playback destination returns to iPhone if you move the device out of Bluetooth range.

To select the playback destination, you can also tap on the Lock Screen or in Control Center.

Note: For information about setting up a Bluetooth audio device, see Pair a Bluetooth headphone, car kit, game controller, or other device.

Play audio on multiple AirPlay 2-enabled devices

With AirPlay 2 and iPhone, you can play audio on multiple AirPlay 2-enabled devices connected to the same Wi-Fi network. For example, you can play a party playlist on HomePod speakers in the living room and kitchen, on an Apple TV in the bedroom, and on an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV in the den.

Siri: Say something like:

- "Stop playing music everywhere"
- "Set the dining room volume to 10 percent"
- "What's playing in the kitchen?"
- "Play a song I like in the kitchen"
- "Add the living room speaker"
- "Remove the music from the kitchen"
- "Move the music to the den"

You can also choose playback destinations from the iPhone screen.

1. Tap in Control Center, on the Lock Screen, or on the Now Playing screen for the app you're listening to.
2. Select each device you want to use.

Note: Devices arranged in a stereo pair are treated as a single audio device.

Hand off audio from iPhone to HomePod

While playing audio from Music, Podcasts, or another audio app, bring iPhone close to the top of HomePod.

Audio hand off has the following requirements:

- You must be signed in with the same Apple ID on both devices.
- On your iPhone, you've turned on Wi-Fi and Handoff.
- iPhone and HomePod must be in the same HomeKit home and on the same Wi-Fi network.
- Your devices must have Bluetooth turned on in Settings and be within Bluetooth range of one another (about 33 feet or 10 meters).

To disable Handoff between iPhone and HomePod and other devices, go to Settings > General > AirPlay & Handoff.

Note: To learn more about using HomePod speakers and Apple TV, see the HomePod User Guide and Apple TV User Guide.

For a list of AirPlay 2-enabled smart TVs, see the Home accessories website.

See also

Play audio from iPhone on Mac or TV

Wirelessly stream videos and photos to Apple TV or a smart TV from iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Connect to a display with a cable

Next
Pair Magic Keyboard

Support > iPhone User Guide > Play audio from iPhone on HomePod and other wireless speakers

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Pair Magic Keyboard with iPhone

You can use Magic Keyboard, including Magic Keyboard with Numeric Keypad, to enter text on iPhone. Magic Keyboard connects to iPhone using Bluetooth®.

Pair Magic Keyboard

1. Make sure the keyboard is turned on and charged.
2. On iPhone, go to Settings > Bluetooth, then turn on Bluetooth.
3. Select the device when it appears in the Other Devices list.

Note: If Magic Keyboard is already paired with another device, you must unpair them before you can connect Magic Keyboard to your iPhone. Do one of the following:

- *On iPhone or iPad:* See Unpair a Bluetooth device.
- *On macOS 13 or later:* Choose Apple menu > System Settings, click Bluetooth in the sidebar, Control-click the device, then choose Forget.
- *On macOS 12.5 or earlier:* Choose Apple menu > System Preferences, click Bluetooth, Control-click the device name, then click Remove.

Reconnect Magic Keyboard to iPhone

Magic Keyboard disconnects when you turn its switch to Off or when you move it or iPhone out of Bluetooth range—about 33 feet (10 meters).

To reconnect, turn the keyboard switch to On, or bring the keyboard and iPhone back into range, then tap any key.

See also

Switch between keyboards with Magic Keyboard and iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Enter characters with diacritical marks while using Magic Keyboard with iPhone

If your Magic Keyboard doesn't include accents and other diacritical marks for the language you're typing, you can use an Option key modifier or the onscreen keyboard to enter those marks.

Use the Option key to enter a diacritical mark for a character

To enter a character with a diacritical mark, you can press the Option key on Magic Keyboard to select a mark.

1. Do one of the following:

   - Add or remove a keyboard for another language that supports diacritical marks, then in an app, switch to that language keyboard.

     For example, add the Spanish (Mexico) keyboard, then in an app, press and hold the Control key on Magic Keyboard, then press the Space bar until you select Español (México).

   - Go to Settings > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard, then choose an alternative keyboard layout that supports diacritical marks.

     For example, if you have the English (US) language keyboard, tap English (US), then choose U.S. International — PC or ABC — Extended.

2. In an app, press and hold the Option key, then press a key that enters a diacritical mark.

   For example, the Spanish (Mexico) keyboard and the U.S. International — PC alternative layout support these diacritical marks:

   - *Acute accent* (for example, *é*): Option-E.
   - *Grave accent* (for example, è): Option-`.
   - *Tilde* (for example, *ñ*): Option-N.
   - *Diaeresis or umlaut* (for example, *ü*): Option-U.
   - *Circumflex* (for example, *ê*): Option-I.

3. Press the letter.

   For example, to enter *ñ* using the Spanish (Mexico) keyboard or the U.S. International — PC alternative layout, press Option-N, then type an *n*.

Note: The ABC - Extended alternative layout also allows you to enter tone marks for typing Mandarin Chinese in Pinyin orthography. For example, to type ǔ in lǚxíng (“travel”), press Option-V, then type a *v*. In addition, the ABC - Extended layout allows you to type diacritical marks and letters from several different European languages, such as Czech, French, German, Hungarian, and Polish.

Use the onscreen keyboard to enter a diacritical mark

1. To show the onscreen keyboard, press ⏏ on Magic Keyboard.
2. On the onscreen keyboard, touch and hold the letter, number, or symbol on the keyboard that's related to the character you want.

   For example, to enter é, touch and hold the e key.
3. Slide your finger to choose a variant.
4. To hide the onscreen keyboard when you're finished, press ⏏ on Magic Keyboard.

See also

Switch between keyboards with Magic Keyboard and iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Pair Magic Keyboard

Next
Switch between keyboards

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Switch between keyboards with Magic Keyboard and iPhone

With Magic Keyboard, you can switch between the language keyboard for your region, an emoji keyboard, other language keyboards that you add, and the onscreen keyboard.

Switch between language keyboards and the onscreen emoji keyboard

1. On Magic Keyboard, press and hold the Control key.
2. Press the Space bar to cycle between the language keyboard for your region, the emoji keyboard, and any keyboards you added for typing in different languages.

Show or hide the onscreen keyboard

To show the onscreen keyboard, press ⏏ on Magic Keyboard. To hide the onscreen keyboard, press ⏏ again.

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Dictate text while using Magic Keyboard with iPhone

You can dictate text instead of typing it on Magic Keyboard.

Note: Dictation may not be available in all languages or in all countries or regions, and features may vary. Cellular data charges may apply.

1. Go to Settings > General > Keyboard, turn on Enable Dictation, then choose a dictation shortcut.
2. To insert text by dictating, tap to place the insertion point, then press the dictation shortcut key twice.
3. To use Magic Keyboard again, quickly press the dictation shortcut key twice.

As you speak to insert text, iPhone automatically inserts punctuation for you. You can insert emoji by saying their names (for example, “mind blown emoji” or “happy emoji”).

See also

Switch between keyboards with Magic Keyboard and iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Use shortcuts on Magic Keyboard with iPhone

You can perform searches and use text replacements from anywhere on iPhone without taking your hands away from Magic Keyboard.

- *Open Search:* Press Command-Space.

  Note: You can change the actions that are performed by the Command key (and other modifier keys like Caps Lock). Go to Settings > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard, tap Modifier Keys, tap a key, then choose the action you want it to perform.

- *Use text replacements:* You can set up text replacements that enter words or phrases after you type just a few characters. For example, type “omw” to enter “On my way!” See Save keystrokes with text replacements on iPhone.

- *Choose additional accessibility keyboard shortcuts:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > Keyboards > Full Keyboard Access, then turn on Full Keyboard Access. See Control iPhone with an external keyboard.

See also

Switch between keyboards with Magic Keyboard and iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Choose an alternative layout for Magic Keyboard with iPhone

With an alternative keyboard layout, you can enter letters and marks that are different from the ones on Magic Keyboard. For example, with the ABC - Extended keyboard layout, you can type letters and enter diacritical marks for several different European languages and tone marks for Mandarin Chinese in Pinyin.

1. Go to Settings > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard.
2. Tap a language at the top of the screen, then choose an alternative layout from the list.

See also

Switch between keyboards with Magic Keyboard and iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Change typing assistance options for Magic Keyboard with iPhone

You can change Magic Keyboard options for autocorrection, autocapitalization, and more.

Go to Settings > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard, then do any of the following:

- *Turn Auto-Capitalization on or off:* When this option is selected, an app supporting this feature capitalizes proper nouns and the first words in sentences as you type.
- *Turn Auto-Correction on or off:* When this option is selected, an app supporting this feature corrects the spelling as you type.
- *Turn "." Shortcut on or off:* When this option is selected, double-tapping the space bar inserts a period followed by a space.
- *Change the action performed by the Command key or other modifier key:* Tap Modifier Keys, tap a key, then choose the action you want it to perform.

See also

Switch between keyboards with Magic Keyboard and iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Connect external storage devices to iPhone

You can use the Files app and other supported apps to access files stored on external devices, such as USB drives and SD cards, connected to your iPhone.

Connect a USB drive or an SD card reader

1. Attach the USB drive or SD card reader to the charging port on your iPhone using a compatible connector or adapter.

   You may need the Lightning to USB Camera Adapter, Lightning to USB 3 Camera Adapter, USB-C to SD Card Camera Reader, or Lightning to SD Card Camera Reader (all sold separately).

   Note: An external storage device must have only a single data partition, and it must be formatted as APFS, APFS (encrypted), macOS Extended (HFS+), exFAT (FAT64), FAT32, or FAT. To change the formatting of a storage device, use a Mac or PC.

2. Do any of the following:

   - *Insert an SD memory card into a card reader:* Don't force the card into the slot on the reader; it fits only one way.

     Note: You can import photos and videos from the memory card directly to the Photos app. See Import and export photos and videos on iPhone.

   - *View the contents of the drive or memory card:* In a supported app (for example, Files), tap Browse at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device below Locations. If you don't see Locations, tap Browse again at the bottom of the screen.

   - *Disconnect the drive or card reader:* Remove it from the charging port on iPhone.

Note: External hard drives often require an external power source when used with iPhone. If an external hard drive doesn't supply its own power, and your iPhone has a USB-C connector, you can use a powered USB hub. If your iPhone has a Lightning connector, you can use the Lightning to USB 3 Camera Adapter connected to a USB power adapter.

See also

Modify files and folders in Files on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Set up and use Bluetooth accessories on iPhone

Using a Bluetooth® connection, you can use third-party devices such as wireless keyboards, headphones, speakers, car kits, game controllers, and more with iPhone.

Note: iPhone must be within about 33 feet (10 meters) of the Bluetooth device.

Pair a Bluetooth headphone, car kit, game controller, or other device

1. Follow the instructions that came with the device to put it in discovery mode.

   Note: To pair AirPods, see the instructions for your model in the "Pair and connect" section in the AirPods User Guide.

2. On iPhone, go to Settings > Bluetooth, turn on Bluetooth, then tap the name of the device.

Note: With Siri Eyes Free (available in select cars), you can use your voice to control features of your iPhone without looking at or touching iPhone. Use Bluetooth to pair iPhone to your car (refer to the user guide that came with your car if you need to). To activate Siri, press and hold the voice command button on your steering wheel until you hear the Siri tone, then make a request.

Customize a wireless game controller

After you pair a compatible game controller, you can customize it for supported games from Apple Arcade and the App Store.

1. Go to Settings > General > Game Controller.
2. Tap the buttons you want to change.
3. To customize for a specific app, tap Add App.

Note: Apple Arcade availability varies by country or region.

Play audio from iPhone on a Bluetooth audio device

1. On your iPhone, open an audio app, such as Music, then choose an item to play.
2. Tap , then choose your Bluetooth device.

   While audio is playing, you can change the playback destination on the Lock Screen or in Control Center.

The playback destination returns to iPhone if you move the device out of Bluetooth range.

For information about protecting your hearing from loud volume while listening to headphones with iPhone, see Use audiogram data in Health on iPhone.

WARNING: For important information about avoiding hearing loss and avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see Important safety information for iPhone.

Improve the audio accuracy of third-party Bluetooth devices

You can improve the sound of third-party Bluetooth devices by specifying the Bluetooth device type (such as headphone, speaker, car stereo, and more) on your iPhone.

1. Go to Settings > Bluetooth, then tap next to the name of the device.
2. Tap Device Type, then choose the type of device.

Bypass your Bluetooth device for calls

To use the iPhone receiver or speaker for calls, do any of the following:

- Answer a call by tapping the iPhone screen.
- During a call, tap Audio, then choose iPhone or Speaker Phone.
- Turn off the Bluetooth device, unpair it, or move out of range.
- Go to Settings, tap Bluetooth, then turn off Bluetooth.

Unpair a Bluetooth device

Go to Settings > Bluetooth, tap the information button next to the name of the device, then tap Forget This Device.

If you don't see the Devices list, make sure Bluetooth is turned on.

If you have AirPods and you tap Forget This Device, they're automatically removed from other devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

Disconnect from Bluetooth devices

To quickly disconnect from all Bluetooth devices without turning Bluetooth off, open Control Center, then tap .

To learn about Bluetooth privacy settings on iPhone, see the Apple Support article If an app would like to use Bluetooth on your device. If you have trouble connecting a Bluetooth device, see the Apple Support article If you can't connect a Bluetooth accessory to your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch.

Note: The use of certain accessories with iPhone may affect wireless performance. Not all iOS or iPadOS accessories are fully compatible with iPhone. Turning on airplane mode may eliminate audio interference between iPhone and an accessory. Reorienting or relocating iPhone and the connected accessory may improve wireless performance.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
External storage devices

Next
Printers

Support > iPhone User Guide > Set up and use Bluetooth accessories on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Print from iPhone

Use AirPrint to print wirelessly to an AirPrint-enabled printer from apps such as Mail, Photos, and Safari. Many apps available on the App Store also support AirPrint.

iPhone and the printer must be on the same Wi-Fi network. See the Apple Support article About AirPrint.

See the status of a print job

Open the App Switcher, then tap Print Center.

The badge on the icon shows how many documents are in the queue.

To cancel a print job, select it in Print Center, then tap Cancel Printing.

Print a document

Tap , •••, , or (depending on the app you're using), then tap Print. (Swipe up if you don't see Print.)

See also

Connect iPhone to a Wi-Fi network

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Share your internet connection from iPhone

You can use Personal Hotspot to share a cellular internet connection from your iPhone to other devices. Personal Hotspot is useful when the other devices don't have internet access from a Wi-Fi network.

Note: Personal Hotspot isn't available with all carriers. Additional fees might apply. The number of devices that can join your Personal Hotspot at one time depends on your carrier and iPhone model. Contact your carrier for more information.

Set up Personal Hotspot on iPhone

Go to Settings > Cellular, tap Set Up Personal Hotspot, then follow the onscreen instructions.

If you set up your iPhone to use two SIMs, Personal Hotspot uses the line you select for cellular data. See Set up Dual SIM.

Note: If Cellular Data is turned on in Settings > Cellular, but you don't see Set Up Personal Hotspot as an option, contact your carrier about adding Personal Hotspot to your plan.

Connect a Mac or PC to your Personal Hotspot

You can use Wi-Fi, a USB cable, or Bluetooth® to connect a Mac or PC to your Personal Hotspot. Do one of the following:

- *Use Wi-Fi to connect from a Mac:* See Join a Personal Hotspot.
- *Use Wi-Fi to connect from a PC:* On your PC, follow the manufacturer directions to connect to a Personal Hotspot.
- *Use USB:* See Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable.
- *Use Bluetooth:* To connect from a Mac, see Use Bluetooth to connect your Mac and iPhone.

  To connect from a PC, follow the manufacturer directions to set up a Bluetooth network connection.
- For more information about connecting a Mac, see Use an iPhone or iPad to connect your Mac to the internet in the macOS User Guide.
- For more information about connecting an iPhone, see Join a Personal Hotspot in the iPhone User Guide.

Connect iPad or another iPhone to your Personal Hotspot

On the other device, go to Settings > Wi-Fi, choose your other device from the list of available networks, then enter the Personal Hotspot password (if prompted).

For more information about connecting an iPad, see Join a Personal Hotspot in the iPad User Guide.

Turn off Personal Hotspot or change the password

Go to Settings > Personal Hotspot, then do one of the following:

- *Change the password:* Tap Wi-Fi Password and follow the onscreen instructions.
- *Turn off Personal Hotspot:* Turn off Allow Others to Join. All devices using your Personal Hotspot are disconnected.

When a Mac is connected to your Personal Hotspot, a blue band appears at the top of your iPhone screen, and the Personal Hotspot icon appears in the status bar of the connected Mac.

Note: If you're signed in with the same Apple ID and you've turned on Bluetooth and Wi-Fi on both devices, you can connect the devices without entering a password.

When you share a Personal Hotspot from your iPhone, it uses cellular data for the internet connection. To monitor your cellular data network usage, go to Settings > Cellular. See View or change cellular data settings on iPhone.

If you use Family Sharing, you can share your Personal Hotspot with any member of your family. See Set up Family Sharing on iPhone.

See also

Apple Support article: If Personal Hotspot is not working

Apple Support article: About the 'Trust This Computer' alert

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Printers

Next
Allow phone calls on your iPad and Mac

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Allow phone calls on your iPad and Mac

You can make and receive phone calls on your iPad, iPod touch, and Mac by relaying calls through your iPhone.

Note: Cellular charges might apply. Wi-Fi Calling isn't available from all carriers.

Before you begin

On your iPhone and your other devices, do the following (iOS 9, iPadOS 13, OS X 10.10, or later required):

- Set up FaceTime.
- Sign in with the same Apple ID.

Allow phone calls on your other devices from iPhone

First set up your iPhone, and then set up your other devices.

1. On your iPhone, go to Settings > Cellular.
2. If your iPhone has Dual SIMs, choose a line (below SIMs).
3. Do any of the following:

   - Tap Calls on Other Devices, turn on Allow Calls on Other Devices, then choose the devices on which you'd like to make and receive calls.

     This allows other devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID to make and receive calls when they're near your iPhone and connected to Wi-Fi.

   - Tap Wi-Fi Calling, then turn on Add Wi-Fi Calling For Other Devices.

     This allows other devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID to make and receive calls even when your iPhone isn't nearby.

4. On your other devices, do the following:

   - *On your iPad or iPod touch:* Go to Settings > FaceTime, then turn on FaceTime and Calls from iPhone. If you're asked, turn on Wi-Fi Calling.

   - *On your Mac:* Open FaceTime, choose FaceTime > Preferences > Settings, then select Calls from iPhone. If an Upgrade to Wi-Fi Calling button appears, click it, then follow the instructions.

Note: If you enable Wi-Fi Calling, emergency calls can be made over Wi-Fi, and your device's location information can be used for emergency calls to aid response efforts, regardless of whether you enable Location Services. Some carriers might use the address you registered with the carrier when signing up for Wi-Fi Calling as your location.

Make or receive a phone call on your iPad or Mac

- *Make a call:* Tap or click a phone number in Contacts, Calendar, FaceTime, Messages, Search, or Safari. Or open FaceTime, enter a contact or phone number, then tap .

If you make a call from another device by relaying it through your iPhone with Dual SIM, the call is made using your default voice line.

- *Receive a call:* Swipe, tap, or click the notification to answer or ignore the call.

For more information about Wi-Fi calls, see the Apple Support article Make a call with Wi-Fi Calling.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Share your internet connection

Next
Use iPhone as a webcam

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use iPhone as a webcam for Mac or Apple TV

With Continuity Camera, you can use your iPhone as a webcam or microphone for your Mac or Apple TV 4K and take advantage of the powerful iPhone camera and video effects.

Use your iPhone as a webcam for your Mac

Here are some things you can do with Continuity Camera on your Mac:

- Use your iPhone as a webcam in video apps such as FaceTime.
- Insert photos and scans with Continuity Camera—for example, in a document, note, folder, or mail message.

Use your iPhone as a webcam for Apple TV

Here are some things you can do with Continuity Camera on Apple TV:

- Use your iPhone as a webcam in FaceTime.
- Sing along to Apple Music and appear onscreen with visual effects.

See also

Hand off a FaceTime call from your iPhone to your other Apple devices

Send what you're watching in SharePlay to Apple TV

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Hand off tasks between iPhone and your other devices

With Handoff, you can start something on one device (iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, or Apple Watch) and then pick it up on another device right where you left off. For example, you can start answering an email on your iPhone, then finish it in Mail on your Mac. You can use Handoff with many Apple apps—for example, Calendar, Contacts, and Safari. Some third-party apps might also work with Handoff.

Before you begin

To hand off tasks between iPhone and another device, make sure of the following:

- You're signed in with the same Apple ID on both devices.
- On your Mac, you've turned on Wi-Fi, Bluetooth®, and Handoff.
- On your iPhone and on another iPhone or iPad, you've turned on Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, and Handoff.
- Your devices are within Bluetooth range of one another (about 33 feet or 10 meters).
- Each device has the minimum required software version installed: iOS 10, iPadOS 13, macOS 10.10, watchOS 1.0, or later.

Hand off from another device to your iPhone

1. Open the App Switcher on iPhone. The Handoff icon of the app you're using on your other device appears at the bottom of the iPhone screen.
2. Tap the Handoff icon to continue working in the app.

Hand off from iPhone to another device

On the other device, click or tap the Handoff icon to continue working in the app.

The Handoff icon of the app you're using on iPhone appears in the following locations on other devices:

- *Mac:* The right end of the Dock (or at the bottom, depending on the Dock position).
- *iPad:* The right end of the Dock.
- *iPhone or iPod touch:* At the bottom of the App Switcher screen.

Turn off Handoff on your devices

- *iPad, iPhone, and iPod touch:* Go to Settings > General > AirPlay & Handoff.
- *macOS 13:* Choose Apple menu > System Settings, click General in the sidebar, click AirDrop & Handoff on the right, then turn off Allow Handoff between this Mac and your iCloud devices.
- *macOS 12.5 or earlier:* Choose Apple menu > System Preferences, click General, then deselect "Allow Handoff between this Mac and your iCloud devices."

Tip: When Handoff is on, you can use Universal Clipboard to copy and paste text, images, photos, and videos across devices.

See also

Hand off audio from iPhone to HomePod

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use iPhone as a webcam

Next
Cut, copy, and paste between iPhone and other devices

Support > iPhone User Guide > Hand off tasks between iPhone and your other devices

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Cut, copy, and paste between iPhone and other devices

You can use Universal Clipboard to cut or copy content (a block of text or an image, for example) on your iPhone, then paste it on iPad, on another iPhone, or Mac computer, and vice versa.

Note: For information about cutting, copying, and pasting text within or between apps only on your iPhone, see Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPhone.

Before you begin

To cut or copy and paste between iPhone and another device, make sure of the following:

- You're signed in with the same Apple ID on both devices.
- On your Mac, you've turned on Wi-Fi, Bluetooth®, and Handoff.
- On your iPhone and on another iPhone or iPad, you've turned on Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, and Handoff.
- Your devices are within Bluetooth range of one another (about 33 feet or 10 meters).
- Each device has the minimum relevant software version installed: iOS 10, iPadOS 13, macOS 10.12, or later.

Copy, cut, or paste

- *Copy:* Pinch closed with three fingers.
- *Cut:* Pinch closed with three fingers two times.
- *Paste:* Pinch open with three fingers.

You can also touch and hold a selection, then tap Cut, Copy, or Paste.

Important: You need to cut, copy, and paste your content within a short period of time.

For more information about selecting text or placing the insertion point, see Type with the onscreen keyboard on iPhone.

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Use AirPlay to stream video or mirror the screen of your iPhone

You can use AirPlay to stream videos, photos, and audio from your iPhone to a nearby Mac or TV. You can also mirror exactly what's on your iPhone screen.

Set up a Mac to allow streaming from your iPhone

1. On a Mac, do one of the following:

   - *macOS 13 or later:* Choose Apple menu > System Settings, then click General in the sidebar. (You may need to scroll down.) Click AirDrop & Handoff on the right, then turn on AirPlay Receiver.
   - *macOS 12.5 or earlier:* Choose Apple menu > System Preferences, click Sharing, then select and turn on AirPlay Receiver.

2. Choose an option for "Allow AirPlay for":

   - To allow only devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID as on the Mac to stream to the Mac, select "Current user."
   - To allow others, select "Anyone on the same network" or Everyone.

     To require a password to use AirPlay with the Mac, select the option, then enter a password in the text field.

If you choose the option "Anyone on the same network" or Everyone, and someone is signed in to their device with a different Apple ID than on the Mac, an AirPlay request initially requires acceptance on the Mac and verification on the other device. On the Mac, accept the AirPlay request. If the Mac displays an AirPlay code, enter the code on the other device.

Stream photos or videos from your iPhone to a Mac or TV

1. Connect your iPhone to the same Wi-Fi network as your Apple TV 4K , AirPlay-compatible smart TV, or Mac.
2. Find the video that you want to stream.
3. Tap AirPlay . In some apps, you might need to tap a different button first. For example, in the Photos app , tap Share , then tap AirPlay.
4. Choose your Mac or TV from the list.

To change the playback destination, choose a different AirPlay option on your iPhone screen.

To show video playback controls on the Mac, move the pointer over the video playing on the Mac screen.

To stop streaming, tap AirPlay in the app that you're streaming from, then tap your iPhone in the list.

Mirror your iPhone on a Mac or TV

1. Connect your iPhone to the same Wi-Fi network as your Apple TV 4K, AirPlay-compatible smart TV, or Mac.
2. Open Control Center on your iPhone.
3. Tap , then choose your Mac or TV as the playback destination.

To switch back, open Control Center, tap , then tap Stop Mirroring.

Play audio from iPhone on Mac or TV

1. On your iPhone, open an audio app (such as Podcasts or Music), then choose an item to play.
2. Tap , then choose a playback destination.

To select the playback destination, you can also tap on the Lock Screen or in Control Center.

Note: Using AirPlay to stream to a Mac requires iPhone 7 or later, along with a supported Mac.

Older iPhone models can share content at a lower resolution with supported Mac models when the “Allow AirPlay for” menu in Sharing preferences is set to or “Everyone” or “Anyone on the same network.”

See also

Wirelessly stream videos and photos to Apple TV or a smart TV from iPhone

Play audio from iPhone on HomePod and other wireless speakers

macOS User Guide: Set up your Mac to be an AirPlay receiver

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Cut, copy, and paste between iPhone and other devices

Next
Start SharePlay instantly

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Start a SharePlay session by holding two iPhone devices close together

With SharePlay, you can instantly stream supported content, listen to music, play games, and more in sync with a friend by holding your iPhone close to your friend's iPhone.

Start a SharePlay session

1. On your iPhone, in an app that supports SharePlay, tap the content you want to share.
2. Hold your iPhone next to the iPhone of the person you want to share with.

   If they're not in your contacts (or vice versa), you'll first need to share your contact information with them. See Use NameDrop on iPhone to share your contact information with new people.
3. Tap SharePlay.

   The person you want to share with can accept or decline your SharePlay invitation.

Note: Requires iOS 17 or later on both iPhone devices. AirDrop must be turned on, and the sender and recipient must be included in each other's Contacts app. Some apps that support SharePlay require a subscription. To watch a movie or TV show together, each participant must have access to the content on their own device, through either a subscription or purchase, on a device that meets the minimum system requirements. SharePlay might not support sharing some movies or TV shows across different countries or regions.

See also

Use AirPlay to stream video or mirror the screen of your iPhone

Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together in FaceTime on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use AirDrop on iPhone to send items to nearby devices

With AirDrop, you can wirelessly send your photos, videos, websites, locations, and more to other nearby devices and Mac computers.

AirDrop transfers information using Wi-Fi and Bluetooth®, so both must be turned on. To use AirDrop, you need to be signed in with your Apple ID. Transfers are encrypted for security.

The recipient can accept or decline each transfer as it arrives. Cellular charges may apply.

Send an item using AirDrop

1. Open the item on your iPhone, then tap Share, AirDrop, •••, or another button that displays the app's sharing options.
2. Tap, then tap the AirDrop user you want to share with. (You can also use AirDrop to share between your own devices.)

   Tip: If you're within close range of someone in your contacts, you can initiate a transfer by opening the file you want to share, then moving your iPhone close to your contact's iPhone (on supported models with iOS 17 or later).

If the person doesn't appear on your iPhone as a nearby AirDrop user, ask them to open Control Center and allow AirDrop to receive items. To send to someone on a Mac, ask them to allow themselves to be discovered by AirDrop in the Finder.

You can also use AirDrop to securely share app and website passwords with someone using an iPhone, iPad, or Mac. See Share passkeys and passwords securely with AirDrop on iPhone.

Allow others to send items to your iPhone using AirDrop

1. Open Control Center, touch and hold the top-left group of controls, then tap.
2. Tap Contacts Only or Everyone for 10 Minutes to choose who you want to receive items from.

   Note: The Contacts Only and Everyone for 10 Minutes options are available only on devices with minimum system requirements.

See also

Use AirDrop on your Mac to send files to devices near you

How to use AirDrop on your iPhone or iPad

Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable

You can use a cable to directly connect your iPhone to a Mac with OS X 10.9 or later, or to a PC with Windows 7 or later.

Using the charging cable for your iPhone, connect iPhone to the USB port on your computer. If the cable isn't compatible with the port on your computer, you'll need to use an adapter (sold separately).

Note: If an alert appears on your iPhone asking whether to trust this computer, select Trust. See the Apple Support article About the 'Trust This Computer' alert.

After you connect your iPhone to a computer with a cable, you can do any of the following:

- Set up iPhone for the first time.
- Share your iPhone internet connection with your computer.
- Use your computer to erase all content and settings from iPhone.
- Update iPhone using your computer.
- Sync content or transfer files between your iPhone and computer.

The iPhone battery charges when iPhone is connected to your computer and your computer is connected to power.

See also

Apple Support article: About the Apple USB-C to USB Adapter

Apple Support article: About the Apple USB-C to Lightning Cable

Apple Support article: Lightning to USB Cable

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Transfer files between your iPhone and your computer

There are multiple ways to transfer your photos, videos, and other files between your iPhone and computer.

- *Quickly transfer files wirelessly*: See Use AirDrop on iPhone to send items to nearby devices.
- *Use iCloud*: See Automatically keep your files up to date with iCloud.
- *Use an external storage device, a file server, or a service like Box or DropBox*: See Transfer files using an external storage device, a file server, or a cloud storage service on iPhone.
- *Use a cable*: See Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable.

Important: Transferring, sharing, or syncing might be restricted for some types of data, such as files saved in an app's proprietary format, files saved in older software versions, and files protected by copyrights.

See also

Take and edit photos or videos in Messages on iPhone

Download email attachments in Mail on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Transfer files wirelessly between your iPhone and computer with email, messages, or AirDrop

Use email to transfer files

- To transfer files using Mail on your iPhone, see Add email attachments in Mail on iPhone and Download email attachments in Mail on iPhone.
- To transfer files using Mail on your Mac, see Add attachments to emails in Mail on Mac and Save email attachments in Mail on Mac.

Use text messages to transfer files

- To transfer files using Messages on your iPhone, see Send an item using AirDrop.
- To transfer files using Messages on your Mac, see Send photos and videos in Messages on Mac.

Use AirDrop to transfer files

- To transfer files using AirDrop on your iPhone, see Use AirDrop on iPhone to send items to nearby devices.
- To transfer files using AirDrop on your Mac, see Use AirDrop on your Mac to send files to devices near you.

Files sent to your iPhone are located in the app where you saved the file or in the app that opens automatically when the file is received. Files sent to your Mac are located in the app where you saved the file or in the Downloads folder.

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Transfer files or sync content between your iPhone and computer with the Finder or iTunes

You can connect your iPhone to a computer to do the following:

- Transfer files used by iPhone apps that support file sharing.
- Sync supported content like movies and podcasts.

Depending on your computer, you use either the Finder or iTunes on your computer to transfer files and sync content.

Transfer files for supported apps

You can transfer files by copying them from one device to another using the Finder or iTunes. Only files from iPhone apps that support file sharing can be transferred.

- *To transfer files with your Mac (macOS 10.15 or later):* See the Apple Support article Use the Finder to share files between your Mac and your iPhone.
- *To transfer files with your PC or Mac (macOS 10.14 or earlier):* See the Apple Support article Use iTunes to share files between your computer and your iOS or iPadOS device.

Sync supported content

Syncing with the Finder or iTunes keeps supported content up to date between your iPhone and computer. For example, you can set up syncing so that when you add a movie to your iPhone, it also appears on your computer. After you set up syncing between your devices with a cable, you can set them to sync wirelessly and automatically whenever they're connected to the same Wi-Fi network.

You can sync content like music, movies, TV shows, podcasts, photos, contacts, and calendars.

- *To sync content with your Mac (macOS 10.15 or later):* See Sync content between your Mac and iPhone or iPad in the macOS User Guide.
- *To sync content with your PC or Mac (macOS 10.14 or earlier):* See the Apple Support article Use iTunes to sync your iPhone or iPad with your computer.

If the files you want to share between your iPhone and computer aren't supported by syncing or transferring with the Finder or iTunes, see Transfer files between your iPhone and your computer for other options.

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Automatically keep your files up to date on your iPhone and computer with iCloud

You can store your files, photos, videos, and more in iCloud so you can access them and keep them synced on all your devices. Any change you make to a file on a device that's signed in to iCloud appears on all devices that are signed in.

You can also access your information in iCloud from anywhere by using a supported web browser. See System requirements for iCloud.

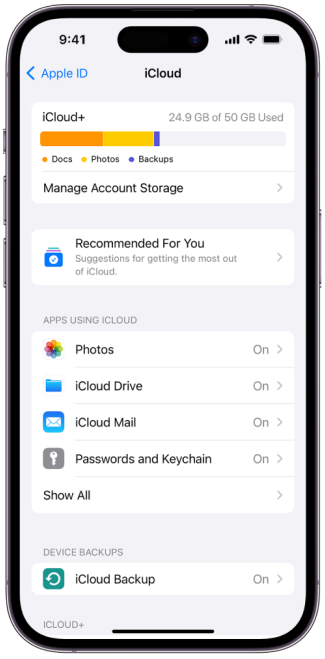
Important: OS X 10.10 (or later) or Windows 7 (or later) are required. You must be signed in with your Apple ID on both your iPhone and your computer, along with any web browsers you might be using.

Set up iCloud on your iPhone

1. On your iPhone, go to Settings > [*your name*].

   If you don't see [*your name*], tap "Sign in to your [*device*]," then enter your Apple ID and password.

2. Tap iCloud, then turn on items you want to keep there.



   For example, turn on iCloud Drive to make your files in iCloud Drive available to your computer.

Set up iCloud on your Mac

1. Follow the instructions to set up iCloud features on Mac in the macOS User Guide.
2. Turn on the same items that you turned on for iPhone.

Set up iCloud on your PC

1. Follow the instructions to **set up iCloud** in the iCloud for Windows User Guide.
2. Turn on the same items that you turned on for iPhone, then click Apply.

iCloud comes with an email account and 5 GB of free storage for your data. For more storage and additional features, you can **subscribe to iCloud+**.

Note: Some iCloud features have minimum system requirements. iCloud might not be available in all areas, and iCloud features might vary by area. See the Apple Support article **System requirements for iCloud**. For information about features, go to **apple.com/icloud/**.

See also

Use iCloud on iPhone

iCloud for Windows User Guide

iCloud User Guide: Sign in and use iCloud.com

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Transfer files or sync content with the Finder or iTunes

Next
Use an external storage device, a file server, or a cloud storage service

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Transfer files using an external storage device, a file server, or a cloud storage service on iPhone

Transfer files with an external storage device

1. Connect your iPhone or computer to an external storage device, such as a USB drive or SD card.

   To connect to iPhone, you might need a cable adapter. See Connect external storage devices to iPhone.

   Note: If an alert appears on iPhone asking whether to trust this computer, select Trust. See the Apple Support article About the 'Trust This Computer' alert.

2. Use a supported app (like Files or Pages) to copy files to the storage device. See Organize files and folders in Files on iPhone.

3. Disconnect the storage device, then connect it to the device where you want the copied files to appear.

4. Copy the files to the connected device. See Connect and use other storage devices with Mac in the macOS User Guide.

Transfer files with a file server

Note: If you have a Mac, you can set it up as a file server on a local network, such as your Wi-Fi network. See Set up file sharing on Mac in the macOS User Guide.

1. Connect to the file server from your iPhone using the Files app.

2. Connect your Mac or PC to the file server (unless your computer is the file server). See Connect your Mac to shared computers and servers in the macOS User Guide.

3. Use the file server to transfer files between your iPhone and computer.

4. When you're finished, disconnect your iPhone from the file server by tapping ⏏ next to the server.

Transfer files with a cloud storage service like Box or Dropbox

Note: Subscription fees might apply.

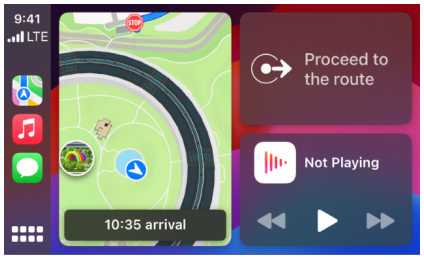
1. On your iPhone or computer, follow the instructions from your cloud storage service to upload the files you want to share.

2. To access your shared files on iPhone, open Files, tap Browse at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the storage service below Locations.

   To access the shared files on a computer, follow the service's instructions.

Intro to CarPlay and iPhone

Connect your iPhone to CarPlay to get turn-by-turn directions, make phone calls, listen to music, check your calendar, and more—all from your vehicle's display.



Note: CarPlay isn't available in all countries or regions (see the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website).

CarPlay is available on select automobiles (see the CarPlay Available Models website) and on select aftermarket navigation systems.

WARNING: For important information about avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see Important safety information for iPhone.

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Connect iPhone to CarPlay

Set up CarPlay by connecting your iPhone and your vehicle using your vehicle's USB port or its wireless capability.

Ensure that Siri is enabled on iPhone

If Siri is not enabled on your iPhone, go to Settings > Siri & Search, then turn on one of the following:

- Press Side Button for Siri (on an iPhone with Face ID)
- Press Home for Siri (on other iPhone models)

Connect using USB

Connect iPhone to your vehicle's USB port using an Apple-approved Lightning or USB-C to USB cable.

The USB port may be labeled with the CarPlay logo or an image of a smartphone.

Connect wirelessly

1. On a vehicle that supports wireless CarPlay, do one of the following (see your owner's guide for detailed instructions):
   - Press and hold the voice command button on your steering wheel.
   - Make sure your vehicle is in wireless or Bluetooth pairing mode.
2. On your iPhone, go to Settings > General > CarPlay > Available Cars.
3. Choose your vehicle.

Note: Some vehicles that support wireless CarPlay allow you to pair simply by plugging iPhone into your vehicle's USB port using a Lightning or USB-C to USB cable. If supported, after you start CarPlay using USB, you're asked if you want to pair wireless CarPlay for future use. If you agree, the next time you go for a drive, iPhone connects wirelessly to CarPlay automatically.

Note: After connecting to CarPlay on some electric vehicles, use the Maps app to identify the vehicle for EV routing. See Set up electric vehicle routing in Maps on iPhone.

On some vehicle models, CarPlay Home appears automatically when you connect iPhone.

If CarPlay Home doesn't appear, select the CarPlay logo on your vehicle's display.

See also

Use Siri to Control CarPlay

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Intro to CarPlay

Next
Use Siri

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Use Siri to Control CarPlay

CarPlay uses Siri voice control, so you can ask for what you want. (You can also use your car's built-in controls to control CarPlay.)

Use Siri on CarPlay

1. Do one of the following until Siri beeps:

   - Press and hold the voice command button on the steering wheel.
   - Touch and hold the CarPlay Dashboard or CarPlay Home button on a touchscreen displaying CarPlay.
   - You can also say "Hey Siri" to activate Siri in supported vehicles.

2. Use Siri to ask a question or to do something.

   Siri: Say something like:

   - "Get directions to the nearest coffee shop"
   - "Call Eliza Block"
   - "Play more songs like this one"
   - "Show me the map"
   - "What's my next meeting?"
   - "What's the weather for today?"
   - "Remind me to pack an umbrella when I get home"

Tip: Instead of waiting for Siri to notice that you've stopped talking, you can press and continue to hold the voice command button on the steering wheel while you speak, then release it when you finish.

Siri also makes suggestions in CarPlay for what you might want to do next, such as operate the garage door when you arrive home or drive to your next meeting. See About Siri Suggestions.

See also

Use your vehicle's built-in controls to control CarPlay

Use your vehicle's built-in controls to control CarPlay

CarPlay works with your vehicle's built-in controls—for example, a touchscreen, a rotary knob, or a touchpad. To learn how to operate your display, see the owner's guide that came with your vehicle. (You can also use Siri to control CarPlay.)

- *Open an app:* Tap the app on the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob to select the app, then press the knob.
- *Switch between CarPlay Dashboard and CarPlay Home:* CarPlay Dashboard displays several items you likely want to view or control, such as driving directions, audio playback, and suggestions from Siri. CarPlay Home shows all your CarPlay apps organized into pages.

  To go to CarPlay Home, tap on the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob to select , then press the knob.

  To go to CarPlay Dashboard, tap , or turn the rotary knob to select , then press the knob.
- *Return to your vehicle's Home Screen:* Select the icon with your vehicle's logo if it appears on CarPlay Home or, if available, the physical Home button on your radio.
- *Return to a recently used app:* Tap its icon on the edge of the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob to the icon, then press the knob.
- *View additional apps:* If you have more than eight apps, some may appear on another page of CarPlay Home. To view them, swipe left on the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob. (See Use other apps with CarPlay.)
- *Scroll quickly through a list:* Tap the letters in the list on the right side of the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob.
- *Control audio playback:* Use the audio playback controls on CarPlay Dashboard. Or from CarPlay Home, select Now Playing to view and control the current audio app.

See also

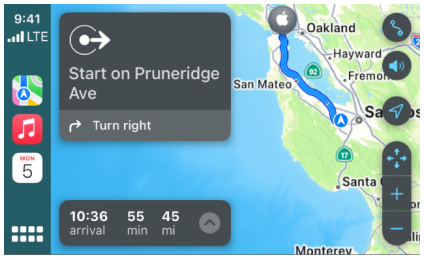
Get turn-by-turn directions with CarPlay

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Get turn-by-turn directions with CarPlay

Use Siri or open Maps to get turn-by-turn directions, traffic conditions, and estimated travel time (not available in all regions).

Note: To get directions, iPhone must be connected to the internet, and Location Services must be on. (See Control the location information you share on iPhone.)



Find a route

CarPlay generates likely destinations using addresses from your email, text messages, contacts, and calendars—as well as places you frequent. You can also search for a location, use locations you saved as favorites and in collections, and find nearby attractions and services.

Siri: Say something like:

- "Find a gas station"
- "Give me directions home"
- "Take me to the Golden Gate Bridge"
- "Find a charging station"
- "Find coffee near me"

Learn how to use Siri

Or you can use your vehicle's built-in controls to open Maps in CarPlay and select a route.

Note: If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard and Maps doesn't appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Maps.

1. With Maps open in CarPlay, do one of the following:
   - Select a place you saved as a favorite. (See Save favorite places in Maps on iPhone.)
   - Select Destinations, then select a recent destination or scroll to select a destination you saved in a collection. (See Organize places in My Guides in Maps on iPhone.)
   - Select Search, then select to speak a search phrase, or select to use the onscreen keyboard (if available). You can also select a destination from a category of nearby services, such as Parking or Restaurants.
2. If multiple routes appear, use your vehicle's controls to select the route you prefer.
3. To call your destination before you leave, select .
4. To start turn-by-turn directions, select Go.

Maps shows directions from your current location.

When you arrive at your destination and exit your vehicle, a parked car marker appears in Maps on iPhone so you can easily find your way back to your vehicle.

Follow turn-by-turn directions

As CarPlay follows your progress, it speaks turn-by-turn directions to your destination.

Do any of the following at any time during your trip:

- *Add a stop to your driving directions:* Select the ETA display at the bottom left, select Add Stop, then choose a destination or use Siri to search for one.
- *End directions at any time:* Say something to Siri like "Stop navigating," or select the estimated time of arrival (ETA) display at the bottom left, then choose End Route.
- *Mute turn-by-turn directions:* Tap , then choose to mute all directions.
- *Mute turn-by-turn directions, except for alerts and hazards:* Tap , then choose .
- *Make a quick detour:* Say something to Siri like "Find a gas station." Or select the ETA display, select Search, select a suggested service, then choose a destination.
- *Share your ETA:* Select the ETA display at the bottom left, select Share ETA, then choose one or more suggested contacts.

  People using devices with iOS 13.1, iPadOS 13.1, or later receive a Maps notification with your ETA, and they can track your progress in Maps. People using devices with earlier versions receive the notification through iMessage. People using other mobile devices receive an SMS message. (Standard carrier data and text rates may apply.)

  To stop sending ETA information, select Sharing ETA at the bottom of the CarPlay screen, then choose a contact.

Note: For navigation apps that support the CarPlay Dashboard, Dashboard shows the last navigation app opened if no apps are navigating, the one that is actively navigating, or the last opened and actively navigating app if multiple apps are navigating.

See also

Report traffic incidents in CarPlay

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use your vehicle's built-in controls

Next
Report traffic incidents

Support › iPhone User Guide › Get turn-by-turn directions with CarPlay

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Report traffic incidents in CarPlay

In select regions and countries, you can report accidents, hazards, speed checks, and road work (features vary by region and country).

Report an incident

Siri: Say something like:

- "Report an accident"
- "There's something on the road"
- "There's a speed check here"

Learn how to use Siri

Or with turn-by-turn directions showing, you can select , then choose from one of the available options.

Apple evaluates incoming incident reports. When there's a high level of confidence in the reports, incident markers for Accident, Hazard, and Road Work are displayed in Maps for other users.

Note: Speed checks are not displayed with incident markers. Instead, notifications for speed checks appear when you follow turn-by-turn directions.

Report on the status of a hazard or accident

Incident markers show information about hazards and accidents . When you're near their locations, you can report their status.

Siri: Say something like: "The hazard is gone" or "Clear the accident." Learn how to use Siri.

Or, you can do the following:

1. Select the incident marker.
2. Select Cleared or Still Here.

   Note: You can't clear reports of speed checks.

Apple evaluates incoming incident reports. When there's a high level of confidence in reports that an incident has been cleared, its incident marker is removed from Maps.

Note: Apple is committed to keeping personal information safe and private. To learn more, go to Settings > Maps, then tap About Apple Maps and Privacy.

See also

Change the map view in CarPlay

Change the map view in CarPlay

Find your location on a map, zoom in and out, and move the map to see the detail you need.

When you follow turn-by-turn directions, you can tap the touchscreen or turn the rotary knob, then do one of the following:

- *Switch between detailed and high-level views:* To see a detailed 3D map with your heading at the top of the screen, select . To see the route overview in 2D with north at the top of the screen, select .
- *Zoom in or out:* Select + or −.
- *Scroll the map:* Select , then select a direction arrow on one of the edges of the screen. To return to turn-by-turn directions, tap Resume.

  On some touchscreens, you can also drag the map to scroll it.

You can also change the map view when not following directions. Tap the touchscreen or turn the rotary knob, then do one of the following:

- *Show your current location:* Tap . Your position is marked in the middle of the map.
- *View a 3D map:* Tap 3D. To return to a 2D map, tap 2D.
- *Show your heading at the top of the screen:* Tap . To resume showing north at the top, tap
- *Zoom in or out:* Select + or −.
- *Scroll the map:* Select , then select a direction arrow at the edges of the screen. When finished, tap Done.

See also

Make and receive phone calls with CarPlay

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Make and receive phone calls with CarPlay

Use CarPlay to make phone calls and listen to voicemail from your iPhone.

Siri: Say something like: “Call Eliza.” Learn how to use Siri.

Or you can use your vehicle’s built-in controls to help make a call.

Open Phone in CarPlay, then select an option.

Note: If you’re viewing CarPlay Dashboard and Phone doesn’t appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Phone.

See also

Play music with CarPlay

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Play music with CarPlay

Use Siri or open Music in CarPlay to play music that's available on your iPhone—including songs, artists, albums, playlists, and Radio.

Siri: Say something like:

- "Let's hear the Acoustic playlist"
- "Play 'You Need to Calm Down' by Taylor Swift"
- "Play more songs like this one"
- "Play the rest of this album"
- "Skip this song"
- "Repeat this song"
- "Shuffle this playlist"
- "Tune into ESPN Radio"

Learn how to use Siri

If Siri doesn't find what you asked for, be more specific. For example, say "Play the radio station 'Pure Pop'" rather than saying "Play 'Pure Pop.'"

You can also use the controls on your vehicle's steering wheel, buttons on the Now Playing screen, and CarPlay Dashboard to control music playback.

You can also play music together using SharePlay, see Play music together in the car with iPhone.

Note: If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard, tap to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Music.

Button	Description
	Pause playback.
	Play the current song.
	Skip to the next song. When pressed and held, fast forward through the current song.
	Return to the song's beginning. When pressed again, return to the previous song. When pressed and held, rewind through the current song.
	Play songs in random order.
	Continually repeat the current song.
	Display controls to create a custom station based on the current song and to rate the current song.
Up Next	Display a list of songs queued for playback. (You can select a song from the list to skip the songs that proceed it.)

On some systems, Now Playing displays only a partial list of choices while you're driving. To choose among options not in the list, select More at the bottom of the screen, or use Siri by pressing and holding the voice command button on your steering wheel.

See also

View your Calendar with CarPlay

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Make phone calls

Next
View your calendar

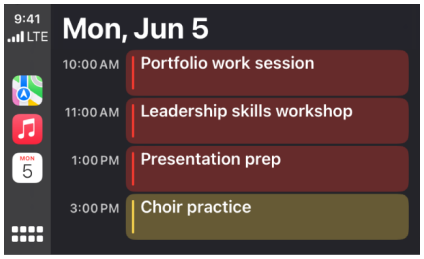
Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

View your Calendar with CarPlay

Use Siri or open Calendar in CarPlay to view events, appointments, and meetings.

Siri: Say something like: “Do I have a meeting at 10?” or “Where is my 3:30 meeting?” Learn how to use Siri.

Upcoming events appear in CarPlay Dashboard. You can also use your vehicle’s built-in controls to open Calendar in CarPlay to view upcoming events.



Note: If you’re viewing CarPlay Dashboard, tap to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Calendar.

To see more information about an event, select it. Options may allow you to get directions to the event or phone into it.

See also

Send and receive text messages with CarPlay

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Send and receive text messages with CarPlay

Use CarPlay to send, hear, and reply to text messages from your iPhone.

Siri: Say something like:

- "Text my wife"
- "Text Eliza Block I'm in traffic and I'll be 15 minutes late to the meeting"
- "Read my text messages"

Learn how to use Siri

Or you can use your vehicle's built-in controls to help send and receive messages. Open Messages in CarPlay, then do one of the following:

- *Hear unread messages or respond to a thread:* Select a conversation.
- *Start a new conversation:* Select .
- *Automatically send messages:* Skip the confirmation step when sending messages with Siri to send messages automatically, unless you ask to change or cancel it.

  In CarPlay, go to Settings > Siri and Suggestions, then select Automatically Send Messages.

Note: If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard and Messages doesn't appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Messages.

See also

Announce incoming text messages with CarPlay

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Announce incoming text messages with CarPlay

Use CarPlay to have Siri automatically read your incoming text messages and listen for your response.

1. On your iPhone, go to Settings > Siri & Search > Announce Notifications, then turn on Announce Notifications.
2. Tap CarPlay, then choose any of the following:
   - *Announce New Messages:* CarPlay starts your drive with Announce Messages active and reads your incoming text messages aloud.
   - *Silence New Messages:* CarPlay starts your drive with Announce Messages silenced and doesn't read incoming text messages automatically.
   - *Remember Previous Setting:* CarPlay remembers whether Announce Messages were active or silenced from the previous drive.

Note: You can also enable or disable Announce Messages directly in CarPlay by tapping Announce when Siri reads an incoming text message. See Have Siri announce notifications.

See also

Play podcasts with CarPlay

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Play podcasts with CarPlay

Use CarPlay to play the podcasts that are on your iPhone.

You can use your vehicles's built-in controls to open Podcasts and select a podcast to play.

Note: If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard, tap to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Podcasts.

You can also use the controls on your vehicle's steering wheel, the buttons on the Now Playing screen, and CarPlay Dashboard to control podcast playback.

Button	Description
	Play
	Pause
	Jump back 15 seconds
	Jump forward 30 seconds
	Choose a faster or slower playback speed

See also

Play audiobooks with CarPlay

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Play audiobooks with CarPlay

Use CarPlay to play the audiobooks that are on your iPhone.

Siri: Say something like: “Play Pride and Prejudice audiobook” or “Rewind 15 seconds.” Learn how to use Siri.

Or you can use your vehicles’s built-in controls to open Audiobooks and select a book to play. You can also use the controls on your vehicle’s steering wheel, buttons on the Now Playing screen, and CarPlay Dashboard to control audiobook playback.

Note: If you’re viewing CarPlay Dashboard, tap to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Audiobooks.

See also

Listen to news stories with CarPlay

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Listen to news stories with CarPlay

Use CarPlay to listen to Apple News Today audio briefings and, if you're an Apple News+ subscriber, audio versions of select news stories. (If you aren't a subscriber, you can listen to story previews.)

You can use your vehicles's built-in controls to open News and select a story to play.

Note: If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard and News doesn't appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including News.

You can also use the controls on your vehicle's steering wheel, the buttons on the Now Playing screen, and CarPlay Dashboard to control playback.

Button	Description
	Pause playback.
	Play the current story.
	Skip to the next story.
15	Jump back 15 seconds.
1×	Choose a faster or slower playback speed.

Note: CarPlay isn't available in all countries or regions (see the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website).

See also

Control your home from CarPlay

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Control your home from CarPlay

You can use suggestions from Siri that appear on CarPlay Dashboard or use Siri directly to control HomeKit-enabled accessories, such as garage doors, lights, and door locks.

Siri: Say something like:

- “Open the garage door”
- “Did I leave the garage door open?”
- “Close the garage door”
- “Lock the front door”
- “Turn on the lights”
- “Turn off the lights”

Learn how to use Siri

See also

Use other apps with CarPlay

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Use other apps with CarPlay

You can use Siri with CarPlay to access many of the apps on iPhone, including Reminders, Clock, Weather, and more.

Siri: Say something like:

- "Remind me to pack an umbrella when I get home"
- "Add milk to my grocery list"
- "Set my alarm for 6:00 a.m. tomorrow"
- "What's the weather for today?"

Learn how to use Siri

CarPlay works with select third-party apps that you download to your iPhone. Compatible apps—including audio, navigation, messaging, and voice-calling apps, and apps made by your vehicle manufacturer—show up automatically on CarPlay Home and can be controlled with Siri. For example, you can use Siri to give you directions from your favorite navigation app. CarPlay also works with additional third-party apps for EV charging, parking, and quick food ordering.

Note: Compatible third-party navigation apps appear on CarPlay Dashboard while in use. When you're not actively navigating, or if you're navigating using more than one app, CarPlay Dashboard displays the last compatible navigation app that was used.

See also

Rearrange the icons on CarPlay Home

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Rearrange the icons on CarPlay Home

1. When you're not operating your vehicle, open Settings on your iPhone, go to General > CarPlay, select your vehicle, then tap Customize.
2. Do one of the following:
   - *Move an icon:* Drag ☰ up or down in the list.
   - *Remove an icon:* Tap ⊖ next to the icon, then tap Remove.

     Only icons that have ⊖ next to them can be removed.
   - *Add an icon back to CarPlay:* Below More Apps at the bottom of the page, tap ⊕ next to the icon.

Your icon changes appear on CarPlay Home the next time you connect to CarPlay.

See also

Change settings in CarPlay

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Change settings in CarPlay

In Settings in CarPlay, you can change the Wallpaper, turn on Driving Focus, change how CarPlay looks on the display, turn suggestions in CarPlay Dashboard on or off, and show or hide album art.

Use the Driving Focus with CarPlay

The Driving Focus helps you stay focused on the road. While your iPhone is connected to CarPlay and Driving Focus is on, notifications and text messages are silenced or limited.

1. Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls.

   Note: If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard and Settings doesn't appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Settings.

2. Go to Driving Focus, then select Activate With CarPlay.

If you receive a Driving Focus notification when you're not driving (for example, when you're a passenger) you can turn it off—tap the notification, then tap "I'm not driving."

Switch the appearance of CarPlay

CarPlay is set to dark appearance by default in most vehicles. If you prefer to have CarPlay automatically switch between dark and light appearance, do the following:

1. Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls.
2. Select Appearance.
3. Select Always Dark.

The dark appearance is optimized for viewing in low-light environments, such as at night.

Change the wallpaper in CarPlay

Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls, select Wallpaper, then choose one of the available options.

Hide or show suggestions in CarPlay Dashboard

Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls, then turn Suggestions in CarPlay off or on.

Hide or show album art

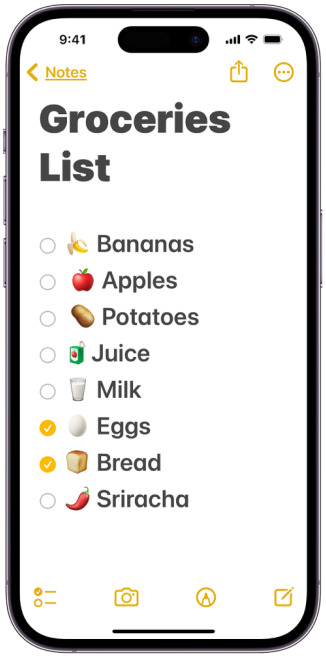
Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls, then turn Show Album Art off or on.

Get started with accessibility features on iPhone

iPhone provides many accessibility features and settings to support your vision, mobility, hearing, speech, and cognitive needs.

These features make your iPhone easier to use, whether you need them temporarily or on an ongoing basis.

You can set many of these up when you turn on your iPhone for the first time (see Turn on accessibility features to set up your iPhone), or you can turn them on later.



Vision

You can change screen colors and text size, zoom in, reduce transparency, and more. You can also hear what's onscreen, or use VoiceOver to interact with your iPhone.

Learn more about vision-related accessibility features ›

Mobility

You can navigate your iPhone hands-free, or you can use your voice or connect a switch, mouse, or other input. You can also control other devices, customize gestures and alerts, and adjust how sensitively iPhone responds to your tap or touch.

Learn more about mobility-related accessibility features ›

Hearing

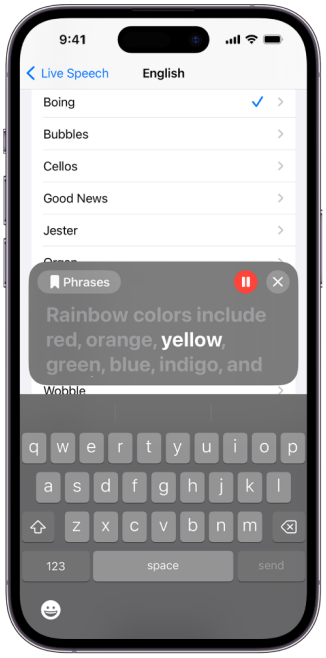
You can adjust audio for noisier contexts or turn speech into text. You can also change how iPhone alerts you, or have it recognize sounds.

Learn more about hearing-related accessibility features ›

Speech

You can communicate with family, friends, and colleagues in the way that works best for you, whether you're nonspeaking, at risk of speech loss, or someone with a speech disability.

Learn more about speech-related accessibility features ›



Cognitive

You can reduce distraction and sensory stimulus or understand audio and text better by pairing them with one another. You can also get help with everyday tasks and sign-ins or let iPhone type for you. iPhone makes it easier to identify people and places and store what you might forget.

Learn more about cognitive-related accessibility features ›

You can also set up Assistive Access, which gives those with cognitive disabilities the option to perform the most common tasks, such as taking photos and communicating with their inner circle of family and friends, while reducing cognitive load and offering more focused choices. See the Assistive Access User Guide.

Siri is often the easiest way to start using accessibility features with iPhone.

Siri: Say something like: "Turn on VoiceOver" or "Turn off VoiceOver." Learn how to use Siri.

You can also use Control Center or Accessibility Shortcut to turn on accessibility features quickly.

See also

Apple Accessibility website

Change Siri accessibility settings on iPhone

Turn on accessibility features to set up your iPhone

iPhone has accessibility features that you can turn on the first time you turn on your iPhone, to make it easier to set up and personalize other iPhone features.

Hear what's onscreen with VoiceOver

VoiceOver—a gesture-based screen reader—tells you what's happening onscreen.

1. After iPhone has turned on, triple-click the side button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or triple-click the Home button (on other iPhone models) to turn on VoiceOver.
2. Do any of the following and more:

   - *Speak the entire screen:* Swipe up with two fingers.
   - *Find out what you're touching:* Touch the screen or drag your finger over it. VoiceOver speaks the name of the item your finger is on, including icons and text. Swipe right to elect the next item. Tap with four fingers near the top to select the first item on the screen.
   - *Select an item:* Tap to select a button or link, and activate it by double-tapping.
   - *Scroll to another page:* Swipe with three fingers.
   - *Open the onscreen rotor:* Turn two fingers on the screen, as if rotating a dial. See Control VoiceOver using the rotor on iPhone.

Note: When VoiceOver is on, basic gestures don't work as usual. See Use VoiceOver gestures on iPhone and Operate iPhone when VoiceOver is on.

You can adjust audio options, language, voice, speaking rate, how much detail VoiceOver provides, and more in VoiceOver settings.

Zoom in on part of the screen

1. Double-tap the screen with three fingers, then use the slider to set a magnification level.
2. Use three fingers to scroll around the zoomed-in screen.

See Zoom in on the iPhone screen.

Turn on other features during setup

You can turn on additional accessibility features from the Quick Start screen.

Tap to turn on or adjust settings for any of the following:

- VoiceOver
- Zoom

- Display & Text Size
- Motion
- Spoken Content
- Touch (such as AssistiveTouch and Touch Accommodations, Switch Control, or any external keyboard.)

If you've set up accessibility features on an iPhone or iPad that's nearby, you can transfer your settings to your new iPhone with Quick Start—just follow the onscreen instructions. See Turn on and set up your iPhone. (See Move from an Android device to iPhone if your previous device wasn't made by Apple.)

See also

Turn on and set up iPhone

Get started with accessibility features on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Get started with accessibility features

Next
Change Siri accessibility settings

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Change Siri accessibility settings on iPhone

You can change how quickly or when Siri responds, use text to make requests to Siri, have Siri audibly share notifications, and announce and end calls.

Tell Siri when and how to respond to requests

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Siri.
2. Do any of the following:
   - *Set how long Siri waits for you to finish speaking:* Below Siri Pause Time, choose Default, Longer, or Longest.
   - *Change how fast Siri speaks:* Adjust the slider below Speaking Rate.
   - *Decide when Siri responds aloud or in text:* Choose an option below Spoken Responses.
   - *Use Siri even when iPhone is covered or facing down:* Turn on Always Listen for "Hey Siri."

     To have Siri respond when iPhone is facing up, go to Settings > Siri & Search, and turn on Listen for "Siri" or "Hey Siri."

Type instead of speak to Siri

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Siri, then turn on Type to Siri.
2. To make a request, activate Siri, then interact with Siri using the keyboard and text field.

Announce calls and notifications for specific apps

You can have Siri announce notifications and calls on your iPhone speaker, supported headphones, when using CarPlay, and on MFi hearing devices.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Siri, then turn on Announce Notifications on Speaker.
2. Tap Announce Notifications, then for each app, choose whether to announce all notifications or only time-sensitive notifications.

End phone and FaceTime calls

You can have Siri announce and answer calls, and then end calls.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Siri, tap Call Hangup, then turn on Call Hangup.

   Note: Available on iPhone 11, iPhone SE (2nd generation), and later. Requires download of speech models. Not available in all languages.
2. To end a call, say something like:

   Siri: "Hang up"

(Participants on the call will hear you.)

See also Route and automatically answer calls on iPhone.

See also

Use Siri on iPhone

Add Siri Shortcuts on iPhone

Change Siri settings on iPhone

Use Voice Control to interact with iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Turn on accessibility features for setup

Next
Open features with Accessibility Shortcut

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Quickly open features with Accessibility Shortcut on iPhone

When you add features to Accessibility Shortcut, just triple-click a physical button and tap to quickly open the feature you want.

Add features to Accessibility Shortcut

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Accessibility Shortcut, then tap to select the features you use the most.

   Note: To add some features—like Guided Access or Assistive Access—to Accessibility Shortcut, you must first turn them on.

2. To rearrange the order they appear, drag to move a feature up or down.

Open Accessibility Shortcut

1. Triple-click one of the following:

   - The side button (on an iPhone with Face ID)
   - The Home button (on other iPhone models)

2. Tap the feature you want to turn on or off.

3. To slow down the double-click or triple-click speed, see Adjust settings for the side or Home button on iPhone.

When Assistive Access is on, Accessibility Shortcut can't be opened. To open it while Guided Access is on, you must first turn on Accessibility Shortcut when you set up Guided Access.

You can also add Accessibility Shortcut to Control Center, then reach your shortcuts with an onscreen swipe instead of triple-clicking a physical button. (Magnifier, Text Size, Guided Access, and Hearing can be added directly to Control Center.)

Tip: Many accessibility features can be turned on and off with Siri. Learn how to use Siri.

See also

Tap the back of iPhone to perform actions or shortcuts

Use Shortcuts to automate tasks on iPhone

Use AssistiveTouch on iPhone

Set up vision-related accessibility features on iPhone

In the Accessibility pane of Settings, you can customize options to best suit your vision needs. You can change screen colors and text size, zoom in, use VoiceOver to hear the content of your screen read aloud to you, and more.

Action	Related features and settings
Change colors	• Change colors • Dark Mode
Read text more easily	• Zoom • Legibility • Magnifier
Make onscreen items easier to see	• Change colors • Onscreen Motion • Pointer
Hear what's onscreen	• Audio descriptions • Spoken content • VoiceOver
Use braille	• Braille display
Speak to get things done	• Dictation • Siri • Shortcuts

See also

Get started with accessibility features on iPhone

Set up mobility-related accessibility features on iPhone

Zoom in on the iPhone screen

In many apps, you can zoom in or out on specific items. For example, you can double-tap or pinch to look closer in Photos or expand webpage columns in Safari. You can also use the Zoom feature to magnify the screen no matter what you're doing. You can magnify the entire screen (Full Screen Zoom) or magnify only part of the screen with a resizable lens (Window Zoom). And, you can use Zoom together with VoiceOver.

Set up Zoom

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Zoom, then turn on Zoom.
2. Adjust any of the following:
   - *Follow Focus:* Track your selections, the text insertion point, and your typing.
   - *Smart Typing:* Switch to Window Zoom when a keyboard appears.
   - *Keyboard Shortcuts:* Control Zoom using shortcuts on an external keyboard.
   - *Zoom Controller:* Turn the controller on, set controller actions, and adjust the color and opacity.
   - *Zoom Region:* Choose Full Screen Zoom or Window Zoom.
   - *Zoom Filter:* Choose None, Inverted, Grayscale, Grayscale Inverted, or Low Light.
   - *Maximum Zoom Level:* Drag the slider to adjust the level.
3. If you use iPhone with a pointer device, you can also set the following below Pointer Control:
   - *Zoom Pan:* Choose Continuous, Centered, or Edges to set how the screen image moves with the pointer.

- *Adjust Size with Zoom:* Allow the pointer to scale with zoom.

4. To add Zoom to Accessibility Shortcut, go to Settings > Accessibility > Accessibility Shortcut, then tap Zoom.

Use Zoom

1. Double-tap the screen with three fingers or use Accessibility Shortcut to turn on Zoom.
2. To see more of the screen, do any of the following:

   - *Adjust the magnification:* Double-tap the screen with three fingers (without lifting your fingers after the second tap), then drag up or down. Or triple-tap with three fingers, then drag the Zoom Level slider.
   - *Move the Zoom lens:* (Window Zoom) Drag the handle at the bottom of the Zoom lens.
   - *Pan to another area:* (Full Screen Zoom) Drag the screen with three fingers.

3. To adjust the settings with the Zoom menu, triple-tap with three fingers, then adjust any of the following:

   - *Choose Region:* Choose Full Screen Zoom or Window Zoom.
   - *Resize Lens:* (Window Zoom) Tap Resize Lens, then drag any of the round handles that appear.
   - *Choose Filter:* Choose Inverted, Grayscale, Grayscale Inverted, or Low Light.
   - *Show Controller:* Show the Zoom Controller.

4. To use the Zoom Controller, do any of the following:

   - *Show the Zoom menu:* Tap the controller.
   - *Zoom in or out:* Double-tap the controller.
   - *Pan:* When zoomed in, drag the controller.

While using Zoom with Magic Keyboard, the Zoom region follows the insertion point, keeping it in the center of the screen. See Pair Magic Keyboard with iPhone.

To turn off Zoom, double-tap the screen with three fingers or use Accessibility Shortcut.

See also

Magnify the iPhone screen with Display Zoom

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Overview

Next
Change color and brightness

Support > iPhone User Guide > Zoom in on the iPhone screen

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Change color on iPhone to make it easier to see items onscreen

To make it easier to see what's on your iPhone screen, you can invert and filter colors or make transparent items solid.

Tip: Quickly set brightness with the slider in Control Center.

Invert colors

You can invert colors on the iPhone screen to make it easier to read text. This can be especially useful in apps and websites that don't support Dark Mode.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Turn on one of the following:
   - *Smart Invert:* Reverse colors everywhere except images.
   - *Classic Invert:* Reverse all the colors onscreen.

Filter colors to adjust hues

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Tap Color Filters, turn on Color Filters, then tap a color filter to apply it.

   You can drag any slider that appears to adjust the intensity or hue. The pencils reflect how the filter affects a range of colors.

   Note: Color filters can change the look of images and videos.

Turn on Reduce White Point to tone down the intensity of bright colors.

To have screen colors become warmer as it gets dark out, use Night Shift. Night Shift automatically removes inverted colors and color filter effects (except grayscale).

Make transparent items solid

Some backgrounds appear transparent or blurred by default. You can make these transparent backgrounds opaque by giving them a solid color. In this way you simplify those parts of your screen and make them easier to see.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Turn on Reduce Transparency.

Differentiate without color

Some screen items rely on color to convey information. You can replace these with alternative ways to tell them apart, like shapes or text.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Turn on Differentiate Without Color.

Use ones and zeros for on/off switches

Switches turn green when they are on. You can also have switches use “1” to indicate when they’re on and “0” to indicate when they’re off.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Turn on On/Off Labels.

To apply these settings to only the contents of the zoom window, see Zoom in on the iPhone screen.

You can also use Magnifier to change the colors you see in your environment. See Change Magnifier settings on iPhone.

See also

Magnify the iPhone screen with Display Zoom

Adjust the screen brightness and color on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Zoom in

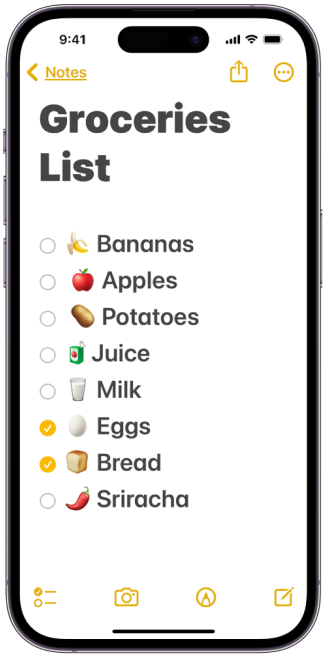
Next
Make text more legible

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Make text more legible on iPhone

You can change the weight, size, and darkness to make it easier to read text on your iPhone screen. You can also underline text you can tap.

Tip: Quickly set text size when you add it to Control Center.



Make text easier to read

You can adjust your preferred text weight, size, and darkness in apps that support Dynamic Type, such as Settings, Calendar, Contacts, Mail, Messages, and Notes.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Do any of following:

   - *Make text bigger:* Tap Larger Text, then drag the slider to adjust the text size (turn on Larger Accessibility Sizes to show more size options).

     You can also go to Settings > Display & Brightness > Display Zoom, then select Larger Text to see larger controls.

   - *Make text heavier:* Turn on Bold Text.

   - *Make text darker:* Turn on Increase Contrast to improve legibility by making the text stand out more.

   - *Identify tappable text:* Turn on Button Shapes to underline any text that performs an action when you tap it.

You can also enlarge text on your screen by using Zoom or in your environment with Magnifier.

Adjust the text size while you're using an app

1. Open Control Center, then tap AA.

   (If you don't see AA, add it to Control Center—go to Settings > Control Center, then tap next to Text Size.)

2. Drag the slider up or down to increase or decrease the text size.

To change the text size for all apps, tap All Apps at the bottom of the screen.

To apply these settings to only the contents of the zoom window, see Zoom in on the iPhone screen.

If you're using a mouse or other device with an onscreen pointer and have trouble finding the pointer on the screen, you can make it bigger. See Make the pointer easier to see when using a mouse or trackpad with iPhone.

See also

Set up vision-related accessibility features on iPhone

Customize visual accessibility settings for specific apps on iPhone

Change color on iPhone to make it easier to see items onscreen

Stop or reduce onscreen motion on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Change color and brightness

Next
Reduce onscreen motion

Support > iPhone User Guide > Make text more legible on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Stop or reduce onscreen motion on iPhone

If you don't want visual motion on your iPhone screen, you can stop or reduce the movement of some screen elements, such as:

- Parallax effect of wallpaper, apps, and alerts
- Screen transitions
- Siri animations
- Typing autocompletion
- Animated full-screen and bubble effects in the Messages app
- Animated images on the Web and in apps

---

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Motion.
2. These settings stop or reduce motion:
   - *Reduce Motion:* Turn on. (When off, more items in the user interface animate, such as the parallax effect of icons.)
   - *Auto-Play Message Effects:* Turn off. (When on, the Messages app automatically plays full-screen effects. If you turn this setting off, you can still manually play effects by tapping Replay below the message bubble.)
   - *Auto-Play Video Previews:* Turn off. (When on, it allows apps such as the App Store to automatically play video previews.)
   - *Auto-Play Animated Images:* Turn off. (When on, rapid animated images and moving elements such as GIFs in Messages and Safari play automatically.)
   - *Dim Flashing Lights:* Turn on. (The display of media automatically dims when flashes or strobe effects are detected.)
   - *Limit Frame Rate:* Turn on. (On models with ProMotion display technology, this limits the maximum frame rate of the display to 60 frames per second.

To apply these effects to specific apps, see Customize visual accessibility settings for specific apps on iPhone.

Important: Your iPhone uses an on-device algorithm to detect flashing or strobing lights included in supported video content and automatically dims them on your iPhone in real time. Motion settings should not be relied upon in circumstances where you could be harmed or injured, in high-risk situations, or for the treatment of any medical condition.

See also

Turn off vibration on iPhone

Set up a Focus on iPhone

Customize visual accessibility settings for specific apps on iPhone

You can choose different color, text size, and motion settings for certain apps, the Home Screen, and Settings.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Per-App Settings.
2. Tap Add App, then choose an app, Home Screen, or Settings.
3. Tap the app, Home Screen, or Settings, then adjust the settings.

See also

Change color on iPhone to make it easier to see items onscreen

Make text more legible on iPhone

Stop or reduce onscreen motion on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Hear iPhone speak the screen, selected text, and typing feedback

Even if VoiceOver is turned off, you can have iPhone speak selected text or the entire screen. iPhone can also provide feedback and speak text corrections and suggestions as you type.

Choose modes for Spoken Content

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Spoken Content.
2. Turn on any of the following:
   - *Speak Selection:* Select what you want spoken.
   - *Speak Screen:* Have iPhone read everything on screen.
   - *Speech Controller:* Quickly access Speak Screen and Speak on Touch when Speak Screen is on.
   - *Highlight Content:* Move a cursor over words or sentences as you listen.
   - *Typing Feedback:* Have iPhone speak each character, entire words, autocorrections, autocapitalizations, and typing predictions.

     (To hear typing predictions, you also need to go to Settings > General > Keyboard, then turn on Predictive.)

Change how Spoken Content sounds

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Spoken Content.
2. Adjust any of the following:
   - *Voices:* Choose a voice and dialect.
   - *Speaking Rate:* Drag the slider.
   - *Pronunciations:* Dictate or spell out how you want certain phrases to be spoken.

Hear iPhone speak

Siri: Say something like: "Speak screen." Learn how to use Siri.

Or do any of the following:

- *Hear selected text:* Select the text, then tap Speak.
- *Hear the entire screen:* Swipe down with two fingers from the top of the screen. Use the controls that appear to pause speaking or adjust the rate.
- *Hear typing feedback:* Start typing. To hear typing predictions (when turned on), touch and hold each word.

See also

Set up vision-related accessibility features on iPhone

Turn on and practice VoiceOver on iPhone

Read aloud text and labels around you using Magnifier on iPhone

Hear audio descriptions for video content on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Customize per-app visual settings

Next
Hear audio descriptions

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Hear audio descriptions for video content on iPhone

If you can't see your screen and your content includes audio descriptions, you can listen to an audio description—a separate audio track that narrates or describes the visual content of a clip, show, or movie.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Audio Descriptions.
2. Turn on Audio Descriptions.

If you don't see audio descriptions, see the Apple Support article Turn on audio descriptions on your iPhone or iPad.

If you're a content creator and want to add audio descriptions to a file, see Add descriptive audio tracks in the Compressor User Guide.

See also

Set up vision-related accessibility features on iPhone

Stop or reduce onscreen motion on iPhone

Hear iPhone speak the screen, selected text, and typing feedback

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Turn on and practice VoiceOver on iPhone

With VoiceOver—a gesture-based screen reader—you can use iPhone even if you can't see the screen. VoiceOver gives audible descriptions of what's on your screen—from battery level, to who's calling, to which app your finger is on. You can also adjust the speaking rate and pitch to suit your needs.

When you touch the screen or drag your finger over it, VoiceOver speaks the name of the item your finger is on, including icons and text. To interact with the item, such as a button or link, or to navigate to another item, use VoiceOver gestures.

When you go to a new screen, VoiceOver plays a sound, then selects and speaks the name of the first item on the screen (typically in the top-left corner). VoiceOver tells you when the screen changes to landscape or portrait orientation, when the screen becomes dimmed or locked, and what's active on the Lock Screen when you wake iPhone.

Turn VoiceOver on or off

Important: VoiceOver changes the gestures you use to control iPhone. When VoiceOver is on, you must use VoiceOver gestures to operate iPhone.

To turn VoiceOver on or off, do any of the following:

- Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then turn the setting on or off.
- Use Control Center if you've added it there.
- Use Accessibility Shortcut if you've set it up.

Siri: Say something like: "Turn on VoiceOver" or "Turn off VoiceOver." Learn how to use Siri.

Siri knows when VoiceOver is on and often reads more information back to you than appears on the screen. You can also use VoiceOver to read what Siri shows on the screen.

Learn and practice VoiceOver gestures

You can practice VoiceOver gestures in a special area without affecting iPhone or its settings. When you practice a gesture, VoiceOver describes the gesture and the resulting action.

Try different techniques to discover which works best for you. If a gesture doesn't work, try a quicker movement, especially for a double tap or swipe gesture. To swipe, try brushing the screen quickly with your finger or fingers. For best results using multifinger gestures, touch the screen with some space between your fingers.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver.
2. Turn on VoiceOver, tap VoiceOver Practice, then double-tap to start.
3. Practice the following gestures with one, two, three, and four fingers:
    - Tap
    - Double tap
    - Triple tap

- Swipe left, right, up, or down

4. When you finish practicing, tap Done, then double-tap to exit.

See also

Change your VoiceOver settings on iPhone

Receive image descriptions of your surroundings in Magnifier on iPhone

Receive image descriptions of your surroundings in Magnifier on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Hear audio descriptions

Next
Change your VoiceOver settings

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Change your VoiceOver settings on iPhone

You can customize the settings for VoiceOver, such as the audio options, language, voice, speaking rate, and verbosity.

Adjust the VoiceOver volume and other audio options

- To increase or decrease the volume, press the volume buttons on iPhone.
- To set other audio options, go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Audio, then set options such as the following:
  - *Sounds & Haptics:* Adjust and preview sound effects and haptics.
  - *Audio Ducking:* Temporarily reduce media playback volume when VoiceOver speaks.
  - *Auto-select Speaker in Call:* Automatically switch to the speaker during a call when you're not holding iPhone to your ear.
  - *Send to HDMI:* Route audio to externally connected devices, such as an instrument amplifier or a DJ mixer.

Set the VoiceOver language

- *Change the primary language:* VoiceOver uses the same language you choose for your iPhone. To choose a different primary language, go to Settings > General > Language & Region, then tap Add Language.
- *Switch languages using the rotor:* See Control VoiceOver using the rotor on iPhone.
- *Automatically detect languages:* VoiceOver can switch voices for text in different languages. Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Speech, then turn on Detect Languages.

Adjust the speaking voice

Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then do any of the following:

- *Adjust the speaking rate:* Drag the Speaking Rate slider.
- *Choose a voice:* Tap Speech > Voice, then choose a voice. To download an enhanced voice, tap .
- *Adjust the pitch:* Tap Speech, then drag the slider. You can also turn on Pitch Change to have VoiceOver use a higher pitch when speaking the first item of a group (such as a list or table) and a lower pitch when speaking the last item of a group.
- *Specify the pronunciation of certain words:* Tap Speech > Pronunciations, tap +, enter a phrase, then dictate or spell out how you want the phrase to be pronounced.

  Note: You can dictate only if you turned on Enable Dictation in Settings > General > Keyboards.

Set how much VoiceOver tells you

Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then tap any of the following:

- *Verbosity:* Choose options to have VoiceOver speak hints, punctuation, uppercase letters, embedded links, and more. VoiceOver can even confirm rotor actions and tell you when the flashlight is turned on.

  To change how VoiceOver speaks punctuation, tap Punctuation, then choose a group. You can also create new groups—for example, a programming group in which "[" is spoken as "left brack."

- *Always Speak Notifications:* VoiceOver reads notifications, including incoming text messages as they occur, even if iPhone is locked. Unacknowledged notifications are repeated when you unlock iPhone.

Customize VoiceOver settings for an activity

You can customize a group of VoiceOver settings for an activity, such as programming. Apply the settings automatically when you open certain apps or by adjusting the rotor.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Activities.
2. Choose an existing activity or tap Add Activity.
3. Adjust settings for speech, audio, verbosity, and braille.
4. Choose Apps or Context to automatically apply the settings for this activity.

Use flat or grouped navigation

Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Navigation Style, then choose one of the following:

- *Flat:* VoiceOver moves sequentially through each item on the screen when you use the move next and previous commands.
- *Grouped:* VoiceOver moves through items and groups of items on the screen. To move into a group, use a two-finger swipe right. To move out of a group, use a two-finger swipe left.

Adjust VoiceOver visuals

Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then turn on any of the following:

- *Large Cursor:* If you have difficulty seeing the outline around the selected item, you can enlarge and thicken the outline.
- *Caption Panel:* The text spoken by VoiceOver is displayed at the bottom of the screen.

Use Quick Settings to adjust VoiceOver from anywhere on iPhone

When VoiceOver is turned on, you can access Quick Settings by doing a two-finger quadruple tap.

To customize Quick Settings, do the following:

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Quick Settings.
2. Choose the settings you want, or drag ☰ to reorder settings.

See also

Turn on and practice VoiceOver on iPhone

Use VoiceOver gestures on iPhone

When VoiceOver is on, standard touchscreen gestures have different effects, and additional gestures let you move around the screen and control individual items. VoiceOver gestures include two-, three-, and four-finger taps and swipes.

You can use different techniques to perform VoiceOver gestures. For example, you can perform a two-finger tap using two fingers on one hand, one finger on each hand, or your thumbs. Instead of selecting an item and double-tapping, you can use a split-tap gesture—touch and hold an item with one finger, then tap the screen with another finger.

Explore and speak items on the screen

To explore the screen, drag your finger over it. VoiceOver speaks the name of each item you touch.

You can also use VoiceOver gestures to explore the screen in order, from top to bottom and left to right.

Action	Gesture
Select and speak an item	Tap or touch the item
Select the next item	Swipe right
Select the previous item	Swipe left
Move into a group of items	Two-finger swipe right
Move out of a group of items	Two-finger swipe left
Select the first item on the screen	Four-finger tap near the top of the screen
Select the last item on the screen	Four-finger tap near the bottom of the screen
Speak the entire screen from the top	Two-finger swipe up
Speak the entire screen from the selected item	Two-finger swipe down
Pause or continue speaking	Two-finger tap
Speak additional information, such as the position within a list or whether text is selected	Three-finger tap

For more information about navigation styles, see Use flat or grouped navigation.

Scroll up, down, left, and right

Use VoiceOver gestures to move to another page.

Action	Gesture
Scroll up one page	Three-finger swipe down
Scroll down one page	Three-finger swipe up
Scroll left one page	Three-finger swipe right
Scroll right one page	Three-finger swipe left

Take action on an item

Use VoiceOver gestures to perform actions on an item.

Action	Gesture
Select an item	Tap
Activate the selected item	Double tap
Double-tap the selected item	Triple tap
Drag a slider	Tap the slider to select it, then swipe up or down with one finger; or double-tap and hold the slider until you hear three rising tones, then drag the slider
Start or stop the current action (for example, play or pause music or a video, take a photo in Camera, start or stop a recording, start or stop the stopwatch)	Two-finger double tap
Dismiss an alert or return to the previous screen	Two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a “z”)
Edit an item’s label to make it easier to find	Two-finger double tap and hold

Tip: As an alternative to selecting an item and double-tapping to activate it, touch and hold an item with one finger, then tap the screen with another.

Use gestures to control VoiceOver

Use these gestures to control VoiceOver.

Action	Gesture
Mute or unmute VoiceOver	Three-finger double tap. If both VoiceOver and Zoom are turned on, use the three-finger triple-tap gesture.
Turn the screen curtain on or off (When the screen curtain is on, the screen contents are active even though the display is black and appears to be turned off.)	Three-finger triple tap. If both VoiceOver and Zoom are turned on, use the three-finger quadruple-tap gesture.
Use a standard gesture	Double-tap and hold your finger on the screen until you hear three rising tones, then make the gesture. When you lift your finger, VoiceOver gestures resume. For example, to drag a volume slider with your finger instead of swiping up and down, select the slider, double-tap and hold, wait for the three tones, then slide left or right.
Open the Item Chooser	Two-finger triple tap. To move quickly through the list of items, type a name in the search field, swipe right or left to move through the list alphabetically, or tap the table index to the right of the list and swipe up or down. You can also use handwriting to select an item by writing its name. To dismiss the Item Chooser without making a selection, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z").
Open the VoiceOver quick settings	Two-finger quadruple tap.

Use the VoiceOver rotor

You can use the onscreen rotor to change VoiceOver settings, jump from one item to the next on the screen, select special input methods such as Braille Screen Input or Handwriting, and more. See Control VoiceOver using the rotor on iPhone.

You can use these gestures with the rotor.

Action	Gesture
Choose a rotor setting	Two-finger rotation
Move to the previous item or increase (depending on the rotor setting)	Swipe up
Move to the next item or decrease (depending on the rotor setting)	Swipe down

See also

Turn on and practice VoiceOver on iPhone

Set up vision-related accessibility features on iPhone

Operate iPhone when VoiceOver is on

When VoiceOver is on, you need to use special gestures to unlock iPhone, go to the Home Screen, open Control Center, switch apps, and more.

Unlock iPhone

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Wake iPhone and glance at it, then drag up from the bottom edge of the screen until you feel a vibration or hear two rising tones.
- *On an iPhone with Touch ID:* Press the Home button using the finger you registered with Touch ID.

If prompted, enter your passcode. To avoid having your passcode spoken as you enter it, enter your passcode silently using handwriting mode or type onscreen braille.

Go to the Home Screen

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Drag one finger up from the bottom edge of the screen until you feel a vibration or hear two rising tones, then lift your finger.
- *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Press the Home button.

Switch to another app

Swipe right or left with four fingers to cycle through the open apps.

Alternatively, you can use the App Switcher.

1. To open the App Switcher, do one of the following:
   - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Drag one finger up from the bottom edge of the screen until you feel the second vibration or hear three tones, then lift your finger.
   - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Double-click the Home button.
2. To browse the open apps, swipe left or right until the app you want is selected.
3. Double-tap to open the app.

Open Control Center

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Drag one finger down from the top edge of the screen until you feel a vibration or hear the second tone.
- *On all iPhone models:* Tap any item in the status bar, then swipe up with three fingers. Or touch and hold the bottom of the screen until you hear a tone, then swipe up.

To dismiss Control Center, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a “z”).

View notifications

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Drag one finger down from the top edge of the screen until you feel the second vibration or hear the third tone.

  To dismiss the notifications screen, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z").

- *On all iPhone models:* Tap any item in the status bar, then swipe down with three fingers. Or touch and hold the top of the screen until you hear a tone, then swipe down.

To dismiss the notifications screen, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z").

Speak status bar information

1. Tap the status bar at the top of the screen.
2. Swipe left or right to hear the time, battery state, Wi-Fi signal strength, and more.

Rearrange apps on your Home Screen

Do one of the following:

- *Drag and drop:* Tap an icon on the Home Screen, then double-tap and hold your finger on the screen until you hear three rising tones. The item's relative location is described as you drag. Lift your finger when the icon is in its new location. Drag an icon to the edge of the screen to move it to another Home Screen.
- *Move actions:* Tap an app, then swipe down to hear available actions. When you hear "Edit Mode," double-tap to start arranging apps. Find the app you want to move, then swipe down to the Move action and double-tap. Move the VoiceOver cursor to the new destination for the app, then choose from the available actions: Cancel Move, Create New Folder, Add to Folder, Move Before, or Move After.

When you're finished, tap Done, then double-tap.

Search from the Home Screen

1. Tap anywhere on the Home Screen outside the status bar.
2. Swipe down with three fingers.

See also

Use VoiceOver gestures on iPhone

Control VoiceOver using the rotor on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use VoiceOver gestures

Next
Control VoiceOver using the rotor

Support › iPhone User Guide › Operate iPhone when VoiceOver is on

Control VoiceOver using the rotor on iPhone

You can use the onscreen VoiceOver rotor to change how VoiceOver works. You can adjust the VoiceOver volume or speaking rate, move from one item to the next on the screen, select special input methods such as Braille Screen Input or Handwriting, and more.

When you use Magic Keyboard to control VoiceOver, use the rotor to adjust settings such as volume, speech rate, use of pitch or phonetics, typing echo, and reading of punctuation.

Use the VoiceOver rotor

1. When VoiceOver is turned on, rotate two fingers on your screen as if you're turning a dial. If you prefer to use one finger on each hand, simultaneously drag up with one finger and drag down with the other.

   VoiceOver speaks the rotor setting. Keep rotating your fingers to hear more settings. Stop rotating your fingers when you hear the setting you want.

2. Swipe your finger up or down on the screen to use the setting.

   The available rotor settings and their effects depend on what you're doing. For example, if you choose Headings when you're browsing a webpage, swipe down or up to move the VoiceOver cursor to the next or previous heading.

Customize the VoiceOver rotor

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver.
2. Do any of the following:

   - *Add or reorder the rotor settings:* Tap Rotor, then choose the settings you want, or drag to reorder settings.
   - *Add another language:* Tap Speech > Add New Language (below Rotor Languages), then choose a language.
   - *Have VoiceOver confirm rotor actions:* Tap Verbosity, then turn on Speak Confirmation.

See also

Operate iPhone when VoiceOver is on

Change your VoiceOver settings on iPhone

Set up vision-related accessibility features on iPhone

Use the onscreen keyboard with VoiceOver on iPhone

VoiceOver changes how you use the onscreen keyboard when you activate an editable text field. You can enter, select, and delete text; change the keyboard language; and more.

Enter text with the onscreen keyboard

1. Select a text field, then double-tap.

   The insertion point and the onscreen keyboard appear.

2. To enter text, do one of the following:

   - *Standard typing:* Select a key by swiping left or right on the keyboard, then double-tap to enter the character. Or move your finger around the keyboard to select a key and, while continuing to touch the key with one finger, tap the screen with another finger. VoiceOver speaks the key when it's selected, and again when the character is entered.

   - *Touch typing:* Touch a key on the keyboard to select it, then lift your finger to enter the character. If you touch the wrong key, slide your finger to the key you want. VoiceOver speaks the character for each key as you touch it, but doesn't enter a character until you lift your finger.

   - *Direct Touch typing:* VoiceOver is disabled for the keyboard only, so you can type just as you do when VoiceOver is off.

   - *Dictation:* Use a two-finger double tap on the keyboard to start and stop dictation.

To enter an accented character, do one of the following:

- *Standard typing:* Select the plain character, then double-tap and hold until you hear a tone indicating alternate characters have appeared. Drag left or right to select and hear the choices. Release your finger to enter the current selection.
- *Touch typing:* Touch and hold a character until the alternate characters appear.

Edit text with the onscreen keyboard

- *Move the insertion point:* Swipe up or down to move the insertion point forward or backward in the text. Use the rotor to choose whether you want to move the insertion point by character, by word, or by line. To jump to the beginning or end, double-tap the text.

  VoiceOver makes a sound when the insertion point moves, and speaks the character, word, or line that the insertion point moves across. When moving forward by words, the insertion point is placed at the end of each word, before the space or punctuation that follows. When moving backward, the insertion point is placed at the end of the preceding word, before the space or punctuation that follows it.

- *Move the insertion point past the punctuation at the end of a word or sentence:* Use the rotor to switch back to character mode.

  When moving the insertion point by line, VoiceOver speaks each line as you move across it. When moving forward, the insertion point is placed at the beginning of the next line (except when you reach

the last line of a paragraph, when the insertion point is moved to the end of the line just spoken). When moving backward, the insertion point is placed at the beginning of the line that's spoken.

- *Delete a character:* Use ⌫.
- *Select text:* Do any of the following:
  - Set the rotor to Text Selection, swipe up or down to choose Character, Word, Line, or Sentence, then swipe left or right to move backward or forward. (You may need to enable Text Selection—go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor.)
  - Set the rotor to Edit, swipe up or down to choose Select or Select All, then double-tap. If you choose Select, the word closest to the insertion point is selected when you double-tap. To increase or decrease the selection, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z") to dismiss the pop-up menu, then pinch.
- *Cut, copy, or paste:* Set the rotor to Edit, select the text, swipe up or down to choose Cut, Copy, or Paste, then double-tap.
- *Fix misspelled words:* Set the rotor to Misspelled Words, then swipe up or down to jump to the previous or next misspelled word. Swipe left or right to choose a suggested replacement, then double-tap to use the replacement.
- *Undo:* Shake iPhone, swipe left or right to choose the action to undo, then double-tap.

Change the keyboard settings

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver.
2. Tap any of the following:
   - *Typing Style:* You can choose a new style. Or, set the rotor to Typing Mode, then swipe up or down.
   - *Phonetic Feedback:* Speak text character by character. VoiceOver first speaks the character, then its phonetic equivalent—for example, "f" and then "foxtrot.
   - *Typing Feedback:* Choose to speak characters, words, both, or nothing.
   - *Rotor:* Select the settings you want to include in the rotor.
   - *Speech:* Tap Add New Language (below Rotor Languages), then choose a language.
   - *Verbosity:* Tap Deleting Text. To have VoiceOver speak deleted characters in a lower pitch, tap Change Pitch.

See also

Control VoiceOver using the rotor on iPhone

Use VoiceOver on iPhone with an Apple external keyboard

Use VoiceOver on iPhone with a pointer device

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Control VoiceOver using the rotor

Next
Write with your finger

Write with your finger in VoiceOver on iPhone

With handwriting mode in VoiceOver, you can enter text by writing characters on the screen with your finger. In addition to typing or dictation, use handwriting mode to enter your iPhone passcode silently or to open apps from the Home Screen.

Use handwriting mode

1. Set the rotor to Handwriting.

   If Handwriting isn't in the rotor, go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor, then add it.

2. To choose a character type (lowercase, numbers, uppercase, or punctuation), swipe up or down with three fingers.

   To hear the selected character type, tap with three fingers.

3. Trace a character on the screen with your finger.

   You can also do any of the following:

   - *Enter an alternate character (a character with an accent, for example):* Write the character, then swipe up or down with two fingers until you hear the character you want.
   - *Enter a space:* Swipe right with two fingers.
   - *Go to a new line:* Swipe right with three fingers.
   - *Delete the previous character:* Swipe left with two fingers.

4. To exit handwriting mode, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z"), or set the rotor to a different setting.

Enter your passcode silently with handwriting mode

1. On the passcode screen, set the rotor to Handwriting.
2. Write the characters of your passcode with your finger.

Select an item on the Home Screen

1. On the Home Screen, set the rotor to Handwriting.
2. Start writing the name of the item with your finger.

   If there are multiple matches, continue to spell the name until it's unique, or swipe up or down with two fingers to choose from the current matches.

Quickly navigate a long list

1. Select the index to the right of the list (for example, next to your Contacts list or in the VoiceOver Item Chooser).
2. Set the rotor to Handwriting, then use your finger to write the letter you want to navigate to.

See also

Use the onscreen keyboard with VoiceOver on iPhone

Use VoiceOver gestures on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use the onscreen keyboard

Next
Use VoiceOver with an Apple external keyboard

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use VoiceOver on iPhone with an Apple external keyboard

If you use Magic Keyboard with iPhone, you can use keyboard shortcuts to activate VoiceOver commands.

Additionally, you can use VoiceOver Help to learn the keyboard layout and the actions associated with various key combinations. VoiceOver Help speaks keys and keyboard commands as you type them, without performing the associated action.

Choose the VoiceOver modifier

The modifier is a key or set of keys you press with one or more other keys to enter VoiceOver commands. You can set the modifier to be the Caps Lock key or the Control and Option keys pressed at the same time.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Typing > Modifier Keys.
2. Choose the modifier for VoiceOver commands: the Caps Lock key or the Control and Option keys.

   This modifier is abbreviated as “VO” below.

VoiceOver keyboard commands

You can control VoiceOver using key combinations.

(VO = modifier keys)

Action	Shortcut
Turn on VoiceOver Help	VO-K
Turn off VoiceOver Help	Esc (Escape)
Select the next or previous item	VO-Right Arrow or VO-Left Arrow
Activate the selected item	VO-Space bar
Touch and hold the selected item	VO-Shift-M
Read from the current position	VO-A
Read from the top	VO-B
Pause or resume reading	Control
Copy the last spoken text to the clipboard	VO-Shift-C
Search for text	VO-F
Mute or unmute VoiceOver	VO-S
Go to the Home Screen	VO-H
Move to the status bar	VO-M
Open the notifications screen	Move to the status bar (VO-M), then Option-Up Arrow
Open Control Center	Move to the status bar (VO-M), then Option-Down Arrow
Open Search	Option-Up Arrow
Open the App Switcher	VO-H-H
Open the Item Chooser	VO-I
Change the label of the selected item	VO-/
Start, stop, or pause an action	VO-Hyphen
Swipe up or down	VO-Up Arrow or VO-Down Arrow
Turn the rotor left or right	VO-Command-Left Arrow or VO-Command-Right Arrow
Adjust the setting specified by the rotor	VO-Command-Up Arrow or VO-Command-Down Arrow
Turn the screen curtain on or off	VO-Shift-F11
Return to the previous screen	Esc

Quick Nav using the arrow keys

Turn on Quick Nav to control VoiceOver using the arrow keys.

Action	Shortcut
Turn Quick Nav on or off	Left Arrow-Right Arrow
Select the next or previous item	Right Arrow or Left Arrow
Select the next or previous item specified by the rotor	Up Arrow or Down Arrow
Select the first or last item	Control-Up Arrow or Control-Down Arrow
Tap an item	Up Arrow-Down Arrow
Scroll up, down, left, or right	Option-Up Arrow, Option-Down Arrow, Option-Left Arrow, or Option-Right Arrow
Adjust the rotor	Up Arrow-Left Arrow or Up Arrow-Right Arrow

Single-key Quick Nav for web browsing

To navigate a webpage quickly, turn on Quick Nav (VO-Q), then press keys on the keyboard to navigate to specific item types, such as headings or links. To move to the previous item, hold the Shift key as you press a key for the item type.

Item type	Shortcut
Heading	H
Link	L
Text field	R
Button	B
Form control	C
Image	I
Table	T
Static text	S
ARIA landmark	W
List	X
Item of the same type	M
Level 1 heading	1
Level 2 heading	2
Level 3 heading	3
Level 4 heading	4
Level 5 heading	5
Level 6 heading	6

Text editing

Use these commands (with Quick Nav turned off) to work with text. VoiceOver reads the text as you move the insertion point.

Action	Shortcut
Go forward or back one character	Right Arrow or Left Arrow
Go forward or back one word	Option-Right Arrow or Option-Left Arrow
Go up or down one line	Up Arrow or Down Arrow
Go to the beginning or end of the line	Command-Left Arrow or Command-Down Arrow
Go to the beginning or end of the paragraph	Option-Up Arrow or Option-Down Arrow
Go to the previous or next paragraph	Option-Up Arrow or Option-Down Arrow
Go to the top or bottom of the text field	Command-Up Arrow or Command-Down Arrow
Select text as you move	Shift + any of the insertion point movement commands above
Select all text	Command-A
Copy, cut, or paste the selected text	Command-C, Command-X, or Command-V
Undo or redo last change	Command-Z or Shift-Command-Z

See also

Use VoiceOver gestures on iPhone

Use VoiceOver on iPhone with a pointer device

Use Voice Control to interact with iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Write with your finger

Next
Use a braille display

Support › iPhone User Guide › Use VoiceOver on iPhone with an Apple external keyboard

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use a braille display with VoiceOver on iPhone

iPhone supports many international braille tables and refreshable braille displays. You can connect a Bluetooth® wireless braille display to read VoiceOver output, including contracted and uncontracted braille, and equations using Nemeth Code. When you edit text, the braille display shows the text in context, and your edits are automatically converted between braille and printed text. You can also use a braille display with input keys to control your iPhone when VoiceOver is turned on.

For a list of supported braille displays, see the Apple Support article Braille displays supported by iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch.

Connect a braille display and learn commands to control iPhone

1. Turn on the braille display.
2. On iPhone, go to Settings > Bluetooth, turn on Bluetooth, then choose the display.
3. On iPhone, go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Braille, then choose the display.
4. To see the braille commands for controlling iPhone, tap More Info, then tap Braille Commands.

See the Apple Support article Common braille commands for VoiceOver on your iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch.

Change the braille display settings

1. On iPhone, go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Braille.
2. Set any of the following:

Setting	Description
Output	Set the braille display output to uncontracted six-dot, uncontracted eight-dot, or contracted braille.
Input	Choose the input method for entering braille on the display—uncontracted six-dot, uncontracted eight-dot, or contracted braille. You can also turn on Automatic Translation.
Braille Screen Input	Choose the input method for entering braille using the screen. See Type braille directly on the iPhone screen with VoiceOver.
Braille Tables	Add tables to the Braille Table rotor.
Status Cells	Turn on the general and text status cells and choose their location.
Equations use Nemeth Code	Turn on Nemeth Code for mathematical equations.
Show On-screen Keyboard	Display the keyboard on the screen.
Turn Pages when Panning	Automatically turn pages when panning.
Word Wrap	Wrap words to the next line.
Braille Alert Messages	When turned on, your braille display shows an alert message for the specified duration.
Ignore Chord Duration	Adjust the amount of time required before subsequent key presses are recognized as braille chords.
Auto Advance Duration	Adjust this setting to your preferred reading speed.

Output closed captions in braille during media playback

1. On iPhone, go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Verbosity.
2. Choose Braille or Speech and Braille.

See also

Type braille directly on the iPhone screen with VoiceOver

Write with your finger in VoiceOver on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use VoiceOver with an Apple external keyboard

Next
Type braille on the screen

Support > iPhone User Guide > Use a braille display with VoiceOver on iPhone

Type braille directly on the iPhone screen with VoiceOver

If you turn on Braille Screen Input in VoiceOver, you can use your fingers to enter six-dot or contracted braille directly on the iPhone screen, without a physical braille keyboard.

Enter braille on the screen

1. Set the rotor to Braille Screen Input.

   If you don't see Braille Screen Input in the rotor, go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor, then select it from the list.

2. Place iPhone in one of the following positions:

   - *Tabletop mode:* Lay iPhone flat in front of you.
   - *Screen away mode:* Hold iPhone with the screen facing away so your fingers curl back to tap the screen.

3. Enter braille characters by tapping the screen with one or more fingers at the same time.

   Tip: To have iPhone read dots aloud, tap and hold the dots, then when you hear the timer tones and announcement, release the dots.

   To move the entry dots to match your natural finger positions, tap and lift your right three fingers all at once to position dots 4, 5, and 6, followed immediately by your left three fingers for dots 1, 2, and 3.

   You can also use gestures to perform actions such as the following:

Action	Gesture
Enter a space	Swipe right with one finger; in screen away mode, swipe to *your* right
Delete the previous character	Swipe left with one finger
Move to a new line	Swipe right with two fingers
Cycle through spelling suggestions	Swipe up or down with one finger
Enter a carriage return, or send a message (in Messages)	Swipe up with three fingers
Cycle through the braille modes	Swipe left or right with three fingers
Translate immediately (when contractions are turned on)	Swipe down with two fingers
Switch to the next keyboard	Swipe up with two fingers

4. To exit Braille Screen Input, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z"), or adjust the rotor to another setting.

Change Braille Screen Input settings

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Braille > Braille Screen Input.
2. Do any of the following:
   - Set six-dot or contracted braille as the default.
   - Reverse the dot positions for six-dot braille.
3. To view or edit the commands and gestures you can perform when Braille Screen Input is turned on, go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Commands > Braille Screen Input.

See also

Use a braille display with VoiceOver on iPhone

Customize VoiceOver gestures and keyboard shortcuts on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use a braille display

Next
Customize gestures and keyboard shortcuts

Support > iPhone User Guide > Type braille directly on the iPhone screen with VoiceOver

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Customize VoiceOver gestures and keyboard shortcuts on iPhone

You can customize the gestures and keyboard shortcuts that activate VoiceOver commands.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Commands.
2. Tap any of the following:
   - *All Commands:* Navigate to the command you want to customize, then tap Edit, Add Gesture, or Add Keyboard Shortcut.
   - *Touch Gestures:* List the gestures and the associated commands.
   - *Handwriting:* List the gestures for handwriting and the associated commands.
   - *Braille Screen Input:* List the gestures for Braille Screen Input and the associated commands.

To clear your custom gestures and keyboard shortcuts, tap Reset VoiceOver Commands.

See also

Use VoiceOver on iPhone with an Apple external keyboard

Use the onscreen keyboard with VoiceOver on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use VoiceOver on iPhone with a pointer device

If you use a pointer device with iPhone, you can adjust how it works with VoiceOver.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver.
2. Below Pointer Control, tap any of the following:
   - *Pointer:* Set the pointer to ignore, follow, or move the VoiceOver cursor.
   - *Speak Under Pointer:* You can adjust the delay to speak the item under the pointer.

See also

Make the pointer easier to see when using a mouse or trackpad with iPhone

Change color on iPhone to make it easier to see items onscreen

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use VoiceOver for images and videos on iPhone

You can use the Camera and Photos apps with VoiceOver, even if you can't see the screen. VoiceOver can provide image descriptions.

Take photos and videos in Camera

When you use Camera, VoiceOver describes objects in the viewfinder.

To take a photo or start, pause, or resume a video recording, double-tap the screen with two fingers.

Explore images

When you use the Image Explorer, VoiceOver tells you about people, objects, text, and tables within images. You can navigate receipts and nutrition labels in logical order, or move your finger over a photo to discover a person's position relative to other objects.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > VoiceOver Recognition, then turn on Image Descriptions.
2. In an app such as Photos or Safari, select an image.
3. Swipe up to hear more options, then double-tap when you hear "Explore image features."
4. Move your finger around on the image to find out the position of each object.

You can add custom descriptions to your images with Markup.

Note: Not available in all languages. See Image Descriptions for VoiceOver.

Trim videos in Photos

1. Select the video you want to trim, then double-tap.
2. Select Edit, then double-tap.
3. Select Start or End (on the media scrubber), then swipe up or down to adjust the start or end time.
4. When you're finished, select Done, then double-tap.

See also

Use Markup to add text, shapes, signatures, and more to documents on iPhone

Identify people and pets in Photos on iPhone

Use VoiceOver in apps on iPhone

You can use VoiceOver to interact with apps, even if you can't see the screen. VoiceOver is supported in the built-in Apple apps that came with your iPhone—such as Safari, Maps, and more. With VoiceOver Recognition, you can get descriptions of images and screen elements even on webpages and in apps without accessibility information.

Browse the web in Safari

- *Search the web:* Select the address field, double-tap to show the keyboard, then enter a search term, phrase, or URL. Double-tap Go, or select a search suggestion, then double-tap.
- *Skip to the next element on a webpage:* Set the rotor to the element type—such as headings, links, and form controls—then swipe up or down.
- *Set the rotor settings for web browsing:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor. Select or deselect items, or drag up or down to reposition an item.
- *Skip images while navigating:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Navigate Images. You can choose to skip all images or only those without descriptions.
- *Reduce page clutter for easier reading and navigation:* In the Safari address field, select the Format Options button, double-tap, select Show Reader View (not available for all webpages), then double-tap.

Tip: If you use Magic Keyboard with iPhone, you can use single-key Quick Nav for web browsing.

Navigate in Maps

- *Control how the map tracks your current location:* Select, then double-tap until you hear the tracking option you want.
  - *Tracking on:* The map automatically centers on your current location.
  - *Tracking on with heading:* The map automatically centers on your current location and rotates so that the heading you're facing is at the top of the screen. In this mode, iPhone speaks street names and points of interest as you approach them.
  - *Tracking off:* The map doesn't automatically center on your current location.
- *Explore the map:* Drag your finger around the screen, or swipe left or right to move to another item.
- *Zoom in or out:* Select the map, set the rotor to Zoom, then swipe up or down with one finger.
- *Pan the map:* Swipe with three fingers.
- *Browse points of interest shown on the map:* Set the rotor to Points of Interest, then swipe up or down with one finger.
- *Follow a road:* Hold your finger down on the road, wait until you hear "pause to follow," then move your finger along the road.
- *Get information about a location:* Select the location (for example, a business, landmark, or pin), then double-tap to open the information card. Swipe left or right to hear information such as directions, street address, phone number, business hours, and customer reviews.

- *Get guidance to the starting point:* When you start walking directions in Maps, iPhone guides you in the direction of the starting point using sound and haptic feedback.

Read PDF documents

In the Books and Files apps, you can use VoiceOver to read PDF documents. VoiceOver even describes detailed information—such as forms, tables, and lists.

Make and receive phone calls

In the Phone app, you can use VoiceOver to make and receive calls.

- *Answer or end a call:* Double-tap the screen with two fingers.

  When a phone call is established with VoiceOver on, the screen displays the numeric keypad by default, instead of showing call options.

- *Display call options:* Select the Hide button in the lower-right corner, then double-tap.
- *Display the numeric keypad again:* Select the Keypad button near the center of the screen, then double-tap.

Trim voice memo recordings

In the Voice Memos app, you can use VoiceOver to edit recordings.

1. Select the recording you want to trim, then double-tap.
2. Select •••, then double-tap.
3. Select Edit Recording, then double-tap.
4. Select , then double-tap.
5. In the Waveform Overview, select Trim Beginning or Trim End, then swipe up or down to adjust the start or end time.
6. Select Trim, then double-tap.
7. Select Save, then double-tap.
8. Select Done, then double-tap.

Hear data in Weather maps

Some maps in the Weather app are encoded to allow you to hear the data as a changing tone or pitch. For example, as intensity of weather condition changes in a visual animation on screen, you can have these described using variations in sound.

1. With VoiceOver turned on, open the Weather app.
2. Open a location page with a precipitation, wind, or air quality map.
3. Double-tap and hold the map until you hear a tone or the words "Weather Map Snapshot." If you hear spoken instructions, follow them.

   As you run your finger or pointer over a sonified map, the pitch shifts to represent the changing values.

Read math equations

VoiceOver can read math equations on the web (encoded using MathML) and in supported Apple apps such as Numbers and Keynote.

- *Hear an equation:* Have VoiceOver read the text as usual. VoiceOver says “math” before it starts reading an equation.
- *Explore the equation:* Double-tap the selected equation to display it in full screen and move through it one element at a time. Swipe left or right to read elements of the equation. Use the rotor to select Symbols, Small Expressions, Medium Expressions, or Large Expressions, then swipe up or down to hear the next element of that size. You can continue to double-tap the selected element to “drill down” into the equation to focus on the selected element, then swipe left or right, or up or down, to read one part at a time.

Equations spoken by VoiceOver can also be output to a braille device using Nemeth Code, as well as the codes used by Unified English Braille, British English, French, and Greek. See Use a braille display with VoiceOver on iPhone.

Use VoiceOver Recognition on the web or in apps without accessibility information

Important: VoiceOver Recognition should not be relied upon in circumstances where you could be harmed or injured, in high-risk situations, for navigation, or for the diagnosis or treatment of any medical condition.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > VoiceOver Recognition.
2. Turn on any of the following:
   - *Image Descriptions:* Get descriptions of images in apps and on the web.
   - *Screen Recognition:* Get descriptions of screen elements in apps.
   - *Text Recognition:* Get descriptions of text found in images.
3. Tap Feedback Style, then choose Speak, Play Sound, or Do Nothing.

See also

Turn on and practice VoiceOver on iPhone

Set up vision-related accessibility features on iPhone

Customize visual accessibility settings for specific apps on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use VoiceOver for images and videos

Next
Overview

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Set up mobility-related accessibility features on iPhone

In the Accessibility pane of Settings, you can customize options to best suit your mobility needs. You can use your voice to navigate your iPhone, adapt the touchscreen for specific gestures, adjust how the screen responds to your touch, and more.

Action	Related features and settings
Navigate your iPhone hands-free	• Voice Control • Siri • Shortcuts • Call audio routing
Let iPhone type for you	• Dictation • Predictive text
Connect other inputs	• Switch Control • Keyboards • Bluetooth accessories • Head tracking
Control other devices	• Apple Watch Mirroring • Apple TV remote • Platform Switching
Customize gestures	• AssistiveTouch • Back tap • Reachability • AirPods • Pointer scrolling speed • Side or Home button • Face ID and attention
Adjust the sensitivity of your input	• Slow Keys and Sticky Keys • Siri Pause Time • Touch accommodations
Turn off vibration	• Vibration

See also

Get started with accessibility features on iPhone

Use AssistiveTouch on iPhone

AssistiveTouch helps you use iPhone if you have difficulty touching the screen or pressing the buttons. You can use AssistiveTouch without any accessory to perform actions or gestures that are difficult for you. You can also use a compatible adaptive accessory (such as a joystick) together with AssistiveTouch to control iPhone.

With AssistiveTouch, you can use a simple tap (or the equivalent on your accessory) to perform actions such as the following:

- Open the AssistiveTouch menu
- Go to the Home Screen
- Double-tap
- Perform multifinger gestures
- Perform scroll gestures
- Activate Siri
- Access Control Center, notifications, the Lock Screen, or the App Switcher
- Adjust the volume on iPhone
- Shake iPhone
- Take a screenshot
- Use 3D Touch (on supported iPhone models)
- Use Apple Pay
- Use Emergency SOS
- Speak screen
- Adjust dwell settings

- Restart iPhone

Set up AssistiveTouch

Siri: Say something like: "Turn on AssistiveTouch" or "Turn off AssistiveTouch." Learn how to use Siri.

Or do the following:

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch.
2. Turn on AssistiveTouch.
3. To customize AssistiveTouch, tap any of the following:
   - *Customize Top Level Menu:* Tap an icon to change its action. Tap − or + to change the number of icons in the menu. The menu can have up to eight icons.
   - *Single-Tap, Double-Tap, Long Press, or 3D Touch:* Assign custom actions that run when you interact with the menu button. 3D Touch is available only on supported iPhone models.
   - *Create New Gesture:* Add your favorite gestures.
   - *Idle Opacity:* Adjust the visibility of the menu button when not in use.
   - *Confirm with AssistiveTouch:* On an iPhone with Face ID, confirm payments with Face ID by using AssistiveTouch instead of double-clicking the side button.

Tip: To turn AssistiveTouch on or off quickly, you can set up Accessibility Shortcut, then triple-click a button.

Add a pointer device

You can connect Bluetooth® and USB assistive pointer devices, such as trackpads, joysticks, and mouse devices.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch.
2. Turn on AssistiveTouch.
3. Below Pointer Devices, tap any of the following:
   - *Devices:* Pair or unpair devices and customize buttons.
   - *Mouse Keys:* Allow the AssistiveTouch pointer to be controlled using the keyboard number pad.
   - *Pointer Style:* Adjust the size, color, and auto-hide settings.
   - *Show Onscreen Keyboard:* Display the onscreen keyboard.
   - *Always Show Menu:* Show the AssistiveTouch menu when a pointer device is connected.
   - *Tracking speed:* Drag the slider to adjust the speed.
   - *Drag Lock:* Turn on to enable dragging.
   - *Zoom Pan:* Choose Continuous, Centered, or Edges.

When you use a mouse or trackpad, you can also change the pointer appearance.

Set up Dwell Control

iPhone performs a selected action when you hold the cursor still on a screen element or an area of the screen.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch, then turn on Dwell Control.
2. Adjust any of the following:

   - *Fallback Action:* Turn on to revert the dwell action to the selected fallback action after performing an operation.
   - *Movement Tolerance:* Adjust the distance the cursor can move while dwelling on an item.
   - *Hot Corners:* Perform a selected action—such as take a screenshot, open Control Center, activate Siri, scroll, or use a shortcut—when the cursor dwells in a corner of the screen.
   - *Time needed to initiate a dwell action:* Tap − or +.

Use AssistiveTouch

Tap the menu button, then choose an action or gesture.

For a multifinger gesture, do the following:

- *Pinch and Rotate:* Tap Custom, then tap Pinch and Rotate. When the two pinch circles appear, touch anywhere on the screen to move the pinch circles, then drag them in or out to perform a pinch or rotate gesture. When you finish, tap the menu button.
- *Multifinger swipe or drag:* Tap Device > More > Gestures, then tap the number of digits needed for the gesture. When the circles appear on the screen, swipe or drag in the direction required by the gesture. When you finish, tap the menu button.

To return to the previous menu, tap the arrow in the center of the menu. To exit the menu without performing a gesture, tap anywhere outside the menu.

To move the AssistiveTouch menu button, drag it to a new location on the screen.

Create custom gestures

You can add your favorite gestures (such as touch and hold or two-finger rotation) to the AssistiveTouch menu. You can even create several gestures with, for example, different degrees of rotation.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch > Create New Gesture.
2. Perform your gesture on the recording screen. For example:

   - *Touch-and-hold gesture:* Touch and hold your finger in one spot until the recording progress bar reaches halfway, then lift your finger. Be careful not to move your finger while recording, or the gesture will be recorded as a drag.
   - *Two-finger rotation gesture:* Rotate two fingers on the iPhone screen around a point between them. (You can do this with a single finger or stylus—just create each arc separately, one after the other.)

   If you record a sequence of taps or drag gestures, they're all played back at the same time. For example, using one finger or a stylus to record four separate, sequential taps at four locations on the screen creates a simultaneous four-finger tap.
3. If your gesture doesn't turn out quite right, tap Cancel, then try again.
4. When you're satisfied with your gesture, tap Save, then name the gesture.

To use your custom gesture, tap the AssistiveTouch menu button, tap Custom, then choose the gesture. When the blue circles representing your gesture appear, drag them to where you want to use the gesture, then release.

Adjust how iPhone responds to your touch

If you have difficulties with hand tremors, dexterity, or fine motor control, you can adjust how the iPhone touchscreen responds to tap, swipe, and touch-and-hold gestures. You can have iPhone recognize faster or slower touches and ignore multiple touches. You can also prevent iPhone from waking when you touch the screen, or turn off Shake to Undo if you unintentionally shake iPhone.

Adjust settings for taps, swipes, and multiple touches

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch > Touch Accommodations, then turn on Touch Accommodations.
2. You can configure iPhone to do any of the following:

   - *Respond to touches of a certain duration:* Turn on Hold Duration, then tap − or + to adjust the duration. (The default is 0.10 seconds.)
   - *Prevent unintended swipe gestures:* To increase the amount of movement required before a swipe gesture begins, tap Swipe Gestures, turn on Swipe Gestures, then adjust required movement.
   - *Treat multiple touches as a single touch:* Turn on Ignore Repeat, then tap − or + to adjust the amount of time allowed between multiple touches.
   - *Respond to the first or last place you touch:* Choose Use Initial Touch Location or Use Final Touch Location.

     If you choose Use Initial Touch Location, iPhone uses the location of your first tap—when you tap an app on the Home Screen, for example. If you choose Use Final Touch Location, iPhone registers the tap where you lift your finger. iPhone responds to a tap when you lift your finger within a certain period of time. Tap − or + to adjust the timing. Your iPhone can respond to other gestures, such as a drag gesture, if you wait longer than the gesture delay.

Adjust settings for touch-and-hold gestures

The touch-and-hold gesture reveals content previews, actions, and contextual menus. If you have trouble performing this gesture, do the following:

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch, then tap Haptic Touch or 3D & Haptic Touch.
2. Choose the touch duration—Fast or Slow.
3. On an iPhone with 3D Touch, you can also choose the pressure needed—Light, Medium, or Firm.
4. Test your new settings on the image at the bottom of the screen.

Turn off Tap to Wake

On a supported iPhone model, you can prevent touches on the screen from waking iPhone. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch, then turn off Tap to Wake.

Turn off Shake to Undo

If you tend to unintentionally shake iPhone, you can turn off Shake to Undo. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch.

Tip: To undo text edits, swipe left with three fingers.

See also

Set up mobility-related accessibility features on iPhone

Use AssistiveTouch on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use AssistiveTouch

Next
Back tap

Support > iPhone User Guide > Adjust how iPhone responds to your touch

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Tap the back of iPhone to perform actions or shortcuts

You can double-tap or triple-tap the back of iPhone to perform actions such as taking a screenshot, turning on an accessibility feature, running a shortcut, and more.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch > Back Tap.
2. Choose Double Tap or Triple Tap, then choose an action.
3. To perform the action you set, double-tap or triple-tap the back of iPhone.

To turn off Back tap, go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch > Back Tap, choose Double Tap or Triple Tap, then tap None.

See also

Use Shortcuts to automate tasks on iPhone

Quickly open features with Accessibility Shortcut on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Tap the back of iPhone to perform actions or shortcuts

You can double-tap or triple-tap the back of iPhone to perform actions such as taking a screenshot, turning on an accessibility feature, running a shortcut, and more.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch > Back Tap.
2. Choose Double Tap or Triple Tap, then choose an action.
3. To perform the action you set, double-tap or triple-tap the back of iPhone.

To turn off Back tap, go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch > Back Tap, choose Double Tap or Triple Tap, then tap None.

See also

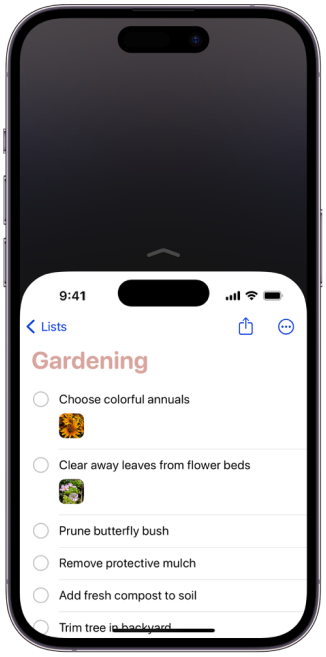
Use Shortcuts to automate tasks on iPhone

Quickly open features with Accessibility Shortcut on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Reach the top of the iPhone screen with one hand

When you use iPhone with one hand in Portrait orientation, you can use Reachability to lower the top half of the screen so it's within easy reach of your thumb.



1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch, then turn on Reachability.
2. To lower the top half of the screen, do one the following:
   - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Swipe down on the bottom edge of the screen.
   - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Lightly double-tap the Home button.
3. To return to the full screen, tap the upper half of the screen.

See also

Use AssistiveTouch

Set up mobility-related accessibility features on iPhone

Route and automatically answer calls on iPhone

You can automatically direct the audio of phone or FaceTime calls to the iPhone speaker, a Bluetooth® headset, or your hearing device. iPhone can also automatically answer calls after a length of time you set.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch > Call Audio Routing, then choose an audio destination.
2. Tap Auto-Answer Calls, turn on Auto-Answer Calls, then set the duration of time before the call is answered by tapping − or +.

During a call, you can switch the audio routing from your hearing aid to the iPhone speaker by removing the hearing aid from your ear.

See also

Use hearing devices with iPhone

End phone and FaceTime calls

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Turn off vibration on iPhone

If you don't want your iPhone to vibrate, you can turn vibration off for specific uses or all alerts.

- *Set vibration options for specific alerts:* Go to Settings > Sounds & Haptics. See Change iPhone sounds and vibrations.
- *Turn off all vibrations:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch, then turn off Vibration.

  Note: This setting turns off vibrations for earthquake, tsunami, and other emergency alerts.

See also

Set up mobility-related accessibility features on iPhone

Stop or reduce onscreen motion on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Change Face ID and attention settings on iPhone

On an iPhone with Face ID, you can adjust Face ID and attention settings if you have physical or vision limitations.

Set up Face ID with Accessibility Options

Setting up Face ID usually requires you to gently move your head in a circle to show all the angles of your face. If you can't perform the full range of head motion, you can still set up Face ID without moving your head.

1. Go to Settings > Face ID & Passcode.
2. Position your face within the frame, then tap Accessibility Options.

Face ID is still secure but requires more consistency when you unlock iPhone.

Change attention settings

For additional security, Face ID is *attention-aware*. It unlocks iPhone only when your eyes are open and looking at the screen. iPhone can also reveal notifications and messages, keep the screen lit when you're reading, or lower the volume of alerts.

If you don't want iPhone to check for your attention, do the following:

1. Go to Settings > Face ID & Passcode.
2. Turn on or off any of the following:

   - Require Attention for Face ID
   - Attention Aware Features

   These settings are turned off by default if you turn on VoiceOver when you first set up iPhone.

Note: Requiring attention makes Face ID more secure.

See also

Set up Face ID on iPhone

Set up Touch ID on iPhone

Use Voice Control to interact with iPhone

You can control iPhone with just your voice. Speak commands to perform gestures, interact with screen elements, dictate and edit text, and more.

Note: Voice Control is available for supported languages. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Set up Voice Control

Before you turn on Voice Control for the first time, make sure iPhone is connected to the internet over a Wi-Fi network. After iPhone completes a one-time file download from Apple, you don't need an internet connection to use Voice Control.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Voice Control.
2. Tap Set Up Voice Control, then tap Continue to start the file download.

   When the download is complete, appears in the status bar to indicate that Voice Control is turned on.
3. Set options such as the following:

   - *Language:* Set the language and download languages for offline use.
   - *Customize Commands:* View the available commands and create new commands.
   - *Vocabulary:* Teach Voice Control new words.
   - *Show Confirmation:* When Voice Control recognizes a command, a visual confirmation appears at the top of the screen.
   - *Play Sound:* When Voice Control recognizes a command, an audible sound is played.
   - *Show Hints:* See command suggestions and hints.
   - *Overlay:* Display numbers, names, or a grid over screen elements.
   - *Attention Aware:* On an iPhone with Face ID, Voice Control wakes up when you look at your iPhone and goes to sleep when you look away.

Turn Voice Control on or off

After you set up Voice Control, you can turn it on or off quickly by doing any of the following:

- Use Control Center if you've added it there.
- Use Accessibility Shortcut if you've set it up.

Siri: Say something like: "Turn on Voice Control" or "Turn off Voice Control." Learn how to use Siri.

Learn Voice Control commands

When Voice Control is turned on, you can say commands such as the following:

- "Open Control Center"
- "Go home"
- "Tap *item name*"
- "Open *app name*"
- "Take screenshot"
- "Turn up volume"

To learn more Voice Control commands, say "Show me what to say" or "Show commands." You can also use an onscreen tutorial called Voice Control Guide.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Voice Control.
2. Tap Open Voice Control Guide, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Label onscreen items with a screen overlay

For faster interactions, you can navigate iPhone with a screen overlay that shows item names, numbers, or a grid.

- *Item names:* Say "Show names" or "Show names continuously," then say "Tap [*item name*]."
- *Numbers:* Say "Show numbers" or "Show numbers continuously," then say the number next to the item you want. You can also give a command to perform a gesture, such as "Tap [*number*]," "Long press [*number*]," "Swipe up at [*number*]," or "Double-tap [*number*]."
- *Grid:* To interact with a screen location not represented by an item name or number, say "Show grid" or "Show grid continuously," then do any of the following:
  - *Drill down:* Say a number by itself to show a more detailed grid.
  - *Say a command to interact with an area of the grid:* Say something like, "Tap [*number*]" or "Zoom in [*number*]."

  Tip: To adjust the number of grid rows and columns, go to Settings > Accessibility > Voice Control > Overlay, then select Numbered Grid. When Voice Control is turned on, you can also say something like, "Show grid with five rows," or "Show grid continuously with three columns."

To turn off the overlay, say "Hide names," "Hide numbers," or "Hide grid."

Switch between dictation, spelling, and command modes

When you're working in a text input area—for example, writing a document, email, or message—you can easily switch between three modes as needed:

- *Dictation mode:* The default—any words you say that aren't Voice Control commands are entered as text.

  If several words phonetically match what you say, they appear onscreen. Tap to choose the one you meant. (Available in select languages.)

- *Spelling mode:* When you're in dictation mode and need to spell out a word, say "Spelling mode."

  Note: Spelling mode is available for English (U.S.) or English (Canada).

- *Command mode:* Voice Control responds only to commands. Other words are ignored and aren't entered as text.

It's especially helpful when you need to use a series of commands and want to prevent what you say from inadvertently being entered in a text input area.

To switch to Command mode, say "Command mode."

To switch back to Dictation mode, say "Dictation mode."

See also

Dictate text on iPhone

Set up mobility-related accessibility features on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Change Face ID and attention settings

Next
Adjust the side or Home button

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Adjust settings for the side or Home button on iPhone

You can adjust accessibility settings for the side button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Home button (on other iPhone models).

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility, then tap Side Button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Home Button (on other iPhone models).
2. Set any of the following:
   - *Click Speed:* Choose the speed required to double-click or triple-click the button—Default, Slow, or Slowest.
   - *Press and Hold to Speak:* Choose whether Siri responds when you press and hold the button.
   - *Rest Finger to Open:* On an iPhone with Touch ID, you can unlock and open iPhone by resting your finger on Touch ID.

On an iPhone with Face ID, you can also use AssistiveTouch or use Switch Control to confirm payments with Face ID instead of double-clicking the side button.

See also

Quickly open features with Accessibility Shortcut on iPhone

Set up mobility-related accessibility features on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Use buttons on the Apple TV Remote on iPhone

On the Apple TV Remote on iPhone, you can use buttons instead of swipe gestures.

Go to Settings > Accessibility > Apple TV Remote, then turn on Directional Buttons.

See also

Set up mobility-related accessibility features on iPhone

Control a nearby Apple device with iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Make the pointer easier to see when using a mouse or trackpad with iPhone

If you have difficulty seeing or following the pointer when you use a mouse or trackpad with iPhone, you can change its size and color so it's easier to locate on the screen.

Go to Settings > Accessibility > Pointer Control, then adjust any of the following:

- Increase Contrast
- Automatically Hide Pointer
- Color
- Pointer size
- Scrolling Speed

To customize the buttons of the pointing device, go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch > Devices.

See also

Use VoiceOver on iPhone with a pointer device

Zoom in on the iPhone screen

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Adjust the onscreen and external keyboard settings on iPhone

You can adjust the onscreen (software) keyboard on iPhone. If you use an external (hardware) keyboard with iPhone, you can customize keyboard shortcuts and change settings such as the key repeat rate.

For information about other ways to adjust the onscreen keyboard, see Type with the onscreen keyboard on iPhone and Add or change keyboards on iPhone.

Set the onscreen keyboard to display only uppercase letters

If you have difficulty seeing the onscreen keyboard, you can set it to display only uppercase letters.

Go to Settings > Accessibility > Keyboards, then turn off Show Lowercase Keys.

Type on a larger onscreen keyboard

Rotate iPhone to landscape orientation to use a larger keyboard for typing in many apps, including Mail, Safari, Messages, Notes, and Contacts.

Control iPhone with an external keyboard

If you have difficulty using the touchscreen, you can pair Magic Keyboard (sold separately) with your iPhone to control it using shortcuts.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Keyboards, tap Full Keyboard Access, then turn on Full Keyboard Access.
2. Control your iPhone using keyboard shortcuts.

Action	Shortcut
Browse keyboard shortcuts in help	Tab-H
Move forward	Tab
Move backward	Shift-Tab
Activate the selected item	Space bar
Go to the Home Screen	Function-H
Open the App Switcher	Function-Up Arrow
Open Control Center	Function-C
Open Notification Center	Function-N

3. To customize the keyboard shortcuts, tap Commands.
4. To customize the appearance of the focus, tap any of the following:

   - Auto-Hide
   - Increase Size
   - High Contrast
   - Color

Change how the keys respond on an external keyboard

If you have difficulty using an external keyboard, you can adjust the settings.

Go to Settings > Accessibility > Keyboards, then tap any of the following:

- *Key Repeat:* You can adjust the repeat interval and delay.
- *Sticky Keys:* Use Sticky Keys to press and hold modifier keys, such as Command and Option, as you press another key.
- *Slow Keys:* Use Slow Keys to adjust the time between when a key is pressed and when it's activated.

See also

Set up mobility-related accessibility features on iPhone

Type with the onscreen keyboard on iPhone

Add or change keyboards on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Adjust pointer settings

Next
Adjust AirPods settings

Support > iPhone User Guide > Adjust the onscreen and external keyboard settings on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Adjust the accessibility settings for AirPods on iPhone

If you have AirPods (3rd generation), AirPods Pro, or AirPods Max, you can adjust the accessibility settings to suit your motor or hearing needs.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > AirPods.
2. If you have multiple AirPods, select one.
3. Set any of the following options:
   - *Press Speed:* Adjust how quickly you must press two or three times before an action occurs.
   - *Press and Hold Duration:* Adjust the duration required to press and hold on your AirPods.
   - *Noise Cancellation with One AirPod:* (AirPods Pro) Turn on noise cancellation even when you're using only one of your AirPods.
   - *Spatial Audio Head Tracking:* When you turn on Follow iPhone, the audio adjusts based on your head movement (for supported audio and video content).
4. To customize your audio, tap Audio Accessibility Settings.

See also

Adjust audio settings on iPhone

Use AirPods with iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Interact with Apple Watch on your iPhone

Apple Watch Mirroring allows you to see and control your Apple Watch screen from your paired iPhone. You can use touch or assistive features like Voice Control, Switch Control, and more on your iPhone to interact with Apple Watch. (Apple Watch Mirroring is available on Apple Watch Series 6 and later.)

To turn on Apple Watch Mirroring, do any of the following:

- Go to Settings > Accessibility > Apple Watch Mirroring.
- You can triple-click a button if you set up Accessibility Shortcut.

To turn off Apple Watch Mirroring, tap .

See also

Set up mobility-related accessibility features on iPhone

Use Apple Watch with iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Control a nearby Apple device with iPhone

You can remotely control your other Apple devices with your iPhone.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Control Nearby Devices, then tap Control Nearby Devices.

   The device you want to control must be signed in with the same Apple ID and connected to the same Wi-Fi network as your iPhone.

2. Choose the device you want to control, then tap a button.

   Button names correspond to the controls on your device. Tap to see your options, including media play controls.

Tip: To quickly turn on Control Nearby Devices, add this feature to Accessibility Shortcut.

To stop controlling the other device, tap .

See also

Use a switch on other devices with Platform Switching on iPhone

Use buttons on the Apple TV Remote on iPhone

Interact with Apple Watch on your iPhone

Control your home remotely with iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Intro to Switch Control on iPhone

Switch Control is an assistive technology for anyone with limited mobility. It enables you to interact with iPhone by activating a *switch*, such as pressing an external adaptive button, performing a head movement, or making a voiced or voiceless sound. Using one or more switches, you can navigate a cursor around the iPhone screen, then open the Scanner menu to choose an available action such as tap, zoom in, zoom out, and more.

What is a switch?

A switch can be an external hardware device or a feature on your iPhone.

Switches on iPhone don't require any additional hardware. For example:

- *Screen:* Use a tap or long press anywhere on the iPhone screen. You can set up tap and long press as two different switches with separate actions.
- *Camera:* Move your head to the left or right while in view of the front-facing iPhone camera. You can set up left and right movements as two different switches with separate actions.
- *Back Tap:* Double-tap or triple-tap the back of iPhone. You can set up double tap and triple tap as two different switches with separate actions.
- *Sound:* Make simple voiced sounds (such as "Oo") or voiceless sounds (such as a pop). You can set up each sound as a different switch with a separate action.
- *Gaming:* Turn any switch into a virtual game controller to play your favorite games on iPhone.

External switches connect to iPhone through Bluetooth® or the Lightning or USB-C connector. For example:

- Adaptive accessory
- Joystick
- Game controller
- MFi switch or switch interface

How does Switch Control work?

In Switch Control, each switch performs a specific action—for example, Move To Next Item moves the cursor to the next item on the screen. The switch's action is performed when you activate the switch—such as by pressing the adaptive button, moving your head, or making a sound.

You can use just one switch, or you can use multiple switches for different actions, depending on how you like to work. For example, you can activate your Move to Next Item switch to move the cursor from one item to the next. When the cursor highlights the item you want, you can activate your Select Item switch.

See also

Set up and turn on Switch Control on iPhone

Set up and turn on Switch Control on iPhone

To set up Switch Control, you need to connect and add one or more switches, then assign an action to each switch. You can choose a scanning style and fine-tune other settings to suit your needs. After you turn on Switch Control, you may need to change the assigned actions or readjust the settings. If you have difficulty performing these steps, you can get personalized help at your nearest Apple Store.

Step 1: Connect an external switch (optional)

If you want to use an adaptive accessory, joystick, game controller, or MFi device for Switch Control, you need to first connect it to iPhone by following the manufacturer's instructions. If the switch connects using Bluetooth®, you need to pair it with iPhone.

1. Turn on the switch.
2. Go to Settings > Bluetooth, turn on Bluetooth, tap the name of the switch, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Step 2: Add switches and assign actions

You can use only one switch, or you can use multiple switches to accommodate different actions. Each switch performs an assigned action, such as selecting an item or moving the cursor to the next item.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Switch Control > Switches.
2. Tap Add New Switch, then choose External, Screen, Camera, Back Tap, or Sound.

   If you're trying to add an external switch but it isn't shown in the list, make sure it's connected to your iPhone as described above in Step 1: Connect an external switch (optional).
3. Assign an action to the switch.

   The action for the switch depends on the number of switches you have and the scanning style you choose in Step 3: Choose a scanning style, below. If you don't know which action to assign, choose Select Item, which is compatible with Auto Scanning (the default scanning style). You can return to this setting later to change the assigned action.

   Tip: Turn your iPhone into a game controller that uses gestures you've already set up, like the same switch (or alternative input method) that you navigate and control your iPhone with. Or you may decide to reuse your Back Tap gestures instead.

Step 3: Choose a scanning style

By default, the cursor automatically moves from one item to the next after a specified duration. If you prefer to move the cursor manually, you can choose a different scanning style.

Go to Settings > Accessibility > Switch Control > Scanning Style, then choose one of the following:

- *Auto Scanning:* The cursor automatically moves to the next item after a specified duration. This is the default scanning style.

  If you use Auto Scanning with just one switch, make sure the Select Item action is assigned to the switch.

- *Manual Scanning:* When you activate your Move to Next Item switch, the cursor moves to the next item.

  Manual Scanning requires at least two switches. Make sure the Move to Next Item action is assigned to one switch, and the Select Item action is assigned to another switch.

- *Single Switch Step Scanning:* When you activate the Move to Next Item switch, the cursor moves to the next item; if no action is taken within a specified duration, the current item is automatically selected.

  This scanning style requires only one switch. Make sure the Move to Next Item action is assigned to the switch.

Step 4: Fine-tune Switch Control settings

You can adjust the behavior of Switch Control in a variety of ways, to suit your specific needs and style. For example, you can change the scanning speed or have iPhone speak the highlighted items.

Go to Settings > Accessibility > Switch Control, then adjust any of the following:

- *Auto Scanning Time:* Adjust the item scanning speed.
- *Pause on First Item:* Set scanning to pause on the first item in a group.
- *Loops:* Choose how many times to cycle through the screen before hiding Switch Control.
- *Move Repeat:* Set the delay before moving to the previous or next item while a switch is pressed.
- *Long Press:* Set whether a different action occurs when you press and hold a switch, and how long to wait before performing that action.
- *Tap Behavior:* Choose a tap behavior and set the interval for performing a second switch action to show the Scanner menu.
- *Focused Item After Tap:* Choose whether Switch Control resumes scanning at an item you tap or from the beginning.
- *Hold Duration:* Specify how long you need to press and hold a switch before it's accepted as a switch action.
- *Ignore Repeat:* Ignore accidental repeated switch triggers.
- *Sound Effects:* Turn on sound effects.
- *Speech:* Speak items as they're scanned.
- *Menu Items:* Choose the actions shown in the Scanner menu and the order in which they appear.
- *Group Items:* Group items for faster navigation.
- *Large Cursor:* Make the highlight more prominent.
- *Cursor Color:* Choose a different highlight color.

Step 5: Turn on Switch Control

Important: When Switch Control is turned on, you can't use the standard gestures on the touchscreen to exit Switch Control.

Go to Settings > Accessibility > Switch Control, then turn on Switch Control.

Tip: You can add Switch Control to Accessibility Shortcut, then quickly turn it on or off by triple-clicking the side button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or the Home button (on other iPhone models).

See also

Use Switch Control on iPhone to select items, perform actions, and more

Use Switch Control on iPhone to select items, perform actions, and more

After you set up and turn on Switch Control, you can select items on the screen by doing any of the following:

- *Item mode:* The cursor sequentially highlights items or groups of items. This is the default method when you first turn on Switch Control and whenever the Scanner menu appears.
- *Gliding cursor:* You select a point on the screen using scanning crosshairs. This method is useful when you need to select a specific point, such as in Maps, or on a screen with many items.
- *Head tracking:* You can move your head (detected by the front-facing camera) to control the cursor on the screen. This method is useful when you need to select a specific point, such as in Maps, or on a screen with many items.

When the cursor is on the item you want, the Scanner menu opens to show the available actions such as tap, scroll, control the volume, and more.

Use item mode to select items and perform actions

1. Depending on the scanning style you're using, do one of the following:
   - *If using Auto Scanning:* Watch or listen as groups of items are sequentially highlighted.
   - *If using Manual Scanning:* Activate your Move to Next Item switch to navigate through the groups of items on the screen.
   - *If using Single Switch Step Scanning:* Activate your Move to Next Item switch to navigate through the groups of items on the screen.
2. When the group you want is highlighted, do one of the following:
   - *If using Auto Scanning:* Activate your Select Item switch.
   - *If using Manual Scanning:* Activate your Select Item switch.
   - *If using Single Switch Step Scanning:* Wait until the current group is automatically selected.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to scan and select an item within the group.
4. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to scan and choose an action in the Scanner menu. The dots at the bottom of the menu provide more options.

To dismiss the Scanner menu without choosing an action, activate your Select Item switch when the original item is highlighted and all the icons in the menu are dimmed.

Use the gliding cursor to select a point

By default, Switch Control starts in item mode. To use the gliding cursor instead, do the following:

1. Use item mode to select any item, then choose Gliding Cursor (in the Scanner menu).
2. To position the vertical crosshair:

- Activate your Select Item switch when the wide vertical band is over the item you want.
- Activate your Select Item switch again when the fine vertical line is over the item.

3. Repeat to position the horizontal crosshair.
4. In the Scanner menu, select the action you want, then activate your Select Item switch.

To return to item mode, open the Scanner menu, then choose Item Mode.

Set up head tracking

You can move your head to control a cursor on the screen. You can also assign actions to facial expressions, such as a smile or raised eyebrows.

To set up head tracking, do the following:

- Go to Settings > Accessibility > Switch Control > Switches, then make sure you've set up switches.
- Go to Settings > Accessibility > Switch Control > Head Tracking, turn on Head Tracking, then set any of these options:
  - *Assign actions to facial expressions:* Each expression can perform a different action and require a different degree of expressiveness.
  - *Choose how the pointer tracks your head movement:* Tap Tracking Mode, then choose With Face, When Facing Screen Edges, or Relative to Head.
  - *Adjust the pointer speed:* Tap − or +.

Use head tracking

To use head tracking, do the following:

1. Use item mode to select any item, then choose Head Tracking (in the Scanner menu).
2. Move your head to position the cursor on the location you want, then activate it using your Select Item switch or facial expression.
3. In the Scanner menu, select the action you want, then activate your Select Item switch or facial expression.

To return to item mode, open the Scanner menu, then choose Item Mode.

See also

Intro to Switch Control on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Set up and turn on Switch Control

Next
Control several devices with one switch

Support > iPhone User Guide > Use Switch Control on iPhone to select items, perform actions, and more

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use a switch on other devices with Platform Switching on iPhone

You can remotely control your other Apple devices without adjusting any switch connections. With Platform Switching, you can navigate your iPad, Mac, or Apple TV using the same switch that you use to control your iPhone.

1. Connect your devices to the same Wi-Fi network.
2. Sign in with the same Apple ID on all your devices.
3. Set up and turn on Switch Control on iPhone, then turn on Switch Control for the others: iPad, Mac, or Apple TV.
4. Use the switch to open the Scanner menu.
5. Choose Device, choose Use Other Device, then choose Connect.

To remove control from your iPhone, choose Devices on the connected device, then choose Disconnect.

See also

Control a nearby Apple device with iPhone

Use buttons on the Apple TV Remote on iPhone

Interact with Apple Watch on your iPhone

Control your home remotely with iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Set up hearing-related accessibility features on iPhone

In the Accessibility pane of Settings, you can customize options to best suit your hearing needs. You can turn on captions, choose visual or vibrating alerts, interact with Siri using the keyboard, and more.

Action	Related features and settings
Turn sound into text	• Sound recognition • Live Captions (beta) • RTT and TTY • Subtitles and captions • HomePod intercom transcriptions • Audio message transcriptions
Hear better in different situations	• MFi hearing devices • AirPods • Live Listen • Audio settings, including Phone Noise Cancellation and Conversation Boost • Background sounds
Notice your alerts	• LED flash for alerts • Vibration • Siri notifications announcements

See also

Get started with accessibility features on iPhone

Set up mobility-related accessibility features on iPhone

Set up speech-related accessibility features on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use hearing devices with iPhone

You can use MFi hearing aids or sound processors with iPhone and adjust their settings.

Pair hearing devices with iPhone

If your hearing devices aren't listed in Settings > Accessibility > Hearing Devices, you need to pair them with iPhone.

If your hearing devices are already paired to another nearby device, such as a Mac or iPad, make sure Bluetooth® is turned off on those devices. (When you finish pairing your hearing devices to your iPhone, you can turn Bluetooth on again on those devices.)

1. On iPhone, go to Settings > Bluetooth, then make sure Bluetooth is turned on.
2. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Hearing Devices.
3. Turn your hearing devices off and back on again.

   If you're unsure how to turn them off, refer to the instructions that came with them, or check with the audiologist who helped you set them up.
4. When their name appears below MFi Hearing Devices (this could take a minute), tap the name and respond to the pairing requests.

   Pairing can take as long as 60 seconds—don't try to stream audio or otherwise use the hearing devices until pairing is finished. When pairing is finished, you hear a series of beeps and a tone, and a checkmark appears next to the hearing devices in the Devices list.

You need to pair your devices only once (and your audiologist might do it for you). After that, your hearing devices automatically reconnect to iPhone whenever they turn on.

Adjust the settings and view the status of your hearing devices

- *In Settings:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > Hearing Devices > MFi Hearing Devices.
- *By triple-clicking a button:* With Accessibility Shortcut if you've set it up.
- *In Control Center:* Tap . (If you don't see , add it to Control Center—go to Settings > Control Center, then tap next to Hearing.)
- *On the Lock Screen:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > Hearing Devices > MFi Hearing Devices, then turn on Control on Lock Screen. From the Lock Screen, you can do the following:
  - Check battery status.
  - Adjust ambient microphone volume and equalization.
  - Choose which hearing device (left, right, or both) receives streaming audio.
  - Control Live Listen.
  - Choose whether call audio and media audio are routed to the hearing device.

- Choose to play ringtones through the hearing device.

Use your hearing devices with more than one device

If you pair your hearing devices with more than one device (both iPhone and iPad, for example), the connection for your hearing devices automatically switches from one to the other when you do something that generates audio on the other device, or when you receive a phone call on iPhone.

Changes you make to hearing device settings on one device are automatically synced with your other devices.

1. Sign in with your Apple ID on all the devices.
2. Connect all the devices to the same Wi-Fi network.

Turn on Hearing Aid Compatibility

Hearing Aid Compatibility may reduce interference and improve audio quality with some hearing aid models.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Hearing Devices.
2. Turn on Hearing Aid Compatibility.

For iPhone hearing aid compatibility ratings, see the Apple Support article About Hearing Aid Compatibility (HAC) requirements for iPhone.

Hearing aid compatibility ratings aren't a guarantee that a particular hearing aid works well with a particular phone. Some hearing aids might work well with phones that do not meet the FCC requirements for hearing aid compatibility. To ensure that a particular hearing aid works well with a particular phone, use them together before purchasing.

Stream audio to your hearing devices

You can stream audio from Phone, Siri, Apple Music, Apple Podcasts, Apple TV, and more.

1. Tap in Control Center, on the Lock Screen, or in the Now Playing controls for the app you're listening to.
2. Choose your hearing device.

You can also automatically route audio calls to a hearing device.

See also

Use iPhone as a remote microphone with Live Listen

Set up hearing-related accessibility features on iPhone

Apple Support article: Made for iPhone compatible hearing devices

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Overview

Next
Use Live Listen

Support > iPhone User Guide > Use hearing devices with iPhone

Use iPhone as a remote microphone with Live Listen

You can stream sound from the microphone on iPhone to your MFi hearing devices or AirPods. This can help you hear better in some situations—for example, when having a conversation in a noisy environment.

1. If you're using AirPods, place them in your ears.

   If your AirPods don't automatically connect to iPhone, tap in Control Center or on the Lock Screen, then choose your AirPods.

2. To turn Live Listen on or off, do one of the following:

   - Open Control Center, tap , tap your hearing device or AirPods, then tap Live Listen.

     (If you don't see , add it to Control Center—go to Settings > Control Center, then tap next to Hearing.)

   - If you've set up Accessibility Shortcut, triple-click a button, tap Hearing Devices, then tap Live Listen.

   - If you're using hearing aids, go to Settings > Accessibility > Hearing Devices, then turn on Live Listen.

3. Position iPhone near the sound source.

See also

Use Live Listen with AirPods

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Recognize sounds using iPhone

Your iPhone can continuously listen for certain sounds—such as a doorbell, siren, or crying baby—and notify you when it recognizes these sounds.

Note: Don't rely on your iPhone to recognize sounds in circumstances where you may be harmed or injured, in high-risk or emergency situations, or for navigation.

Set up Sound Recognition

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Sound Recognition, then turn on Sound Recognition.
2. Tap Sounds, then turn on the sounds you want iPhone to recognize.

Tip: To quickly turn Sound Recognition on or off, use Control Center.

Add a custom alarm, appliance, or doorbell

You can also set up iPhone to recognize a custom alarm, appliance, or doorbell if they aren't recognized automatically.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Sound Recognition > Sounds.
2. Tap Custom Alarm or Custom Appliance or Doorbell, then enter a name.
3. When your alarm, appliance, or doorbell is ready, place iPhone near the sound and minimize background noise.
4. Tap Start Listening, then follow the onscreen instructions.

See also

Use iPhone as a remote microphone with Live Listen

Set up hearing-related accessibility features on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Set up and use RTT and TTY on iPhone

If you have hearing or speech difficulties, you can communicate by telephone using Teletype (TTY) or real-time text (RTT)—protocols that transmit text as you type and allow the recipient to read the message right away. RTT is a more advanced protocol that transmits audio as you type text.

iPhone provides built-in Software RTT and TTY from the Phone app—it requires no additional devices. If you turn on Software RTT/TTY, iPhone defaults to the RTT protocol whenever it's supported by the carrier.

iPhone also supports Hardware TTY, so you can connect iPhone to an external TTY device with the iPhone TTY Adapter (sold separately in many regions).

Important: RTT and TTY aren't supported by all carriers or in all countries or regions. RTT and TTY functionality depends on your carrier and network environment. When making an emergency call in the U.S., iPhone sends special characters or tones to alert the operator. The operator's ability to receive or respond to these tones can vary depending on your location. Apple doesn't guarantee that the operator will be able to receive or respond to an RTT or TTY call.

Set up RTT and TTY

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility.
2. Tap RTT/TTY or TTY, then do any of the following:
   - If your iPhone has Dual SIM, choose a line.
   - Turn on Software RTT/TTY or Software TTY.
   - Tap Relay Number, then enter the phone number to use for relay calls using Software RTT/TTY.
   - Turn on Send Immediately to send each character as you type. Turn it off to complete messages before sending.
   - Turn on Answer All Calls as RTT/TTY.
   - Turn on Hardware TTY.

   When RTT or TTY is turned on, ☎ appears in the status bar at the top of the screen.

Connect iPhone to an external TTY device

If you turned on Hardware TTY in Settings, connect iPhone to your TTY device using the iPhone TTY Adapter. If Software TTY is also turned on, incoming calls default to Hardware TTY. For information about using a particular TTY device, see the documentation that came with it.

Start an RTT or TTY call

1. Open the Phone app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Contacts, choose a contact, then tap the phone number.
3. Choose RTT/TTY Call or RTT/TTY Relay Call.

4. Wait for the call to connect, then tap RTT/TTY.

   iPhone defaults to the RTT protocol whenever it's supported by the carrier.

If you haven't turned RTT on and you receive an incoming RTT call, tap the RTT button to answer the call with RTT.

Type text during an RTT or TTY call

1. Open the Phone app on your iPhone when you receive a call or make an RTT or TTY call.
2. Enter your message in the text field.

   If you turned on Send Immediately in Settings, your recipient sees each character as you type. Otherwise, tap to send the message.
3. To also transmit audio, tap .

Review the transcript of a Software RTT or TTY call

Your iPhone can capture voice messages and provide auto-answer transcriptions for incoming calls.

1. Open the Phone app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Recents.

   RTT and TTY calls have next to them.
3. Next to the call you want to review, tap .

Note: Continuity features aren't available for RTT and TTY support. Standard voice call rates apply for both Software RTT/TTY and Hardware TTY calls.

See also

Get live captions in real time on iPhone

Apple Support article: Answer or make RTT or TTY calls from your iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use sound recognition

Next
Flash the LED for alerts

Support › iPhone User Guide › Set up and use RTT and TTY on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Flash the LED for alerts on iPhone

If you can't hear the sounds that announce incoming calls and other alerts, iPhone can flash its LED (next to the camera lens on the back of iPhone). The LED flashes only if iPhone is locked.

Tip: LED Flash for Alerts is a useful feature for anyone who might miss audible alerts in a noisy environment.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Audio/Visual, then turn on LED Flash for Alerts.
2. To prevent LED flashes when iPhone is in Silent mode, turn off Flash on Silent.

See also

Change iPhone sounds and vibrations

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Adjust audio settings on iPhone

You can adjust mono audio, left-right stereo balance, and phone noise cancellation to suit your hearing needs. With supported Apple and Beats headphones, you can amplify soft sounds and adjust certain frequencies to best suit your hearing. These adjustments help music, movies, phone calls, and podcasts sound crisper and clearer.

Balance the audio

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Audio/Visual.
2. Adjust any of the following:
   - *Mono Audio:* Turn on to combine the left and right channels to play the same content.
   - *Balance:* Drag the Left Right Stereo Balance slider.

Use phone noise cancellation

Phone noise cancellation uses air pressure to reduce ambient background noise. This means that you hear better when you're holding the receiver to your ear in certain noisy environments. Phone noise cancellation is available and on by default on iPhone 12 and earlier, and can be turned off for your comfort.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Audio/Visual.
2. Turn Phone Noise Cancellation off or on.

Adjust frequencies, tone, and amplification

1. Make sure you're in a quiet environment and that you've paired your AirPods or Beats headphones (with Bluetooth®), or connected your EarPods.
2. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Audio/Visual > Headphone Accommodations, then turn on Headphone Accommodations.
3. Tap Custom Audio Setup, then follow the onscreen instructions. Or manually set any of the following:
   - *Frequencies:* Below Tune Audio For, choose an option to boost different frequencies.
   - *Soft sounds:* Drag the slider to set the amplification level.
4. To preview your audio settings, tap Play Sample.
5. Scroll down, then do any of the following:
   - Turn on Phone to apply the settings to phone calls.
   - Turn on Media to apply them to media playback like music, movies, and podcasts.

Tip: Quickly access Headphone Accommodations by tapping in Control Center. (If you don't see , add it to Control Center—go to Settings > Control Center, then tap next to Hearing.)

For information about applying Headphone Accommodations settings to Transparency Mode and Conversation Boost when using AirPods Pro and iPhone, see Customize Transparency mode for AirPods Pro in the AirPods User Guide.

Add an audiogram

You can use an audiogram to customize the audio settings on supported Apple and Beats headphones and improve their accuracy and sound quality.

Using pure-tone audio tests, audiograms display how loud sounds need to be in order for you to hear them.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Audio/Visual > Headphone Accommodations.
2. Turn on Headphone Accommodations, then tap Custom Audio Setup.
3. Select an audiogram, or tap Add Audiogram.

Tip: Create an audiogram in the Health app. See Download a third-party audiogram app.

If the audiogram results from both ears are nearly symmetric, both left and right outputs are fit with the average of their profiles. If they're asymmetric, the outputs are fit for the better ear.

See also

Check your headphone audio levels on iPhone

Use audiogram data in Health on iPhone

Set sound and vibration options

Change the way music sounds on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Flash the LED for alerts

Next
Play background sounds

Support > iPhone User Guide > Adjust audio settings on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Play background sounds on iPhone to mask environmental noise

You can play calming sounds—such as ocean or rain—to mask unwanted environmental noise and help minimize distractions so you can focus or rest.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Audio/Visual > Background Sounds, then turn on Background Sounds.

   Tip: You can quickly reach Background Sounds when you tap in Control Center, if you've added it there.

2. Set any of the following:

   - *Sound:* Choose a sound; the audio file downloads to your iPhone.
   - *Volume:* Drag the slider.
   - *Use When Media is Playing:* Adjust the volume of the background sound when iPhone is playing music or other media.
   - *Stop Sounds When Locked:* Background sounds stop playing when iPhone is locked.

See also

Play music on iPhone

Set up a Focus on iPhone

Hide ads and distractions in Safari on iPhone

Stop or reduce onscreen motion on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Display subtitles and captions on iPhone

iPhone can provide subtitles, closed captions, and transcriptions so you can follow along more easily with audio and video.

Turn on subtitles and captions in the Apple TV app

When you play video content in a supported app, you can turn on subtitles and closed captions (if available). iPhone usually shows standard subtitles and captions, but you can also choose special accessible captions—such as subtitles for the deaf and hard of hearing (SDH)—if available.

1. While playing video content, tap .
2. Choose from the list of available subtitles and captions.

Customize the subtitles and captions in supported video apps

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Subtitles & Captioning.
2. If you prefer closed captioning or subtitles for the deaf and hard of hearing when available, turn on Closed Captions + SDH.
3. Tap Style, then choose an existing caption style or create a new style based on the following:
   - Font, size, and color
   - Background color and opacity
   - Text opacity, edge style, and highlight

See also

Get live captions in real time on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Show transcriptions for Intercom messages from HomePod on iPhone

If members of your home use HomePod for Intercom messages, iPhone can transcribe Intercom messages for you.

1. In the Home app, tap , then tap Home Settings.
2. Tap Intercom, then choose when you receive notifications.
3. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Subtitles & Captioning, then turn on Show Audio Transcriptions.

See Use HomePod as an Intercom in the HomePod User Guide.

See also

Set up hearing-related accessibility features on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Get live captions in real time on iPhone

With Live Captions (beta), spoken dialogue is turned into text and displayed in real time on your iPhone screen. You can more easily follow the audio in any app, such as FaceTime or Podcasts, and in live conversations around you. Live Captions is available on iPhone 11 and later when the primary language is set to English (U.S.) or English (Canada).

Important: The accuracy of Live Captions may vary and shouldn't be relied upon in high-risk or emergency situations.

Set up and customize Live Captions

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Live Captions (Beta).
2. Turn on Live Captions, then tap Appearance to customize the text, size, and color of the captions.
3. By default, Live Captions are shown across all apps. To get live captions only for certain apps such as FaceTime or RTT, turn them on below In-App Live Captions.

See live captions

With Live Captions turned on, iPhone automatically transcribes the dialogue in apps or around you. You can do any of the following:

- *Transcribe a conversation near you:* Tap .
- *Make the transcription window bigger:* Tap . To restore the window to the smaller size, tap .
- *Pause the transcription:* Tap .
- *Hide the transcription window:* Tap . To restore the window, tap .

Set up speech-related accessibility features on iPhone

In the Accessibility pane of Settings, you can customize options to best suit your speech needs. You can communicate with family, friends, and colleagues in the way that works best for you, whether you're nonspeaking, at risk of speech loss, or someone with a speech disability.

Action	Related features and settings
Type words you want spoken	• Live Speech
Record your voice	• Personal Voice
Make Siri requests in text	• Type to Siri
Use sound actions for Switch Control	• Switch Control
Allow more time for Siri requests	• Siri Pause Time

See also

Get started with accessibility features on iPhone

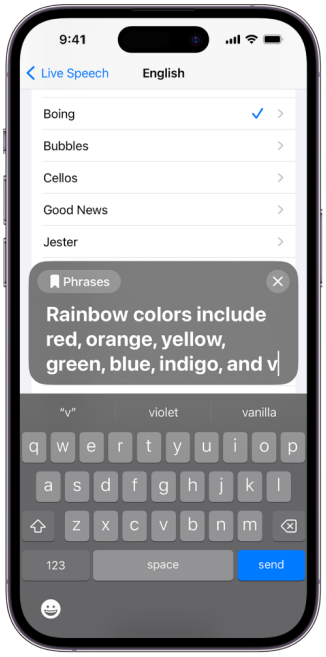
Set up hearing-related accessibility features on iPhone

Set up cognitive-related accessibility features on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Type to speak using Live Speech on iPhone

With Live Speech on iPhone, you can type and have your words spoken in person, on Phone and FaceTime calls, and in assistive communication apps using any of dozens of voices, including your Personal Voice. (Available in select languages.)



1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Live Speech, then turn on Live Speech.
2. Choose a voice. You can use Live Speech with any voice you choose (including your Personal Voice).
3. Triple-click the side button or Home button (depending on your iPhone model), then do one of the following:
   - Type what you want to have spoken.
   - Tap suggested words that appear above the onscreen keyboard.
   - Paste copied text into the field.
   - Tap to quickly access your Favorite Phrases. (You must first have added your most frequently used phrases in Settings > Accessibility > Live Speech > Favorite Phrases.
4. Tap Send to have your text spoken.

People hear your words spoken in the conversation if you're using the FaceTime or Phone apps. Otherwise they will come out of the speaker on your iPhone.

See also

Record your Personal Voice on iPhone

If you're at risk of speech loss or someone with a speech disability, you can create a personalized voice on iPhone to use with Live Speech. With Personal Voice, you can create a voice that sounds like your own to use to type to speak in FaceTime, Phone, and assistive communication apps. (Available in select languages.)

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Personal Voice.
2. Tap Create a Personal Voice, then follow the series of prompts.

   (If you need to pause your recording session, tap Done. To resume, tap Continue Recording.)

Note: To see the option to create your Personal Voice, you must first set a passcode.

Your Personal Voice is saved securely on your iPhone for you to use during Phone and FaceTime calls, in-person conversations, and third-party alternative and augmentative communication (AAC) apps.

Important: You may only use Personal Voice to create a voice on your iPhone that sounds like you using your own personal voice for your personal, noncommercial use. (Your Legacy Contact won't be able to access your Personal Voice.) See the Apple Support article How to create a Personal Voice.

See also

Type instead of speak to Siri

Hear iPhone speak the screen, selected text, and typing feedback

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Set up cognitive-related accessibility features on iPhone

In the Accessibility pane of Settings, you can customize options to best suit your cognitive needs. You can reduce distraction and sensory stimulus, turn on captions or audio features to read the content on your screen, and more.

Action	Related features and settings
Reduce distraction and sensory stimulus	• Background sounds • Onscreen motion • Focus • Guided Access • Hide ads and distractions in Safari
Get help with everyday tasks	• Siri • Shortcuts
Pair audio and text	• Live Captions (beta) • Spoken content • Audio message transcripts
Let iPhone type for you	• Dictation • Predictive text
Keep an eye on your screen use	• Screen Time • App Limits
Locate people and things	• Find a friend • Find a device • Separation alerts • Check in • Use Precision Finding on iPhone 15 models to meet up with a friend
Simplify sign-ins / Store what you might forget	• Keychain • Face ID • Touch ID
Identify people and things	• Facial recognition • People detection • Image descriptions

You can also set up Assistive Access, which gives those with cognitive disabilities the option to perform the most common tasks, such as taking photos and communicating with their inner circle of family and friends, while reducing cognitive load and offering more focused choices. See the Assistive Access User Guide.

See also

Get started with accessibility features on iPhone

Set up speech-related accessibility features on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Record a Personal Voice

Next
Use Guided Access

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Table of Contents ⊕

Use Guided Access on iPhone

Guided Access helps you stay focused on a task by temporarily restricting iPhone to a single app, and allowing you to control which app features are available. You can do any of the following:

- Disable areas of the screen that aren't relevant to a task, or areas where an accidental gesture might cause a distraction
- Disable the iPhone hardware buttons
- Limit how long someone can use the app

Set up Guided Access

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Guided Access, then turn on Guided Access.
2. Adjust any of the following:

   - *Passcode Settings:* Tap Set Guided Access Passcode, then enter a passcode.

     You can also turn on Face ID (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Touch ID (on an iPhone with a Home button) as a way to end a Guided Access session.

   - *Time Limits:* Play a sound or speak the time remaining before a Guided Access session ends.
   - *Accessibility Shortcut:* Turn the shortcut on or off during Guided Access sessions.
   - *Display Auto-Lock:* Set how long it takes iPhone to automatically lock during a Guided Access session.

Start a Guided Access session

1. Open the app you want to use.
2. To turn on Guided Access, do one of the following:

   Siri: Say something like: "Turn on Guided Access." Learn how to use Siri.

   - Use Control Center if you've added it there.
   - Use Accessibility Shortcut if you've set it up.
3. Circle any areas of the screen you want to disable. Drag the mask into position or use the handles to adjust its size.
4. Tap Options, then turn on or off any of the following:

   - Side Button
   - Volume Buttons
   - Motion (to prevent iPhone from switching from portrait to landscape or from responding to other motions)
   - Keyboards
   - Touch
   - Time Limit
5. Tap Start.

Important: Crash Detection and Emergency Services are not available while using Guided Access. Exit Guided Access to use Crash Detection or to make emergency calls.

End a Guided Access session

Do any of the following:

- *Use the Guided Access passcode:* Triple-click the side button or Home button (depending on your iPhone model), then enter the Guided Access passcode.
- *Use Face ID:* On an iPhone with Face ID turned on, double-click the side button, then unlock with Face ID.
- *Use Touch ID:* On an iPhone with Touch ID turned on, double-click the Home button, then unlock with Touch ID.

To set up an iPhone with a limited interface, see the Assistive Access User Guide.

See also

Set up a Focus on iPhone

Hide ads and distractions in Safari on iPhone

Stop or reduce onscreen motion on iPhone

Set up cognitive-related accessibility features on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Use the built-in privacy and security protections of iPhone

iPhone is designed to protect your data and your privacy. Built-in privacy features minimize how much of your information is available to anyone but you, and you can adjust what information is shared and where you share it. Built-in security features help prevent anyone but you from accessing the data on your iPhone and in iCloud.

To take maximum advantage of the privacy and security features built into iPhone, follow these practices.

Protect access to your iPhone

- *Set a strong passcode:* Setting a passcode to unlock iPhone is the most important thing you can do to safeguard your device.
- *Use Face ID or Touch ID:* Face ID (supported models) or Touch ID (supported models) provides a secure and convenient way to unlock your iPhone, authorize purchases and payments, and sign in to many third-party apps. See Set up Face ID on iPhone or Set up Touch ID on iPhone.
- *Turn on Find My iPhone:* Find My helps you find your iPhone if it's lost or stolen and prevents anyone else from activating or using your iPhone if it's missing.
- *Control what features are available without unlocking your iPhone:* Disallow or allow access to some commonly used features, such as Control Center and USB connections, when your device is locked.

Keep your Apple ID secure

Your Apple ID provides access to your data in iCloud and your account information for services like the App Store and Apple Music. To learn how to protect the security of your Apple ID, see Keep your Apple ID secure on iPhone.

Make account sign-ins safer and easier

For participating websites and apps, there are multiple ways to make sign-in more convenient and secure.

- *Sign in with passkeys:* Passkeys let you sign in to website and app accounts with Face ID or Touch ID instead of a password. Because a passkey doesn't leave the devices where you're signed in with your Apple ID, and because it's specific to the website or app you create it for, it's protected from leaks and phishing attempts. And unlike a password, you don't have to create, guard, or remember it.
- *Use Sign in with Apple:* You can use your Apple ID instead of creating and remembering user names and passwords for signing in to accounts. Sign in with Apple also provides the security of two-factor authentication, and it limits the information shared about you.
- *Let iPhone create strong passwords:* If passkey support or Sign in with Apple isn't available when you sign up for a service, let iPhone automatically create a strong password that you don't have to remember.

For all your website and app passwords, there are many other ways to make sign-in safer and easier.

- *Replace weak passwords:* If you create any weak or compromised passwords, iPhone automatically identifies them for you to fix.
- *Share passkeys and passwords securely:* Use AirDrop to securely share a passkey or password with someone using their iPhone, iPad, or Mac.

- *Use the built-in authenticator for two-factor authentication:* For websites and apps that offer two-factor authentication, fill in automatically generated verification codes without relying on SMS messages or additional apps.
- *Easily fill in SMS passcodes:* You can automatically fill in one-time passcodes sent from websites and apps to your iPhone.
- *Keep passkeys and passwords up to date on all your devices:* iCloud Keychain automatically keeps your credentials up to date across your other devices.

Manage the information you share with people and apps

- *Use Safety Check:* You can quickly and conveniently review and update information you share with people and apps. If your personal safety is at risk, you can also use Safety Check to immediately stop sharing information.
- *Control app tracking:* All apps are required to ask your permission before tracking you or your iPhone across websites and apps owned by other companies for advertising or to share your information with a data broker. You can change permission later, and you can stop all apps from requesting permission.
- *Control what you share with apps:* You can review and adjust the data you share with apps, the location information you share, the hardware you share, and how Apple delivers advertising to you in the App Store, Apple News, and Stocks.
- *Review the privacy practices of apps:* Go to the app's product page in the App Store for a developer-reported summary of the app's privacy practices, including what data is collected. For the apps that you download, review the App Privacy Report, which shows you how apps are using the permissions you granted them.

Protect your email privacy

- *Protect your Mail activity:* Turn on Mail Privacy Protection to make it harder for senders to learn about your Mail activity. Mail Privacy Protection hides your IP address so senders can't link it to your other online activity or use it to determine your exact location. Mail Privacy Protection also prevents senders from seeing whether you've opened the email they sent you.
- *Hide your personal email address:* When you subscribe to iCloud+, Hide My Email allows you to generate unique, random email addresses that forward to your personal email account. You don't have to share your personal email address when filling out forms or signing up for newsletters on the web, or when sending email.

Protect your web browsing

- *Use the internet more privately with iCloud Private Relay:* When you subscribe to iCloud+, you can use iCloud Private Relay to help prevent websites and network providers from creating a detailed profile about you.
- *Manage your privacy, and help protect yourself against malicious websites:* Safari helps prevent trackers from following you across websites. You can review the Privacy Report to see a summary of trackers that have been encountered and prevented by Intelligent Tracking Prevention on the current webpage you're visiting. You can also review and adjust Safari settings to keep your browsing activities private from others who use the same device, and help protect yourself from malicious websites. See Browse privately in Safari on iPhone.

Lock down your iPhone if it's facing a sophisticated cyberattack

If you find your iPhone and personal accounts are targeted by sophisticated remote attacks, you can also help protect yourself with Lockdown Mode. Lockdown Mode offers an extreme level of security for the very few users who, because of who they are or what they do, may be personally targeted by some of the most sophisticated digital threats, such as those from private companies developing state-sponsored mercenary spyware. Lockdown Mode automatically protects Safari, Messages, Home, and many other

Apple services and apps. Webpages and internet communications continue working, but with reduction in performance and usability. See Harden your iPhone from a cyberattack with Lockdown Mode.

To get personalized support for these practices, go to the Apple Support website (not available in all countries or regions).

To learn how Apple designs security into the core of its platforms, see the Apple Platform Security User Guide. To learn more about how Apple protects your information, go to the Privacy website.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use Guided Access

Next
Set a passcode

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Set a passcode on iPhone

For better security, set a passcode that needs to be entered to unlock iPhone when you turn it on or wake it. Setting a passcode also turns on data protection, which encrypts your iPhone data with 256-bit AES encryption. (Some apps may opt out of using data protection.)

Set or change the passcode

1. Go to Settings, then depending on your model, do one of the following:
   - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Tap Face ID & Passcode.
   - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Tap Touch ID & Passcode.
2. Tap Turn Passcode On or Change Passcode.

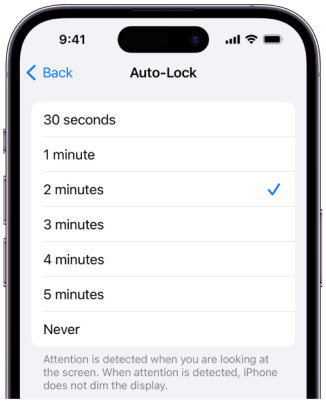
   To view options for creating a password, tap Passcode Options. The most secure options are Custom Alphanumeric Code and Custom Numeric Code.

After you set a passcode, on supported models you can use Face ID or Touch ID to unlock iPhone (depending on your model). For additional security, however, you must always enter your passcode to unlock your iPhone under the following conditions:

- You turn on or restart your iPhone.
- You haven't unlocked your iPhone for more than 48 hours.
- You haven't unlocked your iPhone with the passcode in the last 6.5 days, and you haven't unlocked it with Face ID or Touch ID in the last 4 hours.
- Your iPhone receives a remote lock command.
- There are five unsuccessful attempts to unlock your iPhone with Face ID or Touch ID.
- An attempt to use Emergency SOS is initiated (see Use Emergency SOS).
- An attempt to view your Medical ID is initiated (see Set up and view your Medical ID).

Change when iPhone automatically locks

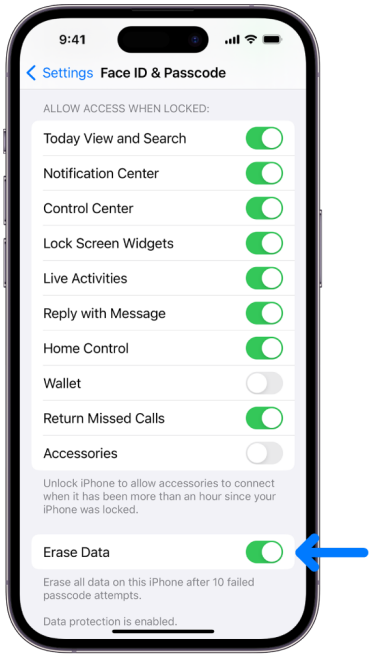
Go to Settings > Display & Brightness > Auto-Lock, then set a length of time.



Erase data after 10 failed passcodes

Set iPhone to erase all information, media, and personal settings after 10 consecutive failed passcode attempts.

1. Go to Settings, then do one of the following:
   - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Tap Face ID & Passcode.
   - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Tap Touch ID & Passcode.
2. Scroll to the bottom and turn on Erase Data.



After all data is erased, you must restore your device from a backup. If you didn't back up your iPad, you need to set it up again as new.

Turn off the passcode

1. Go to Settings, then do one of the following:
   - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Tap Face ID & Passcode.
   - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Tap Touch ID & Passcode.
2. Tap Turn Passcode Off.

Reset the passcode

If you enter the wrong passcode six times in a row, you'll be locked out of your device, and you'll receive a message that says iPhone is disabled. If you can't remember your passcode, you can erase your iPhone with a computer or with recovery mode, then set a new passcode. See the Apple Support article If you forgot the passcode on your iPhone, or your iPhone is disabled.

Note: If you made an iCloud or computer backup before you forgot your passcode, you can restore your data and settings from the backup.

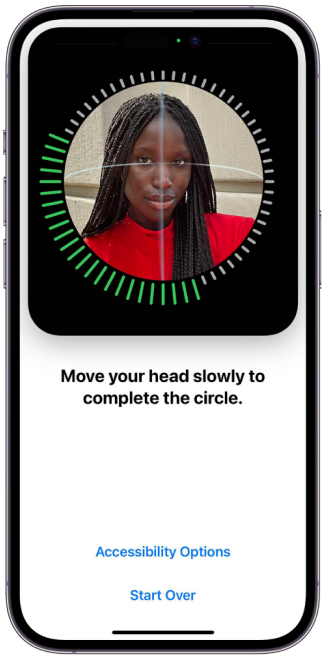
Set up Face ID on iPhone

Use Face ID (supported models) to securely and conveniently unlock iPhone, authorize purchases and payments, and sign in to many third-party apps by simply glancing at your iPhone.

To use Face ID, you must also set a passcode on your iPhone.

Set up Face ID or add an alternate appearance

- If you didn't set up Face ID when you first set up your iPhone, go to Settings > Face ID & Passcode > Set up Face ID, then follow the onscreen instructions.
- To set up an additional appearance for Face ID to recognize, go to Settings > Face ID & Passcode > Set Up an Alternate Appearance, then follow the onscreen instructions.



If you have physical limitations, you can tap Accessibility Options during Face ID set up. When you do this, setting up facial recognition doesn't require the full range of head motion. Using Face ID is still secure, but it requires more consistency in how you look at iPhone.

Face ID also has an accessibility feature you can use if you're blind or have low vision. If you don't want Face ID to require that you look at iPhone with your eyes open, go to Settings > Accessibility, then turn off Require Attention for Face ID. This feature is automatically turned off if you turn on VoiceOver when you first set up iPhone. See Change Face ID and attention settings on iPhone.

Use Face ID while wearing a face mask

On iPhone 12 models, iPhone 13 models, iPhone 14 models, and iPhone 15 models, you can use Face ID to unlock your phone while you wear a face mask (or other covering that blocks your mouth and nose).

When you turn on Face ID with a Mask, Face ID analyzes the unique characteristics around your eyes, and it works with all of the Face ID options you turn on in Settings > Face ID & Passcode.

Note: Face ID is most accurate when it's set up for full-face recognition only.

Go to Settings > Face ID & Passcode, then do any of the following:

- *Allow Face ID to work while you wear a face mask:* Turn on Face ID with a Mask, then follow the onscreen instructions.

  Important: If you usually wear glasses, you can improve the accuracy of Face ID by wearing a pair of transparent glasses (not sunglasses) when you turn on Face ID with a Mask.

- *Add a pair of transparent glasses (not sunglasses) to your appearance:* Tap Add Glasses, then follow the onscreen instructions.

- *Don't allow Face ID to work while you wear a face mask:* Turn off Face ID with a Mask.

Alternatively, you can use Apple Watch with all models of iPhone that support Face ID to unlock iPhone while you wear a face mask. See Unlock iPhone with Apple Watch.

Temporarily disable Face ID

You can temporarily prevent Face ID from unlocking your iPhone.

1. Press and hold the side button and either volume button for 2 seconds.
2. After the sliders appear, press the side button to immediately lock iPhone.

   iPhone locks automatically if you don't touch the screen for a minute or so.

The next time you unlock iPhone with your passcode, Face ID is enabled again.

Turn off Face ID

1. Go to Settings > Face ID & Passcode.
2. Do one of the following:

   - *Turn off Face ID for specific items only:* Turn off one or more of the options.
   - *Turn off Face ID for face masks:* Turn off Face ID with a Mask.
   - *Turn off Face ID:* Tap Reset Face ID.

If your device is lost or stolen, you can prevent Face ID from being used to unlock your device with Find My iPhone Lost Mode. (See Locate a device in Find My on iPhone.)

For more information about Face ID, see About Face ID advanced technology.

See also

Change when iPhone automatically locks

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Set a passcode

Next
Set up Touch ID

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Set up Touch ID on iPhone

Use Touch ID (supported models) to securely and conveniently unlock iPhone, authorize purchases and payments, and sign in to many third-party apps by pressing the Home button with your finger or thumb.

To use Touch ID, you must also set up a passcode on your iPhone.

Turn on fingerprint recognition

1. If you didn't turn on fingerprint recognition when you first set up your iPhone, go to Settings > Touch ID & Passcode.
2. Turn on any of the options, then follow the onscreen instructions.

If you turn on iTunes & App Store, you're asked for your Apple ID password when you make your first purchase from the App Store, Apple Books, or the iTunes Store. When you make your next purchases, you're asked to use Touch ID.

Note: If you can't add a fingerprint or unlock your iPhone using Touch ID, see the Apple Support article If Touch ID isn't working.

Add a fingerprint

You can add multiple fingerprints (both of your thumbs and forefingers, for example).

1. Go to Settings > Touch ID & Passcode.
2. Tap Add a Fingerprint.
3. Follow the onscreen instructions.

Name or delete a fingerprint

1. Go to Settings > Touch ID & Passcode.

   If you added more than one fingerprint, place a finger on the Home button to identify its print.
2. Tap the fingerprint, then enter a name (such as "Thumb") or tap Delete Fingerprint.

Turn off Touch ID

Go to Settings > Touch ID & Passcode, then turn off one or more of the options.

See also

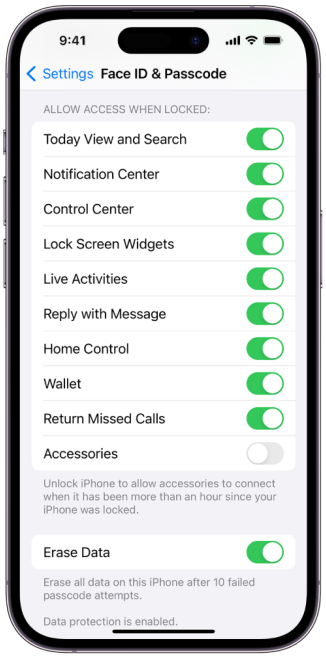
Change when iPhone automatically locks

Control access to information on the iPhone Lock Screen

You can easily access a few commonly used features (such as widgets, media playback controls, and Control Center) from the Lock Screen. You can control access to these items when iPhone is locked. (For security, USB connections aren't allowed when iPhone is locked.)

If you turn off Lock Screen access to a feature, you prevent someone who has your iPhone from viewing any personal information that it might contain (such as an upcoming event in the Calendar widget). However, you also lose quick access to the information yourself.

Go to Settings > Face ID & Passcode (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Touch ID & Passcode (on an iPhone with a Home button), then select your options below Allow Access When Locked.



You can turn access on or off to the following features while iPhone is locked:

- Widgets (see Add, edit, and remove widgets on iPhone)
- Notification Center (see Change notification settings on iPhone)
- Control Center (see Use and customize Control Center on iPhone)
- Siri (see Use Siri on iPhone)
- Replying to messages (see Send and reply to messages on iPhone)
- Home Control (see Intro to Home on iPhone)
- Wallet (see Use passes in Wallet on iPhone)
- Returning missed calls (see Answer or decline incoming calls on iPhone)
- Connecting to a Mac, a Windows PC, or an accessory with USB (such as when you connect iPhone to your computer using USB)

  Important: If you change the default setting and allow USB connections when iPhone is locked, you disable an important security feature of your iPhone.

You can also supply medical information and emergency contacts in a Medical ID that first responders and others can view on your iPhone when it's locked. See Set up and view your Medical ID.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Set up Touch ID

Next
Keep your Apple ID secure

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Keep your Apple ID secure on iPhone

Your Apple ID is the account you use to access Apple services like the App Store, Apple Music, iCloud, iMessage, FaceTime, and more. Your account includes the email address and password you use to sign in as well as the contact, payment, and security details you use across Apple services. Apple employs industry-standard practices to safeguard your Apple ID.

Best practices for maximizing the security of your Apple ID

- Don't let others use your Apple ID, even family members.

  To share purchases, subscriptions, a family calendar, and more without sharing Apple IDs, set up Family Sharing.

- Use two-factor authentication. If you created your Apple ID on a device with iOS 13.4, iPadOS 13.4, macOS 10.15.4, or later, your account automatically uses two-factor authentication. If you previously created an Apple ID account without two-factor authentication, turn on two-factor authentication.

- Never provide your password, security questions, verification codes, recovery key, or any other account security details to anyone else. Apple will never ask you for this information.

- When accessing your Apple ID account page in Safari or another web browser, look for the lock icon in the address field to verify that your session is encrypted and secure.

- When using a public computer, always sign out when your session is complete to prevent other people from accessing your account.

- Avoid phishing scams. Don't click links in suspicious email or text messages and never provide personal information on any website you aren't certain is legitimate. See the Apple Support article Recognize and avoid phishing messages, phony support calls, and other scams.

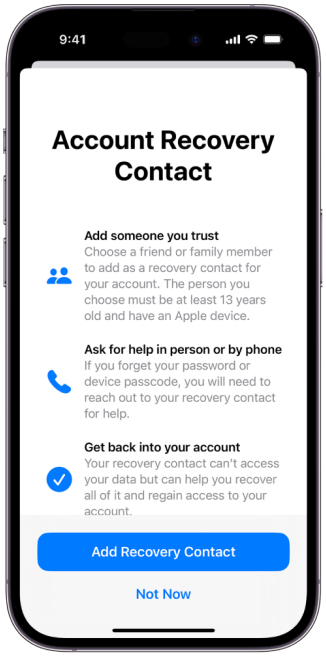
- Don't use your password with other online accounts.

- If one of your devices is lost or stolen, turn on Lost Mode as soon as possible for that device. (You can do this on a friend's device and don't need to use your own.)

Add Account Recovery Contacts

Choose one or more people you trust as Account Recovery Contacts to help you reset your Apple ID password and regain access to your account if you ever forget your password or get locked out.

Go to Settings > [*your name*] > Sign-In & Security > Account Recovery, tap Add Recovery Contact, then follow the onscreen instructions.

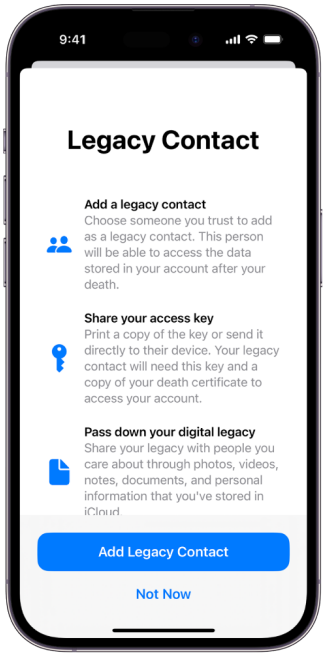


For more information, go to Settings > [*your name*] > Sign-In & Security, then tap "Learn more" below Add Recovery Contact.

Add Legacy Contacts

The Digital Legacy program allows you to designate people as Legacy Contacts so they can access your Apple ID account in the event of your death.

Go to Settings > [*your name*] > Sign-In & Security > Legacy Contact, tap Add Legacy Contact, then follow the onscreen instructions.



For more information about how to share the access key with a legacy contact, how to remove a legacy contact, and how your legacy contact can request access to your account, see the Apple Support article How to add a Legacy Contact for your Apple ID. Also see the Apple Support article Data that a Legacy Contact can access.

Generate a recovery key for your account

For additional control over your account security, you have the option to generate a recovery key that helps you reset your account password or regain access to your Apple ID. A recovery key is a randomly generated 28-character code that you should keep in a safe place. You can reset your account password by either entering your recovery key or using another device already signed in with your Apple ID. To ensure you have access to your account, you are personally responsible for maintaining access to the recovery key and your trusted devices.

See the Apple Support article How to generate a recovery key.

For more information about best practices, see the Apple Support article Security and your Apple ID.

To set up or manage your Apple ID, go to the Apple ID website.

If you forgot your Apple ID or password, see the Recover your Apple ID website.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Control access to information on the Lock Screen

Next
Use passkeys to sign in to apps and websites

Support › iPhone User Guide › Keep your Apple ID secure on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use passkeys to sign in to apps and websites on iPhone

You can create and save passkeys to replace the passwords you use to sign in to supported apps and websites on your iPhone.

Passkeys are more secure than passwords, because they're uniquely generated for every account by your own device, and are less vulnerable to phishing. And they work on all your devices that are signed in to the same Apple ID.

Like passwords, passkeys are encrypted and stored in your iCloud Keychain, where they aren't visible to anyone (including Apple).

Note: To use passkeys, iOS 16, iPadOS 16, macOS 13, or tvOS 16 (or later) is required. iCloud Keychain and two-factor authentication must also be turned on.

Create and save a passkey using your iPhone

You can create and save passkeys for apps and websites that support them.

Note: The instructions for creating and saving a passkey can vary depending on the app, website, or browser, but they typically consist of steps similar to the ones below.

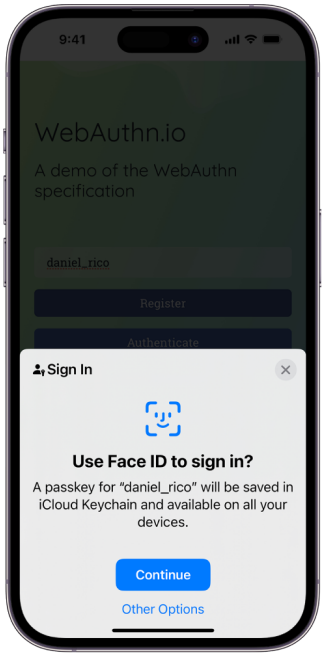
1. On your iPhone, go to the sign-in screen for a supported website or app and do one of the following:

   - *If you're setting up a new account:* Tap the button or link for setting up new accounts, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   - *If you already have an existing account:* Sign in with your account name and password, then go to the account settings or management screen.

2. When you see the option to save a passkey for the account, tap Continue.

   Your passkey is saved.



Note: If you don't see a passkey option, it means the app or website doesn't currently support passkeys.

The passkeys you create are stored on your iPhone at Settings > Passwords.

You can have a passkey and password for the same app or website, and find them both under the same account in Settings > Passwords.

You can also save a passkey to a hardware security key. Tap "Other options," "Save on another device," or similar (if available), then follow the onscreen instructions for saving a passkey. See Use security keys to sign in to your Apple ID account on iPhone.

Use a passkey to sign in to a website or app on your iPhone

After you create and save a passkey for a website or app, you can use the passkey whenever you sign in.

Note: The instructions for signing in with a passkey can vary depending on the app, website, or browser, but they typically consist of steps similar to the ones below.

1. On your iPhone, go to the website or app and tap the account name field on the sign-in screen.
2. Tap the suggested account name that appears at the bottom of the screen or near the top of the keyboard. If the account name doesn't appear, or you want to use a different one, enter it.
3. Use Face ID or Touch ID to complete sign in. If you didn't set up Face ID or Touch ID on your iPhone, enter your device passcode (the code you use to unlock your iPhone).

   The passkey you saved completes the sign-in automatically.

Use a passkey saved on your iPhone to sign in on another device

If you're using a device not associated with your Apple ID (such as a computer at a public library, an internet cafe, or a friend's house), and you have your iPhone with you, you can sign in to apps or websites on that device using the passkeys you created for them.

Note: The instructions for using a passkey on another device can vary depending on the app, website, or browser, but they typically consist of steps similar to the ones below.

1. On the other device, go to the website or app and enter your user name in the account name field on the sign-in screen.

2. Select “Other options,” “Passkey from nearby device,” or similar, then follow the onscreen instructions to display a QR code on the screen.
3. Use your iPhone camera to scan the QR code.

   The passkey that’s saved to iCloud Keychain completes the sign-in automatically.

Create a passkey on a device that’s not your own

If you have your iPhone with you, you can create a passkey while using a device not associated with your Apple ID (such as a computer at a public library, an internet cafe, or a friend’s house) and save it to iCloud Keychain instead of the device you’re using to create the passkey.

Note: The instructions for creating a passkey can vary depending on the app, website, or browser, but they typically consist of steps similar to the ones below.

1. On the other device, go to the sign-in page for a supported website or app, then do one of the following:

   - *If you’re setting up a new account:* Tap the button or link for setting up new accounts, then enter a new username.
   - *If you already have an account:* Sign in with your account name and password, then go to the account settings or management screen.
2. When you see the option to save a passkey for the account, select “Other options,” “Save on another device,” or similar (instead of Continue).

   Note: If you don’t see a passkey option, it means the app or website doesn’t currently support passkeys.
3. Select “Save a passkey on a device with a camera,” or similar, then follow the onscreen instructions to display a QR code on the screen.
4. Use your iPhone camera to scan the QR code.

   The passkey is saved to your iPhone and iCloud Keychain.

Change a passkey

You might need to create a new passkey to replace the existing one (if, for example, you previously shared it with someone to whom you no longer want to give access).

To change a passkey, follow the steps for an existing account in Create and save a passkey using your iPhone or Create a passkey on a device that’s not your own.

Delete a passkey

1. Go to Settings > Passwords, then tap the account for the passkey you want to delete.
2. Tap Delete Passkey.

If you delete a passkey, you can create a new one at any time.

See also

Apple Support article: About the security of passkeys

Add notes for an account with a passkey or password

Remove a passkey or password from your iPhone and iCloud Keychain

Sign in with Apple on iPhone

With Sign in with Apple, you can sign in to participating websites and apps with your Apple ID. You don't need to create and remember new passwords, and your account is protected with two-factor authentication.

Sign in with Apple is designed to respect your privacy. Websites and apps can ask only for your name and email address to set up your account, and Apple won't track you as you use them.

Sign in with Apple requires two-factor authentication for your Apple ID. This protects your Apple ID, your app accounts, and your app content.

Set up or upgrade an account to Sign in with Apple

When a participating website or app asks you to set up or upgrade an account, do the following:

1. Tap Sign in with Apple.
2. Follow the onscreen instructions.

Some apps (and websites) don't request your name and email address. In this case, you simply authenticate with Face ID or Touch ID (depending on your model), then start using the app.

Others may ask for your name and email address to set up a personalized account. When an app asks for this information, Sign in with Apple displays your name and the personal email address from your Apple ID account for you to review.

To edit your name, tap it, then use the keyboard to make changes.

To specify an email address, do one of the following:

- *Use your personal email address:* Tap Share My Email.

  If you have multiple email addresses associated with your Apple ID, choose the address you want.

- *Hide your email address:* Tap Hide My Email.

  This option allows you to receive email from the app without sharing your personal email address. When you choose this option, Apple creates a unique, random email address for you, and any email sent from the app to this address is forwarded to your personal address.

After you review your information and choose an email option, tap Continue, authenticate with Face ID or Touch ID (depending on your model), then start using the app.

Sign in to access your account

After you set up an account with a website or app using Sign in with Apple, you typically don't need to sign in to it again on your iPhone. But if you're asked to sign in (for example, after you sign out of an account), do the following:

1. Tap Sign in with Apple.
2. Review the Apple ID that appears, then tap Continue.
3. Authenticate with Face ID or Touch ID (depending on your model).

Change the address used to forward email

If you chose to hide your email address when you created an account and you have more than one address associated with your Apple ID, you can change the address that receives your forwarded email.

1. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > Name, Phone Numbers, Email > Forward To.
2. Choose a different email address, then tap Done.

Review or change Sign in with Apple settings for websites and apps

1. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > Password and Security.
2. Tap Apps Using Your Apple ID.

   All apps using Sign in with Apple appear in a list.
3. To change a setting for an app, choose the app, then do any of the following:

   - *Turn off forwarding email:* Turn off Forward To. You won't receive any further emails from the app.
   - *Stop using Sign in with Apple:* Tap Stop Using Apple ID. You may be asked to create a new account the next time you try to sign in with the app.

Sign in with Apple also works on your other devices—iPad, Apple Watch, Mac, Apple TV, and iPod touch—where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

To sign in from an Android app, a Windows app, or any web browser, tap Sign in with Apple, then enter your Apple ID and password.

For more information, see the Apple Support article What is Sign in with Apple?

See also

Use passkeys to sign in to apps and websites on iPhone

Automatically fill in one-time verification codes on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use passkeys to sign in to apps and websites

Next
Share passwords

Support > iPhone User Guide > Sign in with Apple on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Share passwords or passkeys with people you trust on iPhone

Shared password groups are an easy and secure way to share passwords and passkeys with your family and trusted contacts.

Anyone in the group can add passwords and passkeys. When a shared password changes, it changes on everyone's device.

Create a group

1. Go to Settings > Passwords.
2. Tap + in the top-right corner, then tap New Shared Group.
3. Enter a name for the group, then tap + Add People (under Group Members).
4. Type the name, email address, or phone number of the person or people you want to add, then tap Add.

   Note: To add someone to your group, they must be in your Contacts app and have a device using iOS 17, iPadOS 17, macOS Sonoma, or later. If they can be added to the group, their contact information appears in blue. If it appears in gray, their iPhone, iPad, or Mac might not support shared password groups.
5. Tap Create.
6. Select the passwords you want to share with the group, then tap Move in the top-right corner.

   If you don't want to share any passwords yet, tap Not Now in the top-left corner.
7. You are given the choice to notify the people you have added to the group that they have been invited. If you choose not to, they can also access the invitation by going to Settings > Passwords > Group Invitations.

Your shared passwords are saved in iCloud Keychain, and you can use them like any other saved password.

You'll receive a notification whenever anyone else is invited to the group.

Note: If you move a password into the shared group, you can only access the password on a device using iOS 17, iPadOS 17, macOS Sonoma, or later.

Manage a group

If you create a group, you can add or remove other members, or delete the group. Other members of the group don't have these options, but they can choose to leave at any time.

1. On your iPhone, open Settings, then tap Passwords.
2. Tap the name of your group, then tap Manage.

   You can add or remove other members, or delete the group.
3. When you're finished making changes, tap Done.

Respond to an invitation to a group

Note: To respond to any invitation, iOS 17 or later must be installed on your iPhone.

1. Go to Settings > Passwords > Group Invitations and tap the invitation.
2. Tap Accept to join the group. You can also decline the invitation.

Important: Don't accept an invitation if you don't recognize the sender.

See also

Share passkeys and passwords securely with AirDrop on iPhone

Automatically fill in strong passwords on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Sign in with Apple

Next
Automatically fill in strong passwords

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Automatically fill in strong passwords on iPhone

When you sign up for services on websites and in apps, you can let iPhone create strong passwords for many of your accounts.

iPhone stores the passwords in iCloud Keychain and fills them in for you automatically, so you don't have to memorize them.

Note: Instead of requiring you to sign in with passwords, participating websites and apps support these alternatives:

- *Sign in with Apple:* Lets you use your Apple ID to sign in, and limits the information shared about you. See Sign in with Apple on iPhone.
- *A passkey:* Lets you use Face ID or Touch ID to securely sign in without using a password. See Use passkeys to sign in to apps and websites on iPhone.

Create a strong password for a new account

Depending on the website or app, creating a strong password and saving it to iCloud Keychain usually consists of steps similar to these.

1. On the new account screen for the website or app, enter a new account name.

   For supported websites and apps, iPhone suggests a unique, complex password.

2. Do one of the following:

   - *Choose the suggested password:* Tap Use Strong Password.
   - *Edit the suggested password:* Tap Other Options, tap Edit Strong Password, tap the password text field, then make your changes.
   - *Get a different strong password:* Tap Other Options, tap Edit Strong Password, then tap the suggested password.
   - *Get a strong password consisting of only numbers and letters:* Tap Other Options, then tap No Special Characters.
   - *Get a strong password that's easy to type:* Tap Other Options, then tap Easy to Type.
   - *Make up your own password:* Tap Other Options, then tap Choose My Own Password.

3. To copy the password so you can paste it into a Confirm Password field if asked, tap Other Options, then tap Copy Strong Password.

4. To securely add and keep notes about recovery key information, security questions, PIN numbers, and similar details, enter them in the Notes field.

   To view the notes later, go to Settings > Passwords, then tap the account.

5. To later allow iPhone to automatically fill in the password for you, tap Yes when you're asked if you want to save the password.

Automatically fill in a saved password

Depending on the website or app, signing in with your saved password usually consists of steps similar to these.

1. On the sign-in screen for the website or app, tap the account name field.
2. Do one of the following:

    - Tap the account suggested at the bottom of the screen or near the top of the keyboard.
    - Tap , tap Other Passwords, then tap an account.

    The password is filled in. To see the password, tap .

To enter an account or password that isn't saved, tap on the sign-in screen.

Prevent iPhone from automatically filling in passwords

Go to Settings > Passwords > Password Options, then turn off AutoFill Passwords.

See also

Automatically fill in SMS passcodes on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Share passwords

Next
Change weak or compromised passwords

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Change weak or compromised passwords on iPhone

When you create and store your own passwords for websites and apps, iPhone automatically identifies common weaknesses (for example, if they're easily guessed or used multiple times). iPhone can also securely monitor your passwords and alert you if they appear in known data leaks.

Change a weak or compromised password

1. Go to Settings > Passwords > Security Recommendations.

   If an account has a weak or compromised password, a message explains the problem.

2. Tap an account.

3. Tap the Password field, then tap Copy Password, so you can paste it where it's requested—for example, when you create a new password and you're asked to enter your old password.

4. Tap Change Password, then change your password on the website or in the app.

   If the website or app allows you to upgrade to Sign in with Apple, you can take advantage of the security and convenience of that feature. If you aren't given the upgrade option when you change your password, many accounts allow iPhone to automatically create a strong password that you don't have to remember.

Note: If iPhone warns you about a password for a website or app that's no longer available, you can remove its account from your iPhone and iCloud Keychain. Go to Settings > Passwords, then swipe left on the account.

Hide a security recommendation

You can hide a security recommendation so that you don't have to continue reviewing it if you're unable to address it.

1. Go to Settings > Passwords > Security Recommendations, then tap an account.

2. In the Security Recommendation section, tap ✕, then tap Hide.

To view the recommendation later, go to Settings > Passwords > Security Recommendations, scroll to the bottom of the screen, then tap Hidden Security Recommendations. To reshow all security recommendations, tap Reset Hidden Security Recommendations.

Turn detection of compromised passwords on or off

iPhone can monitor your passwords and alert you if they appear in known data leaks.

Go to Settings > Passwords > Security Recommendations, then turn Detect Compromised Passwords on or off.

See also

View your passwords and related information on iPhone

You can view and copy passwords, add notes like security question reminders, and more with the encrypted account information stored on iPhone. iCloud Keychain securely keeps this information up to date across all your approved devices.

View and copy a password for a website or app account

1. For an account that uses a password, do one of the following:
   - Say something like: "Show me my passwords." Learn how to use Siri.
   - Go to Settings > Passwords.
   - On a sign-in screen, tap .
2. Tap an account, then tap the Password field.
3. To copy the password to use elsewhere, tap Copy Password.

View and copy a password for a Wi-Fi network

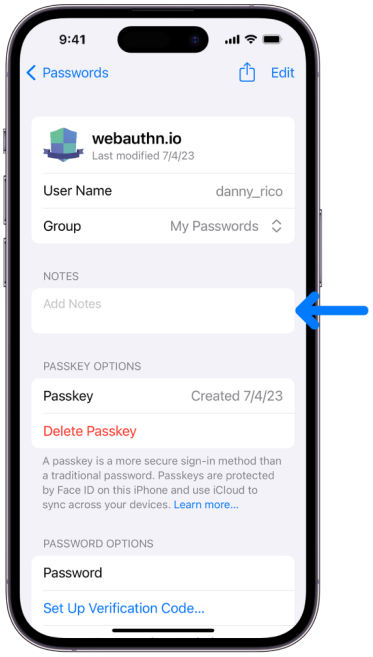
1. Go to Settings > Wi-Fi.

   If you're connected to a Wi-Fi network, its name appears at the top of the screen. To see a list of all saved Wi-Fi networks, tap Edit at the top right.
2. Tap next to a network name.
3. Tap the Password field.
4. To copy the password to use elsewhere, tap Copy.

Add notes for an account with a passkey or password

You can securely keep notes about recovery key information, security questions, PIN numbers, and similar details.

1. Go to Settings > Passwords, then tap an account.
2. Tap Add Notes, enter your text, then tap Done.



To view the notes later, go to Settings > Passwords, then tap the account. To update the notes, tap Edit (at the top right), then tap the Notes field.

Go to the website for an account

1. Go to Settings > Passwords, then tap an account.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Tap .
   - Tap the website URL, tap Copy Website, then paste the URL into the address field of your browser.

Remove an account from your iPhone and iCloud Keychain

Go to Settings > Passwords, then swipe left on the account.

For example, you might want to remove the account for a website or app that's no longer available.

Note: This action doesn't remove the account from the website or app where you created it.

Remove a passkey or password from your iPhone and iCloud Keychain

1. Go to Settings > Passwords, then tap an account.
2. Tap Delete Password or Delete Passkey.

Note: This action doesn't remove the passkey or password from the website or app where you created it.

See also

Automatically fill in one-time verification codes on iPhone

Change weak or compromised passwords on iPhone

Use passkeys to sign in to apps and websites on iPhone

Share passkeys and passwords securely with AirDrop on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Change weak or compromised passwords

Next
Share passkeys and passwords securely with AirDrop

Support > iPhone User Guide > View your passwords and related information on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

This manual was copied from Apple Support website
and compiled by www.iphone15manual.com

Share passkeys and passwords securely with AirDrop on iPhone

You can use AirDrop to securely share passkeys and passwords for website and app accounts with someone using an iPhone, iPad, or Mac.

Note: To show someone the password you saved for a Wi-Fi network, see View and copy a password for a Wi-Fi network.

Check the AirDrop requirements

Compared to sharing other types of information, AirDrop has more stringent requirements for sharing passkeys and passwords.

- iCloud Keychain must be set up on your iPhone.
- The person you're sharing with must be in your contacts list in the Contacts app, and they must be listed with the email address they use for iCloud.
- You must be in the other person's contacts list in the Contacts app, and you must be listed with the email address you use for iCloud.

Send a passkey or password

To share with someone on iPhone or iPad, ask them to open Control Center and allow AirDrop to receive items. To share with someone on a Mac, ask them to allow themselves to be discovered in AirDrop in the Finder.

1. On your iPhone, go to Settings > Passwords.
2. Tap the account you want to share.
3. Tap, then select the device or picture of the person you want to send the passkey or password to.

Receive a passkey or password

1. If you haven't already done so, allow AirDrop to receive items.
2. When you receive a request to accept a passkey or password from someone else, tap Accept.

The passkey or password is saved to your iPhone, where you can view its information and let iPhone automatically fill it in on the sign-in screen for the account. The passkey or password is also saved to your iCloud Keychain, so you can use it on other devices where you're signed in with your Apple ID.

See also

Use passkeys to sign in to apps and websites on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
View your passwords and related information

Next
Make your passkeys and passwords available on all your devices

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Make your passkeys and passwords available on all your devices with iPhone and iCloud Keychain

Use iCloud Keychain to keep your website and app passkeys and passwords, credit card information, Wi-Fi network information, and other account information up to date across all your approved devices and Mac computers (iOS 7, iPadOS 13, OS X 10.9, or later required — except for passkeys, which require iOS 16, iPadOS 16, macOS 13, tvOS 16, or later). iCloud Keychain is secured with 256-bit AES encryption during storage and transmission, and its data can't be read by Apple.

iCloud Keychain can also keep the accounts you use in Mail, Contacts, Calendar, and Messages up to date across all your iPhone and iPad devices and Mac computers.

Set up iCloud Keychain

If you didn't turn on iCloud Keychain when you first set up your iPhone, go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > Passwords and Keychain, turn on iCloud Keychain, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Set up iCloud Keychain on an additional device

When you turn on iCloud Keychain on an additional device, your other devices using iCloud Keychain receive a notification requesting your approval of the additional device.

On one of your other devices, approve the additional device. Your iCloud Keychain automatically begins updating on the additional device.

To approve iCloud Keychain when you don't have access to your other devices, follow the onscreen instructions to use your iCloud Security Code.

Recover your iCloud Keychain if all your devices are lost or stolen

iCloud Keychain syncs across devices to provide convenience and redundancy in case you lose a single device. If all your devices are lost and you've added a recovery contact to your Apple ID account, your

contact can help you recover your iCloud Keychain. To learn how, go to Settings > [*your name*] > Sign-In & Security, then tap "Learn more" below Add Recovery Contact.

You can also recover your iCloud Keychain through iCloud Keychain escrow, which is also protected against brute-force attacks. iCloud Keychain escrows a user's keychain data with Apple without allowing Apple to read the passwords and other data it contains. Your keychain is encrypted using a strong passcode, and the escrow service provides a copy of the keychain only if a strict set of conditions is met.

To recover your keychain through iCloud Keychain escrow, authenticate with your Apple ID on a new device, then respond to an SMS sent to a trusted phone number. After you authenticate and respond, you must enter the device passcode. iOS, iPadOS, and macOS allow only 10 attempts to authenticate. After several failed attempts, the record is locked, and you must contact Apple Support on the Apple Support website to be granted more attempts.

See also

Apple Support article: Set up iCloud Keychain

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Share passkeys and passwords securely with AirDrop

Next
Automatically fill in verification codes

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Automatically fill in one-time verification codes on iPhone

Some websites and apps offer two-factor authentication (also known as *multifactor authentication*), which helps prevent other people from accessing your accounts even if they know your passwords. Passwords are the first authentication factor, and temporary, one-time verification codes are commonly a second factor. iPhone can automatically generate these verification codes without your reliance on SMS messages or additional apps.

Set up automatic verification codes for a website or app by scanning a QR code

If you have another device with a screen, like a computer or iPad, you can use it to display a QR code from a website or app, then use the iPhone camera to scan the code.

1. On your other device, sign in to the area of the website or app where you manage your account, then select options to enable two-factor authentication and an authenticator app.

   A QR code appears to help you set up an authenticator app.

2. On iPhone, use the camera to scan the QR code.
3. On iPhone, select your account for the website or app.

   A verification code appears below the User Name and Password fields.

4. On your other device, enter the verification code that appears on your iPhone.

Set up automatic verification codes for a website or app by entering a setup key

If you can't scan a QR code from another screen, you can manually enter a setup key.

1. Sign in to the area of the website or app where you manage your account, then select options to enable two-factor authentication and an authenticator app.
2. Choose the option to manually use a setup key (or setup code or similar), then select and copy the setup key.
3. Go to Settings > Passwords, then select your account for the website or app.
4. Tap Set Up Verification Code, then tap Enter Setup Key.
5. Tap the Setup Key field, tap Paste, then tap OK.
6. Tap the Verification Code field, then tap Copy Verification Code.
7. Return to the website or app, then paste the verification code where directed.

Use a verification code on a website or in an app

1. Sign in to the website or app.
2. If prompted, select the option to use an authenticator app.

3. When asked for a verification code, tap the suggestion that appears above the keyboard.

   If no suggestion appears, go to Settings > Passwords, select your account for the website or app, tap the verification code, then tap Copy Verification Code. Return to the website or app, then paste the verification code into the field.

Automatically delete one-time verification codes

One-time verification codes are filled in automatically, so you don't need to leave the app or website you're signing into. You can choose to automatically delete the verification codes after entering them with Autofill, or keep them.

1. Go to Settings, then tap Passwords.
2. Tap Password Options, then turn Clean Up Automatically on or off.

See also

Use two-factor authentication for your Apple ID on iPhone

Use passkeys to sign in to apps and websites on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Make your passkeys and passwords available on all your devices

Next
Automatically fill in SMS passcodes

Support > iPhone User Guide > Automatically fill in one-time verification codes on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Automatically fill in SMS passcodes on iPhone

When you sign in to some websites and apps, a one-time SMS passcode is sent to your iPhone. As a security measure, you're required to enter the code into the website or app. iPhone can detect the passcode in Messages and display it above the keyboard.

To use the passcode, tap it.

Note: With Continuity, all the SMS and MMS messages you send and receive on iPhone can also appear on your other iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch devices and your Mac. See the Apple Support article Use Continuity to connect your Mac, iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, and Apple Watch.

See also

Automatically fill in strong passwords on iPhone

Use two-factor authentication for your Apple ID on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Sign in with fewer CAPTCHA challenges on iPhone

Some website and app sign-in screens require you to pass CAPTCHA challenges, such as recognizing letters in unusual shapes. iCloud allows you to bypass many challenges by automatically and privately verifying your iPhone and account. You can turn this bypass on or off.

Go to Settings > [*your name*] > Sign-In & Security, then turn Automatic Verification on or off.

See also

Use the built-in privacy and security protections of iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Use two-factor authentication for your Apple ID on iPhone

Using two-factor authentication helps prevent others from accessing your Apple ID account, even if they know your Apple ID password. When it's on, you need both your Apple ID password and a six-digit verification code to sign into your Apple ID account. The verification code is sent to the phone number associated with your Apple ID, or displayed on your trusted devices.

Two-factor authentication for Apple ID is available in iOS 17, iPadOS 17, OS X 13, or later.

Note: Certain account types might not support two-factor authentication. Two-factor authentication isn't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of two-factor authentication for Apple ID.

Turn on two-factor authentication

1. On your iPhone go to Settings > [*your name*] > Sign-In & Security.
2. Tap Turn On Two-Factor Authentication, then tap Continue.
3. Enter a *trusted phone number* (the number you'll use to receive verification codes), then tap Next.

   A verification code is sent to your trusted phone number.
4. Enter the verification code on your iPhone.

   Two-factor authentication is turned on for your Apple ID, and your iPhone is now a trusted device.

Add another trusted device

After you turn on two-factor authentication on your iPhone, you can add other trusted devices to your Apple ID account.

1. On the device you want to add, sign in with the same Apple ID you used to turn on two-factor authentication.
2. When prompted, enter the six-digit verification code that appears on your iPhone, another trusted device, a trusted phone number, or your Mac.
3. Enter the verification code on the new device.

   You won't be asked for a verification code again unless you sign out completely, erase your device, sign in to your Apple ID account page in a web browser, or need to change your Apple ID password for security reasons.

   Note: A trusted device must use iOS 17, iPadOS 17, or OS X 13 (or later).

Add or remove a trusted phone number

Adding trusted phone numbers can be useful if you want to use two-factor authentication but don't have access to the phone number you added when you turned it on.

1. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > Sign-In & Security, then tap Two-Factor Authentication.

2. Tap Edit (above the list of trusted phone numbers), then enter your device passcode when prompted.
3. Do one of the following:
   - *Add a number:* Tap Add a Trusted Phone Number, then enter the phone number.
   - *Remove a number:* Tap ⛔ next to the phone number.
4. When you're finished making changes, tap Done.

Trusted phone numbers don't automatically receive verification codes. If you can't access any trusted devices when setting up a new device for two-factor authentication, tap "Didn't get a verification code?" on the new device, then choose one of your trusted phone numbers to receive the verification code.

View or remove trusted devices

1. Go to Settings > [*your name*].

   A list of the devices associated with your Apple ID appears near the bottom of the screen.
2. To remove a device, tap it, then tap Remove from Account.

   If you remove a trusted device, it can no longer display verification codes and its access to iCloud (and other Apple services on the device) is blocked. To add it back, use two-factor authentication to sign in to your Apple ID again.

Generate a password for an app that signs in to your Apple ID account

To sign in to your Apple ID account from a third-party app or service (such as an email, contacts, or calendar app) using two-factor authentication, you need to generate an app-specific password.

1. Sign in to your Apple ID account.
2. Tap App-Specific Passwords, then tap "Generate an app-specific password."
3. Follow the onscreen instructions.

After you generate your app-specific password, enter or paste it into the password field of the app as you would normally.

For more information, see the Apple Support article Using app-specific passwords.

See also

Two-factor authentication for Apple ID

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Sign in with fewer CAPTCHA challenges on iPhone

Next
Use security keys

Support > iPhone User Guide > Use two-factor authentication for your Apple ID on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

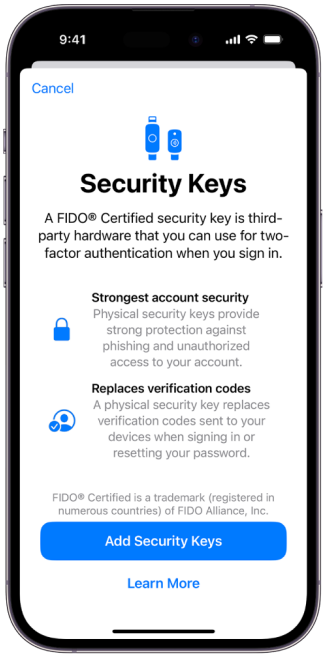
Use security keys to sign in to your Apple ID account on iPhone

About security keys

Security Keys for Apple ID is an optional security feature designed for people (such as celebrities, journalists, and members of government) who want extra protection from targeted attacks on their account, including phishing and social engineering scams.

A security key is a small third-party hardware device that you can connect to your iPhone and use to verify your identity when signing in to your Apple ID account. The physical key replaces the six-digit verification codes normally used in two-factor authentication, which keeps this information from being intercepted or requested by an attacker.

For details about security key requirements, see the Apple Support article About security keys for Apple ID.



Set up security keys

You need to set up at least two security keys so you can use one of them as a backup in case the other one is lost, damaged, or stolen. You can pair up to six keys with your account.

1. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > Sign-In & Security, then tap Two-Factor Authentication.
2. Tap Security Keys, then tap Add Security Keys and follow the onscreen instructions.

Sign in to a device, website, or app using a security key

1. When prompted, insert your security key (if it's an NFC key, hold or place it near the top of your iPhone).
2. Follow the onscreen instructions.

Use a security key to reset your Apple ID password

If you forget your Apple ID password, you can use a security key that's paired with your account to reset it.

1. Go to Settings > [your name] > Sign-In & Security. (If you aren't already signed into your Apple ID account on your iPhone, first use your paired security key to sign in.)
2. Tap Change Password, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Use a security key to unlock your Apple ID

If you try unsuccessfully six times in a row to sign in to your Apple ID account, or if your iPhone detects other signs of suspicious activity, you'll receive an onscreen notification that your Apple ID is locked. You can use your security key to unlock it.

1. Tap Unlock Account, then follow the onscreen instructions to unlock your Apple ID.
2. If you think your account might have been locked because someone else knows your password, tap Change Password and enter a new one.
3. Tap Done.

Remove security keys

You can pair up to six security keys with your Apple ID. If you reach the limit and need to pair additional keys, you can remove one or more of your paired keys. You can replace keys you've removed at any time.

1. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > Sign-In & Security.
2. Tap Security Keys.
3. To remove all keys, tap Remove All Keys, then tap Remove.

   To remove individual keys, tap the ones you want to remove, then tap Remove Key.

Note: If you remove all security keys from a device, the device reverts to using six-digit verification codes for two-factor authentication.

See also

Use two-factor authentication for your Apple ID on iPhone

Keep your Apple ID secure on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use two-factor authentication

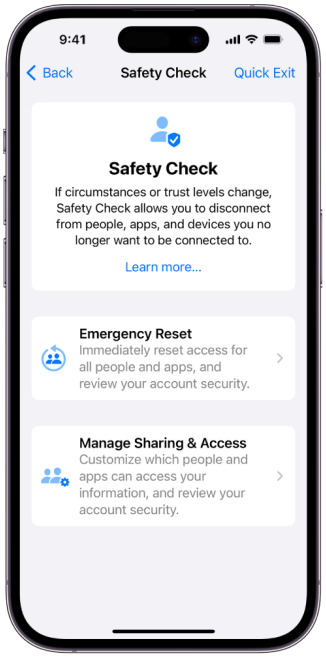
Next
Manage information sharing with Safety Check

Support > iPhone User Guide > Use security keys to sign in to your Apple ID account on iPhone

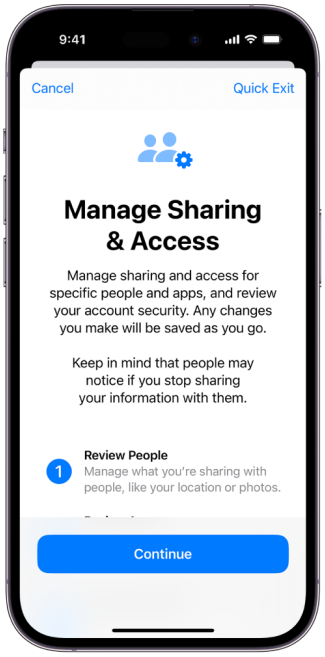
Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Manage information sharing with Safety Check on iPhone

Use Safety Check to periodically review and update information you share with people, apps, and devices. From Safety Check, you can stop sharing your location with others in Find My, remove others' access to shared content like Photos, Notes, and Calendar, reset system privacy permissions for apps, restrict Messages and FaceTime to the device in your hand, and more.



1. Go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Safety Check.
2. Tap Manage Sharing & Access, tap Continue, then follow the onscreen instructions.



Important: In an emergency, you can also use Safety Check to quickly reset access to your device and personal information. Go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Safety Check, tap Emergency Reset, tap Start Emergency Reset, then follow the onscreen instructions.

To learn more about Safety Check, see How Safety Check on iPhone works to keep you safe in the Personal Safety User Guide.

Important: You might also be sharing information that Safety Check can't review or change—for example, accounts and passwords, social media sharing, and information shared from another device. To learn more about reducing the information you share, see Additional considerations when using Safety Check in the Personal Safety User Guide.

See also

How Safety Check on iPhone works to keep you safe

Stop sharing with people and apps with Safety Check on iPhone

Additional considerations when using Safety Check

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use security keys

Next
Control app tracking permissions

Support > iPhone User Guide > Manage information sharing with Safety Check on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Control app tracking permissions on iPhone

All apps are required to ask your permission before tracking you or your iPhone across websites or apps owned by other companies for advertising or to share your information with data brokers. After you grant or deny permission to an app, you can change permission later. You can also stop all apps from requesting permission.

Review or change an app's permission to track you

1. Go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Tracking.

   The list shows the apps that requested permission to track you. You can turn permission on or off for any app on the list.

2. To stop all apps from asking permission to track you, turn off Allow Apps to Request to Track (at the top of the screen).

For more information about app tracking, tap Learn More near the top of the screen.

See also

Browse privately in Safari on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

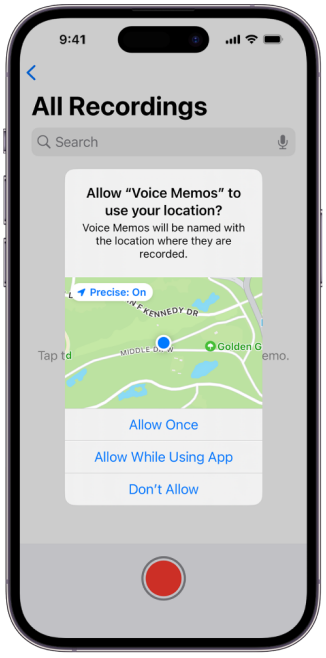
Control the location information you share on iPhone

You control whether iPhone and apps have information about your location.

To figure out where you are when getting directions, setting up meetings, and more, Location Services uses information (when available) from GPS networks, your Bluetooth® connections, your local Wi-Fi networks, and your cellular network. When an app is using Location Services, appears in the status bar.

When you set up iPhone, you're asked if you want to turn on Location Services. Afterward, you can turn Location Services on or off at any time.

The first time an app wants location data from your iPhone, you receive a request with an explanation. Some apps may make a one-time only request for your location. Other apps may ask you to share your location now and in the future. Whether you grant or deny ongoing access to your location, you can change an app's access later.



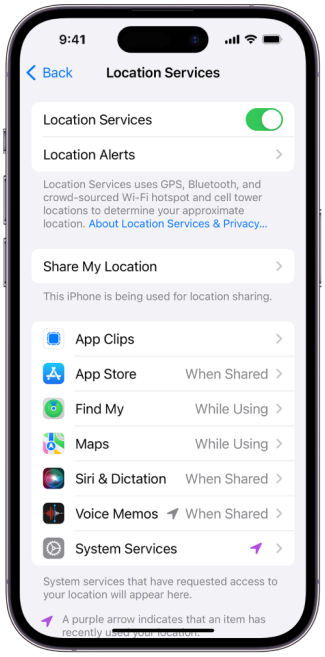
Turn on Location Services

If you didn't turn on Location Services when you first set up iPhone, go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Location Services, then turn on Location Services.

Important: If you turn off Location Services, many important iPhone features stop working.

Review or change an app's ongoing access to location information

1. Go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Location Services.



2. To review or change access settings for an app or to see its explanation for requesting Location Services, tap the app.

To allow an app to use your specific location, leave Precise Location turned on. To share only your approximate location—which may be sufficient for an app that doesn't need your exact location—turn Precise Location off.

Note: If you set the access for an app to Ask Next Time, you're asked to turn on Location Services again the next time an app tries to use it.

To understand how a third-party app uses the information it's requesting, review its terms and privacy policy. See the Apple Support article About privacy and Location Services.

Hide the map in Location Services alerts

When you allow an app to always use your location in the background, you may receive alerts about the app's use of that information. (These alerts let you change your permission, if you want to.) In the alerts, a map shows locations recently accessed by the app.

To hide the map, go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Location Services > Location Alerts, then turn off Show Map in Location Alerts.

With the setting off, you continue to receive location alerts, but the map isn't shown.

Review or change Location Services settings for system services

Several system services, such as location-based suggestions and location-based ads, use Location Services.

To see the status for each service, to turn Location Services on or off for each service, or to show in the status bar when enabled system services use your location, go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Location Services > System Services.

See also

Manage information sharing with Safety Check on iPhone

Control access to information in apps on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Control app tracking permissions

Next
Control access to information in apps

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Control access to information in apps on iPhone

You control whether third-party apps have access to information in Contacts, Photos, Calendar, and other apps.

Review or change access to information in apps

The first time an app wants to use information from another app, you receive a request with an explanation. For example, a messaging app may request access to your contacts to find friends who are using the same app. After you grant or deny access, you can change access later.

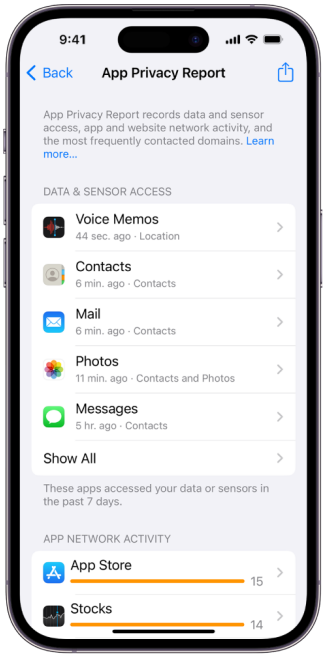
1. Go to Settings > Privacy & Security.
2. Tap a category of information, such as Calendars, Reminders, or Motion & Fitness.

A list appears showing the apps that requested access. You can turn access on or off for any app on the list.

Review how apps are using the permissions you grant them

Go to Settings > Privacy & Security, then tap App Privacy Report.

The App Privacy Report shows you how apps are using the permissions you granted them and shows you their network activity.



To turn off the report and delete its data, go to Settings > Privacy & Security > App Privacy Report, then tap Turn Off App Privacy Report. You can return to this Settings screen to turn the report on again.

See also

Manage information sharing with Safety Check on iPhone

Apple Support article: About App Privacy Report

Apple Support article: About privacy and Location Services

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Control the location information you share

Next
Control how Apple delivers advertising to you

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Control how Apple delivers advertising to you on iPhone

You control how Apple delivers advertising.

Ads delivered by Apple may appear in the App Store, Apple News, and Stocks. These ads don't access data from any other apps. In the App Store and Apple News, your search and download history may be used to serve you relevant search ads. In Apple News and Stocks, ads are served based partly on what you read or follow. This includes publishers you've enabled notifications for and the type of publishing subscription you have. The articles you read are not used to serve targeted ads to you outside these apps, and information collected about what you read is linked to a random identifier rather than your Apple ID.

Review the information Apple uses to deliver ads

Go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Apple Advertising > View Ad Targeting Information.

The information is used by Apple to deliver more relevant ads in the App Store, Apple News, and Stocks. Your personal data isn't provided to other parties.

Turn personalized ads on or off

Go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Apple Advertising, then turn Personalized Ads on or off.

Note: Turning off personalized ads limits Apple's ability to deliver relevant ads to you. It may not reduce the number of ads you receive.

Learn more about privacy and Apple's advertising platform

Go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Apple Advertising > About Advertising & Privacy.

See also

Manage information sharing with Safety Check on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Control access to hardware features on iPhone

Before apps use the camera or microphone on your iPhone, they're required to request your permission and explain why they're asking. For example, a social networking app may ask to use your camera so that you can take and upload pictures to that app. Apps are similarly required to request your permission to use various other hardware features, including Bluetooth® connectivity, motion and fitness sensors, and devices on your local network.

You can review which apps have requested access to these hardware features, and you can change their access at your discretion.

Review or change access to the camera, microphone, and other hardware features

1. Go to Settings > Privacy & Security.
2. Tap a hardware feature, such as Camera, Bluetooth®, Local Network, or Microphone.

The list shows the apps that requested access. You can turn access on or off for any app on the list.

Note: Whenever an app uses the camera (including when the camera and microphone are used together), a green indicator appears. An orange indicator appears at the top of the screen whenever an app uses the microphone without the camera. Also, a message appears at the top of Control Center to inform you when an app has recently used either.

See also

Manage information sharing with Safety Check on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Control how Apple delivers advertising to you

Next
Create and manage Hide My Email addresses

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Create and manage Hide My Email addresses in Settings on iPhone

When you subscribe to iCloud+, you can use Hide My Email to keep your personal email address private. With Hide My Email, you can generate unique, random email addresses that forward to your personal email account, so you don't have to share your real email address when filling out forms or signing up for newsletters on the web, or when sending email.

You can create and manage Hide My Email addresses in Settings. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > Hide My Email, then do any of the following:

- *Create a Hide My Email address:* Tap Create New Address, then follow the onscreen instructions.
- *Deactivate a Hide My Email address:* Tap an address (below Create New Address), then tap Deactivate Email Address. After you deactivate the address, it no longer forwards emails to you.
- *Change which personal email address to forward to:* Tap Forward To, then choose an email address. Options consist of addresses that are available with your Apple ID.
- *Copy a forwarding address to use elsewhere:* Tap an address (below Create New Address), touch and hold the Hide My Email section, then tap Copy. To immediately use that address elsewhere, touch and hold in a text field, then tap Paste.

You can also generate Hide My Email addresses in Safari and Mail wherever email addresses are required. See Use Hide My Email in Safari on iPhone and Use Hide My Email in Mail on iPhone. In supporting apps, you can also generate a Hide My Email address when an email address is required by tapping the email address field, then tapping Hide My Email above the keyboard.

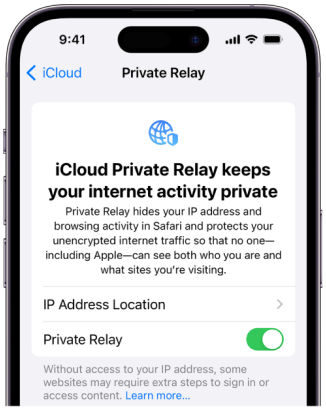
See also

Automatically fill in strong passwords on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Protect your web browsing with iCloud Private Relay on iPhone

When you subscribe to iCloud+, you can use iCloud Private Relay to help prevent websites and network providers from creating a detailed profile about you. When iCloud Private Relay is on, the traffic leaving your iPhone is encrypted and sent through two separate internet relays. This prevents websites from seeing your IP address and exact location while preventing network providers from collecting your browsing activity in Safari.



Note: iCloud Private Relay isn't available in all countries or regions. For more information, see the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Turn iCloud Private Relay on

Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > Private Relay, then tap Private Relay.

Note: You need to turn on iCloud Private Relay on each device where you want to use it.

Turn iCloud Private Relay off

1. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > Private Relay, then tap Private Relay.
2. Do one of the following:

   - *Turn off iCloud Private Relay temporarily:* Tap Turn Off Until Tomorrow.

     Within 24 hours, iCloud Private Relay will turn back on automatically. If you want it to resume sooner, follow the instructions for turning it on at any time.

   - *Turn off iCloud Private Relay completely:* Tap Turn Off Private Relay.

For information about turning off iCloud Private Relay temporarily for a specific website, see Temporarily allow a website to see your IP address.

Turn iCloud Private Relay on or off for a Wi-Fi network

1. Go to Settings > Wi-Fi.
2. Tap ⓘ, then turn Limit IP Address Tracking on or off.

If you turn off Limit IP Address Tracking for a Wi-Fi network on your iPhone, iCloud Private Relay is turned off for this network across all your devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

Turn iCloud Private Relay on or off for a cellular network

1. Go to Settings > Cellular, then do one of the following:
   - *If your iPhone has a single line:* Tap Cellular Data Options.
   - *If your iPhone has multiple lines:* Select a line (below SIMs).
2. Turn Limit IP Address Tracking on or off.

The network setting is specific to a physical SIM or eSim in your iPhone (eSIM not available in all countries or regions). See View or change cellular data settings on iPhone.

Set the specificity of your IP address location

Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > Private Relay > IP Address Location, then choose one of the following:

- Maintain General Location (for example, to see local content in Safari)
- Use Country and Time Zone (to make your location more obscure)

See also

Use Hide My Email in Safari on iPhone

Apple Support article: About iCloud Private Relay

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Create and manage Hide My Email addresses

Next
Use a private network address

Support > iPhone User Guide > Protect your web browsing with iCloud Private Relay on iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use a private network address on iPhone

To help protect your privacy, your iPhone uses a unique private network address, called a *media access control (MAC) address*, on each Wi-Fi network it joins.

If a network can't use a private address (for example, to provide parental controls or to identify your iPhone as authorized to join), you can stop using a private address for that network.

Turn a private address off for a network

1. Go to Settings > Wi-Fi, then tap for a network.
2. Turn Private Address off.

   Important: For better privacy, leave Private Address turned on for all networks that support it. Using a private address helps reduce tracking of your iPhone across different Wi-Fi networks.

See also

Connect iPhone to a Wi-Fi network

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Use Advanced Data Protection for your iCloud data

By default, iCloud secures your information by encrypting it when it's in transit, storing it in an encrypted format, and securing your encryption keys in Apple data centers. In addition, many Apple services use end-to-end encryption; your information is encrypted using keys derived from your devices and your device passcode, which only you know.

For the highest level of cloud data security, you can turn on Advanced Data Protection (iOS 16.2 or later required). It uses end-to-end encryption on more data categories such as the following:

- Device backup
- Messages backup
- iCloud Drive
- Notes
- Photos
- Reminders
- Safari bookmarks
- Siri Shortcuts
- Voice Memos
- Wallet passes

With Advanced Data Protection, your protected data can be decrypted only on your trusted devices, protecting your information even in the case of a data breach in the cloud. Not even Apple can access your information.

For detailed information about the requirements for using Advanced Data Protection, see the Apple Support article How to turn on Advanced Data Protection for iCloud.

Turn on Advanced Data Protection

1. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud, then tap Advanced Data Protection.
2. Tap Turn On Advanced Data Protection.
3. If you haven't set up a Recovery Contact or Recovery Key, tap Account Recovery, tap Set Up Account Recovery, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   WARNING: If you use Advanced Data Protection, you're responsible for your data recovery. Because Apple won't have the keys required to recover your data, you'll need to have a Recovery Contact or Recovery Key set up on your account. You can use these additional recovery methods to regain access to your data if you ever forget your password or lose access to your account.

If you choose to turn off Advanced Data Protection later, your iCloud data will revert to the standard level of security.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Use a private network address

Next
Use Lockdown Mode

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Harden your iPhone from a cyberattack with Lockdown Mode

Lockdown Mode is an extreme protection feature for iPhone. Its protections include safer wireless connectivity defaults, media handling, media sharing defaults, sandboxing, and network security optimizations.

Lockdown Mode is optional and should be used only if you believe you might be targeted by a highly sophisticated cyberattack, such as by a private company developing state-sponsored mercenary spyware.

Important: Most people are never targeted by attacks of this nature.

When iPhone is in Lockdown Mode, it doesn't function as it typically does. Apps, websites, and features are strictly limited for security, and some functionality isn't available, including:

- SharePlay
- Shared Albums
- FaceTime Live Photos
- FaceTime Continuity Handoff

In addition, your iPhone must be unlocked to connect with wired accessories. (Some connections are permitted for a short time after going into Lockdown Mode.)

Turn on Lockdown Mode

Go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Lockdown Mode, then tap Turn On Lockdown Mode.

If you've set up an Apple Watch with your iPhone, turning on Lockdown Mode also turns it on for the paired Apple Watch (requires watchOS 10 or later).

Important: For complete protection, all of your devices must have Lockdown Mode turned on.

Learn about Lockdown Mode

Go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Lockdown Mode, then tap Learn More.

See also

Manage information sharing with Safety Check on iPhone

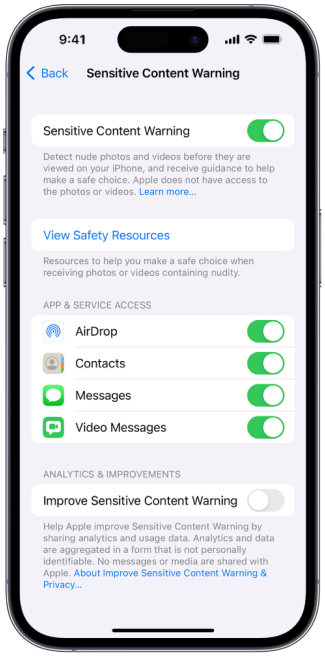
Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Receive warnings about sensitive content on iPhone

You can have your iPhone (or your family member's iPhone) check for sensitive images and warn you before they're sent or received.

Turn on Sensitive Content Warning

1. Go to Settings > Privacy & Security.
2. Scroll down and tap Sensitive Content Warning, then turn on Sensitive Content Warning.



You (or your family member) will receive a warning before receiving or sending sexually explicit photos.

Note: Sensitive Content Warning is turned on automatically if you set up Screen Time and turn on Communication Safety. See Check for sensitive images on a family member's iPhone.

In Screen Time, you can also block inappropriate content and set restrictions on purchases. See Allow or block communication on a family member's device.

See also

Set communication and safety limits and block inappropriate content on iPhone

Previous
Use Lockdown Mode

Next
Turn iPhone on or off

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Turn iPhone on or off

Use the side button to turn on iPhone. You can use the side button (along with either volume button on some models) or Settings to turn off iPhone.

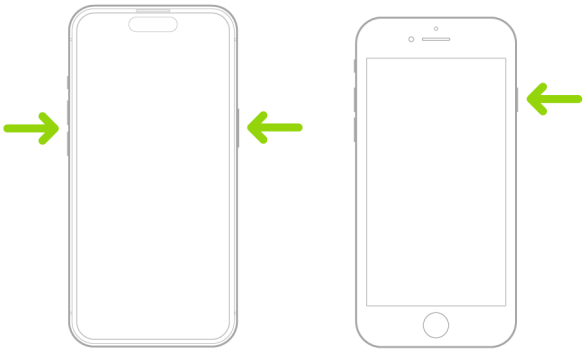
If your iPhone isn't working as expected, you can try restarting it by turning it off, then turning it back on. If turning it off and on doesn't fix the issue, try forcing it to restart.

Turn on iPhone

Press and hold the side button until the Apple logo appears.

Turn off iPhone

- *iPhone with Face ID:* Simultaneously press and hold the side button and either volume button until the sliders appear, then drag the Power Off slider.
- *iPhone with the Home button:* Press and hold the side button, then drag the slider.



- *All models:* Go to Settings > General > Shut Down, then drag the slider.

See also

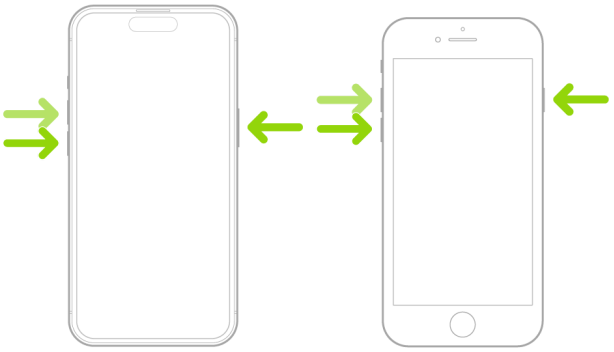
Force restart iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Force restart iPhone

If iPhone isn't responding, and you can't turn it off then on, try forcing it to restart.

1. Press and quickly release the volume up button.
2. Press and quickly release the volume down button.
3. Press and hold the side button.
4. When the Apple logo appears, release the side button.



Note: For force restart instructions for iPhone 7, iPhone 6s, or iPhone SE (1st generation)—models that don't support iOS 16 or later—see the iOS 15 version of this page.

If iPhone doesn't restart after you try these steps, see the Apple Support article If your iPhone won't turn on or is frozen. Or if your iPhone isn't working as expected after you restart it, see the iPhone Support website.

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Update iOS on iPhone

When you update to the latest version of iOS, your data and settings remain unchanged.

Before you update, set up iPhone to back up automatically, or back up your device manually.

Update iPhone automatically

If you didn't turn on automatic updates when you first set up your iPhone, do the following:

1. Go to Settings > General > Software Update > Automatic Updates.
2. Turn on iOS Updates below Automatically Install and Automatically Download.

When an update is available, iPhone downloads and installs the update overnight while charging and connected to Wi-Fi. You're notified before an update is installed.

Update iPhone manually

At any time, you can check for and install software updates.

Go to Settings > General > Software Update.

The screen shows the currently installed version of iOS and whether an update is available.

To turn off automatic updates, go to Settings > General > Software Update > Automatic Updates.

Update using your computer

1. Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable.
2. Do one of the following:
   - *On a Mac (macOS 10.15 or later):* In the Finder sidebar, select your iPhone, then click General at the top of the window.
   - *On a Mac (macOS 10.14 or earlier) or a Windows PC:* Open the iTunes app, click the button resembling an iPhone near the top left of the iTunes window, then click Summary.

     Note: Use the latest version of iTunes. See the Apple Support article Update to the latest version of iTunes.
3. Click Check for Update.
4. To install an available update, click Update.

See the Apple Support articles Update to the latest iOS and If you can't update or restore your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Force restart iPhone

Next
Back up iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Back up iPhone

You can back up iPhone using iCloud or your computer. To decide which method is best for you, see About backups for iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch.

Tip: If you replace your iPhone, you can use its backup to transfer your information to the new device. See Restore all content to iPhone from a backup.

Back up iPhone using iCloud

1. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > iCloud Backup.
2. Turn on iCloud Backup.

   iCloud automatically backs up your iPhone daily when iPhone is connected to power, locked, and connected to Wi-Fi.

   Note: On models that support 5G, your carrier may give you the option to back up iPhone using your cellular network. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > iCloud Backup, then turn on or off Back Up Over Cellular.
3. To perform a manual backup, tap Back Up Now.

To view your iCloud backups, go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > Manage Account Storage > Backups. To delete a backup on the device you're using, choose a backup from the list, then tap Turn Off and Delete from iCloud. To delete a backup on a different device using the same Apple ID, tap Delete.

Note: If you turn on an app or feature to use iCloud syncing (in Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > Show All), its information is stored in iCloud. Because the information is automatically kept up to date on all your devices, it's not included in your iCloud backup. (See the Apple Support article What does iCloud back up?)

Back up iPhone using your Mac

1. Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable.
2. In the Finder sidebar on your Mac, select your iPhone.

   To use the Finder to back up iPhone, macOS 10.15 or later is required. With earlier versions of macOS, use iTunes to back up iPhone.
3. At the top of the Finder window, click General.
4. Select "Back up all of the data on your iPhone to this Mac."
5. To encrypt your backup data and protect it with a password, select "Encrypt local backup."
6. Click Back Up Now.

Note: You can also connect iPhone to your computer wirelessly if you set up syncing over Wi-Fi.

Back up iPhone using your Windows PC

1. Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable.

2. In the iTunes app on your PC, click the iPhone button near the top left of the iTunes window.
3. Click Summary.
4. Click Back Up Now (below Backups).
5. To encrypt your backups, select “Encrypt local backup,” type a password, then click Set Password.

To see the backups stored on your computer, choose Edit > Preferences, then click Devices. Encrypted backups have a lock icon in the list of backups.

Note: You can also connect iPhone to your computer wirelessly if you set up syncing over Wi-Fi.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Update iOS

Next
Return iPhone settings to their defaults

Support > iPhone User Guide > Back up iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Return iPhone settings to their defaults

You can return settings to their defaults without erasing your content.

If you want to save your settings, back up iPhone before returning them to their defaults. For example, if you're trying to solve a problem but returning settings to their defaults doesn't help, you might want to restore your previous settings from a backup.

---

1. Go to Settings > General > Transfer or Reset iPhone > Reset.
2. Choose an option:

   WARNING: If you choose the Erase All Content and Settings option, all of your content is removed. See Erase iPhone.

   - *Reset All Settings:* All settings—including network settings, the keyboard dictionary, location settings, privacy settings, and Apple Pay cards—are removed or reset to their defaults. No data or media are deleted.
   - *Reset Network Settings:* All network settings are removed. In addition, the device name assigned in Settings > General > About is reset to "iPhone," and manually trusted certificates (such as for websites) are changed to untrusted.

     Cellular data roaming may also be turned off. (See View or change cellular data settings on iPhone.)

     When you reset network settings, previously used networks and VPN settings that weren't installed by a configuration profile or mobile device management (MDM) are removed. Wi-Fi is turned off and then back on, disconnecting you from any network you're on. The Wi-Fi and Ask to Join Networks settings remain turned on.

     To remove VPN settings installed by a configuration profile, go to Settings > General > VPN & Device Management, select the configuration profile, then tap Remove Profile. This also removes other settings and accounts provided by the profile. See Install or remove configuration profiles on iPhone.

     To remove network settings installed by MDM, go to Settings > General > VPN & Device Management, select the management, then tap Remove Management. This also removes other settings and certificates provided by MDM. See "Mobile device management (MDM)" in the Deployment Reference for iPhone and iPad.
   - *Reset Keyboard Dictionary:* You add words to the keyboard dictionary by rejecting words iPhone suggests as you type. Resetting the keyboard dictionary erases only the words you've added.
   - *Reset Home Screen Layout:* Returns the built-in apps to their original layout on the Home Screen.
   - *Reset Location & Privacy:* Resets the location services and privacy settings to their defaults.

If you want to completely erase your iPhone, see Use Settings to erase iPhone. If you want or need to use a computer to erase your iPhone, see Use a computer to erase iPhone.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Back up iPhone

Next
Restore all content from a backup

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Restore all content to iPhone from a backup

You can restore content, settings, and apps from a backup to a new or newly erased iPhone.

Important: You must first create a backup of your iPhone. See Back up iPhone.

Restore iPhone from an iCloud backup

1. Turn on a new or newly erased iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:

   - Tap Set Up Manually, tap Restore from iCloud Backup, then follow the onscreen instructions.
   - If you have another iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch with iOS 11, iPadOS 13, or later, you can use Quick Start to automatically set up your new device. Bring the two devices close together, then follow the onscreen instructions to securely copy many of your settings, preferences, and iCloud Keychain. You can then restore the rest of your data and content to your new device from your iCloud backup.

     Or, if both devices have iOS 12.4, iPadOS 13, or later, you can transfer all your data wirelessly from your previous device to your new one. Keep your devices near each other and plugged into power until the migration process is complete.

You're asked for your Apple ID. If you've forgotten your Apple ID, see the Recover your Apple ID website.

Restore iPhone from a computer backup

1. Using USB, connect a new or newly erased iPhone to the computer containing your backup.
2. Do one of the following:

   - *On a Mac (macOS 10.15 or later):* In the Finder sidebar, select your iPhone, click Trust, then click "Restore from this backup."
   - *On a Mac (macOS 10.14 or earlier) or a Windows PC:* Open the iTunes app, click the button resembling an iPhone near the top left of the iTunes window, click Summary, then click Restore Backup.

     Note: Use the latest version of iTunes. See the Apple Support article Update to the latest version of iTunes.
3. Choose your backup from the list, then click Continue.

If your backup is encrypted, you must enter the password before restoring your files and settings.

See the Apple Support articles Restore your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch from a backup and If you can't update or restore your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Return iPhone settings to their defaults

Next
Restore purchased and deleted items

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Restore purchased and deleted items to iPhone

You can redownload items purchased from the App Store, Book Store, Apple TV app, and iTunes Store without repurchasing them. If you're part of a Family Sharing group, you can download items purchased by other family members, too. To restore purchases that aren't on your iPhone, see the following Apple Support articles:

- Redownload apps and games from Apple
- Redownload books and audiobooks
- Redownload TV shows and movies that you purchased
- Redownload music

You can also recover recently deleted email, photos, notes, and voice memos.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Restore all content from a backup

Next
Sell, give away, or trade in your iPhone

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Sell, give away, or trade in your iPhone

Before you sell, give away, or trade in your iPhone, see the Apple Support article What to do before you sell, give away, or trade in your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch, and be sure to perform the following tasks:

- If you paired an Apple Watch with your iPhone, unpair your Apple Watch. (See the Apple Support article Unpair and erase your Apple Watch.)
- Back up iPhone. If you replace one iPhone with another, you can use the setup assistant to restore the backup to your new iPhone.

  If you're replacing your iPhone with another one you have on hand, you can use extra free storage in iCloud to move your apps and data from one iPhone to another. Go to Settings > General > Transfer or Reset iPhone > Get Started, then follow the onscreen instructions.
- Sign out of iCloud and the iTunes & App Store. Go to Settings > *[your name]*, scroll down, tap Sign Out, enter your Apple ID password, then tap Turn Off.
- Erase all content and settings that contain personal information. If you previously turned on Find My for your iPhone, Activation Lock is removed when you erase iPhone, making it ready for a new owner.

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Erase iPhone

When you delete data, it no longer appears in apps on iPhone, but it isn't erased from iPhone storage. To permanently remove all of your content and settings from your iPhone, erase (wipe) your iPhone. For example, erase iPhone before you sell it, trade it in, or give it away.

There are two ways to erase iPhone: using Settings on your iPhone, or connecting iPhone to a computer with a USB cable and using the Finder or iTunes. The Settings method is the easiest. If you're unable to open Settings, you need to connect iPhone to a computer and use the Finder or iTunes.

Before you begin

- If you intend to sell your iPhone, trade it in, or give it away, see the Apple Support article What to do before you sell, give away, or trade in your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch for steps to take before erasing iPhone.
- To save your content and settings, back up your iPhone shortly before erasing it or when you're given the option during the erase process. You can use the backup to later restore your data on a new iPhone or iPad.
- Have your iPhone passcode ready. If you don't remember it, see the Apple Support article If you forgot the passcode on your iPhone, or your iPhone is disabled.
- Have your Apple ID password ready. If you don't remember it, see the Recover your Apple ID website.
- If you received your iPhone from someone else and it's still associated with their Apple ID, return it to them and ask them to follow the instructions in the Apple Support article What to do before you sell, give away, or trade in your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch. Otherwise, you won't be able to erase it.

Use Settings to erase iPhone

1. Go to Settings > General > Transfer or Reset iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:

   - *Prepare your content and settings to transfer to a new iPhone:* Tap Get Started, then follow the onscreen instructions. When you finish, return to Settings > General > Transfer or Reset iPhone, then tap Erase All Content and Settings.

   - *Erase all of your data from iPhone:* Tap Erase All Content and Settings.

Use a computer to erase iPhone

You can use a Mac or Windows PC to erase all data and settings from your iPhone, restore iPhone to factory settings, and install the latest version of iOS.

1. Connect your iPhone to your computer with a USB or USB-C cable. You may also need an adapter. See Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable.
2. Turn on your iPhone.
3. Do one of the following:

- *On a Mac (macOS 10.15 or later):* Click the Finder icon in the Dock to open a Finder window, click the iPhone button in the Finder sidebar (below Locations), click General at the top of the window, then click Restore iPhone.

- *On a Mac (macOS 10.14 or earlier) or a Windows PC:* Make sure you have the latest version of iTunes (see the Apple Support article Update to the latest version of iTunes). Open iTunes, click the iPhone button near the top left of the iTunes window, click Summary, then click Restore iPhone.

For troubleshooting steps, see the Apple Support article If you can't update or restore your iPhone.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Sell, give away, or trade in your iPhone

Next
Install or remove configuration profiles

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Install or remove configuration profiles on iPhone

Configuration profiles define settings for using iPhone with corporate or school networks or accounts. You might be asked to install a configuration profile that was sent to you in an email, or one that's downloaded from a webpage. You're asked for permission to install the profile and, when you open the file, information about what it contains is displayed. You can see the profiles you have installed in Settings > General > VPN & Device Management. If you delete a profile, all of the settings, apps, and data associated with the profile are also deleted.

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Important safety information for iPhone

⚠ **WARNING:** Failure to follow these safety instructions could result in fire, electric shock, injury, or damage to iPhone or other property. Read all the safety information below before using iPhone.

Handling. Handle iPhone with care. It is made of metal, glass, and plastic and has sensitive electronic components inside. iPhone or its battery can be damaged if dropped, burned, punctured, or crushed, or if it comes in contact with liquid. If you suspect damage to iPhone or the battery, discontinue use of iPhone, as it may cause overheating or injury. Don't use iPhone with cracked glass, as it may cause injury. If you're concerned about scratching the surface of iPhone, consider using a case or cover.

Repairing. iPhone should only be serviced by a trained technician. Disassembling iPhone may damage it, result in loss of splash and water resistance (supported models), or cause injury to you. If iPhone is damaged or malfunctions, you should contact Apple, or an Apple Authorized Service Provider for service. Repairs performed by untrained individuals or using non-genuine Apple parts may affect the safety and functionality of the device. You can find more information about repairs and service at the iPhone Repair website.

Battery. An iPhone battery should only be repaired by a trained technician to avoid battery damage, which could cause overheating, fire, or injury. Batteries should be recycled or disposed of separately from household waste and according to local environmental laws and guidelines. For information about battery service and recycling, see the Battery Service and Recycling website.

Lasers. The proximity sensor in iPhone 7 and later, the TrueDepth camera system, and the LiDAR Scanner contain one or more lasers. These laser systems may be disabled for safety reasons if the device is damaged or malfunctions. If you receive a notification on your iPhone that the laser system is disabled, you should contact Apple or an Apple Authorized Service Provider for service. Improper repair, modification, or use of non-genuine Apple components in the laser systems may prevent the safety mechanisms from functioning properly, and could cause hazardous exposure and injury to eyes or skin.

Distraction. Using iPhone in some circumstances may distract you and might cause a dangerous situation (for example, avoid using headphones while riding a bicycle and avoid typing a text message while driving a car). Observe rules that prohibit or restrict the use of mobile devices or headphones. For more about safety while driving, see Stay focused while driving with iPhone.

Navigation. Maps depends on data services. These data services are subject to change and may not be available in all countries or regions, resulting in maps and location-based information that may be unavailable, inaccurate, or incomplete. Compare the information provided in Maps to your surroundings. Use common sense when navigating. Always observe current road conditions and posted signs to resolve any discrepancies. Some Maps features require Location Services.

Charging. To charge iPhone, do any of the following:

- Charge the iPhone battery using the charging cable (included) and an Apple USB power adapter (sold separately).
- Place iPhone face up on MagSafe Charger or MagSafe Duo Charger (connected to Apple 20W USB-C power adapter or other compatible power adapter) or on a Qi-certified charger. (MagSafe Charger, MagSafe Duo Charger, power adapters, and Qi-certified chargers are sold separately.)
- Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable.

You can also charge iPhone with "Made for iPhone" or other third-party cables and power adapters that are compliant with USB 2.0 or later and with applicable country regulations and international and regional safety standards. Other adapters may not meet applicable safety standards, and charging with such adapters could pose a risk of death or injury.

Using damaged cables or chargers, or charging when moisture is present, can cause fire, electric shock, injury, or damage to iPhone or other property. When you use the charging cable (included) or a wireless

charger (sold separately) to charge iPhone, make sure its USB connector is fully inserted into a compatible power adapter before you plug the adapter into a power outlet. It's important to keep iPhone, the charging cable, the power adapter, and any wireless charger in a well-ventilated area when in use or charging. When using a wireless charger, remove metallic cases and avoid placing metallic foreign objects on the charger (for example, keys, coins, batteries, or jewelry), as they may become warm or interfere with charging.

Charging cable and connector. Avoid prolonged skin contact with the charging cable and connector when the charging cable is connected to a power source because it may cause discomfort or injury. Sleeping or sitting on the charging cable or connector should be avoided.

Prolonged heat exposure. iPhone and Apple USB power adapters (sold separately) comply with required surface temperature limits defined by applicable country regulations and international and regional safety standards. However, even within these limits, sustained contact with warm surfaces for long periods of time may cause discomfort or injury. Use common sense to avoid situations where your skin is in contact with a device, its power adapter, or a wireless charger when it's operating or connected to a power source for long periods of time. For example, don't sleep on a device, power adapter, or wireless charger, or place them under a blanket, pillow, or your body, when it's connected to a power source. Keep your iPhone, the power adapter, and any wireless charger in a well-ventilated area when in use or charging. Take special care if you have a physical condition that affects your ability to detect heat against the body.

USB power adapter. (sold separately) To operate an Apple USB power adapter safely and reduce the possibility of heat-related injury or damage, plug the power adapter directly into a power outlet. Don't use the power adapter in wet locations, such as near a sink, bathtub, or shower stall, and don't connect or disconnect the power adapter with wet hands. Stop using the power adapter and any cables if any of the following conditions exist:

- The power adapter plug or prongs are damaged.
- The charge cable becomes frayed or otherwise damaged.
- The power adapter is exposed to excessive moisture, or liquid is spilled into the power adapter.
- The power adapter has been dropped, and its enclosure is damaged.

Apple 20W USB-C power adapter specifications:

- *Frequency:* 50 to 60 Hz, single phase
- *Line voltage:* 100 to 240 V
- *Output power:* 5V/3A or 9V2.2A
- *Output Port:* USB-C

Apple 18W USB-C power adapter specifications:

- *Frequency:* 50 to 60 Hz, single phase
- *Line voltage:* 100 to 240 V
- *Output power:* 5V/3A or 9V/2A
- *Output Port:* USB-C

Apple 5W USB power adapter specifications:

- *Frequency:* 50 to 60 Hz, single phase
- *Line voltage:* 100 to 240 V
- *Output power:* 5V/1A
- *Output Port:* USB

Hearing loss. Listening to sound at high volumes may damage your hearing. Background noise, as well as continued exposure to high volume levels, can make sounds seem quieter than they actually are. Turn on audio playback and check the volume before inserting anything in your ear. For information about how to set a maximum volume limit, see Use audiogram data in Health on iPhone. For more information about hearing loss, see the Sound and Hearing website.

⚠ **WARNING:** To prevent possible hearing damage, do not listen at high volume levels for long periods.

Radio frequency exposure. iPhone uses radio signals to connect to wireless networks. For information about radio frequency (RF) energy resulting from radio signals, and steps you can take to minimize

exposure, go to Settings > General > Legal & Regulatory > RF Exposure, or see the RF Exposure website.

Radio frequency interference. Observe signs and notices that prohibit or restrict the use of electronic devices. Although iPhone is designed, tested, and manufactured to comply with regulations governing radio frequency emissions, such emissions from iPhone can negatively affect the operation of other electronic equipment, causing them to malfunction. When use is prohibited, such as while traveling in aircraft, or when asked to do so by authorities, turn off iPhone, or use airplane mode or Settings > Wi-Fi and Settings > Bluetooth to turn off the iPhone wireless transmitters.

Medical device interference. iPhone and MagSafe accessories contain magnets as well as components and/or radios that emit electromagnetic fields. These magnets and electromagnetic fields might interfere with medical devices.

Consult your physician and medical device manufacturer for information specific to your medical device and whether you need to maintain a safe distance of separation between your medical device and iPhone and MagSafe accessories. Manufacturers often provide recommendations on the safe use of their devices around wireless or magnetic products to prevent possible interference. If you suspect iPhone and MagSafe accessories are interfering with your medical device, stop using these products.

Medical devices such as implanted pacemakers and defibrillators may contain sensors that respond to magnets and radios when in close contact. To avoid any potential interactions with these devices, keep your MagSafe compatible iPhone models and MagSafe accessories a safe distance away from your device (more than 6 inches/15 cm, or more than 12 inches/30 cm while wirelessly charging, but consult with your physician and your device manufacturer for specific guidelines).

Not a medical device. iPhone is not a medical device and should not be used as a substitute for professional medical judgment. It is not designed or intended for use in the diagnosis of disease or other conditions, or in the cure, mitigation, treatment, or prevention of any condition or disease. Please consult your healthcare provider prior to making any decisions related to your health.

Medical conditions. If you have any medical condition or experience symptoms that you believe could be affected by iPhone or flashing lights (for example, seizures, blackouts, eyestrain, or headaches), consult with your physician prior to using iPhone.

Explosive and other atmospheric conditions. Charging or using iPhone in any area with a potentially explosive atmosphere, such as areas where the air contains high levels of flammable chemicals, vapors, or particles (such as grain, dust, or metal powders), may be hazardous. Exposing iPhone to environments having high concentrations of industrial chemicals, including near evaporating liquified gasses such as helium, may damage or impair iPhone functionality. Obey all signs and instructions.

Repetitive motion. When you perform repetitive activities such as typing, swiping, or playing games on iPhone, you may experience discomfort in your hands, arms, wrists, shoulders, neck, or other parts of your body. If you experience discomfort, stop using iPhone and consult a physician.

High-consequence activities. This device is not intended for use where the failure of the device could lead to death, personal injury, or severe environmental damage.

Choking hazard. Some iPhone accessories may present a choking hazard to small children. Keep these accessories away from small children.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Install or remove configuration profiles

Next
Important handling information

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Important handling information for iPhone

Cleaning. Clean iPhone immediately if it comes in contact with anything that may cause stains, or other damage—for example, dirt or sand, ink, makeup, soap, detergent, acids or acidic foods, or lotions. To clean:

- Disconnect all cables, then do one of the following to turn off iPhone:
  - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Simultaneously press and hold the side button and either volume button until the sliders appear, then drag the top slider.
  - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Press and hold the side button, then drag the slider.
  - *All models:* Go to Settings > General > Shut Down, then drag the slider.
- Use a soft, slightly damp, lint-free cloth—for example, a lens cloth.
- Avoid getting moisture in openings.
- Don't use cleaning products or compressed air.

iPhone has a fingerprint-resistant oleophobic (oil-repellant) coating. This coating wears over time with normal usage. Cleaning products and abrasive materials will further diminish the coating and may scratch iPhone.

Exposure to liquid and dust. If liquid splashes on iPhone or dust gets on it, wipe it off with a soft, lint-free cloth (for example, a lens cloth) and ensure that your iPhone is dry and free of dust before opening the SIM tray. Minimize exposing iPhone to soap, detergent, acids or acidic foods, and any liquids—for example, salt water, soapy water, pool water, perfume, insect repellent, lotion, sunscreen, oil, adhesive remover, hair dye, and solvents. If iPhone comes into contact with any of these substances, follow the instructions above in the Cleaning section.

Supported models are splash, water, and dust resistant and were tested under controlled laboratory conditions with a rating of either IP68 or IP67 under IEC standard 60529. Splash, water, and dust resistance are not permanent conditions and resistance might decrease as a result of normal wear. Liquid damage not covered under warranty. See the Apple Support article About splash, water, and dust resistance of iPhone 7 and later. To prevent liquid damage on iPhone, avoid the following:

- Swimming or bathing with iPhone
- Exposing iPhone to pressurized water or high velocity water, such as when showering, water skiing, wake boarding, surfing, jet skiing, and so on
- Using iPhone in a sauna or steam room
- Intentionally submerging iPhone in water
- Operating iPhone outside the suggested temperature ranges or in extremely humid conditions
- Dropping iPhone or subjecting it to other impacts
- Disassembling iPhone, including removing screws

If your iPhone has been exposed to liquid, unplug all cables and do not charge your device until it's completely dry. Using accessories or charging when wet may damage your iPhone. Allow at least 5 hours before charging or connecting a Lightning or USB-C accessory.

To dry iPhone, tap it gently against your hand with the Lightning or USB-C connector facing down to remove excess liquid. Leave the device in a dry area with sufficient airflow. Placing the device in front of a fan blowing cool air directly into the Lightning or USB-C connector may help the drying process.

Do not dry your iPhone using an external heat source or insert a foreign object into the Lightning or USB-C connector such as a cotton swab or a paper towel.

Using connectors, ports, and buttons. Never force a connector into a port or apply excessive pressure to a button, because this may cause damage that is not covered under the warranty. If the connector and port don't join with reasonable ease, they probably don't match. Check for obstructions and make sure that the connector matches the port and that you have positioned the connector correctly in relation to the port.

USB-C or USB-C to Lightning Cables. Discoloration of the Lightning or USB-C connector after regular use is normal. Dirt, debris, and exposure to moisture may cause discoloration. If your Lightning or USB-C cable or connector becomes warm during use or iPhone won't charge or sync, disconnect it from your computer or power adapter and clean the Lightning or USB-C connector with a soft, dry, lint-free cloth. Do not use liquids or cleaning products when cleaning the Lightning or USB-C connector.

Certain usage patterns can contribute to the fraying or breaking of cables. The included cable, like any other metal wire or cable, is subject to becoming weak or brittle if repeatedly bent in the same spot. Aim for gentle curves instead of angles in the cable. Regularly inspect the cable and connector for any kinks, breaks, bends, or other damage. Should you find any such damage, discontinue use of the cable.

Operating temperature. iPhone is designed to work in ambient temperatures between 32° and 95° F (0° and 35° C) and stored in temperatures between -4° and 113° F (-20° and 45° C). iPhone can be damaged and battery life shortened if stored or operated outside of these temperature ranges. Avoid exposing iPhone to dramatic changes in temperature or humidity. When you're using iPhone or charging the battery, it is normal for iPhone to get warm.

If the interior temperature of iPhone exceeds normal operating temperatures (for example, in a hot car or in direct sunlight for extended periods of time), you may experience the following as it attempts to regulate its temperature:

- iPhone stops charging.
- The screen dims.
- A temperature warning screen appears.
- Some apps may close.

Important: You may not be able to use iPhone while the temperature warning screen is displayed. If iPhone can't regulate its internal temperature, it goes into deep sleep mode until it cools. Move iPhone to a cooler location out of direct sunlight and wait a few minutes before trying to use iPhone again.

See the Apple Support article Keeping iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch within acceptable operating temperatures.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Important safety information

Next
Find more resources for software and service

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map United States

Find more resources for iPhone software and service

Refer to the following resources to get more iPhone-related safety, software, and service information.

To learn about	Do this
Using iPhone safely	See Important safety information for iPhone.
iPhone service and support, tips, forums, and Apple software downloads	See the iPhone Support website.
Service and support from your carrier	Contact your carrier or go to your carrier's website.
The latest information about iPhone	See the iPhone website.
Getting personalized support (not available in all countries or regions)	See the Apple Support website.
Managing your Apple ID account	Sign in to your Apple ID account page.
Using iCloud	See the iCloud User Guide.
Using iTunes for Windows	See the iTunes User Guide for Windows.
Using other Apple iPhone apps	See the App Store Support website.
Finding your iPhone serial number, IMEI, ICCID, or MEID	You can find your iPhone serial number, International Mobile Equipment Identity (IMEI), Integrated Circuit Card Identifier (ICCID), or Mobile Equipment Identifier (MEID) on the iPhone packaging. Or, on iPhone, go to Settings > General > About. See the Apple Support article Find the serial number or IMEI on your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch.
Obtaining warranty service	First follow the advice in this guide, then see the iPhone Support website.
Viewing iPhone regulatory information	On iPhone, go to Settings > General > Legal & Regulatory.
Battery service	See the Battery Service and Recycling website.
Battery performance and health	See the iPhone Battery and Performance website.
Using iPhone in an enterprise environment	See the Apple at Work website.

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

FCC compliance statement

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation.

This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment to an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Changes or modifications to this product not authorized by Apple could void the electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) and wireless compliance and negate your authority to operate the product.

This product has demonstrated EMC compliance under conditions that included the use of compliant peripheral devices and shielded cables between system components. It is important that you use compliant peripheral devices and shielded cables between system components to reduce the possibility of causing interference to radios, televisions, and other electronic devices.

Responsible party (contact for FCC matters only):

Apple Inc.
One Apple Park Way, MS 911-AHW
Cupertino, CA 95014
USA
apple.com/contact

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

ISED Canada compliance statement

This device complies with ISED Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Operation in the band 5150–5250 MHz is only for indoor use to reduce the potential for harmful interference to co-channel mobile satellite systems.

Operation in the 5925–7125 MHz band shall not be used for control of or communications with unmanned aircraft systems.

Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'ISDE Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes : (1) l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et (2) l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

La bande 5150–5250 MHz est réservée uniquement pour une utilisation à l'intérieur afin de réduire les risques de brouillage préjudiciable aux systèmes de satellites mobiles utilisant les mêmes canaux.

Les appareils dans la bande 5925-7125 MHz ne doivent pas être utilisés pour contrôler des systèmes d'aéronefs sans pilote ou pour communiquer avec de tels systèmes.

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Ultra Wideband information

Ultra Wideband is available on iPhone 11, iPhone 12, iPhone 13, iPhone 14 models, and iPhone 15 models, and availability varies by region.

Ultra Wideband must be turned off when onboard aircraft, ships, and other prohibited regions by turning on airplane mode. To turn on airplane mode, open Control Center, then tap ✈. You can also turn airplane mode on or off in Settings ⚙. When airplane mode is on, ✈ appears in the status bar.

Australia: Ultra Wideband transmitters must not be operated within a nominated distance from specified Australian radio-astronomy sites. For further information about nominated distance, please refer to the Radiocommunications (Low Interference Potential Devices) Class License 2015 published by the Australian Communications and Media Authority.

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Class 1 Laser information for iPhone

iPhone 7 and later are classified as Class 1 Laser products per IEC 60825-1 Ed. 3. These devices comply with 21 CFR 1040.10 and 1040.11, except for conformance with IEC 60825-1 Ed. 3., as described in Laser Notice No. 56, dated May 8, 2019. Caution: These devices contain one or more lasers. Use other than as described in the user guide, repair, or disassembly may cause damage, which could result in hazardous exposure to infrared laser emissions that are not visible. This equipment should be serviced by Apple or an authorized service provider.

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Apple and the environment

At Apple, we recognize our responsibility to minimize the environmental impacts of our operations and products. See our Environment website.

Helpful? Yes No

Previous
Class 1 Laser information

Next
Disposal and recycling information

Support > iPhone User Guide > Apple and the environment

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Disposal and recycling information for iPhone

Apple Recycling Program (available in some countries or regions)

For free recycling of your old device, a prepaid shipping label, and instructions, see the Apple Trade In website.

Disposal and Recycling Information

The symbol above means that according to local laws and regulations your product and/or its battery shall be disposed of separately from household waste. When this product reaches its end of life, take it to a collection point designated by local authorities. The separate collection and recycling of your product and/or its battery at the time of disposal will help conserve natural resources and ensure that it is recycled in a manner that protects human health and the environment. For information about Apple's recycling program, recycling collection points, restricted substances, and other environmental initiatives, visit apple.com/environment.

Brasil – Informações sobre descarte e reciclagem

O símbolo acima indica que este produto e/ou sua bateria não devem ser descartados no lixo doméstico. Quando decidir descartar este produto e/ou sua bateria, faça-o de acordo com as leis e diretrizes ambientais locais. Para informações sobre substâncias de uso restrito, o programa de reciclagem da Apple, pontos de coleta e telefone de informações, visite apple.com/br/environment.

Información sobre eliminación de residuos y reciclaje

El símbolo de arriba indica que este producto y/o su batería no debe desecharse con los residuos domésticos. Cuando decidas desechar este producto y/o su batería, hazlo de conformidad con las leyes y directrices ambientales locales. Para obtener información sobre el programa de reciclaje de Apple, puntos de recolección para reciclaje, sustancias restringidas y otras iniciativas ambientales, visita apple.com/mx/environment o apple.com/la/environment.

Turkey environmental information

Türkiye Cumhuriyeti: AEEE Yönetmeliğine Uygundur.

Battery service

The lithium-ion battery in iPhone should be serviced by Apple or an authorized service provider, and must be recycled or disposed of separately from household waste. See the Battery Service and Recycling website.

Dispose of batteries according to your local environmental laws and guidelines.

警告：不要刺破或焚烧。该电池不含水银。

廢電池請回收

警告：請勿戳刺或焚燒。此電池不含汞。

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Unauthorized modification of iOS

iOS is designed to be reliable and secure from the moment you turn on your device. Built-in security features help protect against malware and viruses and secure user access to personal information and corporate data. Unauthorized modifications to iOS (also known as "jailbreaking") bypass security features and can cause numerous issues such as security vulnerabilities, instability, and shortened battery life to the hacked iPhone.

- **Security vulnerabilities.** Jailbreaking your device eliminates security layers designed to protect your personal information and your iOS device. With this security removed from your iPhone, hackers may steal your personal information, damage your device, attack your network, or introduce malware, spyware, or viruses.
- **Instability.** Unauthorized modifications can cause frequent and unexpected crashes of the device, crashes and freezes of built-in apps and third-party apps, and loss of data.
- **Shortened battery life.** Hacked software can cause an accelerated battery drain that shortens the operation of iPhone on a single battery charge.
- **Unreliable voice and data.** Unauthorized modifications can cause dropped calls, slow or unreliable data connections, and delayed or inaccurate location data.
- **Disruption of services.** Services such as iCloud, iMessage, FaceTime, Apple Pay, Visual Voicemail, Weather, and Stocks, may be disrupted or no longer work on the device. Additionally, third-party apps that use the Apple Push Notification Service may experience difficulty receiving notifications or may receive notifications intended for a different device. Other push-based services, such as iCloud and Exchange, may experience problems syncing data with their respective servers.
- **Inability to apply future software updates.** Some unauthorized modifications may cause damage to iOS that is not repairable. This can result in the hacked iPhone becoming permanently inoperable when a future Apple-supplied iOS update is installed.

Apple strongly cautions against installing any software that modifies iOS. It is also important to note that unauthorized modification of iOS is a violation of the iOS and iPadOS Software License Agreement and because of this, Apple may deny service for an iPhone that has any unauthorized software installed.

Information about products not manufactured by Apple, or independent websites not controlled or tested by Apple, is provided without recommendation or endorsement. Apple assumes no responsibility with regard to the selection, performance, or use of third-party websites or products. Apple makes no representations regarding third-party website accuracy or reliability. Contact the vendor for additional information.

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
Apple, the Apple logo, 3D Touch, AirDrop, AirPlay, AirPods, AirPods Pro, AirPrint, AirTag, Apple Books, Apple Music, Apple Pay, Apple Podcasts, Apple TV, Apple Wallet, Apple Watch, CarPlay, EarPods, Face ID, FaceTime, Finder, Find My, Flyover, Freeform, Guided Access, Handoff, HomeKit, HomePod, iMessage, iPad, iPad Air, iPad mini, iPadOS, iPad Pro, iPhone, iPod, iPod touch, iTunes, Keychain, Keynote, Lightning, Live Photos, Mac, macOS, Magic Keyboard, MagSafe, Memoji, Numbers, Pages, QuickTake, Safari, Siri, Touch ID, TrueDepth, True Tone, tvOS, and watchOS are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries and regions.

AirPods Max, App Clip Code, App Clips, Multi-Touch, and SharePlay are trademarks of Apple Inc.

Apple Arcade, Apple News, Apple News+, App Store, Genius, iCloud, iCloud Drive, iCloud Keychain, and iTunes Store are service marks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries and regions.

Apple Fitness+, Apple One, and ICLOUD+ are service marks of Apple Inc.

Apple
One Apple Park Way
Cupertino, CA 95014
apple.com

Beats, the b logo, Beats Solo, Beats Solo Pro, Beats Studio, Beats^{x}, Powerbeats, Powerbeats Pro, and Solo are trademarks of Beats Electronics, LLC registered in the U.S. and other countries and regions.

Beats Flex is a trademark of Beats Electronics, LLC.

IOS is a trademark or registered trademark of Cisco in the U.S. and other countries and regions and is used under license.

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Apple is under license.

Other company and product names mentioned herein may be trademarks of their respective companies.

Every effort has been made to ensure that the information in this manual is accurate. Apple is not responsible for printing or clerical errors.

Some apps and features are not available in all areas. App and feature availability is subject to change.

This manual was copied from Apple Support website
and compiled by www.iphone15manual.com